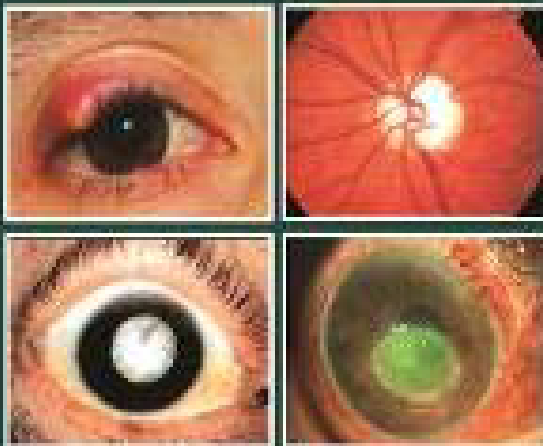


7<sup>th</sup>  
Edition



# *Comprehensive* OPHTHALMOLOGY



**A K Khurana**

FREE  
Review of Ophthalmology





# *Comprehensive* **OPHTHALMOLOGY**

**Seventh Edition**

**AK Khurana**

MS FAICO CTO (London)  
Senior Professor and Ex-Head  
Regional Institute of Ophthalmology  
Postgraduate Institute of Medical Sciences  
Rohtak, Haryana, India

**Aruj K Khurana**

DNB (Sankara Nethralaya, Chennai) FICO  
FVRS (Narayana Nethralaya, Bengaluru)  
Consultant, Vitreo-retinal Services  
Nirmal Ashram Eye Institute  
Rishikesh, Uttarakhand, India

**Bhawna P Khurana**

MS DNB FICO FNN  
Assistant Professor  
Squint, Paediatric Ophthalmology  
Orbit Oculoplasty, and Ocular Oncology Unit  
Department of Ophthalmology  
SGRR Institute of Medical and Health Sciences  
Dehradun, Uttarakhand, India



**JAYPEE BROTHERS MEDICAL PUBLISHERS**

*The Health Sciences Publisher*

New Delhi | London | Panama

# Contents

---

Preface

vii

## Section I: Anatomy and Physiology of Eye

- |                                   |    |
|-----------------------------------|----|
| 1. Anatomy and Development of Eye | 3  |
| 2. Physiology of Eye and Vision   | 14 |

## Section II: Optics and Refraction

- |                                           |    |
|-------------------------------------------|----|
| 3. Elementary and Physiological Optics    | 23 |
| 4. Errors of Refraction and Accommodation | 34 |

## Section III: Diseases of Eye and Ocular Adnexa

- |                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| 5. Diseases of Conjunctiva         | 59  |
| 6. Diseases of Cornea              | 98  |
| 7. Diseases of Sclera              | 145 |
| 8. Diseases of Uveal Tract         | 151 |
| 9. Diseases of Lens                | 184 |
| 10. Glaucoma                       | 226 |
| 11. Diseases of Vitreous           | 264 |
| 12. Diseases of Retina             | 271 |
| 13. Neuro-ophthalmology            | 322 |
| 14. Ocular Motility and Strabismus | 349 |
| 15. Disorders of Eyelids           | 377 |
| 16. Diseases of Lacrimal Apparatus | 403 |
| 17. Diseases of Orbit              | 418 |
| 18. Ocular Injuries                | 444 |

## Section IV: Ocular Therapeutics

- |                                             |     |
|---------------------------------------------|-----|
| 19. Ocular Pharmacology                     | 463 |
| 20. Lasers and Cryotherapy in Ophthalmology | 481 |

## Section V: Systemic and Community Ophthalmology

|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| 21. Systemic Ophthalmology  | 487 |
| 22. Community Ophthalmology | 495 |

## Section VI: Practical Ophthalmology

|                                                        |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| 23. Clinical Methods in Ophthalmology                  | 513 |
| 24. Clinical Ophthalmic Cases                          | 549 |
| 25. Darkroom Procedures                                | 587 |
| 26. Ophthalmic Instruments and Operative Ophthalmology | 612 |

|       |     |
|-------|-----|
| Index | 635 |
|-------|-----|

• SRK formula

A-Scan - take a probe  
 & place on cornea  
 B-Scan

• Purkinje images

Normally, 4 purkinje images

①<sup>st</sup> ②<sup>nd</sup> ③<sup>rd</sup> ④<sup>th</sup>  
 \* Ant. + post. surface of cornea  
 \* Ant. & post. surface of lens

- ① Mature cataract → 4<sup>th</sup> image ⊗
- ② Aphakia → 3<sup>rd</sup> & 4<sup>th</sup> image ⊗

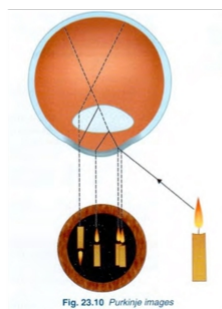


Fig. 23.10 Purkinje images

• Pathology

- + Black spots in front of eye
- + pathology :- small retinal hemorrhages  
 Retinal vasculitis
- vitreous hemorrhage
- Vitreous degeneration @ senility  
 @ pathologic myopia
- vitreous exudates
- Lenticular opacity

• Protein with glucose  
 Retinal tear sign

• Diplopia (m.c) - presenting symptom is FLOATERS

# IOP

anterior chamber is 13-18 mmHg

while in the venous plexus it is 10-15 mmHg





# Section I

---

## Anatomy and Physiology of Eye

### *Section Outline*

---

1. Anatomy and Development of Eye
2. Physiology of Eye and Vision





# 1

## Anatomy and Development of Eye

### ANATOMY OF EYE

- Eyeball
- Visual pathway
- Orbit, extraocular muscles and appendages of the eye
- Blood vessels and nerves

### DEVELOPMENT OF EYE

- Formation of optic vesicle and optic stalk

- Formation of lens vesicle
- Formation of optic cup
- Changes in the associated mesenchyme
- Development of various ocular structures
- Structures derived from the embryonic layers
- Important milestones in the development of eye

### ANATOMY OF EYE

This chapter gives only a brief account of the anatomy of eyeball and its related structures. The detailed anatomy of different structures is described in the relevant chapters.

### EYEBALL

Each eyeball (Fig. 1.1) is a cystic structure kept distended by the pressure inside it.

- **Shape.** Although, generally referred to as a globe, the eyeball is not a sphere but an ablate spheroid, consisting of two modified spheres fused together. Cornea is a part of the anterior smaller sphere with a radius of about 7.8 mm and sclera is a part of the posterior larger sphere with a radius of about 12 mm.
- **Poles.** The central point on the maximal convexities of the anterior and posterior curvatures of the eyeball is called the anterior and posterior pole, respectively.
- **Equator** of the eyeball lies at the mid plane between the two poles (Fig. 1.2).

### Dimensions of an adult eyeball

- |                            |         |
|----------------------------|---------|
| • Anteroposterior diameter | 24 mm   |
| • Horizontal diameter      | 23.5 mm |
| • Vertical diameter        | 23 mm   |
| • Circumference            | 75 mm   |
| • Volume                   | 6.5 mL  |
| • Weight                   | 7 gm    |

### Coats of the eyeball

3m

The eyeball comprises three coats: outer (fibrous coat), middle (vascular coat) and inner (nervous coat).

**1. Fibrous coat.** It is a dense strong wall which protects the intraocular contents. Anterior 1/6th of

this fibrous coat is transparent and is called cornea. Posterior 5/6th opaque part is called sclera. Cornea is set into the sclera like a watch glass. Junction of the cornea and sclera is called limbus. Conjunctiva is firmly attached at the limbus.

**2. Vascular coat (uveal tissue).** It supplies nutrition to the various structures of the eyeball. It consists of three parts, from anterior to posterior, which are: iris, ciliary body and choroid.

**3. Nervous coat (retina).** It is concerned with visual functions and projects to visual cortex through the visual pathway.

### Segments and chambers of the eyeball

The eyeball can be divided into two segments: anterior and posterior.

**1. Anterior segment.** It includes crystalline lens (which is suspended from the ciliary body by zonules), and structures anterior to it, viz., iris, cornea and two aqueous humour-filled spaces: anterior and posterior chambers.

■ **Anterior chamber.** It is bounded anteriorly by the back of cornea, and posteriorly by the anterior surface of iris and part of ciliary body. The anterior chamber is about 2.5 mm deep in the centre in normal adults. It is slightly shallower in hypermetropes and deeper in myopes, but is almost equal in the two eyes of the same individual. It contains about 0.25 mL of the aqueous humour. It communicates with posterior chamber through the pupil.

■ **Posterior chamber.** It is a triangular space containing 0.06 mL of aqueous humour. It is bounded anteriorly by the posterior surface of iris and part of ciliary body, posteriorly by the crystalline lens and its zonules, and laterally by the ciliary body.



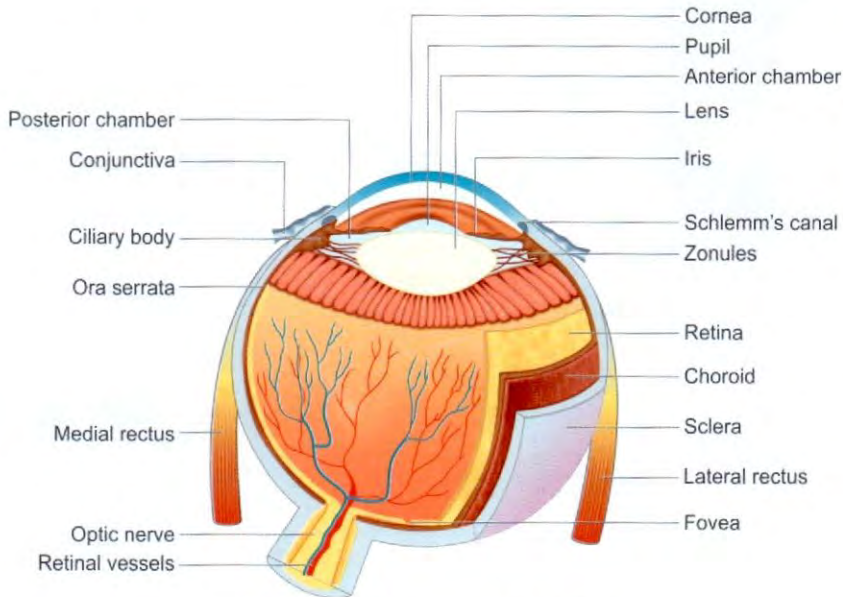


Fig. 1.1 Gross anatomy of the eyeball

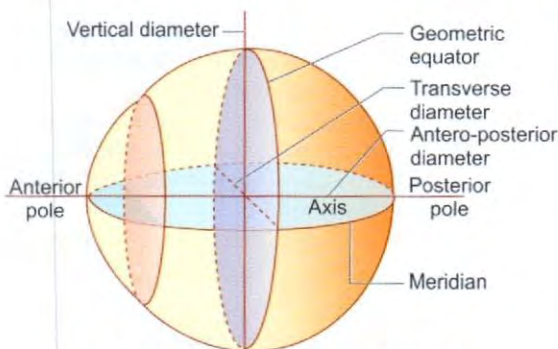


Fig. 1.2 Poles and equators of the eyeball

**2. Posterior segment.** It includes the **structures posterior to lens**, viz., vitreous humour (a gel-like structure which fills the space behind the lens), **retina**, **choroid** and **optic disc**.

### VISUAL PATHWAY

Each eyeball acts as a camera; it **perceives the images** and **relays the sensations** to the brain (occipital cortex) via visual pathway which comprises optic nerves, optic chiasma, optic tracts, geniculate bodies and optic radiations (Fig. 1.3).

### ORBIT, EXTRAOCULAR MUSCLES AND APPENDAGES OF THE EYE

**Bony orbit.** Each orbit is a **quadrilateral pyramid** shaped bony cavity, in which the **eyeball** is located in the **anterior part**, nearer to the roof and lateral wall than to the floor and medial wall (Fig. 1.4).

**Extraocular muscles**, **six** in number on each side, control movements of the eyeball.

**Appendages of the eye**, which are essential for normal working of the eyeball include:

- **Eyelids.** These form the **shutters** which protect the eyeballs anteriorly.
- **Conjunctiva.** It is a thin translucent mucous membrane which lines the posterior surface of the eyelids and the **anterior part of the sclera**. ✓
- **Lacrimal apparatus.** It comprises **lacrimal glands**, (which **produce tears** to keep the cornea and conjunctiva moist for smooth functioning) and **lacrimal passages** (which drain the continuously formed tears).

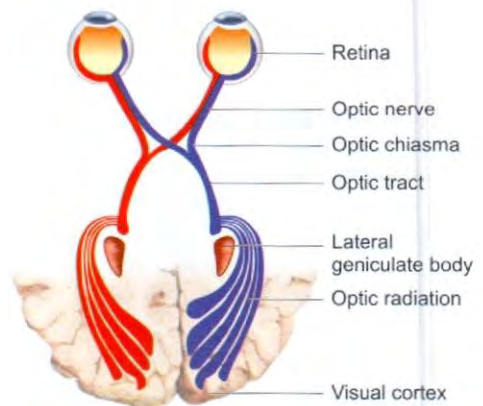
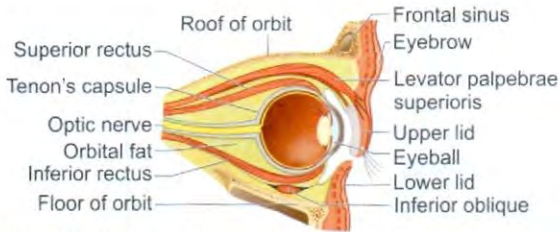


Fig. 1.3 Gross anatomy of the visual pathway





**Fig. 1.4** Section of the orbital cavity to demonstrate eyeball and its accessory structures

## BLOOD VESSELS AND NERVES

### ■ ARTERIES

**Ophthalmic artery**, a branch of internal carotid artery, constitutes the main source of blood supply for the eyeball and other orbital structures. Blood supply of each ocular structure is described in the relevant chapters.

**Branches of ophthalmic artery**, shown in Fig. 1.5, Include:

#### I. Ocular group

- Central retinal artery
- Long posterior ciliary arteries
- Short posterior ciliary arteries
- Muscular branches
  - Anterior ciliary arteries

#### II. Orbital group

- Lacrimal artery
  - Lateral palpebral artery
- Recurrent meningeal artery
- Supraorbital artery
- Medial palpebral artery
- Posterior ethmoidal artery
- Anterior ethmoidal artery
- Dorsal nasal artery (terminal branch)
- Supratrochlear artery (terminal branch)

Arterial supply of eyeball is depicted in Fig. 1.6.

### ■ VEINS

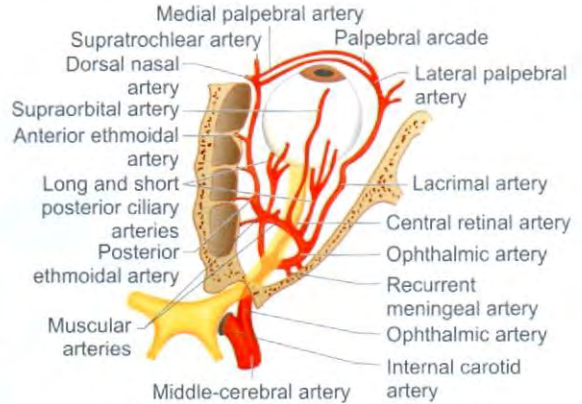
Veins draining blood from the eyeball include (Figs 1.6 and 1.7):

- **Central retinal vein** which drains blood from the retina; and
- **Anterior ciliary veins**, **short posterior ciliary veins** and **venae vorticosae** which drain blood from the uveal tissue.

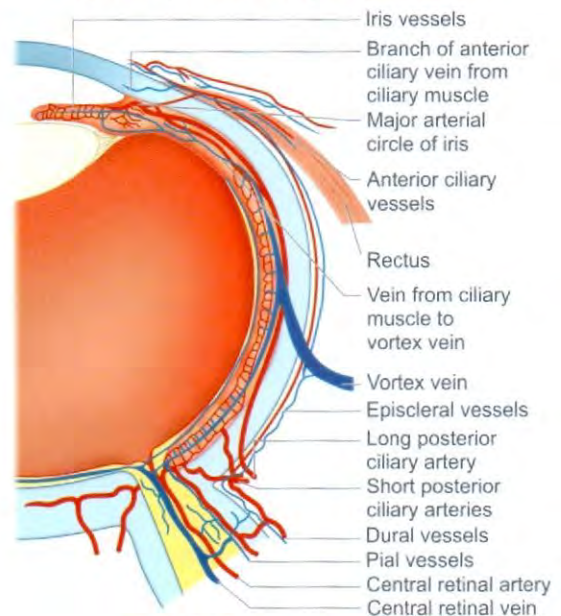
**Orbital venous networks.** In addition to the veins draining blood from various structures, the orbit also contains inferior and superior venous networks:

- **Inferior venous network** lies near the orbital floor in an anteromedial to posterolateral axis.
- **Superior venous network** is smaller and lies above the levator palpebrae superioris muscle.

**Main venous channels** which ultimately get tributaries from various orbital structures include (Fig. 1.7):



**Fig. 1.5** Ophthalmic artery and its branches



**Fig. 1.6** Blood supply of eyeball

- Superior ophthalmic vein,
- Inferior ophthalmic vein,
- Middle ophthalmic vein,
- Medial ophthalmic vein,
- Angular vein, and
- Cavernous sinus.

### ■ NERVES

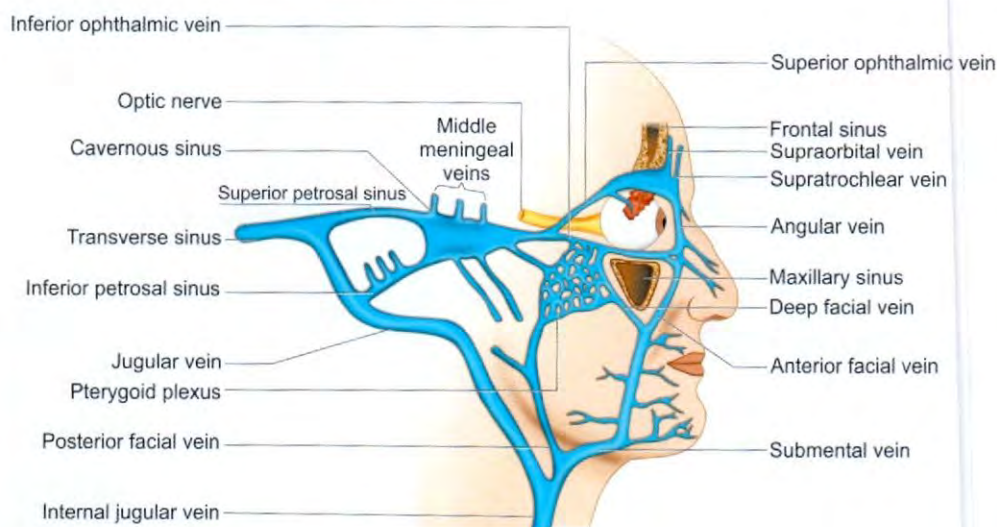
#### Sensory nerves

##### Ophthalmic nerve

Ophthalmic nerve, **smallest of the three divisions of trigeminal** (5th cranial) nerve, supplies the various ocular structures through its three branches (Fig. 1.8):

**1. Lacrimal nerve.** It lies in the lateral part of the orbit and supplies lacrimal gland, conjunctiva and lateral part of upper eyelid.

**2. Frontal nerve.** It divides into two branches in the middle of orbit (Fig. 1.8):



**Fig. 1.7** Schematic drawing showing orbital veins draining blood from the ocular tissues

■ **Supratrochlear nerve** supplies the conjunctiva, middle part of upper eyelid, and skin of the forehead above the root of nose.

■ **Supraorbital nerve** supplies the conjunctiva, central part of upper eyelid, and part of the skin of forehead and scalp.

3. **Nasociliary nerve**. It has following branches (Fig. 1.8):

■ **Long ciliary nerves**, two in number, pierce the sclera on either side of optic nerve, run forward between sclera and choroid and supply sensory nerves to the ciliary body, iris and cornea.

■ **Communicating branches to ciliary ganglion** form its sensory root and their fibres pass along the short ciliary nerves, to supply the ciliary body, iris and cornea.

■ **Posterior ethmoidal nerve** supplies the ethmoidal and sphenoidal air sinuses.

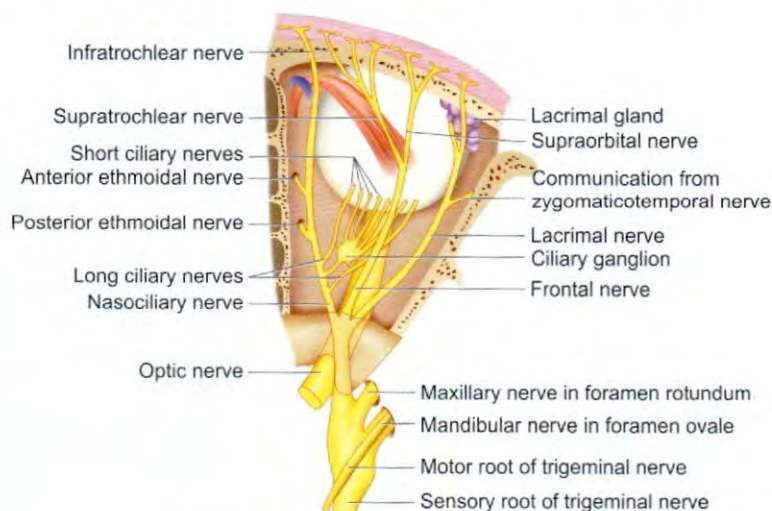
■ **Anterior ethmoidal nerve** is a terminal branch of nasociliary nerve which leaves the orbit through the anterior ethmoidal foramen.

■ **Infratrochlear nerve** is the other terminal branch of nasociliary nerve. It runs forward and supplies the conjunctiva, lacrimal sac, caruncle, and medial part of the eyelids.

#### Motor nerves

• **3rd, 4th and 6th cranial nerves** supply the extraocular muscles, and

• **7th cranial nerve branches** supply the orbicularis oculi muscle of the eyelids.



**Fig. 1.8** Ophthalmic nerve and its branches



**Autonomic nerves****Parasympathetic nerves**

**Edinger-Westphal nucleus**, located in midbrain (Fig. 1.9), sends:

- **Preganglionic fibres** through the **third cranial nerve** to ciliary ganglion and accessory ganglion.
- **Postganglionic nerve fibres** from ciliary ganglion travel along the short ciliary nerves to supply the **sphincter pupillae muscle** and postganglionic fibres from the accessory ganglion supply the **ciliary muscle**.

**Salivatory nucleus**, located in pons (Fig. 1.10), sends:

- **Preganglionic fibres** through **facial nerve** to the sphenopalatine ganglion.

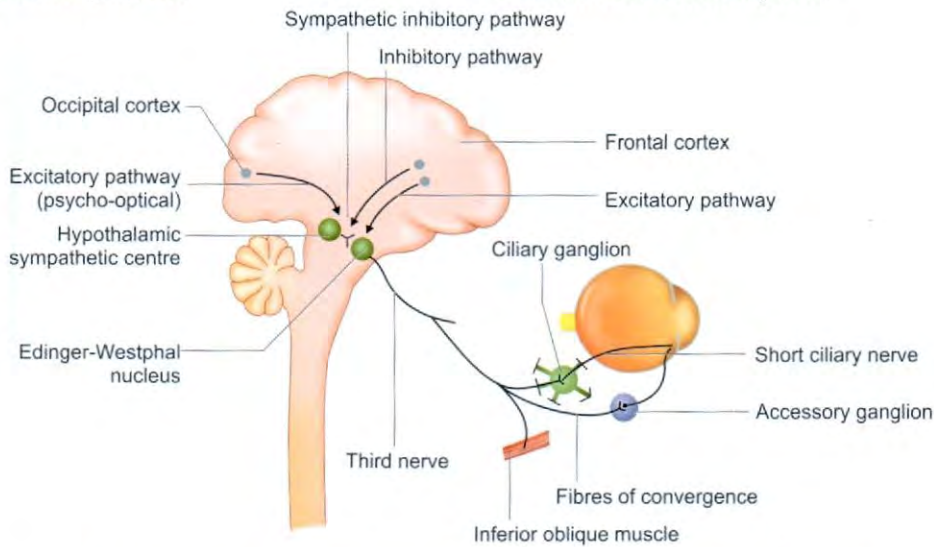
- **Postganglionic secretomotor fibres** finally reach the **lacrimal gland** through the lacrimal nerve.

**Ciliary ganglion**

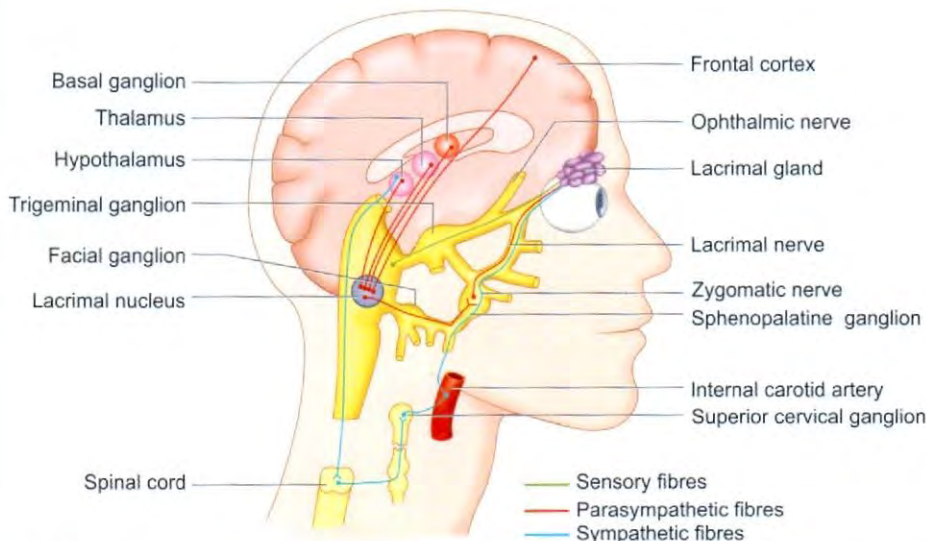
Ciliary ganglion is a **peripheral parasympathetic ganglion** placed in the course of **oculomotor nerve** near the **apex of orbit** (Fig. 1.9).

**Roots of ciliary ganglion** include:

- **Sensory root**, as described above, comes from the **nasociliary nerve**.
- **Sympathetic root of ciliary ganglion** comes from internal carotid plexus. These fibres also do not relay here and pass along the short ciliary nerves to supply the blood vessels of the eyeball.



**Fig. 1.9** Course of parasympathetic nerve supply from Edinger-Westphal nucleus to ciliary muscle and sphincter pupillae muscle



**Fig. 1.10** Course of parasympathetic nerve supply from lacrimal nucleus to the lacrimal gland

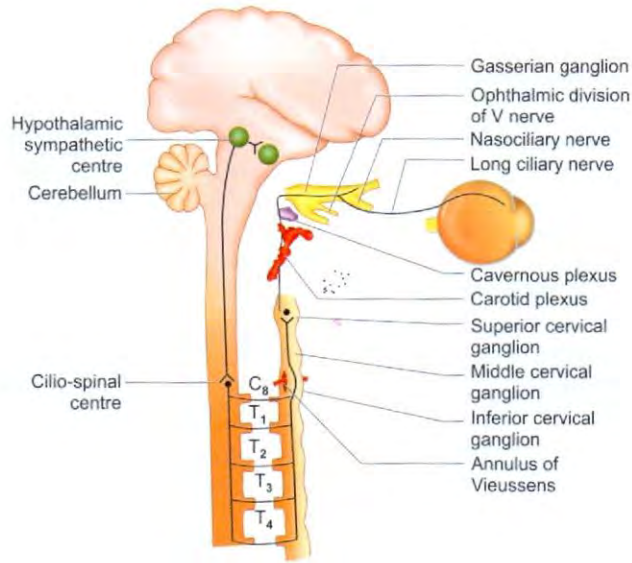


Fig. 1.11 Course of ocular sympathetic nerves

■ **Parasympathetic root of ciliary ganglion** arises from the nerve to inferior oblique muscle and carries the preganglionic fibres from the Edinger-Westphal nucleus. These fibres relay here and postganglionic fibres pass through the short ciliary nerves and supply the sphincter pupillae and ciliary muscle.

**Short ciliary nerves**, branches of ciliary ganglion, about 10 in number, pierce the sclera around the optic nerve and run forward between the sclera and choroid and reach the ciliary muscles where the sensory fibres form a plexus and supply it.

#### Sympathetic nerves

**Preganglionic fibres** arise from the ciliospinal center of Budge (located in inferior mediolateral cell column of spinal cord at C8, T1 and T2 level) and go to cervical sympathetic chain to relay in the superior cervical ganglion (Fig. 1.11).

**Postganglionic fibres** from the superior cervical ganglion enter the skull with the internal carotid plexuses and supply following structures:

- **Orbital arteries** receive vasomotor fibres through the plexuses around ophthalmic artery.
- **Dilator pupillae muscle** is supplied by the sympathetic fibres from the carotid plexuses which enter the Gasserian ganglion of 5th cranial nerve and ultimately reach the dilator pupillae muscle along with long ciliary branches of nasociliary nerve (branch of ophthalmic division of 5th nerve).
- **Blood vessels inside the eyeball** are supplied by the fibres from the internal carotid plexuses which join the ciliary ganglion as its sympathetic root and without relaying here these fibres enter inside the eyeball along

the short ciliary nerves. These fibres may also supply the dilator pupillae muscle when it is not supplied by the usual course via the nasociliary nerve.

■ **Palpebral (Muller's) muscle of the eyelid** is supplied by the postganglionic fibres forming cavernous plexuses reaching the muscle through the branches of oculomotor (3rd cranial) nerve.

#### LYMPHATIC DRAINAGE

Lymphatics draining the eyelids and conjunctival tissues are arranged in two groups (Fig. 1.12):

- **Medial group of lymphatics** drain into the submandibular lymph nodes, and
- **Lateral group of lymphatics** drain into the subauricular lymph nodes.

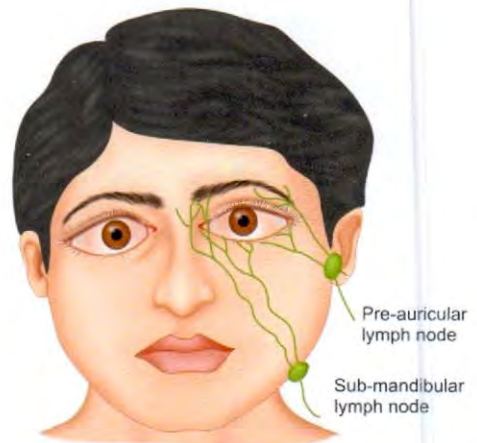


Fig. 1.12 Lymphatic drainage of eyelids, conjunctiva and orbital tissues



## DEVELOPMENT OF EYE

Development of the eyeballs can be considered to commence around **day 22** when the embryo has eight pairs of somites and is around 2 mm in length. Eyeball and its related structures are derived from the following primordia:

- **Optic vesicle**, an outgrowth from prosencephalon (a neuroectodermal structure),
- **Lens placode**, a specialized area of surface ectoderm, and the surrounding surface ectoderm,
- **Mesenchyme** surrounding the optic vesicle, and
- **Visceral mesoderm** of maxillary processes.

Before going into the development of individual structure, it will be helpful to understand the formation of optic vesicle, lens placode, optic cup and changes in the surrounding mesenchyme, which play a major role in the development of the eye and its related structures.

### FORMATION OF OPTIC VESICLE AND OPTIC STALK

The **area of neural plate** (Fig. 1.13A) which forms the prosencephalon develops a linear thickened area on either side (Fig. 1.13B), which soon becomes depressed to form the **optic sulcus** (Fig. 1.13C). Meanwhile the neural plate gets converted into **prosencephalic vesicle**. As the optic sulcus deepens, the walls of the prosencephalon overlying the sulcus bulge out to form the **optic vesicle** (Figs 1.13D, E and F). The proximal part of the optic vesicle becomes constricted and elongated to form the **optic stalk** (Figs 1.13G and H).

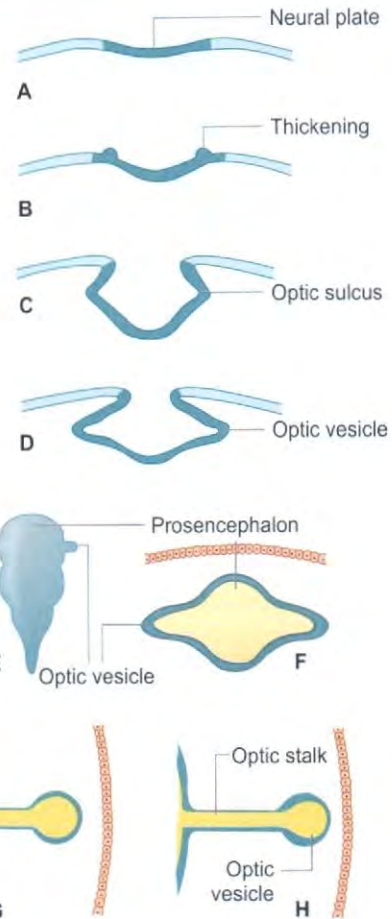


Fig. 1.13 Formation of the optic vesicle and optic stalk

### FORMATION OF LENS VESICLE

The **optic vesicle grows laterally** and comes in contact with the surface ectoderm. The surface ectoderm, overlying the optic vesicle becomes thickened to form the **lens placode** (Fig. 1.14A) which **sinks below the surface** and is converted into the **lens vesicle** (Figs 1.14B and C). It is soon **separated** from the surface ectoderm at 33rd day of gestation (Fig. 1.14D).

### FORMATION OF OPTIC CUP

The **optic vesicle is converted into a double-layered optic cup**. It appears from Fig. 1.15 that this has happened because the developing lens has invaginated itself into the optic vesicle. In fact **conversion of the optic vesicle to the optic cup** is due to **differential growth of the walls** of the vesicle. The **margins of optic cup grow over the upper and lateral**

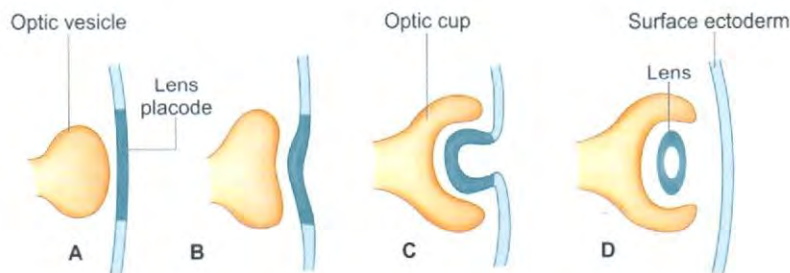


Fig. 1.14 Formation of lens vesicle and optic cup





Fig. 1.15 Optic cup and stalk seen from below to show the choroidal fissure

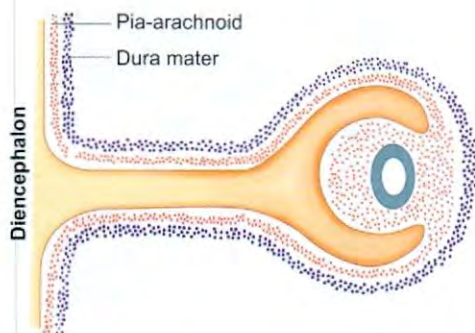


Fig. 1.16 Developing optic cup surrounded by mesenchyme

sides of the lens to enclose it. However, such a growth does not take place over the inferior part of the lens, and therefore, the walls of the cup show deficiency in this part. This deficiency extends to some distance along the inferior surface of the optic stalk and is called the choroidal or fetal fissure (Fig. 1.15).

### CHANGES IN THE ASSOCIATED MESENCHYME

The developing neural tube (from which central nervous system develops) is surrounded by mesenchyme, which subsequently condenses to form meninges. An extension of this mesenchyme also covers the optic vesicle. Later, this mesenchyme differentiates to form a superficial fibrous layer (corresponding to dura) and a deeper vascular layer (corresponding to pia-arachnoid) (Fig. 1.16).

Fibrous layer of mesenchyme forms (Fig. 1.17):

- Corneal stroma in the anterior part, and
  - Sclera and extraocular muscles in the posterior part
- Vascular layer of mesenchyme forms (Fig. 1.17):

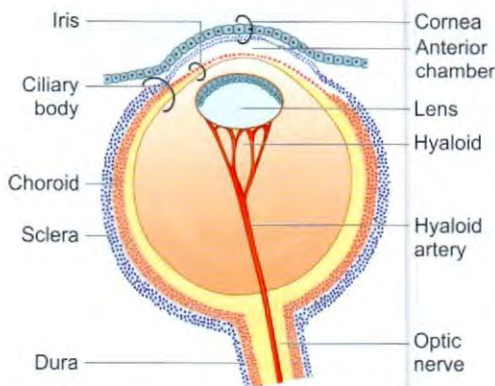


Fig. 1.17 Derivation of various structures of the eyeball

- Hyaloid system of vessels. With the formation of optic cup, part of the inner vascular layer of mesenchyme is carried into the cup through the choroidal fissure. With the closure of this fissure, the portion of mesenchyme which has made its way into the eye is cut off from the surrounding mesenchyme and gives rise to the hyaloid system of the vessels (Fig. 1.17).
- Iidopupillary membrane, is formed from the anterior part of vascular layer of mesenchyme. In the peripheral region, it attaches to the anterior part of the optic cup to form the iris. The central part of this lamina is pupillary membrane which also forms the tunica vasculosa lentis (Fig. 1.17).
- Choroid and ciliary body are formed from the posterior part of the vascular layer of mesenchyme.

### DEVELOPMENT OF VARIOUS OCULAR STRUCTURES

#### Retina

Retina is developed from the two walls of the optic cup, namely: Nervous retina from the inner wall, and Pigment epithelium from the outer wall (Fig. 1.18).

Nervous retina. The inner wall of the optic cup is a single-layered epithelium. It divides into several layers of cells which differentiate into the following three layers (as also occurs in neural tube):

- Matrix cell layer. Cells of this layer form the rods and cones.
- Mantle layer. Cells of this layer form the bipolar cells, ganglion cells, other neurons of retina and the supporting tissue.
- Marginal layer. This layer forms the ganglion cells, axons of which form the nerve fibre layer.

Pigment epithelial layer. Cells of the outer wall of the optic cup become pigmented. Its posterior part forms the pigmented epithelium of retina and the anterior part continues forward in ciliary body and iris as their anterior pigmented epithelium.



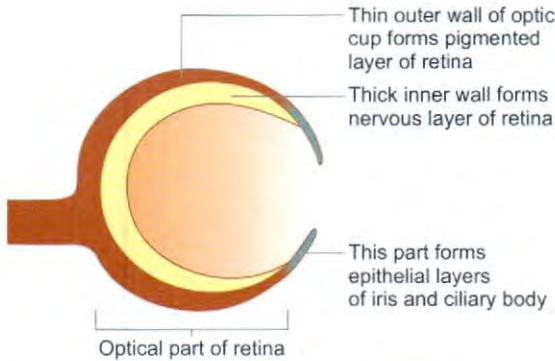


Fig. 1.18 Development of the retina

### Optic nerve

Optic nerve develops in the framework of optic stalk as below:

- **Optic nerve fibres** develop from the nerve fibre layer of retina which grow into the optic stalk by passing through the choroidal fissure (by 6th week of gestation) and pass posteriorly to the brain.
- **Glial system of the nerve** develops from the neuroectodermal cells forming the outer wall of the optic stalk. Glial septa surrounding the nerve bundles are composed of astroglia that differentiate from the cells of the inner wall of the optic stalk.
- **Sheaths of optic nerve** are formed from the layers of mesenchyme like meninges of other parts of central nervous system.
- **Myelination of nerve fibres** takes place from brain distally and reaches the lamina cribrosa just before birth and stops there. In some cases, this extends up to around the optic disc and presents as congenital opaque nerve fibres. These develop after birth.

### Crystalline lens

The crystalline lens is developed from the surface ectoderm as below:

**Lens placode and lens vesicle formation** (See page 9 and Fig. 1.14).

**Primary lens fibres.** The cells of posterior wall of lens vesicle elongate rapidly to form the primary lens fibres which obliterate the cavity of lens vesicle. The primary lens fibres are formed upto 3rd month of gestation and are preserved as the compact core of lens, known as **embryonic nucleus** (Fig. 1.19).

**Secondary lens fibres** are formed from equatorial cells of anterior epithelium which remain active throughout life. Since the secondary lens fibres are laid down concentrically, the lens on section has a laminated appearance. Depending upon the period of development, the secondary lens fibres are named as below:

- **Fetal nucleus** (3rd to 8th month),
- **Infantile nucleus** (last weeks of fetal life to puberty),

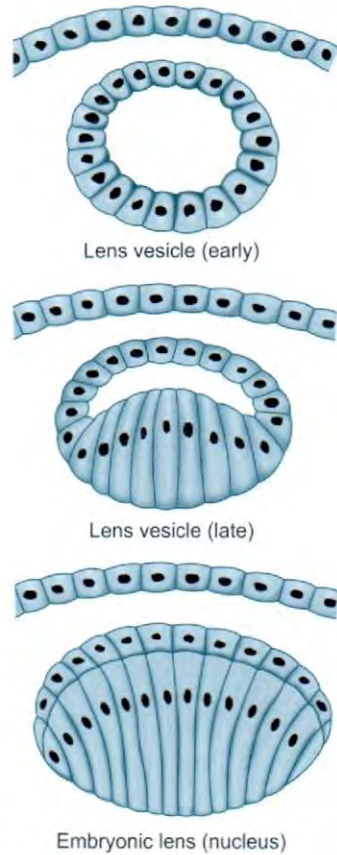


Fig. 1.19 Development of the crystalline lens

- **Adult nucleus** (after puberty), and
- **Cortex** (superficial lens fibres of adult lens).

**Lens capsule** is a true basement membrane produced by the lens epithelium on its external aspect.

### Cornea

1. **Epithelium** is formed from the surface ectoderm.
2. **Other layers** viz. endothelium, Descemet's membrane, pre-Descemet's membrane, stroma and Bowman's layer are derived from the fibrous layer of mesenchyme lying anterior to the optic cup (Fig. 1.17).

### Sclera

Sclera is developed from the fibrous layer of mesenchyme surrounding the optic cup (corresponding to dura of CNS) (Fig. 1.17).

### Choroid

Choroid is derived from the inner vascular layer of mesenchyme that surrounds the optic cup (Fig. 1.17).

### Ciliary body

- The two layers of epithelium of ciliary body develop from the anterior part of the two layers of optic cup (neuroectodermal).



■ *Stroma of ciliary body, ciliary muscle and blood vessels* are developed from the vascular layer of mesenchyme surrounding the optic cup (Fig. 1.17).

### Iris

- *Both layers of epithelium* are derived from the marginal region of optic cup (neuroectodermal) (Fig. 1.17).
- *Sphincter and dilator pupillae* muscles are derived from the anterior epithelium (neuroectodermal).
- *Stroma and blood vessels of the iris* develop from the vascular mesenchyme present anterior to the optic cup.

### Vitreous

1. *Primary or primitive vitreous* is mesenchymal in origin and is a vascular structure having the hyaloid system of vessels.
2. *Secondary or definitive or vitreous proper* is secreted by neuroectoderm of optic cup. This is an avascular structure. When this vitreous fills the cavity, primitive vitreous with hyaloid vessels is pushed anteriorly and ultimately disappears.
3. *Tertiary vitreous* is developed from neuroectoderm in the ciliary region and is represented by the ciliary zonules.

### Eyelids

Eyelids are formed by reduplication of surface ectoderm above and below the cornea (Fig. 1.20). The folds enlarge and their margins meet and fuse with each other. The lids cut off a space called the conjunctival sac. The folds thus formed contain some mesoderm which would form the muscles of the lid and the tarsal plate. The lids separate after the seventh month of intrauterine life.

- *Tarsal glands* are formed by ingrowth of a regular row of solid columns of ectodermal cells from the lid margins.
- *Cilia* develop as epithelial buds from lid margins.

### Conjunctiva

Conjunctiva develops from the ectoderm lining the lids and covering the globe (Fig. 1.20).

■ *Conjunctival glands* develop as growth of the basal cells of upper conjunctival fornix. Fewer glands develop from the lower fornix.

### The lacrimal apparatus

■ *Lacrimal gland* develops from about 8 cuneiform epithelial buds which grow by the end of 2nd month of fetal life from the superolateral side of the conjunctival sac (Fig. 1.20).

■ *Lacrimal sac, nasolacrimal duct and canaliculi* develop from the ectoderm of nasolacrimal furrow



Fig. 1.20 Development of the eyelids, conjunctiva and lacrimal gland

which extends from the medial angle of eye to the region of developing mouth. The ectoderm gets buried to form a solid cord which is later canalized. The upper part forms the lacrimal sac. The nasolacrimal duct is derived from the lower part as it forms a secondary connection with the nasal cavity. The ectodermal buds arise from the medial margins of eyelids which are later canalized to form the canaliculi.

### Extraocular muscles

All the extraocular muscles develop in a closely associated manner by mesodermally derived mesenchymal condensation. This probably corresponds to preotic myotomes, hence the triple nerve supply (III, IV and VI cranial nerves).

## STRUCTURES DERIVED FROM THE EMBRYONIC LAYERS

Based on the above description, the various structures derived from the embryonic layers are given below:

### 1. Surface ectoderm

- The crystalline lens
- Epithelium of the cornea



- Epithelium of the conjunctiva
- Lacrimal gland
- Epithelium of eyelids and its derivatives viz., cilia, tarsal glands and conjunctival glands
- Epithelium lining the lacrimal apparatus.

## 2. Neural ectoderm

- Retina with its pigment epithelium
- Epithelial layers of ciliary body
- Epithelial layers of iris
- Sphincter and dilator pupillae muscles
- Optic nerve (neuroglia and nervous elements only)
- Melanocytes
- Secondary vitreous
- Ciliary zonules (tertiary vitreous).

## 3. Associated paraxial mesenchyme

- Blood vessels of choroid, iris, ciliary vessels, central retinal artery, other vessels
- Primary vitreous
- Substantia propria, Descemet's membrane and endothelium of cornea
- The sclera
- Stroma of iris
- Ciliary muscle
- Sheaths of optic nerve
- Extraocular muscles
- Fat, ligaments and other connective tissue structures of the orbit
- Upper and medial walls of the orbit
- Connective tissue of the upper eyelid.

## 4. Visceral mesoderm of maxillary process below the eye

- Lower and lateral walls of orbit
- Connective tissue of the lower eyelid.

## IMPORTANT MILESTONES IN THE DEVELOPMENT OF EYE

### Embryonic and fetal period

| Stage of growth  | Development                                                           |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2.6 mm (3 weeks) | <u>Optic pits</u> appear on either side of cephalic end of forebrain. |
| 3.5 mm (4 weeks) | <u>Primary optic vesicle</u> invaginates.                             |
| 5.5 to 6 mm      | Development of <u>embryonic fissure</u> .                             |
| 10 mm (6 weeks)  | <u>Retinal layers</u> differentiate, lens vesicle formed.             |
| 20 mm (9 weeks)  | <u>Sclera, cornea and extra ocular muscles</u> differentiate.         |
| 25 mm (10 weeks) | <u>Lumen of optic nerve</u> obliterated.                              |

Contd...

|                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 50 mm (3 months)       | Optic tracts completed, <u>pars ciliaris retina</u> grows forwards, <u>pars iridica</u> retina grows forward and lid folds develop.                                                                             |
| 60 mm (4 months)       | <u>Hyaloid vessels</u> atrophy, iris sphincter, dilator and ciliary muscles develop.                                                                                                                            |
| 230-265 mm (8th month) | Fetal nucleus of lens is complete, <u>all layers of retina</u> nearly developed and <u>macula</u> starts differentiation.                                                                                       |
| 265-300 mm (9th month) | Except macula, retina is fully developed, <u>infantile nucleus of lens</u> begins to appear, <u>pupillary membrane</u> and <u>hyaloid vessels</u> disappear. Medulation of optic nerve reaches lamina cribrosa. |

### Eye at birth

- Anteroposterior diameter of the eyeball is about 16.5 mm (70% of adult size which is attained by 7-8 years).
- Corneal diameter is about 10 mm. Adult size (11.7 mm) is attained by 2 years of age.
- Anterior chamber is shallow and angle is narrow.
- Pupil is small and does not dilate fully.
- Lens is spherical at birth. Infantile nucleus is present.
- Retina. Apart from macular area the retina is fully differentiated. Macula differentiates 4-6 months after birth.
- Myelination of optic nerve fibres has reached the lamina cribrosa.
- Refractive status. Newborn is usually hypermetropic by +2 to +3 D.
- Orbit is more divergent (50°) as compared to adult (45°).
- Lacrimal gland is still underdeveloped and tears are not secreted.

### Postnatal period

- Fixation starts developing in first month and is completed in 6 months.
- Macula is fully developed by 4-6 months.
- Fusional reflexes, stereopsis and accommodation are well developed by 4-6 months.
- Cornea attains normal adult diameter by 2 years of age.
- Lens grows throughout life.

Contd...



# 2

## Physiology of Eye and Vision

### INTRODUCTION

#### MAINTENANCE OF CLEAR OCULAR MEDIA

- Physiology of tears
- Physiology of cornea
- Physiology of crystalline lens
- Physiology of aqueous humour and maintenance of intraocular pressure

#### PHYSIOLOGY OF VISION

- Phototransduction
- Processing and transmission of visual impulse
- Visual perception

### ELECTROPHYSIOLOGICAL TESTS

- Electroretinography
- Electrooculography
- Visual evoked potential

### PHYSIOLOGY OF OCULAR MOTILITY AND BINOCULAR VISION

- Physiology of ocular motility
- Physiology of binocular single vision

### INTRODUCTION

Sense of vision is a complex function of the two eyes and their central connections. The physiological activities involved in the normal functioning of the eyes are:

- Maintenance of clear ocular media,
- Maintenance of normal intraocular pressure,
- The image forming mechanism,
- Physiology of vision,
- Physiology of pupil (See page 327),
- Physiology of binocular vision, and
- Physiology of ocular motility.

### MAINTENANCE OF CLEAR OCULAR MEDIA

The main prerequisite for visual function is the maintenance of clear refractive media of the eye. The major factor responsible for transparency of the ocular media is their avascularity. The structures forming refractive media of the eye from anterior to posterior are:

- Tear film,
- Cornea,
- Aqueous humour,
- Crystalline lens, and
- Vitreous humour.

#### Physiology of tears

Tear film plays a vital role in maintaining the transparency of cornea. The physiological aspects

of the tears and tear film are described in the chapter 16: Diseases of the Lacrimal Apparatus (See page 404).

#### Physiology of cornea

The cornea forms the main refractive medium of the eye. Physiological aspects in relation to cornea include:

- Transparency of cornea,
- Nutrition and metabolism of cornea,
- Permeability of cornea, and
- Corneal wound healing.

(For details See page 100).

#### Physiology of crystalline lens

The crystalline lens is a transparent structure playing main role in the focussing mechanism for vision. Its physiological aspects include:

- Lens transparency (See page 186),
- Metabolic activities of the lens (See page 186), and
- Accommodation (See page 45).

#### Physiology of aqueous humour and maintenance of intraocular pressure

The aqueous humour is a clear watery fluid filling the anterior chamber (0.25 ml) and the posterior chamber (0.06 ml) of the eyeball. In addition to its role in maintaining a proper intraocular pressure it also plays an important metabolic role by providing substrates and removing metabolites from the avascular cornea and the crystalline lens. For details See pages 227-231.



## PHYSIOLOGY OF VISION

Physiology of vision is a complex phenomenon which is still poorly understood. The main mechanisms involved in physiology of vision are:

- **Initiation of vision (Phototransduction)**, a function of photoreceptors (rods and cones),
- **Processing and transmission of visual sensation**, a function of image processing cells of retina and visual pathway, and
- **Visual perception**, a function of visual cortex and related areas of cerebral cortex.

### PHOTOTRANSDUCTION

The rods and cones serve as sensory nerve endings for visual sensation. Light falling upon the retina causes photochemical changes which in turn trigger a cascade of biochemical reactions that result in generation of electrical changes. Photochemical changes occurring in the rods and cones are essentially similar but the changes in rod pigment (rhodopsin or visual purple) have been studied in more detail. This whole phenomenon of **conversion of light energy into nerve impulse** is known as **phototransduction**.

#### Photochemical changes

The photochemical changes include:

**Rhodopsin bleaching.** Rhodopsin refers to the visual pigment present in the **rods**—the receptors for night (**scotopic**) vision. Its maximum absorption spectrum is around **500 nm**. Rhodopsin consists of a colourless protein called **opsin** coupled with a carotenoid called **retinine** (**Vitamin A aldehyde** or **11-cis-retinal**). Light falling on the rods converts **11-cis-retinol** component of rhodopsin into **11-cis-retinal** through various stages (Fig. 2.1). The **all-trans-retinal** so formed is soon separated from the opsin (Fig. 2.2). This process of separation is called **photodecomposition** and the rhodopsin is said to be bleached by the action of light.

**Rhodopsin regeneration.** The **11-cis-retinal** is regenerated from the **all-trans-retinal** separated from the opsin (as described above) and **vitamin-A (retinal)** supplied from the blood. The **11-cis-retinal** then reunites with opsin in the rod outer segment to form the rhodopsin. This whole process is called **rhodopsin regeneration** (Fig. 2.1). Thus, the **bleaching** of the rhodopsin occurs **under the influence of light**, whereas the **regeneration process is independent of light**, proceeding equally well in light and darkness.

**Visual cycle.** In the retina of living animals, under constant light stimulation, a steady state must exist under which the rate at which the photochemicals are bleached is equal to the rate at which they

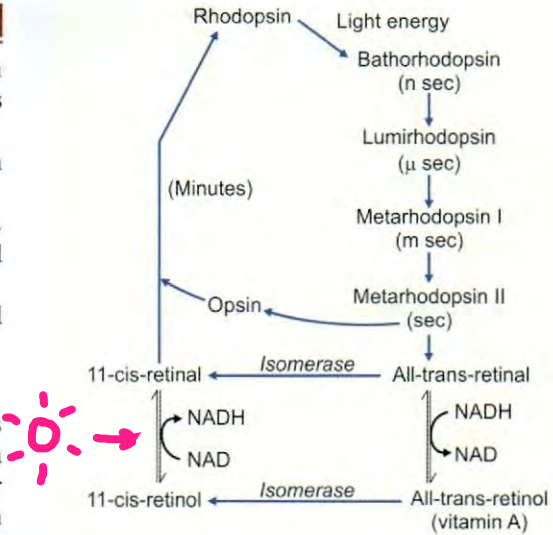


Fig. 2.1 Light-induced changes in rhodopsin

are regenerated. This **equilibrium between the photodecomposition and regeneration** of visual pigments is referred to as **visual cycle** (Fig. 2.2).

#### Electrical changes

The activated rhodopsin, following exposure to light, triggers a cascade of complex biochemical reactions which ultimately result in the generation of **receptor potential** in the photoreceptors. In this way, the light energy is converted into electrical energy which is further processed and transmitted via visual pathway.

### PROCESSING AND TRANSMISSION OF VISUAL IMPULSE

The receptor potential generated in the photoreceptors is transmitted by **electrotonic conduction** (i.e. **direct flow of electric current**, and not as action potential) to other cells of the retina viz. **horizontal cells**, **amacrine cells**, and **ganglion cells**. However, the ganglion

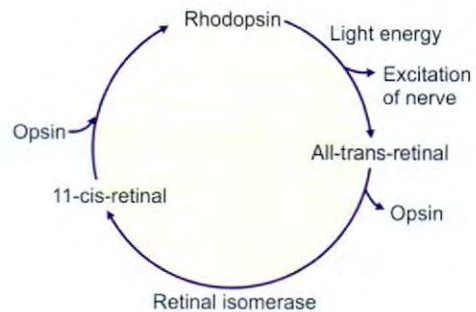


Fig. 2.2 Visual cycle



cells **transmit the visual signals by means of action potential** to the neurons of lateral geniculate body and the later to the primary visual cortex.

The phenomenon of processing of visual impulse is very complicated. It is now clear that visual image is deciphered and **analysed in both serial and parallel fashion**.

**Serial processing.** The successive cells in the visual pathway starting from the photoreceptors to the cells of lateral geniculate body are **involved in increasingly complex analysis of image**. This is called sequential or serial processing of visual information.

**Parallel processing.** **Two kinds of cells** can be distinguished in the visual pathway starting from the ganglion cells of retina including neurons of the lateral geniculate body, striate cortex, and extrastriate cortex. These are **large cells** (magnocellular or M cells) and **small cells** (parvocellular or P cells). There are **striking differences between the sensitivity** of M and P cells to stimulus features (Table 2.1).

The visual pathway is now being considered to be made of two lanes: one made of the large cells is called **magnocellular pathway** and the other of small cells is called **parvocellular pathway**. These can be compared to **two-lanes of a road**. The M pathway and P pathway are involved in the **parallel processing** of the image, i.e. **analysis of different features** of the image.

## VISUAL PERCEPTION

It is a complex integration of light sense, form sense, sense of contrast and colour sense. The receptive field organisation of the retina and visual cortex are used to encode this information about a visual image.

### 1. Light sense

It is **awareness of the light**. The minimum brightness required to evoke a sensation of light is called the **light minimum**. It should be **measured when the eye is dark adapted for at least 20-30 minutes**.

The human eye in its ordinary use throughout the day is capable of functioning normally over

an exceedingly wide range of illumination by a highly complex phenomenon termed as the **visual adaptation**. The process of visual adaptation primarily involves:

- **Dark adaptation** (adjustment in dim illumination), and
- **Light adaptation** (adjustment to bright illumination).

### Dark adaptation

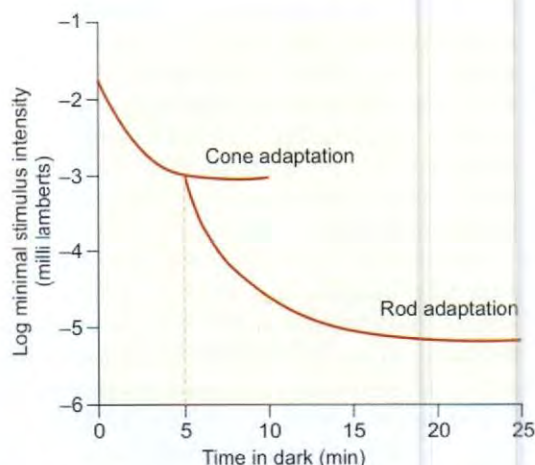
It is the ability of the eye to adapt itself to decreasing illumination. When one goes from bright sunshine into a dimly-lit room, one cannot perceive the objects in the room until some time has elapsed. During this period, eye is adapting to low illumination. The time taken to see in dim illumination is called **'dark adaptation time'**.

The **rods are much more sensitive** to low illumination than the cones. Therefore, rods are used more in dim light (**scotopic vision**) and cones in bright light (**photopic vision**).

**Dark adaptation curve** (Fig. 2.3), plotted with illumination of test object in vertical axis and duration of dark adaptation along the horizontal axis, shows that visual threshold falls progressively in the darkened room for about half an hour until a relative constant value is reached. Further, the dark adaptation curve consists of two parts: the initial small curve represents the adaptation of cones and the remainder of the curve represents the adaptation of rods.

■ **When fully dark adapted**, the **retina is about one lakh times more sensitive to light** than when bleached.

■ **Delayed dark adaptation** occurs in diseases of rods, e.g. **retinitis pigmentosa** and **vitamin A deficiency**.



**Fig. 2.3** Dark adaptation curve plotted with illumination of test object in vertical axis and duration of dark adaptation along the horizontal axis

**Table 2.1** Differences in the sensitivity of M and P cells to stimulus features

| Stimulus feature   | Sensitivity |        |
|--------------------|-------------|--------|
|                    | M cell      | P cell |
| Colour contrast    | No          | Yes    |
| Luminance contrast | Higher      | Lower  |
| Spatial frequency  | Lower       | Higher |
| Temporal frequency | Higher      | Lower  |



### Light adaptation

When one passes suddenly from a dim to a brightly lighted environment, the light seems intensely and even uncomfortably bright until the eyes adapt to the increased illumination and the visual threshold rises. The process by means of which retina adapts itself to bright light is called light adaptation. Unlike dark adaptation, the process of light adaptation is very quick and occurs over a period of 5 minutes. Strictly speaking, light adaptation is merely the disappearance of dark adaptation.

### 2. Form sense

It is the ability to discriminate between the shapes of the objects. Cones play a major role in this faculty. Therefore, form sense is most acute at the fovea, where there are maximum number of cones and decreases very rapidly towards the periphery (Fig. 2.4). Visual acuity recorded by Snellen's test chart is a measure of the form sense.

**Components of visual acuity.** In clinical practice, measurement of the threshold of discrimination of two spatially separated targets (a function of the fovea centralis) is termed visual acuity. However, in theory, visual acuity is a highly complex function that consists of the following components.

**Minimum visible.** It is the ability to determine whether an object is present or not.

**Resolution (ordinary visual acuity).** Discrimination of two spatially separated targets is termed resolution. The minimum separation between the two points, which can be discriminated as two, is known as *minimum resolvable*. Measurement of the threshold of discrimination is essentially an assessment of the

function of the fovea centralis and is termed *ordinary visual acuity*. Histologically, the diameter of a cone in the foveal region is 0.004 mm and this, therefore, represents the smallest distance between two cones. It is reported that in order to produce an image of minimum size of 0.004 mm (resolving power of the eye) the object must subtend a visual angle of 1 minute at the nodal point of the eye. It is called the minimum angle of resolution (MAR).

The clinical tests determining visual acuity measure the form sense or reading ability of the eye. Thus, broadly, resolution refers to the ability to identify the spatial characteristics of a test figure. The test targets in these tests may either consist of letters (Snellen's chart) or broken circle (Landolt's ring). More complex targets include gratings and checker board patterns.

**Recognition.** It is that faculty by virtue of which an individual not only discriminates the spatial characteristics of the test pattern but also identifies the patterns with which he has had some experience. Recognition is thus a task involving cognitive components in addition to spatial resolution. For recognition, the individual should be familiar with the set of test figures employed in addition to being able to resolve them. The most common example of recognition phenomenon is identification of faces. The average adult can recognise thousands of faces.

Thus, the form sense is not purely a retinal function, as the perception of its composite form (e.g. letters) is largely psychological.

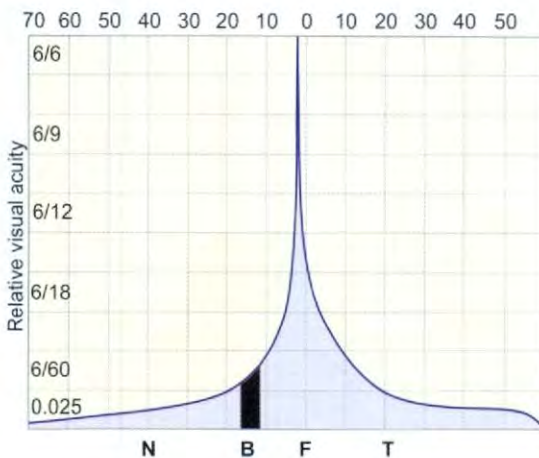
**Minimum discriminable** refers to spatial distinction by an observer when the threshold is much lower than the ordinary acuity. The best example of minimum discriminable is vernier acuity, which refers to the ability to determine whether or not two parallel and straight lines are aligned in the frontal plane.

### 3. Sense of contrast

It is the ability of the eye to perceive slight changes in the luminance between regions which are not separated by definite borders. Loss of contrast sensitivity results in mild fogginess of the vision.

Contrast sensitivity is affected by various factors like age, refractive errors, glaucoma, amblyopia, diabetes, optic nerve diseases and lenticular changes. Further, contrast sensitivity may be impaired even in the presence of normal visual acuity.

**Measurement of contrast sensitivity.** In clinical practice the contrast sensitivity can be measured by using any of the following charts with letters or stripes represented in various shades of grey:



**Fig. 2.4** Visual acuity (form sense) in relation to the regions of the retina: N, nasal retina; B, blind spot; F, foveal region; and T, temporal retina



- Arden gratings,
- Cambridge low-contrast gratings,
- Pelli-Robson contrast sensitivity chart which consists of letters arranged in triplets. The contrast sensitivity decreases from one triplet to next (Fig. 2.5),
- Visitach chart, and
- Functional acuity contrast test (FACT).

#### 4. Colour sense

It is the ability of the eye to discriminate between different colours excited by light of different wavelengths. Colour vision is a function of the cones and thus better appreciated in photopic vision. In dim light (scotopic vision), all colours are seen grey and this phenomenon is called Purkinje shift.

3m

#### Theories of colour vision

The process of colour analysis begins in the retina and is not entirely a function of brain. Many theories have been put forward to explain the colour perception, but two have been particularly influential:

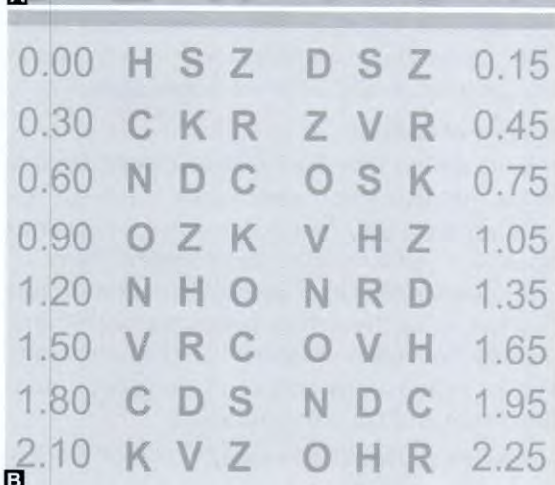


Fig. 2.5 Pelli-Robson contrast sensitivity chart (A) and log contrast sensitivity score of each triplet (B)

**1. Trichromatic theory.** The trichromacy of colour vision was originally suggested by Young and subsequently modified by Helmholtz. Hence it is called *Young-Helmholtz theory*. It postulates the existence of three kinds of cones, each containing a different photopigment which is maximally sensitive to one of the three primary colours viz. red, green and blue. The sensation of any given colour is determined by the relative frequency of the impulse from each of the three cone systems. In other words, a given colour consists of admixture of the three primary colours in different proportions. The correctness of the Young-Helmholtz's trichromacy theory of colour vision has now been demonstrated by the identification and chemical characterisation of each of the three pigments by recombinant DNA technique, each having different absorption spectrum as below (Fig. 2.6):

**Red sensitive cone pigment**, also known as *erythrolabe* or *long wavelength sensitive (LWS)* cone pigment, absorbs maximally in a yellow portion with a peak at 565 nm. But its spectrum extends far enough into the long wavelength to sense red.

**Green sensitive cone pigment**, also known as *chlorolabe* or *medium wavelength sensitive (MWS)* cone pigment, absorbs maximally in the green portion with a peak at 535 nm.

**Blue sensitive cone pigment**, also known as *cyanolabe* or *short wavelength sensitive (SWS)* cone pigment, absorbs maximally in the blueviolet portion of the spectrum with a peak at 440 nm.

Thus, the Young-Helmholtz theory concludes that blue, green and red are primary colours, but the cones with their maximal sensitivity in the yellow portion of the spectrum are at a lower threshold than green.

It has been studied that the gene for human rhodopsin is located on chromosome 3, and the

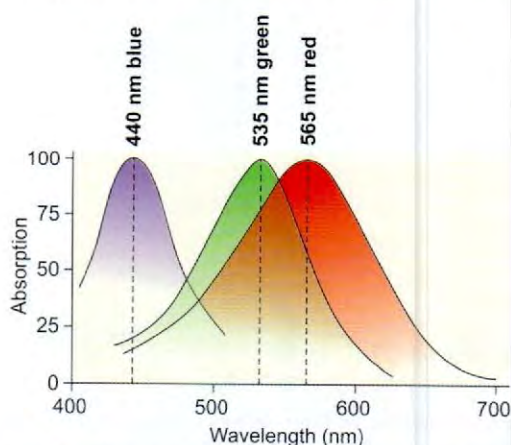


Fig. 2.6 Absorption spectrum of three cone pigments

gene for the blue-sensitive cone is located on chromosome 7. The genes for the red and green sensitive cones are arranged in tandem array on the q arm of the X chromosomes.

**2. Opponent colour theory of Hering.** The opponent colour theory of Hering points out that some colours appear to be 'mutually exclusive'. There is no such colour as 'reddish-green', and such phenomenon can be difficult to explain on the basis of trichromatic theory alone. In fact, it seems that both theories are useful in that:

■ *Colour vision is trichromatic* at the level of photoreceptors, and

■ *Colour opponency occurs at ganglion cell onwards.*

According to opponent colour theory, there are two main types of colour opponent ganglion cells:

■ *Red-green opponent colour cells* use signals from red and green cones to detect red/green contrast within their receptive field.

■ *Blue-yellow opponent colour cells* obtain a yellow signal from the summed output of red and green cones, which is contrasted with the output from blue cones within the receptive field.

### Colour vision tests

See page 343

### ELECTROPHYSIOLOGICAL TESTS

Electrophysiological tests have been evolved to assess the function of rods-cone system and visual pathway. These include:

- *Electroretinography (ERG)* to assess the response of retinal cells to a flash of light.
- *Electrooculography (EOG)* to study the function of retinal pigment epithelium (RPE) and interaction between photoreceptor-RPE junction.
- *Visual evoked potential (VEP)* to access the function of visual pathway.

**Note.** For details of ERG, EOG and VEP See page 518.

## PHYSIOLOGY OF OCULAR MOTILITY AND BINOCULAR VISION

### PHYSIOLOGY OF OCULAR MOTILITY

See page 350.

### PHYSIOLOGY OF BINOCULAR SINGLE VISION

See page 354.





# Section II

---

## Optics and Refraction

### *Section Outline*

3. Elementary and Physiological Optics
4. Errors of Refraction and Accommodation





# 3

## Elementary and Physiological optics

### ELEMENTARY OPTICS

#### Light

- Nature of light
- Properties of light

#### Physical Optics

- Wave optics
- Quantum optics

#### Geometrical Optics

##### Reflection of light

- Laws of reflection
- Mirrors

##### Refraction of light

- Laws of refraction
- Total internal reflection
- Prism
- Lenses

### PHYSIOLOGICAL OPTICS (OPTICS OF THE EYE)

- Eye as an optical instrument
- Schematic eye: cardinal points
- Reduced eye
- Axes and visual angles of the eye
- Optical aberrations of the normal eye

### ELEMENTARY OPTICS

Elementary optics is concerned with:

- **Light**, its nature and properties,
- **Physical optics**, which takes into consideration the basic dual nature of light, and
- **Geometrical optics**, refers to ray optics, which uses the geometry of straight lines.

### LIGHT

Light is a form of energy whose interaction with retina gives the sensation of sight. It is visible portion of the electromagnetic radiation spectrum. It lies between ultraviolet and infrared portions, from 400 nm at the violet end of the spectrum to 700 nm at the red end (Fig. 3.1). The white light consists of seven colours denoted by VIBGYOR (violet, indigo, blue, green, yellow, orange and red).

### Nature of light

Various theories have been put forward from time to time to explain the nature of light. At present, it is universally accepted that like matter, light also has dual nature, i.e. it possesses the characteristics of both the wave and the particle (photon or quantum). The two characters of its dual nature are complementary.

### Properties of light

- Propagated as **electromagnetic wave**, i.e. it does not require medium for its propagation.
- **Speed of light** in free space (vacuum) is  $3 \times 10^8$  m/s (186,000 miles/s). Speed in a medium is less than in the vacuum.
- **Transverse** in nature, so can be **polarized**.
- **Monochromatic light** refers to light of a single wavelength. **White light** is **heterochromatic**.
- **Not deflected by electric and magnetic field**.

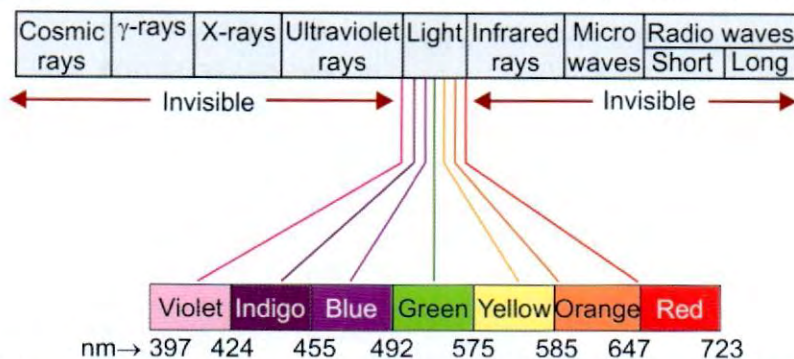


Fig. 3.1 Spectrum of electromagnetic radiation. Note the very small portion occupied by visible light



**Visible light and the eye**

- *Media of the eye* are uniformly permeable to the visible rays between 600 nm and 390 nm.
- **Cornea absorbs rays shorter than 295 nm.** Therefore, rays between 600 nm and 295 nm only can reach the lens.
- **Lens absorbs rays shorter than 350 nm.** Therefore, rays between 600 nm and 350 nm can reach the retina in phakic eyes; and those between 600 nm and 295 nm in aphakic eyes.
- Eye is **most sensitive to yellow-green light** (wave length 550 nm). The sensitivity decreases on both sides of this wavelength, so it is minimum for violet and red light (Fig. 3.2).

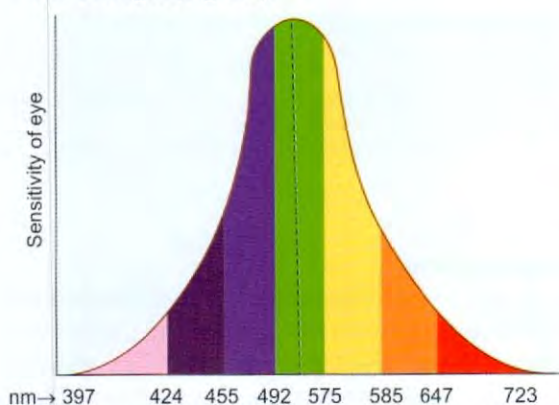


Fig. 3.2 Sensitivity of eye to visible spectrum of light

**PHYSICAL OPTICS**

Physical optics takes into consideration the basic dual nature of light, the waveform and the particle (photon or quantum) form, and thus includes:

- Wave optics, and
- Quantum optics.

**WAVE OPTICS**

**Characteristics:** In its waveform, the light is treated as a wave with following characteristics (Fig. 3.3):

**Wavelength ( $L$ )** of a light wave is defined as the distance between two symmetrical parts of the wave motion.

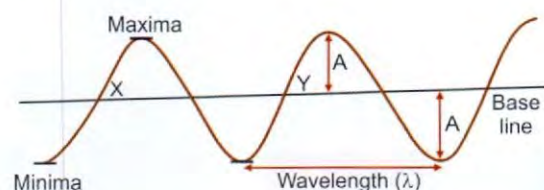


Fig. 3.3 Light as a waveform depicting basic characteristics

**Amplitude ( $A$ )** of light wave is maximum displacement of an imaginary particle on the wave from the base line.

**Phase.** One complete oscillation of light is called a wave. Any portion of the cycle is called a phase.

**Phenomena based on wave optics** are:

- Interference,
- Diffraction, and
- Polarization.

**QUANTUM OPTICS**

Quantum optics treats light as a particle (localized energy pocket) called photon.

**Phenomena based on quantum optics** are:

- Transmission and absorption of light,
- Scattering of light,
- Photoelectric effect,
- LASER (Light amplification of stimulated emission of radiation), and
- Fluorescence.

**GEOMETRICAL OPTICS**

The behaviour of light rays is determined by ray optics. A ray of light is the straight line path followed by light in going from one point to another. The ray optics, therefore, uses the geometry of straight lines to account for the macroscopic phenomena like rectilinear propagation, reflection and refraction. That is why the ray optics is also called geometrical optics.

The knowledge of geometrical optics is essential to understand the optics of eye, errors of refraction and their correction. Therefore, some of its important aspects are described in the following text.

**REFLECTION OF LIGHT**

Reflection of light is a phenomenon of change in the path of light rays without any change in the medium (Fig. 3.4). The light rays falling on a reflecting surface are called incident rays and those reflected by it are reflected rays. A line drawn at right angle to the surface is called the normal.

**LAWS OF REFLECTION**

**Laws of reflection** are (Fig. 3.4):

1. The incident ray, the reflected ray and the normal at the point of incident, all lie in the same plane.
2. The angle of incidence ( $i$ ) is equal to the angle of reflection ( $r$ ).

**MIRRORS**

A smooth and well-polished surface which reflects regularly most of the light falling on it is called a mirror.



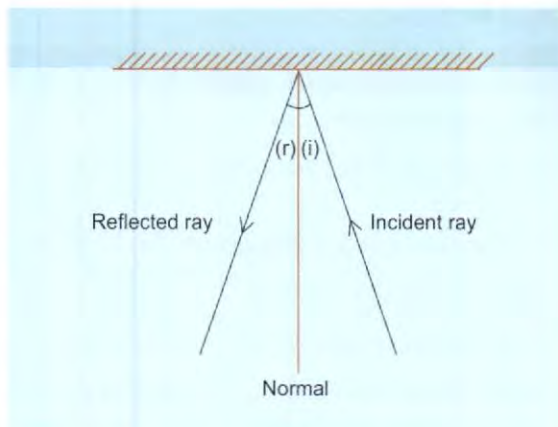


Fig. 3.4 Laws of reflection

### Types of mirrors

Mirrors can be plane or spherical.

#### 1. Plane mirror

Plane mirror, also called as looking mirror, is a plane sheet of glass whose outside is silvered and other side is polished.

**Images formed by plane mirrors.** Features of an image formed by a plane mirror (Fig. 3.5) are:

- **Size of the image is same** as that of object,
- **Same distance behind the mirror as the object is in front,**
- **Laterally inverted,** and
- **Virtual** in nature.

#### 2. Spherical mirror

A spherical mirror (Fig. 3.6) is a part of a hollow sphere whose one side is silvered and the other side is polished. The two types of spherical mirrors are:

- **Concave mirror** (whose reflecting surface is towards the centre of the sphere) and
- **Convex mirror** (whose reflecting surface is away from the centre of the sphere).

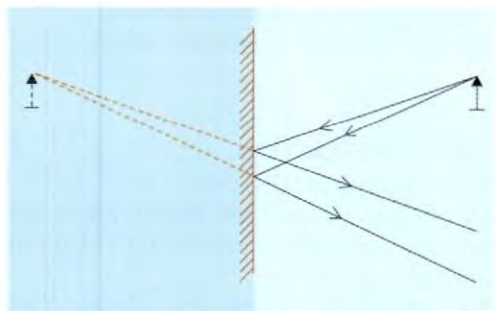


Fig. 3.5 Image formation with a plane mirror

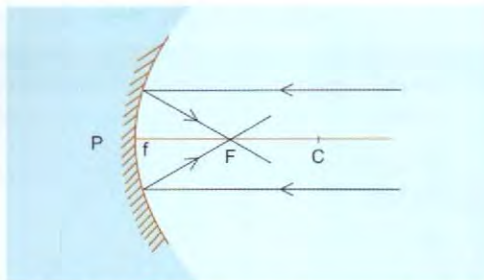


Fig. 3.6 Cardinal points of a spherical mirror

**Cardinal data of a spherical mirror** include (Fig. 3.6):

- **Centre of curvature (C)** and **radius of curvature (R)** of a spherical mirror are the centre and radius, respectively, of the sphere of which the mirror forms a part.
- **Normal** to the spherical mirror at any point is the line joining that point to the centre of curvature (C) of the mirror.
- **Pole of the mirror (P)** is the centre of the reflecting surface.
- **Principal axis** of the mirror is the straight line joining the pole and centre of curvature of spherical mirror and extended on both sides.
- **Principal focus (F)** of a spherical mirror is a point on the principal axis of the mirror at which, ray incident on the mirror in a direction parallel to the principal axis actually meet (in concave mirror) or appear to diverge (as in convex mirror) after reflection from the mirror.
- **Focal length (f)** of the mirror is the distance of principal focus (F) from the pole of the spherical mirror (P).

**Images formed by concave mirror.** As a summary, Table 3.1 gives the position, size and nature of images formed by a concave mirror for different positions of the object and Fig. 3.7 illustrates various situations.

**Image formed by convex mirror.** The image formed by convex mirror, irrespective of the place of object, is always (Fig. 3.8):

- **Virtual,**
- **Erect,** and
- **Diminished in size.**

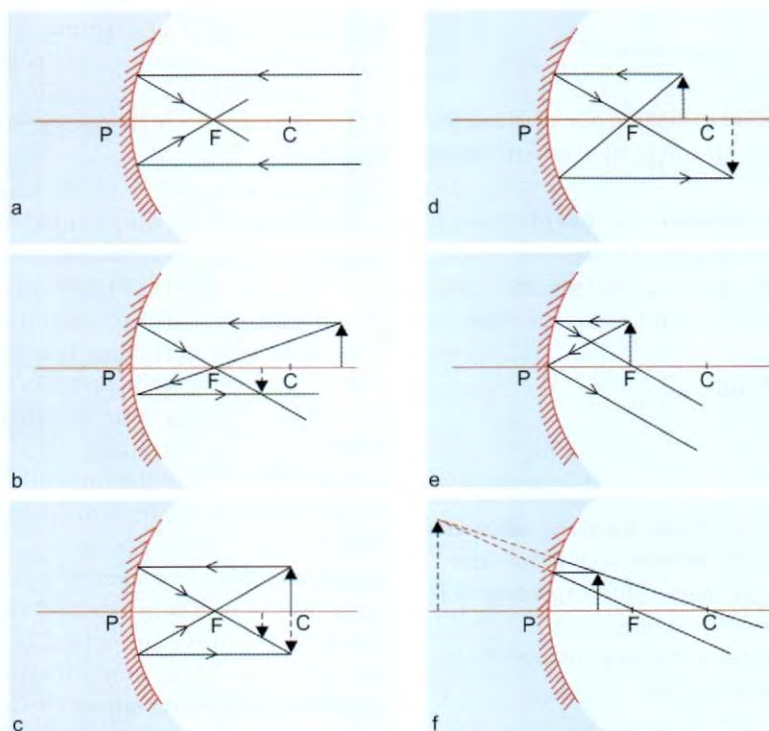
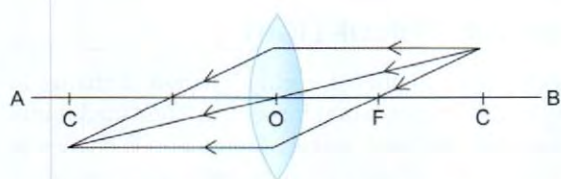
## REFRACTION OF LIGHT

Refraction of light is the phenomenon of change in the path of light, when it goes from one medium to another. The basic cause of refraction is change in the velocity of light in going from one medium to the other.



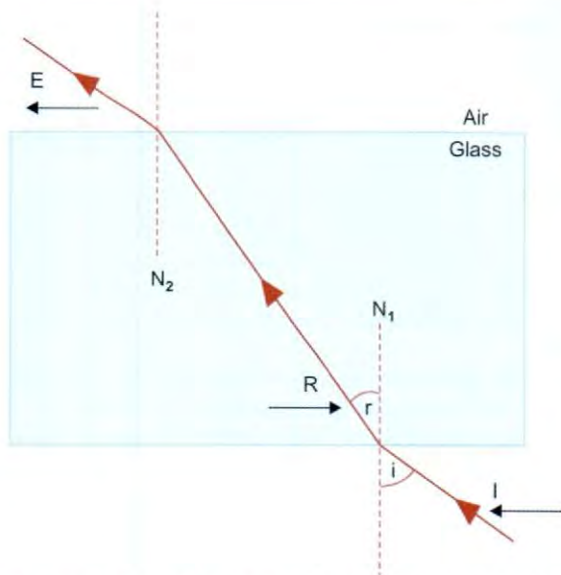
**Table 3.1** Images formed by a concave mirror for different positions of object

| No. | Position of the object                       | Position of the image      | Nature and size of the image           | Ray diagram  |
|-----|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------------------|--------------|
| 1.  | At infinity                                  | At the principal focus (F) | Real, very small and inverted          | Fig. 3.7 (a) |
| 2.  | Beyond the centre of curvature (C)           | Between F & C              | Real, diminished in size, and inverted | Fig. 3.7 (b) |
| 3.  | At C                                         | At C                       | Real, same size as object and inverted | Fig. 3.7 (c) |
| 4.  | Between F & C                                | Beyond C                   | Real, enlarged and inverted            | Fig. 3.7 (d) |
| 5.  | At F                                         | At infinity                | Real, very large and inverted          | Fig. 3.7 (e) |
| 6.  | Between pole of the mirror (P) and focus (F) | Behind the mirror          | Virtual, enlarged and erect            | Fig. 3.7 (f) |

**Fig. 3.7** Images formed by a concave mirror for different positions of the object: (a) at infinity; (b) beyond the centre of curvature; (c) at C; (d) between C and F; (e) at F; (f) between F and P**Fig. 3.8** Image formed by a convex mirror**LAWS OF REFRACTION**

Laws of refraction are (Fig. 3.9):

1. The incident (i) and refracted (r) rays are on opposite sides of the normal (N) and all the three are in the same plane.
2. The ratio of sine of angle of incidence (i) to the sine of angle of refraction (r) is constant for the



**Fig. 3.9** Laws of refraction.  $N_1$  and  $N_2$  (normals);  $I$  (incident ray);  $i$  (angle of incidence);  $R$  (refracted ray, bent towards normal);  $r$  (angle of refraction);  $E$  (emergent ray, bent from the normal)

part of media in contact. This constant is denoted by the letter  $\mu$  and is called 'refractive index' of the medium 2 (in which the refracted ray lies) with respect to medium 1 (in which the incident ray lies), i.e.  $\sin i / \sin r = \mu_2$ . When the medium 1 is air (or vacuum), then  $\mu$  is called the refractive index of the medium 2. This law is also called Snell's law of refraction.

### TOTAL INTERNAL REFLECTION

When a ray of light travelling from an optically-denser medium to an optically-rarer medium is incident at an angle greater than the critical angle of the pair of media in contact, the ray is totally reflected back into the denser medium (Fig. 3.10). This phenomenon is called **total internal reflection**.

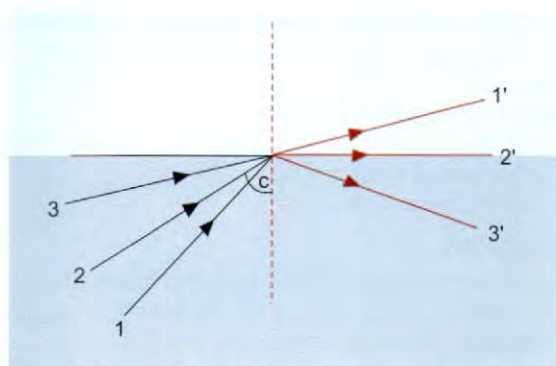
**Critical angle** refers to the angle of incidence in the denser medium, corresponding to which angle of refraction in the rare medium is  $90^\circ$ . It is represented by  $C$  and its value depends on the nature of media in contact.

**Application.** The principle of total internal reflection is utilized in many optical equipments; such as **fibroptic lights**, **applanation tonometer**, and **gonioscope**.

### PRISM

A prism (Fig. 3.11) is a refracting medium, having two plane surfaces, inclined at an angle.

- **Apical angle (refracting angle) of a prism** is the angle between two surfaces ( $x$  in Fig. 3.11).



**Fig. 3.10** Refraction of light (1-1'); path of refracted ray at critical angle,  $C$  (2-2'); and total internal reflection (3-3')

The **greater the angle** formed by two surfaces at the apex, the **stronger is the prismatic effect**.

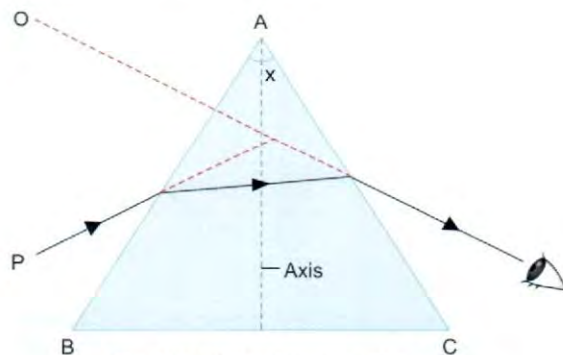
- **Axis of the prism** refers to the line bisecting the optical angle.
- **Base of prism** refers to the surface opposite to the apical angle. When prescribing a prism, the orientation is indicated by the position of the base, e.g. 'base-in' or 'base-out' or 'base-up'.
- **Refraction through the prism** produces displacement of the objects seen through it towards apex (away from the base) (Fig. 3.11).
- **Power of a prism** is measured in prism dioptres. One prism dioptre ( $\Delta$ ) produces displacement of an object by one cm when kept at a distance of one metre. Two prism dioptres of displacement is approximately equal to one degree of arc.
- **Image formed by a prism** is virtual, erect and displaced towards its apex.

### Uses in ophthalmology

3m

#### 1. Diagnostic uses include:

- Objective measurement of angle of deviation (**Prism bar cover test**, **Krimsky test**).
- Measurement of fusional reserve.
- Diagnosis of microtropia.



**Fig. 3.11** Refraction through a prism



**2. Prisms are also used in many ophthalmic equipments** such as gonioscope, keratometer and applanation tonometer.

**3. Therapeutic uses of prisms are:**

- To relieve *diplopia* in patients with decompensated phorias and small tropias.
- For exercises to develop fusional reserve.

## LENSES

A lens is a transparent refracting medium, bounded by two surfaces which form a part of a sphere (spherical lens) or a cylinder (cylindrical or toric lens).

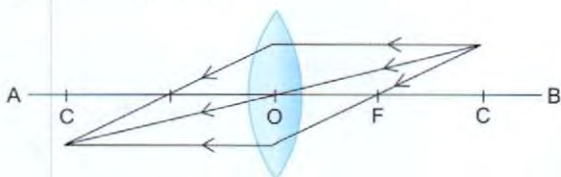
### Cardinal data of a lens

Cardinal data of a lens include (Fig. 3.12):

1. **Centre of curvature (C)** of the spherical lens is the centre of the sphere of which the refracting lens surface is a part.
2. **Radius of curvature** of the spherical lens is the radius of the sphere of which the refracting surface is a part.
3. **Principal axis (AB)** of the lens is the line joining the centres of curvatures of its surfaces.
4. **Optical centre (O)** of the lens corresponds to the nodal point of a thick lens. It is a point on the principal axis in the lens, the rays passing from where do not undergo deviation. In meniscus lenses, the optical centre lies outside the lens.
5. **Principal focus (F)** of a lens is that point on the principal axis where parallel rays of light, after passing through the lens, converge (in convex lens) or appear to diverge (in concave lens).
6. **Focal length (f)** of a lens is the distance between the optical centre and the principal focus.
7. **Power of a lens (P)** is defined as the ability of the lens to converge a beam of light falling on the lens. For a converging (convex) lens the power is taken as positive and for a diverging (concave) lens power is taken as negative. It is measured as reciprocal of the focal length in metres, i.e.  $P = 1/f$ . The unit of power is dioptre (D). One dioptre is the power of a lens of focal length one metre.

### Types of lenses

Lenses are of two types: the spherical and cylindrical (toric or astigmatic).



**Fig. 3.12** Cardinal points of a convex lens: optical centre (O); principal focus (F); centre of curvature (C); and principal axis (AB)

## 1. Spherical lenses

Spherical lenses are bounded by two spherical surfaces and are mainly of two types convex and concave.

**Convex lens** or plus lens is a converging lens. It may be of biconvex, plano-convex or concavo-convex (meniscus) type (Fig. 3.13).

■ **Identification of a convex lens.** (i) The convex lens is thick in the centre and thin at the periphery, (ii) An object held close to the lens, appears magnified, (iii) When a convex lens is moved, the object seen through it moves in the opposite direction to the lens.

■ **Uses of convex lens.** It is used (i) for correction of hypermetropia, aphakia and presbyopia; (ii) in oblique illumination (loupe and lens) examination, in indirect ophthalmoscopy, as a magnifying lens and in many other equipments.

■ **Image formation by a convex lens.** Table 3.2 and Fig. 3.14 provide details about the position, size and the nature of the image formed by a convex lens.

**Concave lens or minus lens** is a diverging lens. It is of three types: biconcave, plano-concave and convexo-concave (meniscus) (Fig. 3.15).

■ **Identification of concave lens.** (i) It is thin at the centre and thick at the periphery. (ii) An object seen through it appears minified. (iii) When the lens is moved, the object seen through it moves in the same direction as the lens.

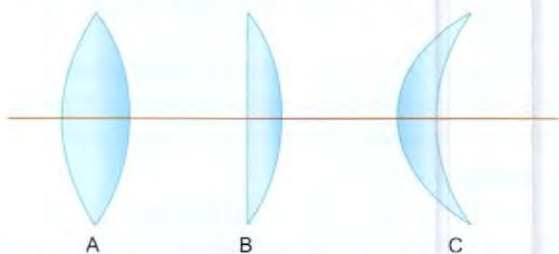
■ **Uses of concave lens.** It is used (i) for correction of myopia; (ii) as Hruby lens for fundus examination with slit-lamp.

■ **Image formation by a concave lens.** A concave lens always produces a virtual, erect image of an object (Fig. 3.16).

## 2. Cylindrical lenses

A cylindrical lens acts only in one axis, i.e. power is incorporated in one axis, the other axis having zero power. A cylindrical lens may be convex (plus) or concave (minus).

- **Convex cylindrical lens** is a segment of a cylinder of glass cut parallel to its axis (Fig. 3.17) refers to a lens cast in a convex cylindrical mould.

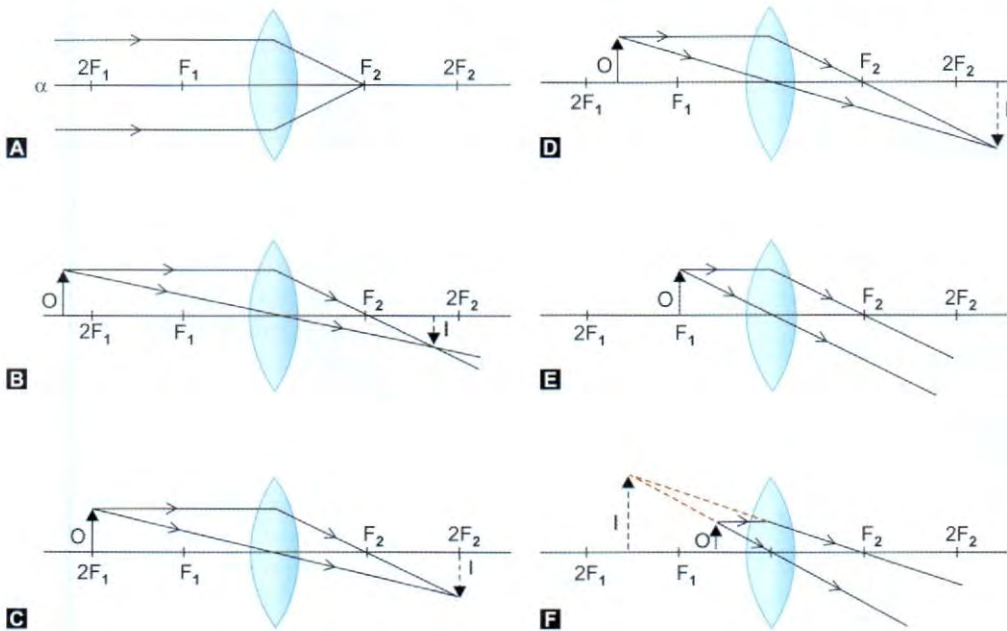
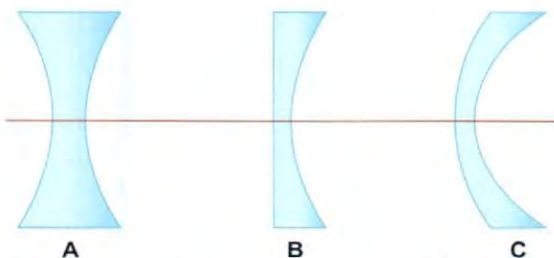
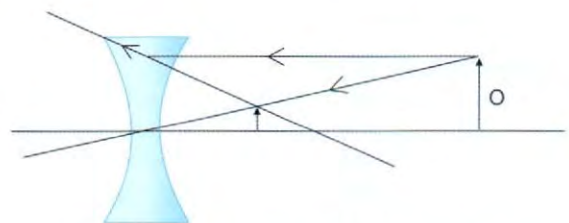


**Fig. 3.13** Basic forms of a convex lens: (A) biconvex; (B) plano-convex; (C) concavo-convex



**Table 3.2** Images formed by a convex lens for various positions of object

|    | Position of the object                           | Position of the image    | Nature and size of the image  | Ray diagram   |
|----|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------|
| 1. | At infinity                                      | At focus ( $F_2$ )       | Real, very small and inverted | Fig. 3.14 (a) |
| 2. | Beyond $2F_1$                                    | Between $F_2$ and $2F_2$ | Real, diminished and inverted | Fig. 3.14 (b) |
| 3. | At $2F_1$                                        | At $2F_2$                | Real, same size and inverted  | Fig. 3.14 (c) |
| 4. | Between $F_1$ and $2F_1$                         | Beyond $2F_2$            | Real, enlarged and inverted   | Fig. 3.14 (d) |
| 5. | At focus $F_1$                                   | At infinity              | Real, very large and inverted | Fig. 3.14 (e) |
| 6. | Between $F_1$ and the optical centre of the lens | On the same side of lens | Virtual, enlarged and erect   | Fig. 3.14 (f) |

**Fig. 3.14** Images formed by a convex lens for different positions of the object, A, At infinity; B, Beyond  $2F_1$ ; C, at  $2F_1$ ; D, Between  $F_1$  and  $2F_1$ ; E, at  $F_1$ ; F, between  $F_1$  and optical centre of lens**Fig. 3.15** Basic forms of a concave lens: (A) biconcave (B) plano-concave; and (C) convexo-concave**Fig. 3.16** Image formation by a concave lens

- **Concave cylindrical lens** (Fig. 3.17).
- Axis of a cylindrical lens is parallel to that of the cylinder of which it is a segment.
- Power in a cylindrical lens is present only in the direction at right angle to the axis. Therefore,

the parallel rays of light after passing through a cylindrical lens do not come to a point focus but form a focal line (Fig. 3.18).

#### Identification of a cylindrical lens

- When the cylindrical lens is rotated around its optical axis, the object seen through it becomes distorted.



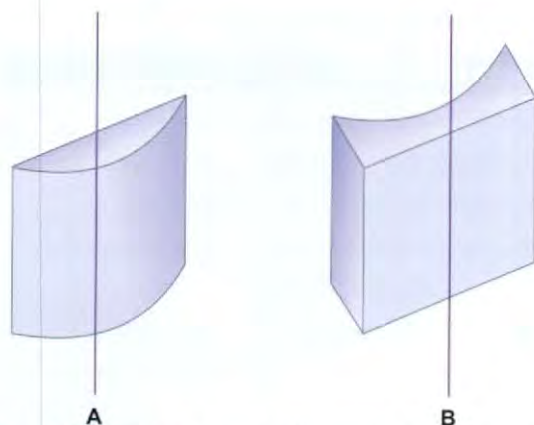


Fig. 3.17 Cylindrical lenses: (A) convex; and (B) concave

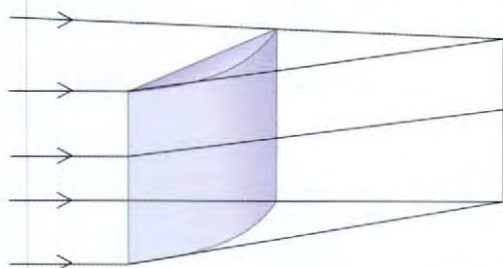


Fig. 3.18 Refraction through a convex cylindrical lens

- The cylindrical lens acts in only one axis, so when it is moved up and down or sideways, the objects will move with the lens (in concave cylinder) or opposite to the lens (in convex cylinder) only in one direction.

#### Uses of cylindrical lenses

- Prescribed to correct astigmatism.
- As a cross cylinder used to check the refraction subjectively.
- Maddox rod consists of powerful convex cylindrical lenses mounted together.

#### Types of cylindrical lenses

Cylindrical or astigmatic lens may be of three type:

- **Simple** (curved in one meridian only, either convex or concave), compound (curved unequally in both the meridians, either convex or concave).
- **Compound cylindrical lens** is also called spherical cylinder.
- **Mixed cylinder**, in which one meridian is convex and the other is concave.

#### Images formed by a cylindrical lens

The images formed by different types of cylindrical lenses are best understood by the study of Sturm's conoid (See page 42).

## PHYSIOLOGICAL OPTICS (OPTICS OF THE EYE)

### ■ EYE AS AN OPTICAL INSTRUMENT

Eye as an optical instrument can be compared to a camera where:

- **Eyelids** acts as shutter of the camera.
- **Cornea and crystalline lens** act as focussing system (lens) of the camera. In fact the cornea (1.32) and crystalline lens (1.47) along with aqueous humour (1.33), and vitreous humour (1.33) constitute a homocentric system of lenses, which when combined in action form a very strong refracting system of short focal length.
- **Iris** acts as a diaphragm which regulates the size of aperture (pupil) and, therefore, the amount of light entering the eye.
- **Choroid** helps in forming the darkened interior of the camera.
- **Retina** acts as light sensitive plate or film on which image is formed.

**Note.** To be more precise, the functioning of the eye can be considered to be analogous to a closed circuit colour TV system as depicted in Fig. 3.19. The optic nerve and its connections convey the details of the image to the occipital region of the cerebral cortex, where they are processed before reaching consciousness.

### ■ SCHEMATIC EYE: CARDINAL POINTS

The complex optics of eye, forming a homocentric lens system, has been simplified by Gullstrand by resolving it into six cardinal points (schematic eye) as follows (Fig. 3.20A):

- **Two principal foci  $F_1$  and  $F_2$**  which lie 15.7 mm in front and 24.4 mm behind the cornea, respectively.
- **Two principal points  $P_1$  and  $P_2$**  which lie in the anterior chamber, 1.35 mm and 1.60 mm behind the anterior surface of cornea, respectively.
- **Two nodal points  $N_1$  and  $N_2$**  which lie in the posterior part of lens, 7.08 mm and 7.33 mm behind the anterior surface of cornea, respectively.
- **Total dioptric power** of this schematic eye is 58.64 D.

### ■ REDUCED EYE

Understanding of the optics eye has been further simplified by Listing and Donder. From schematic eye, they have given the concept of reduced eye by choosing single principal point and single nodal point lying midway between two principal points and two nodal points, respectively.



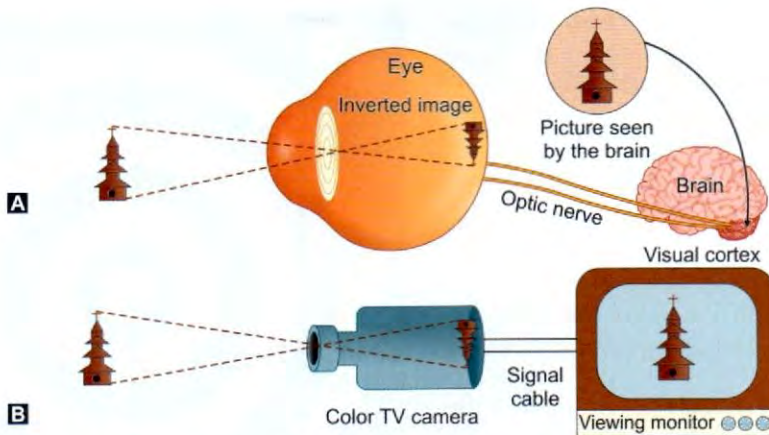


Fig. 3.19 Functioning of eye as an optical system (A) is in many ways similar to a closed circuit colour TV system

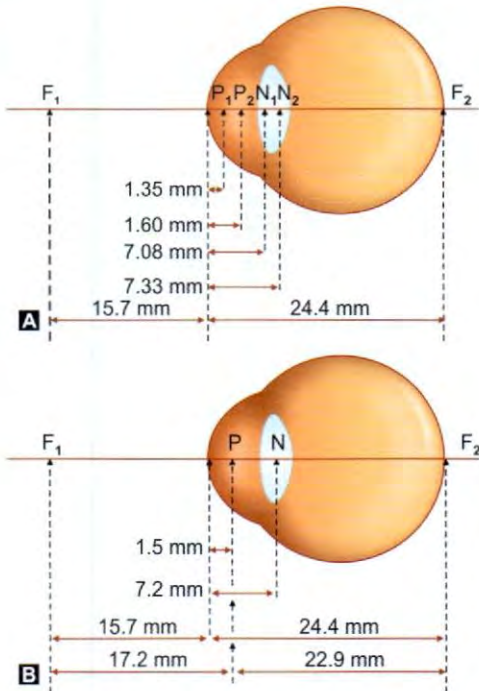


Fig. 3.20 Cardinal points of schematic eye (A); and reduced eye (B)

■ Simplified data of the Listing's reduced eye are as follows (Fig. 3.20B):

- Principal point (P) lies 1.5 mm behind the anterior surface of cornea.
- Nodal point (N) is situated 7.2 mm behind the anterior surface of cornea.
- Anterior focal point ( $F_1$ ) is 15.7 mm in front of the anterior surface of cornea.

- Posterior focal point ( $F_2$ ) (on the retina) is 24.40 mm behind the anterior surface of cornea.
- Anterior focal length ( $f_1$ ) is 17.2 mm (15.7 + 1.5)
- Posterior focal length ( $f_2$ ) is 22.90 mm (24.40 - 1.5).
- Total dioptric power of reduced eye is about + 60 dioptre. Out of which about + 43 D is contributed by the cornea and + 17 D by the crystalline lens.

### AXES AND VISUAL ANGLES OF THE EYE

The eye has three principal axes and three visual angles (Fig. 3.21).

#### Axes of the eye

1. Optic axis is the line passing through the centre of the cornea (P), centre of the lens (N) and meets the retina (R) on the nasal side of the fovea.

In practice it is impossible to determine accurately the optic axis, since we cannot know the exact centre of cornea. However, it is much easier to estimate centre of the pupil, for example by an image of light on the cornea. Therefore, in practice

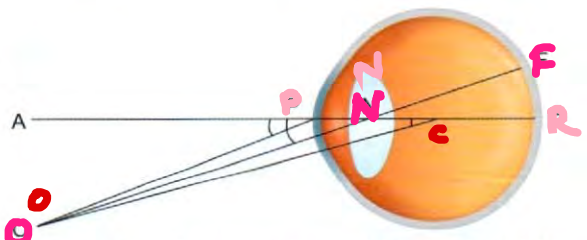


Fig. 3.21 Axes of the eye: optic axis (AR); visual axis (OF); fixation axis (OC) and visual angles: angle alpha (ONA, between optical axis and visual axis at nodal point N); angle kappa (OPA, between optical axis and pupillary line-OP); angle gamma (OCA, between optical axis and fixation axis)



we substitute the optic axis by a line perpendicular to the cornea at the point coinciding to the centre of pupil. This line is called **pupillary line**.

2. **Visual axis** is the line joining the fixation point (O), nodal point (N), and the fovea (F).
3. **Fixation axis** is the line joining the fixation point (O) and the centre of rotation (C).

### Visual angles

Visual angles of eye are (Fig. 3.21):

1. **Angle alpha**. It is the angle (ONA) formed between the optical axis (AR) and visual axis (OF) at the nodal point (N).
2. **Angle gamma**. It is the angle (OCA) between the optical axis (AR) and fixation axis (OC) at the centre of rotation of the eyeball (C).
3. **Angle kappa**. It is the angle (OPA) formed between the visual axis (OF) and pupillary line (AP). The point P on the centre of cornea is considered equivalent to the centre of pupil.

Practically, only the angle kappa can be measured and is of clinical significance. A positive angle kappa results in **pseudo-exotropia** and a negative angle kappa in **pseudo-esotropia**.

### ■ OPTICAL ABERRATIONS OF THE NORMAL EYE

The eye, in common with many optical systems in practical use, is by no means optically perfect. The lapses from perfection are called **aberrations**. Fortunately, the eyes possess these defects to such a small degree that for functional purposes their presence is negligible.

**Natural mechanisms to decrease aberrations** in the human eye include:

- Cutting off of the peripheral rays by iris,
- High refractive index of the core of nucleus of the lens than that of the peripheral cortex,
- Low sensitivity of the peripheral retina, and
- Stiles-Crawford effect, i.e. more sensitivity of the retina to perpendicular rays than the oblique rays.

It has been said that despite imperfections the overall performance of the eye is little short of astonishing. Physiological optical defects in a normal eye include the following:

1. **Diffraction of light**. Diffraction refers to the bending of light rays caused by the edge of an aperture or the rim of a lens. The actual pattern of a diffracted image point produced by a lens with a circular aperture or pupil is a series of concentric bright and dark rings with a bright spot in the centre. Such a pattern is termed as the **Airy disc** (Fig. 3.22).
2. **Spherical aberrations**. Spherical aberrations occur owing to the fact that spherical lens refracts peripheral

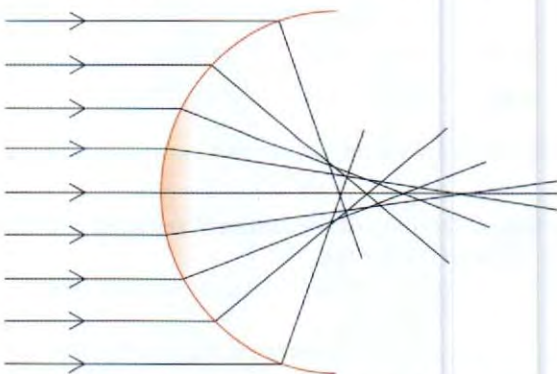


**Fig. 3.22** The diffraction of light. Light brought to a focus does not come to a point, but gives rise to a blurred disc of light surrounded by several dark and light bands (the 'Airy disc')

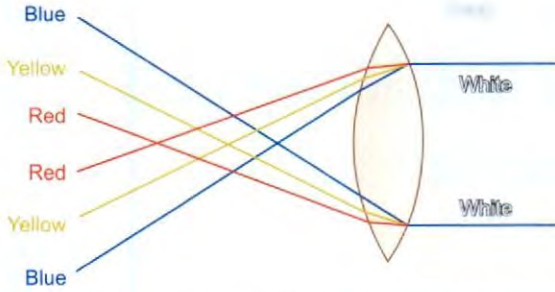
rays more strongly than paraxial rays which in the case of a convex lens brings the more peripheral rays to focus closer to the lens (Fig. 3.23).

The human eye, having a power of about +60 D, was long thought to suffer from various amounts of spherical aberrations. However, results from aberroscopy have revealed the fact that the dominant aberration of human eye is not spherical aberration but rather a coma-like aberration.

3. **Chromatic aberrations**. Chromatic aberrations result owing to the fact that the index of refraction of any transparent medium varies with the wavelength of incident light. In human eye, which optically acts as



**Fig. 3.23** Spherical aberration. Because there is greater refraction at periphery of spherical lens than near centre, incoming rays of light do not truly come to a point focus



**Fig. 3.24** Chromatic aberration. The dioptric system of the eye is represented by a simple lens. The yellow light is focussed on the retina, and the eye is myopic for blue, and hypermetropic for red

a convex lens, blue light is focussed slightly in front of the red (Fig. 3.24). In other words, the emmetropic eye is in fact slightly hypermetropic for red rays and myopic for blue and green rays. This in fact forms the basis of bichrome test used in subjective refraction.

**4. Decentring.** The cornea and lens surfaces alter the direction of incident light rays causing them to focus on the retina. Actually these surfaces are not centred on a common axis. The crystalline lens is usually slightly decentred and tipped with respect to the axis of the cornea and the visual axis of the eye. It has been reported that the centre of curvature of cornea is situated about 0.25 mm below the axis of the lens. However, the effects of deviation are usually so small that they are functionally neglected.

**5. Oblique aberration.** Objects in the peripheral field are seen by virtue of obliquely incident narrow pencil of rays which are limited by the pupil. Because of this, the refracted pencil shows oblique astigmatism

**6. Coma.** Different areas of the lens will form foci in planes other than the chief focus. This produces in the image plane a 'coma effect' from a point source of light.



# 4

## Errors of Refraction and Accommodation

### ERRORS OF REFRACTION

- Emmetropia and ametropia
- Hypermetropia
- Myopia
- Astigmatism
- Anisometropia
- Aniseikonia

### ACCOMMODATION AND ITS ANOMALIES

#### Accommodation

- Definition
- Mechanism
- Range and amplitude

#### Anomalies of Accommodation

- Presbyopia
- Insufficiency of accommodation

- Paralysis of accommodation
- Spasm of accommodation

### DETERMINATION OF REFRACTION ERRORS

- Objective refraction
- Subjective refraction

### MODALITIES FOR CORRECTION OF REFRACTIVE ERRORS

#### Spectacles

#### Contact lenses

#### Refractive surgery

- Refractive surgery for myopia
- Refractive surgery for hyperopia
- Refractive surgery for astigmatism
- Management of post-keratoplasty astigmatism
- Refractive surgery for presbyopia

10m

### ERRORS OF REFRACTION

#### EMMETROPIA AND AMETROPIA

**Emmetropia** (optically normal eye) can be defined as a state of refraction, where in the parallel rays of light coming from infinity are focused at the sensitive layer of retina with the accommodation being at rest (Fig. 4.1).

**Ametropia** (a condition of refractive error), is defined as a state of refraction, when the parallel rays of light coming from infinity (with accommodation at rest), are focused either in front or behind the sensitive layer of retina, in one or both the meridians. The ametropia includes:

- Myopia,
- Hypermetropia, and
- Astigmatism.

**Note.** The related conditions aphakia and pseudophakia are also discussed here.

10m

#### HYPERMETROPIA

5m

Hypermetropia (hyperopia) or long-sightedness is the refractive state of the eye wherein parallel rays of light coming from infinity are focused behind the retina with accommodation being at rest (Fig. 4.2). Thus, the posterior focal point is behind the retina, which, therefore, receives a blurred image.

### Etiology

Hypermetropia may be axial, curvatural, index, positional and due to absence of crystalline lens.

**1. Axial hypermetropia** is by far the commonest form. In this condition, the total refractive power of eye is normal but there is an axial shortening of eyeball. About 1 mm shortening of the anteroposterior diameter of the eye results in 3 dioptres of hypermetropia.

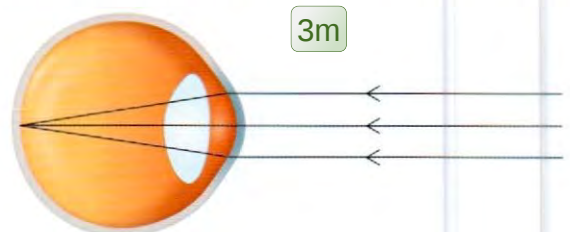


Fig. 4.1 Refraction in an emmetropic eye

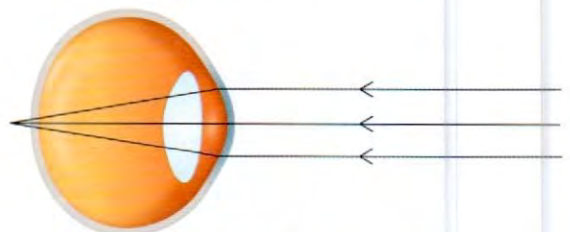


Fig. 4.2 Refraction in a hypermetropic eye



Axial hypermetropia may be developmental or pathological. High hypermetropia occurs in microphthalmos and nanophthalmos due to markedly short axial length (usually less than 20 mm).

2. Curvatural hypermetropia is the condition in which the curvature of cornea, lens or both is flatter than the normal resulting in a decrease in the refractive power of eye. About 1 mm increase in radius of curvature results in 6 dioptres of hypermetropia. It may be developmental or rarely pathological.

3. Index hypermetropia occurs due to decrease in the refractive index of the lens in old age due to cortical sclerosis. It may also occur in diabetics under treatment.

4. Positional hypermetropia results from posteriorly placed crystalline lens.

5. Absence of crystalline lens either congenital or acquired (following surgical removal or posterior dislocation) leads to aphakia—a condition of high hypermetropia.

6. Consecutive hypermetropia may result due to:

- Overcorrected myopia following refractive surgery [(e.g. laser assisted in-situ keratomileusis (LASIK), and implantable contact lens (ICL)].
- Underpowered intraocular lens (IOL) implantation during cataract surgery and refractive lens exchange (RLE).

### Clinical types

There are three clinical types of hypermetropia:

1. Simple or developmental or physiological hypermetropia is the commonest form. It results from normal biological variations in the development of eyeball. It includes:

- Developmental axial hypermetropia, and
- Developmental curvatural hypermetropia.

2. Non-physiological hypermetropia results due to either congenital or acquired conditions of the eyeball which are outside the normal biological variations of the development. It includes:

Congenital non-physiological hypermetropia is seen in following conditions:

- Microphthalmos,
- Nanophthalmos,
- Microcornea,
- Congenital posterior subluxation of lens, and
- Congenital aphakia.

Acquired non-physiological hypermetropia includes:

a. Senile hypermetropia or frequently designated as acquired hypermetropia occurring in old age due to two causes:

- Index hypermetropia due to acquired cortical sclerosis in old age, and

- Curvatural hypermetropia due to decreased curvature of the outer lens fibers developing later in life.

b. Positional hypermetropia due to posterior subluxation of lens.

c. Aphakia, i.e. congenital or acquired, absence of lens.

d. Consecutive hypermetropia due to surgically over-corrected myopia.

e. Acquired axial hypermetropia due to forward displacement of the retina as seen in retinal detachment, central serous retinopathy and orbital tumours.

f. Acquired curvatural hypermetropia may occur due to post-traumatic or post-inflammatory corneal flattening.

g. Pseudophakic hypermetropia occurs due to implantation of an underpowered intraocular lens.

3. Functional hypermetropia results from paralysis of accommodation as seen in patients with third nerve paralysis and internal ophthalmoplegia.

### Nomenclature of components of hypermetropia depending upon the effect of accommodation

Nomenclature for various components of the hypermetropia vis-a-vis accommodation is as follows:

Total hypermetropia is the total amount of refractive error, which is estimated after complete cycloplegia with atropine. It consists of latent and manifest hypermetropia.

1. Latent hypermetropia implies the amount of hypermetropia (about 1D) which is normally corrected by the inherent tone of ciliary muscle. The degree of latent hypermetropia is high in children and gradually decreases with age. The latent hypermetropia is disclosed when refraction is carried after abolishing the tone with atropine.

2. Manifest hypermetropia is the remaining portion of total hypermetropia, which is not corrected by the ciliary tone. It consists of two components, the facultative and the absolute hypermetropia.

a. Facultative hypermetropia constitutes that part which can be corrected by the patient's accommodative effort.

b. Absolute hypermetropia is the residual part of manifest hypermetropia which cannot be corrected by the patient's accommodative efforts.

Thus, Total hypermetropia = latent + manifest (facultative + absolute)

### Hypermetropia: Variation with age

- At birth, the eyeball is relatively short, having +2 to +3 hypermetropia, which is gradually reduced.



- By the **age of 5–7 years**, the eye is emmetropic and remains so till the age of about 50 years.
- **After 50 years of age**, there is a **tendency to develop hypermetropia again**, which gradually increases until the extreme of life by which the eye has the **same +2 to +3 with which it started**. This senile hypermetropia is due to **changes in the crystalline lens**.

### Clinical features

#### Symptoms

In patients with hypermetropia, the symptoms vary depending upon the age of patient and the degree of refractive error. These can be grouped as under:

1. **Asymptomatic**. A small amount of refractive error in young patients is usually corrected by mild accommodative effort without producing any symptom.
  2. **Asthenopic symptoms**. At times the hypermetropia is fully corrected by the use of accommodation. Thus vision is normal, but due to sustained accommodative efforts patient develops asthenopic symptoms. These include: **tiredness of eyes, frontal or frontotemporal headache, watering and mild photophobia**. These asthenopic symptoms are especially **associated with near work and increase towards evening**.
  3. **Defective vision with asthenopic symptoms**. When the amount of hypermetropia is such that it is not fully corrected by the voluntary accommodative efforts, then the **patients complain of defective vision which is more for near than distance** and is associated with asthenopic symptoms due to sustained accommodative efforts.
  4. **Defective vision only**. When the amount of hypermetropia is very high, the patients usually do not accommodate (especially adults) and there occurs **marked defective vision for near and distance**.
- **Effect of ageing on vision**. Typically patients with low hypermetropia have good vision in young age. However, with ageing, due to decrease in accommodative power, the hypermetropia becomes manifest and patients complain of progressive decrease in vision. To begin with **blurring occurs for near vision and then for distant vision also**.

#### Signs

1. **Size of eyeball** may appear small as a whole especially in high hypermetropia.
2. **Cornea** may be slightly smaller than the normal.
3. **Anterior chamber** is comparatively shallow.
4. **Retinoscopy and autorefractometry** reveals hypermetropic refractive error.
5. **Fundus examination** reveals a small optic disc which may **look more vascular** with ill-defined margins and even **may simulate papillitis** (though there is no swelling of the disc, and

so it is called **pseudopapillitis**). The retina as a whole may **shine due to greater brilliance** of light reflections (**shot silk appearance**).

6. **A-scan ultrasonography (biometry)** may reveal a **short anteroposterior length** of the eyeball in axial hypermetropia.

### Grading of hypermetropia

American Optometric Association (AOA) has defined **three grades** of hypermetropia as below:

- **Low hypermetropia**, when the error is  $\leq +2D$ .
- **Moderate hypermetropia**, when the error is between  $+2$  to  $+5D$ .
- **High hypermetropia**, when the error is  $\geq +5D$ .

### Complications

If hypermetropia is not corrected for a long time the following complications may occur:

1. **Recurrent styes, blepharitis or chalazia** may occur, probably due to **infection** introduced by repeated rubbing of the eyes, which is often done to get relief from fatigue and tiredness.
2. **Accommodative convergent squint** may develop in children (usually by the age of 2–3 years) due to excessive use of accommodation.
3. **Amblyopia** may develop in some cases. It may be **anisometropic** (in unilateral hypermetropia), **strabismic** (in children developing accommodative squint) or **ametropic** (seen in children with uncorrected bilateral high hypermetropia).
4. **Predisposition to develop primary narrow angle glaucoma**. The eye in hypermetropes is small with a comparatively shallow anterior chamber. Due to regular increase in the size of the lens with increasing age, these **eyes become prone to an attack of narrow angle glaucoma**. This point should be kept in mind while instilling mydriatics in elderly hypermetropes.

### Treatment

**A. Optical treatment.** Basic principle of treatment is to **prescribe convex (plus) lenses**, so that the light rays are brought to focus on the retina (Fig. 4.3).

■ **Fundamental rules for prescribing glasses in hypermetropia** include:

1. Total amount of hypermetropia should always be discovered by performing refraction under complete cycloplegia.
2. The **spherical correction** given should be comfortably acceptable to the patient. However, the astigmatism should be fully corrected.
3. **Gradually increase the spherical correction at 6 months interval** till the patient accepts manifest hypermetropia.



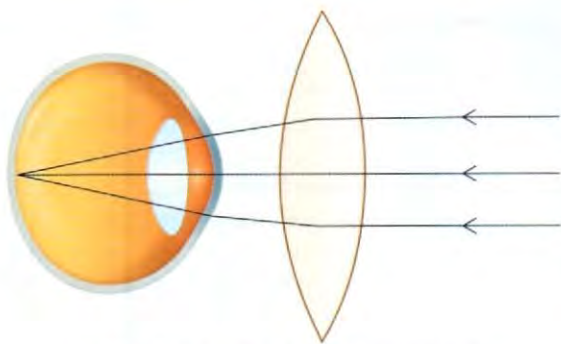


Fig. 4.3 Refraction in a hypermetropic eye corrected with convex lens

4. In the presence of accommodative convergent squint, full cycloplegic correction should be given at the first sitting.
5. If there is associated amblyopia, full correction with occlusion therapy should be started.

#### Modes of prescription of convex lenses

1. Spectacles are most comfortable, safe and easy method of correcting hypermetropia.
2. Contact lenses are indicated in unilateral hypermetropia (anisometropia). For cosmetic reasons, contact lenses should be prescribed once the prescription has stabilised, otherwise, they may have to be changed many a times.

#### B. Surgical treatment (See page 54).

### ■ APHAKIA 5m

Aphakia literally means 'absence of crystalline lens' from the eye. However, from the optical point of view, it may be considered a condition in which the lens is absent from the pupillary area. Aphakia produces a high degree of hypermetropia.

#### Causes

1. Congenital absence of lens. It is a rare condition.
2. Surgical aphakia occurring after removal of lens is the commonest presentation.
3. Aphakia due to absorption of lens matter is noticed rarely after trauma in children.
4. Traumatic extrusion of lens from the eye also constitutes a rare cause of aphakia.
5. Posterior dislocation of lens in vitreous causes optical aphakia.

#### Optics of aphakic eye

Following optical changes occur after removal of crystalline lens:

- Hypermetropia of high degree.
- Total power of eye is reduced to about +44 D from +60 D.

- Anterior focal point becomes 23.2 mm in front of the cornea (Normal: 15.7 mm).
- Posterior focal point is about 31 mm behind the cornea, i.e. about 7 mm behind the eyeball (The anteroposterior length of eyeball is about 24 mm).
- Accommodation is lost fully.

#### Clinical features

##### Symptoms

- Defective vision. Main symptom in aphakia is marked defective vision for both far and near due to high hypermetropia and absence of accommodation.
- Erythropsia and cyanopsia, i.e. seeing red and blue images. This occurs due to excessive entry of ultraviolet and infrared rays in the absence of crystalline lens.

##### Signs of aphakia

- Limbal/corneal scar may be seen in surgical aphakia.
- Anterior chamber is deeper than normal.
- Iridodonesis, i.e. tremulousness of iris can be demonstrated.
- Pupil is jet black in colour.
- Purkinje's image test shows only two images (normally four images are seen- See page 527 and Fig. 23.10).
- Fundus examination shows hypermetropic small disc.
- Retinoscopy and autorefractometry reveal high hypermetropia.

#### Treatment

Optical principle is to correct the refractive error by convex lenses of appropriate power so that image is formed on the retina (Fig. 4.3).

Modalities for correcting aphakia include: (1) spectacles, (2) contact lens, (3) intraocular lens, and (4) refractive corneal surgery.

1. Spectacles prescription has been the most commonly employed method of correcting aphakia in the past, especially in developing countries. Presently, use of aphakic spectacles has decreased markedly. Roughly, about +10D with cylindrical lenses for surgically induced astigmatism are required to correct aphakia in previously emmetropic patients. However, exact number of glasses will differ in individual case and should be estimated by refraction. An addition of +3 to +4 D is required for near vision to compensate the loss of accommodation.

Disadvantages of spectacles. (i) Image is magnified by 30%, so not useful in unilateral aphakia



(produce diplopia). (ii) Problem of spherical and chromatic aberrations of thick lenses. (iii) Field of vision is limited. (iv) Prismatic effect of thick glasses. (v) 'Roving ring Scotoma' (Jack in the box phenomenon). (vi) Cosmetic blemish especially in young aphakes.

2. **Contact lenses.** Advantages of contact lenses over spectacles include: (i) Less magnification of image. (ii) Elimination of aberrations and prismatic effect of thick glasses. (iii) Wider and better field of vision. (iv) Cosmetically more acceptable. (v) Better suited for unioocular aphakia.

■ **Disadvantages of contact lenses** are: (i) more cost; (ii) cumbersome to wear, especially in old age and in childhood; and (iii) corneal complications may be associated.

3. **Intraocular lens implantation** is the best available method of correcting aphakia. Therefore, it is the commonest modality being employed nowadays.

- **Primary intraocular lens implantation** is done during cataract surgery.

- **Secondary intraocular lens implantation** is done in already aphakic patients. (For detail See page 213).

4. **Refractive corneal surgery.**

- **Hyperopic Lasik** may be tried in cases where secondary IOL cannot be implanted (See page 54).

5m

## ■ PSEUDOPHAKIA

The condition of aphakia when corrected with an intraocular lens implant (IOL) is referred to as **pseudophakia or arterphakia**. For types of IOLs and details of implantation techniques and complications (See page 213).

Refractive status of a pseudophakic eye depends upon the power of the IOL implanted as follows:

1. **Emmetropia** is produced when the power of the IOL implanted is exact. It is the most ideal situation. Such patients need plus glasses for near vision only.

2. **Consecutive myopia** occurs when the IOL implanted overcorrects the refraction of eye. Such patients require glasses to correct the myopia for distance vision and may or may not need glasses for near vision depending upon the degree of myopia.

3. **Consecutive hypermetropia** develops when the under power IOL is implanted. Such patients require plus glasses for distance vision and additional +2 to +3 D for near vision.

**Note.** Varying degree of **surgically induced astigmatism** is also present in pseudophakia.

**Signs of pseudophakia** (with posterior chamber IOL).

- **Surgical scar** may be seen near the limbus.
- **Anterior chamber** is slightly deeper than normal.

- **Mild iridodonesis** (tremulousness) of iris may be demonstrated.
- **Purkinje image test** shows four images.
- **Pupil is blackish** in colour but when light is thrown in pupillary area **shining reflexes** are observed.
- **Presence of IOL** is confirmed (See Fig. 9.32) on slit-lamp examination after dilating the pupil.
- **Visual status and refraction** will vary depending upon the power of IOL implanted as described above.

**Management of pseudophakia** includes:

1. **Spectacles** for near vision alone (in pseudophakia with emmetropia) or as bifocal/progressive glasses for both distance and near vision (in pseudophakia with consecutive refractive error) are required.

2. **LASIK or Advanced surface ablation (ASA)** may be required in moderate consecutive refractive error.

3. **Intraocular lens (IOL) exchange or piggyback IOL** is required when the consecutive refractive error is large.

## MYOPIA 10m

Myopia or **shortsightedness** is a type of refractive error in which parallel rays of light coming from infinity are focused in front of the retina when accommodation is at rest (Fig. 4.4).

### Etiological classification

1. **Axial myopia** results from increase in antero-posterior length of the eyeball. It is the commonest form.
2. **Curvatural myopia** occurs due to increased curvature of the cornea, lens or both.
3. **Positional myopia** is produced by anterior placement of crystalline lens in the eye.
4. **Index myopia** results from increase in the refractive index of crystalline lens associated with nuclear sclerosis.
5. **Myopia due to excessive accommodation** occurs in patients with spasm of accommodation.

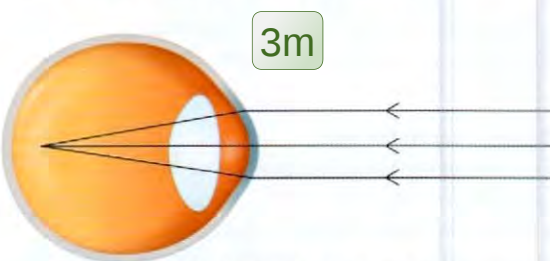


Fig. 4.4 Refraction in a myopic eye



### Grading of myopia

American Optometric Association (AOA) has defined three grades of myopia:

- **Low myopia**, when the error is  $\leq -3D$ .
- **Moderate myopia**, when the error is between  $-3D$  to  $-6D$ .
- **High myopia**, when the error is  $\geq -6D$ .

### Clinical varieties of myopia

1. Congenital myopia.
2. Simple or developmental myopia.
3. Pathological or degenerative myopia.
4. Acquired or secondary myopia which occurs secondary to some other disease/factors are as follows:
  - post-traumatic,
  - post-keratitic,
  - drug-induced,
  - pseudomyopia,
  - space myopia,
  - night myopia, and
  - consecutive myopia.

### ■ CONGENITAL MYOPIA

- **Present since birth**, the congenital myopia, is usually diagnosed by the age of 2–3 years.
- **Anisometropia** is usually present, hence most of the time the error is unilateral. Rarely, it may be bilateral.
- **High degree of error**, about 8 to 10D, is usually present, which mostly remains constant.
- **Convergent squint** may develop in order to preferentially see clear at its far point (which is about 10–12 cm).
- **Associations** may include other congenital anomalies such as cataract, microphthalmos, aniridia, megalocornea, and congenital separation of retina.
- **Early correction** of congenital myopia is desirable.

### ■ SIMPLE MYOPIA

Simple or developmental myopia is the **commonest** variety. It is considered as a **physiological error not associated with any disease of the eye**. Overall reported prevalence is 20–40% of population. Since, the sharpest rise occurs at school going age, i.e. between 8 years to 12 years so, it is also called **school myopia**.

### Etiology

It results from normal biological variation in the development of eye which may or may not be genetically determined. Some factors associated with simple myopia are as follows:

- **Axial type of simple myopia** may signify just a physiological variation in the length of the eyeball or it may be associated with **precocious neurological growth** during childhood.
- **Curvatural type** of simple myopia is considered to be due to **underdevelopment of the eyeball**.

■ **Role of diet** in early childhood has also been reported without any conclusive results.

■ **Role of genetics**. Genetics plays some role in the biological variation of the development of eye, as prevalence of myopia is more in children with **both parents myopic (20%)** than the children with **one parent myopic (10%)** and children **with no parent myopic (5%)**.

■ **Theory of excessive near work in childhood** is gaining importance. It is being believed that myopia is **aggravated by close work, watching television, smart phones, computer and other VDUs**.

■ **Limited outdoor activity** and **not using proper glasses**, also contribute towards progression of myopia.

### Clinical features

#### Symptoms

■ **Poor vision for distance** (short-sightedness) is the **main symptom** of myopia.

■ **Asthenopic symptoms** may occur in patients with small degree of myopia.

■ **Half shutting of the eyes** may be complained by parents of the child. The child does so to achieve the greater clarity of stenopaeic vision.

■ **A change in psychological outlook** of the uncorrected myopic children is very common. Due to poor far vision and normal near vision, the children become introvert, studious and develop little interest in the outdoor activities.

#### Signs

■ **Prominent eyeballs**. The myopic eyes typically are large and somewhat prominent.

■ **Anterior chamber is slightly deeper** than normal.

■ **Pupils are somewhat large** and a bit sluggishly reacting.

■ **Fundus is normal**; rarely temporal myopic crescent may be seen.

■ **Magnitude of refractive error**. Simple myopia usually occurs **between 5 and 10 years of age and it keeps on increasing till about 18–20 years of age** at a rate of about  $-0.5 \pm 0.30$  every year. In simple myopia, **usually the error is low to moderate** that usually does not exceed  $-6D$ .

### Diagnosis

Diagnosis is confirmed by performing clinical refraction (See page 591).

### ■ PATHOLOGICAL MYOPIA 5m

Pathological/degenerative/progressive myopia, as the name indicates, is a **rapidly progressive error** which starts in childhood at **5–10 years of age** and results in **high myopia ( $> -6D$ )** during early adult



life which is usually associated with degenerative changes in the eye. It is less common (about 2% of population).

### Etiology

It is unequivocal that the pathological myopia results from a rapid axial growth of the eyeball which is outside the normal biological variations of development. To explain this spurt in axial growth various theories have been put forward. So far no satisfactory hypothesis has emerged to explain the etiology of pathological myopia. However, it is definitely linked with (i) heredity and (ii) general growth process.

1. **Role of heredity.** It is now confirmed that genetic factors play a major role in the etiology, as the progressive myopia is:

- **Familial**
- **Race.** More common in certain races like Chinese, Japanese, Arabs and Jews, uncommon among Negroes, Nubians and Sudanese
- **Sex.** More common in women than men.
- **Genetic.** Autosomal dominant pathological myopia has been linked to genes 18p11.31 and 12q21.23.
- **Sex-linked,** recessive inherited disorder status is being given to high myopia (>6D).
- **Heredity-linked growth of retina** is presumed to be determinant in development of myopia. The sclera due to its distensibility follows the retinal growth but the choroid undergoes degeneration due to stretching, which in turn causes degeneration of retina (Fig. 4.5).

2. **Role of general growth process,** though minor, cannot be denied on the progress of myopia. Lengthening of the posterior segment of the globe commences only during the period of active growth and probably ends with the termination of the active growth. Therefore, the factors (such as nutritional deficiency, debilitating diseases, endocrine disturbances and indifferent general health) which affect the general growth

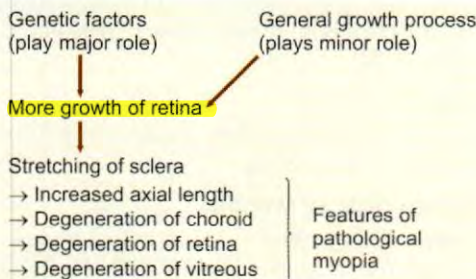


Fig. 4.5 Etiological hypothesis for pathological myopia

process will also influence the progress of myopia.

**Etiological hypothesis** for pathological myopia is summarised in Fig. 4.5.

### Clinical features

#### Symptoms

1. **Defective vision.** There is considerable failure in visual function as the error is usually high. Further, due to progressive degenerative changes, an uncorrectable loss of vision may occur.
2. **Muscae volitantes**, i.e. floating black opacities in front of the eyes are also complained by many patients. These occur due to degenerated liquefied vitreous.
3. **Difficulty in night vision** may be complained by very high myopes having marked degenerative changes.

#### Signs

1. **Prominent eyeballs.** The eyes are often prominent, appearing elongated and even simulating an exophthalmos, especially in unilateral cases. The elongation of the eyeball mainly affects the posterior pole and surrounding area; the part of the eye anterior to the equator may be normal (Fig. 4.6).
2. **Cornea is large.**
3. **Anterior chamber is deep.**
4. **Pupils are slightly large and react sluggishly** to light.
5. **Magnitude of refractive error** increases rapidly and finally may vary from -10D to -40D.
6. **Fundus examination** reveals following characteristic signs:
  - a. **Optic disc** appears large and pale and at its temporal edge a characteristic myopic crescent is present (Fig. 4.7). Sometimes peripapillary crescent encircling the disc may be present, where the choroid and retina

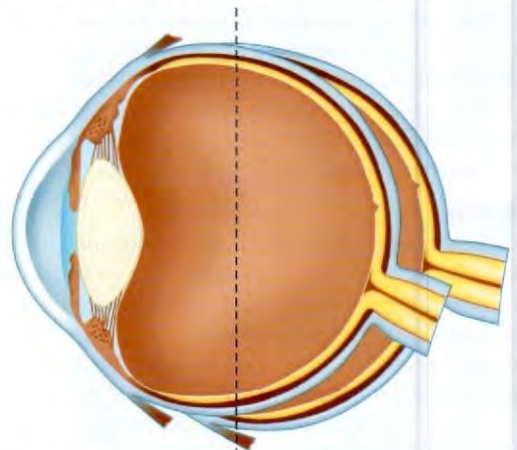


Fig. 4.6 Elongation of the eyeball posterior to equator in pathological myopia



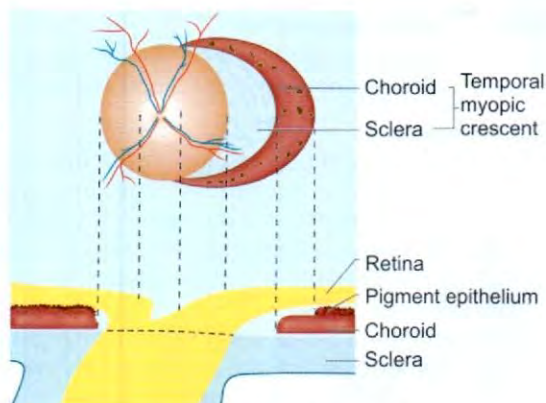


Fig. 4.7 Myopic crescent

is distracted away from the disc margin. A supertraction crescent (where the retina is pulled over the disc margin) may be present on the nasal side.

b. Degenerative changes in retina and choroid are common in progressive myopia (Fig. 4.8). These are characterized by:

- Chorioretinal atrophic patches at the macula with a little heaping up of pigment around them.
- Foster-Fuchs' spot (dark red circular patch due to sub-retinal neovascularization and choroidal haemorrhage) may be present at the macula.
- Cystoid degeneration may be seen at the periphery.
- Lattice degeneration and or snail track lesions with or without retinal holes/tears may be present; which later may be complicated by retinal detachment.
- Total retinal atrophy, particularly in the central area may occur in an advanced case.

c. Posterior staphyloma due to ectasia of sclera at posterior pole may be apparent as an excavation with the vessels bending backward over its margins.

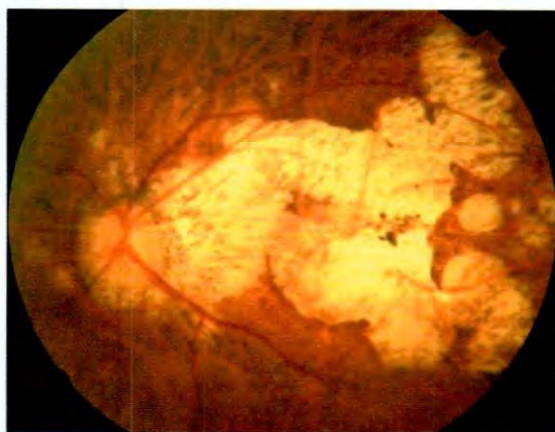


Fig. 4.8 Fundus changes in pathological myopia

d. Degenerative changes in vitreous include: liquefaction, vitreous opacities, and posterior vitreous detachment (PVD) appearing as Weiss' reflex.

7. Visual fields may show contraction and in some cases ring scotoma may be seen.

8. ERG may reveal subnormal electroretinogram due to chorioretinal atrophy.

### Complications

- Retinal detachment,
- Complicated cataract,
- Vitreous haemorrhage,
- Choroidal haemorrhage,
- Strabismus fixus convergence, and
- Primary open angle glaucoma, not a complication, but is a reported association.

### Treatment of myopia

1. Optical treatment of myopia comprises prescription of appropriate concave lenses, so that clear image is formed on the retina (Fig. 4.9).

■ Basic rule of correcting myopia is converse of that in hypermetropia, i.e. the minimum acceptance providing maximum vision should be prescribed. In very high myopia undercorrection is always better to avoid the problem of near vision and that of minification of images.

■ Modes of prescribing concave lenses are spectacles and contact lenses. Their advantages and disadvantages over each other are the same as described for hypermetropia. Contact lenses are particularly justified in cases of high myopia as they avoid peripheral distortion and minification produced by strong concave spectacle lens.

2. Surgical treatment of myopia has become very popular now-a-days (for details See page 52).

### Preventive measures:

i. Therapeutic interventions reported to prevent progression of myopia with inconclusive results include:

- Atropine drops in low strength (0.01%) instilled at night, and
- Pirenzepine 2% gel, applied twice a day.

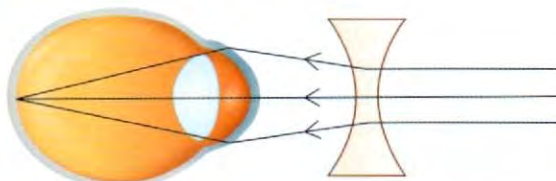


Fig. 4.9 Refraction in a myopic eye corrected with concave lens



ii. *General measures* empirically believed to affect the progress of myopia (unproven usefulness) include:

- **Balanced diet** rich in vitamins and proteins.
- **Early management of associated debilitating disease.**
- **Visual hygiene** is very important to avoid asthenopic symptoms. Care should be taken for proper posture and adequate illumination, especially for near work. Clarity of the print should be good and continuous reading especially, at night hours, should be avoided to prevent undue ocular fatigue.
- **Avoidance of excessive near work** and excessive use of video display units (VDUs), coupled with increased outdoor activity in childhood may prevent progression of myopia.

iii. *Genetic counselling.* As the pathological myopia has a strong genetic basis, the hereditary transfer of disease may be decreased by advising against marriage between two individuals with progressive myopia. However, if they do marry, they should not produce children.

3. **Low vision aids (LVA)** are indicated in patients with progressive myopia having advanced degenerative changes, where useful vision cannot be obtained with spectacles and contact lenses.

## ASTIGMATISM 5m 10m

Astigmatism is a type of refractive error wherein the refraction varies in different meridians of the eye. Consequently, the rays of light entering the eye cannot converge to a point focus but form focal lines. Broadly, there are two types of astigmatism: regular and irregular.

### ■ REGULAR ASTIGMATISM

The astigmatism is regular when the refractive power changes uniformly from one meridian to another (i.e. there are two principal meridians.)

### Etiology

1. **Corneal astigmatism** is the result of abnormalities of curvature of cornea. It constitutes the most common cause of astigmatism.
2. **Lenticular astigmatism** is rare. It may be:
  - **Curvatural** due to abnormalities of curvature of lens as seen in lenticonus.
  - **Positional** due to tilting or oblique placement of lens as seen in subluxation.
  - **Index astigmatism** may occur rarely due to variable refractive index of lens in different meridian.
3. **Retinal astigmatism** due to oblique placement of macula may also be seen occasionally.

### Optics of regular astigmatism

Optics of regular astigmatism can be understood from the configuration of a Sturm's conoid (Fig. 4.10).

#### Sturm's conoid 5m

In regular astigmatism the parallel rays of light are not focused on a point but form two focal lines. The configuration of rays refracted through a toric surface is called the Sturm's conoid. The shape of bundle of the light rays at different levels in Sturm's conoid (Fig. 4.10) is as follows:

- **At point A**, the vertical rays (V) are converging more than the horizontal rays (H); so the section here is a horizontal oval or an oblate ellipse.
- **At point B (first focus)**, the vertical rays have come to a focus while the horizontal rays are still converging and so they form a horizontal line.
- **At point C**, the vertical rays are diverging and their divergence is less than the convergence of the horizontal rays; so a horizontal oval is formed here.
- **At point D**, the divergence of vertical rays is exactly equal to the convergence of the horizontal rays from the axis. So, here the section is a circle, which is called the circle of least diffusion.
- **At point E**, the divergence of vertical rays is more than the convergence of horizontal rays; so, the section here is a vertical oval.
- **At point F (second focus)**, the horizontal rays have come to a focus while the vertical rays are divergent and so a vertical line is formed here.
- **Beyond F (as at point G)**, both horizontal and vertical rays are diverging and so the section will always be a vertical oval or prolate ellipse.
- **Focal interval of Sturm** refers to the distance between the two foci (B and F).

### Types of regular astigmatism

#### Refractive types of regular astigmatism

Depending upon the position of the two focal lines in relation to retina, the regular astigmatism is further classified into three types:

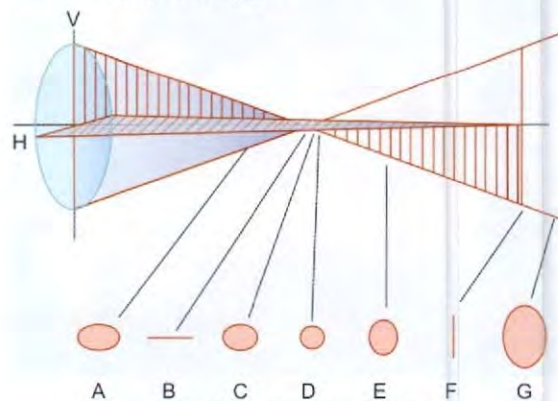


Fig. 4.10 Sturm's conoid



1. **Simple astigmatism**, wherein the rays are focused on the retina in one meridian and either in front (simple myopic astigmatism, Fig. 4.11A) or behind (simple hypermetropic astigmatism, Fig. 4.11B) the retina in the other meridian.

2. **Compound astigmatism**. In this type, the rays of light in both the meridians are focused either in front or behind the retina and the condition is labelled as compound myopic or compound hypermetropic astigmatism, respectively (Figs 4.11C and D).

3. **Mixed astigmatism** refers to a condition wherein the light rays in one meridian are focused in front and in other meridian behind the retina (Fig. 4.11E). Thus, in one meridian eye is myopic and in another hypermetropic. Such patients have comparatively less symptoms as 'circle of least diffusion' is formed on the retina (See Fig. 4.10).

#### Types of regular astigmatism based on axis

Depending upon the axis and the angle between the two principal meridians, regular astigmatism can be classified into the following types:

1. **With-the-rule astigmatism (WTR)**. In this type the two principal meridians are placed at right angles to one another but the vertical meridian is more curved than the horizontal. Thus, correction of this astigmatism will require the concave cylindrical lens at  $180^\circ \pm 20^\circ$  or convex cylindrical lens at  $90^\circ \pm 20^\circ$ . This is called 'with-the-rule' astigmatism, because similar astigmatic condition exists normally (the vertical meridian is normally rendered 0.25 D more convex than the horizontal meridian probably by the pressure of eyelids).

2. **Against-the-rule astigmatism (ATR)** refers to an astigmatic condition in which the horizontal meridians are more curved than the vertical meridian. Therefore, correction of this astigmatism will require the prescription of convex cylindrical lens at  $180^\circ \pm 20^\circ$  or concave cylindrical lens at  $90^\circ \pm 20^\circ$  axis.

3. **Oblique astigmatism** is a type of regular astigmatism where the two principal meridians are not the horizontal and vertical though these are at right angle to one another, e.g.  $45^\circ$  and  $135^\circ$ .

4. **Bioblique astigmatism**. In this type of regular astigmatism the two principal meridians are not at right angle to each other, e.g. one may be at  $30^\circ$  and other at  $100^\circ$ .

#### Clinical features

##### Symptoms

1. **Asthenopia** (tiredness of eyes relieved by closing the eyes) characterised by difficulty in focussing, transient blurred vision, dull ache in eyes, frontal headache and sometimes nausea and

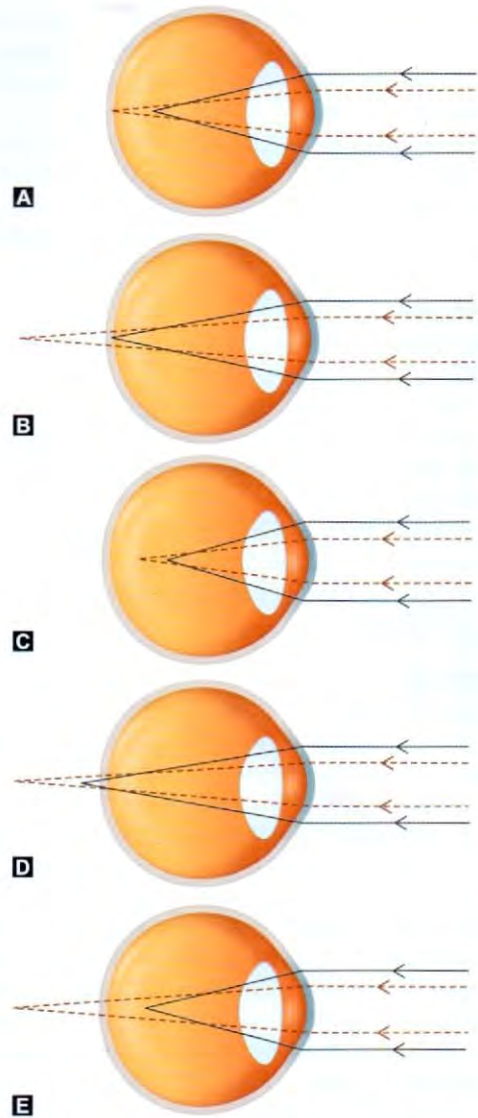


Fig. 4.11 Types of astigmatism: A, Simple myopic; B, Simple hypermetropic; C, Compound myopic; D, Compound hypermetropic; E, Mixed

even drowsiness is especially marked in low astigmatism  $\leq 1D$ .

2. **Blurred vision and defective vision** is reported when the astigmatism is  $\geq 1D$ .

3. **Elongation of objects** proportionate to the degree and type of astigmatism may be noticed in high astigmatism.

4. **Keeping the reading material close to the eyes** may be needed to achieve large but blurred retinal image.

##### Signs

1. **Half closure of the lid**. Like myopes, the astigmatic patients may half shut the eyes to achieve the greater clarity of stenopaic vision.



2. **Head tilt.** The astigmatic patients may (very exceptionally) develop a torticollis in an attempt to bring their axes nearer to the horizontal or vertical meridians.
3. **Oval or tilted optic disc** may be seen on ophthalmoscopy in patients with high degree of astigmatism.
4. **Different power in two meridians** is revealed on retinoscopy or autorefractometry.

### Investigations

1. **Retinoscopy** reveals different power in two different axes.
2. **Keratometry.** Keratometry and computerized corneal topography reveal different corneal curvature in two different meridians in corneal astigmatism.
3. **Stigmatic fan test** (See page 598) and
4. **Jackson's cross cylinder test** (See page 598).

These tests are useful in confirming the power and axis of cylindrical lenses.

### Treatment

1. **Optical treatment** of regular astigmatism comprises the prescription of appropriate cylindrical lens, discovered after accurate refraction.
  - **Spectacles** with full correction of cylindrical power and appropriate axis should be used for distance and near vision.
  - **Contact lenses.** Rigid contact lenses may correct upto 2-3D of regular astigmatism, while soft contact lenses can correct only little astigmatism. For higher degrees of astigmatism toric contact lenses are needed. In order to maintain the correct axis of toric lenses, ballasting or truncation is required.
2. **Surgical correction of astigmatism** is quite effective (For details See page 54).

### ■ IRREGULAR ASTIGMATISM

It is characterized by an irregular change of refractive power in different meridians. There are multiple meridians which admit no geometrical analysis.

#### Etiological types

1. **Curvatural irregular astigmatism** is found in patients with extensive corneal scars or keratoconus.
2. **Index irregular astigmatism** due to variable refractive index in different parts of the crystalline lens may occur rarely in patients with cataract.

#### Clinical features

Symptoms of irregular astigmatism include:

- Defective vision,
- Distortion of objects, and
- Polyopia (seeing multiple images).

Signs depicted on investigations are as below:

- **Retinoscopy** reveals irregular pupillary reflex.
- **Slit-lamp examination** may reveal corneal irregularity or Keratoconus.
- **Placido's disc test** reveals distorted circles (See page 522).
- **Photokeratometry and computerized corneal topography** give photographic record of irregular corneal curvature.

### Treatment

1. **Optical treatment** of irregular astigmatism consists of contact lens which replaces the anterior surface of the cornea for refraction.
2. **Phototherapeutic keratectomy (PTK)** performed with excimer laser may be helpful in patients with superficial corneal scar responsible for irregular astigmatism.
3. **Surgical treatment** is indicated in extensive corneal scarring (when vision does not improve with contact lenses) and consists of penetrating keratoplasty or deep anterior lamellar keratoplasty (DALK).

### ANISOMETROPIA

5m

3m

The optical state with equal refraction in the two eyes is termed **isometropia**. When the total refraction of the two eyes is unequal the condition is called **anisometropia**. Small degree of anisometropia is of no concern. A difference of 1D in two eyes causes a 2% difference in the size of the two retinal images. A difference up to 5% in retinal images of two eyes is well tolerated. In other words, an anisometropia up to 2.5D is well tolerated and that between 2.5 and 4D can be tolerated depending upon the individual sensitivity. However, if it is more than 4D, it is not tolerated and is a matter of concern.

#### Etiology

1. **Congenital and developmental anisometropia** occurs due to differential growth of the two eyeballs.
2. **Acquired anisometropia** may occur due to asymmetric age change, unocular aphakia after removal of cataractous lens or due to implantation of IOL of wrong power.

#### Clinical types

1. **Simple anisometropia.** In this, one eye is normal (emmetropic) and the other either myopic (simple myopic anisometropia) or hypermetropic (simple hypermetropic anisometropia).
2. **Compound anisometropia.** Wherein both eyes are either hypermetropic (compound hypermetropic anisometropia) or myopic (compound myopic



anisometropia), but one eye is having higher refractive error than the other.

3. **Mixed anisometropia**. In this, one eye is myopic and the other is hypermetropic. This is also called **antimetropia**.
4. **Simple astigmatic anisometropia**. When one eye is normal and the other has either simple myopic or hypermetropic astigmatism.
5. **Compound astigmatic anisometropia**. When both eyes are astigmatic but of unequal degree.

#### Status of binocular vision in anisometropia

Three possibilities are as follows:

1. **Binocular single vision** is present in small degree of anisometropia (less than 3D).
2. **Unocular vision**. When refractive error in one eye is of high degree, that eye is suppressed and develops **anisometropic amblyopia**. Thus, the patient has only unocular vision.
3. **Alternate vision** occurs when one eye is hypermetropic and the other myopic. The hypermetropic eye is used for distant vision and myopic for near vision.

#### Diagnosis

Diagnosis of anisometropia is made after retinoscopic examination and/or autorefractometry in patients with defective vision.

#### Treatment

1. **Spectacles**. The corrective spectacles can be tolerated up to a maximum difference of 4D. After that there occurs diplopia.
2. **Contact lenses** are advised for higher degrees of anisometropia.
3. **Aniseikonic glasses** are also available, but their clinical results are often disappointing.
4. **Other modalities of treatment** include:
  - **Intraocular lens**—implantation for unocular aphakia.
  - **Refractive corneal surgery** for unilateral high myopia, astigmatism and hypermetropia.
  - **Phakic Refractive Lenses (PRL)** and **Refractive Lens Exchange (RLE)** are quite useful in very high degree anisometropia.

**Note.** Efforts should be made to fully correct the anisometropia in children to prevent anisometropic amblyopia. In adults with amblyopia under correction of more ametropic eye may be required to avoid ocular discomfort.

### ANISEIKONIA

Aniseikonia is defined as a condition wherein the images projected to the visual cortex from the two retinæ are abnormally unequal in size and/or shape. Up to 5% aniseikonia is well tolerated.

#### Etiological types

1. **Optical aniseikonia** may occur due to either inherent or acquired anisometropia of high degree.
2. **Retinal aniseikonia** may develop due to: displacement of retinal elements towards the nodal point in one eye due to stretching or oedema of the retina.
3. **Cortical aniseikonia** implies asymmetrical simultaneous perception inspite of equal size of images formed on the two retinæ.

#### Clinical types

Clinically, aniseikonia may be of different types (Fig. 4.12):

##### 1. Symmetrical aniseikonia

- a. **Spherical**, image may be magnified or minified equally in both meridians (Fig. 4.12A).
- b. **Cylindrical**, image is magnified or minified symmetrically in one meridian (Fig. 4.12B).

##### 2. Asymmetrical aniseikonia

- a. **Prismatic**. In this image, difference increases progressively in one direction (Fig. 4.12C).
- b. **Pincushion**. In this image, distortion increases progressively in both directions, as seen with high plus correction in aphakia (Fig. 4.12D).
- c. **Barrel distortion**. In this image, distortion decreases progressively in both directions, as seen with high minus correction (Fig. 4.12E).
- d. **Oblique distortion**. In this, the size of image is same, but there occurs an oblique distortion of shape (Fig. 4.12F).

#### Symptoms

1. **Asthenopia**, i.e. eyestrain, browache and tiredness of eyes.
2. **Diplopia** due to difficult binocular vision when the difference in images of two eyes is more than 5%.
3. **Difficulty in depth perception** is often noticed.

#### Treatment

1. **Optical aniseikonia** may be corrected by aniseikonic glasses, contact lenses or intraocular lenses or other refractive surgery depending upon the situation.
2. **Retinal aniseikonia** may be corrected by treating the cause.
3. **Cortical aniseikonia** is very difficult to treat.

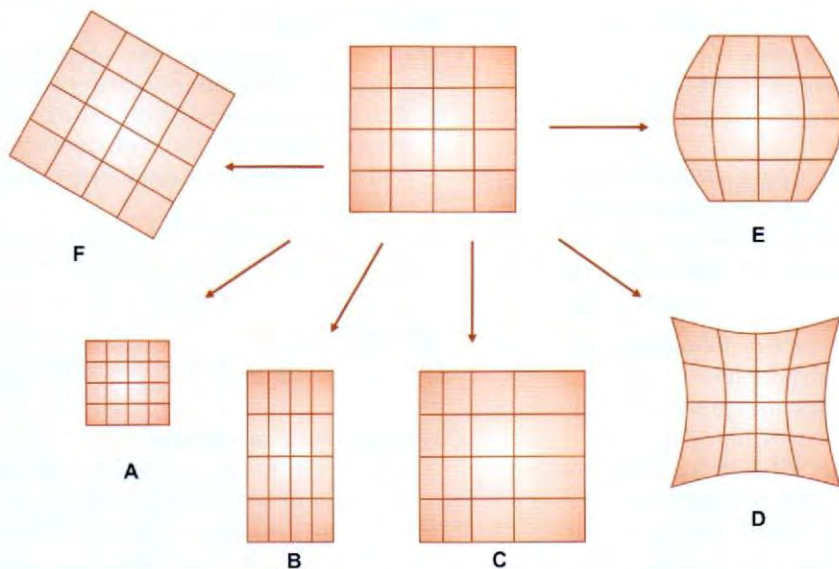
## ACCOMMODATION AND ITS ANOMALIES

### ACCOMMODATION

#### Definition

As we know that in an emmetropic eye, parallel rays of light coming from infinity are brought to focus on the retina, with accommodation being at rest.





**Fig. 4.12** Types of aniseikonia: A, Spherical; B, Cylindrical; C, Prismatic; D, Pin cushion; E, Barrel distortion; F, Oblique distortion

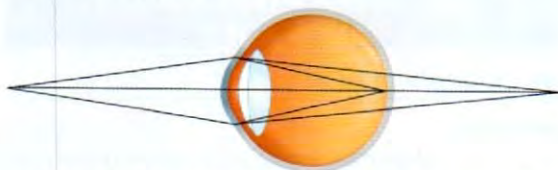
However, our eyes have been provided with a unique mechanism by which we can even focus the diverging rays coming from a near object on the retina in a bid to see clearly (Fig. 4.13). This mechanism is called **accommodation**. In this increase in the power of crystalline lens occurs due to increase in curvature of its surfaces (Fig. 4.14).

At rest the radius of curvature of anterior surface of the lens is 10 mm and that of posterior surface is 6 mm (Fig. 4.14A). During accommodation, curvature of the posterior surface remains almost the same but that of anterior surface changes. In strong accommodation radius of curvature of anterior surface also becomes 6 mm (Fig. 4.14B).

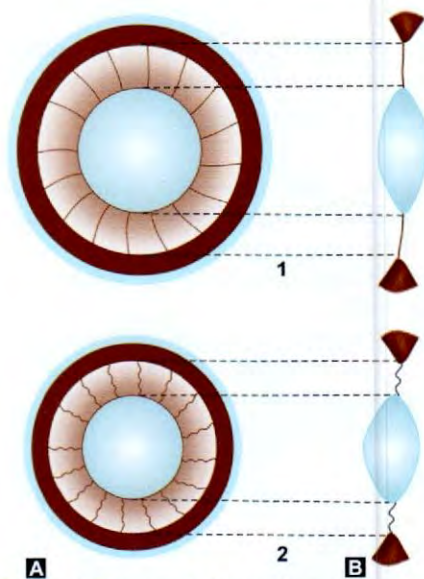
#### Mechanism of accommodation

According to von Helmholtz's capsular theory the process of accommodation is **achieved by a change in the shape of lens** as below:

When the eye is at rest (unaccommodated), the ciliary ring is large and keeps the zonules tense. Because of zonular tension the lens is kept compressed (flat) by the capsule (Fig. 4.14A).



**Fig. 4.13** Effect of accommodation on divergent rays entering the eye



**Fig. 4.14** Changes in the crystalline lens during accommodation

**Contraction of the ciliary muscle** causes the ciliary ring to shorten and thus releases zonular tension on the lens capsule. This allows the elastic capsule to act unrestrained to deform the lens substance. The lens then alters its shape to become more convex or conoidal (to be more precise) (Fig. 4.14B). The lens assumes conoidal shape due to configuration of the anterior lens capsule which is thinner at the centre and thicker at the periphery.



### Far point and near point

The nearest point at which small objects can be seen clearly is called **near point** or **punctum proximum** and the distant (farthest) point is called **far point** or **punctum remotum**.

**Far point and near point of the eye.** These vary with the static refraction of the eye as shown below (Fig. 4.15):

- In an **emmetropic eye** far point is **infinity** (Fig. 4.15A) and **near point varies with age**.
- In **hypermetropic eye** far point is **virtual** and lies **behind the eye** (Fig. 4.15B).
- In **myopic eye**, it is **real** and lies **in front of the eye** (Fig. 4.15C).

### Range and amplitude of accommodation

**Range of accommodation.** The distance between the **near point** and the **far point** is called the **range of accommodation**.

**Amplitude of accommodation.** The difference between the dioptric power needed to focus at near point (P) and far point (R) is called amplitude of accommodation (A). Thus  **$A = P - R$** .

■ **Amplitude of accommodation** and thus the near point of vision (punctum proximum) vary with age. Rough estimate is depicted in Table 4.1.

**Table 4.1** Rough estimate of amplitude of accommodation and near point at different ages

| Age (in years) | Amplitude of accommodation | Near point in cms |
|----------------|----------------------------|-------------------|
| 10             | 14D                        | 7                 |
| 20             | 10D                        | 10                |
| 30             | 07D                        | 14                |
| 40             | 04D                        | 25                |
| 50             | 02D                        | 50                |
| 60             | 01D                        | 100               |

### ANOMALIES OF ACCOMMODATION

Anomalies of accommodation are not uncommon. These include:

- Presbyopia,
- Insufficiency of accommodation,
- Paralysis of accommodation, and
- Spasm of accommodation.

#### ■ PRESBYOPIA 5m

##### Pathophysiology and causes

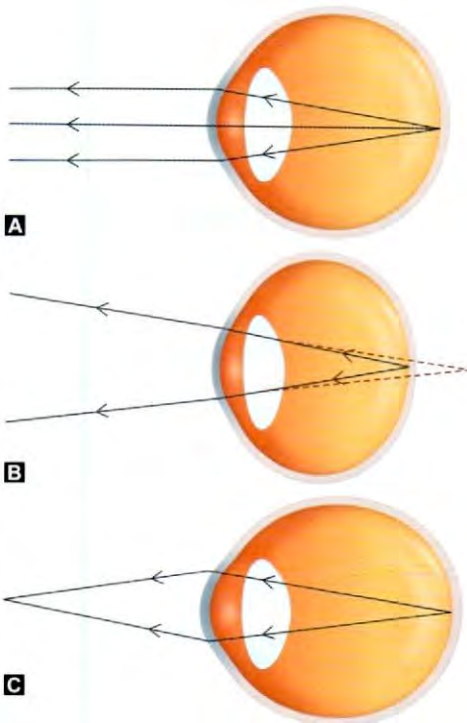
Presbyopia (eye sight of old age) is not an error of refraction but a condition of **physiological insufficiency** of accommodation leading to a **progressive fall in near vision**.

##### Pathophysiology

To understand the pathophysiology of presbyopia a working knowledge about accommodation (as described above) is mandatory. As we know, **in an emmetropic eye far point is infinity ( $\infty$ )** and near point varies with age (being about 7 cm at the age of 10 years, 25 cm at the age of 40 years and 33 cm at the age of 45 years). Therefore, at the age of 10 years, amplitude of accommodation ( $A$ ) =  $100/7$  (dioptric power needed to see clearly at near point) -  $1/\infty$  (dioptric power needed to see clearly at far point) i.e.  **$A$  (at age 10) = 14 dioptres;**

Similarly  $A$  (at age 40) =  $\frac{100}{25} - \frac{1}{\infty} = 4$  dioptres.

Since, we usually **keep the book at about 25 cm**, so we can read comfortably up to the age of **40 years**. After the age of 40 years, near point of accommodation recedes beyond the normal reading or working range. **This condition of failing near vision due to age-related decrease in the amplitude of accommodation or increase in punctum proximum is called presbyopia.**



**Fig. 4.15** Far point in: A, Emmetropic eye; B, Hypermetropic eye; C, Myopic eye



### Causes

Decrease in the accommodative power of crystalline lens with increasing age, leading to presbyopia, occurs due to:

1. **Age-related changes in the lens** which include:
  - Decrease in the elasticity of lens capsule, and
  - Progressive increase in size and hardness (sclerosis) of lens substance which is less easily moulded.
2. **Age-related decline in ciliary muscle power** may also contribute in causation of presbyopia.

**Causes of premature presbyopia** are:

- Uncorrected hypermetropia.
- Premature sclerosis of the crystalline lens.
- General debility causing presenile weakness of ciliary muscle.
- Chronic simple glaucoma.

### Symptoms

1. **Difficulty in near vision.** Patients usually complaint of difficulty in reading small prints (to start with in the evening and in dim light and later even in good light). Another important complaint of the patient is difficulty in threading a needle, etc.
2. **Asthenopic symptoms** due to fatigue of the ciliary muscle are also complained after reading or doing any near work.
3. **Intermittent diplopia**, occurring due to disturbed relationship between accommodation and convergence, may be experienced by few patients.

### Treatment

**1. Optical treatment.** The treatment of presbyopia is the prescription of appropriate convex glasses for near work.

**Rough guide** for providing presbyopic glasses in an emmetrope can be made from the age of the patient.

- 45 years: +1 to +1.25D
- 50 years: +1.5 to 1.75D
- 55 years: +2 to +2.25D
- 60 years: +2.5 to +3D

**Exact presbyopic** addition required, should however, be estimated individually in each eye in order to determine how much is necessary to provide a comfortable range.

**Basic principles for presbyopic correction** are:

- Always find out refractive error for distance and first correct it.
- Find out the presbyopic correction needed in each eye separately and add it to the distant correction.
- Near point should be fixed by taking due consideration for profession of the patient.
- The weakest convex lens with which an individual can see clearly at the near point should be prescribed, since overcorrection will also result in asthenopic symptoms.

**Presbyopic spectacles** may be unifocal, bifocal or varifocal, i.e. progressive (See pages 49–50).

**2. Surgical treatment** of presbyopia is also being considered (See page 55).

### ■ INSUFFICIENCY OF ACCOMMODATION

The term insufficiency of accommodation is used when the accommodative power is significantly less than the normal physiological limits for the patient's age. Therefore, it should not be confused with presbyopia in which the physiological insufficiency of accommodation is normal for the patient's age.

### Causes

1. **Premature sclerosis** of lens.
2. **Weakness of ciliary muscle** due to systemic causes of muscle fatigue such as debilitating illness, anaemia, toxæmia, malnutrition, diabetes mellitus, pregnancy, stress and so on.
3. **Weakness of ciliary muscle** associated with primary open-angle glaucoma.

### Clinical features

All the symptoms of presbyopia are present, but those of asthenopia are more prominent than the blurring of vision.

### Treatment

1. **Treatment** of underlying cause is essential.
2. **Near vision spectacles** in the form of weakest convex lens which allows adequate vision should be given till the power of accommodation improves.
3. **Accommodation exercises** help in recovery, if the underlying debility has passed.

### ■ PARALYSIS OF ACCOMMODATION

Paralysis of accommodation also known as cycloplegia refers to complete absence of accommodation.

### Causes

1. **Drug induced cycloplegia** results due to the effect of atropine, homatropine or other parasympatholytic drugs.
2. **Paralytic internal ophthalmoplegia** (paralysis of ciliary muscle and sphincter pupillae) may result from neuritis associated with diphtheria, syphilis, diabetes, alcoholism, cerebral or meningeal diseases.
3. **Paralysis of accommodation as a component of complete third nerve paralysis** may occur due to intracranial or orbital causes. The lesions may be traumatic, inflammatory or neoplastic in nature.

### Clinical features

1. **Blurring of near vision** is the main complaint in previously emmetropic or hypermetropic



patients. Blurring of near vision may not be marked in myopic patients.

2. Photophobia (glare) due to accompanying dilatation of pupil (mydriasis) is usually associated with blurring of near vision.
3. Abnormal receding of near point and markedly decreased range of accommodation may be required on assessment.

### Treatment

1. Self-recovery occurs in drug-induced cycloplegia and in diphtheric cases (once the systemic disease is treated).
2. Dark glasses are effective in reducing the glare.
3. Convex lenses for near vision may be prescribed if the paralysis is permanent.

### ■ SPASM OF ACCOMMODATION

Spasm of accommodation refers to exertion of abnormally excessive accommodation.

### Causes

1. Drug-induced spasm of accommodation is known to occur after use of strong miotics such as echothiophate and DFP.
2. Spontaneous spasm of accommodation is occasionally found in children who attempt to compensate for a refractive anomaly that impairs their vision. It usually occurs when the eyes are used for excessive near work in unfavourable circumstances such as bad illumination, bad reading position, lowered vitality, state of neurosis, mental stress or anxiety.

### Clinical features

1. Defective vision due to induced myopia.
2. Asthenopic symptoms are more marked than the visual symptoms.

### Diagnosis

It is made with refraction under atropine cycloplegia.

### Treatment

1. Relaxation of ciliary muscle by atropine for few weeks and prohibition of near work allow prompt recovery from spasm of accommodation.
2. Correction of associated causative factors prevent recurrence.
3. Assurance and if necessary psychotherapy should be given.

## DETERMINATION OF REFRACTIVE ERRORS

The procedure of determining refractive errors is termed as *clinical refraction*.

### Methods of refraction

1. Objective refraction methods includes:

- Retinoscopy,
- Autorefractometry, and
- Photorefraction.

2. Subjective refraction steps include:

- Monocular subjective refraction,
- Binocular balancing, and
- Correction for near vision.

(for details See chapter 25 page 597)

## MODALITIES FOR CORRECTION OF REFRACTIVE ERRORS

Modes of correcting refractive errors include:

- Spectacles,
- Contact lenses and
- Refractive surgery.

### SPECTACLES

The lenses fitted in a frame constitute the spectacles. It is a common, cheap and easy method of prescribing corrective lenses in patients with refractive errors and presbyopia. Some important aspects of the spectacles are described here:

#### Lens materials

Broadly the lens material can be either glass or plastic.

#### 1. Glass lenses

Glass lenses are in use for spectacles since long. Mostly crown glass, with refractive index of 1.5223 is used.

**Problems** with glass lenses include:

- Shattering on impact, and
- Thicker and heavy, especially in high powered lenses, due to lower refractive index.

#### 2. Plastic lenses

Plastic lenses being break resistance and light weight have become more popular. Various materials used are:

Resin lenses or CR-39 plastic lenses made of an ally resin with refractive index of 1.49 are good alternative to crown glass lenses. These are light, unbreakable but less scratch resistant and thus need protective coating. Further, because of low refractive index, these lenses are a bit thicker.

High index plastic lenses (refractive index 1.55 to 1.74) being thinner are preferred especially for high powered spectacles. Various plastic materials with high refractive index include polyurethane (Hyperindex), co-polymer (RLX-light) or ally base (True light).

Polycarbonate, with a refractive index of 1.58, is another synthetic material used for making lenses.



Such lenses are thinner, light weight, impact resistant and also have property of ultraviolet protection.

### Lens shapes

1. **Meniscus lenses** are used for making spectacles in small or moderate degree of refractive errors. The standard curved lenses are ground with a concave posterior surface ( $-1.25D$  in the periscopic type or  $-6.0D$  in the deep meniscus type) and the spherical correction is then added to the anterior surface.

2. **Lenticular form lenses** are used for high plus and high minus lenses. In this type, the central portion is corrective and the peripheral surfaces are parallel to one another.

3. **Aspheric lenses** are also used to make high plus aphakic lenses by modifying the lens curvature peripherally to reduce aberrations and provide better peripheral vision.

### Single versus multiple power lenses

1. **Single vision lens** refers to a lens having the same corrective power over the entire surface. These are used to correct myopia, hypermetropia, astigmatism or presbyopia.

2. **Bifocal lenses** have different powers to upper (for distant vision) and lower (for near vision) segments. Different styles of bifocal lenses shown in Fig. 4.16 are:

- Two piece bifocals,
- Cemented supplementary wafer,
- Inserted wafer,
- Fused bifocals, and
- Solid bifocals.

3. **Trifocal lenses** have three portions, upper (for distant vision), middle (for intermediate range vision) and lower (for near vision).

4. **Progressive power add lenses (PALs)**, also known as varifocal lenses, have progressive increase in power

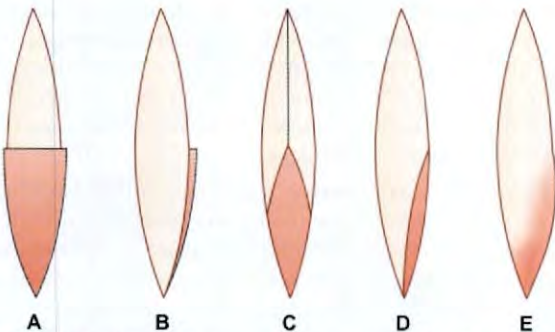


Fig. 4.16 Bifocal lenses: A, Two-piece; B, Cemented supplementary wafer; C, Inserted wafer; D, Fused; E, Solid

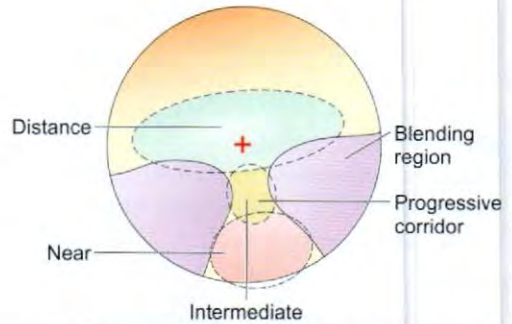


Fig. 4.17 Structural characteristics of a standard progressive power add lens (PAL)

from distance to near simulating normal process of accommodation. A standard PAL characteristically has four zones (Fig. 4.17):

- Distance vision zone in the upper part,
- Near vision zone in the lower part,
- Intermediate zone or progressive corridor for intermediate distances, and
- Blending region, on each side.

### CONTACT LENSES 3m

Contact lens is an artificial device whose front surface substitutes the anterior surface of the cornea. Therefore, in addition to correction of refractive error, the irregularities of the front surface of cornea can also be corrected by the contact lenses.

#### Parts, curves, and nomenclature for contact lens

To understand the contact lens specifications following standard nomenclature has been recommended (Fig. 4.18).

1. **Diameters of the contact lens** are as follows:

a. **Overall diameter (OD)** of the lens is the linear measurement of the greatest distance across the physical boundaries of the lens. It is expressed in millimetres (It should not be confused as being twice the radius of curvature).

b. **Optic zone diameter (OZ)** is the dimension of the central optic zone of lens which is meant to focus rays on the retina.

2. **Curves of the lens** are as follows:

a. **Base curve (BC)** or **central posterior curve (CPC)** is a curve on the back surface of the lens to fit the front surface of cornea.

b. **Peripheral curves**. These are concentric to base curve and include intermediate posterior curve (IPC) and peripheral posterior curve (PPC). These are meant to serve as reservoir of tears and to form a ski for lens movements.



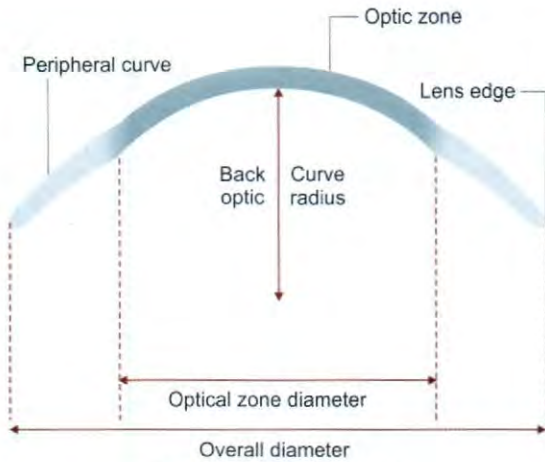


Fig. 4.18 A contact lens

**c. Central anterior curve (CAC) or front curve (FC)** is the curve on the anterior surface of the optical zone of the lens. Its curvature determines the power of contact lens.

**d. Peripheral anterior curve (PAC)** is a slope on the periphery of anterior surface which goes up to the edge.

**e. Intermediate anterior curve (IAC)** is fabricated only in the high power minus and plus lenses. It lies between the CAC and PAC.

**3. Edge of the lens.** It is the polished and blended union of the peripheral posterior and anterior curves of the lens.

**4. Power of the lens.** It is measured in terms of posterior vertex power in dioptres.

**5. Thickness of the lens.** It is usually measured in the centre of the lens and varies depending upon the posterior vertex power of the lens.

**6. Tint.** It is the colour of the lens.

#### Types of contact lenses 5m

Depending upon the nature of the material used in their manufacturing, the contact lenses can be divided into following three types:

- **Hard lenses,**
- **Rigid gas permeable lenses, and**
- **Soft lenses.**

**1. Hard lenses** are manufactured from PMMA (polymethylmethacrylate). The PMMA has a high optical quality, stability and is light in weight, nontoxic, durable and cheap. The hard corneal lenses have a diameter of 8.5–10 mm. Presently, these are not used commonly.

■ **Disadvantages of PMMA hard contact lenses.** (i) PMMA is practically impermeable to  $O_2$  thus restricting the tolerance. (ii) Being hard, it can cause

corneal abrasions. (iii) Being hydrophobic in nature, resists wetting but a stable tear film can be formed over it.

**Note.** PMMA contact lenses are sparingly used in clinical practice because of poor patient acceptance.

**2. Rigid gas permeable (RGP) lenses** are made up of materials which are permeable to oxygen. Basically these are also hard, but somehow due to their  $O_2$  permeability they have become popular by the name of semisoft lenses. Gas permeable lenses are commonly manufactured from:

- **Silicone acrylate** a copolymer of PMMA and silicone containing vinyl monomer.
- **Cellulose acetate butyrate (CAB)**, a class of thermoplastic material derived from special grade wood cellulose has also been used, but is not popular.

**3. Soft lenses** are made up of HEMA (hydroxyethylmethacrylate). These are made about 1–2 mm larger than the corneal diameter.

■ **Advantages:** Being soft and oxygen permeable, they are most comfortable and so well tolerated.

■ **Disadvantages** include problem of wettability, proteinaceous deposits, getting cracked, limited life, inferior optical quality, more chances of corneal infections and inability to correct astigmatism of more than 2 dioptres.

**Note.** In clinical practice soft lenses are most frequently prescribed.

#### Indications of contact lens use

**1. Optical indications.** Optically contact lenses can be used by every patient having refractive error, if so required, for cosmetic purposes. However, the absolute indications include anisometropia, unilateral aphakia, high myopia, keratoconus and irregular astigmatism.

*Advantages of contact lenses over spectacles:*

- Irregular corneal astigmatism which is not possible to correct with glasses can be corrected with contact lenses.
- Contact lenses provide normal field of vision.
- Aberrations associated with spectacles (such as peripheral aberrations and prismatic distortions) are eliminated.
- Binocular vision can be retained in high anisometropia (e.g. unilateral aphakia) owing to less magnification of the retinal image.
- Rain and fog do not condense upon contact lenses as they do on spectacles.
- Cosmetically more acceptable especially by females and all patients with thick glasses in high refractive errors.



## kerato-refractive surgery?

2. **Therapeutic indications** are as follows:

- **Corneal diseases**, e.g. non-healing corneal ulcers, bullous keratopathy, filamentary keratitis and recurrent corneal erosion syndrome.
- **Diseases of iris** such as aniridia, coloboma and albinism to avoid glare.
- **In glaucoma** as vehicle for drug delivery.
- **In amblyopia**, opaque contact lenses are used for occlusion.
- **Bandage soft contact lenses** are used following keratoplasty and in microcorneal perforation.

3. **Preventive indications** include:

- Prevention of symblepharon and restoration of fornices in chemical burns.
- Exposure keratitis.
- Trichiasis.

4. **Diagnostic indications** use during (i) gonioscopy; (ii) electroretinography; (iii) examination of fundus in the presence of irregular corneal astigmatism; (iv) fundus photography; (v) Goldmann's 3 mirror examination.

5. **Operative indications**. Contact lenses are used during (i) goniotomy operation for congenital glaucoma; (ii) vitrectomy; and (iii) endocular photocoagulation.

6. **Cosmetic indications** include (i) unsightly corneal scars (colour contact lenses); (ii) ptosis (haptic contact lens); and (iii) cosmetic scleral lenses in phthisis bulbi.

7. **Occupational indications** include use by (i) sportsmen; (ii) pilots; and (iii) actors.

### Contraindications for contact lens use

- (i) Mental incompetence, and poor motivation;
- (ii) chronic dacryocystitis; (iii) chronic blepharitis and recurrent styes; (iv) chronic conjunctivitis; (v) dry eye syndromes; (vi) corneal dystrophies and degenerations; and (vii) recurrent diseases like episcleritis, scleritis and iridocyclitis.

### Principles of fitting and care of lenses

It is beyond the scope of this chapter. Interested readers are advised to consult some textbooks on contact lenses.

5m

## REFRACTIVE SURGERY

Surgery to correct refractive errors has become very popular. It should be performed after the refractive error has stabilized; preferably after 20 years of age. Various surgical techniques in vogue are described below:

### ■ REFRACTIVE SURGERY FOR MYOPIA

#### A. Cornea based procedures

3m

##### 1. Radial keratotomy (RK)

Radial keratotomy (RK) refers to making deep (90% of corneal thickness) radial incisions in the peripheral

part of cornea leaving the central 4 mm optical zone (Fig. 4.19). These incisions on healing; flatten the central cornea thereby reducing its refractive power. This procedure gives good correction in low to moderate myopia (2 to 6 D).

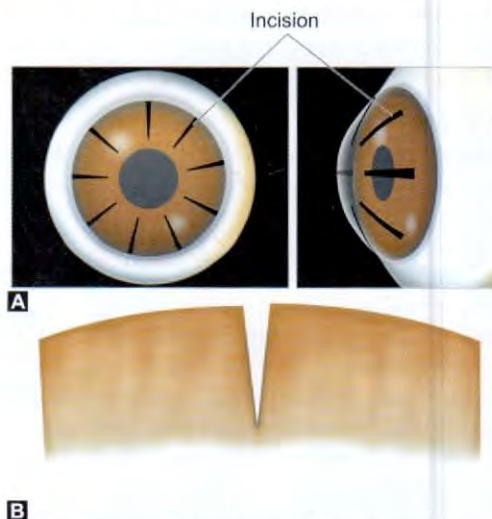
However, because of its disadvantages and advent of safe techniques (LASIK and PRK) RK is not recommended presently.

■ **Disadvantages of RK:** (i) Cornea is weakened, so chances of globe rupture following trauma are more after RK than after PRK. This point is particularly important for patients who are at high risk of blunt trauma, e.g. sports persons, athletes and military personnel. (ii) Rarely, uneven healing may lead to irregular astigmatism. (iii) Patients may feel glare at night.

### 2. Laser ablation corneal procedures

a. **Photorefractive keratectomy (PRK)**. In this technique, to correct myopia a central optical zone of anterior corneal stroma is photoablated using excimer laser (193-nm UV flash) to cause flattening of the central cornea (Fig. 4.20). Like RK, the PRK also gives very good correction for up to -6D of myopia.

b. **Laser in-situ keratomileusis (LASIK)**. In this technique first a flap of 130–160 micron thickness of anterior corneal tissue is raised with the help of an automated microkeratome. Recently, femtosecond laser is being used for more accurate and smooth flaps. After creating a corneal flap midstromal tissue is ablated directly with an excimer laser beam, ultimately flattening the cornea (Fig. 4.21). Currently, this procedure is being considered the refractive surgery of choice for myopia of up to -8 D.



**Fig. 4.19** Radial keratotomy: A, Configuration of radial incisions; B, Depth of incision



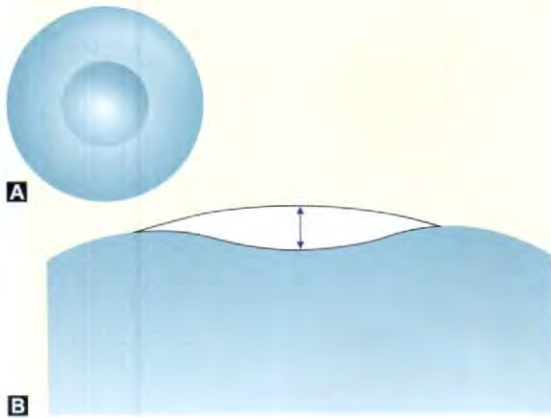


Fig. 4.20 Photorefractive keratectomy (PRK) for myopia as seen: A, From front; B, In cross section

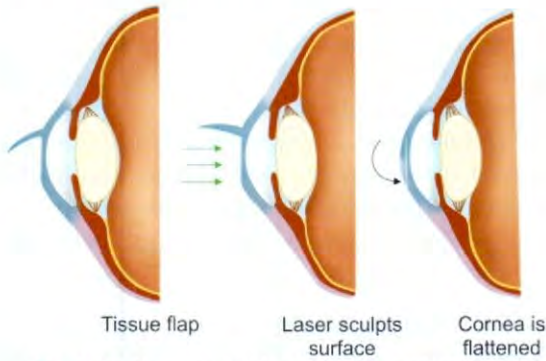


Fig. 4.21 Procedure of laser in-situ keratomileusis (LASIK)

**Patient selection criteria** are:

- Patients **above 20 years** of age.
- **Stable refraction** for at least 12 months.
- Motivated patient.
- **Absence of corneal pathology.**
- Presence of **ectasia** or any other corneal pathology and a **corneal thickness less than 450  $\mu\text{m}$  is an absolute contraindication for LASIK.**

**Advances in LASIK.** Recently many advances have been made in LASIK surgery. Some of the important advances are:

- **Customized (C) LASIK.** C-LASIK is based on the corneal topography and wave front technology. This technique, in **addition to spherical and cylindrical correction**, also corrects the aberrations present in the eye and **gives vision beyond 6/6, i.e. 6/5 or 6/4.**
- **Femto-LASIK** also known as '**All laser LASIK**' or '**No blade LASIK**' or **iLASIK** refers to the technique in which the corneal flap is made with the help

of femtosecond laser (rather than the micro keratome) for greater precision and consistency.

- **Custom Femto-LASIK (C F - LASIK)** refers to corneal topography and **wave front guided LASIK** in which corneal flap is made with femtosecond laser.
- **Epi-(E) LASIK.** In this technique instead of corneal stromal flap **only the epithelial sheet is separated mechanically with the use of a customized device (Epiedge Epikeratome).** Being an advanced surface ablation procedure, it is **devoid of complications** related to corneal stromal flap.

**Advantages of LASIK.** (i) **Minimal or no postoperative pain.** (ii) **Recovery of vision is very early** as compared to PRK. (iii) **No risk of perforation** during surgery and later rupture of globe due to trauma unlike RK. (iv) **No residual haze** unlike PRK where subepithelial scarring may occur. (v) **LASIK is effective in correcting myopia of -8 D.**

**Disadvantages.** 1. LASIK is much **more expensive.** 2. It requires greater surgical skill than RK and PRK. 3. There is potential **risk of flap related complications** which include (i) **intraoperative flap amputation**, (ii) **wrinkling of the flap on repositioning**, (iii) **postoperative flap dislocation/subluxation**, (iv) **epithelization of flap-bed interface**, and (v) **irregular astigmatism.** 4. Other possible complications include **infection, diffuse lamellar keratitis, dry eye, corneal ectasia, glare and regression.**

### 3. Refractive lenticule extraction (ReLEx)

**Refractive lenticule extraction (ReLEx)**, also called as '**All-Femtolaser-Vision-Correction**', is a technique in which a **lenticule of corneal stroma is extracted with the help of femtosecond laser.** The technique is now **named SMILE (small incision lenticule extraction)** (Fig. 4.22). This technique can correct myopia, with and without astigmatism, **up to 10D.**

### 4. Intercorneal ring (ICR) implantation

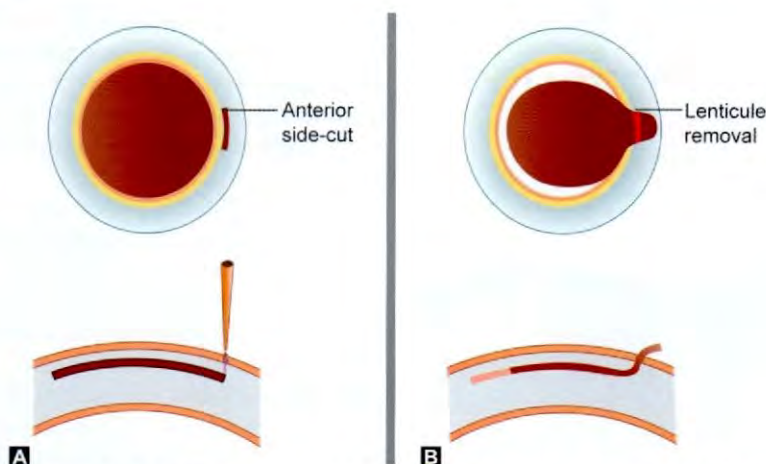
**Intercorneal ring (ICR) implantation** into the peripheral cornea at approximately **2/3 stromal depth** is being considered. It results in a vaulting effect that flattens the central cornea, decreasing myopia. The ICR procedure has the **advantage of being reversible.**

**Disadvantages** of ICR include **unpredictable results** and **keratitis.**

### 5. Orthokeratology

**Orthokeratology** is a non-surgical reversible method of molding the cornea with **overnight wear of unique rigid gas permeable contact lenses.** It is being considered for correction of myopia up to -5D. It can be used even in patients below 18 years of age.





**Fig. 4.22** Surgical technique of small incision lenticule extraction (SMILE):  
A, Creation of lenticule and anterior side-cut; B, Removal of lenticule

## B. Lens based procedures

1. **Refractive lens exchange.** Extraction of clear crystalline lens (**Fucala's operation**) has been advocated long back for myopia of  $-16$  to  $-18D$ , especially in unilateral cases. Recently, clear lens extraction with intraocular lens (IOL) implantation of appropriate power, i.e. refractive lens exchange (RLE) is being recommended as the refractive surgery for myopia of more than  $12D$ .

**Possible Complications** include endophthalmitis, after cataract and retinal detachment.

2. **Phakic refractive lens (PRL) or implantable contact lens (ICL)** is also being considered for correction of myopia of  $>8D$ . In this technique, a special type of intraocular lens (IOL) is implanted in the anterior chamber or posterior chamber anterior to the natural crystalline lens.

**Possible Complications** include endophthalmitis, Iridocyclitis, cataract formation and secondary glaucoma.

## REFRACTIVE SURGERY FOR HYPEROPIA

In general, refractive surgery for hyperopia is not as effective or reliable as for myopia. However, following procedures are used:

### I. Cornea based procedures

1. **Thermal laser keratoplasty (TLK)** has been used for low degree of hyperopia. In this technique, 8 laser spots are applied in a ring at the periphery to produce central steepening with mid-infrared energy from **Thallium-Holmium-Chromium (THC):YAG laser**. Regression effect and induced astigmatism are the main problems.

2. **Conductive keratoplasty (CK)** is nonablative and nonincisional procedure in which cornea is steepened by collagen shrinkage through the

radiofrequency energy applied through a fine tip inserted into the peripheral corneal stroma in a ring pattern. This technique is effective for correcting hyperopia of up to  $3D$ .

3. **Hyperopic PRK** using excimer laser has also been tried. Regression effect and prolonged epithelial healing are the main problems encountered.

4. **Hyperopic LASIK** is effective in correcting hypermetropia up to  $+4D$ .

### II. Lens based procedures

1. **Phakic refractive lens (PRL) or implantable contact lens (ICL)** is being considered a surgical option for hyperopia of more than  $+4D$ .

2. **Refractive lens exchange (RLE)** is a good option for high hyperopia especially in presbyopic age.

## REFRACTIVE SURGERY FOR ASTIGMATISM

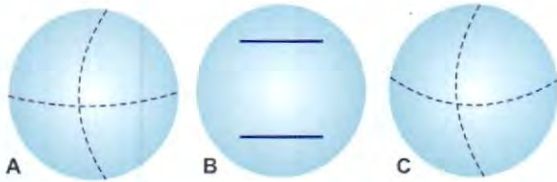
Refractive surgical techniques employed for myopia can be adapted to correct astigmatism alone or simultaneously with myopia as follows:

1. **Astigmatic keratotomy (AK)** refers to making transverse cuts in the mid-periphery of the steep corneal meridian (Fig. 4.23). AK can be performed alone (for astigmatism only) or along with RK (for associated myopia).

2. **Limbal relaxing incisions (LRIs)** are useful for correcting astigmatism of upto  $2D$ . These are especially used during cataract surgery and should preferably be made with the help of a diamond knife.

3. **Corneal relaxing incisions (CRIs)**, similar to LRIs, can correct astigmatism upto  $2D$  and are made with diamond knife. Now-a-days CRIs are also made with femtosecond laser during femtosecond-laser assisted cataract surgery (FLACS).





**Fig. 4.23** Astigmatic keratotomy: A, Showing flat and deep meridians of cornea; B, Paired transverse incisions to flatten the steep meridian; C, Showing correction of astigmatism after astigmatic keratotomy

4. **Photo-astigmatic refractive keratotomy (PARK)** is performed using excimer laser.
5. **LASIK procedure** can also be adopted to correct astigmatism upto 5 D.
6. **SMILE procedure** can also be adopted to correct astigmatism.

### ■ MANAGEMENT OF POST-KERATOPLASTY ASTIGMATISM

1. **Selective removal of sutures** in steep meridians may improve varying degrees of astigmatism and should be tried first of all.
- Note.** Other procedures mentioned below should be performed only after all the sutures are out and refraction is stable.
2. **Arcuate relaxing incisions** in the donor cornea along the steep meridian may correct astigmatism up to 4–6D.
3. **Relaxing incisions combined with compression** sutures may correct astigmatism up to 10D.
4. **Corneal wedge resection with suture closure** of the wound may be performed in the flat meridian to correct astigmatism greater than 10D.
5. **LASIK procedure** can also be adopted to correct post-keratoplasty astigmatism.

### ■ REFRACTIVE SURGERY FOR PRESBYOPIA

Refractive surgery for presbyopia, still under trial, includes:

#### I. Cornea based procedures

1. **Monovision conductive keratoplasty (CK)** is being considered increasingly to correct presbyopia in one eye (non-dominant). Principle is same as for correction of hypermetropia (See page 54).
2. **Monovision LASIK**, in it one eye is corrected for distance vision and other for near vision.

3. **Presbyopic bifocal LASIK or LASIK-PARM**, i.e. LASIK by **Presbyopia Avalos Rozakis Method** is a technique under trial in which the shape of the cornea is altered to have two concentric vision zones that help the presbyopic patient to focus on near and distant objects.

4. **Presbyopic multifocal (PML) LASIK**. In it multifocality on the cornea is created using a multistep laser treatment.

5. **Presbyond laser blended vision** is a micro-monovision LASIK with added laser treatment to create a positive spherical aberration in the centre of eye.

6. **Corneal inlays for presbyopia**, placed in a corneal pocket created with the help of femtosecond laser, are presently under evaluation. Common commercially available presbyopia corneal inlays include Acufocus inlay, Biovision and Presbylens.

#### II. Lens based procedures

1. **Multifocal or accommodating IOL** implantation after lens extraction especially in patients with cataract or high refractive errors (refractive lens exchange) correct far as well as near vision.

2. **Monovision with intraocular lenses**, i.e. correction of one eye for distant vision and other for near vision with IOL implantation after bilateral cataract extraction also serves as a solution for far and near correction. Similarly, monovision with clear lens extraction and intraocular lens implantation (refractive lens exchange, i.e. RLE) is also being considered increasingly in presbyopic patients with associated higher refractive errors.

#### III. Sclera based procedures

Following scleral expansion procedures are being tried, but results are controversial.

1. **Anterior ciliary sclerotomy (ACS)**, with tissue barriers is currently under trial. With initial encouraging results, multi-site clinical studies are planned for US and Europe to evaluate this technique.

2. **Scleral spacing procedures and scleral ablation with erbium: YAG laser** are other sclera-based procedures still under trial.

3. **Scleral expansion with insertion of intrascleral segments of collagen or silicone expansion plugs** may help by improving accommodation.





# Section III

---

## Diseases of Eye and Ocular Adnexa

### *Section Outline*

5. Diseases of Conjunctiva
6. Diseases of Cornea
7. Diseases of Sclera
8. Diseases of Uveal Tract
9. Diseases of Lens
10. Glaucoma
11. Diseases of Vitreous
12. Diseases of Retina
13. Neuro-Ophthalmology
14. Disorders of Ocular Motility
15. Disorders of Eyelids
16. Diseases of Lacrimal Apparatus
17. Diseases of Orbit
18. Ocular Injuries



1. 1978-1979  
2. 1980-1981  
3. 1982-1983  
4. 1984-1985  
5. 1986-1987  
6. 1988-1989  
7. 1990-1991  
8. 1992-1993  
9. 1994-1995  
10. 1996-1997  
11. 1998-1999  
12. 2000-2001  
13. 2002-2003  
14. 2004-2005  
15. 2006-2007  
16. 2008-2009  
17. 2010-2011  
18. 2012-2013  
19. 2014-2015  
20. 2016-2017  
21. 2018-2019  
22. 2020-2021  
23. 2022-2023  
24. 2024-2025  
25. 2026-2027  
26. 2028-2029  
27. 2030-2031  
28. 2032-2033  
29. 2034-2035  
30. 2036-2037  
31. 2038-2039  
32. 2040-2041  
33. 2042-2043  
34. 2044-2045  
35. 2046-2047  
36. 2048-2049  
37. 2050-2051  
38. 2052-2053  
39. 2054-2055  
40. 2056-2057  
41. 2058-2059  
42. 2060-2061  
43. 2062-2063  
44. 2064-2065  
45. 2066-2067  
46. 2068-2069  
47. 2070-2071  
48. 2072-2073  
49. 2074-2075  
50. 2076-2077  
51. 2078-2079  
52. 2080-2081  
53. 2082-2083  
54. 2084-2085  
55. 2086-2087  
56. 2088-2089  
57. 2090-2091  
58. 2092-2093  
59. 2094-2095  
60. 2096-2097  
61. 2098-2099  
62. 2100-2101  
63. 2102-2103  
64. 2104-2105  
65. 2106-2107  
66. 2108-2109  
67. 2110-2111  
68. 2112-2113  
69. 2114-2115  
70. 2116-2117  
71. 2118-2119  
72. 2120-2121  
73. 2122-2123  
74. 2124-2125  
75. 2126-2127  
76. 2128-2129  
77. 2130-2131  
78. 2132-2133  
79. 2134-2135  
80. 2136-2137  
81. 2138-2139  
82. 2140-2141  
83. 2142-2143  
84. 2144-2145  
85. 2146-2147  
86. 2148-2149  
87. 2150-2151  
88. 2152-2153  
89. 2154-2155  
90. 2156-2157  
91. 2158-2159  
92. 2160-2161  
93. 2162-2163  
94. 2164-2165  
95. 2166-2167  
96. 2168-2169  
97. 2170-2171  
98. 2172-2173  
99. 2174-2175  
100. 2176-2177  
101. 2178-2179  
102. 2180-2181  
103. 2182-2183  
104. 2184-2185  
105. 2186-2187  
106. 2188-2189  
107. 2190-2191  
108. 2192-2193  
109. 2194-2195  
110. 2196-2197  
111. 2198-2199  
112. 2200-2201  
113. 2202-2203  
114. 2204-2205  
115. 2206-2207  
116. 2208-2209  
117. 2210-2211  
118. 2212-2213  
119. 2214-2215  
120. 2216-2217  
121. 2218-2219  
122. 2220-2221  
123. 2222-2223  
124. 2224-2225  
125. 2226-2227  
126. 2228-2229  
127. 2230-2231  
128. 2232-2233  
129. 2234-2235  
130. 2236-2237  
131. 2238-2239  
132. 2240-2241  
133. 2242-2243  
134. 2244-2245  
135. 2246-2247  
136. 2248-2249  
137. 2250-2251  
138. 2252-2253  
139. 2254-2255  
140. 2256-2257  
141. 2258-2259  
142. 2260-2261  
143. 2262-2263  
144. 2264-2265  
145. 2266-2267  
146. 2268-2269  
147. 2270-2271  
148. 2272-2273  
149. 2274-2275  
150. 2276-2277  
151. 2278-2279  
152. 2280-2281  
153. 2282-2283  
154. 2284-2285  
155. 2286-2287  
156. 2288-2289  
157. 2290-2291  
158. 2292-2293  
159. 2294-2295  
160. 2296-2297  
161. 2298-2299  
162. 2300-2301  
163. 2302-2303  
164. 2304-2305  
165. 2306-2307  
166. 2308-2309  
167. 2310-2311  
168. 2312-2313  
169. 2314-2315  
170. 2316-2317  
171. 2318-2319  
172. 2320-2321  
173. 2322-2323  
174. 2324-2325  
175. 2326-2327  
176. 2328-2329  
177. 2330-2331  
178. 2332-2333  
179. 2334-2335  
180. 2336-2337  
181. 2338-2339  
182. 2340-2341  
183. 2342-2343  
184. 2344-2345  
185. 2346-2347  
186. 2348-2349  
187. 2350-2351  
188. 2352-2353  
189. 2354-2355  
190. 2356-2357  
191. 2358-2359  
192. 2360-2361  
193. 2362-2363  
194. 2364-2365  
195. 2366-2367  
196. 2368-2369  
197. 2370-2371  
198. 2372-2373  
199. 2374-2375  
200. 2376-2377  
201. 2378-2379  
202. 2380-2381  
203. 2382-2383  
204. 2384-2385  
205. 2386-2387  
206. 2388-2389  
207. 2390-2391  
208. 2392-2393  
209. 2394-2395  
210. 2396-2397  
211. 2398-2399  
212. 2400-2401  
213. 2402-2403  
214. 2404-2405  
215. 2406-2407  
216. 2408-2409  
217. 2410-2411  
218. 2412-2413  
219. 2414-2415  
220. 2416-2417  
221. 2418-2419  
222. 2420-2421  
223. 2422-2423  
224. 2424-2425  
225. 2426-2427  
226. 2428-2429  
227. 2430-2431  
228. 2432-2433  
229. 2434-2435  
230. 2436-2437  
231. 2438-2439  
232. 2440-2441  
233. 2442-2443  
234. 2444-2445  
235. 2446-2447  
236. 2448-2449  
237. 2450-2451  
238. 2452-2453  
239. 2454-2455  
240. 2456-2457  
241. 2458-2459  
242. 2460-2461  
243. 2462-2463  
244. 2464-2465  
245. 2466-2467  
246. 2468-2469  
247. 2470-2471  
248. 2472-2473  
249. 2474-2475  
250. 2476-2477  
251. 2478-2479  
252. 2480-2481  
253. 2482-2483  
254. 2484-2485  
255. 2486-2487  
256. 2488-2489  
257. 2490-2491  
258. 2492-2493  
259. 2494-2495  
260. 2496-2497  
261. 2498-2499  
262. 2500-2501  
263. 2502-2503  
264. 2504-2505  
265. 2506-2507  
266. 2508-2509  
267. 2510-2511  
268. 2512-2513  
269. 2514-2515  
270. 2516-2517  
271. 2518-2519  
272. 2520-2521  
273. 2522-2523  
274. 2524-2525  
275. 2526-2527  
276. 2528-2529  
277. 2530-2531  
278. 2532-2533  
279. 2534-2535  
280. 2536-2537  
281. 2538-2539  
282. 2540-2541  
283. 2542-2543  
284. 2544-2545  
285. 2546-2547  
286. 2548-2549  
287. 2550-2551  
288. 2552-2553  
289. 2554-2555  
290. 2556-2557  
291. 2558-2559  
292. 2560-2561  
293. 2562-2563  
294. 2564-2565  
295. 2566-2567  
296. 2568-2569  
297. 2570-2571  
298. 2572-2573  
299. 2574-2575  
300. 2576-2577  
301. 2578-2579  
302. 2580-2581  
303. 2582-2583  
304. 2584-2585  
305. 2586-2587  
306. 2588-2589  
307. 2590-2591  
308. 2592-2593  
309. 2594-2595  
310. 2596-2597  
311. 2598-2599  
312. 2600-2601  
313. 2602-2603  
314. 2604-2605  
315. 2606-2607  
316. 2608-2609  
317. 2610-2611  
318. 2612-2613  
319. 2614-2615  
320. 2616-2617  
321. 2618-2619  
322. 2620-2621  
323. 2622-2623  
324. 2624-2625  
325. 2626-2627  
326. 2628-2629  
327. 2630-2631  
328. 2632-2633  
329. 2634-2635  
330. 2636-2637  
331. 2638-2639  
332. 2640-2641  
333. 2642-2643  
334. 2644-2645  
335. 2646-2647  
336. 2648-2649  
337. 2650-2651  
338. 2652-2653  
339. 2654-2655  
340. 2656-2657  
341. 2658-2659  
342. 2660-2661  
343. 2662-2663  
344. 2664-2665  
345. 2666-2667  
346. 2668-2669  
347. 2670-2671  
348. 2672-2673  
349. 2674-2675  
350. 2676-2677  
351. 2678-2679  
352. 2680-2681  
353. 2682-2683  
354. 2684-2685  
355. 2686-2687  
356. 2688-2689  
357. 2690-2691  
358. 2692-2693  
359. 2694-2695  
360. 2696-2697  
361. 2698-2699  
362. 2700-2701  
363. 2702-2703  
364. 2704-2705  
365. 2706-2707  
366. 2708-2709  
367. 2710-2711  
368. 2712-2713  
369. 2714-2715  
370. 2716-2717  
371. 2718-2719  
372. 2720-2721  
373. 2722-2723  
374. 2724-2725  
375. 2726-2727  
376. 2728-2729  
377. 2730-2731  
378. 2732-2733  
379. 2734-2735  
380. 2736-2737  
381. 2738-2739  
382. 2740-2741  
383. 2742-2743  
384. 2744-2745  
385. 2746-2747  
386. 2748-2749  
387. 2750-2751  
388. 2752-2753  
389. 2754-2755  
390. 2756-2757  
391. 2758-2759  
392. 2760-2761  
393. 2762-2763  
394. 2764-2765  
395. 2766-2767  
396. 2768-2769  
397. 2770-2771  
398. 2772-2773  
399. 2774-2775  
400. 2776-2777  
401. 2778-2779  
402. 2780-2781  
403. 2782-2783  
404. 2784-2785  
405. 2786-2787  
406. 2788-2789  
407. 2790-2791  
408. 2792-2793  
409. 2794-2795  
410. 2796-2797  
411. 2798-2799  
412. 2800-2801  
413. 2802-2803  
414. 2804-2805  
415. 2806-2807  
416. 2808-2809  
417. 2810-2811  
418. 2812-2813  
419. 2814-2815  
420. 2816-2817  
421. 2818-2819  
422. 2820-2821  
423. 2822-2823  
424. 2824-2825  
425. 2826-2827  
426. 2828-2829  
427. 2830-2831  
428. 2832-2833  
429. 2834-2835  
430. 2836-2837  
431. 2838-2839  
432. 2840-2841  
433. 2842-2843  
434. 2844-2845  
435. 2846-2847  
436. 2848-2849  
437. 2850-2851  
438. 2852-2853  
439. 2854-2855  
440. 2856-2857  
441. 2858-2859  
442. 2860-2861  
443. 2862-2863  
444. 2864-2865  
445. 2866-2867  
446. 2868-2869  
447. 2870-2871  
448. 2872-2873  
449. 2874-2875  
450. 2876-2877  
451. 2878-2879  
452. 2880-2881  
453. 2882-2883  
454. 2884-2885  
455. 2886-2887  
456. 2888-2889  
457. 2890-2891  
458. 2892-2893  
459. 2894-2895  
460. 2896-2897  
461. 2898-2899  
462. 2900-2901  
463. 2902-2903  
464. 2904-2905  
465. 2906-2907  
466. 2908-2909  
467. 2910-2911  
468. 2912-2913  
469. 2914-2915  
470. 2916-2917  
471. 2918-2919  
472. 2920-2921  
473. 2922-2923  
474. 2924-2925  
475. 2926-2927  
476. 2928-2929  
477. 2930-2931  
478. 2932-2933  
479. 2934-2935  
480. 2936-2937  
481. 2938-2939  
482. 2940-2941  
483. 2942-2943  
484. 2944-2945  
485. 2946-2947  
486. 2948-2949  
487. 2950-2951  
488. 2952-2953  
489. 2954-2955  
490. 2956-2957  
491. 2958-2959  
492. 2960-2961  
493. 2962-2963  
494. 2964-2965  
495. 2966-2967  
496. 2968-2969  
497. 2970-2971  
498. 2972-2973  
499. 2974-2975  
500. 2976-2977  
501. 2978-2979  
502. 2980-2981  
503. 2982-2983  
504. 2984-2985  
505. 2986-2987  
506. 2988-2989  
507. 2990-2991  
508. 2992-2993  
509. 2994-2995  
510. 2996-2997  
511. 2998-2999  
512. 3000-3001  
513. 3002-3003  
514. 3004-3005  
515. 3006-3007  
516. 3008-3009  
517. 3010-3011  
518. 3012-3013  
519. 3014-3015  
520. 3016-3017  
521. 3018-3019  
522. 3020-3021  
523. 3022-3023  
524. 3024-3025  
525. 3026-3027  
526. 3028-3029  
527. 3030-3031  
528. 3032-3033  
529. 3034-3035  
530. 3036-3037  
531. 3038-3039  
532. 3040-3041  
533. 3042-3043  
534. 3044-3045  
535. 3046-3047  
536. 3048-3049  
537. 3050-3051  
538. 3052-3053  
539. 3054-3055  
540. 3056-3057  
541. 3058-3059  
542. 3060-3061  
543. 3062-3063  
544. 3064-3065  
545. 3066-3067  
546. 3068-3069  
547. 3070-3071  
548. 3072-3073  
549. 3074-3075  
550. 3076-3077  
551. 3078-3079  
552. 3080-3081  
553. 3082-3083  
554. 3084-3085  
555. 3086-3087  
556. 3088-3089  
557. 3090-3091  
558. 3092-3093  
559. 3094-3095  
560. 3096-3097  
561. 3098-3099  
562. 3100-3101  
563. 3102-3103  
564. 3104-3105  
565. 3106-3107  
566. 3108-3109  
567. 3110-3111  
568. 3112-3113  
569. 3114-3115  
570. 3116-3117  
571. 3118-3119  
572. 3120-3121  
573. 3122-3123  
574. 3124-3125  
575. 3126-3127  
576. 3128-3129  
577. 3130-3131  
578. 3132-3133  
579. 3134-3135  
580. 3136-3137  
581. 3138-3139  
582. 3140-3141  
583. 3142-3143  
584. 3144-3145  
585. 3146-3147  
586. 3148-3149  
587. 3150-3151  
588. 3152-3153  
589. 3154-3155  
590. 3156-3157  
591. 3158-3159  
592. 3160-3161  
593. 3162-3163  
594. 3164-3165  
595. 3166-3167  
596. 3168-3169  
597. 3170-3171  
598. 3172-3173  
599. 3174-3175  
600. 3176-3177  
601. 3178-3179  
602. 3180-3181  
603. 3182-3183  
604. 3184-3185  
605. 3186-3187  
606. 3188-3189  
607. 3190-3191  
608. 3192-3193  
609. 3194-3195  
610. 3196-3197  
611. 3198-3199  
612. 3200-3201  
613. 3202-3203  
614. 3204-3205  
615. 3206-3207  
616. 3208-3209  
617. 3210-3211  
618. 3212-3213  
619. 3214-3215  
620. 3216-3217  
621. 3218-3219  
622. 3220-3221  
623. 3222-3223  
624. 3224-3225  
625. 3226-3227  
626. 3228-3229  
627. 3230-3231  
628. 3232-3233  
629. 3234-3235  
630. 3236-3237  
631. 3238-3239  
632. 3240-3241  
633. 3242-3243  
634. 3244-3245  
635. 3246-3247  
636. 3248-3249  
637. 3250-3251  
638. 3252-3253  
639. 3254-3255  
640. 3256-3257  
641. 3258-3259  
642. 3260-3261  
643. 3262-3263  
644. 3264-3265  
645. 3266-3267  
646. 3268-3269  
647. 3270-3271  
648. 3272-3273  
649. 3274-3275  
650. 3276-3277  
651. 3278-3279  
652. 3280-3281  
653. 3282-3283  
654. 3284-3285  
655. 3286-3287  
656. 3288-3289  
657. 3290-3291  
658. 3292-3293  
659. 3294-3295  
660. 3296-3297  
661. 3298-3299  
662. 3300-3301  
663. 3302-3303  
664. 3304-3305  
665. 3306-3307  
666. 3308-3309  
667. 3310-3311  
668. 3312-3313  
669. 3314-3315  
670. 3316-3317  
671. 3318-3319  
672. 3320-3321  
673. 3322-3323  
674. 3324-3325  
675. 3326-3327  
676. 3328-3329  
677. 3330-3331  
678. 3332-3333  
679. 3334-3335  
680. 3336-3337  
681. 3338-3339  
682. 3340-3341  
683. 3342-3343  
684. 3344-3345  
685. 3346-3347  
686. 3348-3349  
687. 3350-3351  
688. 3352-3353  
689. 3354-3355  
690. 3356-3357  
691. 3358-3359  
692. 3360-3361  
693. 3362-3363  
694. 3364-3365  
695. 3366-3367  
696. 3368-3369  
697. 3370-3371  
698. 3372-3373  
699. 3374-3375  
700. 3376-3377  
701. 3378-3379  
702. 3380-3381  
703. 3382-3383  
704. 3384-3385  
705. 3386-3387  
706. 3388-3389  
707. 3390-3391  
708. 3392-3393  
709. 3394-3395  
710. 3396-3397  
711. 3398-3399  
712. 3400-3401  
713. 3402-3403  
714. 3404-3405  
715. 3406-3407  
716. 3408-3409  
717. 3410-3411  
718. 3412-3413  
719. 3414-3415  
720. 3416-3417  
721. 3418-3419  
722. 3420-3421  
723. 3422-3423  
724. 3424-3425  
725. 3426-3427  
726. 3428-3429  
727. 3430-3431  
728. 3432-3433  
729. 3434-3435  
730. 3436-3437  
731. 3438-3439  
732. 3440-3441  
733. 3442-3443  
734. 3444-3445  
735. 3446-3447  
736. 3448-3449  
737. 3450-3451  
738. 3452-3453  
739. 3454-3455  
740. 3456-3457  
741. 3458-3459  
742. 3460-3461  
743. 3462-3463  
744. 3464-3465  
745. 3466-3467  
746. 3468-3469  
747. 3470-3471  
748. 3472-3473  
749. 3474-3475  
750. 3476-3477  
751. 3478-3479  
752. 3480-3481  
753. 3482-3483  
754. 3484-3485  
755. 3486-3487  
756. 3488-3489  
757. 3490-3491  
758. 3492-3493  
759. 3494-3495  
760. 3496-3497  
761. 3498-3499  
762. 3500-3501  
763. 3502-3503  
764. 3504-3505  
765. 3506-3507  
766. 3508-3509  
767. 3510-3511  
768. 3512-3513  
769. 3514-3515  
770. 3516-3517  
771. 3518-3519  
772. 3520-3521  
773. 3522-3523  
774. 3524-3525  
775. 3526-3527  
776. 3528-3529  
777. 3530-3531  
778. 3532-3533  
779. 3534-3535

# 5

## Diseases of Conjunctiva

### APPLIED ANATOMY

- Parts
- Structure
- Glands

### INFLAMMATIONS OF CONJUNCTIVA

- Infective conjunctivitis
  - Bacterial
  - Chlamydial
  - Viral
  - Granulomatous
- Allergic conjunctivitis
- Cicatricial conjunctivitis
- Toxic conjunctivitis

### DEGENERATIVE CONDITIONS

- Pinguecula
- Pterygium
- Concretions
- Amyloid degeneration

### SYMPTOMATIC CONDITIONS OF CONJUNCTIVA

- Hyperaemia
- Chemosis
- Ecchymosis
- Xerosis
- Discoloration

### CYSTS AND TUMOURS

- Cysts of conjunctiva
- Tumours of conjunctiva

- Membranous conjunctivitis?
- Phlycten?

5m

pseudomembranous (A) membranous conjunctivitis  
 - causes of pseudomembranous conjunctivitis  
 - Membranous conjunctivitis  
 - Phlycten

### APPLIED ANATOMY

Conjunctiva is a translucent mucous membrane which lines the posterior surface of the eyelids and anterior aspect of the eyeball. The name conjunctiva (conjoin: to join) has been given to this **mucous membrane** owing to the fact that it joins the eyeball to the lids. It stretches from the lid margin to the limbus, and encloses a complex space called **conjunctival sac** which is open in front at the palpebral fissure.

### PARTS OF CONJUNCTIVA

Conjunctiva can be divided into three parts (Fig. 5.1):  
**1. Palpebral conjunctiva.** It lines the lids and can be subdivided into **marginal**, **tarsal** and **orbital** conjunctiva.

**i. Marginal conjunctiva** extends from the lid margin to about 2 mm on the back of lid up to a shallow groove, the **sulcus subtarsalis**. It is actually a **transitional zone** between skin and the conjunctiva proper.

**ii. Tarsal conjunctiva** is thin, transparent and highly vascular. It is firmly adherent to the whole tarsal plate in the upper lid. In the lower lid, it is adherent only to half width of the tarsus. The tarsal glands are seen through it as **yellow streaks**.

**iii. Orbital part of palpebral conjunctiva** lies loose between the tarsal plate and fornix.

**2. Bulbar conjunctiva.** It is thin, transparent and lies loose over the underlying structures and thus can be **moved easily**. It is separated from the anterior sclera by **episcleral tissue** and **Tenon's capsule**.

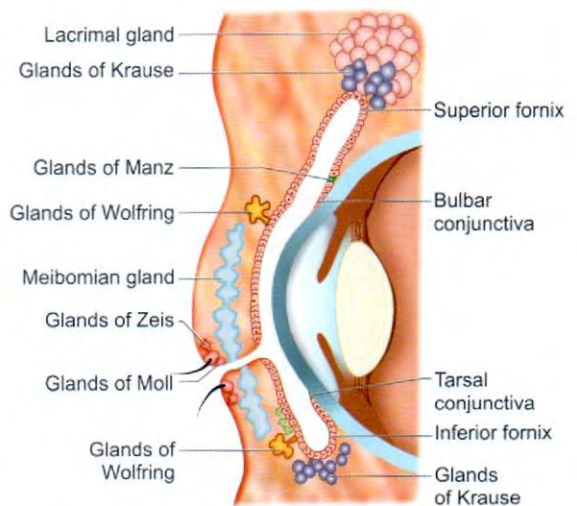


Fig. 5.1 Parts of conjunctiva and conjunctival glands



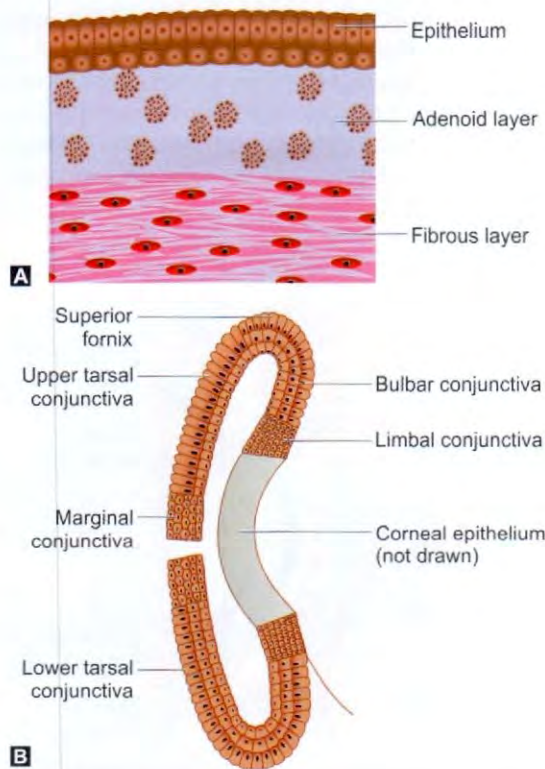
A 3 mm ridge of bulbar conjunctiva around the cornea is called **limbal conjunctiva**. In the area of **limbus**, the conjunctiva, Tenon's capsule and the episcleral tissue are fused into a dense tissue which is strongly adherent to the underlying corneoscleral junction. At the limbus, the epithelium of conjunctiva becomes continuous with that of cornea.

**3. Conjunctival fornix.** It is a continuous circular cul-de-sac which is broken only on the medial side by caruncle and the plica semilunaris. Conjunctival fornix joins the bulbar conjunctiva with the palpebral conjunctiva. It can be subdivided into superior, inferior, medial and lateral fornices.

### Structure of conjunctiva

Histologically, conjunctiva consists of **three layers** namely, **epithelium**, **adenoid layer**, and **fibrous layer** (Fig. 5.2).

**1. Epithelium.** This is a 2-5 layered, non-keratinized epithelium. It also contains goblet cells which constitute about 10% of epithelium. The layer of epithelial cells in conjunctiva varies from region to region and in its different parts as follows:



**Fig. 5.2** Microscopic structure of conjunctiva showing three layers (A) and arrangement of epithelial cells in different regions of conjunctiva (B)

- **Marginal conjunctiva** has 5-layered stratified squamous type of epithelium.
- **Tarsal conjunctiva** has 2-layered epithelium: superficial layer of cylindrical cells and a deep layer of flat cells.
- **Fornix and bulbar conjunctiva** have 3-layered epithelium: a superficial layer of cylindrical cells, middle layer of polyhedral cells and a deep layer of cuboidal cells.
- **Limbal conjunctiva** has again many layered (5 to 6) stratified squamous epithelium. Limbal stem cells are present in basal layer of this part.

**2. Adenoid layer.** It is also called **lymphoid layer** and consists of **fine connective tissue reticulum** in the meshes of which lie lymphocytes. This layer is **most developed in the fornices**. It is not present since birth but **develops after 3-4 months of life**. For this reason, conjunctival inflammation in an infant does not produce follicular reaction.

**3. Fibrous layer.** It consists of a meshwork of **collagenous and elastic fibres**. It is **thicker than the adenoid layer**, except in the region of **tarsal conjunctiva**, where it is very thin. This layer contains vessels and nerves of conjunctiva. It **blends with the underlying Tenon's capsule** in the region of bulbar conjunctiva.

### Glands of conjunctiva

The conjunctiva contains *two types* of glands (See Fig. 5.1)

**1. Mucin secretory glands.** These include:

- **Goblet cells** (the unicellular glands located within the epithelium),
- **Crypts of Henle** (present in the tarsal conjunctiva), and
- **Glands of Manz** (found in limbal conjunctiva).

These glands secrete mucus which is essential for wetting the cornea and conjunctiva.

**2. Accessory lacrimal glands.** These are:

- **Glands of Krause**, present in **subconjunctival connective tissue of fornices**, about 42 in the upper fornix and 8 in the lower fornix, and
- **Glands of Wolfring**, present along the **upper border of superior tarsus** and along the **lower border of inferior tarsus**.

### Plica semilunaris

It is a pinkish crescentic fold of conjunctiva, present in the **medial canthus**. Its **lateral free border** is **concave**. It is a vestigial structure in human beings and represents the nictitating membrane (or third eyelid) of lower animals.



### Caruncle

The caruncle is a small, ovoid, pinkish mass, situated in the inner canthus, just medial to the plica semilunaris. In reality, it is a piece of modified skin and so is covered with stratified squamous epithelium and contains sweat glands, sebaceous glands and hair follicles.

### Blood supply of conjunctiva

**Arteries** supplying the conjunctiva are derived from three sources (Fig. 5.3): (1) peripheral arterial arcade of the eyelid; (2) marginal arcade of the eyelid; and (3) anterior ciliary arteries.

■ **Palpebral conjunctiva and fornices** are supplied by branches from the peripheral and marginal arterial arcades of the eyelids.

■ **Bulbar conjunctiva** is supplied by two sets of vessels:

- **Posterior conjunctival arteries** which are branches from the arterial arcades of the eyelids; and
- **Anterior conjunctival arteries** which are the branches of anterior ciliary arteries. Terminal branches of the posterior conjunctival arteries anastomose with the anterior conjunctival arteries to form the pericorneal plexus.

**Veins** from the conjunctiva drain into the venous plexus of eyelids and some around the cornea into the anterior ciliary veins.

**Lymphatics** of the conjunctiva are arranged in two layers: a superficial and a deep. Lymphatics from the lateral side drain into preauricular lymph nodes and those from the medial side into the submandibular lymph nodes.

### Nerve supply of conjunctiva

- A circumcorneal zone of conjunctiva is supplied by the branches from long ciliary nerves which supply the cornea.

- **Rest of the conjunctiva** is supplied by the branches from lacrimal, infratrochlear, supratrochlear, supraorbital and frontal nerves.

## INFLAMMATIONS OF CONJUNCTIVA

Inflammation of the conjunctiva (conjunctivitis) is classically defined as conjunctival hyperaemia associated with a discharge which may be watery, mucoid, mucopurulent or purulent.

### Types of Conjunctivitis

Common types of conjunctivitis include:

10m

#### A. Infective conjunctivitis

##### 1. Bacterial conjunctivitis

- Acute bacterial conjunctivitis
- Hyperacute bacterial conjunctivitis
- Chronic bacterial conjunctivitis
- Angular bacterial conjunctivitis

*Chlamydial conjunctivitis*

- Trachoma
- Adult inclusion conjunctivitis
- Neonatal chlamydial conjunctivitis

##### 2. Viral conjunctivitis

- Adenovirus conjunctivitis
  - Epidemic keratoconjunctivitis
  - Pharyngoconjunctival fever
- Enterovirus conjunctivitis
- Molluscum contagiosum conjunctivitis
- Herpes simplex conjunctivitis

##### 3. Ophthalmia neonatorum (A separate entity)

##### 4. Granulomatous conjunctivitis

- Parinaud oculoglandular syndrome.

#### B. Allergic Conjunctivitis

##### 1. Simple allergic conjunctivitis

- Hay fever conjunctivitis (rhino conjunctivitis)
- Seasonal allergic conjunctivitis (SAC)
- Perennial allergic conjunctivitis (PAC)

##### 2. Vernal keratoconjunctivitis (VKC)

##### 3. Atopic keratoconjunctivitis (AKC)

##### 4. Giant papillary conjunctivitis (GPC)

##### 5. Phlyctenular conjunctivitis (PKC)

##### 6. Contact dermoconjunctivitis (drop conjunctivitis).

#### C. Cicatricial conjunctivitis

- Ocular mucous membrane pemphigoid (OMMP),
- Stevens Johnson syndrome (SJS),
- Toxic epidermal necrolysis (TeN), and
- Secondary cicatricial conjunctivitis.

#### D. Toxic conjunctivitis

## A. INFECTIVE CONJUNCTIVITIS

Infective conjunctivitis, i.e. inflammation of the conjunctiva caused by micro-organisms is the

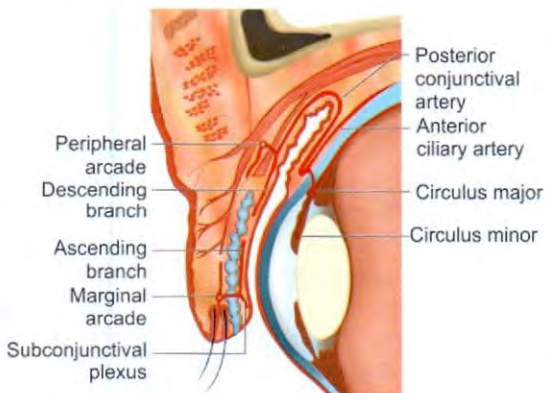


Fig. 5.3 Blood supply of conjunctiva



commonest variety. This is in spite of the fact that the conjunctiva has been provided with *natural protective mechanisms* in the form of:

- *Low temperature* due to exposure to air,
- *Physical protection* by lids,
- *Flushing action* of tears,
- *Antibacterial activity* of lysozymes, and
- *Humoral protection* by the tear immunoglobulins.

## BACTERIAL CONJUNCTIVITIS

There has occurred a relative decrease in the incidence of bacterial conjunctivitis in general and those caused by *Gonococcus* and *Corynebacterium Diphtheriae* in particular. However, in developing countries, it still continues to be the *commonest* type of conjunctivitis. It can occur as sporadic and epidemics cases. Outbreaks of bacterial conjunctivitis, epidemics are quite *frequent during monsoon season*.

### Etiology

**A. Predisposing factors** for bacterial conjunctivitis, especially epidemic forms, are *flies*, *poor hygienic conditions*, *hot dry climate*, *poor sanitation* and *dirty habits*. These factors help the infection to establish, as the disease is *highly contagious*.

**B. Causative organisms.** It may be caused by a wide range of organisms in the following approximate order of frequency:

- *Staphylococcus aureus* is the most common cause of bacterial conjunctivitis and blepharoconjunctivitis.
- *Staphylococcus epidermidis* is an innocuous flora of lid and conjunctiva. It can also produce blepharoconjunctivitis.
- *Streptococcus pneumoniae* (*Pneumococcus*) produces acute conjunctivitis usually associated with petechial subconjunctival haemorrhages. The disease has a self-limiting course of 9–10 days.
- *Streptococcus pyogenes* (haemolyticus) is virulent and usually produces *pseudomembranous conjunctivitis*.
- *Haemophilus influenzae* (aegyptius, Koch-Weeks bacillus). It classically causes epidemics of *mucopurulent conjunctivitis*, known as 'red-eye' especially in semitropical countries.
- *Moraxella lacunata* (Moraxella Axenfeld Bacillus) is most common cause of *angular conjunctivitis* and *angular blepharoconjunctivitis*.
- *Pseudomonas pyocyanea* is a virulent organism, which readily invades the cornea.
- *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* typically produces acute *purulent conjunctivitis* in adults and *ophthalmia neonatorum* in newborn. It is capable of invading intact corneal epithelium.

- *Neisseria meningitidis* (*Meningococcus*) may produce *mucopurulent conjunctivitis*.
- *Corynebacterium diphtheriae* causes acute *membranous conjunctivitis*. Such infections are not known nowadays.

**C. Mode of infection.** Conjunctiva may get infected from three sources, viz, *exogenous*, *local surrounding structures* and *endogenous*, by following modes:

1. *Exogenous infections* are the commonest and may spread:
  - *Directly* through close contact, as airborne infections or as waterborne infections;
  - *Vector transmission* (e.g. flies);
  - *Material transfer* such as infected fingers of doctors, nurses, common towels, handkerchiefs, and infected tonometers.
2. *Local spread* may occur some times from neighbouring structures such as *infected lacrimal sac*, *lids*, and *nasopharynx*. In addition to these, a change in the character of relatively innocuous organisms present in the conjunctival sac itself may cause infections.
3. *Endogenous infections* may occur very rarely through blood, e.g. gonococcal and meningococcal infections.

### Pathology

Pathological changes of bacterial conjunctivitis consist of:

1. *Vascular response.* It is characterised by *congestion* and *increased permeability* of the conjunctival vessels associated with *proliferation of capillaries*.
2. *Cellular response.* It is in the form of *exudation of polymorphonuclear cells* and other inflammatory cells into the *substantia propria of conjunctiva* as well as in the conjunctival sac.
3. *Conjunctival tissue response.* Conjunctiva becomes *oedematous*. The *superficial epithelial cells degenerate*, become loose and even desquamate. There occurs proliferation of basal layers of conjunctival epithelium and increase in the number of mucin-secreting goblet cells.
4. *Conjunctival discharge.* It consists of tears, mucus, inflammatory cells, desquamated epithelial cells, fibrin and bacteria. If the inflammation is very severe, *diapedesis of red blood cells* may occur and *discharge may become blood stained*.

Severity of pathological changes varies depending upon the severity of inflammation and the causative organism. The changes are thus more marked in purulent conjunctivitis than mucopurulent conjunctivitis.



### Clinical types of bacterial conjunctivitis

Depending upon the causative bacteria and the severity of infection, bacterial conjunctivitis may present in following clinical forms:

- Acute bacterial conjunctivitis,
- Hyperacute bacterial conjunctivitis,
- Chronic bacterial conjunctivitis, and
- Angular bacterial conjunctivitis.

10m

### ACUTE BACTERIAL CONJUNCTIVITIS

#### Purulent conjunctivitis?

Acute bacterial conjunctivitis is characterised by marked conjunctival hyperaemia and mucopurulent discharge from the eye. So, clinically, it is called *acute mucopurulent conjunctivitis*. It is the **most common** type of bacterial conjunctivitis.

**Common causative bacteria** are: *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Koch-Weeks Bacillus*, *Pneumococcus* and *Streptococcus*. Mucopurulent conjunctivitis generally accompanies exanthemata such as measles and scarlet fever.

### Clinical features

#### Symptoms

- Discomfort, foreign body, grittiness, blurring and redness of sudden onset (due to engorgement of vessels) are the usual presenting symptoms.
- Mild photophobia, i.e. difficulty to tolerate light.
- Mucopurulent discharge from the eyes.
- Sticking together of lid margins with discharge during sleep.
- Slight blurring of vision due to mucous flakes in front of cornea.
- Coloured halos, may be complained by some patients due to prismatic effect of mucus present on cornea.

#### Signs (Fig. 5.4)

- Flakes of mucopus seen in the fornices, canthi and lid margins is a critical sign.



Fig. 5.4 Signs of acute mucopurulent conjunctivitis

- **Conjunctival congestion**, which is more marked in palpebral conjunctiva, fornices and peripheral part of bulbar conjunctiva, giving the appearance of 'fiery red eye'. The congestion is typically **less marked in circumcorneal zone**.
- **Chemosis**, i.e. swelling of conjunctiva.
- **Papillae of fine type** may be seen.
- **Petechial haemorrhages** are seen when the causative organism is *Pneumococcus*.
- **Cilia** are usually **matted** together with **yellow crusts**.
- **Eyelids** may be slightly oedematous.

**Clinical course.** Mucopurulent conjunctivitis is usually **bilateral**, although one eye may become affected 1–2 days before the other. The disease usually reaches its height in three to four days. If untreated, **in mild cases** the infection may be overcome and the condition is cured in 10–15 days; or it may pass to **less intense form**, the 'chronic catarrhal conjunctivitis'.

**Complications.** Occasionally, the disease may be complicated by **superficial punctate epitheliopathy**, **marginal corneal ulceration**, **superficial keratitis**, **blepharitis**, or **dacryocystitis**.

### Differential diagnosis

1. **From other causes of acute red eye** (See page 164 and Table 8.1).
2. **From other types of conjunctivitis.** It is made out from the typical clinical feature of disease and is confirmed by **conjunctival cytology** and **bacteriological examination** of secretions and scrapings (Table 5.1).

### Treatment

1. **Topical antibiotics** to control the infection constitute the **main treatment** of acute bacterial conjunctivitis. Ideally, the antibiotic should be **selected after culture and sensitivity tests** but in practice, it is difficult. However, in routine, most of the patients respond well to broad spectrum antibiotics. Therefore, treatment may be started with **chloramphenicol (1%)**, or **gentamicin (0.3%)**, or **tobramycin 0.3%** or **framycetin 0.3%** eye drops 3–4 hourly in day and ointment used at night will not only provide antibiotic cover but also help to reduce the early morning stickiness. If the patient does not respond to these antibiotics, then the quinolone antibiotic drops such as **ciprofloxacin (0.3%)**, **ofloxacin (0.3%)**, **gatifloxacin (0.3%)** or **moxifloxacin (0.5%)** may be used.

2. **Irrigation of conjunctival sac** with **sterile luke warm saline** once or twice a day will help by removing the deleterious material. **Frequent eyewash** (as advocated earlier) is, however, contraindicated as



**Table 5.1** Differentiating features of common types of conjunctivitis

|                                 | Bacterial                | Viral      | Allergic          | Chlamydial (TRIC) |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------|------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| <b>(A) Clinical signs</b>       |                          |            |                   |                   |
| 1. Congestion                   | Marked                   | Moderate   | Mild to moderate  | Moderate          |
| 2. Chemosis                     | ++                       | ±          | ++                | ±                 |
| 3. Subconjunctival haemorrhages | ±                        | ±          | –                 | –                 |
| 4. Discharge                    | Purulent or mucopurulent | Watery     | Ropy/ watery      | Mucopurulent      |
| 5. Papillae                     | ±                        | –          | ++                | ±                 |
| 6. Follicles                    | –                        | +          | –                 | ++                |
| 7. Pseudomembrane               | ±                        | ±          | –                 | –                 |
| 8. Pannus                       | –                        | –          | – (Except vernal) | +                 |
| 9. Preauricular lymph nodes     | +                        | ++         | –                 | ±                 |
| <b>(B) Cytological features</b> |                          |            |                   |                   |
| 1. Neutrophils                  | +                        | + (Early)  | –                 | +                 |
| 2. Eosinophils                  | –                        | –          | +                 | –                 |
| 3. Lymphocytes                  | –                        | +          | –                 | +                 |
| 4. Plasma cells                 | –                        | –          | –                 | +                 |
| 5. Multinuclear cells           | –                        | +          | –                 | –                 |
| 6. Inclusion bodies:            |                          |            |                   |                   |
| Cytoplasmic                     | –                        | + (Pox)    | –                 | +                 |
| Nuclear                         | –                        | + (Herpes) | –                 | –                 |
| 7. Micro-organisms              | +                        | –          | –                 | –                 |

it will wash away the lysozyme and other protective proteins present in the tears.

**3. Dark goggles** should be used to prevent photophobia.

**4. No bandage** should be applied in patients with mucopurulent conjunctivitis. Exposure to air keeps the temperature of conjunctival cul-de-sac low which inhibits the bacterial growth; while after bandaging, conjunctival sac is converted into an incubator, and thus infection flares to a severe degree within 24 hours. Further, bandaging of eye will also prevent the escape of discharge.

**5. No steroids** should be applied, otherwise infection will flare up and bacterial corneal ulcer may develop.

**6. Anti-inflammatory and analgesic drugs** (e.g. ibuprofen and paracetamol) may be given orally for 2–3 days to provide symptomatic relief from mild pain especially in sensitive patients.

**Preventive measures** to reduce risk of transmission to the close contacts include:

- Frequent handwashing, and
- Avoidance of sharing towel, handkerchief and pillow with others.

## HYPERACUTE BACTERIAL CONJUNCTIVITIS

Hyperacute bacterial conjunctivitis also known as acute purulent conjunctivitis or **acute blenorhea** is characterised by a violent inflammatory response.

It occurs in two forms:

1. **Adult purulent conjunctivitis**, and
2. **Ophthalmia neonatorum** in newborn (See page 77).

## ■ HYPERACUTE CONJUNCTIVITIS OF ADULTS (GONOCOCCAL CONJUNCTIVITIS)

### Etiology

The disease affects adults, predominantly males. Gonococcal infection directly spreads from genitals to eye. Presently, incidence of gonococcal conjunctivitis has markedly decreased.

### Clinical feature

Onset is hyperacute (12 to 24 hours).

**Symptoms** include:

- **Pain** which is moderate to severe,
- **Purulent discharge**, which is usually copious, and
- **Swelling of eyelids**, which is usually marked.
- **Mild photophobia**, i.e. difficulty to tolerate light.
- **Sticking together of lid margins** with discharge during sleep.
- **Slight blurring of vision** due to mucous flakes in front of cornea.

**Signs** are as follows (Fig. 5.5):

- **Eyelids** are tense and swollen.
- **Tenderness** is marked.
- **Discharge** is thick purulent, copious trickling down the cheeks.





Fig. 5.5 Hyperacute conjunctivitis

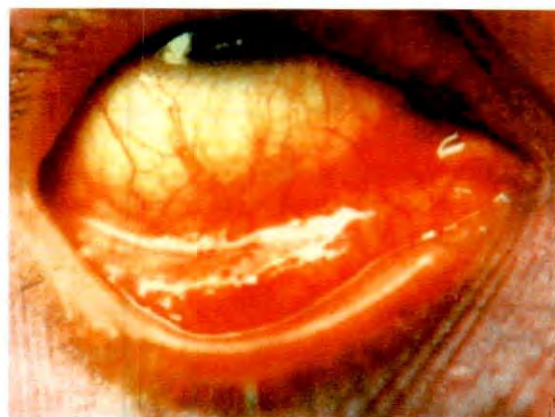


Fig. 5.6 Pseudomembranous conjunctivitis

- Conjunctiva shows marked chemosis, congestion and papillae, giving bright red velvety appearance. Frequently, a pseudomembrane may be seen on the conjunctival surface (Fig. 5.6).
- Preauricular lymph nodes are usually enlarged and tender.

**Associations.** Gonococcal conjunctivitis is usually associated with urethritis and arthritis.

#### Complications

1. **Corneal involvement** is quite frequent as the *Gonococcus* can invade the normal cornea through an intact epithelium. It may occur in the form of diffuse haze and oedema, central necrosis, corneal ulceration or even perforation.
2. **Iridocyclitis** may also occur, but is not as common as corneal involvement.
3. **Systemic complications**, though rare, include gonorrhoea arthritis, endocarditis and septicaemia.

#### Treatment

1. **Systemic therapy** is far more critical than the topical therapy for the infections caused by *N. gonorrhoeae*. Any of the following regimes can be adopted:

- **Third generation cephalosporin** such as cefoxitin 1.0 g or cefotaxime 500 mg IV qid or ceftriaxone 1.0 g IM qid, all for 5 days; should be preferred treatment.
- **Quinolones** such as norfloxacin 1.2 g orally qid for 5 days, or
- **Spectinomycin** 2.0 g IM for 3 days, may be used alternatively.

All of the above regimes should then be followed by a one week course of either doxycycline 100 mg bid or erythromycin 250–500 mg orally qid.

2. **Topical antibiotic therapy**, presently recommended includes ofloxacin, ciprofloxacin or tobramycin eye drops or bacitracin or erythromycin eye ointment every 2 hours for the first 2–3 days and then 5 times daily for 7 days.

3. **Irrigation** of the eyes frequently with sterile saline is very therapeutic in washing away infected debris.

4. **Other general measures** are similar to acute mucopurulent conjunctivitis.

5. **Topical atropine** 1% eye drops should be instilled once or twice a day if cornea is involved.

**Note.** Sexual partner should also be treated with systemic antibiotics. Further, both the patient and the sexual partner should be referred for evaluation of other sexually transmitted diseases.

### CHRONIC BACTERIAL CONJUNCTIVITIS

Chronic bacterial conjunctivitis also known as '**Chronic catarrhal conjunctivitis**' or '**simple chronic conjunctivitis**' is characterised by mild catarrhal inflammation of the conjunctiva.

#### Etiology

##### A. Predisposing factors

1. **Chronic exposure to dust, smoke, and chemical irritants.**
2. **Local cause of irritation** such as trichiasis, concretions, foreign body and seborrhoeic scales.
3. **Eye strain due to refractive errors, phorias or convergence insufficiency.**
4. **Abuse of alcohol, insomnia and metabolic disorders.**

##### B. Causative organisms

- **Staphylococcus aureus** is the commonest cause of chronic bacterial conjunctivitis.
- **Gram-negative rods** such as *Proteus mirabilis*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*, *Escherichia coli* and *Moraxella lacunata* are other rare causes.

C. **Source and mode of infection.** Chronic conjunctivitis may occur:

1. **As continuation of acute mucopurulent conjunctivitis** when untreated or partially treated.



2. **As chronic infection** from associated chronic dacryocystitis, chronic rhinitis or chronic upper respiratory catarrh.

3. **As a mild exogenous infection** which results from direct contact, airborne or material transfer of infection.

### Clinical features

**Symptoms** of simple chronic conjunctivitis include:

- **Burning and grittiness** in the eyes, especially in the evening.
- **Mild chronic redness** in the eyes. Feeling of **heat and dryness** on the lid margins.
- **Difficulty in keeping the eyes open.**
- **Mild mucoid discharge** especially in the canthi.
- **Watering**, off and on is often a complaint.
- **Feeling of sleepiness and tiredness** in the eyes.

**Signs.** Grossly the eyes look normal but careful examination may reveal following signs:

- **Congestion** of posterior conjunctival vessels.
- **Mild papillary hypertrophy** of the palpebral conjunctiva.
- **Sticky look** of surface of the conjunctiva.
- **Lid margins may be congested.**

### Treatment

1. **Eliminate predisposing factors** when associated.
2. **Topical antibiotics** such as chloramphenicol, tobramycin or gentamicin should be instilled 3–4 times a day for about 2 weeks to eliminate the mild chronic infection.
3. **Astringent eye drops** such as zinc-boric acid drops provide symptomatic relief.

5m

## ANGULAR BACTERIAL CONJUNCTIVITIS

It is a type of chronic conjunctivitis characterised by mild grade inflammation confined to the conjunctiva and lid margins near the angles (hence the name) associated with maceration of the surrounding skin.

### Etiology

1. **Predisposing factors** are same as for 'simple chronic conjunctivitis'.
2. **Causative organisms.** *Moraxella Axenfeld* (MA) is the commonest causative organism. MA bacilli are placed end to end, so the disease is also called 'diplobacillary conjunctivitis'. Rarely, staphylococci may also cause angular conjunctivitis.
3. **Source of infection** is usually nasal cavity.
4. **Mode of infection.** Infection is transmitted from nasal cavity to the eyes by contaminated fingers or handkerchief.

### Pathology

The causative organism, i.e. MA bacillus produces a proteolytic enzyme which acts by macerating the epithelium. This proteolytic enzyme collects at the angles by the action of tears and thus macerates the epithelium of the conjunctiva, lid margin and the skin, the surrounding angles of eye. The maceration is followed by vascular and cellular responses in the form of mild grade chronic inflammation. Skin may show eczematous changes.

### Clinical features

**Symptoms** include:

- **Irritation, burning sensation** and feeling of discomfort in the eyes.
- History of collection of **dirty-white foamy discharge** at the angles.
- **Redness** in the angles of eyes.

**Signs** include (Fig. 5.7):

- **Hyperaemia of bulbar conjunctiva** near the canthi.
- **Hyperaemia of lid margins** near the angles.
- **Excoriation of the skin** around the angles.
- **Foamy mucopurulent discharge** at the angles is usually present.

**Complications** include: blepharitis and shallow marginal catarrhal corneal ulceration.

### Treatment

**A. Prophylaxis** includes treatment of associated nasal infection and good personal hygiene.

**B. Curative treatment** consists of:

1. **Oxytetracycline (1%) eye ointment**, 2–3 times a day for 9–14 days will eradicate the infection.

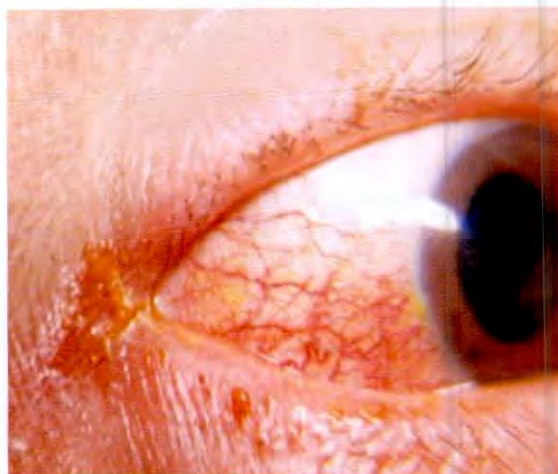


Fig. 5.7 Signs of angular conjunctivitis



2. **Zinc lotion** instilled in day time and **zinc oxide ointment** at bed time **inhibits the proteolytic ferment** and thus helps in reducing the maceration.

### CHLAMYDIAL CONJUNCTIVITIS

Chlamydia, earlier classified as a separate organism in between bacteria and viruses, has now been classified as bacterium belonging to the family Chlamydiaceae having two genera *Chlamydia* and *Chlamydophila*.

#### Characteristics of Chlamydia are:

- Small, **obligate intracellular**, **Gram-negative** bacteria.
- Possess **both RNA and DNA**, **ribosomes** and cell wall similar to that of Gram-negative bacteria.
- **Differ from most true bacteria** in not have peptidoglycan.
- Lack the ability to produce their own ATP, therefore, use host's ATP (**energy parasites**).
- Multiply by binary fission.
- Inclusion bodies are **basophilic** in nature.
- Multiply in the cytoplasm of the host cell forming microcolonies or inclusion bodies which **drape around the nucleus like a cloak or mantle** (chlamys means mantle).
- Possess a **genus-specific lipopolysaccharide-protein complex antigen**.
- Exist in two morphologically distinct forms namely **elementary body (EB)** and **reticulate body (RB)**.

#### Life cycle of Chlamydia

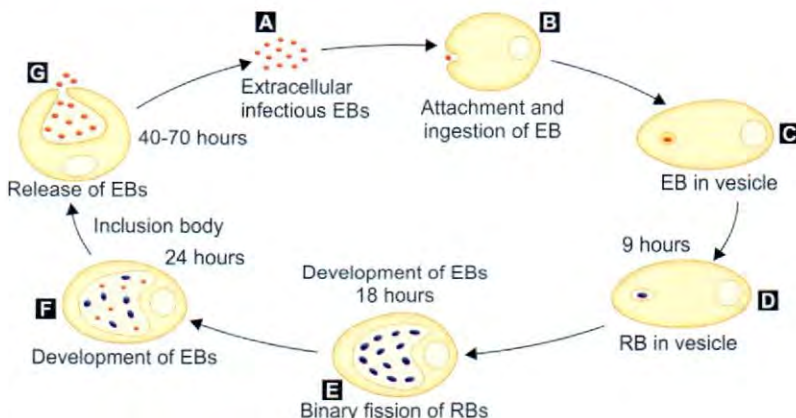
Chlamydiae exists in two morphological forms the elementary body (EB) and reticulate body (RB). Life cycle of Chlamydia is summarised below (Fig. 5.8):

- **Elementary bodies (EB)** are **extracellular infectious** particles (Fig. 5.8A). These initiate infection by attaching to the susceptible host cells (Fig. 5.8B). After attachment, the EB enters the cytoplasm of the host cells within a vesicle (Fig. 5.8C), where it **increases in size and differentiates into reticulate body (RB)** (Fig. 5.8D).
- **Reticulate body (RB)** is thus **intracellular**, **metabolically active** form that **divides by binary fission** (Fig. 5.8 E). Soon there occurs condensation of DNA within the RBs, **disulphide bonds are formed in the outer membrane proteins and new EBs develop within the enlarging vesicle**. The developing chlamydiaeal microcolony within the vesicle is **termed inclusion body** which is typically **perinuclear** and may contain **100-500 EBs** (Fig. 5.8F).
- **Release of new EBs into the extracellular space** occurs following **rupture of the inclusion body** (Fig. 5.8E). The liberated EBs then infect the new cells where the whole cycle is repeated (Fig. 5.8).

**Ocular infections produced by chlamydia** in human beings are summarised in Table 5.2.

### TRACHOMA 10m

Trachoma (previously known as *Egyptian ophthalmia*) is a chronic keratoconjunctivitis, primarily affecting the **superficial epithelium of conjunctiva and cornea** simultaneously. It is characterised by a **mixed follicular and papillary response of conjunctival tissue**, **pannus formation** and in late stages **cicatrization giving rough appearance**. The word 'trachoma' comes from the Greek word for 'rough' which describes the surface appearance of the conjunctiva in chronic trachoma. It is still one of the **leading causes of preventable blindness in the world**.



**Fig. 5.8 Life cycle of Chlamydia**



**Table 5.2** Summary of ocular infections caused by *Chlamydia*

| Family         | Chlamydiaceae                                  |                                                            |                                          |                                    |                                 |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Genra          | Chlamydia                                      |                                                            | Chlamydophila                            |                                    |                                 |
| Biovar         | <i>C. trachomatis</i><br>(TRIC agent) (Humans) |                                                            | <i>C. lymphogranulomatis</i><br>(Humans) | <i>C. psittacosis</i><br>(Animals) | <i>C. pneumoniae</i><br>(Human) |
| Serovar        | A, B, Ba, C                                    | D to K                                                     | L1, L2, L3                               | –                                  | –                               |
| Ocular disease | Hyperendemic trachoma                          | Paratrachoma (neonatal and adult inclusion conjunctivitis) | Lymphogranuloma venereum conjunctivitis  | –                                  | –                               |
| Transmission   | Eye to eye                                     | Genitals to eye                                            | Genitals to eye                          | –                                  | –                               |

**Etiology**

**A. Causative organism.** Trachoma is caused by the bacterium *Chlamydia trachomatis*, biovar TRIC. The organism is epitheliotropic and produces intracytoplasmic inclusion bodies called **HP bodies** (**Halberstaedter Prowazek bodies**). Presently, 12 serovars of *Chlamydia trachomatis* biovar TRIC (A, B, Ba, C, D, E, F, G, H, J and K) have been identified using microimmunofluorescence techniques.

- **Serovars A, B, Ba and C** are associated with hyperendemic (blinding) trachoma.
- **Serovars D to K** are associated with inclusion conjunctivitis (oculogenital chlamydial disease).

**B. Predisposing factors** include:

- **Age.** The infection is usually contracted during infancy and early childhood. Otherwise, there is no age bar.
- **Sex.** As far as sex is concerned, there is general agreement that preponderance exists in the females both in number and in severity of disease.
- **Race.** No race is immune to trachoma, but the disease is very common in Jews and comparatively less common among Negroes.
- **Climate.** Trachoma is more common in areas with dry and dusty weather.
- **Socioeconomic status.** The disease is more common in poor classes owing to unhygienic living conditions, overcrowding, unsanitary conditions, abundant fly population, paucity of water, lack of materials like separate towels and handkerchiefs, and lack of education and understanding about spread of contagious diseases.
- **Environmental factors** like exposure to dust, smoke, irritants, sunlight, etc. increase the risk of

contracting disease. Therefore, outdoor workers are more affected in comparison to office workers.

**C. Source of infection.** In trachoma endemic zones, the main source of infection is the conjunctival discharge of the affected person. Therefore, superimposed other bacterial infections help in transmission of the disease by increasing the conjunctival secretions.

**D. Modes of infection.** Infection may spread from eye to eye by any of the following modes:

1. **Direct spread** of infection may occur through contact by airborne or waterborne modes.
2. **Vector transmission** of trachoma is common through flies.
3. **Material transfer** plays an important role in the spread of trachoma. Material transfer can occur through contaminated fingers of doctors, nurses and contaminated tonometers. Other sources of material transfer of infection are use of common towel, handkerchief, bedding and surma-rods.

**Prevalence**

Trachoma is a worldwide disease, but it is highly prevalent in North Africa, Middle East and certain regions of South-East Asia. It is believed to affect some 500 million people in the world. There are about 150 million cases with active trachoma and about 30 million having trichiasis, needing lid surgery. Trachoma is responsible for 15–20% of the world's blindness, being second only to cataract.

**Clinical and pathological features**

Clinical features of trachoma can be described into two phases:

**1. Phase of active trachoma**

Phase of active trachoma usually occurs during childhood due to active chlamydial infection.



- **Incubation period** of active trachoma varies from 7 to 14 days.
- **Onset of disease** is usually **insidious** (subacute), however, rarely it may present in acute form.

### Symptoms

Symptoms of active trachoma are determined by the absence or presence of secondary other bacterial infection (a very common situation).

■ **In the absence of secondary infection**, a pure trachoma is characterized by following symptoms:

- **Mild foreign body sensation**,
- Occasional **lacrimation**,
- **Slight stickiness** of the lids, and
- Scanty **mucoid discharge**.

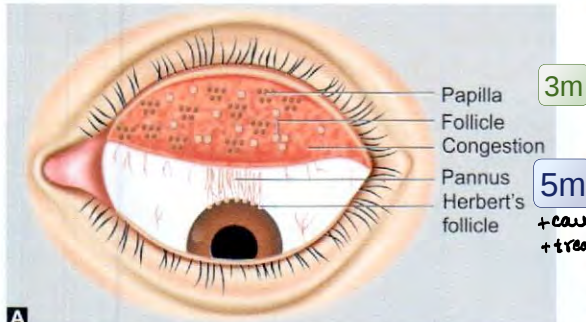
**Note.** The above symptoms are **so mild** that the disease is usually neglected so, the term **trachoma dubium** was suggested.

■ **In the presence of secondary other bacterial infection**, typical symptoms of acute mucopurulent conjunctivitis develop (See page 63).

### Signs

#### A. Conjunctival signs

1. **Congestion** of upper tarsal and forniceal conjunctiva.



**Fig. 5.9** Signs of active trachoma: A, Diagrammatic; B, Clinical photograph of trachomatous inflammation follicular (TF)

2. **Conjunctival follicles.** Follicles (Fig. 5.9) look like **boiled sago-grains** and are commonly seen on **upper tarsal conjunctiva** and **fornix**; but may also be present in the lower fornix, plica semilunaris and caruncle. Sometimes, follicles may be seen on the **bulbar conjunctiva** (pathognomonic of trachoma).

■ **Pathological structure of follicle.** Follicles are formed due to scattered **aggregation of lymphocytes and other cells in the adenoid layer**. Central part of each follicle is made up of mononuclear histiocytes, few lymphocytes and large multinucleated cells called **Leber cells**. The cortical part is made up of a zone of lymphocytes showing active proliferation. Blood vessels are present in the most peripheral part. In **later stages** signs of necrosis are also seen. Presence of Leber cells and signs of necrosis differentiate trachoma follicles from follicles of other forms of follicular conjunctivitis.

3. **Papillary hyperplasia.** Papillae are **reddish, flat topped raised areas** which give red and velvety appearance to the tarsal conjunctiva (Fig. 5.10).

■ **Pathologically** each papilla consists of **central core of numerous dilated blood vessels** surrounded by lymphocytes and covered by **hypertrophic epithelium**.

#### B. Corneal signs

1. **Superficial keratitis** may be present in the **upper part**.

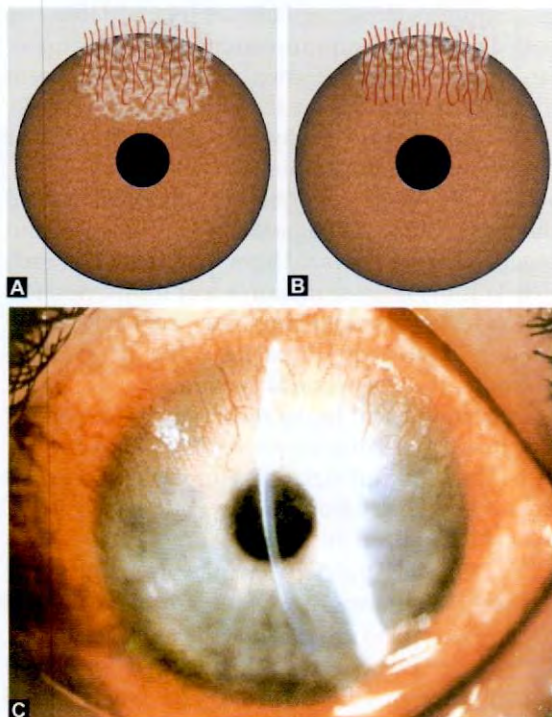
2. **Herbert follicles** refer to typical follicles present in the **limbal area**. *Histologically* these are similar to conjunctival follicles. **Herbert's pits** (3m)

3. **Progressive pannus**, i.e. infiltration of the cornea associated with vascularization is seen in upper part (Figs 5.11). The vessels are superficial and lie between epithelium and Bowman's membrane. Later on, Bowman's membrane is also destroyed. **Pannus in active trachoma is progressive in which infiltration of cornea is ahead of vascularization** (Fig. 5.11A).



**Fig. 5.10** Trachomatous inflammation intense (TI)





**Fig. 5.11** Trachomatous pannus: A, Progressive; B, Regressive (diagrammatic); C, Clinical photograph

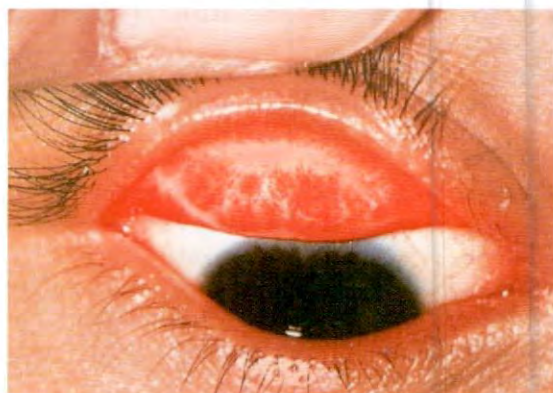
**4. Corneal ulcer** may sometime develop at the advancing edge of pannus. Such ulcers are usually shallow which may become chronic and indolent.

## II. Phase of cicatricial trachoma

Cicatricial phase of trachoma manifests in middle age. It results due to continued mild grade chronic inflammation. In fact recurrent infection elicits chronic immune response consisting of cell-mediated delayed hypersensitivity (Type IV) reaction to the intermittent presence of chlamydial antigen, which is responsible for cicatricial phase of trachoma. The end stage of cicatricial trachoma is also referred to as sequelae of trachoma. This phase is characterized by following clinical features:

### A. Conjunctival signs

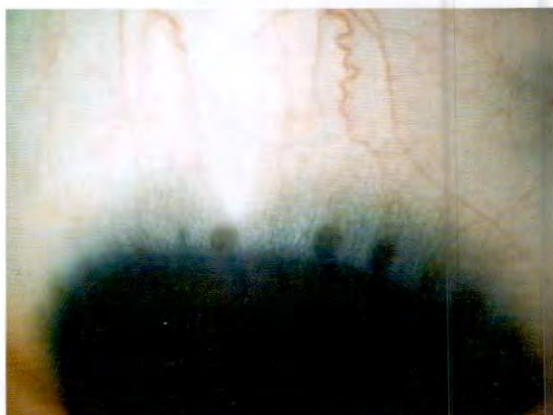
- i. **Conjunctival scarring** (Fig. 5.12), which may be irregular, star-shaped or linear. Linear scar present in the sulcus subtarsalis is called **Arlt's line**.
- ii. **Concretions** are hard looking whitish deposits varying from pin point to 2 mm in size (Fig. 5.13). These are not calcareous deposits, but are formed due to accumulation of dead epithelial cells and inspissated mucus in the depressions called **glands of Henle**. Hence, the name is misnomer.
- iii. Other conjunctival sequelae include concretions, pseudocyst, xerosis and symblepharon.



**Fig. 5.12** Trachomatous scarring (TS)



**Fig. 5.13** Concretions in upper palpebral conjunctiva



**Fig. 5.14** Trachomatous Herbert's pits

### B. Corneal sign

- i. **Regressive pannus (pannus siccus)** in which (Fig. 5.11B) vessels extend a short distance beyond the area of infiltration.
- ii. **Herbert pits** are the oval or circular pitted scars, left after healing of Herbert follicles in the limbal area (Fig. 5.14).



iii. **Corneal opacity** (Fig. 5.15) may be present in the upper part. It may even extend down and involve the papillary area. It is the end result of trachomatous corneal lesions.

iv. **Other corneal sequelae** may be corneal ectasia, corneal xerosis and total corneal pannus (blinding sequelae).

**C. Lid signs.** Sequelae in the lids may be trichiasis (Fig. 5.16), entropion, tylosis (thickening of lid margin), ptosis, madarosis and ankyloblepharon.

**D. Lacrimal apparatus sequelae** may be chronic dacryocystitis, and chronic dacryoadenitis.

### Grading of trachoma

#### McCallan's classification

McCallan in 1908, divided the clinical course of the trachoma into four stages:

- **Stage I (Incipient trachoma or stage of infiltration).** It is characterized by hyperaemia of palpebral conjunctiva and immature follicles.
- **Stage II (Established trachoma or stage of florid infiltration).** It is characterized by appearance of mature follicles, papillae and progressive corneal pannus.
- **Stage III (Cicatrising trachoma or stage of scarring).** It includes obvious scarring of palpebral conjunctiva.
- **Stage IV (Healed trachoma or stage of sequelae).** The disease is quiet and cured but sequelae due to cicatrization, give rise to symptoms.

#### WHO classification

The latest simplified classification suggested by WHO in 1987 is as follows (FISTO):

1. **TF: Trachomatous inflammation-follicular.** It is the stage of active trachoma with predominantly follicular inflammation. To diagnose this stage at least five or more follicles (each 0.5 mm or more

in diameter) must be present on the upper tarsal conjunctiva (See Fig. 5.9). Further, the deep tarsal vessels should be visible through the follicles and papillae.

2. **TI: Trachomatous inflammation intense.** This stage is diagnosed when pronounced inflammatory thickening of the upper tarsal conjunctiva obscures more than half of the normal deep tarsal vessels (See Fig. 5.10).

3. **TS: Trachomatous scarring.** This stage is diagnosed by the presence of scarring in the tarsal conjunctiva. These scars are easily visible as white, bands or sheets (fibrosis) in the tarsal conjunctiva (See Fig. 5.12).

4. **TT: Trachomatous trichiasis.** TT is labelled when at least one eyelash rubs the eyeball. Evidence of recent removal of intumed eyelashes should also be graded as trachomatous trichiasis (Fig. 5.16).

5. **CO: Corneal opacity.** This stage is labelled when easily visible corneal opacity is present over the pupil (Fig. 5.15). This sign refers to corneal scarring that is so dense that at least part of pupil margin is blurred when seen through the opacity. The definition is intended to detect corneal opacities that cause significant visual impairment (less than 6/18).

### Complications

The only complication of trachoma is corneal ulcer which may occur due to rubbing by concretions, or trichiasis with superimposed bacterial infection.

### Diagnosis

**A. Clinical diagnosis** of trachoma is made from its typical signs. Clinical grading of each case should be done as per WHO classification into TF, TI, TS, TT or CO.



Fig. 5.15 Trachomatous corneal opacity (CO)



Fig. 5.16 Trachomatous trichiasis (TT)



**B. Laboratory diagnosis.** Advanced laboratory tests are employed for research purposes only. Laboratory diagnosis of trachoma includes:

1. **Conjunctival cytology.** Giemsa-stained smears showing a predominantly polymorphonuclear reaction with presence of plasma cells and Leber cells is suggestive of trachoma.
2. **Detection of inclusion bodies** in conjunctival smear may be possible by **Giemsa stain**, **iodine stain** or **immunofluorescent staining**, especially in cases with active trachoma.
3. **Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA)** for chlamydial antigens.
4. **Polymerase chain reaction (PCR)** is also useful.
5. **Isolation of Chlamydia** is possible by **yolk-sac inoculation** method and **tissue culture technique**. Standard single-passage **McCoy cell culture** requires at least 3 days.
6. **Serotyping of TRIC agents** is done by detecting specific antibodies using **microimmunofluorescence (micro-IF) method**. **Direct monoclonal fluorescent antibody microscopy** of conjunctival smear is rapid and inexpensive.

### Differential diagnosis

1. **Active trachoma with follicular hypertrophy** must be differentiated from **acute adenoviral follicular conjunctivitis** (epidemic keratoconjunctivitis) as follows:

- **Distribution of follicles** in trachoma is mainly on **upper palpebral conjunctiva** and **upper fornix**, while in **EKC lower palpebral conjunctiva** and **lower fornix** is predominantly involved.
- **Associated signs** such as **papillae** and **pannus** are characteristic of trachoma.
- **Laboratory diagnosis** of trachoma helps in differentiation of clinically indistinguishable cases.

2. **Active trachoma with predominant papillary hypertrophy** needs to be differentiated from **palpebral form of spring catarrh** as follows:

- **Papillae** are large in size and usually there is typical cobble-stone arrangement in spring catarrh.
- **pH of tears** is usually alkaline in spring catarrh, while in trachoma it is acidic.
- **Discharge** is ropy in spring catarrh.
- **Follicles and pannus** may also be present in trachoma.
- **Conjunctival cytology** and other laboratory tests for trachoma usually help in diagnosis in clinically indistinguishable cases.

### Management

Management of trachoma includes curative as well as prophylactic measures.

### A. Treatment of trachoma

#### I. Treatment of active trachoma

**Stage TF and TI** of WHO classification constitute active trachoma in which acute infection is present, and therefore treatment is directed at eliminating the chlamydia organism.

**Antibiotics**, thus constitute the main stay of treatment of active trachoma. These can be given topically or systemically or in combination.

1. **Topical therapy regimes** are best for individual cases and consist of:

- **Tetracycline (1%)** or **erythromycin (1%)** eye ointment twice daily for 6 weeks, or
- **Sulfacetamide (20%)** eye drops three times a day along with **1% tetracycline** eye ointment at bed time for 6 weeks.

2. **Systemic antibiotic therapy regimes** include:

- **Tetracycline** or **erythromycin** 250 mg orally, four times a day for 3–4 weeks or
- **Doxycycline** 100 mg orally twice daily for 3–4 weeks, constitute the traditional standard systemic therapy.
- **Azithromycin** 20 mg/kg body weight up to maximum 1 g as single oral dose is as effective as 6 weeks of topical therapy and so is presently considered the first drug of choice. It is not used in pregnancy and children below 6 years of age.

3. **Combined topical and systemic therapy regime.** It is preferred when the ocular infection is severe (TI) or when there is associated genital infection. It includes:

- **Tetracycline (1%)** or **erythromycin** eye ointment 2 times a day for 6 weeks; and
- **Azithromycin** single oral dose (**first choice**) or tetracycline or erythromycin 250 mg orally 4 times a day for 2 weeks.

#### II. Treatment of cicatricial (inactive) trachoma

**Stages TS, TI and CO** of WHO classification constitute the inactive trachoma during which infection is no longer present, i.e. only trachoma sequelae are present, and therefore, treatment is directed towards these sequelae as below:

**Stage TS** measures include:

- **Concretions** should be removed with a hypodermic needle.
- **Conjunctival xerosis** should be treated by artificial tears (**lubricating drops**).

**Stage TI** includes trichiasis and cicatricial entropion.

- **Trichiasis**, a few misdirected cilia, should be treated with permanent lash removal measures such as electrolysis, cryolysis, and radiofrequency epilation (See page 385)



- **Bilamellar tarsal resection** is the surgical procedure of choice for multiple misdirected lashes.
- **Cicatricial entropion** should be corrected surgically (See page 388).

**Stage CO** (corneal opacification) constitutes stage of marked visual disability or blindness. After treating other trachoma sequelae, following measures must be taken:

- **Penetrating keratoplasty (PK)** is indicated for significant corneal scarring. However, the outcome is less than optimum, as these patients have extensive corneal vascularisation.
- **Keratoprosthesis (KP)** is indicated in bilateral blind cases with extensive corneal scarring and ocular surface problems.
- **Punctal occlusion and lateral tarsorrhaphy**, which takes care of the coexistent ocular surface problems, may be useful adjuncts for increasing the success of the above surgeries.

#### B. Prophylaxis for trachoma infection and blindness

Since immunity is very poor and short lived, so reinfections and recurrences are likely to occur. So, prophylactic measures are essential.

**WHO defines blinding trachoma elimination as:**

- TF prevalence, 5% in 1–9 years children, and
- TI prevalence, 1 per 1000 in total population.

**Safe strategy** **SAFE strategy & control project.**

The WHO's GET 2020 program (Global Elimination of Trachoma by 2020), has adopted the so called **SAFE strategy for prophylaxis** against trachoma infection and prevention of blindness.

SAFE strategy includes:

- S**: Surgery (Tertiary prevention),
- A**: Antibiotic use (Secondary prevention),
- F**: Facial hygiene (Primary prevention), and
- E**: Environmental changes (Primordial prevention).

#### 1. Environmental changes (Primordial prevention).

Flies and other fomites are the common causes of spread of trachoma. So, environmental sanitation will constitute the primordial prevention for trachoma. Recommended environmental sanitation measures include:

- Provision of water latrines and good water supply to reduce flies and improve washing habits,
- Refuse dumps,
- Sprays to control flies,
- Animal pens away from human household, and
- Health education to improve personal and environmental hygiene.

**2. Facial hygiene (Primary prevention).** Facial hygiene is critical measure for primary prevention of trachoma and should include:

- **Frequent face wash** with clean water to eliminate the potentially infectious ocular secretions.
- **Avoidance of common use** of towel, handkerchief, surma-rods, etc. are important facial hygienic measures to prevent spread of trachoma infections.

**3. Antibiotics for prevention against trachoma (Secondary prevention).** Use of antibiotics constitutes the secondary prevention against trachoma. Current WHO recommendations for community-based mass antibiotic therapy in endemic areas are as below:

i. **In areas with 10% or more prevalence of active trachoma** (TF in children 1–9 years) recommendation are as below:

- **Oral azithromycin** (single dose of 20 mg/kg up to 1 g), should be administered to **all community members**.
- **Tetracycline eye ointment** twice daily for 6 weeks is recommended for **all pregnant women, children, 6 months and those allergic to macrolides**.

**Note.** The mass antibiotic therapy should be given once in a year for continuous three years, after which reassessment of prevalence should be made. The annual treatment should be continued till the TF prevalence in 1–9 years children of that area becomes less than 5%.

ii. **In areas with prevalence between more than 5% and less than 10%**, the targeted antibiotic therapy is recommended **only among family members and close contacts of the patients**.

iii. **In areas with prevalence less than 5%**, treatment of the **patients only** is recommended.

**4. Surgery (Tertiary prevention).** Surgery for trichiasis and entropion constitutes tertiary prevention for trachomatous corneal blindness. WHO recommends **bilamellar tarsal rotation surgery** at community level for the affected persons.

### ADULT INCLUSION CONJUNCTIVITIS

It is a type of acute follicular conjunctivitis associated with **mucopurulent discharge**. It usually affects the **sexually active young adults**.

#### Etiology

- **Serotypes D to K of Chlamydia trachomatis** are associated with adult inclusion conjunctivitis.
- **Primary source of infection** is urethritis in males and cervicitis in females.
- **Transmission of infection** may occur to eyes either through contaminated genital-hand-eye or genital-eye contact.
- **Spread of infection** may also occur through contaminated water of swimming pools (hence the name **swimming pool conjunctivitis**).



**Clinical features**

**Incubation period** of the disease is 5–14 days.

**Symptoms** are similar to acute mucopurulent conjunctivitis and include:

- Ocular discomfort, foreign body sensation,
- Mild photophobia, and
- Mucopurulent discharge from the eyes.

**Signs** of inclusion conjunctivitis are (Fig. 5.17):

- Conjunctival hyperaemia, more marked in the lower palpebral conjunctiva and fornix.
- Acute follicular hypertrophy predominantly of lower palpebral conjunctiva and fornix.
- Superficial keratitis in upper half of cornea. Sometimes, superior micropannus may also occur.
- Pre-auricular lymphadenopathy (non-tender) is a usual finding on the ipsilateral side.

**Clinical course.** The disease runs a benign course and often evolves into the chronic follicular conjunctivitis.

**Investigations** required, their role and status is same as described above for trachoma.

**Differential diagnosis** must be made from other causes of acute follicular conjunctivitis.

**Treatment**

**1. Topical therapy.** It consists of tetracycline (1%) eye ointment 4 times a day for 6 weeks.

**2. Systemic therapy** is very important, since the condition is often associated with an asymptomatic venereal infection. Commonly employed antibiotics are:

- Azithromycin 1 g as a single dose repeated after one week is currently drug of choice, a 3rd dose is required in 30% cases.
- Tetracycline 250 mg four times a day for 3–4 weeks, or
- Erythromycin 250 mg four times a day for 3–4 weeks (only when the tetracycline is contraindicated, e.g. in pregnant and lactating females), or
- Doxycycline 100 mg twice a day for 3 weeks.



Fig. 5.17 Signs of acute follicular conjunctivitis

**3. Referral to genitourinary specialist** is mandatory. Sexual partners should be treated simultaneously. Attention should also be given to other sexually transmitted diseases, contact tracing and pregnancy testing.

**Prophylaxis**

- Improvement in personal hygiene.
- Regular chlorination of swimming pool water will definitely decrease the spread of disease.
- Patient's sexual partner should be examined and treated. Abstinence of sexual contact until completion of treatment.

**VIRAL CONJUNCTIVITIS**

Most of the viral infections tend to affect the epithelium, both of the conjunctiva and cornea; so, the typical viral lesion is a 'keratoconjunctivitis'. In some viral infections, conjunctival involvement is more prominent (e.g. pharyngoconjunctival fever), while in others cornea is more involved (e.g. herpes simplex).

**Viral infections of conjunctiva** include: 3m

- Adenovirus conjunctivitis,
- Herpes simplex keratoconjunctivitis,
- Herpes zoster conjunctivitis,
- Molluscum contagiosum conjunctivitis,
- Poxvirus conjunctivitis,
- Myxovirus conjunctivitis,
- Paramyxovirus conjunctivitis, and
- ARBOR virus conjunctivitis.

**Clinical presentations** of acute viral conjunctivitis include:

- Acute follicular conjunctivitis, and
- Acute haemorrhagic conjunctivitis.

**ADENOVIRAL CONJUNCTIVITIS**

**Adenoviruses** are the commonest causes of viral conjunctivitis. These are non-enveloped, double-stranded DNA viruses, which replicate within the nucleus of host cells. General reservoir of adenoviruses is only human. Fifty-one distinct human adenoviral serotypes have been described and are classified into six subgenera (A–F). More than half of all adenoviral subtypes (32) belong to subgenus D. With a few exceptions, most adenoviral conjunctivitis is caused by this genus.

**Clinical types of adenoviral conjunctivitis** include:

- Epidemic keratoconjunctivitis (EKC),
- Nonspecific acute follicular conjunctivitis,
- Pharyngoconjunctival fever (PCF), and
- Chronic relapsing adenoviral conjunctivitis.



### Epidemic Keratoconjunctivitis (EKC)

It is a type of acute follicular conjunctivitis mostly associated with superficial punctate keratitis and usually occurs in epidemics, hence the name epidemic keratoconjunctivitis (EKC).

#### Etiology

EKC is mostly caused by adenoviruses type 8, 19 and 37 with type 8 being the classic cause. The condition is markedly contagious and spreads through contact with contaminated fingers, solutions and tonometers.

#### Clinical features

**Incubation period** after infection is about 8 days and virus is shed from the inflamed eye for 2–3 weeks.

#### Symptoms

Symptoms are similar to severe form of acute catarrhal conjunctivitis and include:

- Redness of sudden onset associated with watering, usually profuse, with mild mucoid discharge,
- Ocular discomfort and foreign body sensation,
- Photophobia, usually mild, becomes marked when cornea is involved.

#### Signs

Eyelids are swollen causing narrowing of palpebral aperture.

**Conjunctival signs are:**

- Hyperaemia is usually marked and prominent.
- Chemosis of conjunctiva is often present.
- Follicles of small to moderate size typically involving the lower fornix and palpebral conjunctiva form the characteristic feature (Fig. 5.18).
- Papillary reaction may also be seen in many cases.
- Petechial subconjunctival haemorrhages may be seen in severe adenoviral conjunctivitis (Fig. 5.19).
- Pseudomembrane lining the lower fornix and palpebral conjunctiva (Fig. 5.19) may be formed in about 3% patients with severe inflammation.



**Fig. 5.19** Pseudomembrane and petechial subconjunctival hemorrhage in acute epidemic keratoconjunctivitis (EKC)

**Corneal involvement** occurs in about 80% of cases and is characterized by following lesions:

- Epithelial microcystic diffuse fine non-staining lesions are common during the early stage.
- Superficial punctate keratitis (SPK), a typical feature of EKC (Fig. 5.20), usually occurs after 10 days of onset of symptoms and lasts for 3 weeks even after subsidence of conjunctival inflammation.
- Subepithelial infiltrates may develop under the focal epithelial lesions in 20–50% of cases. These opacities may be initially disabling and may persist for months to years.

**Pre-auricular lymphadenopathy** is associated in almost all cases of EKC.

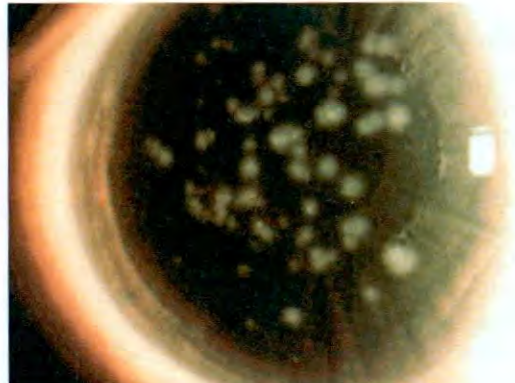
#### Differential diagnosis

Epidemic keratoconjunctivitis (EKC) needs to be differentiated from other causes of acute follicular conjunctivitis which include:

- Other types of adenoviral keratoconjunctivitis such as:
  - Nonspecific acute follicular conjunctivitis, and
  - Pharyngoconjunctival fever.
- Acute haemorrhagic conjunctivitis,



**Fig. 5.18** Acute follicular adenoviral conjunctivitis



**Fig. 5.20** Superficial punctate keratitis in EKC



- **Herpes simplex virus conjunctivitis.**
- **Systemic viral infections** such as herpes zoster conjunctivitis, measles, mumps and chikungunya virus conjunctivitis, and
- **Adult inclusion conjunctivitis.**

**Differentiation** is made from:

- **Typical clinical features** of each entity described.
- **Investigations** are required mainly for research purposes and in some nonresolving cases, and include:
  - **Conjunctival cytology** with Giemsa stain shows predominantly mononuclear cells in adenoviral conjunctivitis and multinucleated giant cells in herpetic conjunctivitis.
  - **Polymerase chain reaction (PCR) test** is sensitive and specific for viral DNA.
  - **Point-of-care immunochromatography test** takes only 10 minutes to detect adenoviral antigens in tears and have excellent sensitivity and specificity.
  - **Viral cultures** are tedious and time consuming with variable sensitivity but 100% specificity.

#### **Treatment**

1. **Supportive treatment** for amelioration of symptoms is the only treatment required and includes:

- Cold compresses, and sun glasses to decrease glare,
- Decongestant and lubricant tear drops to decrease discomfort.

2. **Topical antibiotics** help to prevent superadded bacterial infections.

3. **Topical antiviral drugs** are not beneficial in adenoviral conjunctivitis. Recently promising results are reported with adenine arabinosides (Ara-A) and cidofovir.

4. **Topical steroids** should not be used during active inflammation as these may enhance viral replication and extend the period of infectivity. Weak steroids such as fluorometholone or loteprednol (0.5%) are indicated in patients with subepithelial infiltrates, and in those with membrane formation.

#### **Prevention of spread of infection to the contacts**

It is very important as the adenoviral conjunctivitis is highly contagious and patients may be infectious for up to 11 days after onset.

**Transmission usually occurs:**

- From eye to fingers to eyes.
- Tonometers, contact lenses and eye drops are other routes of transmission.

**Preventive measures** include:

- Frequent handwashing,
- Relative isolation of infected individual,
- Avoiding eye rubbing and common use of towel or handkerchief sharing, and

- Disinfection of ophthalmic instruments and clinical surfaces after examination of a patient is essential.

#### **Nonspecific Acute Follicular Conjunctivitis**

- **Most common form** of acute follicular conjunctivitis.
- **Caused by adenovirus serotypes 1 to 11 and 19.**
- **Clinical features** are of milder form of acute follicular conjunctivitis. Corneal involvement is not known.
- **Treatment and preventive measures** are similar to as described for EKC.

#### **Pharyngoconjunctival Fever (PCF)**

**Etiology.** It is a highly infectiveness adenoviral infection commonly associated with subtypes 3, 4 and 7. Transmitted by three routes: personal contact, fomites or through swimming pools or ponds.

**Clinical features.** Pharyngoconjunctival fever primarily affects children and appears in epidemic form. It is characterised by an:

- Acute follicular conjunctivitis, associated with pharyngitis.
- Fever and pre-auricular lymphadenopathy.
- Corneal involvement in the form of superficial punctate keratitis is seen only in 30% of cases.

**Treatment** is usually supportive as described for EKC.

#### **Newcastle Conjunctivitis**

**Etiology.** It is a rare type of acute follicular conjunctivitis caused by Newcastle virus. The infection is derived from contact with diseased owls; and thus the condition mainly affects poultry workers.

**Clinically,** the condition is similar to pharyngoconjunctival fever.

### **ACUTE HERPETIC CONJUNCTIVITIS**

Acute herpetic follicular conjunctivitis is always an accompaniment of the 'primary herpetic infection,' which mainly occurs in small children and in adolescents.

#### **Etiology**

The disease is commonly caused by herpes simplex virus type 1 and spreads by kissing or other close personal contacts. HSV type 2 associated with genital infections, may also involve the eyes in adults as well as children, though rarely.

#### **Clinical features**

Acute herpetic follicular conjunctivitis is usually a unilateral affection with an incubation period of 5–14 days. It may occur in two clinical forms—typical and atypical.



- In **typical form**, the follicular conjunctivitis is usually associated with other lesions of primary infection such as vesicular lesions of face and lids.
- In **atypical form**, the follicular conjunctivitis occurs without lesions of the face, eyelid and the condition then resembles epidemic keratoconjunctivitis. The condition may evolve through phases of non-specific hyperaemia, follicular hyperplasia and pseudomembrane formation.
- **Corneal involvement**, though rare, is not uncommon in primary herpes. It may be in the form of fine or coarse epithelial keratitis or typical dendritic keratitis.
- **Preauricular lymphadenopathy** occurs almost always.

### Treatment

Primary herpetic infection is usually self-limiting.

- The **topical antiviral drugs** control the infection effectively and prevent recurrences.
- **Supportive measures** are similar to EKC.

## ACUTE HAEMORRHAGIC CONJUNCTIVITIS

It is an acute inflammation of conjunctiva characterised by **multiple conjunctival haemorrhages**, **conjunctival hyperaemia** and **mild follicular hyperplasia**.

### Etiology

The disease is caused by **picornaviruses (enterovirus type 70)** which are **RNA viruses** of small (**pico**) size. The disease is very contagious and is transmitted by **direct hand-to-eye contact**.

### Clinical features

The disease has occurred in an epidemic form in the far East, Africa and England and hence the name 'epidemic haemorrhagic conjunctivitis (EHC)' has been suggested. An epidemic of the disease was first recognized in Ghana in 1969 at the time **when Apollo XI spacecraft was launched**, hence the name '**Apollo conjunctivitis**'.

- **Incubation period** of EHC is very short (**1–2 days**).
- **Symptoms** include **pain**, **redness**, **watering**, **mild photophobia**, **transient blurring of vision** and lid swelling.
- **Signs of EHC** are **conjunctival congestion**, **chemosis**, **multiple haemorrhages** in bulbar conjunctiva, **mild follicular hyperplasia**, **lid oedema** and **preauricular lymphadenopathy** (Fig. 5.21).
- **Corneal involvement** may occur in the form of fine epithelial keratitis.



Fig. 5.21 Acute haemorrhagic conjunctivitis

### Treatment

EHC is very infectious and poses major potential problems of cross-infection.

- **Prophylactic measures** are very important and are same as described for EKC.
- **No specific effective curative treatment** is known. However, broad-spectrum antibiotic eye drops may be used to prevent secondary bacterial infections.
- Usually the disease has a **self-limiting course of 7 days**.
- **Supportive measures** are same as EKC.

## OPHTHALMIA NEONATORUM 10m

Ophthalmia neonatorum, or neonatal conjunctivitis is the name given to bilateral inflammation of the conjunctiva occurring in an infant, less than 30 days old. It is a preventable disease usually occurring as a result of carelessness at the time of birth. As a matter of fact **any discharge or even watering from the eyes in the first week of life should arouse suspicion of ophthalmia neonatorum**, as tears are not formed till then.

### Etiology

#### Source and mode of infection

Infection may occur in three ways: **before birth**, **during birth** or **after birth**.

1. **Before birth infection** is very rare through infected liquor amnii in mothers with ruptured membranes.
2. **During birth**. In vaginally delivered infants, the **most common mode of infection is from the infected birth canal** especially when the child is born with face presentation or with forceps.



3. **After birth.** Infection may occur during first bath of newborn or from soiled clothes or fingers with infected lochia.

#### Causative agents

1. **Chemical neonatal conjunctivitis.** It is caused by (in older days silver nitrate was the common cause) or antibiotics used for prophylaxis.
2. **Gonococcal infection** was considered a serious disease in the past, as it used to be responsible for 50% of blindness in children. But, the decline in the incidence of gonorrhoea as well as effective methods of prophylaxis and treatment have almost eliminated it in developed countries. However, in many developing countries, it still continues to be a problem.
3. **Other bacterial infections,** responsible for ophthalmia neonatorum are *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Haemophilus* species, *Streptococcus haemolyticus*, and *Streptococcus pneumoniae*.
4. **Neonatal inclusion conjunctivitis** caused by serotypes D to K of *Chlamydia trachomatis* is at present the commonest cause of ophthalmia neonatorum in developed countries.
5. **Herpes simplex ophthalmia neonatorum** is a rare condition caused by herpes simplex-II virus from the infected birth canal.

#### Clinical features

##### Incubation period

It varies depending on the type of the causative agent as shown below:

| Causative agent                     | Incubation period |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|
| • Chemical                          | 6 hours           |
| • Gonococcal                        | 2–5 days          |
| • Other bacterial                   | 5–8 days          |
| • Neonatal inclusion conjunctivitis | 5–14 days         |
| • Herpes simplex                    | 6–15 days         |

##### Symptoms and signs

1. **Pain and tenderness** in the eyeball.
2. **Conjunctival discharge.** It is purulent in gonococcal ophthalmia neonatorum (Fig. 5.22) and mucoid or mucopurulent in other bacterial cases and neonatal inclusion conjunctivitis.
3. **Lids are usually swollen** in infective cases. Eyelids and periocular vesicles may occur in HSV infection.
4. **Conjunctiva** may show hyperaemia and chemosis. There might be mild papillary response in neonatal inclusion conjunctivitis and herpes simplex ophthalmia neonatorum. Follicular response is typically absent in infants because of immaturity



Fig. 5.22 Gonococcal ophthalmia neonatorum

of lymphoid system up to 6–8 weeks of life.

5. **Corneal involvement,** though rare, may occur in the form of superficial punctate keratitis especially in herpes simplex ophthalmia neonatorum.

#### Complications

Untreated cases, especially of gonococcal ophthalmia neonatorum, may develop corneal ulceration, which may perforate rapidly resulting in corneal opacification or staphyloma formation.

#### Prophylaxis

Prophylactic treatment is always better than curative. Prophylaxis needs antenatal, natal and postnatal care.

1. **Antenatal measures** include thorough care of mother and treatment of genital infections when suspected. Surveillance of women during the third trimester of pregnancy for evidence of chlamydial, herpetic or gonococcal infection is critical in prevention of neonatal conjunctivitis.

2. **Natal measures** are of utmost importance, as mostly infection occurs during childbirth.

- **Deliveries should be conducted under hygienic conditions** taking all aseptic measures.
- The newborn baby's closed lids should be thoroughly cleansed and dried.

3. **Postnatal measures** include:

- **Povidon-iodine 2.5% solution** is effective against the common pathogens, and is widely used.
- **Use of either 1% tetracycline ointment or 0.5% erythromycin ointment** into the eyes of the babies immediately after birth are useful for preventing bacterial and chlamydial ophthalmia neonatorum.
- **Single injection of ceftriaxone 50 mg/kg IM or IV** (not to exceed 125 mg) should be given to infants born to mothers with untreated gonococcal infection.

**Note.** In the past, 1% silver nitrate solution was put in the eyes of babies immediately after birth (Crede's method). It is mentioned here just for the historical value.



### Treatment

As a rule, conjunctival cytology samples and culture sensitivity swabs should be taken before starting the treatment.

1. **Chemical ophthalmia neonatorum** is a self-limiting condition, and does not require any treatment.

2. **Gonococcal ophthalmia neonatorum** needs prompt treatment to prevent complications.

- **Topical therapy** should include:
  - **Saline lavage** hourly till the discharge is eliminated.
  - **Bacitracin eye ointment** 4 times/day. Because of resistant strains topical penicillin therapy is not reliable. However, in cases with proved penicillin susceptibility, **penicillin drops 5000 to 10000 units per mL**, should be instilled every minute for half an hour, every five minutes for next half an hour and then half hourly till the infection is controlled.
  - **If cornea is involved** then atropine sulphate ointment should be applied.
- **Systemic therapy.** Neonates with gonococcal ophthalmia should be **treated for 7 days** with one of the following regimes.
  - **Ceftriaxone** 75–100 mg/kg/day IV or IM, qid or
  - **Cefotaxime** 100–150 mg/kg/day IV or IM, 12 hourly or
  - **Ciprofloxacin** 10–20 mg/kg/day or **norfloxacin** 10 mg/kg/day or
  - If the gonococcal isolate is proved to be susceptible to penicillin, **crystalline benzyl penicillin G 50,000 units to full term**, normal weight babies and 20,000 units to premature or low weight babies should be given intramuscularly twice daily for 3 days.

3. **Other bacterial ophthalmia neonatorum** should be treated for 2 weeks by **broad-spectrum antibiotic drops and ointments** such as neomycin-bacitracin or tobramycin.

4. **Neonatal inclusion conjunctivitis** responds well to **topical tetracycline 1% or erythromycin 0.5% eye ointment qid** for 3 weeks. However, systemic erythromycin 50 mg/kg/day in three or four divided days for 2 to 3 weeks should also be given since the presence of chlamydia agents in the conjunctiva implies colonization of upper respiratory tract as well. Alternatively **azithromycin suspension 20 mg/kg** either as a single dose or once daily for 3 days should be administered. Both parents should also be treated with systemic erythromycin.

5. **Herpes simplex conjunctivitis** is usually a self-limiting disease. However, topical antiviral drugs control the infection more effectively and may prevent the recurrence. **High dose intravenous acyclovir**

is indicated in cases suspected of systemic herpes infection.

### GRANULOMATOUS CONJUNCTIVAL INFLAMMATIONS

Granulomatous inflammations of the conjunctiva are characterised by proliferative lesions which usually tend to remain localized to one eye and are mostly associated with regional lymphadenitis.

**Common granulomatous conjunctival inflammations** are:

- **Tuberculosis** of conjunctiva
- **Sarcoidosis** of conjunctiva
- **Syphilitic** conjunctivitis
- **Leprotic** conjunctivitis
- **Conjunctivitis in tularaemia**
- **Ophthalmia nodosa**.

### PARINAUD'S OCULOGLANDULAR SYNDROME

**Clinical features:** It is the name given to a group of conditions characterised by:

- **Unilateral granulomatous conjunctivitis** (nodular elevations surrounded by follicles),
- **Pre-auricular lymphadenopathy**, and
- **Fever**.

**Common causes** are tularaemia, cat-scratch disease, (*Bartonella henselae* infection) tuberculosis, syphilis, sporotrichosis and lymphogranuloma venereum, etc.

**Note.** This term (Parinaud's oculoglandular syndrome) is largely obsolete, since the infecting agents can now be usually determined.

### OPHTHALMIA NODOSA (CATERPILLAR HAIR CONJUNCTIVITIS)

It is a granulomatous inflammation of the conjunctiva characterized by:

- **formation of a nodule** on the bulbar conjunctiva in response to irritation caused by the retained **hair of caterpillar**. The disease is, therefore, common in summers.
- The condition may be often mistaken for a **tubercular nodule**. Histopathological examination reveals hair surrounded by giant cells and lymphocyte.

**Treatment** consists of excision biopsy of the nodule.

### B. ALLERGIC CONJUNCTIVITIS

It is the inflammation of conjunctiva due to allergic or hypersensitivity reactions which may be **immediate (humoral) or delayed (cellular)**. The conjunctiva is **ten times more sensitive than the skin to allergens**.



**Types****1. Simple allergic conjunctivitis**

- Seasonal allergic conjunctivitis (SAC)
- Perennial allergic conjunctivitis (PAC)

**2. Vernal keratoconjunctivitis (VKC)****3. Atopic keratoconjunctivitis (AKC)****4. Giant papillary conjunctivitis (GPC)****5. Phlyctenular keratoconjunctivitis (PKC)****6. Dermatoconjunctivitis (ADC)****SIMPLE ALLERGIC CONJUNCTIVITIS**

It is a mild, nonspecific allergic conjunctivitis characterized by itching, hyperaemia and mild papillary response. Basically, it is an acute or subacute urticarial reaction.

**Etiology**

Simple allergic conjunctivitis, is a type-I immediate hypersensitivity reaction mediated by IgE and subsequent mast cell activation, following exposure of ocular surface to airborne allergens. Family history of atopy might be present. Simple allergic conjunctivitis is known to occur in two forms:

**1. Seasonal allergic conjunctivitis (SAC).** SAC is a response to seasonal allergens such as tree and grass pollens. It is of very common occurrence and may be associated with hay fever (allergic rhinitis) and also known as hay fever conjunctivitis. It manifest as acute allergic conjunctivitis.

**2. Perennial allergic conjunctivitis (PAC)** is a response to perennial allergens such as house dust, animal dander and mite. It is not so common. The onset is subacute, the condition is chronic in nature and occurring all through the year.

**Pathology**

Pathological features of simple allergic conjunctivitis comprise vascular, cellular and conjunctival responses.

1. **Vascular response** is characterised by sudden and extreme vasodilation and increased permeability of conjunctival vessels leading to exudation.
2. **Cellular response** is in the form of conjunctival infiltration and exudation in the discharge of eosinophils, plasma cells and mast cells producing histamine and histamine-like substances.
3. **Conjunctival response** is in the form of boggy swelling of conjunctiva followed by increased connective tissue formation and mild papillary hyperplasia.

**Clinical features****Symptoms**

- Intense itching and burning sensation in the eyes associated with

- Watery, mucus, stringy discharge, and
- Mild photophobia.

**Signs**

- Hyperaemia and chemosis which give a swollen juicy appearance to the conjunctiva.
- Mild papillary reaction may be seen on palpebral conjunctiva.
- Oedema of lids is often present.

**Diagnosis**

Diagnosis is made from:

- Typical symptoms and signs,
- Normal conjunctival flora, and
- Presence of abundant eosinophils in the discharge.

**Treatment**

1. **Avoiding known allergen triggers** is critical.

Possible strategies for avoiding allergens include:

- SAC patients may benefit from staying indoor during times of high pollen counts, using room and car air conditioners, and keeping windows closed.
- PAC patients may benefit from covering beddings with plastic covers, removing carpets and avoiding pets.
- 2. **Cold compresses** may reduce swelling and may provide some additional relief.
- 3. **Artificial tears** like carboxymethyl cellulose provide soothing effect.
- 4. **Topical vasoconstrictors** like naphazoline, antizoline and tetrahydrozoline provide immediate decongestion.
- 5. **Mast cell stabilizers** such as sodium cromoglycate and nedocromil sodium are very effective in preventing recurrences in atopic cases.
- 6. **Dual action antihistamines and mast cell stabilizers** such as azelastine, olopatadine and ketotifen are very effective for exacerbations.
- 7. **Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)** like ketorolac tromethamine and diclofenac help by decreasing the activity of cyclo-oxygenase an enzyme responsible for arachidonic acid metabolism which in turn reduce prostaglandin production.
- 8. **Steroid eye drops** should preferably be avoided. However, these may be prescribed for short duration in severe and non-responsive patients. These help by blocking most allergic inflammatory cascade
- 9. **Systemic antihistaminic drugs** are useful in acute cases with marked itching.

**VERNAL KERATOCONJUNCTIVITIS (VKC) OR SPRING CATARRH**

5m 3m

VKC is a recurrent, bilateral, interstitial, self-limiting, allergic inflammation of the conjunctiva having a periodic seasonal incidence.



### Etiopathogenesis

Vernal keratoconjunctivitis (VKC) is found in individuals with predisposed atopic background. It has long been considered an atopic disorder, mainly type-I IgE-mediated hypersensitivity reaction to pollen allergens. However, now it is believed that pathogenesis of VKC is characterized by Th2 lymphocyte alteration and that the exaggerated IgE response to common allergens is a secondary event.

### Predisposing factors

1. **Age and sex.** 4–20 years; more common in boys than girls.
2. **Season.** More common in summer; hence the name spring catarrh seems to be a misnomer. Recently, it is being labelled as 'Warm weather conjunctivitis'. Seasonal exacerbation, is common, but patients may have symptoms year-round.
3. **Climate.** More prevalent in tropics, less in temperate zones and almost non-existent in cold climate.
4. **Other atopic manifestations,** such as eczema or asthma, are associated in 40–75% patients with VKC.
5. **Family history** of atopy is found in 40–60% of patients.

### Pathology

1. **Conjunctival epithelium** in papillary region contains large number of mast cells, eosinophils and undergoes hyperplasia and sends downward projections into the subepithelial tissue.
  2. **Adenoid layer** shows marked cellular infiltration by mast cells eosinophils, plasma cells, lymphocytes and histiocytes.
  3. **Fibrous layer** shows proliferation which later on undergoes hyaline changes.
  4. **Conjunctival vessels** also show proliferation, increased permeability and vasodilation.
- All these pathological changes lead to formation of multiple papillae in the upper tarsal conjunctiva.

### Clinical features

**Symptoms.** Spring catarrh is characterised by:

- **Marked burning and itching sensation** which is usually intolerable and accentuated when patient comes in a warm humid atmosphere. **Itching is more marked with palpebral form** of disease.
- **Other associated symptoms** include: mild photophobia, lacrimation, stringy (ropy) discharge and heaviness of lids.

**Signs** of vernal keratoconjunctivitis can be described in following three clinical forms:

1. **Palpebral form.** Usually upper tarsal conjunctiva of both eyes is involved. The typical lesion is the

presence of **hard, flat topped, papillae** arranged in a '**cobble-stone**' or '**pavement stone**', fashion along with conjunctival hyperemia (Fig. 5.23). In severe cases, papillae may hypertrophy to produce cauliflower-like excrescences of '**giant papillae**'. Conjunctival changes are associated with **white ropy discharge**.

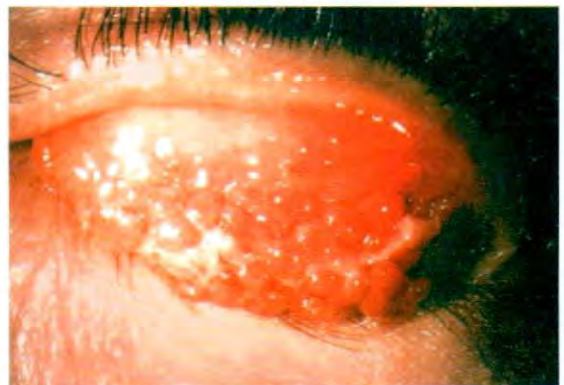
2. **Bulbar limbal form.** It is characterised by:

- **Dusky red triangular congestion** of bulbar conjunctiva in palpebral area,
- **Limbal papillae** occur as **gelatinous, thickened confluent accumulation** of tissue around the limbus (Fig. 5.24A), and
- **Presence of discrete whitish raised dots** along the limbus (**Horner-Tranta's spots**) (Fig. 5.24B).

3. **Mixed form.** It shows combined features of both palpebral and bulbar forms (Fig. 5.25).

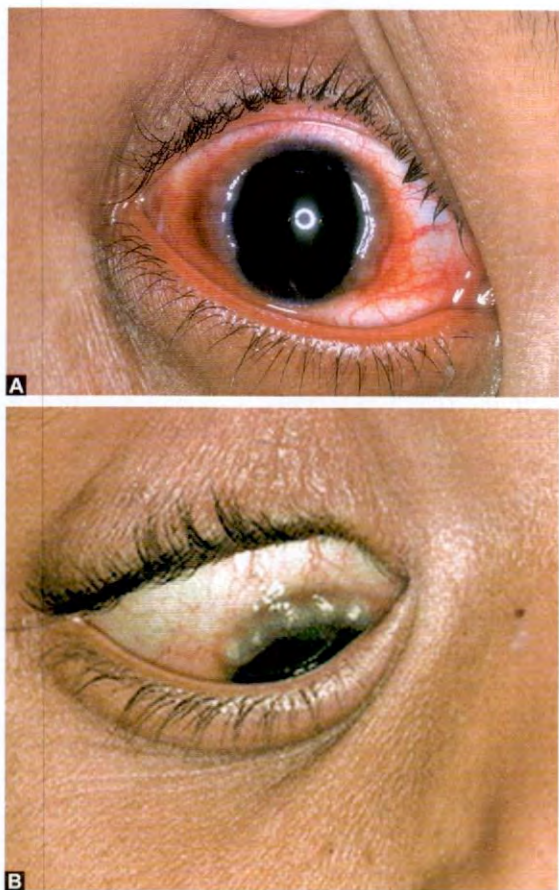
**Vernal keratopathy.** Corneal involvement in VKC may be primary or secondary due to extension of limbal lesions. Vernal keratopathy is more frequent with palpebral form and includes following types of lesions:

1. **Punctate epithelial keratitis**, involving upper cornea, is usually associated with **palpebral form of disease** and is caused by medication from the **inflamed tarsal conjunctive**. The lesions always **stain with rose bengal** and invariably with fluorescein dye.
2. **Frank epithelial erosions**, leaving Bowman's membrane intact, result due to **coalescence of punctate epithelial lesions**.
3. **Vernal corneal plaques** result due to **coating of bare areas of epithelial macroerosions** with a layer of **altered exudates** (Fig. 5.26A).
4. **Ulcerative vernal keratitis (shield ulceration)** presents as a **shallow transverse ulcer** in upper part of cornea (Fig. 5.26B). The ulceration results due to epithelial macroerosions. It is a serious problem which may be complicated by bacterial keratitis.

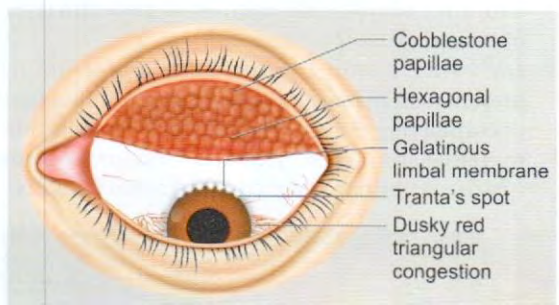


**Fig. 5.23** Palpebral form of vernal keratoconjunctivitis





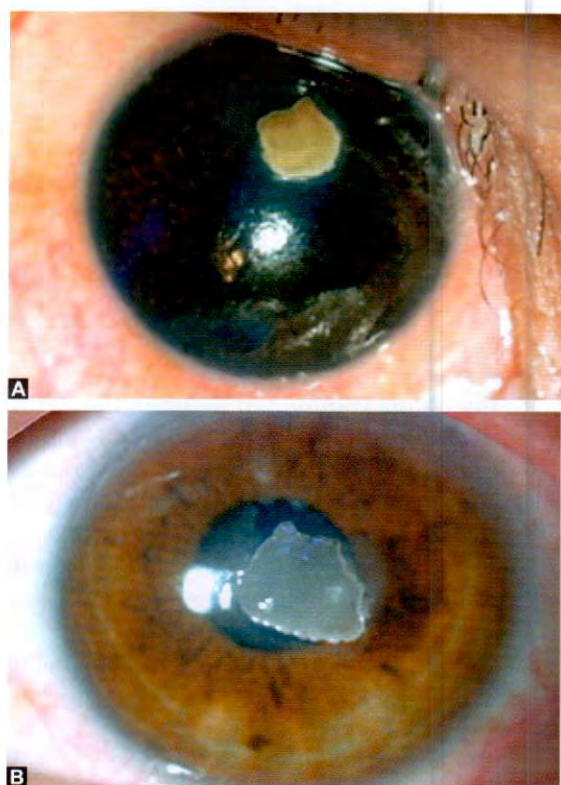
**Fig. 5.24** Bulbar form of VKC depicting: A, Gelatinous membrane around limbus; B, Tranta's spots at limbus



**Fig. 5.25** Artist's diagram of mixed form of vernal keratoconjunctivitis

5. Subepithelial scarring occurs in the form of a ring scar.
6. Pseudogerontoxon can develop in recurrent limbal disease and is characterised by a classical 'cupid's bow' outline.

**Clinical course** of disease is often self-limiting and usually burns out spontaneously after 5–10 years.



**Fig. 5.26** Vernal keratopathy: A, Vernal corneal plaque; B, Shield ulcer

**Differential diagnosis.** Palpebral form of VKC needs to be differentiated from trachoma with predominant papillary hypertrophy (See page 72).

Atopic keratoconjunctivitis (AKC) forms the principal differential diagnostic entity. Table 5.3 summarises the comparison and contrast between VKC and AKC.

**Table 5.3:** Comparison of VKC and AKC

|                              | VKC                            | AKC                           |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Age                          | Younger                        | Older                         |
| Sex                          | Males>females                  | No predilection               |
| Duration of disease          | Limited; resolves at puberty   | Chronic                       |
| Time of year                 | Spring                         | Perennial                     |
| Conjunctival involvement     | Upper tarsus                   | Lower tarsus                  |
| Cornea                       | Shield ulcer                   | Persistent epithelial defects |
| Corneal scar                 | Common; not vision threatening | Common; vision threatening    |
| Conjunctival vascularisation | Rare                           | Common                        |



## Treatment

### A. Topical anti-inflammatory therapy

Topical anti-inflammatory therapy with combined steroids, mast cell stabilizers, antihistamines, and NSAIDs forms the mainstay of treatment of VKC.

**1. Topical steroids.** These are effective in all forms of spring catarrh. However, their use should be minimised, as they frequently cause steroid induced glaucoma. Therefore, monitoring of intraocular pressure is very important during steroid therapy. Frequent instillation (2 hourly) to start with (7 days) should be followed by maintenance therapy for 4 times a day for 2 weeks.

Commonly used steroid solutions are of fluorometholone, medrysone, betamethasone or dexamethasone. Medrysone and fluorometholone are safest of all these.

**2. Mast cell stabilizers** such as sodium cromoglycate (2%) drops 5 times a day are quite effective in controlling VKC, especially atopic cases.

**3. Dual action antihistamines and mast cell stabilizers** such as azelastine, olopatadine and ketotifen are very effective for control and prevention of exacerbations.

**4. NSAIDs eye drops** such as ketorolac and diclofenac give added benefits.

**5. Topical cyclosporine** (0.5 to 1%), the immune-modulator, is indicated when steroids are ineffective, inadequate, or poorly tolerated, or when given as a steroid-sparing agent in patients with severe disease.

**6. Tacrolimus** (0.03% ointment) is another immune-modulator, which can be useful in refractory cases.

### B. Topical lubricating and mucolytics

**1. Artificial tears**, such as carboxymethyl cellulose, provide soothing effect.

**2. Acetyl cysteine** (0.5%) used topically has mucolytic properties and is useful in the treatment of early plaque formation.

### C. Systemic therapy

**1. Oral antihistaminics** may provide some relief from itching in severe cases.

**2. Oral steroids** for a short duration have been recommended for advanced, very severe, non-responsive cases.

### D. Treatment of large papillae

Very large (giant) papillae can be tackled either by:

- Supratarsal injection of long acting steroid, or
- Cryo application, or
- Surgical excision is recommended for extraordinarily large papillae.

### E. Supportive measures include:

- Dark goggles to prevent photophobia.
- Cold compresses and ice packs have soothing effects.
- Maintenance of air conditioned atmosphere.

- Change of place from hot to cold area is recommended for recalcitrant cases.

### F. Desensitization

Desensitization has also been tried without much rewarding results.

### G. Treatment of vernal keratopathy

- Punctate epithelial keratitis requires no extra treatment except that instillation of steroids should be increased.

- A large vernal plaque requires surgical excision by superficial keratectomy.

- Severe shield ulcer resistant to medical therapy may need surgical treatment in the form of debridement, superficial keratectomy, excimer laser therapeutic keratectomy as well as amniotic membrane transplantation to enhance re-epithelialization.

## ATOPIC KERATOCONJUNCTIVITIS (AKC)

It can be thought of as an adult equivalent of vernal keratoconjunctivitis and is often associated with atopic dermatitis. Most of the patients are young atopic adults, with male predominance.

### Pathogenesis

In AKC both IgE and cell-mediated immune mechanisms play role, i.e. type-I as well as type-IV hypersensitivity reactions are responsible for the inflammatory changes of conjunctiva, cornea, lid margin and skin of eyelids. Mast cells and eosinophils are found in the conjunctival epithelium of AKC patients. Furthermore, a complex immune cell profile implicates more than the mast cells alone, but the details of those cellular interaction remain speculative.

### Clinical features

**Symptoms include:**

- Itching, soreness, dry sensation.
- Mucoid discharge.
- Photophobia or blurred vision.

**Signs**

#### 1. Eyelid signs

- Lid margins are chronically inflamed with rounded posterior borders.
- Extra lid folds (Dennie-Morgan fold) may occur due to chronic eyelid rubbing.
- Loss of lateral eyebrows (Hertoghe's sign) may be seen.
- Blepharitis, meibomianitis, and tarsal margin keratinization are also reported.
- Trichiasis, madarosis, punctal ectropion, ectropion and entropion may occur as sequelae of inflammation.



## 2. Conjunctival signs

- **Tarsal conjunctiva** has a **milky appearance**. There are very fine papillae, hyperaemia and scarring with shrinkage.
- **Bulbar conjunctiva** is **chemosed** and congested.
- **Limbal conjunctiva** may show **gelatinous deposits** and Tranta's dots as seen in VKC.
- **Subepithelial fibrosis**, **fornix shortening** and **symblepharon** are also noticed.

## 3. Corneal signs

- **Punctate epithelial erosions**, often more severe in the lower half of cornea, may be seen.
- **Persistent epithelial defects**, sometimes associated with focal thinning, can also occur.
- **Filamentary keratitis** may also occur.
- **Plaque formation** may occur similar to VKC.
- **Peripheral vascularization** and **stromal scarring** are more common than VKC.

## 4. Associations

- **Keratoconus** is associated in about 15% cases.
- **Atopic cataract**, in the form of anterior or posterior subcapsular opacities, may be associated.
- **Retinal detachment**, incidence is more higher than in general public.

**Clinical course.** Like the atopic dermatitis eczema with which it is associated, AKC has a protracted course with exacerbations and remissions. Like vernal keratoconjunctivitis, it tends to become inactive when patient reaches the fifth decade.

**Differential diagnosis** of AKC need to be made from VKC in many patients (See Table 5.3).

## Treatment

- **Treatment of AKC** is exactly on the same lines as described for VKC (See page 83), except that the AKC is generally less responsive and requires more intensive and prolonged therapy.
- **Lid margin inflammation and facial eczema** should be treated by oral **NSAIDs**, oral **antibiotics** (Doxycycline or azithromycin) and local application of **steroids and antibiotic eye ointment**.

## GIANT PAPILLARY CONJUNCTIVITIS (GPC)

GPC is the inflammation of conjunctiva with formation of **very large sized papillae** greater than 1 mm in size (currently defined as papillae greater than 0.3 mm in diameter).

## Etiopathogenesis

GPC, also known as mechanically-induced papillary conjunctivitis, is a localised allergic response to a physically rough or deposited surface (contact

lens, prosthesis, exposed nylon sutures and scleral buckle). Exact pathogenesis of GPC is not clear, but is most frequently attributed to the combined effect of mechanical trauma and the subsequent immune response to antigens in the form of surface deposits or environmental factors. It has been postulated that the antigens from surface coating of contact lens or other material are first processed by the membrane antigen processing cells (M cells) in the area of conjunctival-associated lymphoid tissue (CALT) before being presented to B lymphocytes, which then mediate the subsequent immune response.

## Clinical features

**Symptoms** include mild **irritation and itching**, stringy discharge and reduced wearing time of contact lens or prosthetic shell.

**Signs.** Papillary hypertrophy (often ranging between 0.6 mm to 1.75 mm in diameter) of the upper tarsal conjunctiva, similar to that seen in palpebral form of VKC with hyperaemia are the main signs (Fig. 5.27). Size and pattern of papillae vary with the offending cause.

## Treatment

1. **Offending cause should be removed.** After discontinuation of contact lens or artificial eye or removal of nylon sutures, the papillae resolve over a period of one month.
2. **Mast cell stabilizer** such as sodium cromoglycate and nedocromil are known to relieve the symptoms and enhance the rate of resolution.
3. **Combined antihistamines and mast cell stabilizers** like azelastine and olopatadine are very effective.
4. **Steroids** may be required in resistant cases.

## PHLYCTENULAR KERATOCONJUNCTIVITIS 5m

Phlyctenular keratoconjunctivitis is a characteristic nodular affection (phlycten) occurring as an allergic

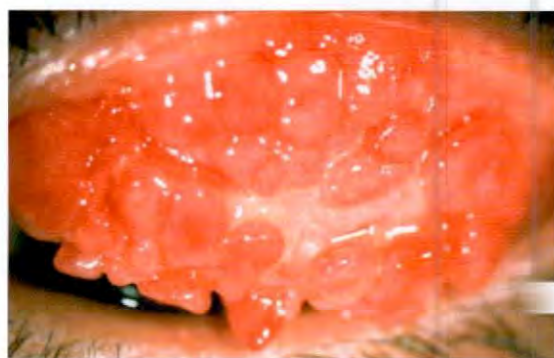


Fig. 5.27 Giant papillary conjunctivitis (GPC)



response of the conjunctival and corneal epithelium to some *endogenous allergens* to which they have become sensitized. Phlyctenular conjunctivitis is of worldwide distribution. However, its incidence is higher in developing countries.

### Etiology

It is believed to be a *delayed hypersensitivity* (Type IV-cell mediated) response to endogenous microbial proteins so called as *microbial allergic conjunctivitis*.

#### I. Causative allergens

1. *Tuberculous proteins* were considered, previously, a common cause.
2. *Staphylococcus proteins* are now thought to account for most of the cases.
3. *Other allergens* may be *proteins of Moraxella Axenfeld bacillus* and certain parasites (worm infestation).

#### II. Predisposing factors

1. *Age*. Peak age group is 3–15 years.
2. *Sex*. Incidence is *higher in girls* than boys.
3. *Undernourishment*. Disease is more common in undernourished children.
4. *Living conditions*. Overcrowded and unhygienic.
5. *Season*. It occurs in *all climates* but incidence is *high in spring and summer seasons*.

### Pathology

1. *Stage of nodule formation*. In this stage, there occurs *exudation and infiltration of leucocytes into the deeper layers of conjunctiva* leading to a *nodule formation*. The *central cells* are *polymorphonuclear* and *peripheral cells* are *lymphocytes*. The neighbouring *blood vessels dilate* and their endothelium proliferates.

2. *Stage of ulceration*. Later on *necrosis occurs* at the apex of the nodule and an ulcer is formed. Leucocytic infiltration increases with plasma cells and mast cells.

3. *Stage of granulation*. Eventually, *floor of the ulcer becomes covered by granulation tissue*.

4. *Stage of healing*. Healing occurs usually with minimal scarring.

### Clinical features

Disease is usually unilateral (in contrast to vernal keratoconjunctivitis which is bilateral).

**Symptoms** in simple phlyctenular conjunctivitis are few, like *mild discomfort* in the eye, *irritation* and *reflex watering*. However, usually there is associated mucopurulent conjunctivitis due to secondary bacterial infection.

**Signs.** The phlyctenular conjunctivitis can present in three forms: simple, necrotizing and miliary.

1. *Simple phlyctenular conjunctivitis*. It is the *most commonly* seen variety. It is characterised by the presence of a *typical pinkish white nodule surrounded by hyperaemia* on the bulbar conjunctiva, usually near the limbus. Most of the times, *there is solitary nodule* but at times, there may be two nodules (Fig. 5.28). In a few days, the *nodule ulcerates at apex* which later *on gets epithelised*. Rest of the conjunctiva is normal.

2. *Necrotizing phlyctenular conjunctivitis* is characterised by the presence of a *very large phlycten with necrosis and ulceration* leading to a severe pustular conjunctivitis.

3. *Miliary phlyctenular conjunctivitis* is characterised by the presence of *multiple phlyctens* which may be *arranged haphazardly* or in the *form of a ring* around the limbus and may even form a ring ulcer.

**Phlyctenular keratitis.** Corneal involvement may occur secondarily from extension of conjunctival phlycten; or rarely as a primary disease. It may present in *two forms*: the 'ulcerative phlyctenular keratitis' or 'diffuse infiltrative keratitis'.

**A. Ulcerative phlyctenular keratitis** may occur in the following three forms:

1. *Scrofulous ulcer* is a shallow marginal ulcer formed due to breakdown of small limbal phlycten. It differs from the catarrhal ulcer in that there is *no clear space between the ulcer and the limbus* and its long axis is frequently perpendicular to limbus. Such an ulcer *usually clears up without leaving any opacity*.

2. *Fascicular ulcer* has a prominent *parallel leash of blood vessels* (Fig. 5.29). This ulcer usually *remains superficial* but leaves behind a band-shaped superficial opacity after healing.

3. *Miliary ulcer*. In this form multiple small ulcers are scattered over a portion of or whole of the cornea.

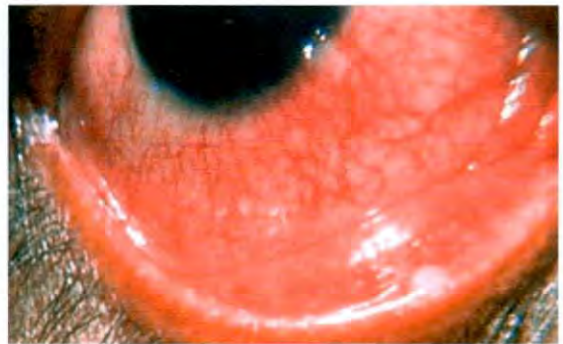
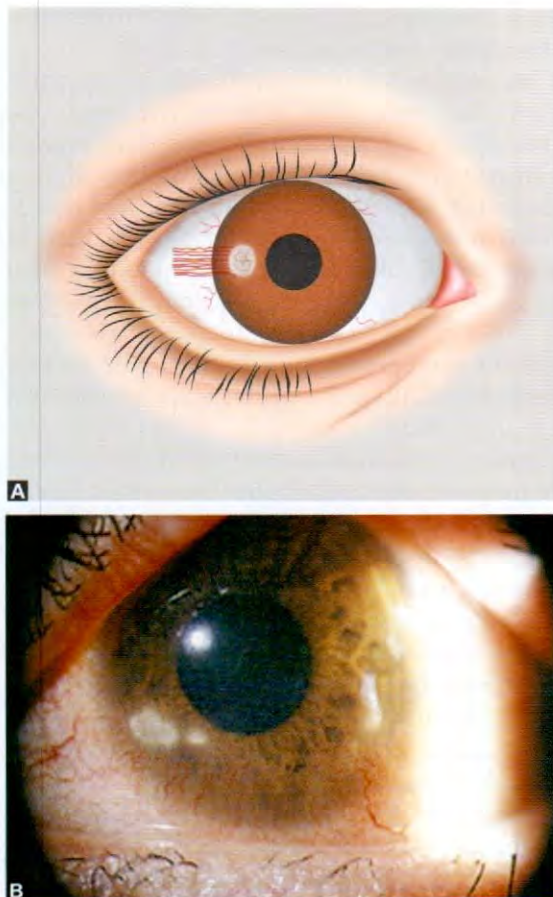


Fig. 5.28 Phlyctenular conjunctivitis





**Fig. 5.29** Fascicular corneal ulcer: A, Diagrammatic; B, Clinical photograph

**B. Diffuse infiltrative phlyctenular keratitis** may appear in the form of central infiltration of cornea with characteristic rich vascularization from the periphery, all around the limbus. It may be superficial or deep.

**Clinical course** is usually self-limiting and phlycten disappears in 8–10 days leaving no trace. However, recurrences are very common.

#### Differential diagnosis

Phlyctenular conjunctivitis needs to be differentiated from the episcleritis, scleritis, and conjunctival foreign body granuloma.

Presence of one or more whitish raised nodules on the bulbar conjunctiva near the limbus, with hyperaemia usually of the surrounding conjunctiva, in a child living in bad hygienic conditions (most of the times) are the diagnostic features of the phlyctenular conjunctivitis.

#### Management

It includes treatment of phlyctenular conjunctivitis by local therapy, investigations and specific therapy aimed at eliminating the causative allergen and general measures to improve the health of the child.

##### 1. Local therapy

- Topical steroids, in the form of eye drops or ointment (dexamethasone or betamethasone) produce dramatic effect in phlyctenular keratoconjunctivitis.
- Antibiotic drops and ointment should be added to take care of the associated secondary infection (mucopurulent conjunctivitis).
- Atropine (1%) eye ointment should be applied once daily when cornea is involved.

##### 2. Specific therapy

Attempts must be made to search and eradicate the following causative conditions:

- Tuberculous infection should be excluded by X-rays chest, Mantoux test, TLC, DLC and ESR. In case, a tubercular focus is discovered, antitubercular treatment should be started to combat the infection.
- Septic focus, in the form of tonsillitis, adenoiditis, or caries teeth, when present should be adequately treated by systemic antibiotics and necessary surgical measures.
- Parasitic infestation should be ruled out by repeated stool examination and when discovered should be adequately treated for complete eradication.

##### 3. General measures

General measures aimed to improve the health of child are equally important. Attempts should be made to provide high protein diet supplemented with vitamins A, C and D.

#### CONTACT DERMATOCONJUNCTIVITIS

It is an allergic disorder, involving conjunctiva and skin of lids along with surrounding area of face.

##### Etiology

It is in fact a delayed hypersensitivity (Type IV) response to prolonged contact with chemicals and drugs. A few common topical ophthalmic medications known to produce contact dermatitis are atropine, penicillin, neomycin, soframycin and gentamicin.



**Clinical features**

1. **Cutaneous involvement** is in the form of weeping eczematous reaction, involving all areas with which medication comes in contact.
2. **Conjunctival response** is in the form of hyperaemia with a generalised papillary response affecting the lower fornix and lower palpebral conjunctiva more than the upper.
3. **Cornea** may show punctate epithelial keratitis and erosions.

**Diagnosis**

- **Clinical features** are usually typical.
- **Conjunctival cytology** shows a lymphocytic response with masses of eosinophils.
- **Skin test** to the causative allergen is positive in most of the cases.

**Treatment**

1. Discontinuation of the causative medication,
2. Topical steroid eye drops to relieve symptoms, and
3. Application of steroid ointment on the involved skin.

**C. CICATRICAL CONJUNCTIVITIS****OCULAR MUCOUS MEMBRANE PEMPHIGOID (OMMP)****Etiology**

- OMMP is thought to be a type II hypersensitivity reaction involving basement membrane of epithelial cells of conjunctiva, other mucosal surfaces and even skin.
- **Age.** Usually occurs after 60 years of age, but may occur in adolescence.
- **Sex.** Slightly more common in female than male.

**Pathology**

It is chronic inflammatory subepithelial blistering disease with subsequent cicatrization of the involved mucosa.

**Clinical features****I. Ocular features**

**Symptoms** include insidious onset of bilateral redness, foreign body sensation, watering and photophobia.

**Signs** progress as below (Fig. 5.30):

- **Inflammatory signs** include hyperaemia, chronic papillae and subconjunctival vesicles which later ulcerate.
- **Cicatrization signs** include loss of plica semilunaris and fornices, formation of symblepharon (usually inferior and ankyloblepharon) ending in severe dry eye syndrome.



**Fig. 5.30** Ocular mucous membrane pemphigoid with inferior symblepharon formation

- **Corneal involvement** occurs as superficial punctate keratitis, secondary microbial keratitis, corneal neovascularization and even perforation.
- **Lid sequelae** include trichiasis and entropion formation.

**II. Systemic features**

- **Mucosa** of oral cavity, anus, vagina and urethra may be involved.
- **Desquamative gingivitis** is common association.
- **Cutaneous vesicles, bullae and scar formation** may occur.
- **Involvement of trachea and esophagus** is potentially life-threatening.

**Differential diagnosis** need to be made from Stevens-Johnson syndrome and other cicatrizing disorders.

**Treatment**

1. **Topical treatment** comprise:

- **Tear substitutes**, to be used frequently.
- **Antibiotics** for secondary infection.
- **Steroids** may help in reducing inflammation (caution for corneal melting).

2. **Systemic immunosuppression** is typically required to suppress the acute phase of disease.

- **Mild disease**—use dapsone (1 mg/kg).
- **Moderate disease**—use antimetabolite such as methotrexate or azathioprine.
- **Severe disease**—use intravenous methylprednisolone with or without cyclophosphamide for 4 days, followed by oral prednisolone.

3. **Surgical intervention** required in late stage (depending upon the condition) may be:

- **Punctal occlusion** for dry eye.
- **Silicon hydrogel contact lens** use.
- **Correction of trichiasis and entropion.**
- **Ocular surface reconstruction** for advanced scarring.



- Corneal transplantation.
- Keratoprosthesis in extensive corneal and ocular surface scarring.

## STEVENS-JOHNSON SYNDROME AND TOXIC EPIDERMAL NECROSIS

Stevens-Johnson syndrome (SJS) and toxic epidermal necrosis (TEN) (Lyell syndrome) are acute mucocutaneous blistering diseases usually associated with severe ocular complications.

### Etiology

These conditions are thought to result from a Type III hypersensitivity response to certain drugs (such as sulfonamides, anticonvulsants and allopurinol) and infectious agents (such as mycoplasma, pneumoniae, herpes simplex virus and adenovirus).

### Clinical features

#### Symptoms

Symptoms include acute onset of fever, skin rash, red eyes, malaise, arthralgia and respiratory tract symptoms.

#### Systemic signs

- Classic 'target' skin lesions are maculopapules with a red crater and white surrounding area or bullae.
- Haemorrhagic inflammation of mucous membranes, e.g. haemorrhagic lip crusting.
- Ulcerative stomatitis.
- Sloughing of epidermal surface (seen in TEN) is called Nikolsky sign.

### Ocular signs

■ Acute disease is characterized by papillary or mucopurulent or pseudomembranous conjunctivitis, episcleritis, and iritis.

■ Late disease is characterized by:

- Conjunctival scarring and symblepharon formation,
- Trichiasis and lid deformities,
- Dry eye resulting from loss of Goblet cells and destruction of lacrimal gland ductules, and
- Corneal neovascularization, ulceration, perforation and scarring.

### Treatment

Systemic treatment in acute phase includes:

Removal (e.g. causative drugs) or treatment (e.g. of causative infection) of the inciting factor:

- Intravenous immunoglobulin,
- Role of systemic steroids is controversial,
- Maintenance of hydration, and
- Debridement and replacement of sloughing skin.

Ocular treatment during acute phase includes:

- Topical tear drops and prevention of exposure,
- Topical antibiotics and steroid eye drops, and
- Pseudomembrane peel and symblepharon lysis with glass rod or moistened cotton swab should be done daily.

Late stage interventions are similar to OMMP (See page 87).

## SECONDARY CICATRICIAL CONJUNCTIVITIS

Cicatricial conjunctivitis may occur secondary to: Injuries to conjunctiva (such as thermal, radiational or chemical burns) and infective conjunctivitis (such as trachoma and viral pseudomembranous conjunctivitis).

## D. TOXIC CONJUNCTIVITIS

### 1. Toxic conjunctivitis secondary to molluscum contagiosum

It is a type of chronic follicular conjunctivitis that occurs as a response to toxic cellular debris desquamated into the conjunctival sac from the molluscum contagiosum nodules present on the lid margin (the primary lesion).

### 2. Chemical toxic conjunctivitis

Also known as toxic keratoconjunctivitis related to topical medication is an irritative follicular conjunctival response which occurs after prolonged administration of topical medication.

Common topical preparations associated with chronic follicular conjunctivitis are: idoxuridine (IDU), eserine, pilocarpine, DFP, adrenaline, topical beta adrenergic blocker dorzolamide, prostaglandin graph of glaucoma medication neomycin, preservatives including contact lens solutions and topical anaesthetics.

Other causes of toxic keratoconjunctivitis include:

- Cosmetics and skin care products,
- Hair care products, and
- Tear gas weapons and lacrimating agents.

### Treatment

- Cessation of use of offending agent
- Lubricating drops and ointments provide symptomatic relief.
- Measures for persistent corneal epithelial defects depending upon the severity, include, bandage contact lens, tarsorrhaphy and amniotic membrane transplants.



## DEGENERATIVE CONDITIONS

## PINGUECULA 5m

Pinguecula is an extremely common degenerative condition of the conjunctiva. It is characterized by formation of a yellowish white patch on the bulbar conjunctiva near the limbus. This condition is termed pinguecula, because of its resemblance to fat, which means pinguis.

**Etiology** of pinguecula is not known exactly. It has been considered as an age-change, occurring more commonly in persons exposed to strong sunlight, dust and wind. It was considered a precursor of pterygium. However, currently, it is suggested that pinguecula does not progress to pterygium and that the two are distinct disorders.

**Pathology.** There is an elastotic degeneration of collagen fibres of the substantia propria of conjunctiva, coupled with deposition of amorphous hyaline material in the substance of conjunctiva.

**Clinical features.** Pinguecula is a bilateral, usually stationary condition, presenting as yellowish white triangular patch near the limbus (Fig. 5.31). Apex of the triangle is away from the cornea. It affects the nasal side first and then the temporal side. When conjunctiva is congested, it stands out as an avascular prominence.

**Complications** of pinguecula include its inflammation, intraepithelial abscess formation and rarely calcification and doubtful conversion into pterygium.

**Treatment.** In routine, no treatment is required for pinguecula. However, when cosmetically unacceptable and if so desired, it may be excised. When inflamed, it is treated with topical steroid.



Fig. 5.31 Pinguecula

## PTERYGIUM 10m

Pterygium (L. Pterygion = a wing) is a wing-shaped fold of conjunctiva encroaching upon the cornea from either side within the interpalpebral fissure.

**Etiology**

Etiology of pterygium is not definitely known. But the disease is more common in people living in hot climates and in those who work outdoors. Therefore, the most accepted view is that it is a response to prolonged effect of environmental factors such as exposure to sunlight (ultraviolet rays), dry heat, high wind and abundance of dust.

**Pathology**

Pathologically pterygium is a degenerative and hyperplastic condition of conjunctiva. The subconjunctival tissue undergoes elastotic degeneration and proliferates as vascularised granulation tissue under the epithelium, which ultimately encroaches the cornea. The corneal epithelium, Bowman's layer and superficial stroma are destroyed.

**Clinical features****Demography**

- Age: Usually seen in old age.
- Sex: More common in males doing outdoor work than females.
- Laterality: It may be unilateral or bilateral. Usually present on the nasal side but may also occur on the temporal side.

**Symptoms**

- Cosmetic intolerance may be the only issue in otherwise asymptomatic condition in early stages.
- Foreign body sensation and irritation may be experienced.
- Defective vision occurs when it encroaches the pupillary area or due to corneal astigmatism induced by fibrosis in the regressive stage.
- Diplopia may occur occasionally due to limitation of ocular movements.

**Signs**

Triangular fold of conjunctiva encroaching on the cornea in the area of palpebral aperture usually on the nasal side is typical presentation of pterygium (Fig. 5.32) However, it may also occur on the temporal side. Very rarely, both nasal and temporal sides are involved (primary double pterygium).

Stocker line (deposition of iron) may be seen in corneal epithelium anterior to the advancing head of pterygium.



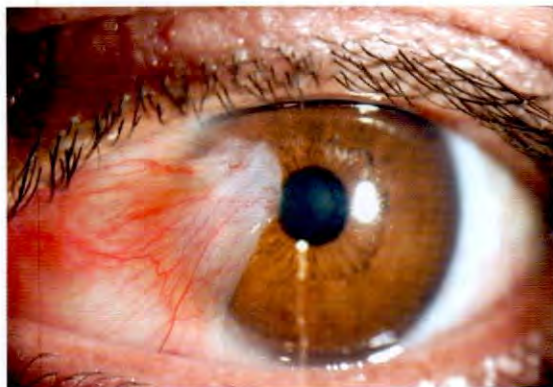


Fig. 5.32 Pterygium

**Parts** of a fully-developed pterygium are as follows: (Fig. 5.32):

- **Head:** Apical part present on the cornea,
- **Neck:** Constricted part present in the limbal area, and
- **Body:** Scleral part, extending between limbus and the canthus.
- **Cap:** Semilunar whitish infiltrate present just in front of the head.

**Types.** Based on the extent and progression, pterygium can be of following types:

Based on the extent, pterygium has been described of three types:

- **Type 1 pterygium** extends less than 2 mm onto the cornea.
- **Type 2 pterygium** involves upto 4 mm of the cornea.
- **Type 3 pterygium** encroaches onto more than 4 mm of the cornea and involves the visual axis.

**Depending upon the progression**, it may be progressive or regressive pterygium.

- **Progressive pterygium** is thick, fleshy and vascular with a few whitish infiltrates in the cornea, in front of the head of the pterygium known as **Fuch's spots** or islets of Vogt also called **cap of pterygium**.
- **Regressive pterygium** is thin, atrophic, attenuated with very little vascularity. There is no cap, but deposition of iron (**Stocker's line**) may be seen sometimes, just anterior to the head of pterygium. Ultimately, it becomes membranous but never disappears.

#### Complications

- **Cystic degeneration and infection** are infrequent.
- **Neoplastic change** to epithelioma, fibrosarcoma or malignant melanoma, may occur rarely.

#### Differential diagnosis

Pterygium must be differentiated from pseudopterygium.

**Pseudopterygium** is a fold of bulbar conjunctiva attached to the cornea. It is formed as a response to an acute inflammatory episode such as chemical burn, marginal corneal ulcer, corneal trauma and cicatrizing conjunctivitis. It results due to adhesions of chemosed bulbar conjunctiva with the peripheral deepithelised corneal surface.

Differences between pterygium and pseudopterygium are given in Table 5.4.

#### Treatment

**Medical treatment** of not much use.

- **Tear substitutes** may be used in patients with small regressive pterygium for dry eye symptom.
- **Topical steroids** may be required for associated inflammation.
- **Protection from ultraviolet rays** with sunglasses decreases the growth stimulus.

**Surgical excision** is the only satisfactory treatment, which may be indicated for:

- **Cosmetic disfigurement.**
- **Visual impairment** due to significant regular or irregular astigmatism.
- **Continued progression** threatening to encroach onto the pupillary area (once the pterygium has encroached pupillary area, wait till it crosses on the other side).
- **Diplopia** due to interference in ocular movements.

**Recurrence of the pterygium** after surgical excision is the main problem (30–50%). However, it can be reduced by any of the following measures:

- **Surgical excision with free conjunctival limbal autograft (CLAU)** taken from the same eye or other eye is presently the preferred technique.
- **Surgical excision with amniotic membrane graft and mitomycin-C (MMC) (0.02%)** application

Table 5.4 Differences between pterygium and pseudopterygium

|               | Pterygium                                    | Pseudopterygium                      |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. Etiology   | Degenerative process                         | Inflammatory process                 |
| 2. Age        | Usually occurs in elder persons              | Can occur at any age                 |
| 3. Site       | Always situated in the palpebral aperture    | Can occur at any site                |
| 4. Stages     | Either progressive, regressive or stationary | Always stationary                    |
| 5. Probe test | Probe cannot be passed underneath            | A probe can be passed under the neck |

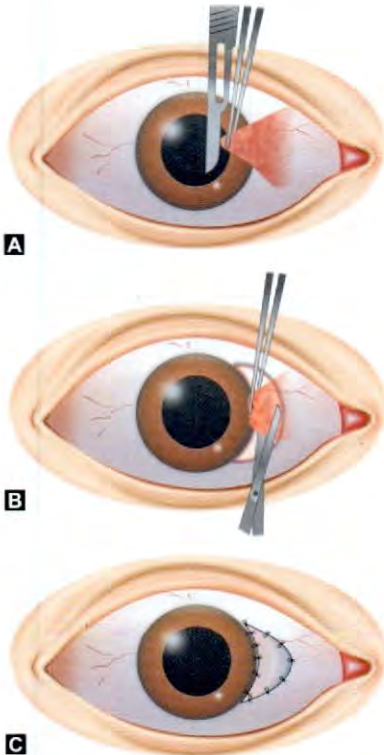


may be required in recurrent pterygium or when dealing with a very large pterygium.

- **Surgical excision with lamellar keratectomy and lamellar keratoplasty** may be required in deeply infiltrating recurrent recalcitrant pterygia.
- **Old methods to prevent recurrence** (not used now) included **transplantation of pterygium in the lower fornix** (McRaynold's operation) and postoperative use of beta irradiations.

#### **Surgical technique of pterygium excision**

- After **topical anaesthesia**, eye is cleansed, draped and exposed using universal eye speculum.
- **Head of the pterygium** is **lifted and dissected off** the cornea very meticulously (Fig. 5.33A).
- **Main mass of pterygium is then separated** from the sclera underneath and the conjunctiva superficially.
- **Pterygium tissue is then excised** taking care not to damage the underlying **medial rectus muscle** (Fig. 5.33B).
- **Haemostasis** is achieved and the episcleral tissue exposed is **cauterised** thoroughly.



**Fig. 5.33** Surgical technique of pterygium excision: A, **Dissection of head from the cornea**; B, **Excision of pterygium tissue under the conjunctiva**; C, **Conjunctival limbal autograft after excising the pterygium**

- **Conjunctival limbal autograft (CLAU) transplantation** to cover the defect after pterygium excision (Fig. 5.33C). It is the latest and most effective technique in the management of pterygium. The conjunctival autograft may be **retained with the help of sutures** (not much in use due to discomfort), **with fibrin glue** (expansive) or with **patients own serum** (now a common practice).

#### **CONCRETIONS**

**Etiology.** Concretions are formed due to **accumulation of inspissated mucus and dead epithelial cell debris** into the conjunctival depressions called **loops of Henle**. They are commonly **seen in elderly people** in a degenerative condition and also in patients with **scarring stage of trachoma**. The name concretion is a misnomer, as they are not calcareous deposits.

**Clinical features.** Concretions are seen **on palpebral conjunctiva**, more commonly on **upper** than the lower. They may also be seen in **lower fornix**. These are **yellowish white, hard looking, raised areas**, varying in size from **pin point to pin head** (See Fig. 5.13). Being hard, they may produce **foreign body sensations** and **lacrimation** by rubbing the corneal surface. Occasionally, they may even cause corneal abrasions.

**Treatment.** It consists of their **removal with the help of a hypodermic needle** under topical anaesthesia.

#### **AMYLOID DEGENERATION OF CONJUNCTIVA**

##### **Etiology**

Conjunctival amyloid, though rare, is reported to occur in two forms:

- **Primary conjunctival amyloid** is associated with deposition of **light-chain immunoglobulin** by the monoclonal B cells and plasma cells.
- **Secondary conjunctival amyloid** may occur secondary to **systemic diseases** or secondary to **chronic conjunctival inflammations**.

##### **Clinical features**

- Deposition of **yellowish, well-demarcated, irregular amyloid material** in the conjunctiva with superior fornix and tarsal conjunctiva being more commonly involved areas.
- **Subconjunctival haemorrhage** may be associated with amyloid deposition in blood vessels.

##### **Treatment**

- **Lubricating drops** for mild symptoms.
- **Excision biopsy** can be performed in patients with marked irritation due to raised lesions.



## SYMPTOMATIC CONDITIONS OF CONJUNCTIVA

Common symptomatic conditions of conjunctiva include:

- **Hyperaemia** of conjunctiva,
- **Chemosis** of conjunctiva,
- **Ecchymosis** of conjunctiva,
- **Xerosis** of conjunctiva, and
- **Discoloration** of conjunctiva.

### SIMPLE HYPERAEMIA OF CONJUNCTIVA

Simple hyperaemia of conjunctiva means congestion of the conjunctival vessels due to acute exposure to some minor irritants without being associated with any of the established eye disease.

#### Etiology

It may be acute and transient, or recurrent and chronic.

**1. Acute transient hyperaemia.** It results due to temporary irritation caused by:

- Direct irritants** such as a foreign body, misdirected cilia, concretions, dust, chemical fumes, smoke, stormy wind, bright light, extreme cold, extreme heat and simple rubbing of eyes with hands.
- Reflex hyperaemia** due to eye strain, from inflammations of nasal cavity, lacrimal passages and lids.
- Hyperaemia associated with systemic febrile conditions.**
- Nonspecific inflammation of conjunctiva.**

**2. Recurrent or chronic hyperaemia.** It often occurs due to chronic exposure to irritant as in chronic smokers, chronic alcoholics, people residing in dusty, ill ventilated rooms, workers exposed to prolonged heat, in patients suffering from rosacea and insomnia or otherwise having less sleep.

#### Clinical features

- Feeling of discomfort, heaviness, grittiness, tiredness and tightness in the eyes are common complaints of patients with conjunctival hyperaemia.
- Mild lacrimation and minimal mucoid discharge, may occur.
- On cursory examination, the conjunctiva often looks normal. However, eversion of the lids may reveal mild to moderate congestion being more marked in fornices.

#### Treatment

- Removal of the cause of hyperaemia, e.g. in acute transient hyperaemia the removal of irritants (e.g. misdirected cilia) gives prompt relief.

- Symptomatic relief may be achieved by use of topical decongestants (e.g. 1:10000 adrenaline drops) or naphazoline drops.

### CHEMOSIS OF CONJUNCTIVA 3m

Chemosis or oedema of the conjunctiva is of frequent occurrence owing to laxity of the tissue.

**Causes.** The common causes of chemosis can be grouped as under:

**1. Local inflammatory conditions.** These include conjunctivitis, corneal ulcers, fulminating iridocyclitis, endophthalmitis, panophthalmitis, styes, acute meibomitis, orbital cellulitis, acute dacryoadenitis, acute dacryocystitis, tendonitis and so on.

**2. Local obstruction to flow of blood and/or lymph.** It may occur in patients with orbital tumours, cysts, endocrine exophthalmos, orbital pseudotumours, cavernous sinus thrombosis, carotidocavernous fistula, blockage of orbital lymphatics following orbital surgery, acute congestive glaucoma, etc.

**3. Systemic causes.** These include severe anaemia and hypoproteinaemia, congestive heart failure, nephrotic syndrome, urticaria, and angioneurotic oedema.

**Clinical features and management** of chemosis depends largely upon the causative factor.

### ECCHYMOSIS OF CONJUNCTIVA 3m

Ecchymosis or subconjunctival haemorrhage is of very common occurrence. It may vary in extent from small petechial haemorrhage to an extensive one spreading under the whole of the bulbar conjunctiva and thus making the white sclera of the eye invisible. The condition though draws the attention of the patients immediately as an emergency but is most of the time trivial.

#### Etiology

Subconjunctival haemorrhage may be associated with following conditions:

**1. Trauma.** It is the most common cause of subconjunctival haemorrhage. It may be in the form of (i) local trauma to the conjunctiva including that due to surgery and subconjunctival injections, (ii) retrobulbar haemorrhage which almost immediately spreads below the bulbar conjunctiva. Mostly, it results from a retrobulbar injection and from trauma involving various walls of the orbit.

**2. Inflammations of the conjunctiva.** Petechial subconjunctival haemorrhages are usually associated with acute haemorrhagic conjunctivitis caused by picornaviruses, pneumococcal conjunctivitis and leptospirosis, icterohaemorrhagica conjunctivitis.



**3. Sudden venous congestion of head.** The subconjunctival haemorrhages may occur owing to rupture of conjunctival capillaries due to sudden rise in pressure. Common conditions are whooping cough, epileptic fits, strangulation or compression of jugular veins and violent compression of thorax and abdomen as seen in crush injuries.

**4. Spontaneous rupture of fragile capillaries** may occur in vascular diseases such as arteriosclerosis, hypertension and diabetes mellitus.

**5. Local vascular anomalies** like telangiectasia, varicosities, aneurysm or angioma tumour.

**6. Blood dyscrasias** like anaemias, leukaemias and dysproteinemias.

**7. Bleeding disorders** like purpura, haemophilia and scurvy.

**8. Acute febrile systemic infections** such as malaria, typhoid, diphtheria, meningococcal septicaemia, measles and scarlet fever.

**9. Vicarious bleeding associated with menstruation** is an extremely rare cause of subconjunctival haemorrhage.

### Clinical features

**Symptoms.** Subconjunctival haemorrhage per se is symptomless. Except for red discolouration noted by patients as a serious symptom. However, there may be symptoms of associated causative disease.

**Signs.** On examination, subconjunctival haemorrhage looks as a flat sheet of homogeneous bright red colour with well-defined limits (Fig. 5.34).

**Natural course.** In traumatic subconjunctival haemorrhage, posterior limit is visible when it is due to local trauma to eyeball, and not visible when it is due to head injury or injury to the orbit. Most of the time it is absorbed completely within 7 to 21 days. During absorption, colour changes are noted from bright red to orange and then yellow. In severe

cases, some pigmentation may be left behind after absorption.

### Treatment

- *Treat the cause* when discovered.
- *Cold compresses* to check the bleeding in the initial stage and *hot compresses* may help in absorption of blood in late stages.
- *Placebo therapy* with astringent and lubricant eye drops.
- *Psychotherapy and assurance* to the patient is most important part of treatment.

## XEROSIS OF CONJUNCTIVA

Xerosis of the conjunctiva is a symptomatic condition in which conjunctiva becomes dry and lustreless. Normal conjunctiva is kept moist by its own secretions, mucin from goblet cells and aqueous solution from accessory lacrimal glands. Therefore, even if the main lacrimal gland is removed, xerosis does not occur.

### Aetiology

Depending upon the aetiology, conjunctival xerosis can be divided into two groups, parenchymatous and epithelial xerosis.

**1. Parenchymatous xerosis.** It occurs following cicatricial disorganization of the conjunctiva due to local causes which can be in the form of:

- *Destructive interstitial conjunctivitis* as seen in trachoma, diphtheric membranous conjunctivitis, Steven-Johnson's syndrome, pemphigus or pemphigoid conjunctivitis, thermal, chemical or radiation burns of conjunctiva.
- *Exposure of conjunctiva to air* as seen in marked degree of proptosis, facial palsy, ectropion, lack of blinking (as in coma), and lagophthalmos due to symblepharon.

**2. Epithelial xerosis.** It occurs due to *hypovitaminosis-A*. Epithelial xerosis may be seen in association with night blindness or as a part and parcel of the xerophthalmia (the term which is applied to all ocular manifestations of vitamin A deficiency) which range from night blindness to keratomalacia (See pages 487–490).

### Clinical features

*Epithelial xerosis* typically occurs in children and is characterized by varying degree of conjunctival dryness, thickening, wrinkling and pigmentation.

Parenchymatous xerosis is characterized by marked dryness, thickening, scarring and even keratinization associated with features and complication of the causative disease.



Fig. 5.34 Subconjunctival haemorrhage



**Treatment**

Treatment of conjunctival xerosis consists of:

- **Treatment of the cause**, and their complications
- **Symptomatic local treatment** with artificial tear preparations (0.7% methyl cellulose or 0.3% hypromellose or polyvinyl alcohol), which should be instilled frequently.

**DISCOLOURATION OF CONJUNCTIVA**

Normal conjunctiva is a thin transparent structure. In the bulbar region, underlying sclera and a fine network of episcleral and conjunctival vessels can be easily visualized. In the palpebral region and fornices, it looks pinkish because of underlying fibrovascular tissue.

**Causes.** Conjunctiva may show discolouration in various local and systemic diseases given below:

1. **Red discolouration.** A bright red homogeneous discoloration suggests subconjunctival haemorrhage (See Fig. 5.34).
2. **Yellow discolouration.** It may occur due to: (i) bile pigments in jaundice, (ii) blood pigments in malaria and yellow fever, (iii) conjunctival fat in elder and Negro patients.
3. **Greyish discolouration.** It may occur due to application of Kajal (surma or soot) and mascara in females.
4. **Brownish grey discolouration.** It is typically seen in argyrosis, following prolonged application of silver nitrate for treatment of chronic conjunctival inflammations. The discolouration is most marked in lower fornix.
5. **Blue discolouration.** It is usually due to ink tattoo from pens or effects of manganese dust. Blue discolouration may also be due to pseudopigmentation as occurs in patients with blue sclera and scleromalacia perforans.
6. **Brown pigmentation.** Its common causes can be grouped as under:
  - a. **Non-melanocytic pigmentation**
    - i. **Endogenous pigmentation.** It is seen in patients with Addison's disease and ochronosis.
    - ii. **Exogenous pigmentation.** It may follow long-term use of adrenaline for glaucoma. Argyrosis may also present as dark brown pigmentation.
  - b. **Melanocytic pigmentation**
    - i. **Conjunctival epithelial melanosis** (Fig. 5.35). It develops in early childhood, and then remains stationary. It is found in 90% of the blacks. The pigmented spot freely moves with the movement of conjunctiva. It has got no malignant potential and hence no treatment is required.



Fig. 5.35 Conjunctival epithelial melanosis

- ii. **Subepithelial melanosis.** It may occur as an isolated anomaly of conjunctiva (congenital melanosis oculi, Fig. 5.36) or in association with the ipsilateral hyperpigmentation of the face (oculodermal melanosis or Naevus of Ota).
- iii. **Pigmented tumours.** These can be benign naevi, precancerous melanosis or malignant melanoma.

**CYSTS AND TUMOURS****CYSTS OF CONJUNCTIVA**

The common cystic lesions of the conjunctiva are:

1. **Congenital cystic lesions.** These are of rare occurrence and include congenital corneoscleral cyst and cystic form of epibulbar dermoid.
2. **Lymphatic cysts of conjunctiva.** These are common and usually occur due to dilatation of lymph spaces in the bulbar conjunctiva. Lymphangiectasis is characterized by a row of small cysts. Rarely, lymphangioma may occur as a single multilocular cyst.
3. **Retention cysts.** These occur occasionally due to blockage of ducts of accessory lacrimal glands of Krause in chronic inflammatory conditions, viz., trachoma and pemphigus. Retention cysts are more common in upper fornix.

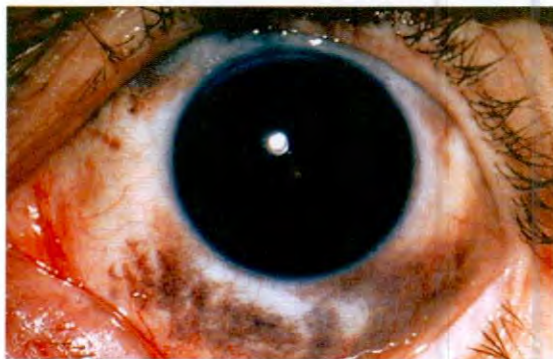


Fig. 5.36 Congenital melanosis oculi



4. **Epithelial implantation cyst** (traumatic cyst).

It may develop following implantation of conjunctival epithelium in the deeper layers, due to surgical or non-surgical injuries of conjunctiva.

5. **Epithelial cysts due to downgrowth of epithelium** are rarely seen in chronic inflammatory or degenerative conditions, e.g. cystic change in pterygium.

6. **Aqueous cyst**. It may be due to healing by cystoid cicatrix formation, following surgical or non-surgical perforating limbal wounds.

7. **Pigmented epithelial cyst**. It may be formed sometimes following prolonged topical use of cocaine or epinephrine.

8. **Parasitic cysts** such as subconjunctival cysticercus (Fig. 5.37), hydatid cyst and filarial cyst are not infrequent in developing countries.

### Treatment

Conjunctival cysts need a careful surgical excision. The excised cyst should always be subjected to histopathological examination.

## TUMOURS OF CONJUNCTIVA

### Classification

#### Non-pigmented tumours

i. **Congenital**: Dermoid and lipodermoid (choristomas).

ii. **Benign**: Simple granuloma, papilloma, adenoma, fibroma and angiomas.

iii. **Premalignant**: Intraepithelial epithelioma (Bowen's disease).

iv. **Malignant**: Epithelioma or squamous cell carcinoma, basal cell carcinoma.

#### Pigmented tumours

i. **Benign**: Naevi or congenital moles.

ii. **Precancerous melanosis**: Superficial spreading melanoma and lentigo maligna (Hutchinson's freckle).

iii. **Malignant**: Primary melanoma (malignant melanoma).

### A. Non-pigmented tumours

#### I. Congenital tumours

1. **Dermoids**. These are common congenital tumours which usually occur at the limbus. They appear as solid white masses, firmly fixed to the cornea (Fig. 5.38). Dermoid consists of collagenous connective tissue, sebaceous glands and hair, lined by epidermoid epithelium. Treatment is simple excision.

2. **Lipodermoid** (Fig. 5.39). It is a congenital tumour, usually found at the limbus or outer canthus. It appears as soft, yellowish white, movable



Fig. 5.37 Cysticercosis of conjunctiva



Fig. 5.38 Limbal dermoid

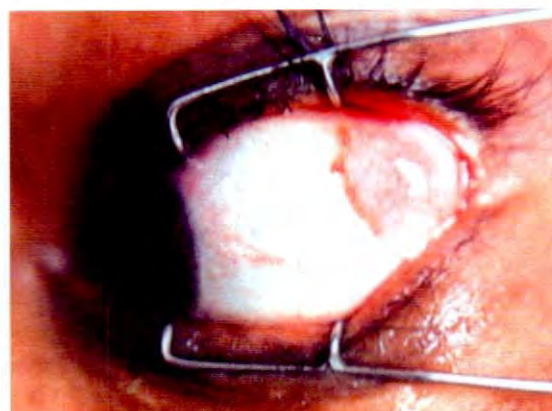


Fig. 5.39 Lipodermoid

subconjunctival mass. It consists of fatty tissue and the surrounding dermis-like connective tissue, hence the name lipodermoid.

Sometimes, the epibulbar dermoids or lipodermoids may be associated with accessory auricles and other congenital defects (Goldenhar's syndrome).

#### II. Benign tumours

1. **Simple granuloma**. It consists of an extensive polypoid, cauliflower-like growth of granulation



tissue. Simple granulomas are common following squint surgery, as foreign body granuloma and following inadequately scraped chalazion.

■ **Treatment** consists of complete surgical removal.

**2. Papilloma.** It is a benign polypoid tumour usually occurring at inner canthus, fornices or limbus. It may resemble the cocks comb type of conjunctival tubercular lesion. It has a tendency to undergo malignant change and hence needs complete excision.

**3. Fibroma.** It is a rare soft or hard polypoid growth usually occurring in lower fornix.

### III. Premalignant tumours

**Bowen's intraepithelial epithelioma** (carcinoma in situ). It is a rare, precancerous condition, now included in ocular surface squamous neoplasia (OSSN).

### IV. Malignant tumours

**1. Squamous cell carcinoma** (epithelioma) (Fig. 5.40). It usually occurs at the transitional zones, i.e. at limbus and the lid margin. The tumour invades the stroma deeply and may be fixed to underlying tissues. Histologically, it is similar to squamous cell carcinomas occurring elsewhere (See page 401). Now it is also included in ocular surface squamous neoplasia (OSSN).

**Ocular Surface Squamous Neoplasia** Ocular surface squamous neoplasia (OSSN) is the term coined to denote the wide spectrum of dysplastic changes involving epithelium of conjunctiva, cornea and limbus. It includes squamous dysplasia, carcinoma-in-situ, i.e. corneal and conjunctival intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN) and squamous cell carcinoma (SCC). CIN is characterised by partial to full thickness intraepithelial neoplasia with an intact basement membrane without involvement of the underlying substantia propria. While, SCC occurs when neoplastic cells penetrate the basement membrane and invade the underlying stroma. Very few CIN progress to SCC.

**Risk factors** for OSSN include:

- Exposure to intense UV radiation,
- Advanced age,
- Cigarette smoking,
- AIDS and conjunctival human papilloma virus (HPV) infections,
- History of squamous cell carcinoma in head and neck,
- Xeroderma pigmentosa, and
- Light complexion.

**Pathogenesis.** Since OSSN usually arise at the limbus, so it has been postulated that various predisposing

factors probably act on the stem cells causing their abnormal maturation and proliferation resulting in OSSN (*Stem cell theory*).

**Clinical features.** Since, initially, it is not possible to clinically differentiate between squamous dysplasia, carcinoma-in-situ and SCC; so that term OSSN is used. Three morphological patterns are described:

- Leukoplakic form** appears as a focal thickening of the epithelium with overlying hyperkeratotic plaque,
- Papillomatous form** appears as well-defined soft vascularised mass, and
- Gelatinous form** appears as an ill-defined translucent thickening.

Over the period, a nodular tumour involving the stroma deeply may occur as SCC (Fig. 5.40).

**Treatment.** **Surgical excision** with surrounding 2-4 mm of normal tissue is the treatment of choice.

Measures to decrease recurrence include:

- **Cryotherapy** to surrounding tissue,
- **Topical chemotherapy** with mitomycin.

**Radical excision including enucleation** and even exenteration may be needed along with postoperative radiotherapy in advanced cases of SCC.

**2. Basal cell carcinoma.** It may invade the conjunctiva from the lids or may arise pari-passu from the plica semilunaris or caruncle. Though it responds very favourably to radiotherapy, the complete surgical excision, if possible, should be preferred to avoid complications of radiotherapy.

### B. Pigmented tumours

**1. Naevi or congenital moles.** These are common pigmented lesions, usually presenting as grey gelatinous, brown or black, flat or slightly raised nodules on the bulbar conjunctiva, mostly near the limbus (Fig. 5.41). They usually appear during early



Fig. 5.40 Squamous cell carcinoma at the limbus





**Fig. 5.41** Conjunctival naevus

childhood and may increase in size at puberty or during pregnancy. Histologically, they resemble their cutaneous brethren. Malignant change is very rare and when occurs is indicated by sudden increase in size or increase in pigmentation or appearance of signs of inflammation. Therefore, excision is usually indicated for cosmetic reasons and rarely for medical reasons. Whatever may be the indication, excision should be complete.

**2. Precancerous melanosis.** Precancerous melanosis (intraepithelial melanoma) of conjunctiva occurs in adults as 'superficial spreading melanoma'. It never arises from a congenital naevus.

■ **Clinically**, a small pigmented tumour develops at any site on the bulbar or palpebral conjunctiva, which spreads as a diffuse, flat, asymptomatic pigmented patch. As long as it maintains its superficial spread, it does not metastasize. However, ultimately in about 20% cases it involves the subepithelial tissues and proceeds to frank malignant change.

■ **Treatment.** In early stages, local excision with postoperative radiotherapy may be sufficient. But in case of recurrence, it should be treated as malignant melanoma.

**3. Malignant melanoma (primary melanoma).** Malignant melanoma of the conjunctiva mostly arises de-novo, usually near the limbus, or rarely, it may occur due to malignant change in pre-existing naevus. The condition usually occurs in elderly patients.

■ **Clinically**, it may present as pigmented or nonpigmented mass near limbus or on any other part of the conjunctiva. It spreads over the surface of the globe and rarely penetrates it. Distant metastasis occurs elsewhere in the body, commonly in liver.

■ **Histologically**, the neoplasm may be alveolar, round-celled or spindle-celled.

■ **Treatment.** Once suspected, enucleation or exenteration is the treatment of choice, depending upon the extent of growth.



# 6

## Diseases of Cornea

### ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY

- Applied anatomy
- Applied physiology

### CONGENITAL ANOMALIES

### INFLAMMATIONS OF CORNEA

#### Ulcerative keratitis

##### Infective keratitis

- Bacterial corneal ulcer
- Mycotic corneal ulcer
- Viral corneal ulcer
- Protozoal keratitis

##### Allergic keratitis

##### Trophic corneal ulcer

- Neurotrophic keratopathy
- Exposure keratopathy

##### Peripheral ulcerative keratopathies

- Peripheral ulcerative keratitis associated with connective tissue diseases
- Mooren's ulcer
- Rosacea keratitis

#### Non-ulcerative keratitis

- Superficial
- Deep

- Factors responsible, to protect the cornea against infection.
- Describe ideal recipient for penetrating keratoplasty

### ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY

5m

### ■ APPLIED ANATOMY

Cornea is a transparent, avascular, watch-glass like structure. It forms anterior one-sixth of the outer fibrous coat of the eyeball.

#### Dimensions

- **Anterior surface** of cornea is elliptical with an average horizontal diameter of 11.7 mm and vertical diameter of 11 mm.
- **Posterior surface** of cornea is circular with an average diameter of 11.5 mm.
- **Thickness of cornea** in the centre varies from 0.5 to 0.6 mm while at the periphery it varies from 1 to 1.2 mm. Average corneal thickness is 540 micrometer and it is measured with the help of corneal pachometer.
- **Radius of curvature**. The central 5 mm area of the cornea forms the powerful refracting surface of the eye. The anterior and posterior radii of curvature of

### CORNEAL DEGENERATIONS

- Age-related corneal degenerations
- Pathological corneal degenerations

### CORNEAL DYSTROPHIES

- Epithelial and subepithelial dystrophies
- Bowman layer dystrophies
- Stromal corneal dystrophies
- Descemet membrane and endothelial corneal dystrophies

### ECTATIC CONDITIONS OF CORNEA

- Keratoconus
- Keratoglobus
- Keratoconus posterior

### ABNORMALITIES OF CORNEAL TRANSPARENCY

- Corneal oedema
- Corneal opacity
- Corneal vascularization

### CORNEAL SURGERY

- Keratoplasty
- Refractive corneal surgery
- Phototherapeutic keratectomy
- Keratoprosthesis

### 3 indications of parakeratitis

this central part of cornea are 7.8 mm and 6.5 mm, respectively.

- **Refractive index** of the cornea is 1.376.
- **Refractive power** of the cornea is about 45 dioptres, which is roughly three-fourth of the total refractive power of the eye (60 dioptres). It is worth noting that refractive power of anterior surface of cornea is about +48 D; but due to negative power (-5.80 D) of the posterior corneal surface, the overall corneal power is less, i.e. +43-44 D. Most of the refraction in eye occurs at anterior surface of cornea (air-tear interface). Thus, anterior surface of cornea is the most important refractive structure of eye.

### Histology 3m

Histologically, the cornea consists of six layers. From anterior to posterior these are: epithelium, Bowman's membrane, substantia propria (corneal stroma), Pre-Descemet's membrane (Dua's layer), Descemet's membrane and endothelium (Fig. 6.1).



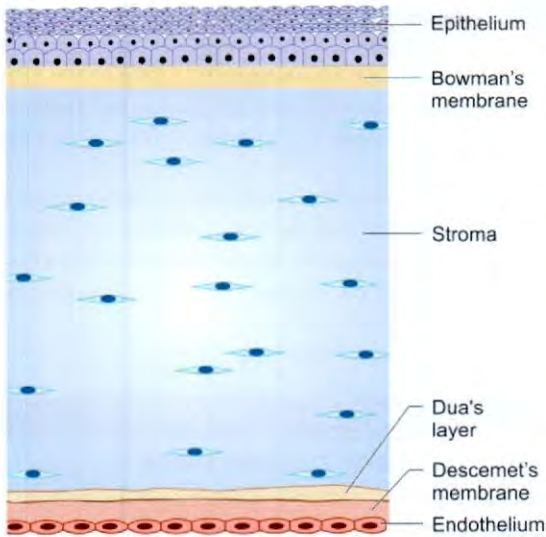


Fig. 6.1 Microscopic structure of the cornea

**1. Epithelium.** It is the outermost layer of cornea and is composed of stratified squamous non-keratinized epithelial cells. It becomes continuous with epithelium of bulbar conjunctiva at the limbus. It consists of 5–6 layers of cells. The deepest (basal) layer is made up of columnar cells, next 2–3 layers of wing or umbrella cells and the most superficial two layers are made of flattened cells. Tight junctions between superficial epithelial cells prevent penetration of tear fluid into the stroma.

■ **Limbal epithelium.** The basal epithelial cells of the limbal area constitute the limbal stem cells which amplify, proliferate, and differentiate into corneal epithelium. Damage to this area results in the invasion of conjunctival epithelium on to the cornea.

**2. Bowman's membrane.** This layer consists of acellular mass of condensed collagen fibrils. It is about  $12\ \mu\text{m}$  in thickness and binds the corneal stroma anteriorly with basement membrane of the epithelium. It is not a true elastic membrane but simply a condensed superficial part of the stroma. It shows considerable resistance to infection. But once destroyed, it is unable to regenerate and, therefore, heals by scarring.

**3. Stroma (substantia propria).** This layer is about 0.5 mm in thickness and constitutes most of the cornea (90% of total thickness). It consists of collagen fibrils (type-I and type-V fibrillae intertwined with filaments of type-VI collagen) embedded in hydrated matrix of proteoglycans (chondroitin sulphate and keratan sulphate). The lamellae are arranged in many layers. In each layer they are not only parallel to each other but also to the corneal plane and become continuous with scleral lamellae at the limbus.

The alternating layers of lamellae are at right angle to each other. Among the lamellae are present keratocytes (modified fibroblasts), wandering macrophages, histiocytes and a few leucocytes.

**4. Pre-Descemet's membrane,** also known as **Dua's layer** has been discovered in 2013 by **Dr Harminder Dua**, an **Indian ophthalmologist** working in Great Britain. Located anterior to the Descemet's membrane, it is about 15 micrometer thick acellular structure which is very strong and impervious to air.

**5. Descemet's membrane (posterior elastic lamina).** The Descemet's membrane is a strong homogenous basement membrane of the corneal endothelium which is separated from the stroma by pre-Descemet's membrane. It is very resistant to chemical agents, trauma and pathological processes. Therefore, 'Descemetocoele' can maintain the integrity of eyeball for long. Descemet's membrane consists of collagen and glycoproteins. Unlike Bowman's membrane it can regenerate. Normally, it remains in a state of tension and when torn, it curls inwards on itself. In the periphery it appears to end at the anterior limit of trabecular meshwork as Schwalbe's line (ring).

**6. Endothelium.** It consists of a single layer of flat polygonal (mainly hexagonal) epithelial cells (misnamed as endothelium) which on slit-lamp biomicroscopy appear as a mosaic. Endothelium is best examined with the help of specular microscope. The cell density of endothelium is around  $3000\ \text{cells}/\text{mm}^2$  in young adults, which decreases with the advancing age. The human endothelium cells do not proliferate in vivo and the cell loss with age is compensated by enlargement (polymegathism) and migration of neighbouring cells. There is a considerable functional reserve for the endothelium. Therefore, corneal decompensation occurs only after more than 75% of the cells are lost. The endothelial cells contain 'active-pump' mechanism which keeps cornea dehydrated.

### Blood supply

Cornea is an avascular structure. Small loops derived from the anterior ciliary vessels invade its periphery for about 1 mm. Actually, these loops are not in the cornea but in the subconjunctival tissue which overlaps the cornea.

### Nerve supply 3m

Cornea is supplied by long ciliary nerves which are branches of nasociliary nerve from ophthalmic division of the 5th cranial nerve (See page 6). After going about 2 mm in cornea the nerves lose their myelin sheath and divide dichotomously, and form three plexuses: the stromal, subepithelial and intraepithelial.



5m

**■ APPLIED PHYSIOLOGY**

The two primary physiological functions of the cornea are (i) to act as a major refracting medium; and (ii) to protect the intraocular contents. Cornea performs these functions by maintaining its transparency and regular replacement of its tissues.

5m

**■ Corneal transparency**

The corneal transparency is the result of:

**I. Anatomical factors** such as:

- Corneal epithelium and tear film. Homogeneity of the refractive index throughout the epithelium.
- Peculiar arrangement of corneal lamellae (lattice theory of Maurice).
- Peculiar refractive index of corneal lamellae with variation less than 200  $\mu\text{m}$  (Goldmann and Benedek theory).
- Avascularity of cornea.

**II. Physiological factors** are those which keep the cornea in a relative state of dehydration (78% water content). These factors are:

- Barrier function of limiting layers (epithelium and endothelium).
- Endothelial pumps. Corneal endothelium plays a predominant role in controlling fluid transport due to several enzyme systems:  $\text{Na}/\text{K}^+$  ATPase pump, Bicarbonate-dependent ATPase,  $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$  pump, and is thus the most important factor in maintaining corneal dehydration.
- Evaporation from corneal surface.
- Normal intraocular pressure (IOP).
- Swelling pressure (SP) of the stroma which counters the imbibition effect of intraocular pressure (IOP).
- Corneal crystallins, i.e. water soluble proteins of keratocytes (transketolase and aldehyde dehydrogenase class IA1) also contribute to corneal transparency at the cellular level.

**■ Metabolism of cornea**

Most actively metabolizing layers of the cornea are epithelium and endothelium, the former being 10 times thicker than the latter requires a proportionately larger supply of metabolic substrates.

**Source of nutrients** cornea being avascular structure sources of nutrients are:

- Solutes (glucose and others) enter the cornea by either simple diffusion or active transport through aqueous humour and by diffusion from the perilimbal capillaries.
- Oxygen is derived directly from air through the tear film. This is an active process undertaken by the epithelium. Therefore, corneal hypoxia may occur with over wear of contact lenses. Some oxygen may reach the superficial layers of cornea

from the perilimbal capillaries (especially when eyelids are closed) and deeper corneal layers through the aqueous humour.

Endothelium requires oxygen and glucose for metabolic activities and proper functioning of  $\text{Na}^+ - \text{K}^+$  ATPase pump.

Energy in the form of ATP is generated by the breakdown of glucose. As cornea is an avascular structure, major pathway of metabolism is anaerobic glycolysis. Thus, under anaerobic conditions lactic acid accumulates in the cornea.

Respiratory quotient of cornea is 1%.

**CONGENITAL ANOMALIES****■ ANOMALIES OF SIZE AND SHAPE****■ Megalocornea**

**Definition.** Horizontal diameter of cornea at birth is about 10 mm and the adult size of about 11.7 mm is attained by the age of 2 years. Megalocornea is labelled when the horizontal diameter of cornea is of adult size at birth or 13 mm or greater after the age of 2 years.

**Salient features.** Cornea is usually clear with normal thickness and vision. The condition is not progressive.

**Systemic associations** include Marfan's, Apert, Ehlers Danlos and Down syndromes.

**Differential diagnosis** includes:

1. Buphthalmos. In this condition, IOP is raised and the eyeball is enlarged as a whole. The enlarged cornea is usually associated with central or peripheral clouding and Descemet's tears (Haab's striae).
2. Keratoglobus. In this condition, there is thinning and excessive protrusion of cornea, which seems enlarged; but its diameter is usually normal.

**■ Microcornea**

In microcornea, the horizontal diameter is less than 10 mm since birth. The condition may occur as an isolated anomaly (rarely) or in association with nanophthalmos (normal small eyeball) or microphthalmos (abnormal small eyeball).

**■ Cornea plana**

This is a rare anomaly in which bilaterally cornea is comparatively flat since birth. It may be associated with microcornea. Cornea plana usually results in marked astigmatic refractive error.

**■ ANOMALIES OF CORNEAL TRANSPARENCY**

Normal cornea is a transparent structure. A few congenital conditions in which corneal transparency is disturbed are as given below:



1. **Anterior embryotoxon.** It is characterized by congenitally broad limbus superiorly.
2. **Posterior embryotoxon.** It refers to thickening and anterior displacement of Schwalbe's line.
3. **Congenital corneal opacity.** Corneal opacity, i.e. scarring of corneal stroma, is often an acquired condition but has been reported to occur congenitally in isolation and also in association with Lowe's syndrome, Axenfeld's anomaly, Rieger's syndrome and Peter's anomaly.
4. **Sclerocornea** refers to sclera like cloudy cornea, which may be peripheral or diffuse.
5. **Dermoids** usually occur at inferotemporal limbus and are round, dome shaped, and pink to white to yellow in colour (See page 95, Fig. 5.38). Rarely the dermoids may involve large area of cornea, the entire limbus, the entire cornea, or even the interior of the eye.

**Differential diagnosis of neonatal cloudy cornea.** The acronym 'STUMPED' helps to remember the common conditions to be included in differential diagnosis of neonatal cloudy cornea. The conditions are as follows:

- Sclerocornea
- Tears in Descemet's membrane
- Ulcer
- Metabolic conditions
- Posterior corneal defect
- Endothelial dystrophy
- Dermoid.

## INFLAMMATIONS OF CORNEA

Inflammation of cornea (keratitis) is characterised by corneal oedema, cellular infiltration and ciliary congestion.

### Classification

It is difficult to classify and assign a group to each and every case of keratitis; as overlapping or concurrent findings tend to obscure the picture. However, the following simplified topographical and etiological classifications provide a workable knowledge.

#### Topographical (morphological) classification

##### A. Ulcerative keratitis (corneal ulcer)

Corneal ulcer can be further classified variously:

1. **Depending on location**
  - Central corneal ulcer
  - Peripheral corneal ulcer
2. **Depending on purulence**
  - Purulent corneal ulcer or suppurative corneal ulcer (most bacterial and fungal corneal ulcers are suppurative).

- Non-purulent corneal ulcers (most of viral, chlamydial and allergic corneal ulcers are non-suppurative).

##### 3. Depending upon association of hypopyon

- Simple corneal ulcer (without hypopyon)
- Hypopyon corneal ulcer

##### 4. Depending upon depth of ulcer

- Superficial corneal ulcer
- Deep corneal ulcer
- Corneal ulcer with impending perforation
- Perforated corneal ulcer

##### 5. Depending upon slough formation

- Non-sloughing corneal ulcer
- Sloughing corneal ulcer

### B. Non-ulcerative keratitis

#### 1. Superficial keratitis

- Diffuse superficial keratitis
- Superficial punctate keratitis (SPK)

#### 2. Deep keratitis

- a. Non-suppurative
  - Interstitial keratitis
  - Disciform keratitis
  - Keratitis profunda
  - Sclerosing keratitis
- b. Suppurative deep keratitis
  - Central corneal abscess
  - Posterior corneal abscess.

### Etiological classification

#### 1. Infective keratitis

- Bacterial keratitis
- Viral keratitis
- Fungal keratitis
- Chlamydial keratitis
- Protozoal keratitis
- Spirochaetal keratitis

#### 2. Allergic keratitis

- Phlyctenular keratitis
- Vernal keratitis
- Atopic keratitis

#### 3. Trophic keratitis

- Exposure keratitis
- Neurotrophic keratopathy
- Keratomalacia
- Atheromatous ulcer

#### 4. Keratitis associated with diseases of skin and mucous membrane.

#### 5. Keratitis associated with systemic collagen vascular disorders.

#### 6. Traumatic keratitis which may be due to mechanical trauma, chemical trauma, thermal burns, radiations.



7. **Idiopathic keratitis**, e.g.

- Mooren's corneal ulcer
- Superior limbic keratoconjunctivitis
- Superficial punctate keratitis of Thygeson.

**ULCERATIVE KERATITIS** 10m

**Corneal ulcer** may be defined as discontinuation in normal epithelial surface of cornea associated with necrosis of the surrounding corneal tissue. Pathologically, it is characterised by oedema and cellular infiltration. Common types of corneal ulcers are described below.

**INFECTIVE KERATITIS****BACTERIAL CORNEAL ULCER** 10m

Being the most anterior part of eyeball, the cornea is exposed to atmosphere and hence prone to get infected easily. At the same time, cornea is protected from day-to-day minor infections by the normal defence mechanisms present in tears in the form of lysozyme, betalysin and other protective proteins. Therefore, infective corneal ulcer may develop when:

- Either the local ocular defence mechanism is jeopardised, or
- There is some local ocular predisposing disease, or
- Host's immunity is compromised, or
- The causative organism is very virulent.

**Etiology**

**Two main factors** in the production of purulent corneal ulcer are:

- Damage to corneal epithelium; and
- Infection of the eroded area.

**1. Corneal epithelial damage.** It is a pre-requisite for most of the infecting organisms to produce corneal ulceration. It may occur in following conditions:

- Corneal abrasion due to small foreign body, misdirected cilia, concretions and trivial trauma in contact lens wearers or otherwise.
- Epithelial drying as in xerosis and exposure keratitis.
- Necrosis of epithelium as in keratomalacia.
- Desquamation of epithelial cells as a result of corneal oedema as in bullous keratopathy.
- Epithelial damage due to trophic changes as in neuroparalytic keratitis.

**Pathogens which can invade the intact corneal epithelium** and produce ulceration are:

- Neisseria gonorrhoeae
- Corynebacterium diphtheriae
- Neisseria meningitidis

- Haemophilus aegyptius

- Listeria species.

**2. Sources of infection:**

- Most of the times bacteria corneal infection arises from exogenous source like conjunctival sac, lacrimal sac (dacryocystitis), infected foreign bodies, infected vegetative material and waterborne or airborne infections.

**3. Causative organisms.** Bacteria reported to be associated with keratitis can be classified as below:

- Gram-positive cocci: Staphylococcus aureus, Staphylococcus epidermidis and Streptococcus pneumoniae.
- Gram-negative cocci: Neisseria gonorrhoeae, Neisseria meningitidis.
- Gram positive bacilli: Corynebacterium diphtheriae, C. xerosis, Bacillus cereus, Propionibacterium acne, Listeria and Clostridium.
- Gram-negative bacilli: Pseudomonas aeruginosa, Enterobacteriaceae (Klebsiella, Proteus, E. coli, Serratia), Moraxella lacunata (diplobacillus), Haemophilus influenzae (coccobacillus).
- Gram-positive filamentous bacteria: Actinomyces, Nocardia.
- Mycobacteria: Non-tuberculous mycobacteria and M. tuberculosis.

**Common bacteria** associated with corneal ulceration include Staphylococci, Pseudomonas, Streptococcus pneumoniae, Enterobacteriaceae and Neisseria.

- Most common cause in general in Staphylococcus
- Most common cause in contact lens wearers is Pseudomonas.

**Pathogenesis and pathology of corneal ulcer**

**1. Once the damaged corneal epithelium is invaded by the offending agents**, the sequence of pathological changes which occur during development of corneal ulcer can be described under four stages:

- Stage of progressive infiltration,
- Stage of active ulceration,
- Stage of regression, and
- Stage of cicatriztion.

**2. Terminal course of corneal ulcer depends upon** the virulence of infecting agent, host defence mechanism and the treatment received.

**3. Depending upon the prevalent circumstances the course of corneal ulcer** may take one of the three forms:

- Ulcer may become localised and heal,
- Penetrate deep leading to corneal perforation, and
- Spread fast to involve the whole cornea as sloughing corneal ulcer.



The salient pathological features of these are described below:

### A. Pathology of localised corneal ulcer

3m

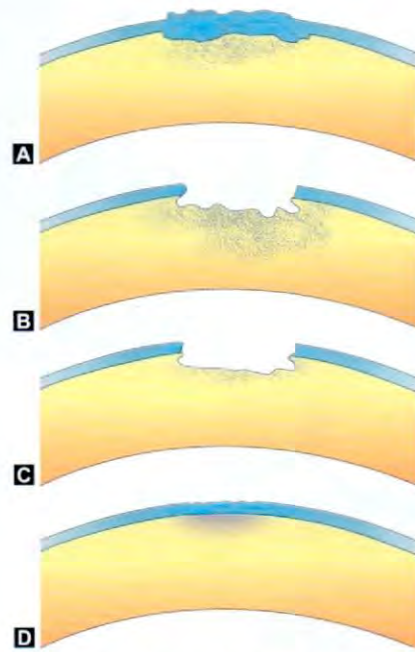
**1. Stage of progressive infiltration** (Fig. 6.2A). It is characterised by the infiltration of polymorphonuclear and/or lymphocytes into the epithelium from the peripheral circulation supplemented by similar cells from the underlying stroma if this tissue is also affected. Subsequently, necrosis of the involved tissue may occur, depending upon the virulence of offending agent and the strength of host defence mechanism.

**2. Stage of active ulceration** (Fig. 6.2B). Active ulceration results from necrosis and sloughing of the epithelium, Bowman's membrane and the involved stroma. The walls of the active ulcer project owing to swelling of the lamellae by the imbibition of fluid and the packing of masses of leucocytes between them. This zone of infiltration may extend to a considerable distance both around and beneath the ulcer. At this stage, sides and floor of the ulcer may show grey infiltration and sloughing.

*During this stage of active ulceration, there occurs:*

- Hyperaemia of circumcorneal network of vessels which results into accumulation of purulent exudates on the cornea.
- Vascular congestion of the iris and ciliary body and some degree of iritis due to absorption of toxins from the ulcer. Exudation into the anterior chamber from the vessels of iris and ciliary body may lead to formation of hypopyon.
- Ulceration may further progress by lateral extension resulting in diffuse superficial ulceration or it may progress by deeper penetration of the infection leading to Descemetocoele formation and possible corneal perforation. When the offending organism is highly virulent and/or host defence mechanism is jeopardised there occurs deeper penetration during stage of active ulceration.

**3. Stage of regression** (Fig. 6.2C). Regression is induced by the natural host defence mechanisms (humoral antibody production and cellular immune defences) and the treatment which augments the normal host response. A line of demarcation develops around the ulcer, which consists of leucocytes that neutralize and eventually phagocytose the offending organisms and necrotic cellular debris. The digestion of necrotic material may result in initial enlargement of the ulcer. This process may be accompanied by superficial vascularization that increases the humoral and cellular immune response. The ulcer now begins to heal and epithelium starts growing over the edges.



**Fig. 6.2** Pathology of corneal ulcer: A, Stage of progressive infiltration; B, Stage of active ulceration; C, Stage of regression; D, Stage of cicatrization

**4. Stage of cicatrization** (Fig. 6.2D). In this stage, healing continues by progressive epithelization which forms a permanent covering. Beneath the epithelium, fibrous tissue is laid down partly by the corneal fibroblasts and partly by the endothelial cells of the new vessels. The stroma thus thickens and fills in under the epithelium, pushing the epithelial surface anteriorly.

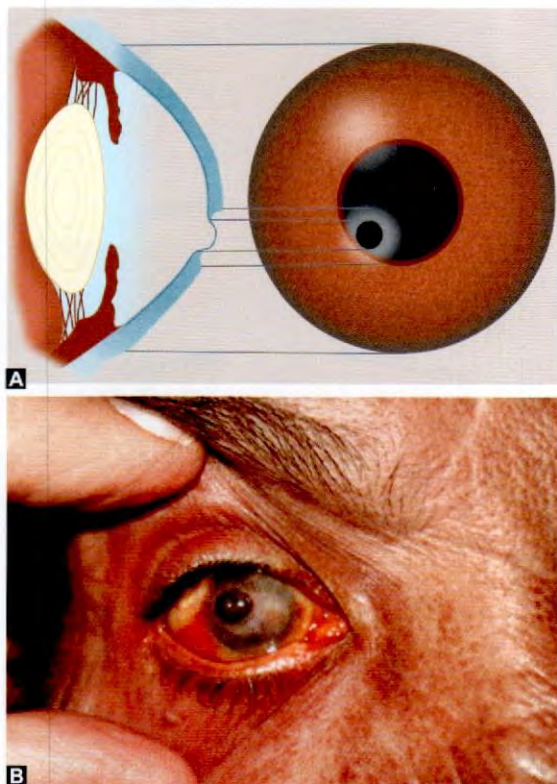
The degree of scarring from healing varies. If the ulcer is very superficial and involves epithelium only, it heals without leaving any opacity behind. When ulcer involves Bowman's membrane and few superficial stromal lamellae, the resultant scar is called a 'nebula'. Macula and leucoma result after healing of ulcers involving up to one-third and more than that of corneal stroma, respectively.

### B. Pathology of perforated corneal ulcer

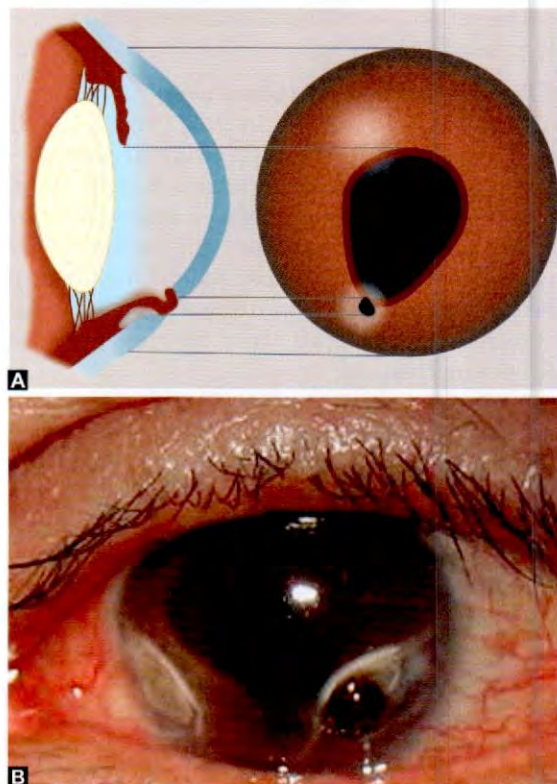
5m

Perforation of corneal ulcer occurs when the ulcerative process deepens and reaches up to Descemet's membrane. This membrane is tough and bulges out as Descemetocoele (Fig. 6.3). At this stage, any exertion on the part of patient, such as coughing, sneezing, straining for stool, etc., will perforate the corneal ulcer. Immediately after perforation, the aqueous escapes, intraocular pressure falls and the iris-lens diaphragm moves forward.





**Fig. 6.3** Descemetocoele: A, Diagrammatic depiction; B, Clinical photograph



**Fig. 6.4** Perforated corneal ulcer with prolapse of iris: A, Diagrammatic depiction; B, Clinical photograph

The effects of perforation depend upon the position and size of perforation. When the perforation is small and opposite to iris tissue, it is usually plugged and healing by cicatrization proceeds rapidly (Fig. 6.4). **Adherent leucoma is the commonest end result** after such a catastrophe.

### C. Pathology of sloughing corneal ulcer and formation of anterior staphyloma

When the infecting agent is highly virulent and/or body resistance is very low, the whole cornea sloughs with the exception of a narrow rim at the margin and total prolapse of iris occurs. The iris becomes inflamed and exudates block the pupil and cover the iris surface; thus a **false cornea** is formed. Ultimately, these exudates organize and form a thin fibrous layer over which the conjunctival or corneal epithelium rapidly grows and thus a **pseudocornea** is formed. Since, the pseudocornea is thin and cannot withstand the intraocular pressure, so it usually bulges forward along with the plastered iris tissue. This ectatic cicatrix is called **anterior staphyloma** which, depending upon its extent, may be either partial or total. The bands of scar tissue on the staphyloma vary in breadth and thickness,

producing a lobulated surface often blackened with iris tissue which resembles a bunch of black grapes (hence the name **staphyloma**).

### Clinical features

In bacterial infections, the outcome depends upon the virulence of organism, its toxins and enzymes, and the response of host tissue.

*Broadly bacterial corneal ulcers may manifest as:*

- Purulent corneal ulcer without hypopyon; or
- Hypopyon corneal ulcer.

In general, following symptoms and signs may be present:

### Symptoms

1. Pain and foreign body sensation occurs due to mechanical effects of lids and chemical effects of toxins on the exposed nerve endings.
2. Watering from the eye occurs due to reflex hyperlacrimation.
3. Photophobia, i.e. intolerance to light results from stimulation of nerve endings.
4. Blurred vision results from corneal haze.
5. Redness of eyes occurs due to congestion of circumcorneal conjunctival vessels.



### Signs

1. **Swelling of lid** of varying degree is present.
2. **Blepharospasm** may be moderate to severe.
3. **Conjunctiva** is chemosed and shows conjunctival hyperaemia and ciliary congestion.

4. **Corneal ulcer** usually starts as an epithelial defect associated with greyish-white circumscribed infiltrate (seen in early stage). Soon the epithelial defect and infiltrate enlarges and stromal oedema develops. A well-established bacterial corneal ulcer is characterized by (Fig. 6.5):

- **Yellowish-white area of ulcer** which may be oval or irregular in shape.
- **Margins of the ulcer** are swollen and over hanging.
- **Floor** of the ulcer is covered by **necrotic material**.
- **Stromal oedema** is present surrounding the ulcer area.

**Characteristic features** produced by some of the common causative bacteria are as follows:

- **Staphylococcus aureus and Streptococcus pneumoniae** usually produce an oval, yellowish white densely opaque ulcer which is surrounded by relatively clear cornea (Fig. 6.5A).

- **Pseudomonas** species usually produce an irregular sharp ulcer with thick greenish mucopurulent exudate, diffuse liquefactive necrosis and semiopaque (ground glass) surrounding cornea. Such ulcers are usually associated with hypopyon, spread very rapidly and may even perforate within 48 to 72 hours.

- **Enterobacteriaceae** (*E. coli*, *Proteus* species, and *Klebsiella* species) usually produce a shallow ulcer with greyish white pleomorphic suppuration and diffuse stromal opalescence. The endotoxins produced by these Gram-negative bacilli may produce ring-shaped corneal infiltrate (Fig. 6.5B).

5. **Anterior chamber** may or may not show pus (hypopyon). In bacterial corneal ulcers, the hypopyon remains sterile so long as the Descemet's membrane is intact.

6. **Iris** may be slightly muddy in colour.

7. **Pupil** may be small due to associated toxin-induced iritis.

8. **Intraocular pressure** may sometimes be raised (inflammatory glaucoma).

### ■ HYPOPYON CORNEAL ULCER

10m

#### Etiopathogenesis

**Causative organisms.** It is customary to reserve the term 'hypopyon corneal ulcer' for the characteristic ulcer caused by *Pneumococcus* and the term 'corneal ulcer with hypopyon' for the ulcers associated with hypopyon due to other organisms such as *Staphylococci*, *Streptococci*, *Gonococci*, *Moraxella* and *Pseudomonas pyocyanea*. The characteristic hypopyon corneal ulcer caused by *Pneumococcus* is called *ulcus serpens*.

**Source of infection** for pneumococcal infection is usually the chronic dacryocystitis. Purulent keratitis with hypopyon is almost always exogenous, due to pyogenic organisms.

**Factors predisposing to development of hypopyon.** Two main factors which predispose to development of hypopyon in a patient with corneal ulcer are the virulence of the infecting organism and the resistance of the tissues. Hence, hypopyon ulcers are much more common in old debilitated or alcoholic subjects.

**Mechanism of development of hypopyon.** Corneal ulcer is often associated with some iritis owing to diffusion of bacterial toxins. When the iritis is severe the outpouring of leucocytes from the vessels is so great that these cells gravitate to the bottom of the anterior chamber to form a hypopyon. Thus, it is important to note that the hypopyon is sterile since the outpouring of polymorphonuclear cells is due to the toxins and not due to actual invasion by bacteria. Once the ulcerative process is controlled, the hypopyon is absorbed.

#### Clinical features

**Symptoms** are same as described above for bacterial corneal ulcer. However, it is important to note

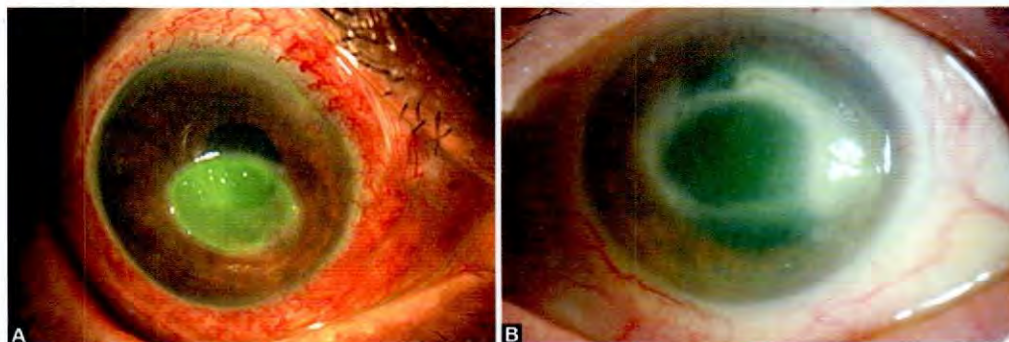


Fig. 6.5 Bacterial corneal ulcer: A, Oval ulcer; B, Ring-shaped ulcer

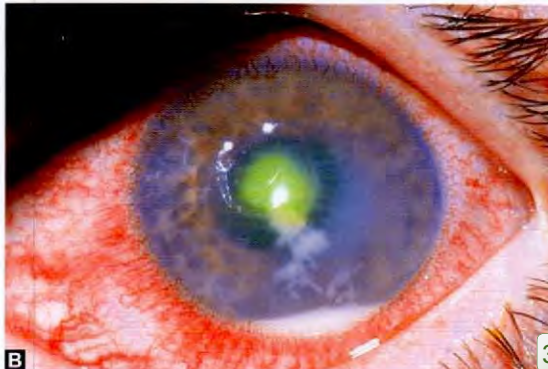
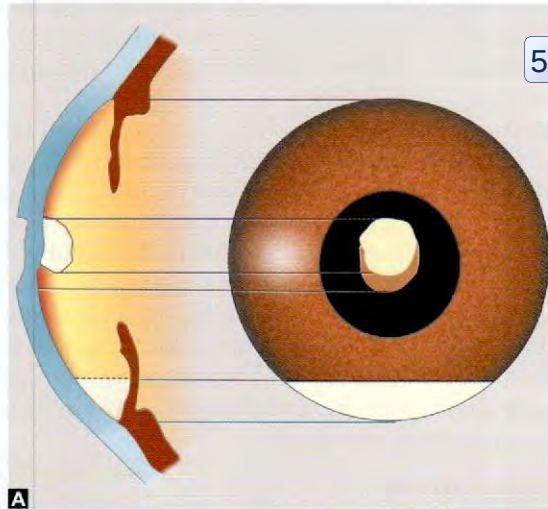


that during initial stage of *ulcus serpens*, there is remarkably little pain. As a result, the treatment is often unduly delayed.

**Signs.** In general, the signs are same as described above for the bacterial ulcer.

**Characteristic features of *ulcus serpens* are:**

- *Ulcus serpens* is a greyish white or yellowish disc-shaped ulcer occurring near the centre of cornea (Fig. 6.6).
- Ulcer has a tendency to creep over the cornea in a serpiginous fashion. One edge of the ulcer, along which the ulcer spreads, shows more infiltration. The other side of the ulcer may be undergoing simultaneous cicatrization and the edges may be covered with fresh epithelium.
- Violent iridocyclitis is commonly associated with a definite hypopyon.
- Hypopyon increases in size very rapidly and often results in secondary glaucoma.
- Ulcer spreads rapidly and has a great tendency for early perforation.



**Fig. 6.6** Hypopyon corneal ulcer; A, Diagrammatic depiction; B, Clinical photograph

### Management

Management of hypopyon corneal ulcer is same as for other bacterial corneal ulcer.

**Special points** which need to be considered are:

- **Secondary glaucoma** should be anticipated and treated with 0.5% timolol maleate, BID eye drops and oral acetazolamide.
- **Source of infection**, i.e. chronic dacryocystitis if detected, should be treated by dacryocystectomy.

### 3m **Sequelae = Complications** **COMPLICATIONS OF CORNEAL ULCER** 5m Subsequent event

1. **Toxic iridocyclitis.** It is usually associated with cases of purulent corneal ulcer due to absorption of toxins in the anterior chamber.
2. **Secondary glaucoma.** It occurs due to fibrinous exudates blocking the angle of anterior chamber (inflammatory glaucoma).
3. **Descemetocoele.** Some ulcers caused by virulent organisms extend rapidly up to Descemet's membrane, which gives a great resistance, but due to the effect of intraocular pressure, it herniates as a transparent vesicle called the descemetocoele or keratocoele (See Fig. 6.3). This is a sign of impending perforation and is usually associated with severe pain.
4. **Perforation of corneal ulcer.** Sudden strain due to cough, sneeze or spasm of orbicularis muscle may convert impending perforation into actual perforation (See Fig. 6.4). Following perforation, immediately pain is decreased and the patient feels some hot fluid (aqueous) coming out of eyes.

**Sequelae of corneal perforation include:**

- **Prolapse of iris.** It occurs immediately following perforation in a bid to plug it.
- **Subluxation or anterior dislocation of lens** may occur due to sudden stretching and rupture of zonules.
- **Anterior capsular cataract.** It is formed when the lens comes in contact with the ulcer following a perforation in the pupillary area.
- **Corneal fistula.** It is formed when the perforation in the pupillary area is not plugged by iris and is lined by epithelium which gives way repeatedly. There occurs continuous leak of aqueous through the fistula.
- **Purulent uveitis, endophthalmitis** or even **panophthalmitis** may develop due to spread of intraocular infection.
- **Intraocular haemorrhage** in the form of either vitreous haemorrhage or expulsive choroidal haemorrhage may occur in some patients due to sudden lowering of intraocular pressure.
- 5. **Corneal scarring.** It is the usual end result of healed corneal ulcer. Corneal scarring leads to permanent visual impairment ranging from slight blurring to



total blindness. Depending upon the clinical course of ulcer, corneal scar noted may be nebula, macula, leucoma, ectatic cicatrix or kerectasia, adherent leucoma or anterior staphyloma (for details See page 138).

### ■ MANAGEMENT OF A CASE OF CORNEAL ULCER

Since corneal ulcer is sight threatening, it needs urgent treatment by identification and eradication of causative bacteria. Preferably such patients should be hospitalized. The management includes:

- Clinical evaluation,
- Laboratory investigations, and
- Treatment.

#### A. Clinical evaluation

Each case with corneal ulcer should be subjected to:

1. Thorough history taking to elicit mode of onset.
2. General physical examination, especially for built, nourishment, anaemia and any immuno-compromising disease.
3. Ocular examination should include:
  - Diffuse light examination for gross lesions of lids, conjunctiva and cornea including testing for sensations.
  - Regurgitation test and syringing to rule out lacrimal sac infection.
  - Biomicroscopic examination after staining of corneal ulcer with 2% freshly prepared aqueous solution of fluorescein dye or preferably sterilised fluorescein impregnated filter paper strip. Ulcer area stains as brilliant green, which looks opaque green when seen with blue filter. Note site, size, shape, depth, margin, floor and vascularization of corneal ulcer. On biomicroscopy also note presence of keratic precipitates at the back of cornea, depth and contents of anterior chamber, colour and pattern of iris and condition of crystalline lens.

#### B. Laboratory Investigations

1. Routine laboratory investigations such as haemoglobin, TLC, DLC, ESR, blood sugar, complete urine and stool examination should be carried out in each case.
2. Microbiological investigations. These studies are essential to identify causative organism, confirm the diagnosis and guide the treatment to be instituted. Material for such investigations is obtained by scraping the base and margins of the corneal ulcer (under local anaesthesia, using 2% xylocaine or preferably paracain) with the help

of a modified Kimura spatula or by simply using the bent tip of a 20 gauge hypodermic needle. The material obtained is used for the following investigations:

- Gram and Giemsa stained smears for possible identification of infecting organisms.
- 10% KOH wet preparation for identification of fungal hyphae.
- Calcofluor white (CFW) stain preparation is viewed under fluorescence microscope for fungal filaments, the walls of which appear bright apple green.
- Culture on blood agar medium for aerobic organisms.
- Culture on Sabouraud's dextrose agar medium for fungi.

#### C. Treatment

##### 1. Treatment of uncomplicated corneal ulcer

Treatment of corneal ulcer can be discussed under three headings:

- Specific treatment of the cause.
- Nonspecific supportive therapy.
- Physical and general measures.

##### 1. Definitive treatment

###### a. Topical antibiotics forms the mainstay of treatment

Initial therapy (before results of culture and sensitivity are available) should be with combination therapy to cover both gram-negative and gram-positive organisms. To begin with any of the following two drugs may be instilled:

- Fortified Cefazoline, 5% i.e. 50 mg/mL freshly prepared by adding sterile water to 500 mg powder to make 10 mL solution, and
- Fortified tobramycin, 1.3%, i.e. 13.6 mg/mL prepared by adding 2 mL of tobramycin injection (40 mg/mL in 5 mL bottle of commercially available 0.3% tobramycin drops).

or

- Freshly prepared fortified vancomycin 5%, i.e. 50 mg/mL (prepared by adding sterile water to 500 mg vancomycin powder to form 10 mL solution) and one of commercially available fluoroquinolones eye drops (0.3% ciprofloxacin, or 0.3% ofloxacin or 0.3% gatifloxacin or 0.5% moxifloxacin).

■ Frequency of instillation. The chosen two drugs should be instilled alternately as below:

- Every 5 minutes for 30 minutes,
- Every 15 minutes for 2 hours,
- 1 hourly round the clock for first 48 hours,
- 2 hourly during day and 4 hourly at night till healing is ensured, and then



- 4–6 hourly till healing occurs.
- Once the favourable response is obtained, the fortified drops can be substituted by the commercially available eye drops.

**Subsequent therapy.** There is **no need to change initial antibiotics**, if the response is good. However, if the response is poor, immediately **change** the antibiotics as per culture and sensitivity report.

**b. Systemic antibiotics** are usually not required. However, a cephalosporine and an aminoglycoside or oral ciprofloxacin (750 mg twice daily) may be given in fulminating cases with perforation or when sclera is also involved.

5m

### 2. Adjunctive/concurrent therapy

**a. Cycloplegic drugs.** Preferably **1% atropine eye drops** (ointment in small children) should be used:

- To **reduce pain from ciliary spasm** and
- To **prevent the formation of posterior synechiae** from secondary iridocyclitis.
- Atropine also **increases the blood supply to anterior uvea** by relieving pressure on the anterior ciliary arteries and so brings more antibodies in the aqueous humour.
- It also **reduces exudation by decreasing hyperaemia and vascular permeability.**

**Other cycloplegic drug** which can be used is 2% homatropine eye drops.

**b. Systemic analgesics and anti-inflammatory drugs** such as paracetamol and ibuprofen relieve the pain and decrease oedema.

**c. Vitamins** (A, B-complex and C) help in early healing of ulcer.

### 3. Physical and general measures

- **Hot fomentation.** Local application of heat (preferably dry) gives comfort, reduces pain and causes vasodilatation.
- **Dark goggles** may be used to prevent photophobia.
- **Rest, good diet and fresh air** may have a soothing effect.

**+ causes**

### II. Treatment of non-healing corneal ulcer 10m

If the ulcer progresses despite the above therapy the following additional measures should be taken:

**1. Removal of any known cause of non-healing ulcer.** A thorough search for any already missed cause not allowing healing should be made and when found, such factors should be eliminated. **Common causes of non-healing ulcers are as under:**

- **Local causes.** Associated **raised intraocular pressure**, **concretions**, **misdirected cilia**, **impacted foreign body**, **dacryocystitis**, **inadequate therapy**, **wrong diagnosis**, **lagophthalmos** and **excessive vascularization of ulcer.**

- **Systemic causes:** **Diabetes mellitus**, **severe anaemia**, **malnutrition**, **chronic debilitating diseases** and patients on systemic steroids.

**2. Mechanical debridement of ulcer** to remove necrosed material by **scraping floor of the ulcer** with a spatula under local anaesthesia may hasten the healing.

**3. Cauterisation of the ulcer** may also be considered in non-responding cases. Cauterisation may be performed with **pure carbolic acid** or 10–20% trichloroacetic acid.

**4. Bandage soft contact lens** may also help in healing.

**5. Peritomy**, i.e. severing of **perilimbal conjunctival vessels** may be performed when excessive corneal vascularization is hindering healing.

### III. Treatment of impending perforation

When ulcer progresses and perforation seems imminent, the following additional measures may help to prevent perforation and its complications:

**1. No strain.** The patient should be advised to avoid sneezing, coughing and straining during stool, etc. He should be advised strict bed rest.

**2. Pressure bandage** should be applied to give some external support.

**3. Lowering of intraocular pressure** by simultaneous use of **acetazolamide 250 mg QID orally**, **intravenous mannitol (20%) drip stat**, **oral glycerol twice a day**, **0.5% timolol eye drops twice a day**, and even paracentesis with slow evacuation of aqueous from the anterior chamber may be performed if required.

**4. Tissue adhesive glue** such as **cyanoacrylate** is helpful in preventing perforation.

**5. Bandage soft contact lens** may also be used.

**6. Conjunctival flap.** The cornea may be covered completely or partly by a conjunctival flap to give support to the weak tissue.

**7. Amniotic membrane transplantation** may also be considered as an option.

**8. Penetrating therapeutic keratoplasty (tectonic graft)** may be undertaken in suitable cases, when available.

**+ causes**

### IV. Treatment of perforated corneal ulcer 5m

Best is to **prevent perforation**. However, if perforation has occurred, immediate measures should be taken to restore the integrity of perforated cornea. Depending upon the size of perforation and availability, measures like use of **tissue adhesive glues**, covering with conjunctival flap, use of **bandage soft contact lens** or **therapeutic keratoplasty** should be undertaken. **Best option is an urgent tectonic keratoplasty.**



### ■ MARGINAL CATARRHAL ULCER

These superficial ulcers situated near the limbus are frequently seen especially in old people.

#### Etiology

Marginal catarrhal ulcer is thought to be caused by a hypersensitivity reaction to Staphylococcal toxins. It occurs in association with chronic Staphylococcal blepharoconjunctivitis. *Moraxella* and *Haemophilus* are also known to cause such ulcers.

#### Clinical features

- Patient usually presents with mild ocular irritation, pain, photophobia and watering.
- Ulcer is shallow, slightly infiltrated and often multiple, usually associated with Staphylococcal conjunctivitis (Fig. 6.7).
- Vascularization occurs soon and is followed by resolution.
- Recurrences are very common.

#### Treatment

- A short course of topical corticosteroid drops along with adequate antibiotic therapy often heals the condition.
- Adequate treatment of associated blepharitis and chronic conjunctivitis is important to prevent recurrences.

### MYCOTIC CORNEAL ULCER 10m

The incidence of suppurative corneal ulcers caused by fungi has increased in the recent years due to injudicious use of antibiotics and steroids.

#### Etiology

1. **Fungi.** The fungi can be classified as below:

- Filamentous fungi**, e.g. *Aspergillus*, *Fusarium*, *Alternaria*, *Cephalosporium*, *Curvularia* and

*Penicillium* are septate multicellular fungi. *Mucor* and *rhizopus* are non-septate organisms.

- Yeasts**, e.g. *Candida* and *Cryptococcus* are unicellular fungi that reproduce by budding.

- Dimorphic fungi** such as *histoplasma*, *coccidioides* and *blastomyces* demonstrate both yeast phase that occurs in the tissues and a mycelia phase that appears in culture media and on saprophytic surfaces.

**Fungi commonly responsible for mycotic corneal ulcers** are *Aspergillus fumigatus* (most common), *Candida* and *Fusarium*.

#### 2. Modes of infection are:

- Injury by vegetative material** such as crop leaf, branch of a tree, straw, thorn, wooden stick or decaying vegetable matter. Common sufferers are field workers especially during harvesting season.

- Injury by animal tail** is another mode of infection.

- Secondary fungal ulcers** are common in patients who are immunosuppressed systemically or locally such as patients suffering from dry eye, herpetic keratitis, bullous keratopathy or postoperative cases of keratoplasty.

3. **Role of antibiotics and steroids.** Antibiotics disturb the symbiosis between bacteria and fungi; and the steroids make the fungi facultative pathogens which are otherwise symbiotic saprophytes. Therefore, excessive use of these drugs predisposes the patients to fungal infections.

#### Clinical features

**Symptoms** are similar to the central bacterial corneal ulcer (See page 104), but in general, they are less marked than the equal-sized bacterial ulcer and the overall course is slow and torpid.

**Signs** are more prominent than symptoms. A typical fungal corneal ulcer has following salient features (Fig. 6.8):

- **Corneal ulcer** is greyish white, dry-looking with elevated rolled out margins.
- **Pigmented ulcer** (brownish) may be caused by some species of fungi, e.g. dematiaceous fungi.
- **Delicate feathery finger-like extensions** are present into the surrounding stroma under the intact epithelium.
- **Sterile immune ring** (yellow line of demarcation) may be present where fungal antigen and host antibodies meet.
- **Multiple, small satellite lesions** may be present around the ulcer.



**Fig. 6.7** Marginal corneal ulcer in a patient with acute conjunctivitis



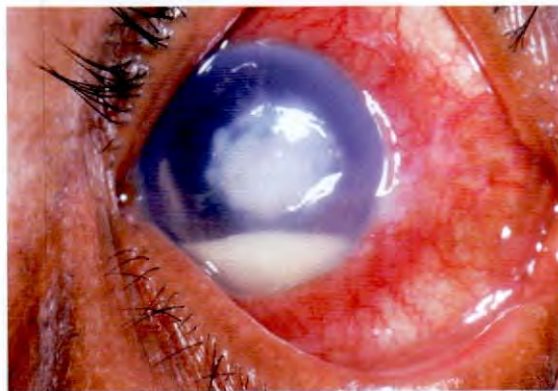


Fig. 6.8 Fungal corneal ulcer

- **Hypopyon** usually a **big one** is present even if the ulcer is very small. Unlike bacterial ulcer, the hypopyon not sterile as the fungi can penetrate into the anterior chamber without perforation.
- **Endothelial plaque**, composed of fibrin and leucocytes, may be located under the stromal lesion. It may be present in the absence of hypopyon.
- **Perforation** in mycotic ulcer is rare but can occur.
- **Corneal vascularization** is conspicuously absent in pure mycotic ulcer.

### Diagnosis

**I. Clinical diagnosis** is made from:

- **Typical clinical manifestations** associated with history of injury by vegetative material are highly suspicious of a mycotic corneal ulcer.
- **Chronic ulcer** worsening in spite of most efficient treatment should arouse suspicion of mycotic involvement.
- **Confocal microscopic examination** of cornea is reported to identify actual fungi.

**II. Laboratory investigations** are required to identify the causative fungi.

**Corneal scrapings** should be performed under topical anaesthesia from the base and leading edge of the ulcer, and the following tests should be performed from the scraped material:

- **Examination of wet KOH mount preparation** may reveal **filamentous fungi** as branched, septate hyphae (aspergillus fumigatus or fusarium) or **non-filamentous yeast like fungi** (Candida).
- **Gram's and Giemsa stained films** may reveal fungal hyphae and inflammatory cells.
- **Culture on Sabouraud's agar medium** should also be performed for fungi.
- **Polymerase chain reaction (PCR)** is also being recommended for its rapid results.

**Note.** Material for microbiological investigations may also be collected from:

- **Anterior chamber paracentesis** may be carried out in cases with intraocular extension.
- **Corneal biopsy** is indicated in cases with deep stromal abscess or in cases where repeated cultures from scrapings are negative.

### Treatment

**A. Definitive treatment** includes antifungal drugs:

1. **Topical antifungal eye drops** should be used for a long period (**6 to 8 weeks**). These include:

- For filamentous fungi (*Aspergillus* and *Fusarium*) **Natamycin** (5%) eye drops (drug of choice) or **Amphotericin B** (0.1 to 0.3%), or **Fluconazole** (0.2%), or miconazole (10 mg/mL) or **voriconazole** (10%) eye drops to be instilled initially one hourly around the clock, then taper slowly over 6 to 8 weeks.

- For yeasts (*Candida*) **amphotericin B** (drug of choice) or **Nystatin** (3.5%) eye ointment, **five times a day** is effective. (For details See page 468).

2. **Intracameral and intracorneal/intrastromal** administration of **voriconazole** may be considered in cases with intraocular extension or anterior chamber involvement.

3. **Systemic antifungal drugs** may be required for severe cases of deeper fungal keratitis. Tablet fluconazole or ketoconazole or voriconazole may be given for 2–3 weeks.

**B. Adjunctive/concurrent therapy.** Non-specific treatment and general measures are similar to that of bacterial corneal ulcer (See pages 107–108).

**C. Therapeutic penetrating keratoplasty** may be required for nonresponsive cases.

**Note.** **Topical steroids enhance fungal replication and corneal invasion** and are thus contraindicated during early therapy of fungal corneal ulcer.

### VIRAL CORNEAL ULCER

Incidence of viral corneal ulcers has become much greater especially because of the role of antibiotics in eliminating the pathogenic bacterial flora. Most of the viruses tend to affect the epithelium of both the conjunctiva and cornea, hence the typical viral lesions constitute the viral **keratoconjunctivitis**.

**Common viral infections** include **herpes simplex keratitis** (most common), **herpes zoster ophthalmicus** and **adenovirus keratitis**.

### ■ HERPES SIMPLEX KERATITIS 10m

Ocular infections with herpes simplex virus (HSV) are extremely common and constitute herpetic **keratoconjunctivitis** and **iritis**.



### Etiology

**Herpes simplex virus (HSV).** It is a DNA virus. It is only natural host is man. Basically, HSV is epitheliotropic but may become neurotropic. According to different clinical and immunological properties, HSV is of two types: HSV type I typically causes infection above the waist and HSV type II below the waist (herpes genitalis). HSV-II has also been reported to cause ocular lesions.

**Modes of infection** are as below:

- **HSV-I infection.** It is acquired by kissing or coming in close contact with a patient suffering from herpes labialis.
- **HSV-II infection.** It is transmitted to eyes of neonates through infected genitalia of the mother.

### Ocular lesions of herpes simplex

Ocular involvement by HSV occurs in two forms, primary and recurrent; with following lesions:

#### A. Primary herpes

1. **Skin lesions:** Vesicles on the lids
2. **Conjunctiva:** acute follicular conjunctivitis
3. **Cornea:**

- Fine epithelial punctate keratitis
- Coarse epithelial punctate keratitis
- Dendritic ulcer

#### B. Recurrent herpes

##### 1. Active epithelial keratitis

- Punctate epithelial keratitis
- Dendritic ulcer
- Geographical ulcer

##### 2. Stromal keratitis

- Disciform keratitis;
- Diffuse stromal necrotic keratitis

##### 3. Trophic keratitis (meta-herpetic)

##### 4. Herpetic iridocyclitis.

### A. Primary Ocular Herpes

Primary infection (first attack) involves a nonimmune person. It typically occurs in children of 6 months till 5 years of age and in teenagers. Initial infection occurs by direct contact of mucous membranes with infected secretions.

### Clinical features

1. **Systemic features** include mild fever, malaise and non-suppurative lymphadenopathy. Rarely, severe morbidity can result from multisystem failure. Disease may be fatal when encephalitis develops.

2. **Skin lesions.** Vesicular lesions may occur involving skin of face, lips, lids, periorbital region and the lid margin (vesicular blepharitis).

3. **Ocular lesion:** Typically these occurs unilateral blepharoconjunctivitis characterised by:

- **Acute follicular conjunctivitis** with regional lymphadenitis is the usual and sometimes the only manifestation of the primary infection.

- **Keratitis.** Cornea is involved in about 50% of the cases. The keratitis can occur as a coarse punctate or diffuse branching epithelial keratitis that does not usually involve the stroma.

### Treatment

- **Primary infection is usually self-limiting** but virus travels up to the trigeminal ganglion and establishes the latent infection.

- **Treatment is recommended to limit corneal involvement.** Topical trifluridine or vidarabine, or oral acyclovir can be used. A cycloplegic (atropine) may be added for comfort from ciliary spasm.

### B. Recurrent Ocular Herpes

The virus which lies dormant in the trigeminal ganglion, periodically reactivates and replicates. The reactivated virus in enveloped infectious form travels down along the trigeminal nerve to cause recurrent infection. The recurrent herpetic ocular infection is not associated with systemic features and typically is a unilateral disease.

**Predisposing stress stimuli** which trigger an attack of herpetic keratitis include fever such as malaria, flu, exposure to ultraviolet rays, general ill health, emotional or physical exhaustion, mild trauma, menstrual stress following administration of topical or systemic steroids and immunosuppressive agents.

#### 1. Epithelial keratitis

##### Symptoms

Symptoms of epithelial HSV keratitis include redness, pain, photophobia, tearing and decreased vision.

##### Signs

Three distinct patterns of epithelial keratitis seen are: punctate epithelial keratitis, dendritic ulcer and geographical ulcer.

1. **Punctate epithelial keratitis** (Figs 6.9A and B). The initial epithelial lesions of recurrent herpes resemble those seen in primary herpes and may be either in the form of fine or coarse superficial punctate lesions. The corneal vesicles coalesce and erupt to form dendritic or geographic ulcer (corneal vesicles).

5m. **Dendritic ulcer** (Figs 6.9C and D). Dendritic ulcer is a typical and most common lesion of recurrent epithelial keratitis. The ulcer is of an irregular, zigzag linear branching shape. The branches are generally knobbed at the ends. Floor of the ulcer stains with fluorescein and the virus-laden cells at the margin take up rose bengal. There is an associated marked diminution of corneal sensations.



**3. Geographic ulcer** (Figs 6.9E and F). Sometimes, the branches of dendritic ulcer enlarge and coalesce to form a large epithelial ulcer with a 'geographic' or 'amoeboid' configuration, hence the name. The use of steroids in dendritic ulcer hastens the formation of geographic ulcer.

### Treatment

#### A. Definitive treatment

**1. Antiviral drugs** are the **first choice** presently. Any one of the following drugs may be given:

- **Acycloguanosine (Aciclovir) 3% ointment**: 5 times a day for 14–21 days. It is **least toxic and most commonly used antiviral drug**. It penetrates intact corneal epithelium and stroma, achieving therapeutic levels in aqueous humour, and can therefore be used to treat herpetic keratitis.
- **Ganciclovir (0.15% gel)**, 5 times a day until ulcer heals and then 3 times a day for 5 days. It is more toxic than aciclovir.
- **Trifluorothymidine 1% drops**: Two hourly until ulcer heals and then 4 times a day for 5 days.
- **Adenine arabinoside (Vidarabine) 3% ointment**: 5 times a day until ulcer heals and then 3 times a day for 5 days.

**2. Mechanical debridement** of the **involved area** along with a rim of **surrounding healthy epithelium** with the help of sterile cotton applicator under magnification helps by removing the virus-laden cells.

Before the advent of antiviral drugs, it was the treatment of choice. Now it is **reserved for resistant cases**, cases with noncompliance and those allergic to antiviral drugs.

**3. Systemic antiviral drugs** for a period of **10 to 21 days** are increasingly being considered for **recurrent** and even acute cases in following doses:

- Acyclovir 400 mg p.o. tid to bid, or
- Famcyclovir 250 mg p.o. bid, or
- Valacyclovir 500 mg p.o. bid.

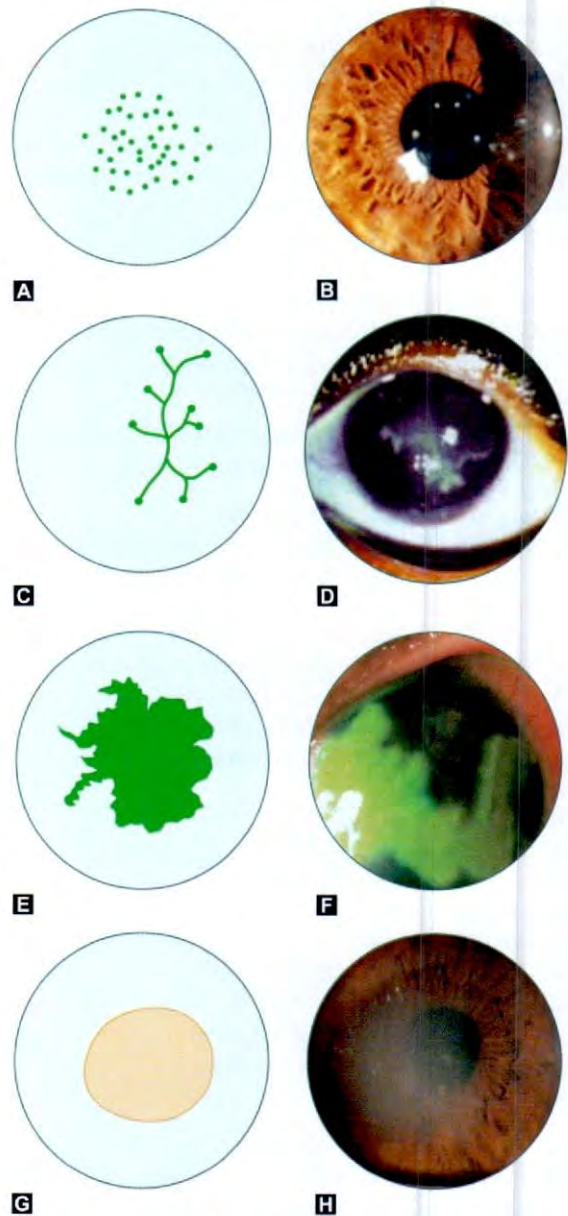
**B. Non-specific supportive therapy** and physical and general measures are same as for bacterial corneal ulcer (See page 107–108).

## 2. Stromal keratitis

### a. Disciform keratitis

**Pathogenesis.** It occurs due to **delayed hypersensitivity reaction to the HSV antigen**. Primarily, there occurs endotheliitis. Endothelial damage results in **disciform corneal stromal oedema** due to imbibition of aqueous humour.

**Symptoms** include **photophobia**, mild-to-moderate ocular discomfort, and a **reduction in visual acuity**.



**Fig. 6.9** Lesions of recurrent herpes simplex keratitis; diagrammatic depiction and Clinical photograph: A and B, Punctate epithelial keratitis; C and D, Dendritic ulcer; E and F, Geographical ulcer; G and H, Disciform keratitis

**Signs.** Disciform keratitis is characterized by (Figs 6.9G and H):

- **Focal disc-shaped patch** of stromal oedema without necrosis, usually with an intact epithelium.
- **Folds in Descemet's membrane**, are after percent.
- **Keratic precipitates** are seen under the round area of stromal edema.



- **Ring of stromal infiltrate** (Wessley immune ring) may be present surrounding the stromal oedema. It signifies the junction between viral antigen and host antibody.
- **Corneal sensations** are diminished.
- **Intraocular pressure (IOP)** may be raised despite only mild anterior uveitis due to trabeculitis. In severe cases, anterior uveitis may be marked.

**Important note.** During active stage, diminished corneal sensations and keratic precipitates are the differentiating points from other causes of stromal oedema.

**Treatment** Definitive treatment consists of:

- **Topical steroid eye drops** instilled 4–5 times a day, to be tapered over a period of several weeks.
- **Antiviral cover** (aciclovir 3%) twice a day, or oral aciclovir is must.
- **When disciform keratitis is present with an infected epithelial ulcer**, antiviral drugs should be started 5–7 days before the steroids.

**Non-specific and supportive treatment** (See pages 107–108).

### b. Stromal necrotic keratitis

It is a type of interstitial keratitis (IK) caused by active viral invasion and tissue destruction.

**Symptoms.** Pain, photophobia and redness are common symptoms.

**Signs** are as below:

- **Corneal lesions** include necrotic, blotchy, cheesy white infiltrates that may lie under the epithelial ulcer or may present independently under the intact epithelium.
- **Mild iritis and keratic precipitates** are usually associated (herpetic keratouveitis).
- **Stromal vascularization** may occur.

**Treatment** is similar to disciform keratitis but frequently the results are unsatisfactory.

- **Systemic antiviral drugs** for 10 to 21 days are being considered in recurrent cases and in those with associated herpetic uveitis.
- **Keratoplasty** should be deferred until the eye has been quiet with little or no steroidal treatment for several months; because viral interstitial keratitis is the form of herpes which is most likely to recur in a new graft.

### 3. Metaherpetic keratitis

Metaherpetic keratitis (epithelial sterile trophic ulceration) is not an active viral disease, but is a mechanical healing problem due to persistent defects in the basement membrane of corneal epithelium (similar to recurrent traumatic erosions)

which occurs at the site of a previous herpetic ulcer.

**Clinical features.** It presents as an indolent linear or ovoid epithelial defect. Margins of the ulcer are grey and thickened due to heaped up epithelium.

**Treatment** is aimed to promote healing by use of lubricants (artificial tears), bandage soft contact lens and prolonged lid closure (tarsorrhaphy).

## ■ HERPES ZOSTER OPHTHALMICUS 5m

Herpes zoster ophthalmicus is an acute infection of Gasserian ganglion of the fifth cranial nerve by the varicella-zoster virus (VZV) involving first (ophthalmic) division. It constitutes approximately 10% of all cases of herpes zoster. Herpes zoster occurs more commonly in immunocompromised individuals.

### Etiology

**Varicella-zoster virus.** It is a DNA virus and produces acidophilic intranuclear inclusion bodies. It is neurotropic in nature.

**Pathogenesis.** The infection is contracted in childhood, which manifests as chickenpox and the child develops immunity. The virus then remains dormant in the sensory ganglion of trigeminal nerve. It is thought that, usually in elderly people, though (can occur at any age) with depressed cellular immunity, the virus reactivates, replicates and travels down along one or more of the branches of the ophthalmic division of the fifth nerve to produce cutaneous and ocular lesions. Then people, particularly prone to herpes zoster ophthalmicus, are elderly with depressed cellular immunity, for example, those suffering from, disseminated TB, cancer, leukemia, AIDS, immunocompromised organ transplant recipient and lymphoma (Hodgkin's and non-Hodgkin's).

### Clinical features

- **Frontal nerve** is more frequently affected than the lacrimal and nasociliary nerves in herpes zoster ophthalmicus.
- **Ocular complications** occurs in about 50% cases of herpes zoster ophthalmicus.
- **Hutchinson's rule**, which implies that ocular involvement is frequent if the side or tip of nose presents vesicles (cutaneous involvement of nasociliary nerve), is useful but not infallible.
- **Lesions are strictly limited to one side of the midline** of head.

**Clinical phases** of H. zoster ophthalmicus are:

**I. Acute phase lesions**, which may totally resolve within few weeks.



**II. Chronic phase lesions**, which may persist for years.

**III. Relapsing phase lesions**, where acute or chronic lesions reappear sometimes years later.

### I. Acute phase lesions

**A. General features.** The onset of illness is sudden with fever, malaise and severe neuralgic pain along the course of the affected nerve. The distribution of pain is so characteristic of zoster that it usually arouses suspicion of the nature of the disease before appearance of vesicles.

**B. Cutaneous lesions.** Cutaneous lesions (Fig. 6.10) in the area of distribution of the involved nerve appear usually after 3 to 4 days of the onset of disease. To begin with, the skin of lids and other affected areas become red and oedematous (mimicking erysipelas), followed by vesicle formation. In due course of time vesicles are converted into pustules, which subsequently burst to become crusting ulcers. When crusts are shed, permanent pitted scars are left. The active eruptive phase lasts for about 3 weeks. Main symptom is severe neuralgic pain which usually diminishes with the subsidence of eruptive phase.

**C. Ocular lesions.** Ocular complications usually appear at the subsidence of skin eruptions and may present as a combination of two or more of the following lesions:

1. **Conjunctivitis** is one of the most common lesion of herpes zoster. It may occur as mucopurulent conjunctivitis with petechial haemorrhages or acute follicular conjunctivitis with regional lymphadenopathy. Sometimes, severe necrotizing membranous inflammation may be seen.

2. **Zoster keratitis** occurs in 40% of all patients and sometimes may precede the neuralgia or skin lesions. It may occur in several forms (Fig. 6.11):

- **Epithelial keratitis.** To begin with there occurs fine or coarse punctate epithelial keratitis (Figs 6.11A and B). It is followed by microdendritic epithelial ulcers (Figs 6.11C and D) which unlike dendritic ulcers of herpes simplex are usually peripheral and stellate rather than exactly dendritic in shape. In contrast to Herpes simplex dendrites, they have tapered ends which lack bulbs. So, also labelled as pseudodendritic keratitis.

- **Nummular keratitis** (Figs 6.11E and F) characterised by anterior stromal infiltrates is seen in about one-third number of total cases. It typically occurs as multiple tiny granular deposits surrounded by a halo of stromal haze. After healing 'nummular scars' are left behind.

- **Disciform keratitis** (Figs 6.11G and H) occurs in about 50% of cases and is always preceded by nummular keratitis.

- **Keratouveitis with endotheliitis** is of common occurrence. The endothelium is a favoured site of attack and acute endothelial cell loss occurs during herpes zoster keratouveitis.

3. **Episcleritis and scleritis** occur in about one-half of the cases. These usually appear at the onset of the rash but are frequently concealed by the overlying conjunctivitis.

4. **Iridocyclitis** is of a frequent occurrence and may or may not be associated with keratitis. There may be associated hypopyon and hyphaema (acute haemorrhagic uveitis).

5. **Acute retinal necrosis** may occur in some cases.

6. **Secondary glaucoma.** It may occur due to trabeculitis in early stages and synechial angle closure in late stages.

7. **Anterior segment necrosis and phthisis bulbi**, may occur rarely as a result from zoster vasculitis and ischemia.

**D. Associated neurological complications.** Herpes zoster ophthalmicus may also be associated with other neurological complications such as:

1. **Motor nerve palsies** especially involving the third, fourth, sixth or seventh nerve.

2. **Optic neuritis** occurs in about 1% of cases.

3. **Encephalitis** occurs rarely with severe infection.

### II. Chronic phase lesions

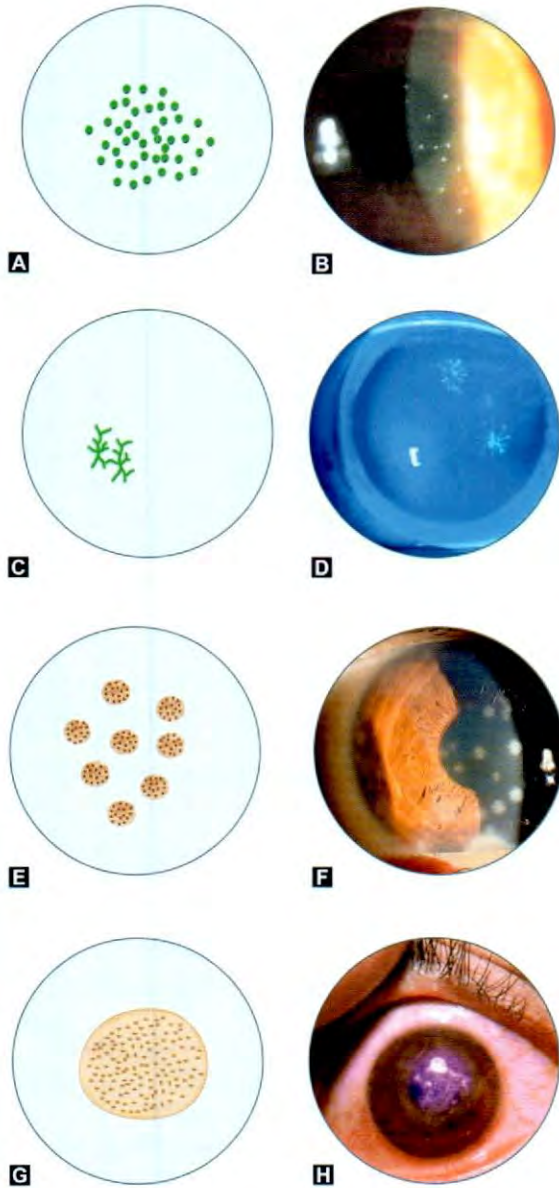
Chronic phase lesions are basically sequelae of acute phase, which may persist for up to 10 years.

1. **Post-herpetic neuralgia** refers to persistence of pain even after subsidence of eruptive phase of zoster which occurs in about 10% cases. Pain is mild to moderate in intensity, worsens at night and is aggravated by touch and heat. But sometimes, it may persist for years with little diminution of intensity.



**Fig. 6.10** Cutaneous lesions of herpes zoster ophthalmicus





**Fig. 6.11** Types of zoster keratitis. Diagrammatic depictions and clinical photographs of: A and B, Punctate epithelial keratitis; C and D, Microdendritic epithelial ulcer; E and F, Nummular keratitis; G and H, Disciform keratitis

There occurs some anaesthesia of the affected skin which when associated with continued postherpetic neuralgia is called **anaesthesia dolorosa**.

**2. Lid lesions**, which occur as sequelae of scarring include ptosis, trichiasis, entropion and notching.

**3. Conjunctival lesions** include chronic mucous secreting conjunctivitis.

**4. Corneal lesions** are:

- **Neuroparalytic ulceration** may occur as a sequelae of acute infection and Gasserian ganglion destruction.

- **Exposure keratitis** may supervene in some cases due to associated facial palsy.

- **Mucous plaque keratitis** develops in 5% of cases between 3rd and 5th months and is characterised by sudden development of elevated mucous plaque which stain brilliantly with rose bengal.

**5. Scleritis and Uveitis** may persist in chronic form.

### III. Relapsing phase lesions

Relapsing phase lesions, which may recur even after ten years of acute phase include nummular keratitis, mucous plaque keratitis, episcleritis, scleritis and secondary glaucoma.

### Treatment

Therapeutic approach to herpes zoster ophthalmicus should be vigorous and aimed at preventing severe devastating ocular complications and promoting rapid healing of the skin lesions without the formation of massive crusts which result in scarring of the nerves and postherpetic neuralgia. The following regime may be followed:

#### I. Systemic therapy for herpes zoster

**1. Oral antiviral drugs.** These significantly decrease pain, curtail vesiculation, stop viral progression and reduce the incidence as well as severity of keratitis and iritis. In order to be effective, the treatment should be started immediately after the onset of rash. It has no effect on post herpetic neuralgia.

- **Acyclovir** in a dose of 800 mg 5 times a day for 10 days, or

- **Valaciclovir** in a dose of 500 mg TDS for 10 days.

**2. Analgesics.** Pain during the first 2 weeks of an attack is very severe and should be treated by analgesics such as combination of mephenamic acid and paracetamol or pentazocin or even pethidine (when very severe).

**3. Systemic steroids.** They appear to inhibit development of postherpetic neuralgia when given in high doses. However, the risk of high doses of steroids in elders should always be taken into consideration. Steroids are commonly recommended in cases developing neurological complications such as third nerve palsy and optic neuritis.

**4. Cimetidine** in a dose of 300 mg QID for 2–3 weeks starting within 48–72 hours of onset has also been shown to reduce pain and pruritis in acute zoster—presumably by histamine blockade.

**5. Amitriptyline** should be used to relieve the accompanying depression in acute phase.

#### II. Local therapy for skin lesions

**1. Antibiotic-corticosteroid skin ointment or lotions.** These should be used three times a day till skin lesions heal.



**2. No calamine lotion.** Cool zinc calamine application, as advocated earlier, is better avoided, as it promotes crust formation.

### III. Local therapy for ocular lesions

#### 1. For zoster keratitis, iridocyclitis and scleritis

- Topical steroid eye drops 4 times a day.
- Cycloplegics such as cyclopentolate eye drops BD or atropine eye ointment OD.
- Topical acyclovir 3% eye ointment should be instilled 5 times a day for about 2 weeks.

**2. To prevent secondary infections** topical antibiotics are used.

#### 3. For secondary glaucoma

- 0.5% timolol or 0.5% betaxolol drops, BD.
- Acetazolamide 250 mg, QID.

**4. For mucous plaques,** add topical mucolytics, e.g. acetyl cysteine 5 to 10%, three times a day.

#### 5. For persistent epithelial defects use:

- Lubricating artificial tear drops, and
- Bandage soft contact lens.

### IV. Surgical treatment

**For neuroparalytic corneal ulcer** caused by herpes zoster:

**1. Lateral tarsorrhaphy** should be performed.

**2. Amniotic membrane transplantation (AMT)** or conjunctival flap should be considered for non-healing cases.

**3. Tissue adhesive** with bandage contact lens for corneal perforation.

**4. Keratoplasty.** It may be required for visual rehabilitation of zoster patients with dense scarring. However, these are high risk patients.

## PROTOZOAL KERATITIS

### ■ ACANTHAMOEBA KERATITIS 5m

Acanthamoeba keratitis has recently gained importance because of its increasing incidence, difficulty in diagnosis and unsatisfactory treatment.

#### Etiology

*Acanthamoeba castellanii*, the causative organism is a free-living genus of amoeba found in soil, fresh water, well water, sea water, sewage and air. It exists in trophozoite and encysted forms. Acanthamoeba has tremendous capacity to survive in diverse conditions and in contrast to many other pathogenic amoeba, this organism is not naturally parasitic and does not require a host. In human, acanthamoeba causes:

- Keratitis
- Granulomatous encephalitis
- Fulminant meningoencephalitis.

**Mode of infection.** Corneal infection with acanthamoeba results from direct corneal contact with any material or water contaminated with the organism. Following risk factors of contamination have been described:

**1. Contact lens wearers** using home-made saline (from contaminated tap water and saline tablets) is the commonest situation recognised for acanthamoeba infection in western countries.

**2. Trauma associated with contaminated matter such as vegetable matter, salt water diving, windblown contaminant and hot tub use** forms the non-contact lens-related situations. Trauma with organic matter and exposure to muddy water are the major (90% cases) predisposing factors in developing countries.

**3. Opportunistic infection.** Acanthamoeba keratitis can also occur as opportunistic infection in patients with herpetic keratitis, bacterial keratitis, bullous keratopathy and neuroparalytic keratitis.

#### Clinical features

##### Symptoms

These vary from asymptomatic to foreign body sensation, mild pain to severe pain (out of proportion to the degree of inflammation), watering, photophobia, blepharospasm and blurred vision.

##### Signs

Acanthamoeba keratitis evolves over several months as a gradual worsening keratitis with periods of temporary remission. Presentation is markedly variable, making the diagnosis difficult.

Reported lesions of acanthamoeba keratitis are as below:

**1. Epithelial lesions** occur initially and include:

- Epithelial roughening and irregularities, often mistaken for punctate epitheliopathy,
- Epithelial ridges, i.e. raised epithelial lines. Initially, typical reticular pattern is seen due to radial keratoneuritis.
- Radial keratoneuritis (Fig. 6.12A), reported in 50% cases, seems to be pathognomonic early sign. It is thought to be the cause of severe pain disproportionate to inflammation.
- Pseudodendrites formation, occurs and at this stage, it is commonly mistaken for herpes simplex keratitis (Fig. 6.12B).
- Epithelial and subepithelial curvilinear opacities (usually fine).

**2. Limbal lesions** include: Limbitis which is reported in majority of cases in early stages of infection.

**3. Stromal lesions** occur over a period of week and include:



- **Patchy and satellite stromal infiltrates.**
- **Ring infiltrates,** central or paracentral, with overlying epithelial defects and underlying keratic precipitates (Fig. 6.12C).
- **Ring abscess** (Fig. 6.12D) associated with stromal necrosis and hypopyon may occur in late stages and mimics any suppurative keratitis.
- 4. **Scleritis,** usually anterior diffuse or nodular, can be contiguous with keratitis. Rarely posterior scleritis with optic neuritis is also reported.

### Differential diagnosis

1. **Viral keratitis.** In early stages, both epithelial lesions and early infiltrates, especially **pseudodendrites**, are often mistaken for viral keratitis.
2. **Fungal keratitis** can also be misdiagnosed when **ring infiltrates** are associated with hypopyon.
3. **Suppurative keratitis** due to bacterial or other causes may be misdiagnosed in stage of stromal necrosis, and **ring abscess formation**.

### Diagnosis

1. **Clinical diagnosis.** It is difficult and usually made by exclusion with strong clinical suspicion out of the

non-responsive patients being treated for herpetic, bacterial or fungal keratitis.

2. **Confocal microscopy,** when available allows direct visualization of the cysts in the cornea, which is diagnostic.

3. **Laboratory diagnosis.** Corneal scrapings may be helpful in some cases as under:

a. **Potassium hydroxide (KOH) mount** is reliable in experienced hands for recognition of acanthamoeba cysts.

b. **Calcofluor white stain** is a fluorescent brightener which stains the cysts of acanthamoeba **bright apple green** under fluorescence microscope.

c. **Lactophenol cotton blue stained film** is also useful for demonstration of acanthamoeba cysts in the corneal scrapings.

d. **Culture on non-nutrient agar** (*E. coli* enriched) may show **trophozoites within 48 hours**, which gradually turn into cysts.

e. **Polymerase chain reaction (PCR)** for amoebic DNA is reported to be useful.

f. **Corneal biopsy,** may be required in non-conclusive cases, may be positive for amoebic cyst.

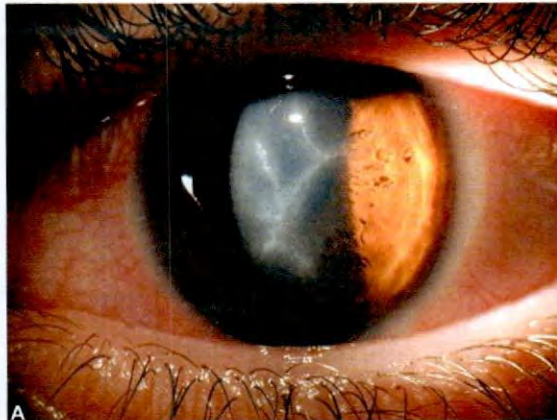


Fig. 6.12 Acanthamoeba keratitis: A, Radial keratoneuritis; B, Acanthamoeba pseudodendrites; C, Ring infiltrate; D, Ring abscess



### Treatment

It is usually unsatisfactory.

1. **Non-specific treatment** is on the general lines for corneal ulcer (See page 107).

2. **Specific treatment**

a. **Topical antiamoebic agents** include:

- **Diamidines:** Propamidine isethionate (0.1 %), and hexamidine (0.1%).
- **Biguanides:** Polyhexamethylene biguanide (PHMB), 0.02% and chlorhexidine, 0.02%.
- **Aminoglycosides:** Neomycin and Paromycin
- **Imidazoles:** Clotrimazole and miconazole.

**Multiple drug therapy is needed for a long time** (3–4 months) for early epithelial lesions and 6–12 months for stromal lesions. Any of the following combination may be chosen:

- Propamidine or hexamidine + PHMB (drug of choice) or
- Chlorhexidine + Neomycin, or
- Paromycin + clotrimazole or miconazole or itraconazole.

**Frequency of instillation:** hourly for a week, then taper slowly over 3–4 months for epithelial lesions and 6–12 months for stromal lesions.

b. **Oral ketoconazole** 200 mg BID, or itraconazole 100 mg BD may be added in advanced cases.

3. **Long-term prophylactic therapy** with PHMB, twice a day for a year is recommended.

4. **Penetrating keratoplasty** is frequently required in non-responsive cases. Surgery should be performed after a full course of maximum medical therapy and a quiescent phase of at least six months.

### ALLERGIC KERATITIS

1. Phlyctenular keratitis (See page 84)
2. Vernal keratitis (See page 80)
3. Atopic keratitis (See page 83).

### TROPHIC CORNEAL ULCERS

Trophic corneal ulcers develop due to disturbance in metabolic activity of epithelial cells. This group includes:

- Neurotrophic keratopathy and
- Exposure keratopathy.

#### ■ NEUROTROPHIC KERATOPATHY 5m

Neurotrophic keratopathy (neuroparalytic keratitis) occurs due to decreased corneal sensations owing to damage of sensory nerve supply of the cornea (trigeminal nerve).

### Causes

#### A. Congenital

1. Familial dysautonomia (Riley-Day syndrome).
2. Congenital insensitivity to pain.
3. Anhidrotic ectodermal dysplasia.

#### B. Acquired

1. Following alcohol-block or electrocoagulation of Gasserian ganglion or section of the sensory root of trigeminal nerve for trigeminal neuralgia.
2. A neoplasm pressing on Gasserian ganglion.
3. Gasserian ganglion destruction due to acute infection in herpes zoster ophthalmicus.
4. Acute infection of Gasserian ganglion by herpes simplex virus.
5. Syphilitic (luetetic) neuropathy.
6. Involvement of corneal nerves in leprosy, diabetes.
7. Injury to Gasserian ganglion.

### Pathogenesis

Exact pathogenesis is not clear; presumably, the disturbances in the corneal sensations occur due to damage to sensory nerves. As a consequence, metabolic activity of corneal epithelium is disturbed, leading to accumulation of metabolites; which in turn cause oedema and exfoliation of epithelial cells followed by ulceration. Corneal changes can occur in the presence of a normal blink reflex and normal lacrimal secretions.

### Clinical features

Typically neurotrophic keratitis is characterised by marked signs and minimal symptoms (due to decreased corneal sensation).

### Symptoms

- Red eye, swollen eyelids and defective vision are common complaints.
- No pain, and no tearing are characteristic features.

### Signs

1. Ciliary congestion is marked,
2. Corneal signs include:
  - Sensations are decreased,
  - Sheen is lost (dull sheen),
  - Punctate epithelial erosions involving the interpalpebral area are initial lesions, which soon converts into,
  - Frank epithelial defects due to exfoliation of corneal epithelium, later followed by,
  - Corneal ulcer formation, which is typically horizontally oval, located in the lower one-half of the



cornea and have grey heaped-up epithelial borders (Fig. 6.13A).

**Note.** *Relapses are very common*, even the *healed scars quickly breakdown again*.

#### Treatment

■ **Conventional treatment** with antibiotics, cycloplegics, lubricating drops and patching should be started immediately.

■ **Special treatment** recommended is topical nerve growth factor drops and autologous serum drops.

■ **Amniotic membrane transplantation** is recommended when patients present with large non-healing ulcers.

■ **Lateral tarsorrhaphy** is usually required to promote healing and prevent relapses. It should be kept at least for one year along with and prolonged use of artificial tears is also recommended.

#### ■ EXPOSURE KERATOPATHY 5m

Normally cornea is covered by eyelids during sleep and is constantly kept moist by blinking movements during awakening. When eyes are covered insufficiently by the lids and there is loss of protective mechanism of blinking, the condition of exposure keratopathy (keratitis lagophthalmos) develops.

#### Causes

Following factors which produce lagophthalmos may lead to exposure keratopathy:

1. **Extreme proptosis** due to any cause will allow inadequate closure of lids.
2. **Bell's palsy** or any other cause of facial palsy.
3. **Ectropion** of severe degree.
4. **Symblepharon** causing lagophthalmos.
5. **Deep coma** associated with inadequate closure of lids.

6. **Physiological lagophthalmos**. Occasionally, lagophthalmos during sleep may occur in healthy individuals.

#### Pathogenesis

Due to exposure the corneal epithelium dries up followed by desiccation. After the epithelium is cast off, invasion by infective organisms may occur.

#### Clinical features

**Symptoms and signs** of the causative disease are evident.

**Symptoms of exposure keratopathy** include ocular irritation, burning, foreign body sensation and redness. Symptoms are usually worse in the morning.

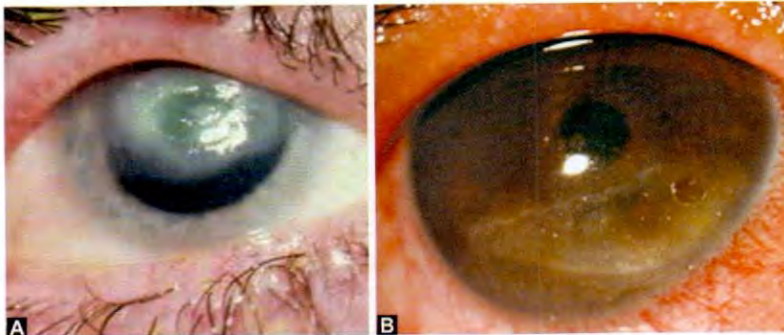
**Signs of exposure keratopathy** are:

- **Drying of cornea** occurs to begin with due to inadequate blinking or closure of the lids.
- **Punctate epithelial defects** develop in the lower third of cornea or as a horizontal band in the region of palpebral fissure (Fig. 6.13).
- **Corneal ulceration** may develop soon due to necrosis followed by bacterial superinfection. If neglected, corneal ulcer may even perforate soon.

#### Treatment

1. **Prophylaxis**. Once lagophthalmos is diagnosed following measures should be taken to prevent exposure keratitis.

- **Artificial tears** should be instilled frequently.
- **Instillation of ointment** and closure of lids by a tape or bandage during sleep.
- **Soft bandage contact lens** with frequent instillation of artificial tears is required in cases of moderate exposure.
- **Treatment of the cause of exposure**: e.g. proptosis, ectropion, symblepharon should be taken up.



**Fig. 6.13** Trophic corneal ulcers: A, Neurotrophic; B, Exposure keratitis (Note punctate epithelial defects in the lower third of cornea)



**2. Treatment of the corneal ulcer** once developed is on the general lines (See page 107). **Tarsorrhaphy is invariably required** when it is not possible to treat the cause or when recovery of the cause (e.g. facial palsy) is not anticipated.

## PERIPHERAL ULCERATIVE KERATOPATHIES

Peripheral ulcerative keratopathies (PUKs), characterized by peripheral corneal thinning, infiltrates and ulceration, include various conditions with different etiologies. Some of the PUKs are as follows:

- **Peripheral ulcerative keratitis** associated with connective tissue disorders,
- **Mooren's ulcer**,
- **Rosacea keratitis**,
- **Marginal keratitis** (catarrhal ulcer) of Staphylococcal hypersensitivity (See page 109),
- **Terrien marginal degeneration** (See page 128),
- **Pellucid marginal degeneration** (See page 128),
- **Phlyctenular keratitis** (See page 84), and
- **Dellen**.

### ■ PERIPHERAL ULCERATIVE KERATITIS ASSOCIATED WITH CONNECTIVE TISSUE DISEASES (MARGINAL KERATOLYSIS)

#### Causes

Peripheral corneal ulceration and/or melting of corneal tissue is not of infrequent occurrence in patients suffering from connective tissue diseases such as:

- **Rheumatoid arthritis**,
- **Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)**,
- **Polyarteritis nodosa**, and
- **Wegener's granulomatosis**.

#### Clinical features

- **Peripheral acute corneal ulceration** with rapid progression, usually in one sector, associated with inflammation at the limbus in one or both eyes.
- **Peripheral corneal guttering or thinning** may involve entire corneal periphery (contact lens cornea).
- **Peripheral corneal melting** may result in descemetocoele formation or even perforation.
- **Corneal ulceration may be the first manifestation of the systemic disease** and there may be associated systemic features of any of the causative disease.

#### Treatment

Such corneal ulcers are usually indolent and difficult to treat.

**1. Topical medication** include, **antibiotics**, **cycloplegics** and frequent **instillation of lubricating drops**. Topical steroids may be used with great caution, but not in the presence of significant thinning.

**2. Systemic medication** includes immunosuppressants (corticosteroids, or methotrexate, cyclophosphamide), doxycycline and oral vitamin C (to promote a healing stromal environment).

**3. Surgical measures** needed include:

- **Excision of adjacent inflamed conjunctiva**,
- **Bandage contact lens** or conjunctival flap for impending perforation,
- **Application of cyanoacrylate tissue adhesive** or peripheral tectonic keratoplasty for actual perforation.

### ■ MOOREN'S ULCER 5m

Mooren's ulcer (**chronic serpiginous** or **rodent ulcer**) is a severe inflammatory peripheral ulcerative keratitis.

#### Etiology

Exact etiology is not known. Most probably it is an **autoimmune disease** (antibodies against corneal epithelium have been demonstrated in serum).

#### Clinical features

Two clinical varieties of Mooren's ulcer have been recognised.

1. **Benign or limited form** which is usually unilateral, affects the elderly **Caucasians** and is characterised by a relative slow progress.
2. **Virulent type** also called the **progressive form** is **bilateral**, more often occurs in **young African** patients. The ulcer is rapidly progressive with a high incidence of scleral involvement.

**Symptoms.** These include severe pain, photophobia, lacrimation and defective vision.

**Signs.** Features of Mooren's ulcer are shown in Fig. 6.14.

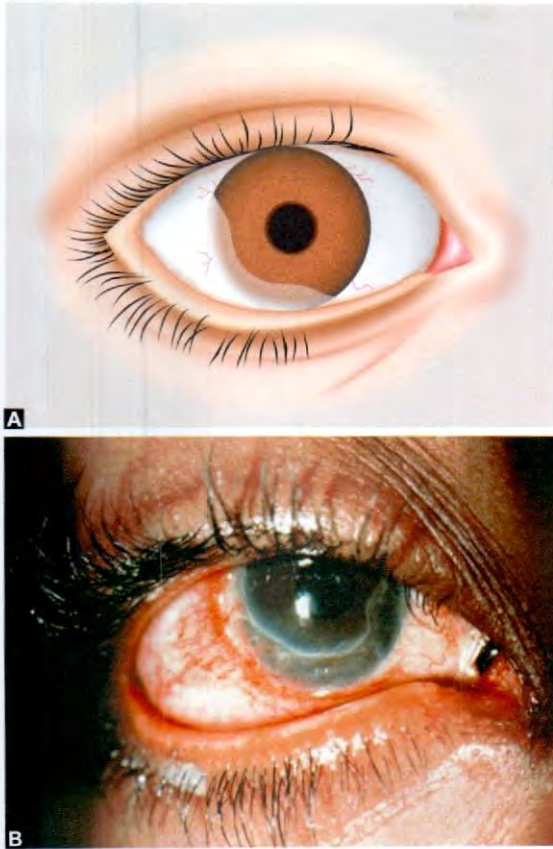
- It is a **superficial ulcer** which starts at the **corneal margin** as **patches of grey infiltrates** which coalesce to form a shallow furrow over the whole cornea.
- **Peripheral ulcer is associated with undermining** of the epithelium and **superficial stromal lamellae** at the advancing border which forms a characteristic **whitish overhanging edge**. Base of the ulcer soon becomes vascularized. The spread may be self-limiting or progressive.
- **At the end-stage, the cornea is thinned** and conjunctivalised.
- **Ulcer rarely perforates** and the sclera remains uninvolved.

#### Treatment

Since exact etiology is still unknown, its treatment is highly unsatisfactory. Following measures may be tried:

1. **Topical corticosteroids** instilled every **2-3 hours** are tried as initial therapy with limited success.





**Fig. 6.14** Mooren's ulcer: A, Diagrammatic depiction; B, Clinical photograph

2. Immunosuppressive therapy with systemic steroids may be of help. Immunosuppression with cyclosporin or other cytotoxic agents may be quite useful in virulent type of disease.
3. Soft contact lenses have also been used with some relief in pain.
4. Lamellar or full thickness corneal grafts often melt or vascularize.

### ■ ROSACEA KERATITIS

Corneal ulceration is seen in about 10% cases of acne rosacea, which is primarily a disease of the sebaceous glands of the skin.

#### Clinical features

1. Facial eruptions presenting in butterfly configuration, predominantly involving the malar and nasal area of face typically occurs in elderly women.
2. Ocular lesions include chronic blepharoconjunctivitis and keratitis. Rosacea keratitis occurs as yellowish white marginal infiltrates, and small ulcers that progressively advance across the cornea and almost always become heavily vascularised.

#### Treatment

1. Local treatment. Rosacea keratitis responds to topical steroids, but recurrences are very common.
2. Systemic treatment. The essential and most effective treatment of rosacea keratitis is a long course of systemic tetracycline (250 mg QID  $\times$  3 weeks, TDS  $\times$  3 weeks, BID  $\times$  3 weeks, and once a day for 3 months).

### NON-ULCERATIVE KERATITIS

Non-ulcerative keratitis can be divided into two groups: Non-ulcerative superficial keratitis and non-ulcerative deep keratitis.

### NON-ULCERATIVE SUPERFICIAL KERATITIS

This group includes a number of conditions of varied etiology. Here, the inflammatory reaction is confined to epithelium, Bowman's membrane and superficial stromal lamellae. Non-ulcerative superficial keratitis may present in two forms:

- Diffuse superficial keratitis and
- Superficial punctate keratitis.

#### DIFFUSE SUPERFICIAL KERATITIS

Diffuse inflammation of superficial layers of cornea occurs in two forms, acute and chronic.

##### 1. Acute diffuse superficial keratitis

**Etiology.** Mostly of infective origin, may be associated with Staphylococcal or gonococcal infections.

**Clinical features.** It is characterised by faint diffuse epithelial oedema associated with grey farinaceous appearance being interspersed with relatively clear area. Epithelial erosions may be formed at places. If uncontrolled, it usually converts into ulcerative keratitis.

**Treatment.** It consists of frequent instillation of antibiotic eye drops such as tobramycin or gentamycin 2–4 hourly.

##### 2. Chronic diffuse superficial keratitis

It may be seen in rosacea, phlyctenulosis and is typically associated with pannus formation.

### SUPERFICIAL PUNCTATE KERATITIS (SPK)

Superficial punctate keratitis is characterised by occurrence of multiple, spotty lesions in the superficial layers of cornea. It may result from a number of conditions, identification of which (causative condition) might not be possible most of the times.



### Causes

Some important causes of superficial punctate keratitis are listed here.

1. **Viral infections** are the chief cause. Of these more common are: herpes zoster, adenovirus infections, epidemic keratoconjunctivitis, pharyngoconjunctival fever and herpes simplex.
2. **Chlamydial infections** include trachoma and inclusion conjunctivitis.
3. **Toxic lesions**, e.g. due to Staphylococcal toxin in association with blepharoconjunctivitis.
4. **Trophic lesions**, e.g. exposure keratitis and neuroparalytic keratitis.
5. **Allergic lesions**, e.g. vernal keratoconjunctivitis.
6. **Irritative lesions**, e.g. effect of some drugs such as idoxuridine.
7. **Disorders of skin and mucous membrane**, such as acne rosacea and pemphigoid.
8. **Dry eye syndrome**, i.e. keratoconjunctivitis sicca.
9. **Specific type of idiopathic SPK**, e.g. Thygeson's superficial punctate keratitis and Theodore's superior limbic keratoconjunctivitis.
10. **Photo-ophthalmia**.

### Morphological types

1. Punctate epithelial erosions (multiple superficial erosions).
2. Punctate epithelial keratitis (Figs 6.15A and B).
3. Punctate subepithelial keratitis (Figs 6.15C and D).
4. Punctate combined epithelial and subepithelial keratitis (Figs 6.15E and F).
5. Filamentary keratitis (Figs 6.15G and H).

### Clinical features

Superficial punctate keratitis may present as different morphological types as enumerated above. Punctate epithelial lesions usually stain with fluorescein, rose bengal and other vital dyes. The condition mostly presents with acute pain, photophobia and lacrimation; and is usually associated with conjunctivitis.

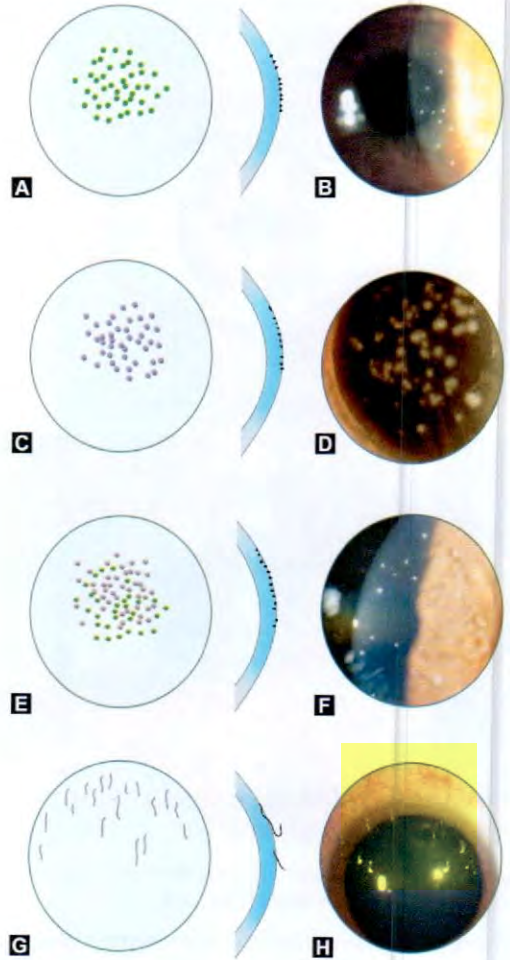
### Treatment

Treatment of most of these conditions is symptomatic.

1. Topical steroids have a marked suppressive effect.
2. Artificial tears have soothing effect.
3. Specific treatment of cause should be instituted whenever possible, e.g. antiviral drugs in cases of herpes simplex.

### ■ PHOTO-OPHTHALMIA

Photo-ophthalmia refers to occurrence of multiple epithelial erosions due to the effect of ultraviolet rays especially from 311 to 290  $\mu$ .



**Fig. 6.15** Morphological types of superficial punctate keratitis. diagrammatic depictions and clinical photographs of: A and B, Punctate epithelial; C and D, Punctate subepithelial keratitis; E and F, Punctate combined epithelial and subepithelial keratitis; G and H, Filamentary keratitis

### Causes

Common sources of exposure to UV rays are:

- Exposure to bright light of a short circuit.
- Naked arc light exposure as in industrial electric welding and cinema operators.
- Exposure to UV lamps.
- Exposure to UV rays from sun directly or indirectly, e.g. snow blindness due to reflected ultraviolet rays of sun from snow surface.

### Pathogenesis

After an interval of 4–5 hours (latent period) of exposure to ultraviolet rays, there occurs desquamation of corneal epithelium leading to formation of multiple epithelial erosions.



### Clinical features

- Typically, patient presents with severe burning pain, lacrimation, photophobia, blepharospasm, swelling of palpebral conjunctiva and retrotarsal folds.
- History of exposure to ultraviolet rays 4–5 hours earlier is positive.
- On fluorescein staining multiple spots are demonstrated on both corneas.

### Prophylaxis

- Crooker's glass which cuts off all infrared and ultraviolet rays should be used by those who are prone to exposure, e.g. welding workers, cinema operators, etc.

### Treatment

- Cold compresses, give soothing effect
- Patching with antibiotic ointment for 24 hours, heals most of the cases.
- Oral analgesics may be given if pain is intolerable.
- Reassurance to the patient is very important
- Single dose of tranquilizer may be given to apprehensive patients.

### ■ SUPERIOR LIMBIC KERATOCONJUNCTIVITIS

Superior limbic keratoconjunctivitis of Theodore is the name given to inflammation of superior limbic, bulbar and tarsal conjunctiva associated with punctate keratitis of the superior part of cornea.

### Etiology

Exact etiology is not known. It occurs with greater frequency in patients with hyperthyroidism and is more common in females.

### Clinical features

Clinical course is chronic with remissions and exacerbations.

Symptoms include:

- Bilateral ocular irritation.
- Mild photophobia, and redness in superior bulbar conjunctiva.

Signs include (Fig. 6.16):

- Congestion of superior limbic, bulbar and tarsal conjunctiva.
- Punctate keratitis which stains with fluorescein and rose bengal stain is seen in superior part of cornea.
- Corneal filaments are also frequently seen in the involved area.

### Treatment

- Artificial tears provide soothing effect.
- Topical corticosteroids in low doses may reduce the symptoms temporarily.
- Faint diathermy of superior bulbar conjunctiva in a checker board pattern gives acceptable results.

- Recession or resection of a 3–4 mm wide perilimbal strip of conjunctiva from the superior limbus (from 10.30 to 1.30 O'clock position) may be helpful, if other measures fail.
- Therapeutic soft contact lenses for a longer period may be helpful in healing the keratitis.

### ■ THYGESON'S SUPERFICIAL PUNCTATE KERATITIS

It is a type of chronic, recurrent bilateral superficial punctate keratitis, which has got a specific clinical identity.

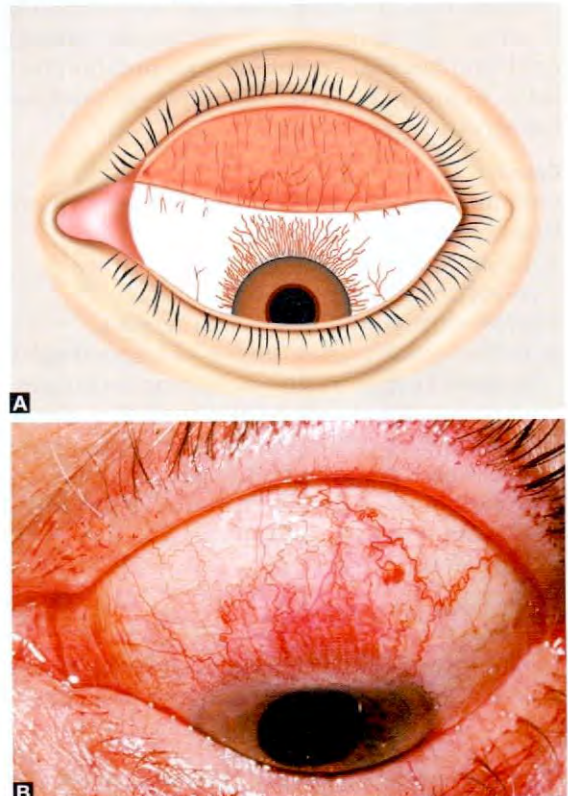
### Etiology

Exact etiology is not known.

- A viral origin has been suggested without any conclusion.
- An allergic or dyskeratotic nature also has been suggested owing to its response to steroids.

### Clinical features

- Age and sex. It may involve all ages with no sex predilection.
- Laterality. Usually bilateral.
- Course. It is a chronic disease characterised by remissions and exacerbations.



**Fig. 6.16** Superior limbic keratoconjunctivitis: A, Diagrammatic depiction; B, Clinical photograph



**Symptoms**

It may be asymptomatic, but is usually associated with foreign body sensation, photophobia and lacrimation.

**Signs**

- *Conjunctiva* is uninfamed (no conjunctivitis).
- *Corneal lesions*. There are coarse punctate epithelial lesions (snow flake) circular, oval or stellate in shape, slightly elevated and situated in the central part (pupillary area) of cornea. Each lesion is a cluster of heterogeneous granular grey dots.

**Treatment**

- Disease is self-limiting with remissions and may permanently disappear in a period of 5–6 years.
- *Topical steroids* during exacerbations the lesions and associated symptoms usually respond quickly to topical steroids (so, should be tapered rapidly).
- *Therapeutic soft contact lenses* may be required in steroid-resistant cases.

**■ FILAMENTARY KERATITIS**

It is a type of superficial punctate keratitis, associated with formation of corneal epithelial filaments.

**Pathogenesis**

Corneal filaments which essentially consist of a tag of elongated epithelium are formed due to aberrant epithelial healing. Therefore, any condition that leads to focal epithelial erosions may produce filamentary keratopathy.

**Causes**

Common conditions associated with filamentary keratopathy are:

1. Keratoconjunctivitis sicca (KCS).
2. Superior limbic keratoconjunctivitis.
3. Epitheliopathy due to radiation keratitis.
4. Following epithelial erosions as in herpes simplex keratitis, Thygeson's superficial punctate keratitis, recurrent corneal erosion syndrome and trachoma.
5. Prolonged patching of the eye particularly following ocular surgery like cataract.
6. Systemic disorders like diabetes mellitus, ectodermal dysplasia and psoriasis.
7. Idiopathic.

**Clinical features****Symptoms**

Patients usually experience moderate pain, ocular irritation, lacrimation and foreign body sensation.

**Signs**

Corneal examination reveals (See Figs 6.15G and H):

- *Filaments*, i.e. fine tags of elongated epithelium which are firmly attached at the base, intertwined

with mucus and degenerated cells. The filament is freely movable over the cornea.

- *Superficial punctate keratitis* of varying degree is usually associated with corneal filaments.

**Treatment**

1. *Management of filaments* include their mechanical debridement and patching for 24 hours followed by lubricating drops.
2. *Therapeutic soft contact lenses* may be useful in recurrent cases.
3. *Treatment of the underlying cause* to prevent recurrence.

**DEEP KERATITIS 5m**

An inflammation of corneal stroma with or without involvement of posterior corneal layers constitutes deep keratitis, which may be non-suppurative or suppurative.

- *Non-suppurative deep keratitis* includes, interstitial keratitis, disciform keratitis, keratitis profunda and sclerosing keratitis.

- *Suppurative deep keratitis* includes central corneal abscess and posterior corneal abscess, which are usually metastatic in nature.

**■ INTERSTITIAL KERATITIS 5m**

Interstitial keratitis denotes an inflammation of the corneal stroma without primary involvement of the epithelium or endothelium. It is non-suppurative inflammation, which is characterized by cellular infiltration of the corneal stroma.

**Etiology**

Inflammation may either be the direct result of an infectious process or, more commonly, secondary to an immunologic response to a specific foreign antigen. This immunologic response to a specific foreign antigen may take the form of antigen-antibody complex deposition, complement-mediated disease, or a delayed-type hypersensitivity reaction.

*Causes of interstitial keratitis are:*

- *Viral*. HSV, Herpes zoster, EBV, mumps, measles.
- *Bacterial*. TB, syphilis (congenital more common than acquired), Lyme disease, lymphogranuloma venereum, Leprosy.
- *Others*. Sarcoidosis, onchocerciasis, Cogan syndrome, rheumatoid arthritis, malaria.

A few important types of interstitial keratitis are described briefly.



### Syphilitic (Luetic) Interstitial Keratitis

Syphilitic interstitial keratitis is associated more frequently (90%) with congenital syphilis than the acquired syphilis. The disease is generally bilateral in inherited syphilis and unilateral in acquired syphilis. In congenital syphilis, manifestations develop between 5–15 years of age.

#### Pathogenesis

It is now generally accepted that the disease is a manifestation of local antigen-antibody reaction. It is presumed that *Treponema pallidum* invades the cornea and sensitizes it during the period of its general diffusion throughout the body in the foetal stage. Later a small scale fresh invasion by *Treponema* or toxins excite the inflammation in the sensitized cornea. The inflammation is usually triggered by an injury or an operation on the eye.

#### Clinical features

Interstitial keratitis characteristically forms one of the late manifestations of congenital syphilis. Many times it may be a part of *Hutchinson's triad*, which includes interstitial keratitis, *Hutchinson's teeth* and vestibular deafness.

The clinical features of interstitial keratitis can be divided into three stages: initial progressive stage, florid stage and stage of regression.

**1. Initial progressive stage.** The disease begins with oedema of the endothelium and deeper stroma, secondary to anterior uveitis, as evidenced by the presence of keratic precipitates (KPs). There is associated pain, lacrimation, photophobia, blepharospasm and circumcorneal injection followed by a diffuse corneal haze giving it a ground glass appearance. This stage lasts for about 2 weeks.

**2. Florid stage.** In this stage, eye remains acutely inflamed. Deep vascularization of cornea, consisting of radial bundle of brush-like vessels develops. Since, these vessels are covered by hazy cornea, they look dull reddish pink which is called 'Salmon patch appearance' (Fig. 6.17). There is often a moderate degree of superficial vascularization. These vessels arising from the terminal arches of conjunctival vessels, run a short distance over the cornea. These vessels and conjunctiva heap at the limbus in the form of epulit. This stage lasts for about 2 months.

**3. Stage of regression.** The acute inflammation resolves with the progressive appearance of vascular invasion. Clearing of cornea is slow and begins from periphery and advances centrally. Resolution of the lesion leaves behind some opacities and ghost vessels. This stage may last for about 1 to 2 years.



Fig. 6.17 Interstitial keratitis: Salmon patch appearance

#### Diagnosis

The diagnosis is usually evident from the clinical profile. A positive VDRL or *Treponema pallidum* immobilization test confirms the diagnosis.

#### Treatment

The treatment should include topical treatment for keratitis and systemic treatment for syphilis.

**1. Local treatment** includes:

- Topical corticosteroid drops, e.g. dexamethasone 0.1% drops every 2–3 hours. As the condition is allergic in origin, corneal clearing occurs with steroids if started well in time and a useful vision is obtained.
- Atropine eye ointment 1% 2–3 times a day.
- Dark goggles to be used for photophobia.
- Keratoplasty is required in cases where dense corneal opacities are left.

**2. Systemic treatment** includes:

- Penicillin in high doses should be started to prevent development of further syphilitic lesions. However, an early treatment of congenital syphilis usually does not prevent the onset of keratitis at a later stage.
- Systemic steroids may be added in refractory cases of keratitis.

### Tuberculous Interstitial Keratitis

The features of tubercular interstitial keratitis are similar to syphilitic interstitial keratitis except that it is more frequently unilateral and sectorial (usually involving a lower sector of cornea).

**Treatment** consists of systemic antitubercular drugs, topical steroids and cycloplegics.

### Cogan's Syndrome

This syndrome comprises the interstitial keratitis of unknown etiology, acute tinnitus, vertigo, and deafness. It typically occurs in middle-aged adults and is often bilateral.



**Treatment** consists of topical and systemic corticosteroids. An early treatment usually prevents permanent deafness and blindness.

## CORNEAL DEGENERATIONS

Corneal degenerations refers to the conditions in which the normal cells undergo some degenerative changes under the influence of age or some pathological condition.

### Classification

#### A. Depending upon location

##### I. Axial corneal degenerations

1. Fatty degeneration
2. Hyaline degeneration
3. Amyloidosis
4. Calcific degeneration (Band keratopathy)
5. Salzmann's nodular degeneration.

##### II. Peripheral degenerations

1. Arcus senilis
2. Vogt's white limbal girdle
3. Hassall-Henle bodies
4. Terrien's marginal degeneration
5. Mooren's ulcer
6. Pellucid marginal degeneration
7. Furrow degeneration (senile marginal degeneration).

#### B. Depending upon etiology

- I. Age-related degenerations. Arcus senilis, Vogt's white limbal girdle, Hassall-Henle bodies, Mosaic degeneration.
- II. Pathological degenerations. Fatty degeneration, amyloidosis, calcific degeneration, Salzmann's nodular degeneration, Furrow degeneration, spheroidal degeneration, Pellucid marginal degeneration, Terrien's marginal degeneration, Mooren's ulcer.

### I. AGE-RELATED CORNEAL DEGENERATIONS

#### Arcus senilis

Arcus senilis refers to an annular lipid infiltration of corneal periphery. This is an age-related change occurring bilaterally in 60% of persons between 40 and 60 years of age and in nearly all individuals over the age of 80. Sometimes, similar changes may occur in young persons (*arcus juvenilis*) which may or may not be associated with hyperlipidemia.

#### Clinical features

- The arcus starts in the superior and inferior quadrants and then progresses circumferentially to form a ring which is about 1 mm wide. Peripheral border of this ring opacity is sharp while central border is diffuse.

- This ring of opacity is separated from the limbus by a clear zone (the lucid interval of Vogt) (Fig. 6.18).
- Sometimes, there may be double ring of arcus.

#### Vogt's White Limbal Girdle

It is also an age-related change seen frequently in elderly people. It appears as bilateral chalky white opacities in the interpalpebral area both nasally and temporally. There may or may not be a clear area between opacity and the limbus. The opacity is at the level of Bowman's membrane.

#### Hassall-Henle Bodies

Hassall-Henle bodies are drop-like excrescences of hyaline material projecting into the anterior chamber around the corneal periphery. These arise from Descemet's membrane. These form the commonest senile change seen in the cornea. In pathological conditions, they become larger and invade the central area and the condition is called cornea guttata.

### II. PATHOLOGICAL CORNEAL DEGENERATIONS

#### Fatty Degeneration (Lipoid Keratopathy)

Fatty degeneration of cornea is characterised by whitish or yellowish deposits. The fat deposits mostly consist of cholesterol and fatty acids. Initially fat deposits are intracellular but some become extracellular with necrosis of stromal cells. Lipid keratopathy can be primary or secondary.

1. Primary lipid keratopathy is a rare condition which occurs in a cornea free of vascularization. Serum lipid levels are normal in such patients.
2. Secondary lipid keratopathy occurs in vascularised cornea secondary to diseases such as corneal infections, interstitial keratitis, ocular trauma, glaucoma, and chronic iridocyclitis.

**Treatment** is usually unsatisfactory. In some cases, slow resorption of lipid infiltrate can be induced



Fig. 6.18 Arcus senilis



by argon laser photocoagulation of the new blood vessels.

### Hyaline Degeneration

Hyaline degeneration of cornea is characterised by deposition of hyaline spherules in the superficial stroma and can be primary or secondary.

1. **Primary hyaline degeneration** is bilateral and noted in association with granular dystrophy.
2. **Secondary hyaline degeneration** is unilateral and associated with various types of corneal diseases including old keratitis, long-standing glaucoma, trachomatous pannus. It may be complicated by recurrent corneal erosions.

**Treatment** of the condition when it causes visual disturbance is keratoplasty.

### Amyloid Degeneration

Amyloid degeneration of cornea is characterised by deposition of amyloid material underneath its epithelium. It is very rare condition and occurs in primary (in a healthy cornea) and secondary forms (in a diseased cornea).

### Calcific Degeneration (Band Shape Keratopathy)

Band shape keratopathy (BSK) is essentially a degenerative change associated with deposition of calcium salts in Bowman's membrane, most superficial part of stroma and in deeper layers of epithelium.

#### Etiology

- **Idiopathic or primary BSK** is familial.
- **Age-related BSK** is common and affects otherwise healthy cornea.
- **Chronic Ocular diseases** (most common cause) complicated by band keratopathy include chronic uveitis in adults, children with Still's disease, phthisis bulbi, chronic glaucoma, chronic keratitis and ocular trauma.
- **Conditions associated with hypercalcaemia** such as hypercalcaemia, hyperphosphataemia, hyperuricaemia, chronic renal failure and sarcoidosis may also be the cause of BSK.

#### Clinical features

It typically presents as a band-shaped opacity in the interpalpebral zone with a clear interval between the ends of the band and the limbus (Fig. 6.19). The condition begins at the periphery and gradually progresses towards the centre. The opacity is beneath the epithelium which usually remains intact. Surface of this opaque band is stippled due to holes in the calcium plaques in the area of nerve canals of



Fig. 6.19 Band-shaped keratopathy in a patient with chronic uveitis

Bowman's membrane. In later stages, transparent clefts due to cracks or tears in the calcium plaques may also be seen.

#### Treatment

1. **Chelation**, i.e. chemical removal of deposited calcium salts is an effective treatment. First of all, corneal epithelium is scraped under local anaesthesia. Then 0.01 molar solution of EDTA (chelating agent) is applied to the denuded cornea with the help of a cotton swab for about 10 minutes. This removes most of the deposited calcium. Pad and bandage is then applied for 2-3 days to allow the epithelium to regenerate.
2. **Phototherapeutic keratectomy (PTK)** with excimer laser is very effective in clearing the cornea.
3. **Keratoplasty** may be performed when the band keratopathy is obscuring useful vision.
4. **Treatment of underlying causative disease.**

### Salzmann's Nodular Degeneration

**Etiology.** This condition occurs in eyes with recurrent attacks of phlyctenular keratitis, rosacea keratitis and trachoma. The condition occurs more commonly in women and is usually unilateral.

**Pathogenesis.** In Salzmann's nodular degeneration, raised hyaline plaques are deposited between epithelium and Bowman's membrane. There is associated destruction of Bowman's membrane and the adjacent stroma.

**Clinical features.** Clinically, one to ten bluish white elevations (nodules), arranged in a circular fashion, are seen within the cornea (Fig. 6.20). Patient may experience discomfort due to loss of epithelium from the surface of nodules. Visual loss occurs when nodules impinge on the central zone.

**Treatment** is essentially by keratoplasty.





Fig. 6.20 Salzmann's nodular degeneration

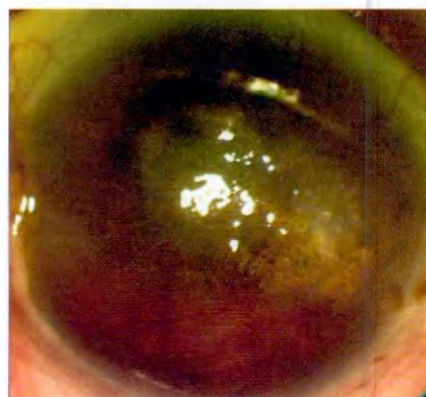


Fig. 6.21 Spheroid corneal degeneration

### Furrow Degeneration (Senile Marginal Degeneration)

In this condition, thinning occurs at the periphery of cornea leading to formation of a furrow. In the presence of arcus senilis, the furrow occupies the area of lucid interval of Vogt. Thinning occurs due to fibrillar degeneration of the stroma.

Patient develops defective vision due to induced astigmatism.

**Treatment** is usually not necessary.

### Spheroid Degeneration

(Climatic droplet keratopathy/Labrador keratopathy/Bietti's nodular dystrophy)/corneal elastosis).

**Etiology.** It typically occurs in men who work outdoors, especially in hostile climates. Its occurrence has been related to exposure to ultraviolet rays and/or ageing and/or corneal disease.

**Clinical features.** In this condition, amber-coloured spheroidal granules (small droplets) accumulate at the level of Bowman's membrane and anterior stroma in the interpalpebral zone (Fig. 6.21). In marked degeneration, the vision is affected.

**Treatment** in advanced cases is by corneal transplantation.

### Pellucid Marginal Degeneration

It is characterised by corneal thinning involving the periphery of lower cornea. It induces marked astigmatism which is corrected by scleral type contact lenses.

### Terrien's Marginal Degeneration

Terrien's marginal degeneration is non-ulcerative thinning of the marginal cornea.

**Clinical features** are as follows:

1. Predominantly affects males usually after 40 years of age.

2. Mostly involves superior peripheral cornea.
3. Initial lesion is asymptomatic corneal opacification separated from limbus by a clear zone.
4. The lesion progresses very slowly over many years with thinning and superficial vascularization. Dense yellowish white deposits may be seen at the sharp leading edge (Fig. 6.22). Patient experiences irritation and defective vision (due to astigmatism).

**Complications** such as perforation (due to mild trauma) and pseudopterygia may develop.

**Treatment** is non-specific. In severe thinning, a patch of corneal graft may be required.

## CORNEAL DYSTROPHIES 3m

Corneal dystrophy refers to a group of disorders characterized by the non-inflammatory, inherited, bilateral opacity of the cornea with no vascularisation. In corneal dystrophies, the cells have some inborn defects due to which pathological changes may occur with passage of time leading to development of corneal haze in otherwise normal eyes that are



Fig. 6.22 Terrien's marginal degeneration



free from inflammation or vascularization. There is no associated systemic disease. Dystrophies occur bilaterally, manifesting occasionally at birth, but more usually during first or second decade and sometimes even later in life.

**Note.** Recent studies have revealed that all the above definitions are not true for every type of corneal dystrophy. However, the International Committee for Classification of Corneal Dystrophies (2008) has decided to continue with the above given customary definition of corneal dystrophies.

### Classification

The International Committee for Classification of Corneal Dystrophies (IC3D) in 2008 has proposed a new classification of corneal dystrophies, which in addition to the anatomic basis (site primarily involved) also incorporates the current clinical, pathological and genetic basis. Therefore, dystrophies with a common genetic basis, i.e. **TGFB1 dystrophies** have been grouped together (irrespective of the primary location of the lesion). The new IC3D classification of corneal dystrophies is as below:

#### I. Epithelial and subepithelial dystrophies

1. Epithelial basement membrane dystrophy (EBMD).
2. Epithelial recurrent erosion dystrophy (ERED).
3. Subepithelial mucinous corneal dystrophy (SMCD).
4. Mutation in keratin genes: Meesmann corneal dystrophy (MECD).
5. Lisch epithelial corneal dystrophy (LECD).
6. Gelatinous drop-like corneal dystrophy (GDLD).

#### II. Bowman layer dystrophies

1. Reis-Bucklers corneal dystrophy (RBCD) Granular corneal dystrophy type 3.
2. Thiel-Behnke corneal dystrophy (TBCD).
3. Grayson-Wilbrandt corneal dystrophy (GWCD).

#### III. Stromal dystrophies

1. TGF $\beta$ 1 corneal dystrophies
  - a. Lattice corneal dystrophy
    - i. Classic lattice corneal dystrophy 1 (LCD 1)
    - ii. Lattice corneal dystrophy, gelsolin type 2 (LCD 2)
  - b. Granular corneal dystrophy
    - i. Granular corneal dystrophy, type 1 (classic) (GCD 1)
    - ii. Granular corneal dystrophy, type 2 (granular lattice) (GCD 2)
    - iii. Granular corneal dystrophy, type 3 (GCD 3)
2. Macular corneal dystrophy (MCD).

3. Schnyder corneal dystrophy (SCD).
4. Congenital stromal corneal dystrophy (CSCD).
5. Fleck corneal dystrophy (FCD).
6. Posterior amorphous corneal dystrophy (PACD).
7. Central cloudy dystrophy of Francois (CCDF).
8. Pre-Descemet corneal dystrophy (PDCD).

#### IV. Descemet membrane and endothelial dystrophies

1. Fuchs endothelial corneal dystrophy (FECD).
2. Posterior polymorphous corneal dystrophy (PPCD).
3. Congenital hereditary endothelial dystrophy 1 (CHED 1).
4. Congenital hereditary endothelial dystrophy 2 (CHED 2).
5. X-linked endothelial corneal dystrophy (XECD).

#### Note.

- Epithelial basement membrane dystrophy is the most common anterior corneal dystrophy.
- Lattice dystrophy is the most common stromal corneal dystrophy (lattice type I is the commonest type dystrophy).
- Fuchs endothelial dystrophy is the most common posterior dystrophy.

### I. EPITHELIAL AND SUBEPITHELIAL DYSTROPHIES

#### 1. Epithelial Basement Membrane Dystrophy

Epithelial basement membrane dystrophy (EBMD) is also known as **map-dot-fingerprint dystrophy** or **Cogan microcystic epithelial dystrophy** or **anterior basement membrane dystrophy**.

**Inheritance.** Most cases have no inheritance documented.

**Genetic locus and gene** are 5q31 and TGF $\beta$ 1, respectively.

**Onset, course and symptoms.** Presents in adult life, rarely seen in children. Asymptomatic or recurrent erosions with pain, lacrimation and blurred vision are observed. Except for the bleb pattern, on-axis lesions may also cause blurred vision due to irregular astigmatism. Location and degree of pathology can fluctuate with time.

**Signs.** Typical lesions include (Fig. 6.23):

- **Maps.** Irregular islands of thickened, grey, hazy epithelium with scalloped, circumscribed borders, particularly affecting the central or paracentral cornea. Isolated or combined with other signs.
- **Dots (Cogan).** Irregular round, oval or comma-shaped, non-staining, putty-grey opacities.





Fig. 6.23 Epithelial basement membrane dystrophy

Clustered like an archipelago in the central cornea. Typically combined with other signs, especially with maps.

- **Fingerprint lines.** Parallel, curvilinear lines, usually paracentral, best seen in retroillumination. They may be isolated or combined with other signs, especially maps.
- **Bleb pattern (Bron).** A subepithelial pattern like pebbled glass, best seen by retroillumination. Isolated or combined with other signs.

**Note.** Poor adhesion of basal epithelial cells to abnormal basal laminar material is thought predisposition to recurrent erosions.

## 2. Epithelial Recurrent Erosion Dystrophy

**Onset and course.** Epithelial recurrent erosion dystrophy (ERED), also known as corneal erosions or recurring hereditary dystrophy, usually occurs in first decade of life.

**Inheritance** is autosomal dominant.

**Genetic locus and gene** involved are unknown.

**Onset and course.** Recurrent corneal erosions appear typically at 4–6 years of age but occasionally as early as 8 months of age. Attacks generally decline in frequency in intensity and cease by the age of 50 years.

**Signs** include (Fig. 6.24):

- **Corneal erosions** are seen during the attack recurrent corneal erosions appear typically at 4–6 years of age but occasionally as early as 8 months of age. Attacks generally decline in frequency and intensity and cease by the age of 50 years.
- **Subepithelial haze or blebs** may be seen between the attacks.
- **Central subepithelial corneal opacities**, may appear as early as 7 years of age. These vary from subepithelial fibrosis to protruding keloid-like nodules.

**Symptoms** are precipitated by minimal trauma or occur spontaneously and are in the form of

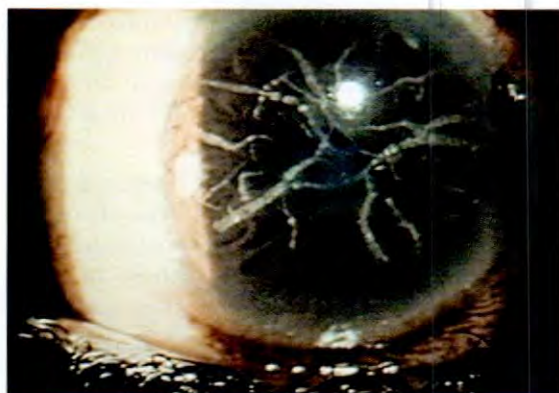


Fig. 6.24 Lattice corneal dystrophy

attacks of redness, photophobia, epiphora and ocular pain.

**Treatment.** About 25% of the patients may eventually need corneal grafts at the mean age of 45 years.

## 3. Subepithelial Mucinous Corneal Dystrophy

**Inheritance** is autosomal dominant.

**Genetic locus and gene** is unknown.

**Onset and course.** Onset is in the first decade of life and progressive loss of vision occurs in adolescence.

**Signs** include bilateral subepithelial opacities and haze, most dense centrally, involving the entire cornea.

**Symptoms** include painful episodes of recurrent corneal erosions, which decrease during adolescence.

## 4. Mutations in Keratin Genes: Meesmann Corneal Dystrophy

**Onset and course.** Meesmann corneal dystrophy (MECD) also known as juvenile hereditary epithelial dystrophy occurs in early childhood and the condition is slowly progressive. Its variant is Stocker-Holt dystrophy.

**Inheritance** is autosomal dominant.

**Genetic loci** are 12q13 (KRT3) and 17q12 (KRT 12) for Stocker-Holt variant.

**Genes** involved are Keratin K3 (KRT3) and Keratin K12 (KRT12) for Stocker-Holt variant.

**Signs.** Characteristic lesions include:

- **Multiple, tiny epithelial vesicles** which extend to the limbus and are most numerous in the interpalpebral area with clear surrounding epithelium.
- **Whorled and wedge-shaped epithelial patterns** have also been reported.
- **Corneal thinning** and **reduction in corneal sensation** may be noted.
- **In Stocker-Holt variant**, the entire cornea demonstrates fine, greyish punctate epithelial



opacities that stain with fluorescein and fine linear opacities that may appear in a whorl pattern.

**Symptoms.** Patients are typically asymptomatic or may have mild visual reduction, although some patients complain of glare and light sensitivity. Recurrent painful punctiform epithelial erosions may occur. Rarely, blurred vision results from corneal irregularity and scarring.

### 5. Lisch Epithelial Corneal Dystrophy

**Onset and course.** Lisch epithelial corneal dystrophy (LECD) also known as band-shaped and whorled microcystic dystrophy of the corneal epithelium occurs in childhood and there occurs slow progression of opacities with possible deterioration in vision.

**Inheritance** is X-chromosomal dominant.

**Signs** are as below.

- **Direct illumination** shows localized grey opacities in different patterns: whorl-like, radial, band-shaped, flame/feathery shaped, and club shaped.
- **Indirect illumination** demonstrates multiple, densely crowded clear cysts with clear surrounding epithelium.

**Symptoms.** The condition is asymptomatic, blurring of vision occurs if the pupillary zone is involved.

### 6. Gelatinous Drop-Like Corneal Dystrophy (GDLD)

**Onset and course.** Gelatinous drop-like corneal dystrophy (GDLD) also known as subepithelial amyloidosis or primary familial amyloidosis (Grayson) occurs in the first decade of life and the condition is progressive.

**Genetic locus** is 1p32 and **gene** involved is tumour-associated calcium signal transducer 2 (TACSTD2)

**Inheritance** is autosomal recessive.

**Signs** include:

- **Subepithelial lesions** which appear initially may be similar to band-shaped keratopathy or there may be groups of small multiple nodules, that is, mulberry configuration.
- **Superficial vascularization** is frequently seen.
- **Stromal opacification or larger nodular lesions**, that is, kumquat-like lesions may appear in later life.

**Symptoms** include significant decrease in vision, photophobia, irritation, redness, and tearing.

## ■ II. BOWMAN LAYER DYSTROPHIES

### 1. Reis-Bucklers Corneal Dystrophy

**Onset and course.** Reis-Bucklers corneal dystrophy (RBCD) also known as corneal dystrophy of Bowman layer, type I (CDB I) or geographic corneal dystrophy (Weidle), occurs in childhood and causes slowly progressive deterioration of vision.

**Genetic locus** is 5q31 and the **gene** involved is TGFB1.

**Inheritance** is autosomal dominant.

**Signs** include confluent irregular and coarse geographic-like opacities with varying densities which develop at the level of Bowman layer and superficial stroma, initially separated from one another. Opacities may extend to the limbus and deeper stroma with time.

**Symptoms.** Vision is impaired from childhood. Recurrent corneal erosions cause ocular discomfort and pain in the first decade but may become less severe from the end of the second decade.

### 2. Thiel-Behnke Corneal Dystrophy

**Onset and course.** Thiel-Behnke corneal dystrophy (TBCD) also known as corneal dystrophy of Bowman layer, type II (CDB2) or honeycomb-shaped corneal dystrophy occurs in childhood and causes slowly progressive deterioration of vision.

**Genetic locus** is 5q31 and the **gene** involved is TGFB1.

**Inheritance** is autosomal dominant.

**Onset and course.** Occurs in childhood and there occurs slowly progressive deterioration of vision from increasing corneal opacification.

**Signs** include symmetrical subepithelial reticular (honeycomb) opacities with peripheral cornea typically uninvolved, which can progress to deep stromal layers and corneal periphery.

**Symptoms.** Recurrent corneal erosions cause ocular discomfort and pain in the first and second decade. Gradual visual impairment develops later.

### 3. Grayson-Wilbrandt Corneal Dystrophy (GWCD)

**Onset and Course.** Occurs during first to second decade of life and the condition is progressive.

**Inheritance** is autosomal dominant.

**Signs.** Bowman layer demonstrates variable patterns of opacification from diffuse mottling to diffuse grey-white opacities, which extend anteriorly into the epithelium. The cornea between the deposits is clear. Refractile bodies are described in corneal stroma.

**Symptoms.** Decreased to normal visual acuity. Recurrent corneal erosions may cause ocular discomfort and pain.

## ■ III. STROMAL CORNEAL DYSTROPHIES

### 1. TGFB1 Corneal Dystrophies

These include:

A. **Lattice corneal dystrophy**, which is of two types:

- i. **Classic lattice corneal dystrophy (LCD1)**
- ii. **Lattice corneal dystrophy, gelsolin type (LCD2)**



**B. Granular corneal dystrophy, which is of three types:**

- i. Granular corneal dystrophy, type 1 (classic) (GCD1)
- ii. Granular corneal dystrophy, type 2 (granular lattice) (GCD2)
- iii. Granular corneal dystrophy, type 3 (GCD3).

**A. Lattice Corneal Dystrophy****i. Classical lattice corneal dystrophy:**

Classic lattice corneal dystrophy (LCD1) is also known as Biber-Haab-Dimmer dystrophy.

Genetic locus is 5q31 and the gene involved is TGFB1.

Inheritance is autosomal dominant.

Onset, symptoms and course. It appears at the age of 2 years and the condition is progressive. Recurrent erosions are frequent and ocular discomfort and pain occurs sometimes starting as early as in the first decade of life. Progressive clouding of central cornea is apparent by the age of 20 years. Soon, visual acuity is impaired. Usually penetrating keratoplasty is required by the age of 30–40 years.

Signs. The disease is characterised by branching spider-like amyloid deposits forming an irregular lattice work in the corneal stroma, sparing the periphery (See Fig. 6.24). The number of lattice lines may differ between the 2 eyes and the dystrophy may be difficult to diagnose in some younger patients.

**ii. Lattice corneal dystrophy, Gelsolin Type (LCD2)**  
Lattice corneal dystrophy, Gelsolin type is also known as Familial amyloidosis of Finnish (FAF) or Meretoja syndrome.

Genetic locus is 9q34 and the gene involved is Gelsolin GSN.

Inheritance is autosomal dominant.

Onset and course. Onset occurs in third to fourth decade of life, the condition is slowly progressive and the majority of patients are in good health even in the seventh decade.

Signs include:

- Lattice lines appear in the corneal stroma (spreading centripetally from the limbus) which are more peripheral and less numerous than those of lattice dystrophy, type 1. The central cornea is relatively spared.
- Corneal sensitivity is reduced or absent.

Symptoms include:

- Dry eye symptoms are frequent, and corneal erosions may occur late in life.
- Visual acuity is usually normal until the sixth decade because the dystrophy progresses from the peripheral to central cornea.

**B. Granular Dystrophy****i. Granular corneal dystrophy, Type 1 (Classic) (GCD1)**

Onset and course. Granular corneal dystrophy, Type 1 (Classic) (GCD 1), also known Corneal dystrophy Groenouw type 1 occurs in childhood, may be seen as early as 2 years of age. As the condition progresses, the opacities become more confluent in the superficial cornea.

Genetic locus is 5q31 and the gene involved is TGFB1.

Inheritance is autosomal dominant.

Signs. The condition is characterised by (Fig. 6.25) milky granular hyaline deposits in anterior stroma. Intervening stroma is clear. Opacities do not extend to the limbus. In children, there may be a vortex pattern of brownish granules superficial to Bowman layer. In later life, granules may extend into the deeper stroma down to Descemet membrane.

Symptoms include:

- Glare and photophobia are early symptoms.
- Recurrent erosions occur frequently causing ocular discomfort, pain and watering.
- Visual acuity decreases as opacification progresses with age.

**ii. Granular corneal dystrophy, Type 2 (Granular-Lattice) (GCD2)**

Onset and course. Granular corneal dystrophy, Type 2 (Granular-Lattice) (GCD2) also known as combined granular-lattice corneal dystrophy or Avellino corneal dystrophy, occurs in first decade, may be as early as 3 years of age and the condition is generally progressive.

Genetic locus is 5q31 and gene involved is TGFB1.

Inheritance is autosomal dominant.

Signs include:

- Subtle superficial stromal tiny whitish dots are initial lesions.

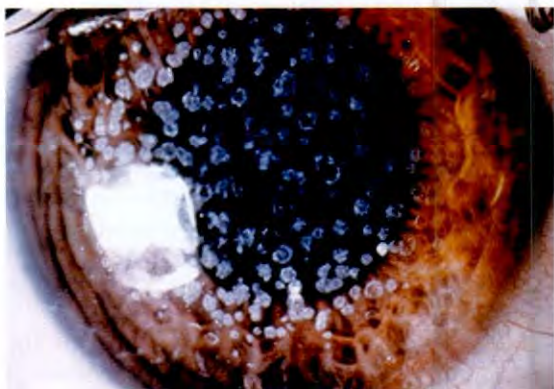


Fig. 6.25 Granular corneal dystrophy type 1



- Rings or stellate-shaped snowflake stromal opacities appearing between the superficial stroma and the mid stroma are next lesions.
- Lattice lines in deeper cornea may be seen in some patients. Typically, these lines are located deeper than the snowflake stromal opacity.
- Superficial, translucent flattened breadcrumb opacities are seen in the final stages, which may coalesce in the anterior stroma.

**Symptoms** include:

- Vision decreases with age as the central visual axis becomes affected.
- Pain and ocular discomfort may accompany mild corneal erosions.

## 2. Macular Corneal Dystrophy

**Onset and course.** Macular corneal dystrophy (MCD), also known as Groenouw corneal dystrophy type II or Fehr spotted dystrophy, occurs in childhood and is slowly progressive.

**Genetic locus** is 16q22 and **gene** involved is carbohydrate sulfotransferase 6 gene—CHST6.

**Inheritance** is autosomal recessive.

**Signs** include:

- Diffuse stromal haze extending to the limbus is the initial lesion.
- Macules, i.e. superficial, central, elevated, irregular whitish opacities develop later and give the condition its name (Fig. 6.26).
- Posterior peripheral white lesions are also seen.
- Corneal sensitivity is reduced.

**Symptoms** include:

- Recurrent corneal erosions cause photophobia and pain.
- Visual impairment, usually severe, occurs between 10 and 30 years of age.



Fig. 6.26 Macular corneal dystrophy

## 3. Schnyder Corneal Dystrophy

Schnyder corneal dystrophy (SCD) is also known as hereditary crystalline stromal dystrophy of Schnyder. Affected patients and non-affected members of the pedigrees may have hyperlipoproteinemia.

**Genetic locus** is 1 p36 and the **gene** involved is UbiA prenyltransferase domain containing 1—UBIAD1.

**Inheritance** is autosomal dominant.

**Onset and course.** The dystrophy appears in early infancy or at birth or sometimes in the first decade of life. It is slowly progressive and usually asymptomatic.

**Signs** include:

- Round ring-shaped central corneal stromal opacities due to deposition of fine needle-like cholesterol crystals, which may be white to yellow or polychromatic in colour are characteristic lesions.
- Corneal sensations decrease with age.

**Symptoms** include:

- Visual acuity progressively decreases with age. Although scotopic vision may be remarkably good, photopic vision may be disproportionately decreased.
- Glare which increase with age.

## 4. Congenital Stromal Corneal Dystrophy

**Onset and course.** Congenital stromal corneal dystrophy (CSCD), also known as congenital hereditary stromal dystrophy occurs congenitally and is a nonprogressive or slowly progressive condition.

**Genetic locus** is 12q21.33 and the **gene** involved is decorin—DCN.

**Inheritance** is autosomal dominant.

**Signs and symptoms.** The characteristic lesions are diffuse, bilateral, corneal clouding with flake-like, whitish stromal opacities throughout the stroma, causing moderate to severe visual loss.

## 5. Fleck Corneal Dystrophy

**Onset and course.** Fleck corneal dystrophy (FCD) also known as Francois-Neetens speckled corneal dystrophy occurs congenitally and is a non-progressive condition.

**Gene locus** is 2q35 and the gene involved is phosphatidylinositol-3-phosphate/phosphatidylinositol 5-Kinase type III—PIP5K3.

**Inheritance** is autosomal dominant.

**Signs and symptoms.** The condition is asymptomatic characterized by small, translucent, discoid opacities or discrete, flat, grey-white, dandruff-like (sometimes ring-shaped) opacities scattered sparsely throughout any level of the otherwise clear stroma.



## 6. Posterior Amorphous Corneal Dystrophy

**Onset and course.** Posterior amorphous corneal dystrophy (PACD), also known as Posterior amorphous stromal dystrophy, often occurs in the first decade of life. It has been noted as early as 16 weeks, suggesting a congenital nature. The condition is non or slowly progressive.

**Inheritance** is autosomal dominant.

**Signs and symptoms.** It presents as diffuse grey-white, sheet-like opacities that can involve any layer of the stroma but are most prominent posteriorly. The condition is largely asymptomatic except for mild decrease in visual acuity (usually better than 6/12).

## 7. Central Cloudy Dystrophy of Francois

**Onset and course.** Central cloudy dystrophy of Francois (CCDF) occurs in first decade and is non-progressive.

**Inheritance** is unknown.

**Signs and symptoms.** The condition is mostly asymptomatic and is characterized by cloudy central polygonal or rounded stromal opacities that fade anteriorly and peripherally and are surrounded by clear tissue.

## 8. Pre-Descemet Corneal Dystrophy

**Onset and course.** Onset usually occurs after 30 years of age but has been found in children as young as 3 years. The condition is usually non-progressive, some conditions may show progression.

**Inheritance** is unknown.

**Signs and symptoms.** The condition is usually asymptomatic and is characterized by focal, fine, grey opacities in the deep stroma immediately anterior to Descemet membrane with a variety of shapes.

## IV. DESCMET MEMBRANE AND ENDOTHELIAL CORNEAL DYSTROPHIES

### 1. Fuchs Endothelial Corneal Dystrophy

**Onset and course.** Fuchs endothelial corneal dystrophy (FECD), also known as endoepithelial corneal dystrophy, is frequently seen as a slowly progressive bilateral condition affecting females more than males (F:M::4:1), usually between fifth and seventh decade of life. Primary open angle glaucoma is its common association.

**Inheritance.** It may be autosomal dominant or sporadic (more common) in nature.

**Genetic locus** is 13p. No gene has been associated.

**Clinical features** can be divided into following four stages:

1. **Stage of cornea guttata.** It is characterised by the presence of Hassall-Henle type of excrescences in the central part of cornea. A gradual increase of central guttae with peripheral spread and confluence gives rise to the so called 'beaten-metal' appearance. This stage is asymptomatic.

2. **Oedematous stage or stage of endothelial decompensation** (Fig. 6.27) is characterised by the occurrence of early stromal oedema and epithelial dystrophy. Patients complaint of blurring vision.

3. **Stage of bullous keratopathy.** This stage follows long-standing stromal oedema and is characterised by marked epithelial oedema with formation of bullae, when rupture cause pain, discomfort and irritation with associated decreased visual acuity.

4. **Stage of scarring.** In this stage, epithelial bullae are replaced by scar tissue and cornea becomes opaque and vascularized. The condition may sometimes be complicated by occurrence of secondary infection or glaucoma.

**Specular microscopy** reveals decreased endothelial cell count, increased average cell diameter, decreased hexagons and increased variation in cell size.

**Treatment** is as follows:

1. **Hypertonic saline:** (5% sodium chloride) may be of some use in early oedematous stage.
2. **Warm air blown on the eyes** (e.g. hair dryer) helps in reducing oedema.
3. **Intraocular pressure lowering drugs,** e.g. 0.5% timolol or others should be used to treat associated ocular hypertension.
4. **Bandage soft contact lenses** provide some relief from disturbing symptoms in bullous keratopathy stage.
5. **Penetrating keratoplasty** is the treatment of choice when the visual acuity is reduced markedly.

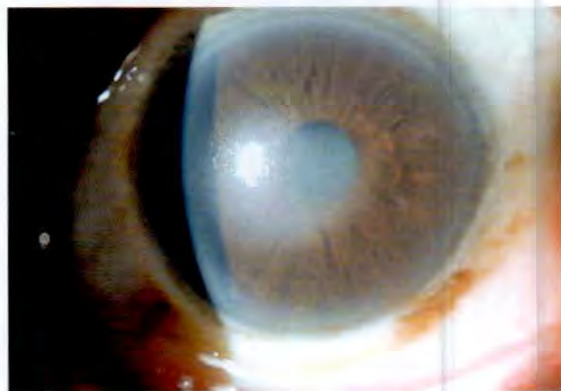


Fig. 6.27 Fuchs endothelial corneal dystrophy



## 2. Posterior Polymorphous Corneal Dystrophy (PPCD)

**Onset and course.** Posterior polymorphous corneal dystrophy (PPCD) also known as Schlichting dystrophy occurs in early childhood and is very slowly progressive.

**Inheritance** is autosomal dominant.

**Genetic Loci** are PPCD 1—20p 1-1.2q 1-1.2; PPCD 2—1 p34.3—p32.3; PPCD 3—10p 1-1.2.

**Genes** involved are: PPCD 1—unknown; PPCD 2—collagen type VIII alpha 2, COL8A2 and PPCD 3—two-handed zinc-finger homeodomain transcription factor 8—ZEB 1.

**Signs and symptoms.** The condition is often asymptomatic. The signs include:

- **Deep corneal lesions** of various shapes including nodular, vesicular (isolated, in clusters, or confluent) and blister-like lesions.
- **Railroad tracks appearance lesions** (multiple and isolated) (Fig. 6.28).
- **Varying grey tissue** at the level of Descemet membrane.

## 3. Congenital Hereditary Endothelial Dystrophy 1

**Onset and course.** Congenital hereditary endothelial dystrophy 1 (CHED 1) occurs in first or second year of life, occasionally congenital. Progression of corneal clouding occurs over 1-10 years.

**Genetic Locus** is 20p 1 1.2 q 1-1.2 (pericentromeric region) and **gene** is unknown.

**Inheritance** is autosomal dominant.

**Signs and symptoms** include:

- **Endothelial changes** in form of moon crater-like appearance and peau d'orange texture may be seen (Such patients are asymptomatic).
- **Corneal clouding** ranging from a diffuse haze to a ground-glass, milky appearance with occasional

focal grey spots causing blurred vision associated with photophobia and watering. Vision is characteristically worse in the morning.

- **Thickening of the cornea**, can be 2-3 times of normal thickness.
- **Subepithelial band keratopathy** may be seen occasionally.
- **IOP** may be elevated rarely.

## 4. Congenital Hereditary Endothelial Dystrophy 2

**Onset and course.** Congenital hereditary endothelial dystrophy 2 (CHED2) also called as Maumenee corneal dystrophy occurs congenitally and is a relatively stationary condition.

**Genetic locus** is 20p 13 (telomeric portion) and the **gene** involved is solute carrier family 4, sodium borate transporter, member 11—SLC4A 11.

**Inheritance** is autosomal recessive.

**Signs and symptoms** are similar to CHED 1 except:

- The condition is more common and severe than CHED 1.
- **Nystagmus** is often associated.

## 5. X-linked Endothelial Corneal Dystrophy

**Onset and course.** X-linked endothelial corneal dystrophy (XECD) occurs congenitally and is a progressive condition in males and non-progressive in females.

**Genetic locus** is Xq25 and the **gene** involved is unknown.

**Inheritance** is X-chromosomal dominant.

**Signs and symptoms** are as below:

**Male patients** have blurring of vision associated with:

- **Corneal clouding** since birth ranging from a diffuse haze to a ground-glass, milky appearance.
- **Moon crater-like endothelial changes.**
- **Subepithelial band keratopathy** combined with moon crater-like endothelial changes.
- **Nystagmus** may be associated.

**Female patients** are asymptomatic having only moon crater-like endothelial changes.

## ECTATIC CONDITIONS OF CORNEA

### ■ KERATOCONUS 5m

Keratoconus (conical cornea) (Figs 6.29A to C) is a progressive non-inflammatory bilateral (85%) ectatic condition of cornea in its axial part. It usually starts at puberty and progresses slowly.

### Etiopathogenesis

It is still not clear. Various theories proposed so far label it as developmental condition, degenerative condition, hereditary dystrophy and endocrine anomaly.



Fig. 6.28 Posterior polymorphous corneal dystrophy



**Essential pathological changes** are progressive thinning and ectasia which occur as a result of defective synthesis of mucopolysaccharide and collagen tissue.

### Clinical features

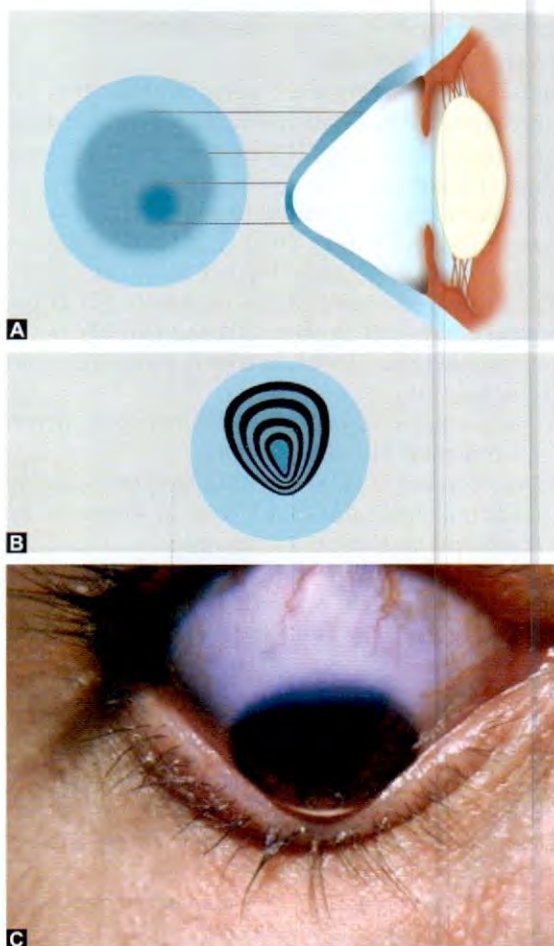
**Symptoms.** Patient presents with a defective vision primarily due to progressive myopia and irregular astigmatism, which does not improve fully despite full correction with glasses.

- **Vision becomes progressively more blurred and distorted** with associated glare, halos around lights, light sensitivity and ocular irritation.
- **Visual loss** occurs primarily from irregular astigmatism and myopia, and secondarily from corneal scarring.

**Signs.** The hallmark of keratoconus is central or paracentral stromal thinning, apical protrusion of anterior cornea and irregular astigmatism. The cornea thins near the centre and progressively bulges forwards, with the apex of cone always being slightly below the centre of the cornea. Following signs may be elicited on examination:

1. **Window reflex** on cornea is distorted.
2. **Placido disc examination** shows irregularity of the circles (Fig. 6.29B).
3. **Slit-lamp examination** may show thinning and ectasia of central cornea, opacity at the apex, **Fleischer's ring** at the base of cone, and folds in Descemet's and Bowman's membranes. Very fine, vertical, deep stromal striae (**Vogt lines**) which disappear with external pressure on the globe are peculiar feature.
4. **On retinoscopy** a yawning reflex (scissor reflex) and high oblique or irregular astigmatism is obtained.
5. **On distant direct ophthalmoscopy** an annular dark shadow (due to total internal reflection of light) is seen which separates the central and peripheral areas of cornea (oil droplet reflex).
6. **Munson's sign**, i.e. localised bulging of lower lid when patient looks down is positive in late stages (Fig. 6.29C).
7. **Keratometry.** Normal average keratometric values are 45 D. In keratoconus, keratometric values are increased and based on it the severity of keratoconus is graded as: mild (<48 D), moderate (48–54 D), and severe (>54 D).
8. **Corneal topography**, i.e. study of shape of corneal surface, is the most sensitive method for detecting early keratoconus, **Forme fruste** refers to the earliest subclinical form of keratoconus detected on topography.

**Morphological classification.** Depending upon the size and shape of the cone, the keratoconus is of three types:



**Fig. 6.29** Keratoconus showing: A, Diagrammatic depiction of configuration of cone-shaped cornea; B, Irregular circles on Placido disc examination; C, Clinical photograph (note Munson's sign)

- **Nipple cone** has a small size (<5 mm) and steep curvature.
- **Oval cone** is larger (5–6 mm) and ellipsoid in shape.
- **Globus cone** is very large (>6 mm) and globe like.

**Complications.** Keratoconus may be complicated by development of **acute hydrops** due to rupture of Descemet's membrane. The condition is characterized by sudden development of corneal oedema associated with marked defective vision, pain, photophobia and lacrimation.

**Associations.** Keratoconus may be associated with:

- **Ocular conditions**, e.g. ectopia lentis, congenital cataract, aniridia, retinitis pigmentosa, vernal keratoconjunctivitis (VKC), atopic keratoconjunctivitis, Leber's congenital amaurosis, floppy eyelid syndrome and corneal endothelial dystrophy.
- **Systemic conditions**, e.g. Marfan's syndrome, atopy, asthma, eczema, hay fever. Down's syndrome,



Ehlers-Danlos syndrome, osteogenesis imperfecta and mitral valve prolapse.

### Treatment

Treatment modalities include:

1. **Spectacle correction** may improve vision in early cases. However, later in the course of disease the falling vision may not be corrected by glasses due to irregular astigmatism.
2. **Contact lenses (rigid gas permeable)** usually improve the vision in early cases. In early to moderate cases, a especially designed **scleral contact lens (Rose-K)** may be useful.
3. **Intacs**, the intracorneal ring segments, are reported to be useful in early to moderate cases by the flattening affect.
4. **Corneal collagen cross linking with riboflavin (CXL or C3R)** and **UV-A rays** may slow the progression of disease.
5. **Keratoplasty** may be required in later stages. **Deep anterior lamellar keratoplasty (DALK)** or **penetrating keratoplasty (PK)** may be performed.

### ■ KERATOGLOBUS

It is a familial and hereditary bilateral congenital disorder characterised by thinning and hemispherical protrusion of the entire cornea (Fig. 6.30). It is non-progressive and inherited as an autosomal recessive trait. It must be differentiated from congenital buphthalmos, where increased corneal size is associated with raised intraocular pressure, angle anomaly and/or cupping of optic disc.

### ■ KERATOCONUS POSTERIOR

In this extremely rare condition, there is slight cone-like bulging of the posterior surface of the cornea. It is non-progressive.

## ABNORMALITIES OF CORNEAL TRANSPARENCY

Normal cornea is a transparent structure. Any condition which upsets its anatomy or physiology causes loss of its transparency to some degree.



Fig. 6.30 Keratoglobus

**Common causes** of loss of corneal transparency are:

- Corneal oedema
- Drying of cornea
- Depositions on cornea
- Inflammations of cornea
- Corneal degenerations
- Dystrophies of cornea
- Vascularization of cornea
- Scarring of cornea (corneal opacities).

Most of the conditions responsible for decreased transparency of cornea have been described earlier.

However, some important symptomatic conditions of the cornea such as corneal oedema, corneal opacity and vascularization of cornea are described here.

### ■ CORNEAL OEDEMA 5m

The water content of normal cornea is 78%. It is kept constant by a balance of factors which draw water in the cornea (e.g. intraocular pressure and swelling pressure of the stromal matrix = 60 mm of Hg) and the factors which draw water out of cornea (viz. the active pumping action of corneal endothelium, and the mechanical barrier action of epithelium and endothelium).

Disturbance of any of the above factors leads to corneal oedema, wherein its hydration becomes above 78%, central thickness increases and transparency reduces.

### Causes of corneal oedema

1. Raised intraocular pressure
2. Endothelial damage

- Due to injuries, such as birth trauma (forceps delivery), surgical trauma during intraocular operation, contusion injuries and penetrating injuries.
- Endothelial damage associated with corneal dystrophies such as, Fuchs dystrophy, congenital hereditary endothelial dystrophy and posterior polymorphous dystrophy.
- Endothelial damage secondary to inflammations such as uveitis, endophthalmitis and corneal graft infection.

### 3. Epithelial damage due to:

- Mechanical injuries,
- Chemical burns,
- Radiational injuries,
- Thermal injuries,
- Inflammation and infections.

### Clinical features

Initially, there occurs stromal haze with reduced vision. In long-standing cases with chronic endothelial failure (e.g. in Fuchs' dystrophy) there occurs permanent oedema with epithelial vesicles and bullae formation (bullous keratopathy).



This is associated with marked loss of vision, pain, discomfort and photophobia, due to periodic rupture of bullae.

### Treatment

1. **Treat the cause** wherever possible, e.g. raised IOP and ocular inflammations.
2. **Dehydration of cornea** may be tried by use of:
  - Hypertonic agents, e.g. 5% sodium chloride drops or ointments or anhydrous glycerine may provide sufficient dehydrating effect.
  - Hot forced air from hair dryer may be useful.
3. **Therapeutic soft contact lenses** may be used to get relief from discomfort of bullous keratopathy.
4. **Penetrating keratoplasty is required for long-standing cases** of corneal oedema, non-responsive to conservative therapy.

### ■ CORNEAL OPACITY 3m

The word 'corneal opacification' literally means loss of normal transparency of cornea, which can occur in many conditions. Therefore, the term 'corneal opacity' is used particularly for the loss of transparency of cornea due to scarring.

### Causes

1. **Congenital opacities** causes can be remembered by the mnemonic (STUMPED):
  - **S** Sclerocornea
  - **T** Tear in Descemet's membrane, Congenital glaucoma, birth trauma.
  - **U** Ulcer: HSV, bacterial, neurotropic.
  - **M** Mucopolysaccharidosis, Mucopolipidosis, Tyrosinosis.
  - **P** Posterior corneal defect: Peter's anomaly, posterior keratoconus.
  - **E** Endothelial dystrophy: Congenital hereditary posterior polymorphous.
  - **D** Dermoid
2. **Healed corneal wounds.**
3. **Healed corneal ulcers.**

### Clinical features

Corneal opacity may produce loss of vision (when dense opacity covers the pupillary area) or blurred vision (due to astigmatic effect).

### Types of corneal opacity

Depending on the density, corneal opacity is graded as nebula, macula and leucoma.

1. **Nebular corneal opacity.** It is a faint opacity which results due to superficial scars involving Bowman's layer and superficial stroma (Figs 6.31A and 6.32A).

A thin, diffuse nebula covering the pupillary area interferes more with vision than the localised leucoma away from pupillary area. Further, the nebula produces more discomfort to patient due to blurred image owing to irregular astigmatism than the leucoma which completely cuts off the light rays.

2. **Macular corneal opacity.** It is a semi-dense opacity produced when scarring involves about half the corneal stroma (Figs 6.31B and 6.32B).

3. **Leucomatous corneal opacity (leucoma simplex).** It is a dense white opacity which results due to scarring of more than half of the stroma (Figs 6.31C and 6.32C).

4. **Adherent leucoma.** It results when healing occurs after perforation of cornea with incarceration of iris (Figs 6.31D and 6.32D).

5. **Corneal facet.** Sometimes, the corneal surface is depressed at the site of healing (due to less fibrous tissue); such a scar is called facet.

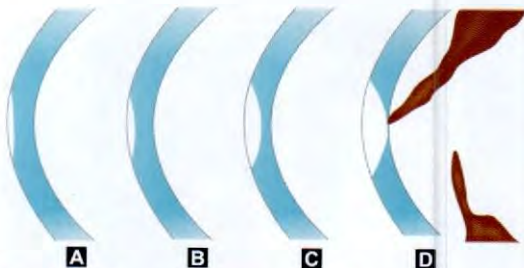
6. **Kerectasia.** In this condition, corneal curvature is increased at the site of opacity (bulge due to weak scar).

3m **Anterior staphyloma.** An ectasia of pseudocornea (the scar formed from organised exudates and fibrous tissue covered with epithelium) which results after total sloughing of cornea, with iris plastered behind it is called anterior staphyloma (Figs 6.33A and B).

**Secondary changes in corneal opacity** which may be seen in long-standing cases include: hyaline degeneration, calcareous degeneration, pigmentation and atheromatous ulceration.

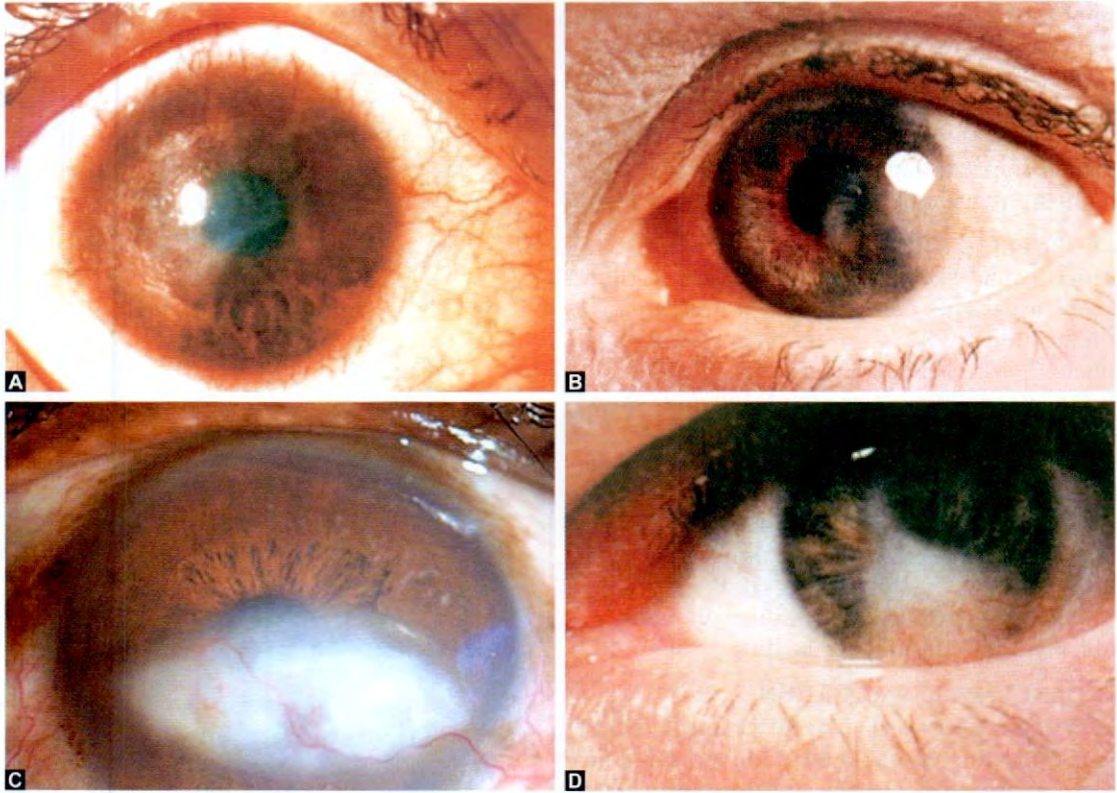
### Treatment

1. **Optical iridectomy.** It may be performed in cases with central macular or leucomatous corneal opacities, provided vision improves with pupillary dilatation.
2. **Phototherapeutic keratectomy (PTK)** performed with excimer laser is useful in superficial (nebular) corneal opacities.



**Fig. 6.31** Diagrammatic depiction of corneal opacity: A, Nebular; B, Macular; C, Leucomatous; D, Adherent leucoma





**Fig. 6.32** Clinical photographs of corneal opacity: A, Nebular; B, Macular; C, Leucomatous; D, Adherent leucoma



**Fig. 6.33** Anterior staphyloma: A, Diagrammatic cross-section; B, Clinical photograph

**3. Keratoplasty provides good visual results** in uncomplicated cases with corneal opacities, where optical iridectomy is not of much use.

**4. Cosmetic-coloured contact lens** gives very good cosmetic appearance in an eye with ugly scar having no potential for vision. **Presently, this is considered the best option**, even over and above the tattooing for cosmetic purpose.

**5. Tattooing of scar.** It was performed for cosmetic purposes in the past. It is suitable only for firm scars in a quiet eye without useful vision. For tattooing Indian black ink, gold or platinum may be used. To perform tattooing, first of all, the epithelium covering the opacity is removed under topical anaesthesia (2% or 4% xylocaine). Then a piece of blotting paper of same size and shape, soaked in 4% gold chloride



(for brown colour) or 2% platinum chloride (for dark colour) is applied over it. After 2–3 minutes, the piece of filter paper is removed and a few drops of freshly prepared 2% hydrazine hydrate solution are poured over it. Lastly, eye is irrigated with normal saline and patched after instilling antibiotic and atropine eye ointment. Epithelium grows over the pigmented area.

### ■ CORNEAL VERTICILLATA

- This is a whorl-like opacity in the corneal epithelium seen in patients on long-term treatment with medications such as amiodarone, chloroquine, phenothiazines and indomethacin.
- It is also seen in patients with Fabry disease and its carrier state.
- The whorl-like pattern shows the direction of migration of corneal epithelial cells. Occasionally, the condition had been known to cause glare and surface discomfort which responds to topical lubricants.
- The condition is generally asymptomatic, harmless and reversible on stopping the drug.

### ■ CORNEAL VASCULARIZATION

Normal cornea is avascular except for small capillary loops which are present in the periphery for about 1 mm. In pathological states, it can be invaded by vessels as a defence mechanism against the disease or injury. However, vascularization interferes with corneal transparency and occasionally may be a source of irritation.

#### Pathogenesis

Pathogenesis of corneal vascularization is still not clear. It is presumed that mechanical and chemical factors play a role.

Vascularization is normally prevented by the compactness of corneal tissue. Probably, due to some vasoformative stimulus (chemical factor) released during pathological states, there occurs proliferation of vessels which invade from the limbus; when compactness of corneal tissue is loosened (mechanical factor) due to oedema (which may be traumatic, inflammatory, nutritional, allergic or idiopathic in nature).

#### Clinico-etiological features

Clinically, corneal vascularization may be superficial or deep.

**1. Superficial corneal vascularization.** In it vessels are arranged usually in an arborising pattern, present below the epithelial layer and their continuity can be traced with the conjunctival vessels (Fig. 6.34A).

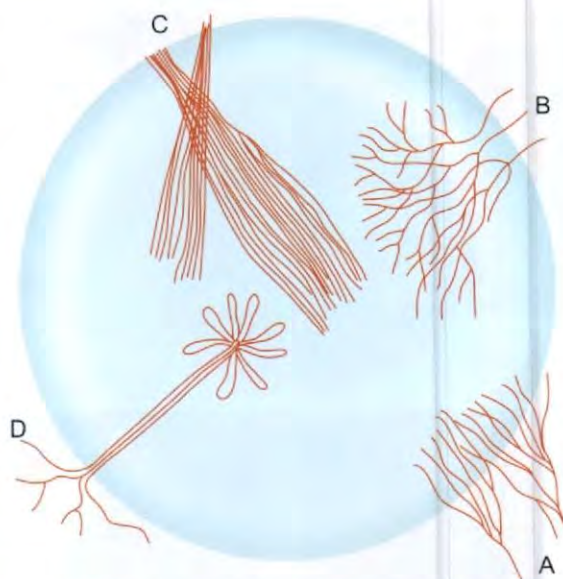


Fig. 6.34 Corneal vascularization: A, Superficial; B, Terminal loop type; C, Brush type; D, Umbel type

■ **Common causes** of superficial corneal vascularization are: trachoma, phlyctenular keratoconjunctivitis, superficial corneal ulcers, contact lens users and rosacea keratitis.

■ **Pannus.** When extensive superficial vascularization is associated with white cuff of cellular infiltration, it is termed as pannus. In progressive pannus, corneal infiltration is ahead of vessels while in regressive pannus it lags behind.

**2. Deep vascularization.** In this vessels are generally derived from anterior ciliary arteries and lie in the corneal stroma. These vessels are usually straight, not anastomosing and their continuity cannot be traced beyond the limbus. Deep vessels may be arranged as terminal loops (Fig. 6.34B), brush (Fig. 6.34C), parasol, umbel (Fig. 6.34D), network or interstitial arcade.

■ **Common causes** of deep vascularization are: interstitial keratitis, disciform keratitis, deep corneal ulcer, chemical burns, sclerosing keratitis and corneal grafts rejection.

#### Treatment

Treatment of corneal vascularization is usually unsatisfactory. Vascularization may be prevented by timely and adequate treatment of the causative conditions.

■ **Corticosteroids** may have vasoconstrictive and suppressive effect on permeability of capillaries.



- Application of **irradiation** is more useful in superficial than the deep vascularization.
- **Surgical treatment** in the form of peritomy may be employed for superficial vascularization.

## CORNEAL SURGERY

### ■ KERATOPLASTY 5m ⊕ Eye bank

Keratoplasty, also called **corneal grafting** or **corneal transplantation**, is an operation in which the patient's diseased cornea is replaced by the healthy clear cornea.

#### Types

**A. Autokeratoplasty**, which can be:

1. **Rotational keratoplasty**, in which patient's own cornea is trephined and rotated to transfer the pupillary area having a small corneal opacity to the periphery.

2. **Contralateral keratoplasty**. It is indicated when cornea of one eye of the patient is opaque and the other eye is blind due to posterior segment disease (e.g. **optic atrophy** and **retinal detachment**, etc.) with clear cornea. In contralateral autokeratoplasty, cornea of the two eyes are exchanged with each other.

**B. Allografting or Allo-keratoplasty**. In it, patient's diseased cornea is replaced by the donor's healthy cornea. It can be of following types:

1. **Penetrating Keratoplasty (PK)** (full-thickness-grafting)
2. **Lamellar Keratoplasty**, i.e. **LK** (partial-thickness grafting) which may be:

**Anterior lamellar keratoplasty (ALK)** is performed when endothelium and Descemet's membrane are normal. Depending upon the depth of dissection ALK can be:

- **Superficial anterior lamellar keratoplasty (SALK)**, which is performed for superficial corneal stromal haze.
- **Deep anterior lamellar keratoplasty (DAEK)** in which 80–90% of the anterior stroma is replaced.

**Posterior lamellar keratoplasty (PLK)** is performed when only endothelium is defective. It includes:

- **Deep lamellar endothelial keratoplasty (DLEK)**, and
- **Endothelial Keratoplasty (EK)**, which includes:
- Descemet's stripping endothelial keratoplasty (DSEK), done manually.
- Descemet's stripping automated endothelial keratoplasty (DSAEK).
- Descemet's membrane endothelial keratoplasty (DMEK).
- Pre-descemet's stripping automated endothelial keratoplasty (Pre-DSAEK).

3. **Small patch graft** (for small defects), which may be full thickness or partial thickness.

#### Indications after penetrating keratoplasty

3m

1. **Optical**, i.e. to improve vision. Important indications are: corneal opacity, bullous keratopathy, corneal dystrophies, advanced keratoconus.
2. **Therapeutic**, i.e. to replace inflamed cornea not responding to conventional therapy.
3. **Tectonic graft**, i.e. to restore integrity of eyeball, e.g. after corneal perforation and in marked corneal thinning.
4. **Cosmetic**, i.e. to improve the appearance of the eye.

#### Indications of endothelial keratoplasty (EK)

- Fuchs endothelial dystrophy
- Pseudophakic corneal edema
- Posterior polymorphous dystrophy
- Aphakic corneal edema
- Iridocorneal endothelium syndrome
- Failed corneal graft.

#### Donor tissue

The donor eye should be removed as early as possible (preferably within 6 hours of death. In countries with cold climate may take up to 12 hours). It should be stored under sterile conditions.

#### Evaluation of donor tissue include:

- **Biomicroscopic examination** of the whole globe, before processing the tissue for media storage, is very important. The donor corneal tissue is graded into excellent, very good, good, fair, and poor depending upon the condition of corneal epithelium, stroma, Descemet's membrane and endothelium (Table 6.1).
- **Specular microscopy** should be done for endothelial cell count and morphology.
- **Microbial evaluation by culture** from the conjunctival swab from the deceased is ideal.
- **Serological screening for HIV, hepatitis B, hepatitis C and syphilis** should be done from the blood collected from the deceased.

#### Methods of corneal preservation

1. **Short-term storage (24 hours to 96 hours) methods** include:

- **Moist chamber method**. The whole globe after enucleation can be preserved in a moist chamber at 4°C in a refrigerator upto 24 hours.
- **McCarey Kaufman (M-K) medium**. It is of pink colour and comprises of: Tissue culture (TC) — 199, 5%, Dextran-40, HEPES buffer (to adjust pH at 7.4), and gentamycin 0.1 mg/mL. Donor corneo-scleral



**Table 6.1** Grading of donor cornea on slit-lamp biomicroscopic examination

| Grade of donor corneal tissue |                        |                                   |                                     |                     |                    |
|-------------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| Parameter                     | Grade I<br>(Excellent) | Grade II<br>(Very good)           | Grade III<br>(Good)                 | Grade IV<br>(Fair)  | Grade V<br>(Poor)  |
| Epithelial defects and haze   | None                   | Slight epithelial haze or defects | Obvious moderate epithelial defects |                     |                    |
| Corneal stromal clarity       | Crystal clear          | Clear                             | Slight cloudiness                   | Moderate cloudiness | Marked cloudiness  |
| Arcus senilis                 | None                   | Slight                            | Moderate (<2.5 mm)                  | Heavy (>2.5–4 mm)   | Very heavy (>4 mm) |
| Descemet's membrane           | No folds               | Few shallow folds                 | Numerous shallow folds              | Numerous deep folds | Marked deep folds  |
| Endothelium                   | No defect              | No defect                         | Few vacuolated cells                | Moderate guttate    | Marked guttate     |

rim can be preserved in the M-K medium up to 96 hours. It is the **most commonly used method in India and world over**. Corneo-scleral rim can be excised in-situ from the cadaver or can be prepared in the laboratory from the enucleated eyeball (transported in moist chamber), and is immediately stored in the storage medium.

**2. Intermediate-term storage (up to 2 weeks)** of the donor corneo-scleral rim can be done in storage media such as **Optisol GS** (most commonly used preservative medium in USA). It comprises of 2.5% chondroitin sulphate, 1% dextran, ascorbic acid, vitamin B12, ATP precursors, and the antibiotics gentamycin and streptomycin.

**Other** similar media for intermediate storage available are Cornisol, Eusol and Life-GE medium.

**3. Long-term preservation (up to months to years) methods include:**

- **Glycerine preservation** can be done for 3–4 weeks.
- **Organ culture method** at 30°C to 37°C is useful for preservation up to 35 days.
- **Cryopreservation of corneal button** at –70°C can be done up to 1 year.

#### **Surgical technique of penetrating keratoplasty**

**1. Excision of donor corneal button.** The donor corneal button should be cut 0.25 mm larger than the recipient, taking care not to damage the endothelium. Donor cornea is placed in a tephlon block and the button is cut with the help of a trephine from the endothelial side (Fig. 6.35A).

**2. Excision of recipient corneal button.** With the help of a corneal trephine (7.5 mm to 8 mm in size) a partial thickness incision is made in the host cornea (Fig. 6.35B). Then, anterior chamber is entered with the

help of a razor blade knife and excision is completed using corneoscleral scissors (Fig. 6.35C).

**3. Suturing of corneal graft into the host bed** (Fig. 6.35D) is done with either continuous (Fig. 6.35E) or interrupted (Fig. 6.35F) 10–0 nylon sutures.

#### **Complications**

**1. Early complications.** These include flat anterior chamber, iris prolapse, infection, secondary glaucoma, epithelial defects and primary graft failure.

**2. Late complications.** These include graft rejection, recurrence of disease and astigmatism.

#### **Graft rejection**

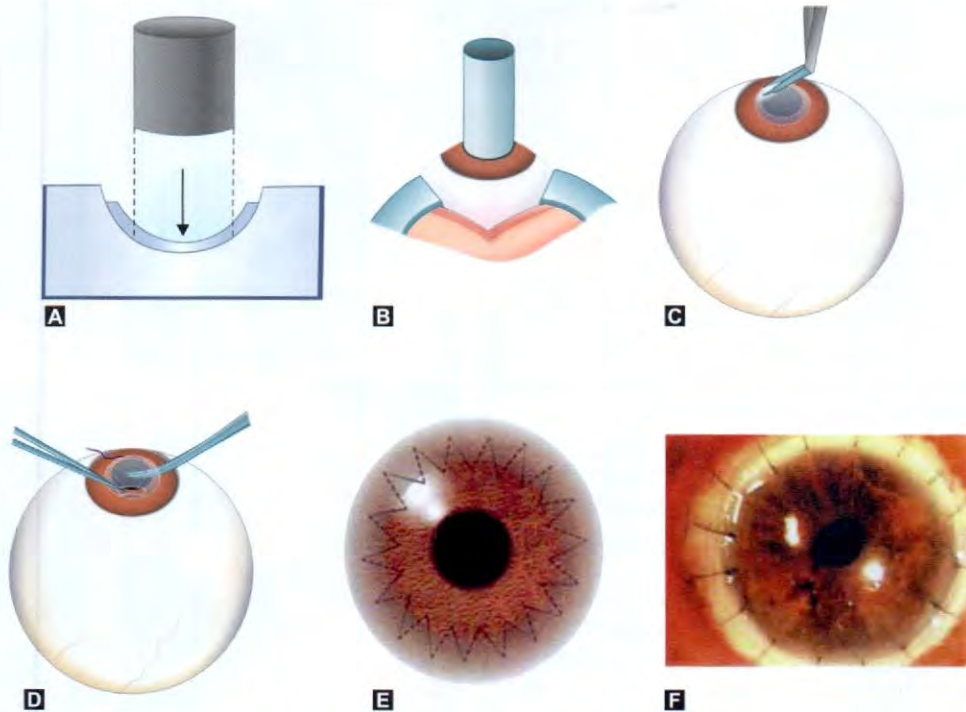
It refers to the immunological response of the host to the donor corneal tissue. It can occur as early as 2 weeks and up to several years after grafting. Graft rejection is classically believed to be a **delayed type of hypersensitivity response**.

**Risk factors** include younger age of recipient, previous graft failure, corneal vascularization, larger graft size, donor epithelium and massive blood transfusion.

**Clinical presentations** include:

- **Epithelial rejection** characterized by an elevated epithelial rejection line which stains with fluorescein.
- **Subepithelial infiltrates** known as Kayes dots.
- **Stromal rejection** is characterized by sudden onset of full thickness stromal haze in a previously clear graft.
- **Endothelial rejection** may present as:
- **Khodadoust line** demarcating healthy and damaged endothelium.
- **Diffuse endothelial rejection** with lot of keratic precipitates.





**Fig. 6.35** Technique of keratoplasty: A, Excision of donor corneal button; B and C, Excision of recipient corneal button; D, Suturing of donor button into recipient's bed; E, Showing pattern of continuous sutures in keratoplasty; F, Clinical photograph of a patient with interrupted sutures in keratoplasty

### ■ REFRACTIVE CORNEAL SURGERY

Refractive corneal surgery includes:

- Radial keratotomy (RK),
  - Astigmatic keratotomy (AK),
  - Photorefractive keratotomy (PRK),
  - Laser assisted in situ keratomileusis (LASIK) and its varieties,
  - Thermal laser keratoplasty (TLK),
  - Conductive keratoplasty (CK),
  - Orthokeratoplasty, and
  - Intracorneal ring (ICR) implants
- (For details See page 53).

### ■ PHOTOTHERAPEUTIC KERATECTOMY

Phototherapeutic keratectomy (PTK) refers to the ablation of superficial corneal lesion with the help of excimer laser (198 nm).

**Indications** include:

- Superficial corneal scars,
- Corneal degenerations, e.g. band-shaped keratopathy, Salzmann's nodular degeneration and oil droplet keratopathy,

- Epithelial dystrophies (e.g. Reis-Buckler dystrophy), and
- Recurrent corneal erosions.

**Procedure.** The modern excimer laser machines have two modes for PTK:

- Spot mode, where a small spot (<1 mm) can be ablated, and
- Shapping mode, which allows uniform removal of corneal tissue from a large zone.

**Contraindications** include:

- Excessive thin corneas,
- Moderate to severe dry eye, and
- Deep corneal lesions.

**Complications.** Faint corneal haze is a usual end result of the PTK. Other complications include:

- Secondary infections,
- Induced hypermetropia, and
- Secondary keractesia.

### ■ KERATOPROSTHESIS

Keratoprosthesis refers to an artificial corneal device used in patients unsuitable for keratoplasty.

**Indications.** Prerequisites for keratoprosthesis include bilateral blindness due to corneal diseases (not



suitable for keratoplasty) with accurate perception of light, normal electrophysiological tests and absence of gross posterior segment disorders on ultrasonography, e.g.:

- Stevens-Johnson syndrome,
- Chemical burns,
- Ocular cicatricial pemphigoid,
- Severe trachoma
- Multiple previous failed corneal grafts.

**Types.** Keratoprosthesis basically consists of a central optical cylindrical part made of polymethylmethacrylate (PMMA). Based on the surrounding fixation device, the commonly used keratoprosthesis of various designs are as below:

**Boston keratoprosthesis** (6.36A), also known as Boston K-Pro, consists of two plates with a cylinder, in one plate. It takes the shape of a collar stud button when fitted. It is fixed using the donor corneal graft. Boston K-Pro is of two types:

- **Boston K-Pro type I** is used in patients with an adequate wet ocular surface with good blink reflex. Presently, it is the most commonly used K-Pro.
- **Boston K-Pro type II** is used in patients with significant conjunctival scarring, dry eye and exposure. It is fitted through the lids.

**Alfa Cor keratoprosthesis** (6.36B) consists of an outer porous skirt made up of high water content PHEMA and a transparent central optic made from low water content PHEMA. An interpenetrating polymer network (IPN), which is a junction zone between the skirt and central optic and serves as a permanent bond. It has a refractive power close to that of human cornea. It is used less frequently because it requires a 2-stage procedure and there are problems with the retention as well.

**Modified Osteo-odonto-keratoprosthesis, i.e. MOOKP** (Fig. 6.36C), is fixed with the help of patients own tooth root and alveolar bone. It is also used less frequently because it requires complex surgical procedure to be performed in three stages.

**Chondro-keratoprosthesis** is fixed with patients own cartilage.

**Onycho-keratoprosthesis** is fixed with patient's nails.

**Stanford keratoprosthesis** is a recently introduced device which incorporates the grafting of bio-active factors with a change in the bulk material design.

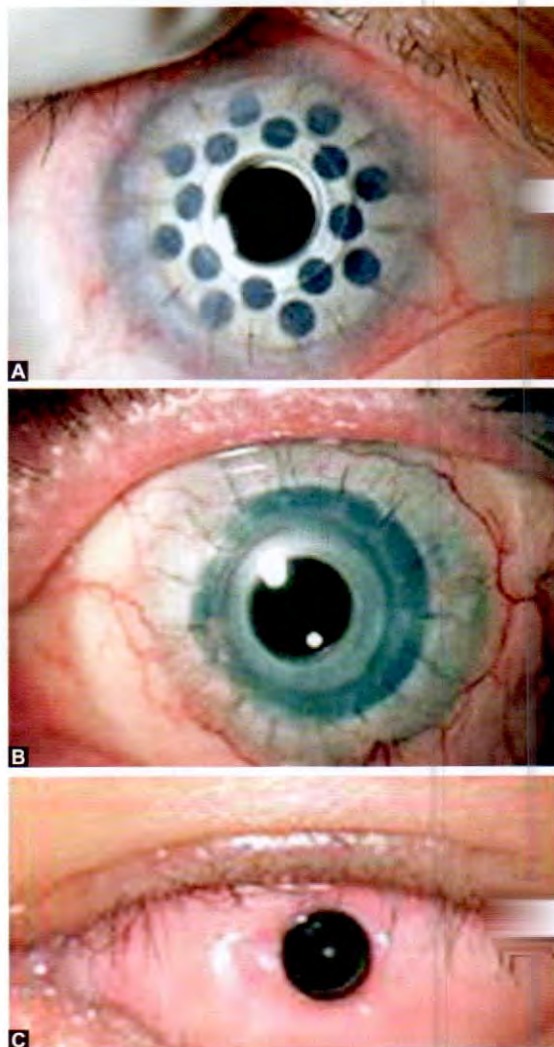


Fig. 6.36 Keratoprosthesis: A, Boston K-Pro type I; B, Alfa Cor; C, Osteo-odonto

**Singh and Worst collar-stud keratoprosthesis** is fixed with stainless steel sutures, and is not popular presently.

**Complications** include:

- Extrusion of prosthesis,
- Intractable glaucoma,
- Retroprosthetic membrane formation,
- Uveitis, and
- Retinal detachment.



# 7

## Diseases of Sclera

### APPLIED ANATOMY

- Thickness
- Apertures
- Microscopic structure

### INFLAMMATIONS

- Episcleritis
- Scleritis

### BLUE SCLERA STAPHYLOMAS

- Anterior staphyloma
- Intercalary staphyloma
- Ciliary staphyloma
- Equatorial staphyloma
- Posterior staphyloma

### APPLIED ANATOMY

Sclera forms the posterior five-sixth opaque part of the external fibrous tunic of the eyeball. Its whole outer surface is covered by Tenon's capsule. In the anterior part, it is also covered by bulbar conjunctiva. Its inner surface lies in contact with choroid with a potential suprachoroidal space in between. In its anterior most part near the limbus, there is a furrow which encloses the canal of Schlemm.

**Thickness** of sclera varies considerably in different individuals and with the age of the person. It is generally thinner in children than the adults and in females than the males. Thickness of the sclera varies according to the location:

- *At the limbus*, sclera is 0.8 mm thick.
- *Anterior to the rectus muscle insertions*, it is 0.6 mm thick.
- *Posterior to the rectus muscle insertions*, it is 0.3 mm thick (*thinnest*).
- *At the equator*, it is 0.5 to 0.8 mm thick.
- *At the posterior pole*, it is 1 mm thick (*thickest*).

**Apertures.** Sclera is pierced by three sets of apertures (Fig. 7.1):

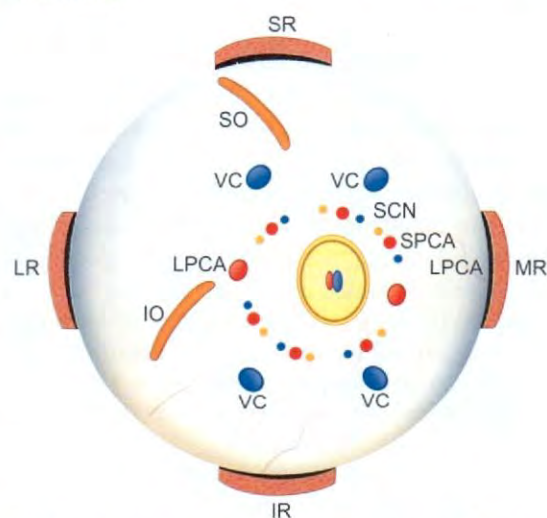
1. *Posterior apertures* are situated around the optic nerve and transmit long and short ciliary nerves and vessels.
2. *Middle apertures* (four in number) are situated slightly posterior to the equator; through these pass the four vortex veins (vena vortice).
3. *Anterior apertures* are situated 3 to 4 mm away from the limbus. Anterior ciliary vessels and

branches from long ciliary nerves pass through these apertures.

**Microscopic structure.** Histologically, sclera consists of following three layers:

1. **Episcleral tissue.** It is a thin, dense vascularised layer of connective tissue which covers the sclera proper. Fine fibroblasts, macrophages and lymphocytes are also present in this layer.

2. **Sclera proper.** It is an avascular structure which consists of dense bundles of collagen fibres. The bands of collagen tissue cross each other in all directions.



**Fig. 7.1** Apertures in the sclera (posterior view) (SCN, short ciliary nerve; SPCA, short posterior ciliary artery; LPCA, long posterior ciliary artery; VC, vena vortice)



**3. Lamina fusca.** It is the innermost part of sclera which blends with suprachoroidal and supraciliary laminae of the uveal tract. It is brownish in colour owing to the presence of pigmented cells.

**Nerve supply.** Sclera is supplied by branches from the long ciliary nerves which pierce it 2–4 mm from the limbus to form a plexus.

## INFLAMMATIONS OF SCLERA

### ■ EPISCLERITIS 5m + Episcleritis (S) Scleritis

Episcleritis is benign, recurrent, inflammation of the episclera, involving the overlying Tenon's capsule but not the underlying sclera. It typically affects young adults, being twice as common in women than men.

#### Etiology

1. **Idiopathic.** Exact etiology is not known in many cases.
2. **Systemic diseases** associated with episcleritis, include gout, rosacea, psoriasis and connective tissue diseases.
3. **Hypersensitivity reaction** to endogenous tubercular or streptococcal toxins is also reported.
4. **Infectious episcleritis** may be caused by herpes zoster virus, syphilis, Lyme disease and tuberculosis.

#### Pathology

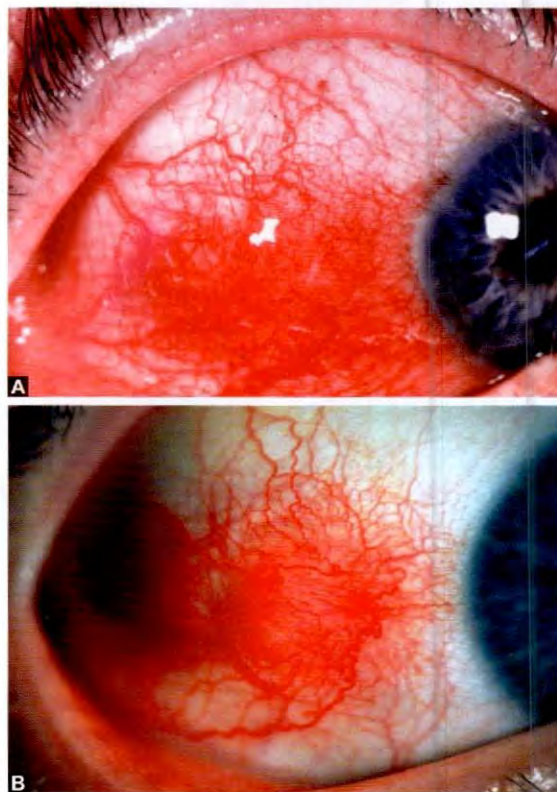
Histologically, there occurs localised lymphocytic infiltration of episcleral tissue associated with oedema and congestion of overlying Tenon's capsule and conjunctiva.

#### Clinical features

**Symptoms.** Episcleritis is characterised by redness, mild ocular discomfort described as gritty, burning or foreign body sensation. Many a time it may not be accompanied by any discomfort at all. Rarely, mild photophobia and lacrimation may occur.

**Signs.** On examination two clinical types of episcleritis, simple and nodular may be recognised. Episclera is seen acutely inflamed in the involved area.

- **Simple episcleritis** accounts for 75% of cases and is characterised by sectorial (occasionally diffuse) inflammation of episclera. The engorged episcleral vessels are large and run in radial direction beneath the conjunctiva (Fig. 7.2A).
- **Nodular episcleritis** is characterised by a pink or purple flat nodule surrounded by injection, usually situated 2–3 mm away from the limbus (Fig. 7.2B). The nodule is firm, tender, can be moved separately from the sclera and the overlying conjunctiva also moves freely.



**Fig. 7.2** Episcleritis: A, Diffuse; B, Nodular

**Clinical course.** Episcleritis runs a limited course of 10 days to 3 weeks and resolves spontaneously. However, recurrences are common and tend to occur in bouts. Rarely, a fleeting type of disease (*episcleritis periodica*) may occur.

#### Differential diagnosis

- **Simple episcleritis** may be confused rarely with conjunctivitis.
- **Nodular episcleritis** may be confused with inflamed pinguecula, swelling and congestion due to foreign body lodged in bulbar conjunctiva and, very rarely with scleritis.

#### Treatment

1. **Topical NSAIDs**, e.g. ketorolac 0.3% may be useful.
2. **Topical mild corticosteroid eye drops**, e.g. fluorometholone or loteprednol instilled 2–3 hourly, render the eye more comfortable and resolve the episcleritis within a few days.
3. **Topical artificial tears**, e.g. 0.5% carboxy methyl cellulose have soothing effect.
4. **Cold compresses** applied to the closed lids may offer symptomatic relief from ocular discomfort.
5. **Systemic nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)** such as flurbiprofen (300 mg OD),



indomethacin (25 mg three times a day), or oxyphenbutazone may be required in recurrent cases.

## ■ SCLERITIS

5m

⊕ Deep scleritis

Scleritis refers to an inflammation of the sclera proper. It is a comparatively serious disease which may cause visual impairment and even loss of the eye if treated inadequately. Fortunately, its incidence is much less than that of episcleritis. It usually occurs in elderly patients (40–70 years) involving females more than the males.

### Etiology

Overall about 50% cases of scleritis are associated with some systemic diseases, most common being connective tissue diseases.

Common conditions are as follows:

1. *Autoimmune collagen disorders*, especially rheumatoid arthritis, is the most common association. About 0.5% of patients (1 in 200) suffering from seropositive rheumatoid arthritis develop scleritis. Other associated collagen disorders are Wegener's granulomatosis, polyarteritis nodosa (PAN), systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) and ankylosing spondylitis.
2. *Metabolic disorders* like gout and thyrotoxicosis have also been reported to be associated with scleritis.
3. *Some infections*, particularly herpes zoster ophthalmicus, chronic staphylococcal and streptococcal infection have also been known to cause infectious scleritis.
4. *Granulomatous diseases* like tuberculosis, syphilis, sarcoidosis, leprosy can also cause scleritis.
5. *Miscellaneous conditions* like irradiation, chemical burns, Vogt-Koyanagi-Harada syndrome, Behcet's disease and rosacea are also implicated in the etiology.
6. *Surgically-induced scleritis* (SIS) is a rare complication of ocular surgery. It occurs within 6 months postoperatively. Exact mechanism not known, may be precipitation of underlying systemic cause.
7. *Idiopathic*. In many cases of scleritis, cause is unknown.

### Pathology

Histopathological changes are that of a chronic granulomatous disorder characterised by fibrinoid necrosis, destruction of collagen together with infiltration by polymorphonuclear cells, lymphocytes, plasma cells and macrophages. The granuloma is surrounded by multinucleated epithelioid giant cells and old and new vessels, some of which may show evidence of vasculitis.

### Classification

Scleritis can be classified as follows:

#### A. Immune-mediated non-infectious, scleritis

##### I. Anterior scleritis (98%)

###### a. Non-necrotizing scleritis (85%)

1. Diffuse
2. Nodular

###### b. Necrotizing scleritis (13%)

1. With inflammation
  - Vaso-occlusive
  - Granulomatous
  - Surgically induced
2. Without inflammation (scleromalacia perforans).

##### II. Posterior scleritis (2%)

#### B. Infectious scleritis

### Clinical features

#### Symptoms

- **Pain:** Patients complain of moderate to severe pain which is deep and boring in character and often wakes the patient early in the morning. Ocular pain radiates to the jaw and temple.
- **Redness** may be localized or diffuse.
- **Photophobia** and **lacrimation** may be mild to moderate.
- **Diminution of vision** may occur occasionally.

#### Signs

##### A. Immune-mediated non-infectious scleritis

Salient features of different clinical types of non-infectious scleritis are as below:

##### I. Anterior scleritis

###### a. Non-necrotizing anterior scleritis

1. **Non-necrotizing anterior diffuse scleritis.** It is the commonest variety, characterised by widespread inflammation involving a quadrant or more of the anterior sclera. The involved area is raised and salmon pink to purple in colour (Fig. 7.3).

2. **Non-necrotizing anterior nodular scleritis.** It is characterised by one or two hard, purplish elevated immovable scleral nodules, usually situated near the limbus (Fig. 7.4). Sometimes, the nodules are arranged in a ring around the limbus (*annular scleritis*).

###### b. Necrotizing anterior scleritis

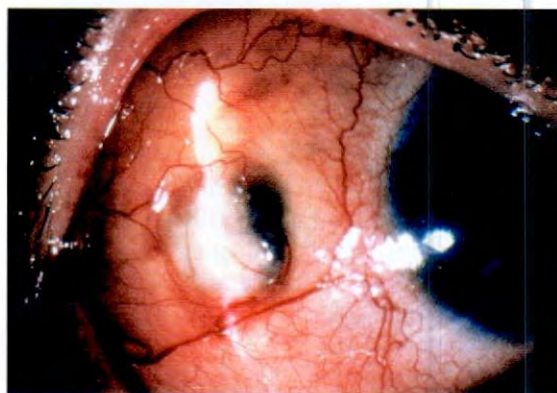
###### 1. Anterior necrotizing scleritis with inflammation.

It is an acute severe form of scleritis characterised by intense localised inflammation associated with areas of infarction due to vasculitis (Fig. 7.5). The affected necrosed area is thinned out and sclera becomes transparent and ectatic with uveal tissue

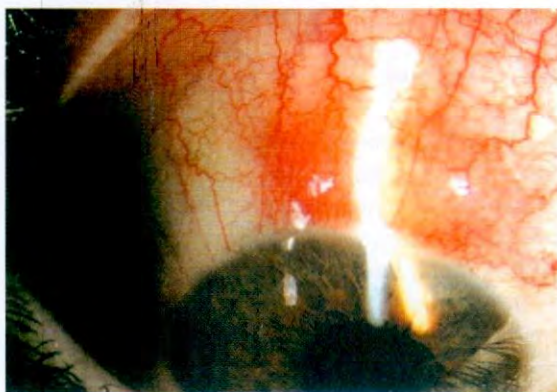




**Fig. 7.3** Non-necrotizing anterior diffuse scleritis



**Fig. 7.5** Anterior necrotizing scleritis with inflammation



**Fig. 7.4** Non-necrotizing anterior nodular scleritis



**Fig. 7.6** Anterior necrotizing scleritis without inflammation (Scleromalacia perforans)

shining through it. It is usually associated with anterior uveitis.

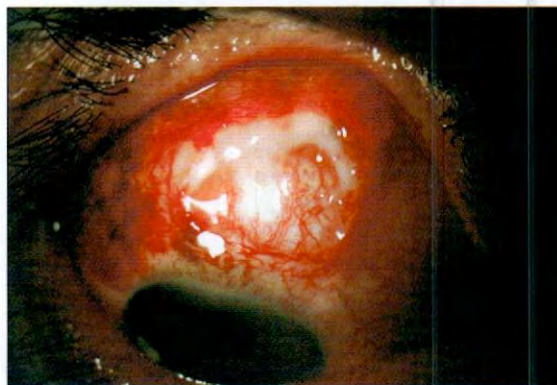
**2. Anterior necrotizing scleritis without inflammation (scleromalacia perforans).** This specific entity typically occurs in elderly females usually suffering from long-standing rheumatoid arthritis. It is characterised by development of yellowish patch of melting sclera (due to obliteration of arterial supply); which often together with the overlying episclera and conjunctiva completely separates from the surrounding normal sclera. This sequestrum of sclera becomes dead white in colour, which eventually absorbs leaving behind it a large punched out area of thin sclera through which the uveal tissue shines (Fig. 7.6). Spontaneous perforation is extremely rare.

## II. Posterior scleritis.

It is an inflammation involving the sclera behind the equator. The condition is frequently misdiagnosed. It is characterised by features of associated inflammation of adjacent structures, which include: exudative retinal detachment, macular oedema, proptosis and limitation of ocular movements.

## B. Infectious scleritis

- *Infectious scleritis accounts for 5–10% of all cases.*
- *In the early stage, diagnosis becomes difficult as presentation is similar to as non-infectious scleritis.*
- *Scleritis with purulent exudates (Fig. 7.7) or infiltrates should raise the suspicion of an infectious etiology.*
- *Formation of fistulae, painful nodules, conjunctival and scleral ulcers are usually the signs of infectious scleritis.*



**Fig. 7.7** Infectious scleritis



**Complications****3m**

These are quite common with necrotizing scleritis and include sclerosing keratitis, keratolysis, complicated cataract and secondary glaucoma.

**Investigations**

Following laboratory studies may be helpful in identifying associated systemic diseases or in establishing the nature of immunologic reaction:

1. TLC, DLC and ESR.
2. Serum levels of complement (C3), immune complexes, rheumatoid factor, antinuclear antibodies and L.E cells for an immunological survey.
3. FTA-ABS, VDRL for syphilis.
4. Serum uric acid for gout.
5. Urine analysis.
6. Mantoux test.
7. X-rays of chest, paranasal sinuses, sacroiliac joint and orbit (to rule out foreign body especially in patients with nodular scleritis).

**Treatment****A. Non-infectious scleritis**

**I. Non-necrotizing scleritis.** It is treated by:

- Topical steroid eye drops
- Systemic indomethacin 75 mg twice a day until inflammation resolves.

**II. Necrotizing scleritis.** It is treated by:

- Topical steroids
- Oral steroids on heavy doses, tapered slowly.
- Immunosuppressive agents like methotrexate or cyclophosphamide may be required in non-responsive cases.
- Subconjunctival steroids are contraindicated because they may lead to scleral thinning and perforation.
- Surgical treatment, in the form of scleral patch graft may be required to preserve integrity of the globe in extensive scleral melt and thinning.

**B. Infectious scleritis**

Most of the time diagnosis is delayed and patients are put on topical and oral steroids which worsen the infective scleritis.

**Treatment** includes:

- Antimicrobial therapy, both with topical and oral agents is required in an aggressive manner.
- Surgical debridement is found useful by debulking the infected scleral tissue and also facilitating the effect of antibiotics.

**BLUE SCLERA**

It is an asymptomatic condition characterised by marked, generalised blue discoloration of sclera due to thinning (Fig. 7.8). It is typically associated with osteogenesis imperfecta. Its other causes are Marfan's syndrome, Ehlers-Danlos syndrome,



**Fig. 7.8 Blue sclera**

pseudoxanthoma elasticum, buphthalmos, high myopia and healed scleritis.

**STAPHYLOMAS****5m**

Staphyloma refers to a localised bulging of weak and thin outer tunic of the eyeball (cornea or sclera), lined by uveal tissue which shines through the thinned out fibrous coat.

**Types**

Anatomically, it can be divided into anterior, intercalary, ciliary, equatorial and posterior staphyloma (Fig. 7.9).

**1. Anterior staphyloma** (See page 138).

**2. Intercalary staphyloma.** It is the name given to the localised bulge in limbal area lined internally by the root of iris and the anterior most part of ciliary body (Figs 7.9A and 7.10).

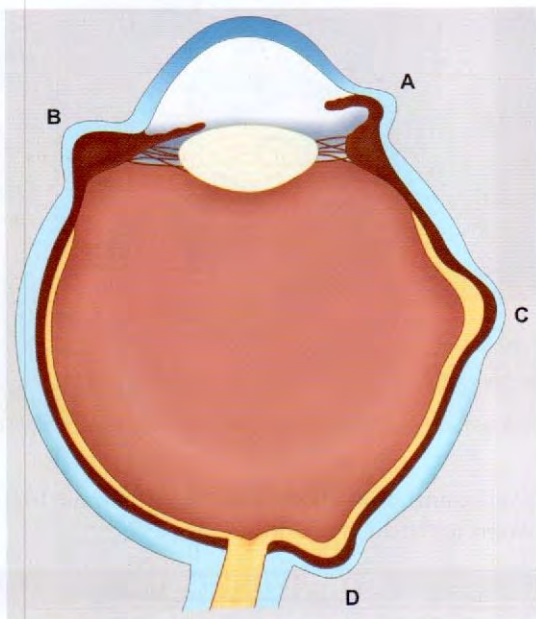
- It results due to ectasia of weak scar tissue formed at the limbus, following healing of a perforating injury or a peripheral corneal ulcer.
- Secondary angle closure glaucoma, may cause progression of bulge if not treated.
- Defective vision occurs due to marked corneal astigmatism.

**Treatment** consists of localised staphylectomy under heavy doses of oral steroids.

**3. Ciliary staphyloma.** As the name implies, it is the bulge of weak sclera lined by the ciliary body. It occurs about 2–3 mm away from the limbus and may extend up to 8 mm behind the limbus (Figs 7.9B and 7.11). Its common causes are thinning of sclera following perforating injury, scleritis, developmental glaucoma and end stage primary or secondary glaucoma.

**4. Equatorial staphyloma.** It results due to bulge of sclera lined by the choroid in the equatorial region (Fig. 7.9C). Its causes are scleritis and degeneration





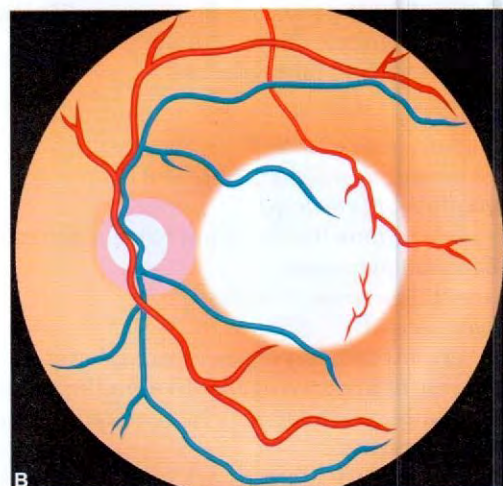
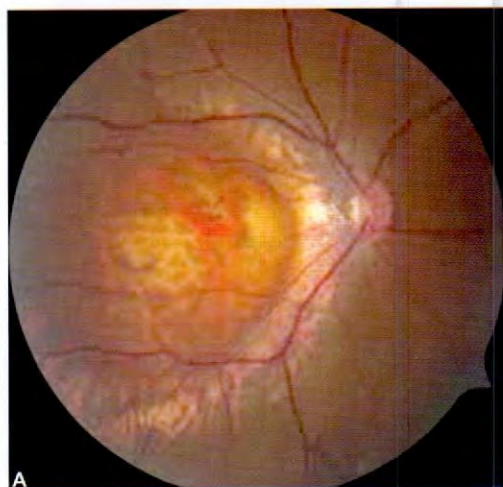
**Fig. 7.9** Staphylomas (diagrammatic depiction): A, Intercalary; B, Ciliary; C, Equatorial; D, Posterior



**Fig. 7.10** Intercalary staphyloma



**Fig. 7.11** Ciliary staphyloma



**Fig. 7.12** Fundus photograph: A, and diagrammatic depiction; B, of excavation of retinal tissue and blood vessels in posterior staphyloma

of sclera in pathological myopia and chronic uncontrolled glaucoma. It occurs more commonly at the regions of sclera which are perforated by vortex veins.

**3m 5. Posterior staphyloma.** It refers to bulge of weak sclera lined by the choroid behind the equator (Fig. 7.9D). Here again the **common causes** are pathological myopia (most common cause), posterior scleritis and perforating injuries. It is diagnosed on ophthalmoscopy. The area is excavated with retinal vessels dipping in it (just like marked cupping of optic disc in glaucoma) (Figs 7.12A and B). Its floor is focussed with minus lenses in ophthalmoscope as compared to its margins.



# Diseases of Uveal Tract

## APPLIED ANATOMY

- Iris
- Ciliary body
- Choroid
- Blood supply of uveal tract

## CONGENITAL ANOMALIES OF UVEAL TRACT

- Heterochromia of iris
- Corectopia
- Congenital coloboma of uveal tract

## UVEITIS

### General considerations

- Definition
  - Classification
  - Etiology
  - Pathology
- PARS PLANITIS (5m)
  - ciliary zone is called the "danger zone of eye". Explain (3m)
  - Endophthalmitis (✓) Panophthalmitis.
  - Enucleation (✓) Evisceration (3m)

## Non-suppurative uveitis

- Anterior uveitis (Iridocyclitis)
- Intermediate uveitis
- Posterior uveitis

## Specific clinico-etiological types of non-suppurative uveitis

- Infectious uveitis
- Non-infectious uveitis

## Purulent uveitis

- Endophthalmitis
- Panophthalmitis

## DEGENERATIVE CONDITIONS

- Degenerations of the iris
- Degenerations and dystrophies of the choroid

## TUMOURS

- Of choroid
- Of ciliary body
- Of iris

## APPLIED ANATOMY

**Uveal tissue** constitutes the middle vascular coat of the eyeball. From anterior to posterior, it can be divided into three parts, namely, *iris*, *ciliary body* and *choroid*. However, the entire uveal tract is **developmentally**, structurally and functionally one **indivisible** structure.

## IRIS

Iris is the **anterior most part** of the uveal tract. It is a **thin circular disc** corresponding to the diaphragm of a camera. In its centre is an **aperture** of about **4 mm diameter** called **pupil** which regulates the amount of light reaching the retina. At periphery, the iris is **attached** to the **middle of anterior surface** of the **ciliary body**. It divides the space between the cornea and lens into anterior and posterior chambers.

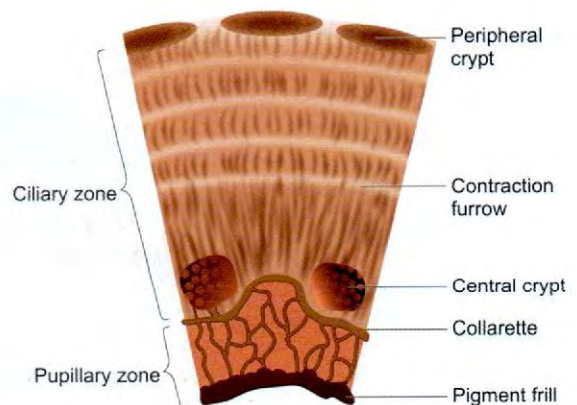
## Macroscopic appearance (3m)

Anterior surface of the iris can be **divided** into a **ciliary zone** and a **pupillary zone** by a **zigzag line** called **collarette** (Fig. 8.1).

**1. Ciliary zone.** It presents series of **radial streaks** due to **underlying radial blood vessels** and **crypts**

which are depressions where superficial layer of iris is missing. **Crypts** are arranged in two rows—the **peripheral present near the iris root** and the **central present near the collarette**.

**2. Pupillary zone.** This part of the iris lies between the **collarette and pigmented pupillary frill** and is relatively smooth and flat.



**Fig. 8.1** Macroscopic appearance of anterior surface of iris



### Microscopic structure

The iris consists of four layers which from anterior to posterior are (Fig. 8.2):

**1. Anterior limiting layer.** It is the anterior most condensed part of the stroma. It consists of melanocytes and fibroblasts. Previously, this layer was called endothelial layer of iris which was a misnomer. This layer is deficient in the areas of crypts. The definitive colour of the iris depends on this layer. In blue iris, this layer is thin and contains few pigment cells. While in brown iris, it is thick and densely pigmented.

**2. Iris stroma.** It consists of loosely arranged collagenous network in which are embedded the sphincter pupillae muscle, dilator pupillae muscle, vessels, nerves, pigment cells and other cells which include lymphocytes, fibroblasts, macrophages and mast cells.

- **Sphincter pupillae muscle** forms one millimetre broad circular band in the pupillary part of the iris. It is supplied by parasympathetic fibres through third nerve (See page 7). It constricts the pupil.

- **Dilator pupillae muscle** lies in the posterior part of stroma of the ciliary zone of iris. Its myofilaments are located in the outer part of the cells of anterior pigment epithelial layer. It is supplied by cervical sympathetic nerves (See page 8) and dilates the pupil.

**3. Anterior pigmented epithelial layer.** It is anterior continuation of the pigment epithelium of retina and ciliary body. This layer gives rise to the dilator pupillae muscle.

**4. Posterior pigmented epithelial layer.** It is anterior continuation of the nonpigmented epithelium of ciliary body. At the pupillary margin, it forms the pigmented frill and becomes continuous with the anterior pigmented epithelial layer.

### CILIARY BODY

Ciliary body is forward continuation of the choroid at ora serrata. In cut-section, it is triangular in shape. The anterior side of the triangle forms the part of the angle of anterior and posterior chambers. In its middle, the iris is attached. The outer side of the triangle lies against the sclera with a suprachoroidal space in between. The inner side of the triangle is divided into two parts. The anterior part (about 2 mm) having finger-like ciliary processes is called *pars plicata* and the posterior smooth part (about 4 mm) is called *pars plana* (Fig. 8.2).

### Microscopic structure

From without inwards ciliary body consists of following five layers (Fig. 8.2):

**1. Supraciliary lamina.** It is the outermost condensed part of the stroma and consists of pigmented collagen fibres. Posteriorly, it is the continuation of suprachoroidal lamina and anteriorly it becomes continuous with the anterior limiting membrane of iris.

**2. Stroma of the ciliary body.** It consists of connective tissue of collagen and fibroblasts. Embedded in the stroma are ciliary muscle, vessels, nerves, pigment and other cells.

- **Ciliary muscle** occupies most of the outer part of ciliary body. In cut section, it is triangular in shape. It is a nonstriated muscle having three parts:

- **Longitudinal or meridional fibres** which help in aqueous outflow;
- **Circular fibres** which help in accommodation; and
- **Radial or oblique fibres** act in the same way as the longitudinal fibres.

**Nerve supply.** Ciliary muscle is supplied by parasympathetic fibres through the short ciliary nerves.

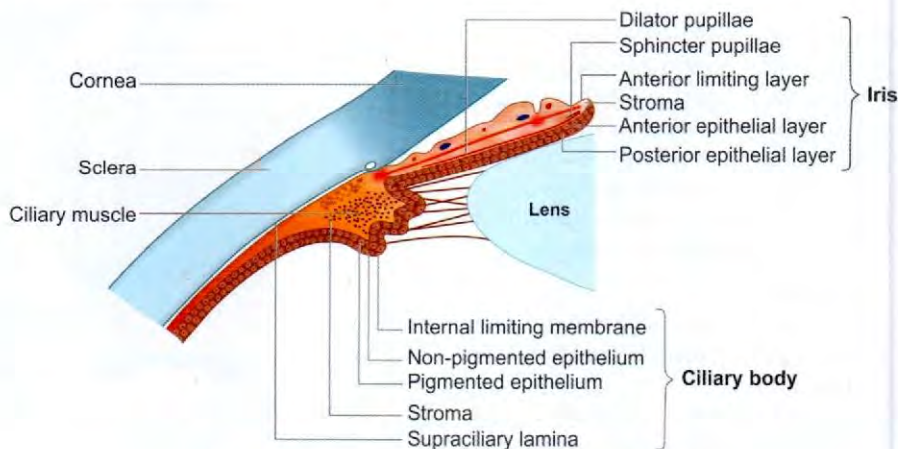


Fig. 8.2 Microscopic structure of iris and ciliary body



**3. Layer of pigmented epithelium.** It is forward continuation of the retinal pigment epithelium. Anteriorly, it is continuous with the anterior pigmented epithelium of the iris.

**4. Layer of nonpigmented epithelium.** It consists mainly of low columnar or cuboidal cells, and is the forward continuation of the sensory retina. It continues anteriorly as the posterior (internal) pigmented epithelium of the iris.

**5. Internal limiting membrane.** It is the forward continuation of the internal limiting membrane of the retina. It lines the nonpigmented epithelial layer.

### Ciliary processes

These are finger-like projections from the pars plicata part of the ciliary body. These are about 70–80 in number. Each process is about 2 mm long and 0.5 mm in diameter. These are white in colour.

■ **Structure.** Each process is lined by two layers of epithelial cells. The core of the ciliary process contains blood vessels and loose connective tissue. These processes are the site of aqueous production.

### Functions of ciliary body

- Formation of aqueous humour.
- Ciliary muscles help in accommodation.

### ■ CHOROID

Choroid is posterior most part of the vascular coat of the eyeball. It extends from optic disc to the ora serrata. Its inner surface is smooth, brown and lies in contact with pigment epithelium of the retina. The outer surface is rough and lies in contact with the sclera.

### Microscopic structure

From without inwards choroid consists of following three layers (Fig. 8.3):

**1. Suprachoroidal lamina.** It is a thin membrane of condensed collagen fibres, melanocytes and fibroblasts. It is continuous anteriorly with the supraciliary lamina. The potential space between

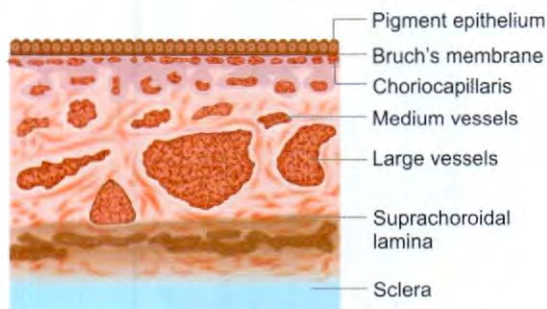


Fig. 8.3 Microscopic structure of the choroid

the membrane and sclera is called **suprachoroidal space** which contains long and short posterior ciliary arteries and nerves.

**2. Stroma of the choroid.** It consists of loose collagenous tissue with some elastic and reticulum fibres. It also contains pigment cells and plasma cells. Its main bulk is formed by vessels which are arranged in **three layers**. From without inwards these are: (i) layer of large vessels (Hailer's layer), (ii) layer of medium vessels (Sattler's layer) and (iii) layer of choriocapillaris which nourishes the outer layers of the retina.

**3. Basal lamina.** It is also called **Bruch's membrane** and lines the layer of choriocapillaris. It lies in approximation with pigment epithelium of the retina.

### ■ BLOOD SUPPLY OF UVEAL TRACT

#### Arterial supply

The uveal tract is supplied by three sets of arteries (Fig. 8.4):

**1. Short posterior ciliary arteries.** These arise as two trunks from the ophthalmic artery. Each trunk divides into 10–20 branches which pierce the sclera around the optic nerve and supply the choroid in a segmental manner.

**2. Long posterior ciliary arteries.** These are two in number, nasal and temporal. These pierce the sclera obliquely on medial and lateral side of the optic nerve and run forward in the suprachoroidal space to reach the ciliary muscle, without giving any

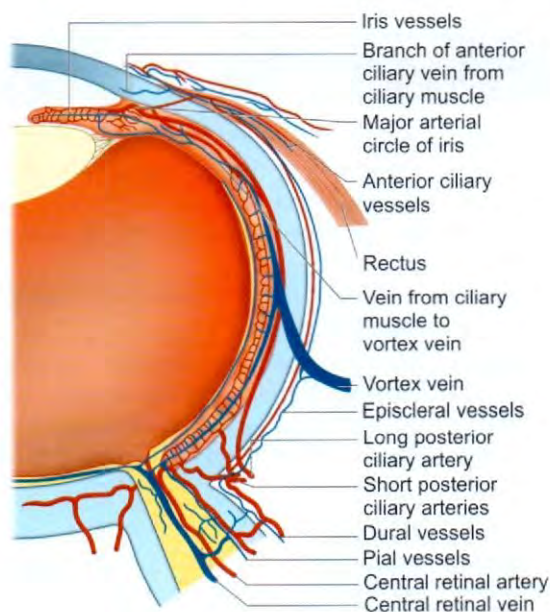


Fig. 8.4 Blood supply of uveal tract



branch. At the anterior end of ciliary muscle these anastomose with each other and with the anterior ciliary arteries and give rise to branches which supply the ciliary body.

**3. Anterior ciliary arteries.** These are derived from the muscular branches of ophthalmic artery. These are 7 in number, i.e. 2 each from arteries of superior rectus, inferior rectus, and medial rectus muscle and one from that of lateral rectus muscle. These arteries pass anteriorly in the episclera, give branches to sclera, limbus and conjunctiva and ultimately pierce the sclera near the limbus to enter the ciliary muscle; where they anastomose with the two long posterior ciliary arteries to form the *circulus arteriosus major*, near the root of iris. Several branches arise from the *circulus arteriosus major* and supply the ciliary processes (one branch for each process). Similarly, many branches from this major arterial circle run radially through the iris towards pupillary margin, where they anastomose with each other to form *circulus arteriosus minor*.

#### Venous drainage

A series of small veins which drain blood from the iris, ciliary body and choroid join to form the *vortex veins*. The vortex veins are four in number—superior temporal, inferior temporal, superior nasal and inferior nasal. They pierce the sclera behind the equator and drain into superior and inferior ophthalmic veins, which in turn, drain into the cavernous sinus (See Fig. 1.7, page 7).

### CONGENITAL ANOMALIES OF UVEAL TRACT

#### ■ HETEROCHROMIA OF IRIS

It refers to variations in the iris colour and is a common congenital anomaly.

- *Heterochromia iridium*, colour of one iris differs from the other.
- *Heterochromia iridis*, one sector of the iris differs from the remainder of iris.

Congenital heterochromia must be differentiated from the *acquired heterochromia* as seen in heterochromic cyclitis, siderosis, Horner's syndrome, pigmentary glaucoma and malignant melanoma of iris.

#### ■ CORECTOPIA

It refers to abnormally eccentric placed pupil. Normally pupil is placed slightly nasal to the centre.

#### ■ POLYCORIA

In this condition, there are more than one pupil.

#### ■ CONGENITAL ANIRIDIA (IRIDEMIA)

It refers to congenital absence of iris. *True aniridia*, i.e. complete absence of the iris is extremely rare. Usually, a peripheral rim of iris is present and this condition is called '*Clinical aniridia*'. Zonules of the lens and ciliary processes are often visible. The condition is usually familial and may be associated with glaucoma due to angle anomalies.

#### ■ PERSISTENT PUPILLARY MEMBRANE

It represents the remnants of the vascular sheath of the lens. It is characterised by stellate-shaped shreds of the pigmented tissue coming from anterior surface of the iris (attached at collarette) (Fig. 8.5). These float freely in the anterior chamber or may be attached to the anterior surface of the lens.

#### ■ CONGENITAL COLOBOMA OF UVEAL TRACT 3m

Congenital coloboma (absence of tissue) of iris (Fig. 8.6), ciliary body and choroid (Fig. 8.7) may be seen in association or independently. Coloboma may be typical or atypical.



Fig. 8.5 Persistent pupillary membrane



Fig. 8.6 Typical coloboma of the iris



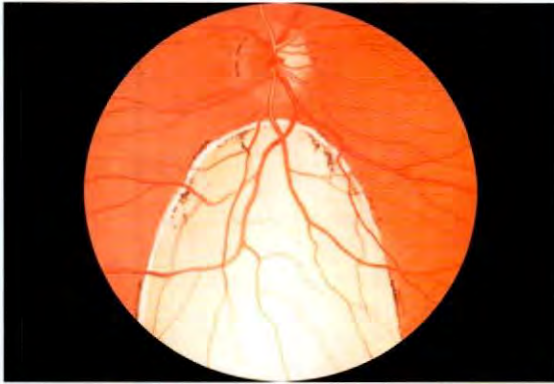


Fig. 8.7 Coloboma of the choroid

**Typical coloboma** is seen in the inferonasal quadrant and occurs due to defective closure of the embryonic fissure. Typical coloboma may be complete or incomplete.

■ **Complete coloboma** extends from pupil to the optic nerve, with a sector-shaped gap occupying about one-eighth of the circumference of the retina, choroid, ciliary body, iris and causes a corresponding indentation of the lens where the zonular fibres are missing.

■ **Incomplete coloboma** may involve the iris alone, or iris and ciliary body (more common), or iris, ciliary body and part of choroid (i.e. stops short of optic nerve).

**Atypical coloboma** is occasionally found in other positions. It is usually incomplete.

## UVEITIS

5m

### GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS

#### DEFINITION

The term uveitis strictly means inflammation of the uveal tissue only. However, clinically there is always some associated inflammation of the adjacent structures such as retina, vitreous, sclera and cornea. Due to close relationship of the anatomically distinct parts of the uveal tract, the inflammatory process usually tends to involve the uvea as a whole. However, the uveitis is classified according to the part of uvea which is clinically more affected.

#### CLASSIFICATION

##### A. Anatomical classification

The 'standardization of uveitis nomenclature (SUN)' working group developed the anatomical-based classification, so also called as *SUN classification*.

**1. Anterior uveitis.** It is inflammation of the uveal tissue from iris up to pars plicata of ciliary body, i.e. anterior uveal tissue. It may be subdivided into:

- **Iritis**, in which inflammation predominantly affects the iris.
- **Iridocyclitis** in which iris and pars plicata part of ciliary body are equally involved, and
- **Anterior cyclitis**, in which pars plicata part of ciliary body is predominantly affected.

**2. Intermediate uveitis.** It includes inflammation of the pars plana and peripheral part of the retina and underlying 'choroid'. It is also called '**pars planitis**'.

**3. Posterior uveitis.** It refers to inflammation of the choroid with or without associated inflammation of retina. Depending upon the extent of involvement of choroid and retina, the posterior uveitis has been subdivided as below:

- **Choroiditis**, i.e. main involvement of choroid. It can be focal, multifocal or diffuse choroiditis.
- **Chorioretinitis**, i.e. choroid and overlying retina is also involved.
- **Retinochoroiditis**, i.e. main inflammation is of retina and the overlying choroid is also involved.
- **Neuroretinitis**, i.e. main inflammation of retina and the optic nerve head.

**4. Panuveitis.** It is inflammation of the whole uvea.

#### B. Clinical classification

**1. Acute uveitis.** It has got a sudden symptomatic onset and the disease lasts for about 6 weeks to 3 months.

**2. Chronic uveitis.** It frequently has an insidious and asymptomatic onset. It persists longer than 3 months to even years and is usually diagnosed when it causes defective vision.

**3. Recurrent uveitis.** This is characterised by repeated episodes separated by inactive periods of >3 months without treatment.

#### C. Pathological classification

**1. Suppurative or purulent uveitis.**

**2. Nonsuppurative uveitis.** It has been further subdivided into two groups (**Wood's classification**).

- **Nongranulomatous** uveitis, and
- **Granulomatous** uveitis.

#### D. Etiological classification

**1. Infectious uveitis**

- **Bacterial** uveitis
- **Viral** uveitis
- **Fungal** uveitis
- **Parasitic** uveitis
- **Rickettsial** uveitis

**2. Non-infectious uveitis**

- Uveitis associated with non-infectious systemic diseases
- **Immune-related** uveitis
- **Traumatic** uveitis
- **Toxic** uveitis
- **Idiopathic** uveitis.

*Type of Inflammation*

|                                                         |                              |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Granulomatous                                           | Non-granulomatous            |
| - Invasion by living org.                               | - Macrophages / exudate type |
| - Serous                                                | - Acute                      |
| - Dense nodular lesions                                 | - (Ch)                       |
| - Multinuclear cells                                    | - Granulosa KP               |
| - Non Inflamm                                           | - Mac. Ac. Inflamm. phase    |
| Eg: Bacterial, multiple sclerosis, Lyme induced uveitis | Eg: ?                        |



### 3. Masquerade syndromes

- Non-neoplastic masquerade syndrome
- Neoplastic masquerade syndrome

### ■ ETIOLOGY

Despite a great deal of experimental research and many sophisticated methods of investigations, etiology and immunology of the uveitis is still largely not understood. Depending upon the offending agent uveitis can be grouped as below:

- A. Infectious uveitis,
- B. Non-infectious uveitis, and
- C. Masquerade syndrome.

#### A. Infectious uveitis

In infectious uveitis, inflammation of the uveal tissue is induced by invasion of the organisms. Uveal infections may be exogenous, secondary or endogenous.

i. **Exogenous infection** wherein the infecting organisms directly gain entrance into the eye from outside. It can occur following penetrating injuries, perforation of corneal ulcer and postoperatively (after intraocular operations). Such infections usually result in an acute iridocyclitis of suppurative (purulent) nature, which soon turns into endophthalmitis or even panophthalmitis.

ii. **Secondary infection** of the uvea rarely may occur by spread of infection from neighbouring structures, e.g. acute purulent conjunctivitis (pneumococcal and gonococcal), keratitis, scleritis, retinitis, orbital cellulitis and orbital thrombophlebitis.

iii. **Endogenous infections** are caused by the entrance of organisms from some source of infection situated elsewhere in the body, by way of the bloodstream. Endogenous infections play important role in the inflammations of uvea.

#### Types of infectious uveitis

Depending upon the causative organisms, the infectious uveitis may be classified as follows:

i. **Bacterial uveitis.** It may be granulomatous, e.g. tubercular, leprotic, syphilitic and other spirochetal uveitis, Brucellosis, Lyme disease, Leptospiral uveitis, Ocular nocardiosis, Ocular bartonellosis, Uveitis in whipple disease, or pyogenic such as, streptococci, staphylococci, pneumococci and gonococcus.

ii. **Viral uveitis** may be associated with herpes simplex, herpes zoster and cytomegalovirus (CMV), AIDS, Chikungunya, Dengue, West Nile disease and Rubella infections.

iii. **Fungal uveitis** is rare and may accompany systemic aspergillosis, candidiasis, cryptococcosis and blastomycosis. It also includes presumed ocular histoplasmosis syndrome.

iv. **Parasitic uveitis** is known in toxoplasmosis, toxocariasis, onchocerciasis, cysticercosis, diffuse unilateral subacute neuroretinitis and amoebiasis.

v. **Rickettsial uveitis** may occur in scrub typhus and epidemic typhus.

#### Pathomechanisms of infectious uveitis

I. **Suppurative uveitis** is caused by direct invasion of uveal tissue with pyogenic bacteria.

II. **Non-suppurative uveitis** may be granulomatous or non-granulomatous.

Uveitogenic processes involved in non-suppurative infectious uveitis, include:

1. **Uveitis due to hypersensitivity reaction to microorganisms.** Microbial allergic uveitis may occur due to hypersensitivity reactions to the microorganisms or to their proteins and toxins. A latent bacteremia or viremia causes sensitization of the uveal tissue with the formation of antibodies; and later when there is renewal of infection, the antigen reaches the uvea and results in severe antigen-antibody reaction.

2. **Microbial-induced autoimmune uveitis.** Pathogenic autoimmunity is assumed to be triggered by microbial infections by following two different mechanisms:

i. **Molecular mimicry**, i.e. uveitis due to cross-reacting microbial antigens.

ii. **Stimulation of innate immunity** has been suggested as another mechanism for triggering pathogenic autoimmunity by following microbial products: endotoxins (bacterial lipopolysaccharide, i.e. lps), lipoteichoic acid in gram-positive bacteria, lipoarabinomannan in mycobacteria, heat shock proteins of bacteria, killed lysates of many gram-positive bacteria, bacterial DNA and viral RNA.

3. **Uveitis induced by bacterial exotoxins and other secretory products** Examples of such products are Collagenases, Hemolysin such as streptolysin O, Phospholipases, Alpha toxins and Formyl peptide molecules (FMLP).

4. **Microbial cell wall stimulated alternate pathway for inflammation** can also induce uveitis. The alternate pathways for stimulation of immunity include Complement system, C-reactive proteins and alpha 2 macroglobulin.

#### B. Non-infectious uveitis

##### Mechanisms of non-infectious uveitis:

##### 1. Autoimmune uveitis

i. **HLA-associated systemic diseases with uveitis** include: Ankylosing spondylitis (HLA-B27), Reiter's syndrome (HLA-B27), Behcet's disease (HLA-B51), Birdshot retinochoroidopathy (HLA-A29), VKH syndrome (HLA-DR4, HLA-DR1), Sympathetic ophthalmitis

Three syndromes associated with UVEITIS?



(HLA-DR4), Sarcoidosis (HLA-B8, HLA-B1), Presumed ocular histoplasmosis (HLA-B7, HLA-DR2), Retinal vasculitis (HLA-B44), Multiple sclerosis (HLA-B7, HLA-DR2), Intermediate uveitis (HLA-B8, -B51, -DR2, -R15) and Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis (HLA-A2, -DR5, DR8, -DR11, -DR2.1)

**ii. Other systemic diseases** associated with non-infectious uveitis are:

- **Collagen related diseases** such as polyarteritis nodosa (PAN), Disseminated lupus erythematosus (DLE), physiology of rheumatoid arthritis
- **Diseases of skin** such as psoriasis, lichen planus, erythema nodosum, pemphigus
- **Metabolic diseases** like diabetes mellitus and gout.
- **Anaphylactic uveitis.** It is said to accompany the systemic anaphylactic reactions, like serum sickness and angioneurotic oedema and local anaphylactic reaction such as phacoanaphylactic uveitis.

**2. Atopic uveitis.** It occurs due to airborne allergens and inhalants, e.g. seasonal iritis due to pollens. A similar reaction to such material as danders of cats, chicken feathers, house dust, egg albumin and beef proteins has been noted.

**3. Traumatic uveitis** is known to occur following blunt or penetrating ocular trauma and surgical trauma from intraocular procedures, such as cataract extraction, trabeculectomy and vitreoretinal procedures. Different mechanisms which may produce traumatic uveitis include:

- Direct mechanical effects of trauma,
- Irritative effects of blood products after intraocular haemorrhage (haemophthalmitis),
- Chemical effects of retained intraocular foreign bodies, and
- Sympathetic ophthalmia in the other eye.

**4. Toxic uveitis.** Toxins responsible for uveitis can be endotoxins, endocular toxins or exogenous toxins.

**i. Endotoxins** produced inside the body play a major role. These may be autotoxins or microbial toxins (produced by organisms involving the body tissues).

**ii. Endocular toxins** are produced from the ocular tissues. Uveitis seen in patients with blind eyes, long-standing retinal detachment and intraocular haemorrhage is said to be due to endocular toxins. Other example is phacotoxic uveitis.

**iii. Exogenous toxins** causing uveitis are irritant chemical substances of inorganic, animal or vegetative origin. Certain drug causing uveitis (such as miotics and cytotoxic drugs) are other examples of exogenous toxins.

**5. Idiopathic uveitis** It may be specific or nonspecific.

**1. Idiopathic specific uveitis entities** include the conditions which have certain special characteristics,

e.g. pars planitis, sympathetic ophthalmitis and Fuchs' heterochromic iridocyclitis.

**II. Nonspecific idiopathic uveitis entities** include the condition which do not belong to any of the known etiological groups. About more than 25% cases of uveitis fall in this group.

### C. Masquerade Syndrome

Masquerade syndrome refers to clinical presentation of uveal inflammation which are not due to immune-mediated uveitis entities. Such a clinical presentation, mimicking uveitis may be caused by certain non-neoplastic and neoplastic conditions.

**I. Non-neoplastic masquerade syndromes**, classically may occur in conditions like: retinitis pigmentosa, ocular ischaemic syndrome, retinal detachment, intraocular foreign body and pigmented dispersion syndrome.

**II. Neoplastic masquerade syndromes.** Some intraocular neoplasms which can present with features of uveitis include:

- **Lymphoid malignancies** such as primary central nervous system lymphomas, secondary to systemic lymphomas, secondary to leukaemias and secondary to uveal lymphoid proliferation.
- **Non-lymphoid malignancies** include uveal melanomas, retinoblastoma, juvenile xanthogranuloma and metastatic tumours.

### ■ PATHOLOGY OF UVEITIS

Inflammation of the uvea fundamentally has the same characteristics as any other tissue of the body, i.e. a vascular and a cellular response. However, due to extreme vascularity and looseness of the uveal tissue, the inflammatory responses are exaggerated and thus produces special effects.

**Pathologically**, inflammations of the uveal tract may be divided into suppurative (purulent) and non-suppurative (non-purulent) varieties. Wood has further classified non-suppurative uveitis into nongranulomatous and granulomatous types. Although morphologic description is still of some value, the rigid division of uveitis by Wood into these two categories has been questioned on both clinical and pathological grounds. Certain transitional forms of uveitis have also been recognised. Some of these (e.g. phacoanaphylactic endophthalmitis and sympathetic ophthalmia) showing pathological features of granulomatous uveitis are caused by hypersensitivity reactions. While uveitis due to tissue invasion by leptospirae presents with manifestation of nongranulomatous uveitis. Nonetheless, the classification is often useful in getting oriented towards the subject of uveitis, its workup and therapy. Therefore, it is worthwhile to describe the pathological



features of these overlapping (both clinically and pathologically) conditions as distinct varieties.

### 1. Pathology of suppurative uveitis

Purulent inflammation of the uvea is usually a part of endophthalmitis or panophthalmitis occurring as a result of exogenous infection by pyogenic organisms which include *Staphylococcus*, *Streptococcus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Pneumococcus* and *Gonococcus*.

**Pathological reaction is characterised by** an outpouring of purulent exudate and infiltration by polymorphonuclear cells of uveal tissue, anterior chamber, posterior chamber and vitreous cavity. As a result, the whole uveal tissue is thickened and necrotic and the cavities of eye become filled with pus.

### 2. Pathology of nongranulomatous uveitis

Nongranulomatous uveitis may be an acute or chronic exudative inflammation of uveal tissue (predominantly iris and ciliary body), usually occurring either due to a physical and toxic insult to the tissue, or as a result of different hypersensitivity reactions.

**Pathological alterations of the nongranulomatous reaction consists** of marked dilatation and increased permeability of vessels, breakdown of blood aqueous barrier with an outpouring of fibrinous exudate and infiltration by lymphocytes, plasma cells and large macrophages of the uveal tissue, anterior chamber, posterior chamber and vitreous cavity. The inflammation is usually diffuse.

As a result of these pathological reactions iris becomes waterlogged, oedematous, muddy with blurring of crypts and furrows. As a consequence its mobility is reduced, pupil becomes small in size due to sphincter irritation and engorgement of radial vessels of iris. **Exudates and lymphocytes poured into the anterior chamber** result in aqueous flare and deposition of fine KPs at the back of cornea. **Due to exudates in the posterior chamber**, the posterior surface of iris adheres to the anterior capsule of lens leading to posterior synechiae formation. In severe inflammation, due to pouring of exudate from ciliary processes, behind the lens, an exudative membrane called **cyclitic membrane** may be formed.

After healing, pin-point areas of necrosis or atrophy are evident. Subsequent attacks lead to structural changes like atrophy, gliosis and fibrosis which cause adhesions, scarring and eventually destruction of eye.

### 3. Pathology of granulomatous uveitis

Granulomatous uveitis is a chronic inflammation of proliferative nature which typically occurs in response to anything which acts as an irritant

foreign body, whether it be inorganic or organic material introduced from outside, a haemorrhage or necrotic tissue within the eye, or one of the certain specific organisms of non-pyogenic and relatively non-virulent character. The **common organisms** which excite this type of inflammation are those responsible for tuberculosis, leprosy, syphilis, brucellosis, leptospirosis, as well as most viral, mycotic, protozoal and helminthic infections. A typical granulomatous inflammation is also seen in sarcoidosis, sympathetic ophthalmitis and Vogt-Koyanagi-Harada's disease.

**Pathological reaction in granulomatous uveitis is characterised by** infiltration with lymphocytes, plasma cells and mobilization and proliferation of large mononuclear cells which eventually become epithelioid and giant cells and aggregate into nodules. Iris nodules are usually formed near pupillary border (**Koeppel's nodules**) and sometimes near collarette (**Busacca nodules**). Similar nodular collection of the cells is deposited at the back of cornea in the form of mutton fat keratic precipitates and aqueous flare is minimal. Necrosis in the adjacent structures leads to reparative process resulting in fibrosis and gliosis of the involved area.

## NON-SUPPURATIVE UVEITIS 10m

### ANTERIOR UVEITIS (IRIDOCYCLITIS)

#### ■ DEFINITION

See page 155.

#### ■ ETIOLOGY

See page 156.

#### ■ CLINICAL FEATURES

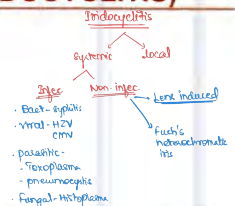
Though anterior uveitis, almost always presents as a combined inflammation of iris and ciliary body (iridocyclitis), the reaction may be more marked in iris (iritis) or ciliary body (cyclitis).

#### Symptoms

Clinically, it may present as acute or chronic anterior uveitis.

- **Main symptoms of acute anterior uveitis** are pain, photophobia, redness, lacrimation and decreased vision.
- In **chronic uveitis**, however the eye may be white with minimal symptoms even in the presence of signs of severe inflammation.

**1. Pain.** It is dominant symptom of acute anterior uveitis. Patients usually complain of a dull aching throbbing sensation which is typically worse at night. The ocular pain is usually referred along the distribution of branches of fifth nerve, especially towards forehead and scalp.





**2. Redness.** It is a feature of acute anterior uveitis and occurs due to circumcorneal congestion, which is result of active hyperaemia of anterior ciliary vessels due to the effect of toxins, histamine and histamine-like substances and axon reflex.

**3. Photophobia and blepharospasm** observed in patients with acute anterior uveitis is due to a reflex between sensory fibres of fifth nerve (which are irritated) and motor fibres of the seventh nerve, supplying the orbicularis oculi muscle.

**4. Lacrimation** occurs as a result of lacrimatory reflex mediated by fifth nerve (afferent) and secretomotor fibres of the seventh nerve (efferent).

**5. Defective vision** in a patient with iridocyclitis may vary from a slight blur in early phase to marked deterioration in late phase. Factors responsible for visual disturbance include induced myopia due to ciliary spasm, corneal haze (due to oedema and KPs), aqueous turbidity, pupillary block due to exudates, complicated cataract, vitreous haze, cyclitic membrane, associated macular oedema, papillitis or secondary glaucoma. One or more factors may contribute in different cases depending upon the severity and duration of the disease.

### Signs

Slit-lamp biomicroscopic examination is essential to elicit most of the signs of uveitis (Fig. 8.8).

#### A. Lid oedema

Lid oedema usually mild, may accompany a severe attack of acute anterior uveitis.

#### B. Circumcorneal congestion

Circumcorneal congestion is marked in acute iridocyclitis and minimal in chronic iridocyclitis. It must be differentiated from superficial congestion occurring in acute conjunctivitis (See page 164, Table 8.1).

#### C. Corneal signs

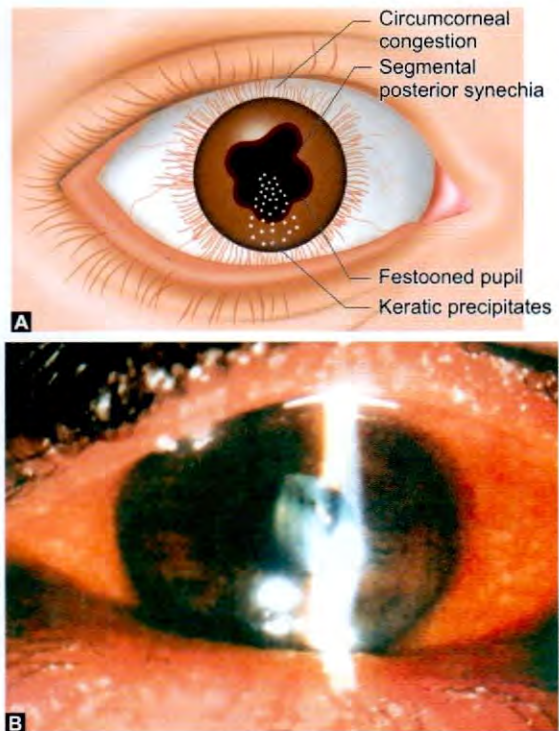
Corneal signs include corneal oedema, KPs and posterior corneal opacities.

**1. Corneal oedema** is due to toxic endotheliitis and raised intraocular pressure when present.

**2. Keratic precipitates (KPs)** are the pathognomonic sign of anterior uveitis. These are proteinaceous-cellular deposits occurring at the back of cornea.

Mostly, these are arranged in a triangular fashion occupying the centre and inferior part of cornea due to convection currents in the aqueous humour (Fig. 8.9). The composition and morphology of KPs varies with the severity, duration and type of uveitis. Following types of KPs may be seen:

**i. Mutton fat KPs.** These typically occur in granulomatous iridocyclitis and are composed of epithelioid cells and macrophages. They are



**Fig. 8.8** Signs of anterior uveitis: A, Diagrammatic depiction; B, Clinical photograph of a patient with acute anterior uveitis

large, thick, fluffy, lardaceous KPs, having a greasy or waxy appearance. Mutton fat KPs are usually a few (10 to 15) in number (Fig. 8.9B).

**ii. Small and medium KPs (granular KPs).** These are pathognomonic of nongranulomatous uveitis and are composed of lymphocytes. These small, discrete, dirty white KPs are arranged irregularly at the back of cornea. Small KPs may be numerous.

**iii. Fine KPs,** also called as 'stellate' KPs, typically cover entire corneal endothelium and form the so called endothelial dusting. These are seen in Fuchs heterochromic iridocyclitis, herpetic iritis and CMV retinitis.

**iv. Old KPs.** These are sign of healed uveitis. Either of the above described KPs with healing process shrink, fade, become pigmented and irregular in shape (crenated margins). Old mutton fat KPs usually have a ground glass appearance due to hyalinization.

**3. Posterior corneal opacity** may be formed in long-standing cases of iridocyclitis.

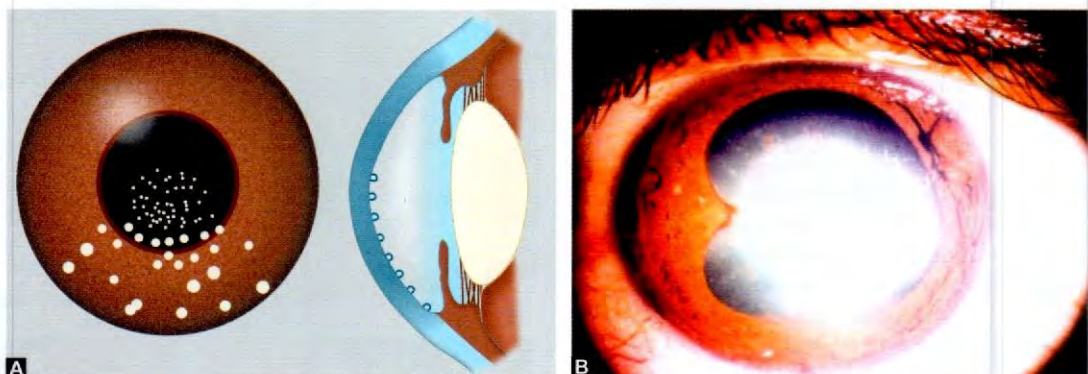
#### D. Anterior chamber signs

**1. Aqueous cells.** It is an early feature of iridocyclitis. The cells should be counted in an oblique slit-lamp beam, 1 mm long and 1 mm wide, with maximal light intensity and magnification, and graded as per

Red KPs  
- Inflammation with RBC  
- Hemorrhagic uveitis

5m Keratic precipitates (KPs) are the pathognomonic sign of anterior uveitis.





**Fig. 8.9** Keratic precipitates (KPs): A, Diagrammatic depiction; B, Clinical photograph of a patient with granulomatous anterior uveitis showing mutton fat KPs and broad segmental synechiae

**'Standardization of Uveitis Nomenclature (SUN)'** working group as below:

- - = <1 cells,
- ± = 1-5 cells,
- + 1 = 6-15 cells,
- + 2 = 16-25 cells,
- + 3 = 26-50 cells, and
- + 4 = over 50 cells.

3m

**2. Aqueous flare.** It is the **earliest sign** of acute anterior uveitis and occurs **due to leakage of protein particles into the aqueous humour from damaged blood vessels**. It is **demonstrated on the slit-lamp examination by a point beam of light passed obliquely to the plane of iris (Fig. 8.10)**. In the beam of light, protein particles are seen as **suspended and moving dust particles**. This is based on the **'Brownian movements'** or **'Tyndall phenomenon'**. Aqueous flare is usually **marked in nongranulomatous and minimal in granulomatous uveitis**. The flare is graded from 0 to +4. Grade as per SUN working group grading scheme:

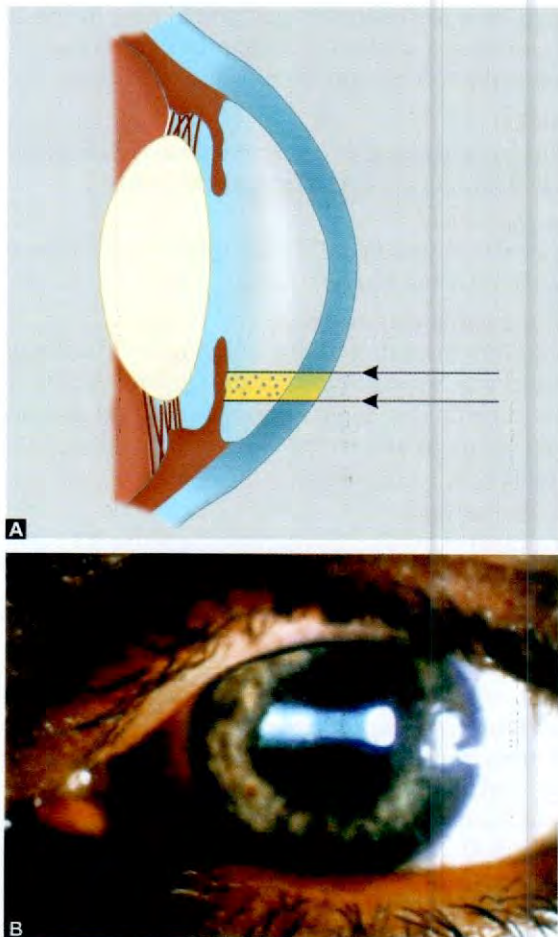
- 0 = no aqueous flare.
- +1 = faint, i.e. just detectable.
- +2 = moderate flare with clear iris and lens details.
- +3 = marked flare (iris and lens details hazy).
- +4 = intense flare (Fibrin or plastic aqueous).

**3. Hypopyon.** When exudates are heavy and thick, they settle down in lower part of the anterior chamber as **hypopyon (sterile pus in the anterior chamber)** (Fig. 8.11).

- **Dense immobile hypopyon**, slow to absorb due to high **fibrin content**, is seen in **HLA-B27 acute anterior uveitis**.
- **Hypopyon in Behcet's syndrome**, also known as **cold hypopyon**, has **minimal fibrin** and, therefore, shifts with the head position and is **quick to absorb**.
- **Haemorrhagic hypopyon** is a feature of uveitis associated with **herpetic infection, trauma and rubeosis iridis**.

**4. Changes in depth and shape of anterior chamber** may occur due to synechiae formation as below:

- **Deep and irregular in posterior synechiae**.
- **Funnel-shaped in annular synechiae with iris bombe**.



**Fig. 8.10** Aqueous flare: A, Diagrammatic depiction; B, Clinical photograph of the patient





Fig. 8.11 Hypopyon in acute anterior uveitis

5. **Changes in the angle of anterior chamber** are observed with gonioscopic examination. In **active stage**, **cellular deposits** and in **chronic stage** **peripheral anterior synechiae** may be seen.

#### E. Iris signs

1. **Loss of normal pattern.** It occurs due to oedema and waterlogging of iris in **active phase** and due to **atrophic changes** in **chronic phase**. Iris atrophy is typically observed in Fuchs' heterochromic iridocyclitis.

2. **Changes in iris colour.** Iris usually becomes muddy in colour during **active phase** and may show hyperpigmented and depigmented areas in **healed stage**.

3. **Iris nodules** (Fig. 8.12). These occur typically in granulomatous uveitis.

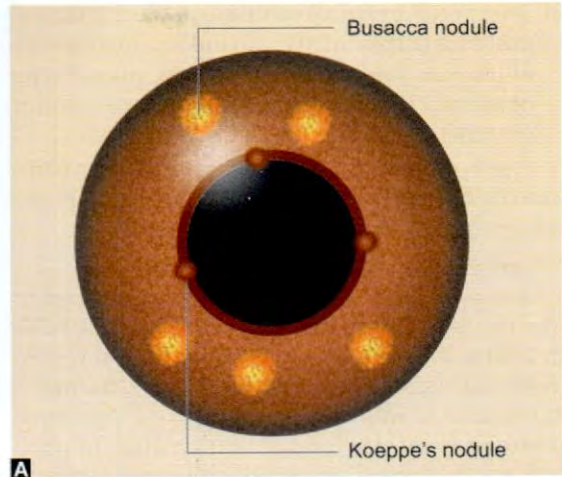
- **Koeppé's nodules** are situated at the **pupillary border** and may initiate posterior synechia.

- **Busacca's nodule** situated near the collarette are **large but less common** than the Koeppé's nodules.

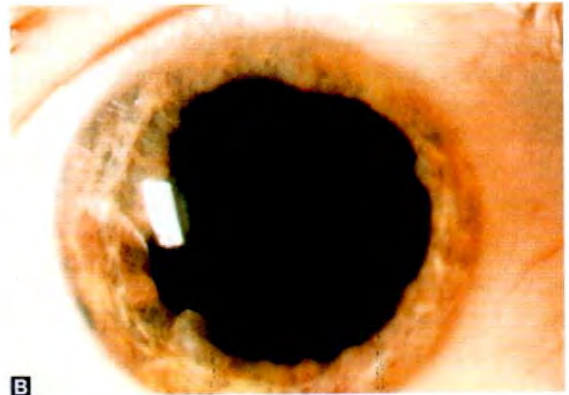
4. **Posterior synechiae.** These are **adhesions** between the **posterior surface of iris** and **anterior capsule of crystalline lens** (or any other structure which may be artificial lens, after cataract, posterior capsule left after extracapsular cataract extraction) or **anterior hyaloid face**. These are formed due to organisation of the **fibrin-rich exudates**. **Morphologically**, posterior synechiae may be segmental, annular or total.

i. **Segmental posterior synechiae** refers to **adhesion of iris to the lens at some points** (See Fig. 8.9B).

ii. **Annular posterior synechiae** (ring synechiae) are **360° adhesions of pupillary margin to anterior capsule of lens**. These **prevent the circulation of aqueous humour from posterior chamber to anterior chamber** (**seclusive papillae**, **seclusio pupillae**). Thus, aqueous collects behind the iris and pushes it anteriorly (leading to **'iris-bombe'** formation) (Fig. 8.13). This is usually followed by a **rise in intraocular pressure**.



A



B

Fig. 8.12 Iris nodules: A, Diagrammatic depiction; B, Clinical photograph showing Koeppé's nodules at the pupillary margins in a patient with sarcoidosis

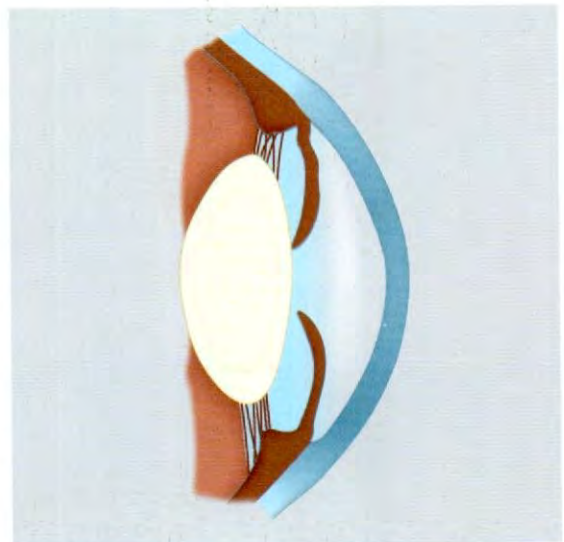


Fig. 8.13 Annular posterior synechiae

5m

④ occlusive papillae



iii. **Total posterior synechiae** due to plastering of total posterior surface of iris with the anterior capsule of lens are rarely formed in acute plastic type of uveitis. This results in **deepening of anterior chamber** (Fig. 8.14).

**5m** + complications + causes  
5. **Neovascularisation of iris** (rubeosis iridis) develops in some eyes with chronic iridocyclitis and in Fuchs heterochromic iridocyclitis.

#### F. Pupillary signs

1. **Narrow pupil.** It occurs in acute attack of iridocyclitis (See Fig. 8.8B) due to irritation of sphincter pupillae by toxins. Iris oedema and engorged radial vessels of iris also contribute in making the pupil narrow.

2. **Irregular pupil shape.** It results from segmental posterior synechiae formation. Dilatation of pupil with mydriatics (e.g. atropine) at this stage results in **festooned pupil** (See Figs 8.8A and 8.15).

3. **Ectropion pupillae** (eversion of pupillary margin). It may develop due to contraction of fibrinous exudate on the anterior surface of the iris.

4. **Pupillary reaction** becomes sluggish or may even be absent due to oedema and hyperaemia of iris which hamper its movements.

5. **Occlusio pupillae** results when the pupil is completely occluded due to organisation of the exudates across the entire pupillary area.

#### G. Changes in the lens

1. **Pigment dispersal** on the anterior capsule of lens is almost of universal occurrence in case of anterior uveitis.

2. **Exudates** may be deposited on the lens in cases with acute plastic iridocyclitis.

3. **Complicated cataract** may develop as a complication of persistent iridocyclitis. Typical features of a complicated cataract in early stage are 'polychromatic luster' and 'bread-crumb' appearance of the early posterior subcapsular opacities. In the presence of posterior synechiae, the complicated cataract progresses rapidly to maturity (Fig. 8.15).

#### H. Changes in the vitreous and retina

1. **Exudates and inflammatory cells** may be seen in the anterior vitreous after an attack of acute iridocyclitis.

2. **Cystoid macular oedema** (CME) may occur, especially in chronic iridocyclitis.

#### I. Changes in the intraocular pressure

IOP may be:

- Normal, or
- Increased (secondary glaucoma) or,
- Decreased (in acute iridocyclitis due to acute ciliary shock and in chronic, longstanding iridocyclitis due to atrophy of ciliary process ultimately leading to phthisis bulbi).

#### ■ COMPLICATIONS AND SEQUELAE

1. **Complicated cataract.** It is a common complication of iridocyclitis as described in Fig. 8.15.

**5m** 2. **Secondary glaucoma.** It may occur as an early or late complication of iridocyclitis.

i. **Early glaucoma.** In active phase of the disease, presence of exudates and inflammatory cells in the anterior chamber may cause **clogging of trabecular meshwork** resulting in the **decreased aqueous drainage** and thus a rise in intraocular pressure (**hypertensive uveitis**).

ii. **Late glaucoma in iridocyclitis** (**post-inflammatory glaucoma**) is the result of pupil block (seclusio pupillae due to ring synechiae formation, or occlusio pupillae due to organised exudates) not allowing the aqueous to flow from posterior to anterior chamber.



Fig. 8.14 Total posterior synechiae causing deep anterior chamber

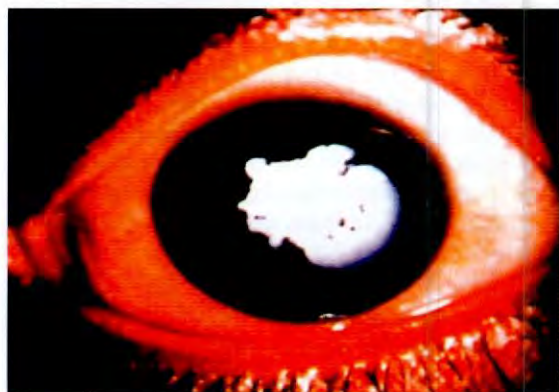


Fig. 8.15 Iridocyclitis with posterior synechiae, festooned pupil and complicated cataract



10m

There may or may not be associated peripheral anterior synechiae formation.

**3. Cyclitic membrane.** It results due to organisation of exudates present behind the lens. It is a late complication of acute plastic type of iridocyclitis.

**4. Choroiditis.** It may develop in prolonged cases of iridocyclitis owing to their continuity.

**5. Retinal complications.** These include cystoid macular oedema, macular scar, macular hole, epiretinal membrane, exudative retinal detachment, secondary periphlebitis retinae, retinal scars and sub-retinal fibrosis.

**6. Papillitis (inflammation of the optic disc).** It may be associated in severe cases of iridocyclitis.

**7. Band-shaped keratopathy.** It occurs as a complication of long-standing chronic uveitis (See Fig. 6.19), especially in children having Still's disease.

**5m** **8. Phthisis bulbi.** It is the final stage end result of any form of chronic uveitis in which the eye becomes soft, shrink and atrophic. Development of phthisis bulbi can be divided into three overlapping stages:

i. *Stage of atrophic bulbi without shrinkage* is the initial stage of loss of function of ocular tissues which occurs due to continued inflammation and loss of nutritional support. In this stage:

- Shape of globe is maintained,
- Vision is completely lost,
- Lens becomes cataractous,
- Retina develops serous detachment and atrophic changes, and
- IOP is raised in early stages due to inflammatory glaucoma.

ii. *Stage of atrophic bulbi with shrinkage* occurs due to continued ciliary body dysfunction. In this stage:

- IOP is lowered,
- Cornea becomes edematous and vascularised,
- Anterior chamber is collapsed, and
- Eyeball becomes smaller and square shaped (maintained by four recti).

iii. *Atrophic bulbi with disorganization* is the final stage known as *phthisis bulbi*. In this stage due to continued disorganization of ciliary body:

- IOP is markedly lowered,
- Size of eyeball is markedly decreased, and
- Cornea becomes sclera like.

**Histopathological examination** at this stages reveals:

- Disorganization of all the intraocular tissues,
- Calcification may occur in Bowman's layer of cornea, lens and retina,
- Intraocular ossification (bone formation) may occur due to metaplasia in the retinal pigment epithelium, in the end stage of phthisis bulbi, and
- Sclera become markedly thickened.

## ■ DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS "RED EYE"

**1. Differential diagnosis of acute red eye.** Acute iridocyclitis must be differentiated from other causes of acute red eye, especially acute congestive glaucoma and acute conjunctivitis. The differentiating features are summarised in Table 8.1.

**2. Granulomatous versus nongranulomatous uveitis.** Once diagnosis of iridocyclitis is established, an attempt should be made to know whether the condition is of granulomatous or nongranulomatous type. The main clinical differences between the two are summarised in Table 8.2.

**3. Etiological differential diagnosis.** Efforts should also be made to distinguish between the different etiological varieties of iridocyclitis. This may be possible in some cases after thorough investigations and with a knowledge of special features of different clinical entities, which are described under the subject of 'special types of iridocyclitis' (See pages 168–175).

5m

## ■ INVESTIGATIONS

Before ordering investigations, a thorough ocular systemic examination is required, which may provide clues to the underline disease.

Investigations include a battery of tests because of its varied etiology. However, an experienced ophthalmologist soon learns to order a few investigations of considerable value, which will differ in individual case depending upon the information gained from thorough clinical work up. A few common investigations required are listed here:

### 1. Haematological investigations

- **TLC and DLC** to have a general information about inflammatory response of body.
- **ESR** to ascertain existence of any chronic inflammatory condition in the body.
- **Blood sugar levels** to rule out diabetes mellitus.
- **Blood uric acid** in patients suspected of having gout.
- **Serological tests** for syphilis, toxoplasmosis and histoplasmosis.
- **Tests for antinuclear antibodies, Rh factor, LE cells, C-reactive proteins antistreptolysin-O, ACE** (for sarcoidosis).

**2. Urine examination** for WBCs, pus cells, RBCs and culture to rule out urinary tract infections.

**3. Stool examination** for cyst and ova to rule out parasitic infestations.

**4. Radiological investigations** include:

- **X-rays** of chest, paranasal sinuses, sacroiliac joints and lumbar spine.



**Table 8.1** Distinguishing features between, acute conjunctivitis, acute iridocyclitis and acute congestive glaucoma

| Sl. No. | Feature                 | Acute conjunctivitis     | Acute iridocyclitis                                              | Acute congestive glaucoma                    |
|---------|-------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 1.      | Onset                   | Gradual                  | Usually gradual                                                  | Sudden                                       |
| 2.      | Pain                    | Mild discomfort          | Moderate in eye and along the first division of trigeminal nerve | Severe in eye and the entire trigeminal area |
| 3.      | Discharge               | Mucopurulent             | Watery                                                           | Watery                                       |
| 4.      | Coloured halos          | May be present           | Absent                                                           | Present                                      |
| 5.      | Vision                  | Good                     | Slightly impaired                                                | Markedly impaired                            |
| 6.      | Congestion              | Superficial conjunctival | Deep ciliary                                                     | Deep ciliary                                 |
| 7.      | Tenderness              | Absent                   | Marked                                                           | Marked                                       |
| 8.      | Pupil                   | Normal                   | Small and irregular                                              | Large and vertically oval                    |
| 9.      | Media                   | Clear                    | Hazy due to KPs, aqueous flare and pupillary exudates            | Hazy due to oedematous cornea                |
| 10.     | Anterior chamber        | Normal                   | May be deep                                                      | Very shallow                                 |
| 11.     | Iris                    | Normal                   | Muddy                                                            | Oedematous                                   |
| 12.     | Intraocular pressure    | Normal                   | Usually normal                                                   | Raised                                       |
| 13.     | Constitutional symptoms | Absent                   | Little                                                           | Prostration and vomiting                     |

5m

**Table 8.2** Differences between granulomatous and nongranulomatous uveitis

| Sl. No. | Feature                    | Granulomatous         | Nongranulomatous    |
|---------|----------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1.      | Onset                      | Insidious             | Acute               |
| 2.      | Pain                       | Minimal               | Marked              |
| 3.      | Photophobia                | Slight                | Marked              |
| 4.      | Ciliary congestion         | Minimal               | Marked              |
| 5.      | Keratic precipitates (KPs) | Mutton fat            | Small               |
| 6.      | Aqueous flare              | Mild                  | Marked              |
| 7.      | Iris nodules               | Usually present       | Absent              |
| 8.      | Posterior synechiae        | Thick and broad based | Thin and tenuous    |
| 9.      | Fundus                     | Nodular lesions       | Diffuse involvement |

- **CT scan high resolution.** CT scan of thorax should be considered for suspected sarcoidosis cases.
- **MRI scan** of head for suspected sarcoidosis, demyelination and lymphomas.
- 5. **Skin tests.** These include tuberculin test, Kyeim's test for sarcoidosis, toxoplasmin test, lepromin test and pathergy test for Behcet's disease.

**TREATMENT OF IRIDOCYCLITIS**

**I. Nonspecific treatment**

**a. Local therapy**

1. **Cycloplegic drugs.** These are very useful and most effective during acute phase of iridocyclitis. Commonly used drug is 1% atropine sulfate eye ointment or drops instilled 2-3 times a day. In case of atropine

allergy, other cycloplegics like 2% homatropine or 1% cyclopentolate eye drops may be instilled 3-4 times a day. Alternatively for more powerful cycloplegic effect, a subconjunctival injection of 0.25 mL in mydricain (a mixture of atropine, adrenaline and procaine) should be given. The cycloplegics should be continued for at least 2-3 weeks after the eye becomes quiet, otherwise relapse may occur.

■ **Mode of action.** In iridocyclitis, atropine (i) gives comfort and rest to the eye by relieving spasm of iris sphincter and ciliary muscle, (ii) prevents the formation of synechiae and may break the already formed synechiae, (iii) reduces exudation by decreasing hyperaemia and vascular permeability

5m

10m



and (iv) increases the blood supply to anterior uvea by relieving pressure on the anterior ciliary arteries. As a result, more antibodies reach the target tissues and more toxins are absorbed.

**2. Corticosteroids**, administered locally, are very effective in cases of iridocyclitis.

■ **Mode of action:** They reduce inflammation by their anti-inflammatory effect; being anti-allergic, are of special use in allergic type of uveitis; and due to their antifibrotic activity, they reduce fibrosis and thus prevent disorganisation and destruction of the tissues.

■ **Commonly used steroidal preparations** contain dexamethasone, betamethasone, hydrocortisone or prednisolone (See page 473).

■ **Route of administration:** Locally, steroids are used as (i) eye drops 4–6 times a day, (ii) eye ointment at bed time, and (iii) Anterior sub-Tenon injection is given in severe cases.

**3. Broad spectrum antibiotic drops**, though of no use in iridocyclitis, are usually prescribed with topical steroid preparations to provide an umbrella cover for them.

#### b. Systemic therapy

**1. Corticosteroids.** When administered systemically they have a definite role in nongranulomatous iridocyclitis, where inflammation, most of the times, is due to antigen-antibody reaction. Even in other types of uveitis, the systemic steroids are helpful due to their potent nonspecific anti-inflammatory and antifibrotic effects. Systemic corticosteroids are usually indicated in intractable anterior uveitis resistant to topical therapy.

**Dosage schedules.** A wide variety of steroids are available. Usually, treatment is started with high doses of prednisolone (60–100 mg) or equivalent quantities of other steroids (dexamethasone or betamethasone).

- Daily therapy regime is preferred for marked inflammatory activity for at least 2 weeks.
- In the absence of acute disease, alternate day therapy regime should be chosen.
- Dose of steroids is decreased by a week's interval and tapered completely in about 6–8 weeks in both the regimes.

**Note.** Steroids (both topical and systemic) may cause many ocular (e.g. steroid-induced glaucoma and cataract) and systemic side-effects. Hence, an eagle's eye watchfulness is required for it.

**2. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)** such as aspirin can be used where steroids

are contraindicated. Phenylbutazone and oxyphenbutazone are potent anti-inflammatory drugs of particular value in uveitis associated with rheumatoid disease. Naproxen is useful in patients with ankylosing spondylitis.

**3. Immunosuppressive drugs.** These should be used only in desperate and extremely serious cases of uveitis, in which vigorous use of steroids have failed to resolve the inflammation and there is an imminent danger of blindness. These drugs are dangerous and should be used with great caution in the supervision of a haematologist and an oncologist. These drugs are especially useful in severe cases of Behcet's syndrome, sympathetic ophthalmia, pars planitis and VKH syndrome. A few available cytotoxic immunosuppressive drugs include cyclophosphamide, chlorambucil, azathioprine and methotrexate. Cyclosporin is a powerful anti-T-cell immunosuppressive drug which is effective in cases resistant to cytotoxic immunosuppressive agents, but it is a highly renal toxic drug.

**4. Azithromycin or tetracycline or erythromycin** should be considered to treat chlamydial infection in patients and their sexual partners with Reiter's syndrome having urethritis and iritis.

#### c. Physical measures

**1. Hot fomentation.** It is very soothing, diminishes pain and increases circulation, and thus reduces the venous stasis. As a result, more antibodies are brought and toxins are drained. Hot fomentation can be done by dry heat or wet heat.

**2. Dark goggles.** These give a feeling of comfort, especially when used in sunlight, by reducing photophobia, lacrimation and blepharospasm.

#### II. Specific treatment of the cause

Nonspecific treatment described above is very effective and usually controls the uveal inflammation, in most of the cases, but it does not cure the disease, resulting in relapses. Therefore, all possible efforts should be made to find out and treat the underlying cause. Unfortunately, in spite of the advanced diagnostic tests, still it is not possible to ascertain the cause in a large number of cases.

So, a full course of antitubercular drugs for underlying Koch's disease, adequate treatment for syphilis, toxoplasmosis, etc., when detected should be carried out. When no cause is ascertained, a full course of broad spectrum antibiotics may be helpful by eradicating some masked focus of infection in patients with nongranulomatous uveitis.



### III. Treatment of complications

1. **Inflammatory glaucoma** (hypertensive uveitis). In such cases, drugs to lower intraocular pressure such as 0.5% timolol maleate eye drops twice a day and tablet acetazolamide (250 mg thrice a day) should be added, over and above the usual treatment of iridocyclitis. Pilocarpine and latanoprost eye drops are contraindicated in inflammatory glaucoma.

2. **Postinflammatory glaucoma** due to ring synechiae is treated by laser iridotomy. Surgical iridectomy may be done when laser is not available. However, surgery should be performed in a quiet eye under high doses of corticosteroids.

3. **Complicated cataract** requires lens extraction with guarded prognosis in spite of all precautions. Presence of fresh KPs is considered a contraindication for intraocular surgery.

4. **Retinal detachment** of exudative type usually settles itself if uveitis is treated aggressively. A tractional detachment requires vitrectomy and management of complicated retinal detachment, with poor visual prognosis.

5. **Phthisis bulbi** especially when painful, requires removal by enucleation operation.

## INTERMEDIATE UVEITIS

Intermediate uveitis refers to inflammation involving pars plana ciliaris, peripheral retina, choroid and vitreous base.

### Epidemiology

- Accounts for 10% of all cases of uveitis and 20% of cases of uveitis in children,
- Bilateral in 80% of cases,
- Males and females are equally affected,
- Age: onset typically in 2nd and 4th decade (bimodal).

### Etiology

- **Idiopathic** in about 85% cases. Immunogenic predisposition is reported with a positive correlation with HLA-DR2.
- **Known causes** (15% cases) include tuberculosis, syphilis, sarcoidosis, Lyme disease and multiple sclerosis.

### Clinical features

#### Symptoms

- **Asymptomatic** in many cases,
- **Floater of insidious onset** is most common presentation,
- **Blurring of vision** and decreased vision may occur later,
- **Pain, photophobia** and **redness** are conspicuously absent.

### Signs

**Anterior segment signs.** On cursory examination, eye looks white and quiet. Anterior segment may or may not show signs of minimal activity in the form of:

- Low-grade flare and cells,
- Few KPs due to spillover anterior uveitis,
- Lens may show complicated cataract in late stages.

**Posterior segment signs** pathognomonic of intermediate uveitis are:

- **Vitreous cells** (+1 to +4),
- **Anterior vitreous condensation**,
- **Snowball or cotton ball opacities** (*Ant's eggs*) refers to typical exudates present near the ora serrata in the inferior quadrant.
- **Snow banking**, i.e. grey white fibrovascular plaque over the pars plana with or without associated peripheral retinal periphlebitis form the **hallmark of intermediate uveitis**. It is formed due to coalescence of snow ball opacities. These are best seen with indirect ophthalmoscopy and Goldman three mirror examination.
- **Severe vitreous opacification** obscuring retina and even presenting as leucocoria may occur rarely.

### Course, prognosis and complications

**Course and prognosis.** Relatively good prognosis if well treated. Course is usually chronic with three distinct patterns:

- **Single**, mild self-limiting episode (10%) cases,
- **Prolonged course** without exacerbations (60% cases), and
- **Chronic smoldering course** with multiple subacute exacerbations (30% cases).

**Complications** include: Complicated cataract, cystoid macular oedema, band keratopathy, secondary glaucoma, vitreous haemorrhage and tractional retinal detachment.

### Treatment

Modified 4 steps protocol of Kaplan is as below:

**Step 1: Periocular and systemic steroids.** Topical steroids are not of much use.

- **Posterior subtenon injection of triamcinolone** 40 mg/3 weeks × 3 injections are indicated initially.
- **Systemic steroids** are given in unresponsive cases.

**Step 2: Immunosuppressive drugs** such as cyclosporine, azathioprine, methotrexate or cyclophosphamide should be given with careful monitoring of effects and potential side effects when step 1 measures fail.

**Step 3: Cryotherapy or indirect laser photocoagulation** should be tried in cases with snowbanking.

**Step 4: Pars-plana vitrectomy** is indicated in severe cases and when step 3 measures fail. It helps by removing inflammatory debris, antigenic load and



possible traction on macula. Its role in tractional RD is unequivocal.

## POSTERIOR UVEITIS

Posterior uveitis refers to inflammation of the choroid (choroiditis). Since the outer layers of retina are in close contact with the choroid and also depend on it for the nourishment, the choroidal inflammation almost always involves the adjoining retina, and the resultant lesion is called *chorioretinitis*.

### Etiology and Pathology

These are same as described for uveitis in general considerations.

**Common causes of posterior uveitis** (chorioretinitis) are summarised below:

#### I. Infectious

- **Virus:** CMV, HSV, Herpes zoster, rubella, rubeola (measles)
- **Bacteria:** TB, Brucellosis, Lyme's disease, Hematogenously spread gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria
- **Fungi:** *Candida*, *Histoplasma*, blastomycosis, *Cryptococcus*, *Aspergillus*
- **Parasite:** *Toxoplasma*, *toxocara*, *cysticercus*, *onchocerca*.

#### II. Non-infectious

- **Autoimmune:** Behcet's disease (HLA-B5), Vogt-Koyanagi-Harada syndrome, SLE, Wegener's granulomatosis, sympathetic ophthalmia
- **Malignancy:** Intraocular lymphoma, malignant melanoma, leukemia
- **Unknown etiology:** Sarcoidosis, serpiginous choroiditis, Birdshot chorioretinopathy, retinal pigmented epitheliopathy.

**Causes of Intermediate uveitis** (Pars planitis)

- **Idiopathic.** In most cases etiology is unknown.
- **Known causes** are TB, syphilis, Lyme disease, sarcoidosis, multiple sclerosis.

### Clinical features

#### Symptoms

Choroiditis (non-suppurative inflammation) is a painless condition with no photophobia, lacrimation or circumcorneal congestion. It is usually characterised by visual symptoms due to associated vitreous haze and involvement of the retina. Therefore, small patches situated in periphery may be symptomless and are usually discovered as healed patches on routine fundus examination. On the contrary, a central patch produces marked symptoms which draw immediate attention. Various visual symptoms experienced by a patient of choroiditis are summarised below:

1. **Defective vision.** It is usually mild due to vitreous haze, but may be severe as in central choroiditis.
2. **Photopsia.** It is a subjective sensation of flashes of light resulting due to irritation of rods and cones.
3. **Black spots floating in front of the eyes.** It is a very common complaint of such patients. They occur due to large exudative clumps in the vitreous.
4. **Metamorphopsia.** Herein, patients perceive distorted images of the object. This results due to alteration in the retinal contour caused by a raised patch of choroiditis.
5. **Micropsia** which results due to separation of visual cells is a common complaint. In this, the objects appear smaller than they are.
6. **Macropsia**, i.e. perception of the objects larger than they are, may occur due to crowding together of rods and cones.
7. **Positive scotoma**, i.e. perception of a fixed large spot in the field of vision, corresponding to the lesion may be noted by many patients.

#### Signs

**I. Anterior segment signs.** Usually, there are no external signs and the eye looks quiet. However, fine KPs may be seen on biomicroscopy due to associated cyclitis.

**II. Vitreous opacities** due to choroiditis are usually present in its middle or posterior part. These may be fine, coarse, stringy or snowball opacities.

**III. Features of a patch of choroiditis** are as below.

1. **Active patch of choroiditis**, looks as a pale-yellow or dirty white raised area with ill-defined edges. This results due to exudation and cellular infiltration of the choroid which hide the choroidal vessels. The lesion is typically deeper to the retinal vessels. The overlying retina is often cloudy and oedematous. There may be associated vasculitis.

2. **Healed patch of choroiditis**, when active inflammation subsides, becomes more sharply defined and delineated from the rest of the normal area due to atrophy of choroidal tissue. The involved area shows white sclera below the atrophic choroid and black pigmented clumps at the periphery of the lesion (Figs 8.16 and 8.17). A healed patch of chorioretinitis must be differentiated from the degenerative conditions such as pathological myopia and retinitis pigmentosa.

### Clinical types of posterior uveitis

#### I. Choroiditis

Depending upon the number and location of lesions choroiditis can be classified into three types: focal, multifocal and diffuse.



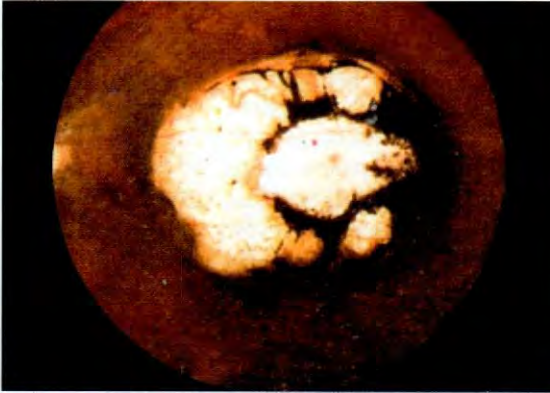


Fig. 8.16 A healed patch of central chorioretinitis

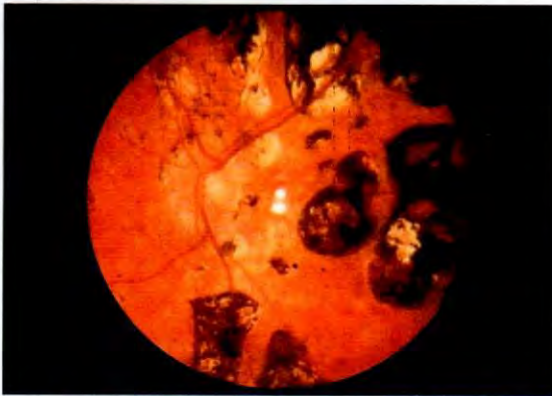


Fig. 8.17 Healed lesions of multifocal choroiditis

### Focal choroiditis

Focal choroiditis also known as **localized or circumscribed choroiditis**. It is characterised by a **single patch or a few small patches of inflammation localised in a particular area**. Such patches of choroiditis are described by a name depending upon the location of the lesion which are as follows:

**1. Central choroiditis.** As the name indicates it **involves the macular area** and may occur either alone (Fig. 8.16) or **in combination with disseminated choroiditis**. A typical patch of central choroiditis may occur in **toxoplasmosis, histoplasmosis, tuberculosis, syphilis** and rarely due to **visceral larva migrans**.

**2. Juxtacaecal or juxtapapillary choroiditis.** It is the name given to a patch of choroiditis involving an area adjoining the optic disc. One example is **Jensen's choroiditis** which typically occurs in young persons.

**3. Anterior peripheral choroiditis.** It implies occurrence of **multiple small patches of choroiditis in the peripheral part of choroid (anterior to equator)**. Such lesions are often **syphilitic** in origin.

**4. Equatorial choroiditis.** It involves the choroid in the **equatorial region only**.

### Multifocal choroiditis

Multifocal choroiditis also known as **disseminated choroiditis** is characterised by **multiple but small areas of inflammation scattered over the greater part of choroid** (Fig. 8.17). Such a condition may be due to **syphilis or tuberculosis**, but in many cases the cause is **obscure**.

### Diffuse or geographic choroiditis

It refers to **large spreading lesions involving most of the choroidal tissue**. It is usually **tubercular or syphilitic** in origin.

### Complications

These include **extension of the inflammation to anterior uvea, complicated cataract, vitreous degeneration, macular oedema, secondary periphlebitis retinae and retinal detachment**.

### Treatment

**Periocular and systemic corticosteroids** constitute the mainstay of treatment. **Posterior subtenon injections of depot corticosteroids** are effective in checking the acute phase of posterior uveitis.

**Immunosuppressive** agents may be required **to check the inflammation** in cases not responding to steroids.

**Specific treatment** is required for the causative disease such as **toxoplasmosis, toxocariasis, tuberculosis, syphilis**, etc.

## SPECIFIC CLINICO-ETIOLOGICAL TYPES OF NON-SUPPURATIVE UVEITIS

Detailed description of each such clinical entity is beyond the scope of this chapter. However, classification and salient features of some common clinico-etiological types of nonsuppurative uveitis are described here:

### Classification

#### A. Infectious uveitis

##### I. Uveitis in chronic systemic bacterial infections:

1. Tubercular uveitis
2. Leprotic uveitis

##### II. Spirochetal uveitis

1. Syphilitic uveitis

##### III. Viral uveitis

1. Herpes simplex uveitis
2. Herpes zoster uveitis
3. Acquired cytomegalovirus uveitis
4. Uveitis in acquired immune deficiency syndrome (AIDS)

##### IV. Parasitic uveitis

1. Toxoplasmosis
2. Toxocariasis
3. Onchocerciasis
4. Amoebiasis



**V. Fungal uveitis**

1. Presumed ocular histoplasmosis syndrome
2. Candidiasis.

**B. Non-infectious uveitis****I. Uveitis in non-infectious systemic diseases**

1. Uveitis in sarcoidosis
2. Behcet's disease

**II. Uveitis associated with arthritis**

1. Uveitis with ankylosing spondylitis
2. Reiter's syndrome
3. Still's disease

**III. Lens-induced uveitis**

1. Phacotoxic uveitis
2. Phacoanaphylactic endophthalmitis

**IV. Traumatic uveitis****V. Idiopathic specific uveitis syndromes**

1. Fuchs' uveitis syndrome
2. Intermediate uveitis (See page 166)
3. Sympathetic ophthalmitis (See page 455)
4. Glaucomatocyclitic crisis
5. Vogt-Koyanagi-Harada's syndrome
6. Bird shot retinochoroidopathy
7. Acute multifocal placoid pigment epitheliopathy (AMPPE)
8. Serpiginous choroidopathy

**C. Masquerade Syndrome**

- Non-neoplastic
- Neoplastic.

**A. INFECTIOUS UVEITIS****I. UVEITIS IN CHRONIC SYSTEMIC BACTERIAL INFECTIONS****■ TUBERCULAR UVEITIS**

Tuberculosis is a chronic granulomatous infection caused by bovine or human tubercle bacilli. It may cause both anterior and posterior uveitis. At one time very common, it is still not a rare cause. It accounts for 1% of uveitis in developed countries. However, in developing countries, it still continues to be a common cause of uveitis.

**Clinical presentations**

1. **Tubercular anterior uveitis.** It may occur as acute nongranulomatous iridocyclitis or granulomatous anterior uveitis which in turn may be in the form of miliary tubercular iritis or conglomerate granuloma (solitary tuberculoma).

2. **Tubercular posterior uveitis.** It may occur as:

- i. **Multiple miliary tubercles** in the choroid which appear as round yellow white nodules one-sixth to two and half disc diameter in size. These are usually associated with tubercular meningitis.

ii. **Douse or multifocal choroiditis** may occur in chronic tuberculosis.

iii. **Choroidal granuloma** may occur rarely as a focal lesion.

3. **Vasculitis.** (Eales' disease) is another manifestation of tuberculosis (See page 276).

**Diagnosis**

There is no specific clinical finding in tubercular uveitis. Diagnosis is made from positive skin test, associated findings of systemic tuberculosis, intractable uveitis unresponsive to steroid therapy, a positive response to isoniazid test (a dramatic response of iritis to isoniazid 300 mg OD for 3 weeks).

**Treatment**

In addition to usual treatment of uveitis, chemotherapy with rifampicin and isoniazid should be given for 12 months. Systemic corticosteroids should be deferred.

**■ LEPROTIC UVEITIS**

Leprosy (Hansen's disease) is caused by *Mycobacterium leprae* which is an acid-fast bacillus. The disease occurs in two principal forms: lepromatous and tuberculoid. Leprosy involves predominantly anterior uvea; more commonly in lepromatous than in the tuberculoid form of disease.

**Clinical types**

Lepromatous uveitis may occur as acute iritis (non-granulomatous) or chronic iritis (granulomatous).

1. **Acute iritis.** It is caused by antigen-antibody deposition and is characterised by severe exudative reaction.

2. **Chronic granulomatous iritis.** It occurs due to direct organismal invasion and is characterised by presence of small glistening 'iris pearls' near the pupillary margin in a necklace form; small pearls enlarge and coalesce to form large pearls. Rarely, a nodular lepromata may be seen.

**Treatment**

Besides usual local therapy of iridocyclitis antileprotic treatment with Dapsone 50-100 mg daily or other drugs should also be instituted.

**II. SPIROCHETAL UVEITIS****■ ACQUIRED SYPHILITIC UVEITIS**

Acquired syphilis is a chronic venereal infection caused by *Treponema pallidum* (spirochaete). It affects both the anterior and posterior uvea.

**1. Syphilitic anterior uveitis**

It may occur as acute plastic iritis or granulomatous iritis.



- **Acute plastic iritis** typically occurs in the secondary stage of syphilis and also as a **Herxheimer reaction** 24–48 hours after therapeutic dose of the penicillin.
- **Gummatous anterior uveitis** occurs late in the secondary or rarely during the tertiary stage of syphilis. It is characterised by formation of yellowish red highly vascularised multiple nodules arranged near the pupillary border or ciliary border of iris.

## 2. Syphilitic posterior uveitis

It may occur as disseminated, peripheral or diffuse choroiditis.

**Diagnosis.** Once suspected clinically, diagnosis is confirmed by FTA-ABS (fluorescent treponemal antibody absorption) blood test, which is specific and more sensitive than TPI (*Treponema pallidum* immobilisation) test and VDRL tests.

**Treatment.** In addition to local therapy of the uveitis, patient should be treated by systemic penicillin or other antisyphilitic drugs.

## III. PARASITIC UVEITIS

### ■ TOXOPLASMOSIS

It is a protozoan infestation caused by *Toxoplasma gondii*, derived from cats (definitive host). Humans and other animals (cattle, sheep and pigs) are intermediate hosts. The disease primarily affects central nervous system (brain and retina). Systemic lesions are more marked in immunocompromised patients (e.g. HIV+ patients) as compared to immunocompetent patients. Toxoplasmosis is the most common cause of posterior uveitis and accounts for approximately 90% of focal necrotizing retinitis.

### Clinical presentation

Systemic toxoplasmosis occurs in humans in three forms: congenital, acquired and recurrent.

#### 1. Congenital toxoplasmosis

It is much more common than the acquired form, and the infestation is acquired by the foetus through transplacental route from the mother contracting acute infestation during pregnancy. When pregnant females catch disease, about 49% infants are born with the disease which may be active or inactive at birth.

Most of the infants are born with inactive disease, characterised by bilateral healed punched out heavily pigmented chorioretinal scars in the macular area (See Fig. 8.16), which is usually discovered when the child is brought for defective vision or squint check-up.

#### 2. Acquired toxoplasmosis

In the past, acquired toxoplasmosis was considered of doubtful existence and most toxoplasmosis was

thought to be congenital but acquired disease is increasingly recognized. The infestation is acquired by eating the under-cooked meat of intermediate host containing cyst form of the parasite. Most of the patients are subclinical (asymptomatic); and the typical chorioretinal lesion similar to congenital toxoplasmosis is discovered by chance. Other lesions include punctate outer retinal toxoplasmosis (PORT). More common in HIV+ patients.

#### 3. Recurrent toxoplasmic retinochoroiditis

**Pathogenesis.** The parasites reaching the foetus through placenta involve its brain and retina, and also excite antibodies formation. After healing of the active retinal lesion (with which the infant is born), the parasites remain encysted there in inactive form. After about 10–40 years (average 25 years), the retinal cysts rupture and release hundreds of parasites, which by direct invasion cause a fresh lesion of focal necrotizing retinochoroiditis, adjacent to the edge of old inactive pigmented scar. In addition to this lesion, an inflammation in the iris, choroid and retinal vessels is excited due to antigen-antibody reaction.

**Characteristic features.** Recurrent toxoplasmic retinochoroiditis is a very common disease. It is characterised by a whitish-yellow, slightly raised area of infiltration located near the margin of old punched out scarred lesion in the macular region associated with severe vitritis. There may be associated non-granulomatous type of mild anterior uveitis.

### Diagnosis and treatment

**Diagnosis.** The clinically suspected lesion is confirmed by 'Indirect fluorescein antibody test', haemagglutination test or ELISA test. The old methylene blue dye test is obsolete.

**Treatment.** The active lesion of toxoplasmosis is treated by topical and systemic steroids along with a course of an antitoxoplasmic drug either spiramycin, clindamycin, sulfadiazine or pyrimethamine.

### ■ TOXOCARIASIS

It is an infestation caused by an intestinal round-worm of dogs (*Toxocara canis*) and cats (*Toxocara cati*). The young children who play with dogs and cats or eat dirt are infested by ova of these worms. These ova develop into larva in the human gut, and then produce the condition visceral larva migrans (VLM).

**Ocular toxocariasis.** It is ocular infestation by these larva and is almost always unilateral. Clinically, it can present as follows:

- **Toxocara chronic endophthalmitis.** It usually presents with leucocoria due to marked vitreous



clouding. The condition is seen in children between the age of 2–10 years and mimics retinoblastoma.

■ **Posterior pole granuloma.** It presents as a yellow-white, round, solitary, raised nodule, about 1–2 disc diameter in size, located either at the macula or in the centrocaecal area. The condition is usually seen in children between 5 and 15 years of age, presenting with unilateral loss of vision.

■ **Peripheral granuloma.** It is situated anterior to the equator and may be associated with vitreous band formation. It may present from 6 to 40 years of age.

**Diagnosis** is made on the basis of clinical feature and ELISA blood test.

**Treatment.** It consists of periocular (posterior sub-Tenon) injection of steroid and systemic steroids. Pars plana vitrectomy may be required in unresponsive patients with endophthalmitis and in patients with vitreous band formation.

## IV. FUNGAL UVEITIS

### ■ PRESUMED OCULAR HISTOPLASMOSIS SYNDROME (POHS)

#### **Etiology**

It is thought to be caused by the fungus *Histoplasma capsulatum* (though the fungus has not been isolated from the affected eyes); as the disease is more common in areas where histoplasmosis is endemic (e.g. Mississippi-Ohio-Missouri river valley) and 90% of patients with POHS show positive histoplasmin skin test. POHS has also been reported from United Kingdom, suggesting that perhaps some other etiological agents are also capable of producing the disease.

#### **Clinical features**

POHS is characterised by following features:

**Histo spots.** These are atrophic spots scattered in the mid-retinal periphery. They are roundish, yellowish-white lesions measuring 0.2 to 0.7 disc diameter in size. These begin to appear in early childhood and represent the scars of disseminated histoplasma choroiditis.

**Macular lesion.** It starts as atrophic macular scar (macular histo spot); followed by a hole in the Bruch's membrane, which then allows ingrowth of capillaries leading to subretinal choroidal neovascularisation. Leakage of fluid from the neovascular membrane causes serous detachment, which when complicated by repeated haemorrhages constitutes haemorrhagic detachment. Ultimately, there develops fibrous disciform scar, which is associated with a marked permanent visual loss.

#### **Diagnosis**

The clinical diagnosis is supported but not confirmed by positive histoplasmin test, and complement fixation tests (negative in two-thirds cases). Fluorescein angiography helps in early diagnosis of subretinal neovascular membrane.

#### **Treatment**

Active lesions at the macula are often treated with systemic corticosteroids. Early laser photocoagulation of subretinal neovascular membrane may prevent marked permanent visual loss which occurs due to fibrous disciform scars. For subfoveal membrane PDT should be considered. Emerging therapy include anti-VEGF treatment.

### ■ CANDIDIASIS

It is an opportunistic infection caused by *Candida albicans*. It occurs in immunocompromised patients which include: patients suffering from AIDS, malignancies, those receiving long-term antibiotics, steroids or cytotoxic drugs. Patients with long-term indwelling intravenous catheter used for haemodialysis, and drug addicts are also prone to such infection.

#### **Ocular candidiasis**

It is not a common condition. It may occur as anterior uveitis, multifocal chorioretinitis, or endophthalmitis.

1. **Anterior uveitis** is associated with hypopyon.

2. **Multifocal chorioretinitis** is a more common manifestation. It is characterised by occurrence of multiple small, round, whitish areas, which may be associated with areas of haemorrhages with pale centre (Roth's spots).

3. **Candida endophthalmitis** is characterised by areas of severe retinal necrosis associated with vitreoretinal abscesses. Vitreous exudates present as 'puff ball' or 'cotton ball' colonies, which when joined by exudative strands form 'string of pearls'.

#### **Treatment**

It consists of:

- Topical cycloplegics, and antifungal drugs.
- Systemic antifungal drugs like ketoconazole, flucytosine or amphotericin-B are also needed.
- Pars plana vitrectomy is required for *Candida* endophthalmitis.

## V. VIRAL UVEITIS

### ■ UVEITIS IN HERPES ZOSTER OPHTHALMICUS

Herpes zoster ophthalmicus (HZO) is the involvement of ophthalmic division of fifth nerve by varicella zoster (described on page 114).



**Anterior uveitis** develops in 40–50% cases with HZO within 2 weeks of onset of the skin rashes. A typical HZO keratitis may be associated with mild iritis especially in patients with a vesicular eruption on the tip of nose. The iridocyclitis is **non-granulomatous** characterised by presence of small KPs, mild aqueous flare and occasional haemorrhagic hypopyon. **Complications** like **iris atrophy** and **secondary glaucoma** are not uncommon. Complicated cataract may also develop in late stages.

**Treatment.** Topical steroids and cycloplegics to be continued for several months. **Systemic acyclovir** helps in early control of lesions of HZO.

### ■ HERPES SIMPLEX UVEITIS

It is associated with keratitis in most of the cases. It may be seen in association with dendritic or geographical corneal ulceration or with disciform keratitis. Rarely, anterior uveitis may occur even without keratitis. It is a mild grade non-granulomatous iridocyclitis excited by hypersensitivity reaction.

**Treatment.** Keratitis is treated with antiviral drugs and cycloplegics. Steroids for iritis are contraindicated in the presence of active viral ulcers. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs may be added in such cases.

### ■ CYTOMEGALOVIRUS RETINITIS

Cytomegalovirus (CMV) retinitis usually occurs in immunocompromised patients, e.g. those suffering from AIDS, on cytotoxic chemotherapy, or long-term immunosuppression following renal transplantation. It is the **most frequent (40% prevalence) ocular opportunistic infection** in patients with AIDS. It occurs only when CD 4+ counts <50 cells mm.<sup>3</sup> However, since the advent of Highly Active Antiretroviral Therapy (HAART) there has occurred a dramatic reduction in CMV retinitis.

#### **Clinical features**

**Symptoms.** Often asymptomatic, some patients may present with scotoma or decreased vision and/or floaters in one or both eyes.

**Anterior segment signs** are usually absent. Rarely few stellate KPs may be seen.

**Posterior segment signs** include:

■ **Haemorrhagic retinitis** (See Fig. 12.5) characterised by areas of necrosis (yellow white exudates) associated with areas of vasculitis (perivascular sheathing), **retinal haemorrhages** and loss of fundal details (**pizza pie appearance**) is a typical presentation in fulminant form of the disease. There occurs progressive retinal atrophy.

■ **Granular retinitis** characterised by peripheral granular opacities with occasional haemorrhage seen in indolent form of the disease.

■ **Complications** include **retinal detachment** (up to 30%), **retinal atrophy** and **optic nerve disease**.

#### **Treatment**

- HAART is recommended to reduce retroviral load and to increase CD4+ count in patients with AIDS.
- **Specific anti-CMV treatment** includes: valganciclovir, ganciclovir, foscarnet, and intravenous injections of **cidofovir** individually or in combination.

### ■ ACUTE RETINAL NECROSIS

#### **Etiology**

Acute retinal necrosis (ARN) is a rare clinical syndrome caused by any of the following viruses:

- **Varicella-zoster virus (VZV).** It is the commonest cause of ARN, particularly in older patients.
- **Herpes simplex virus 1 and 2 (HSV 1 & 2)** both cause ARN, typically in younger patients.
- **Cytomegalovirus (CMV)** can also cause ARN, very rarely.

#### **Clinical features**

**Symptoms** include **decreased visual acuity**, **floaters**, **ocular discomfort**, **pain** and **photophobia**.

**Signs** are as follows:

- **Anterior segment** may or may not show signs of inflammation in the anterior chamber.
- **Vitritis** is usually marked.
- **Retinal lesions** include areas of **focal, well demarcated peripheral necrotising retinitis**, associated with occlusive arteritis. Posterior pole is typically spared.

**Complications** include: **retinal detachment** (rhegmatogenous or tractional), and **ischaemic optic neuropathy**.

#### **Treatment**

- **Systemic antiviral drugs**, e.g. aciclovir IV 10 mg/kg body weight TID, for two weeks then PO dose for 6–12 weeks. Alternative drug is valaciclovir.

**Note.** Lifelong antiviral cover is required in immunosuppressed patients.

- **Systemic steroids** are needed to control inflammation.
- **Aspirin** to prevent arterial occlusion.
- **Barrier laser photocoagulation** for retinal breaks.
- **Vitreotomy with silicon oil injection** for associated retinal detachment.

### ■ PROGRESSIVE OUTER RETINAL NECROSIS

Progressive outer retinal necrosis (PORN) is a very rare devastating necrotizing retinitis caused by a Varicella Zoster Virus (VZV) infection in immunocompromised patients (usually in patients suffering with AIDS with CD4+ T-cell counts <50/mm<sup>3</sup>).



**Clinical features**

- **Painless rapid loss of vision** in one or both eyes is the presenting symptom.
- **Retinal lesions** include rapidly coalescing white areas of outer retinal necrosis (often central as well as peripheral) but with minimal vasculitis, retinitis or vitritis (cf ARN). Retinal detachment is an extremely common complication.

**Treatment**

Treatment consists of **intravenous injection of ganciclovir or foscarnet** combined with intravitreal ganciclovir.

**B. NON-INFECTIOUS UVEITIS****I. UVEITIS ASSOCIATED WITH NON-INFECTIOUS SYSTEMIC DISEASES****■ UVEITIS IN SARCOIDOSIS**

Sarcoidosis is a granulomatous multi-system disease of unknown etiology, characterised by formation of **non-caseating epithelioid cell granuloma** in the affected tissue. The disease typically affects young adults (20–50 years), being more common in females than males, and more common in those of African heritage than Caucasians. It frequently presents with **bilateral hilar lymphadenopathy, pulmonary infiltration, skin and ocular lesions**.

**Ocular lesions**

Ocular lesions, occur in 20–50% patients with sarcoidosis and include **sarcoid uveitis, conjunctival lesions and lacrimal gland involvement**.

**1. Sarcoid uveitis**

Sarcoid uveitis accounts for 2% cases and may be anterior, intermediate, posterior or panuveitis.

1. **Anterior uveitis**. Typically presents as granulomatous iridocyclitis characterized by **iris nodules, large mutton fat KPs** (in a triangular distribution), **anterior chamber cells and flare, and posterior synechiae**.

2. **Intermediate uveitis** is characterized by **vitreous cells, snowball opacities and snowbanking**.

3. **Posterior uveitis** lesions include **choroidal and retinal granulomas, cystoid macular oedema, periphlebitis retinae with sheathing, appearing as candle wax droppings**. Peripheral multifocal chorioretinitis characterised by small, punched out atrophic spots, are highly suggestive of sarcoidosis.

**Uveoparotid fever (Heerfordt's syndrome)**. It is characterised by **bilateral granulomatous panuveitis, painful enlargement of parotid glands, cranial nerve palsies, skin rashes, fever and malaise**.

**Complications** of sarcoid uveitis include **complicated cataract, inflammatory glaucoma and cystoid macular oedema**.

**II. Other ocular lesions of sarcoidosis**

1. **Conjunctival lesions** include **sarcoid nodules**, and **keratoconjunctivitis sicca**.
2. **Lacrimal glands** may be enlarged. When associated with diffuse swelling of salivary glands, constitute the so called **Mickulicz's syndrome**.

**Diagnosis and treatment**

**Diagnosis**. Once suspected clinically, it is supported by positive Kveim test, abnormal X-ray chest (in 90% cases) and raised levels of serum angiotensin converting enzyme (ACE). **Confirmation of the disease is made by histological proof** from biopsy of the conjunctival nodule, skin lesions or enlarged lymph node.

**Treatment** of sarcoid uveitis is on general lines (See page 164). In short, topical, periocular and systemic steroids constitute the treatment of sarcoid uveitis, depending upon the severity.

**■ BEHCET'S DISEASE**

It is an **idiopathic multisystem disease** characterised by **recurrent, non-granulomatous uveitis, aphthous ulceration, genital ulcerations and erythema multi-forme**.

**Etiology**. It is still **unknown**; the basic lesion is an obliterative vasculitis probably **caused by circulating immune complexes**. The disease typically affects the young men who are positive for HLA-B51.

**Clinical features**. **Uveitis seen in Behcet's disease** is typically **bilateral, acute recurrent iridocyclitis associated with hypopyon**. It may also be associated with **posterior uveitis, vitritis, periphlebitis retinae and retinitis** in the form of white necrotic infiltrates.

**Treatment**. **No satisfactory treatment is available**, and thus the disease has got comparatively poor visual prognosis.

- **Corticosteroids** may be helpful initially but ultimate response is poor.
- **Immunosuppressive drugs** such as methotrexate, azathioprine and cyclosporine are needed in resistant cases and for an acute flare.

**II. UVEITIS ASSOCIATED WITH ARTHRITIS****■ UVEITIS WITH ANKYLOSING SPONDYLITIS**

**Ankylosing spondylitis** is an **idiopathic chronic inflammatory arthritis**, usually involving the



sacroiliac and posterior inter-vertebral joints. The disease affects young males (20–40 years) who are positive for HLA-B27. About 30 to 35% patients with ankylosing spondylitis develop uveitis.

**Clinical features.** Uveitis associated with ankylosing spondylitis is characteristically an acute, recurrent, non-granulomatous type of iridocyclitis. The disease usually affects one eye at a time.

**Treatment.** It is on the lines of usual treatment of anterior uveitis (See page 164). Long-term aspirin or indomethacin may decrease the recurrences.

### ■ REITER'S SYNDROME

It is characterised by a triad of urethritis, arthritis and conjunctivitis with or without iridocyclitis.

**Etiology.** It is not known exactly. The syndrome typically involves young males who are positive for HLA-B27. The disease occurs in three forms: postvenereal due to non-gonococcal arthritis, postdysenteric and articular form.

**Ocular features.** These include:

- Acute mucopurulent conjunctivitis which may be associated with superficial punctate keratitis.
- Acute non-granulomatous type of iridocyclitis occurs in 20–30% cases of Reiter's syndrome.

**Treatment.** The iridocyclitis responds well to usual treatment (See page 164). A course of systemic tetracycline 250 mg QID for 10 days may be useful in postvenereal form suspected of being caused by Chlamydia infection.

### ■ JUVENILE IDIOPATHIC ARTHRITIS

Juvenile idiopathic arthritis (JIA) is a chronic inflammatory arthritis involving multiple joints (knee, elbow, ankle and interphalangeal joints) in children below the age of 16 years. The disease is also referred as *Juvenile rheumatoid arthritis*, though the patients are seronegative for rheumatoid factor. In 30% cases, polyarthritis is associated with hepatosplenomegaly and other systemic features, and the condition is labelled as *Still's disease*.

**Anterior uveitis associated with JIA** is a bilateral (70%), chronic non-granulomatous disease, affecting female children more than the male (4:1). It usually develops before the age of 6 years. Nearly half of the patients are positive for HLA-DW5 and 75% are positive for antinuclear antibodies (ANA). The onset of uveitis is asymptomatic and the eye is white even in the presence of severe uveitis. Therefore, slit-lamp examination is mandatory in children suffering from JIA.

**Complications** like posterior synechiae, complicated cataract and band-shaped keratopathy are fairly common.

**Treatment** is on the usual lines (See page 164).

## III. LENS-INDUCED UVEITIS

### ■ PHACOANAPHYLACTIC UVEITIS

It is an immunologic response to lens proteins in the sensitized eyes presenting as severe granulomatous anterior uveitis. The disease may occur following extracapsular cataract extraction, trauma to lens or leak of proteins in hypermature cataract.

**Clinical features.** These include severe pain, loss of vision, marked congestion and signs of granulomatous iridocyclitis associated with presence of lens matter in the anterior chamber.

**Treatment.** It consists of removal of causative lens matter, topical steroids and cycloplegics. Visual prognosis is usually poor.

### ■ Phacotoxic Uveitis

It is an ill-understood entity. This term is used to describe mild iridocyclitis associated with the presence of lens matter in the anterior chamber either following trauma or extracapsular cataract extraction or leak from hypermature cataracts. The uveal response due to direct toxic effect of lens matter or a mild form of allergic reaction is yet to be ascertained.

**Treatment.** It consists of removal of lens matter, topical steroids and cycloplegics.

## IV. TRAUMATIC UVEITIS

See page 447.

## V. IDIOPATHIC SPECIFIC UVEITIS SYNDROMES

### ■ FUCHS' UVEITIS SYNDROME (FUS)

Fuchs' 'heterochromic iridocyclitis' is a chronic non-granulomatous type of low grade anterior uveitis typically associated with early cataract formation. It typically occurs unilaterally in middle-aged persons.

### ■ Clinical features

The disease is characterised by:

- Heterochromia of iris,
- Diffuse stromal iris atrophy, (moth-eaten appearance), may cause transillumination defects,
- Fine stellate KPs at the back of cornea,
- Faint aqueous flare,
- Absence of posterior synechiae,
- A fairly common rubeosis iridis, sometimes associated with neovascularisation of the angle of anterior chamber, and
- Comparatively early development of complicated cataract and secondary glaucoma (usually open angle type).



**Treatment**

- Topical corticosteroids are all that is required.
- Cycloplegics are not required as usually there are no posterior synechiae.
- Associated glaucoma should be treated as for POAG.

**■ GLAUCOMATOCYCLITIC CRISIS****Clinical features**

Posner Schlossman syndrome is characterised by:

- Recurrent unilateral attacks of acute rise of intraocular pressure (40–50 mm of Hg) without shallowing of anterior chamber associated with,
- Fine KPs at the back of cornea, without any posterior synechiae,
- Epithelial oedema of cornea,
- Dilated pupil,
- White eye (no congestion), and
- The disease typically affects young adults, 40% of whom are positive for HLA-BW54.

**Treatment**

- Antiglaucoma drugs, to lower intraocular pressure, and along with
- Topical steroids, a short course.

**■ SYMPATHETIC OPHTHALMITIS**

It is a rare bilateral granulomatous panuveitis which is known to occur following penetrating ocular trauma usually associated with incarceration of uveal tissue in the wound. The injured eye is called 'exciting eye' and the fellow eye which also develops uveitis is called 'sympathising eye'. (For details See page 455).

**■ VOGT-KOYANAGI-HARADA (VKH) SYNDROME**

3m

It is an idiopathic multisystem disorder which includes cutaneous, neurological and ocular lesions. The disease is comparatively more common in Japanese who are usually positive for HLA-DR4 and DW15.

**Clinical features** are as follows:

1. Cutaneous lesions include: alopecia, poliosis and vittigo.
2. Neurological lesions are in the form of meningism, and encephalopathy.
3. Auditory features: tinnitus, vertigo and deafness.
4. Ocular features include:
  - i. Anterior uveitis is typically bilateral chronic granulomatous characterised by iris nodules, posterior synechiae.
  - ii. Posterior uveitis lesions include multifocal choroiditis leading to exudative retinal detachment, choroidal depigmentation (sunset

glow fundus), Dalen-Fuchs nodules and peripheral yellow-white choroidal granuloma.

**Complications** include: cataract, glaucoma and CNV membrane.

**Treatments** of uveitis is on general lines (See page 164).

- Corticosteroids administered topically, periocularly and systemically (in high doses) constitute the main stay of treatment.
- Immunosuppressive drugs such as methotrexate, azathioprine, and cyclosporine should be considered for resistant and recurrent cases.

**■ ACUTE POSTERIOR MULTIFOCAL PLACOID PIGMENT EPITHELIOPATHY (APMPPE)**

**Clinical features.** It is a rare idiopathic self-limiting disorder characterised by:

- Bilateral, deep, placoid, cream coloured or grey white chorioretinal lesions involving the posterior pole and post-equatorial part of the fundus.
- Visual loss, seen in early stage due to macular lesions, usually recovers within 2 weeks.
- After healing, multifocal areas of depigmentation and pigment clumping involving the retinal pigment epithelium are left.

**Complications**, though rare, include mild anterior uveitis, vascular sheathing, and exudative retinal detachment.

**Treatment.** No treatment is effective.

**■ SERPIGINOUS GEOGRAPHICAL CHOROIDOPATHY**

It is a rare, idiopathic, recurrent, bilaterally asymmetrical inflammation involving the choriocapillaris and pigment epithelium of the retina. The disease:

- Typically affects patients between 40 and 60 years of age.
- Characteristic lesions are: cream coloured patches with hazy borders present around the optic disc which spread in a tongue fashion.
- After few weeks the lesions heal leaving behind punched out areas of retinal pigment epithelium and choroidal atrophy.
- No treatment is effective.

**■ BIRD-SHOT RETINOCHOROIDOPATHY**

It is a rare, idiopathic, bilaterally symmetrical chronic multifocal chorioretinitis characterised by:

- Numerous flat creamy-yellow spots due to focal chorioretinal hypopigmentation, resembling the pattern of 'bird-shot scatter from a shotgun'.



- The disease, **more common in females** than males, typically affects **middle-aged healthy persons** who are positive for **HLA-A29**.
- It runs a **long chronic course** of several years.

**Treatment** with **corticosteroids** is usually not effective.

## PURULENT UVEITIS

Purulent uveitis is **suppurative inflammation of the uveal tract** occurring as a result of **direct invasion by the pyogenic organisms**. It may start as **purulent anterior uveitis (iridocyclitis)** or **purulent posterior uveitis (choroiditis)** which soon progresses to involve the **retina and vitreous**, resulting in **purulent endophthalmitis** and ultimately leading to **panophthalmitis**.

## ENDOPHTHALMITIS 10m

Endophthalmitis is defined as an **inflammation of the inner structures of the eyeball**, i.e. uveal tissue and retina associated with **pouring of exudates in the vitreous cavity**, **anterior chamber** and **posterior chamber**.

### Etiology

Etiologically endophthalmitis may be **infectious** or **non-infectious (sterile)**.

#### A. Infective endophthalmitis

##### Modes of infection

1. **Exogenous infections**. Purulent inflammations are generally caused by **exogenous infections following perforating injuries**, **perforation of infected corneal ulcers** or as **postoperative infections** following intraocular operations.

2. **Endogenous or metastatic endophthalmitis**. It may occur **rarely through bloodstream** from some infected focus in the body such as **caries teeth**, **generalised septicaemia** and **puerperal sepsis**.

3. **Secondary infections from surrounding structures**. It is very rare. However, cases of purulent intraocular inflammation have been reported **following extension of infection from orbital cellulitis**, **thrombophlebitis** and **infected corneal ulcers**.

##### Causative organisms

1. **Bacterial endophthalmitis**. The most frequent pathogens causing acute bacterial endophthalmitis are **Gram-positive cocci**, i.e. **Staphylococcus epidermidis** and **Staphylococcus aureus**. Other causative bacteria include **Streptococci**, **Pseudomonas**, **Pneumococci** and **Corynebacterium**. **Propionibacterium acnes** and **Actinomyces** are gram-positive organisms capable of producing slow-grade endophthalmitis.

2. **Fungal endophthalmitis** is comparatively **rare**. It is caused by **Aspergillus**, **Fusarium**, **Candida**, etc.

#### B. Non-infective (sterile) endophthalmitis

Sterile endophthalmitis refers to inflammation of inner structures of eyeball **caused by certain toxins/toxic substances**. It occurs in following situations.

1. **Postoperative sterile endophthalmitis** may occur as toxic reaction to:

- Chemicals **adherent to intraocular lens (IOL)** or
- Chemicals **adherent to instruments**.
- Severe reaction mainly confined to the anterior segment is also called '**Toxic anterior segment syndrome**' (TASS).

2. **Post-traumatic sterile endophthalmitis** may occur as toxic reaction to **retained intraocular foreign body**, e.g. **pure copper**.

3. **Phacoanaphylactic endophthalmitis** may be induced by **lens proteins** in patients with **Morgagnian cataract**.

4. **Intraocular tumour necrosis** may present as sterile endophthalmitis (**masquerade syndrome**).

**Note**. Since postoperative acute bacterial endophthalmitis is most important, so clinical features and treatment described below pertain to this condition.

#### Clinical feature of acute bacterial endophthalmitis

Acute postoperative endophthalmitis is a **catastrophic complication of intraocular surgery** with an incidence of about 0.1%.

**Source of infection**. In most of the cases is thought to be patient's own periorbital bacterial flora of the eyelids, conjunctiva, and lacrimal sac. Other potential **sources of infection** include **contaminated solutions and instruments**, and **environmental flora** including that of surgeon and operating room personnel.

##### Onset may be acute or delayed

- **Acute onset** of bacterial endophthalmitis usually occurs between 1–7 days of operation.
- **Delayed onset** endophthalmitis occurs a week to month after surgery. Fungi are the most common cause and **Propionibacterium acnes** is the second most common cause of delayed endophthalmitis.

**Symptoms**. Acute bacterial endophthalmitis is characterized by **severe ocular pain**, **redness**, **lacrimation**, **photophobia** and **loss of vision**.

**Signs** of an established case are as follows (Fig. 8.18):

1. **Lids** become red and swollen.
2. **Conjunctiva** shows chemosis and marked circumcorneal congestion.
3. **Cornea** is oedematous, cloudy and ring infiltration may be formed.
4. **Edges of wound** become yellow and necrotic and wound may gape (Fig. 8.19) in exogenous form.





Fig. 8.18 Postoperative acute endophthalmitis



Fig. 8.19 Severe postoperative endophthalmitis with wound gape

5. Anterior chamber shows hypopyon; soon it becomes full of pus.
6. Iris, when visible, is oedematous and muddy.
7. Pupil shows yellow reflex due to purulent exudation in vitreous. When anterior chamber becomes full of pus, iris and pupil details are not seen.
8. Vitreous exudation. In metastatic forms and in cases with deep infections, vitreous cavity is filled with exudation and pus. Soon a yellowish white mass is seen through fixed dilated pupil. This sign is called amaurotic cat's-eye reflex.
9. Intraocular pressure is raised in early stages, but in severe cases, the ciliary processes are destroyed, and a fall in intraocular pressure may ultimately result in shrinkage of the globe.

#### Treatment

An early diagnosis and vigorous therapy is the hallmark of the treatment of endophthalmitis. Following therapeutic regime is recommended for suspected bacterial endophthalmitis.

#### A. Antibiotic therapy

1. Intravitreal antibiotics and diagnostic tap should be made as early as possible. It is performed transconjunctivally under topical anaesthesia from the area of pars plana (4–5 mm from the limbus). The vitreous tap is made using 23-gauge needle followed by the intravitreal injection using a disposable tuberculin syringe and 30-gauge needle.

The mainstay of treatment of acute bacterial endophthalmitis is intravitreal injection of antibiotics at the earliest possible. Usually a combination of two antibiotics—one effective against gram-positive coagulase negative Staphylococci and the other against Gram-negative Bacilli is used as below:

- First choice: Vancomycin 1 mg in 0.1 mL plus ceftazidime 2.25 mg in 0.1 mL.

- Second choice: Vancomycin 1 mg in 0.1 mL plus amikacin 0.4 mg in 0.1 mL.

#### Note.

- Some surgeons prefer to add dexamethasone 0.4 mg in 0.1 mL to limit postinflammatory consequences.
- Gentamycin is 4 times more retinotoxic (causes macular infarction) than amikacin. Preferably the aminoglycosides should be avoided.
- The aspirated fluid sample from vitreous cavity should be used for bacterial culture and smear examination. If vitreous aspirate is collected in an emergency when immediate facilities for culture are not available, it should be stored promptly in refrigerator at 4°C.
- If there is no improvement, a repeat intravitreal injection should be given after 48 hours taking into consideration the reports of bacteriological examination.

2. Topical concentrated antibiotics should be started immediately and used frequently (every 30 minute to 1 hourly). To begin with, a combination of two drugs should be preferred, one having a predominant effect on the gram-positive organisms and the other against gram-negative organisms as below:

- Vancomycin (50 mg/mL) or cefazoline (50 mg/mL) plus.
- Amikacin (20 mg/mL) or tobramycin (15 mg%).

3. Systemic antibiotics have limited role in the management of endophthalmitis, but most of the surgeons do use them.

- Ciprofloxacin intravenous infusion 200 mg BD for 3–4 days followed by orally 500 mg BD for 6–7 days, or
- Vancomycin 1 g IV BD and ceftazidime 2 g IV 8 hourly, or
- Cefazoline 1.5 g IV 6 hourly and amikacin 1 g IV three times a day.



**B. Steroid therapy**

Steroids limit the tissue damage caused by inflammatory process. Most surgeons recommend their use after 24 to 48 hours of control of infection by intensive antibiotic therapy. However, some surgeons recommend their immediate use (controversial).

**Routes** of administration and doses are:

- Intravitreal injection of dexamethasone 0.4 mg in 0.1 mL along with antibiotics.
- Topical dexamethasone (0.1%) or predacetate (1%) used frequently.
- Systemic steroids. Oral corticosteroids should preferably be started after 24 hours of intensive antibiotic therapy. A daily therapy regime with 60 mg prednisolone to be followed by 50, 40, 30, 20 and 10 mg for 2 days, each may be adopted.
- Lansoprazole 30 mg OD should be given before steroids for gastric protection.

**C. Supportive therapy**

1. Cycloplegics. Preferably 1% atropine or alternatively 2% homatropine eye drops should be instilled TDS or QID.
2. Antiglaucoma drugs. In patients with raised intraocular pressure drugs such as oral acetazolamide (250 mg TDS) and timolol (0.5% BD) may be prescribed.

**D. Vitrectomy**

Vitrectomy operation should be performed if the patient does not improve with the above intensive therapy for 48 to 72 hours or when the patient presents with severe infection with visual acuity reduced to hand movement close to face. Vitrectomy helps in removal of infecting organisms, toxins and enzymes present in the infected vitreous mass.

**PANOPHTHALMITIS 5m**

It is an intense purulent inflammation of the whole eyeball including the Tenon's capsule. The disease usually begins either as purulent anterior or purulent posterior uveitis; and soon a full-fledged picture of panophthalmitis develops, following through a very short stage of endophthalmitis.

**Etiology**

- Panophthalmitis is an acute bacterial infection.
- Mode of infection and causative organisms are same as described for infective bacterial endophthalmitis (See page 176).

**Clinical features**

**Symptoms** include:

- Severe ocular pain and headache,
- Complete loss of vision,

- Profuse watering,
- Purulent discharge,
- Marked redness and swelling of the eyes, and
- Associated constitutional symptoms are malaise and fever.

**Signs** are as follows (Fig. 8.20):

1. Lids show a marked oedema and hyperaemia.
2. Eyeball is slightly proptosed, ocular movements are limited and painful.
3. Conjunctiva shows marked chemosis and ciliary as well as conjunctival congestion.
4. Cornea is cloudy and oedematous.
5. Anterior chamber is full of pus.
6. Vision is completely lost and perception of light is absent.
7. Intraocular pressure is markedly raised.
8. Globe perforation may occur at limbus, pus comes out and intraocular pressure falls.

**Complications** include:

- Orbital cellulitis,
- Cavernous sinus thrombosis, and
- Meningitis or encephalitis.

**Treatment**

There is little hope of saving such an eye and the pain and toxæmia lend an urgency to its removal.

1. Anti-inflammatory and analgesics should be started immediately to relieve pain.
2. Broad spectrum antibiotics should be administered to prevent further spread of infection in the surrounding structures.
3. Evisceration operation should be performed to avoid the risk of intracranial dissemination of infection.

**Evisceration 5m**

It is the removal of the contents of the eyeball leaving behind the sclera. Frill evisceration is preferred over



Fig. 8.20 Panophthalmitis



simple evisceration. In it, only about 3 mm frill of the sclera is left around the optic nerve.

**Indications.** These include: panophthalmitis, expulsive choroidal haemorrhage and bleeding anterior staphyloma.

**Surgical steps of frill evisceration** (Fig. 8.21).

**Initial steps** up to separation of the conjunctiva and Tenon's capsule are similar to enucleation (See page 320).

**Removal of cornea.** A cut at the limbus is made with a razor blade fragment or with a No. 11 scalpel blade and then the cornea is excised with corneoscleral scissors.

**Removal of intraocular contents.** The uveal tissue is separated from the sclera with the help of an evisceration spatula and the contents are scooped out using the evisceration curette.

**Separation of extraocular muscles** is done as for enucleation.

**Removal of sclera.** Using curved scissors the sclera is excised leaving behind only a 3 mm frill around the optic nerve.

**Closure of Tenon's capsule and conjunctiva** and other final steps are similar to enucleation (See page 320).

## DEGENERATIVE CONDITIONS OF UVEAL TRACT

### ■ DEGENERATIONS OF THE IRIS

1. **Simple iris atrophy.** It is characterised by depigmentation with thinning of iris stroma. Small patches of depigmentation are usually seen near the pupillary margin. Differential diagnosis of patch of simple iris atrophy may be senile atrophy, post-inflammatory, glaucomatous or neurogenic due to lesions of the ciliary ganglion.

2. **Essential iris atrophy.** It is a rare idiopathic condition characterised by unilateral progressive

atrophy of the iris. The condition typically affects young females 5 times more than the males. Initially there occurs displacement of pupil away from the atrophic zone. Slowly the iris tissue melts away at many places resulting in pseudopolyopia. In advanced cases, intractable glaucoma supervenes due to formation of dense anterior peripheral synechiae.

3. **Iridoschisis.** It is a rare bilateral atrophy occurring as a senile degeneration in patients over 65 years of age. It may also occur as a later effect of iris trauma. It is characterised by formation of a cleft between the anterior and posterior stroma of the iris. As a consequence the strands of anterior stroma float into the anterior chamber.

### ■ DEGENERATIONS AND DYSTROPHIES OF THE CHOROID

#### I. Primary choroidal degenerations

1. **Senile central choroidal atrophy.** It is characterised by formation of multiple drusens (colloid bodies) which look as yellowish spots. These are scattered throughout the fundus, but more marked in the macular area.

2. **Central areolar choroidal atrophy.** It comprises bilateral punched out, circular atrophic lesion in the macular region. The lesion is characterised by white shining sclera, traversed by large ribbon-shaped choroidal vessels. Thus, there occurs atrophy of the choriocapillaris, retinal pigment epithelium and photoreceptors.

3. **Essential gyrate atrophy.** It is an inborn error of amino acid (ornithine) metabolism characterised by progressive patches of atrophy of choroid and retinal pigment epithelium (RPE). The disease begins in first decade of life with symptoms of night blindness and progresses slowly to involve the whole fundus by the age of 40–50 years with preservation of only macula.

4. **Choroideremia.** It is a hereditary choroidal dystrophy involving the males. The disease begins in first decade of life with symptoms of night blindness and fine whitish patches of choroidal and RPE atrophy. The lesions progress slowly and by the age of 40 years almost whole of the choroidal tissue and RPE disappear rendering the patient blind. At this age fundus picture is characterised by whitish sclera with overlying almost normal retinal vessels.

5. **Myopic chorioretinal degeneration.** (See page 41)

#### II. Secondary choroidal degeneration

Secondary choroidal degeneration occurs following inflammatory lesions of the fundus. It is characterised

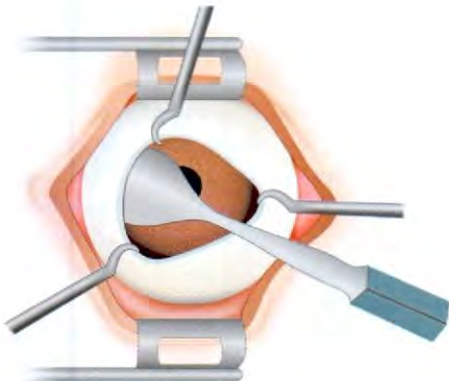


Fig. 8.21 Removal of intraocular contents in evisceration



by scattered area of chorioretinal atrophy and pigment clumping. Ophthalmoscopic picture resembles retinitis pigmentosa and hence also labelled sometimes as '*pseudoretinitis pigmentosa*'.

## TUMOURS OF UVEAL TRACT

### ■ CLASSIFICATION

- I. *Tumours of choroid*
  - a. Benign:
    1. Naevus
    2. Haemangioma
    3. Melanocytoma
    4. Choroidal osteoma
  - b. Malignant:
    1. Melanoma
- II. *Tumours of ciliary body*
  - a. Benign:
    1. Hyperplasia
    2. Benign cyst
    3. Medulloepithelioma
  - b. Malignant:
    1. Melanoma
- III. *Tumours of iris*
  - a. Benign:
    1. Naevus
    2. Benign cyst
    3. Naevoxantho-endothelioma
  - b. Malignant:
    1. Melanoma

## TUMOURS OF CHOROID

### ■ NAEVUS

It is a commonly occurring asymptomatic lesion, usually diagnosed on routine fundus examination. It typically presents as a flat, dark grey lesion with feathered margins, usually associated with overlying colloid bodies.

Once diagnosed, it should be followed regularly, since it may undergo malignant change which is evidenced by: (i) Increasing pigmentation or height of the naevus. (ii) Appearance of orange patches of lipofuscin over the surface and (iii) Appearance of serous detachment in the area of a naevus.

### ■ CHOROIDAL HAEMANGIOMA

It occurs in two forms:

1. **Localised choroidal haemangioma.** It presents as a raised, dome-shaped, salmon pink swelling usually situated at the posterior pole of the eye. Overlying retina may show serous detachment, cystoid degeneration and pigment epithelial mottling. Fluorescein angiography is usually diagnostic.
2. **Diffuse choroidal haemangioma.** It is seen in association with Sturge-Weber syndrome and causes diffuse deep red discoloration of the fundus.

### ■ MELANOCYTOMA

It is a rare tumour which presents as a jet black lesion around the optic disc.

### ■ CHOROIDAL OSTEOMA

It is a very rare benign tumour which presents as an elevated, yellowish-orange lesion in the posterior pole. It typically affects the young women.

### ■ MALIGNANT MELANOMA OF CHOROID

5m

It is the *most common primary intraocular tumour of adults*, usually seen between 40–70 years of age. It is rare in blacks and comparatively more common in whites. It arises from the neural crest derived pigment cells of the uvea (*dendritic melanocytes*) as a solitary tumour and is usually unilateral.

### Pathology

**Gross pathology.** The tumour may arise from a pre-existing naevus or *denovo* from the mature melanocytes present in the stroma. It may occur in two forms:

1. **Circumscribed (pedunculated) tumour:** Initially it appears as a flat, slate-grey area, which becomes raised and pigmented with growth and eventually ruptures through the Bruch's membrane (*Collar-Stud tumour*). Further, growth of the tumour produces exudative retinal detachment.
2. **Diffuse (flat) malignant melanoma:** It spreads slowly throughout the uvea, without forming a tumour mass. It accounts for only 5% of cases. In it symptoms occur late.

**Histopathology.** Microscopically uveal melanomas are of following four types (*Modified Callender's classification*):

1. **Spindle cell melanomas.** These are composed of spindle-shaped cells and make up 45% of all tumours. Such tumours have the best prognosis (80% 10 year survival).
2. **Epithelioid cell melanomas.** These consist of large, oval or round, pleomorphic cells with larger nuclei and abundant acidophilic cytoplasm. This type of tumours have the worst prognosis (35% 10 year survival). These make up 5% of all tumours.
3. **Mixed cell melanomas.** These are composed of both spindle and epithelioid cells and thus carry an intermediate prognosis (45% 10 year survival). These make up 45% of all tumours.
4. **Necrotic melanomas.** These make up the remaining 5% of all tumours. In these tumours, the predominant cell type is unrecognizable.



### Clinical features

For the purpose of description only the clinical features can be divided into **four stages**.

**1. Quiescent stage.** During this stage, symptoms depend upon the location and size of tumour. Small tumour located in the periphery may not produce any symptom, while tumours arising from the posterior pole present with early visual loss. A large tumour associated with exudative retinal detachment may produce marked loss of vision.

**Signs.** Fundus examination during this stage may reveal following signs:

i. A **small tumour** limited to the choroid appears as an **elevated pigmented oval mass** (Fig. 8.22). Rarely the tumour may be amelanotic. The **earliest pathognomonic sign** at this stage is **appearance of orange patches** in the pigment epithelium due to accumulation of the lipofuscin.

ii. A **large tumour** which penetrates through the Bruch's membrane and grows in the subretinal space as a dome-shaped mass and is characterised by a **large exudative retinal detachment** (Fig. 8.23). At the central summit, the retina is in contact with the tumour. **Ribbon-like wide vessels** are seen coursing over the tumour surface in the area. Other associated features which can be seen occasionally include **subretinal or intraretinal haemorrhage**, **choroidal folds** and **vitreous haemorrhage**. As the tumour grows, the **exudative retinal detachment deepens** and gradually the tumour fills the whole eye.

**2. Glaucomatous stage.** It develops **when tumour is left untreated during the quiescent stage**. **Glaucoma may develop due to obstruction to the venous outflow by pressure on the vortex veins**, **blockage of the angle of anterior chamber by forward displacement of the lens** or **iris diaphragm due to increasing growth of the tumour**.



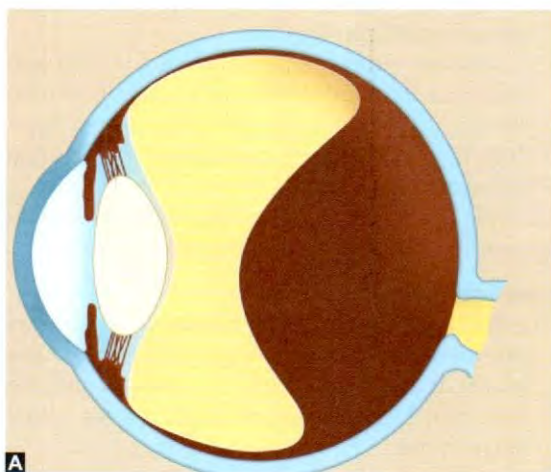
**Fig. 8.22** Fundus photograph showing choroidal melanoma as raised pigmented subretinal mass

**Symptoms.** The patient complains of **severe pain**, **redness** and **watering** in an already blind eye.

**Signs.** (i) **Conjunctiva is chemosed and congested**. (ii) **Cornea may show oedema**. (iii) **Anterior chamber is usually shallow**. (iv) **Pupil is fixed and dilated**. (v) **Lens is usually opaque**, obstructing the back view. (vi) **Intraocular pressure is raised**, usually eye is **stony hard**. (vii) Sometimes features of **iridocyclitis** may be seen due to tumour-induced uveitis.

**3. Stage of extraocular extension.** Due to progressive growth the tumour **may burst through sclera, usually at the limbus**. The extraocular spread may occur even early along the perivascular spaces of the vortex veins or ciliary vessels. It is **followed by rapid fungation and involvement of extraocular tissues** resulting in **marked proptosis** (Fig. 8.24).

**4. Stage of distant metastasis.** **Lymphatic spread** is usually not known. **Blood-borne metastasis usually occurs in liver** and is the commonest cause of death.

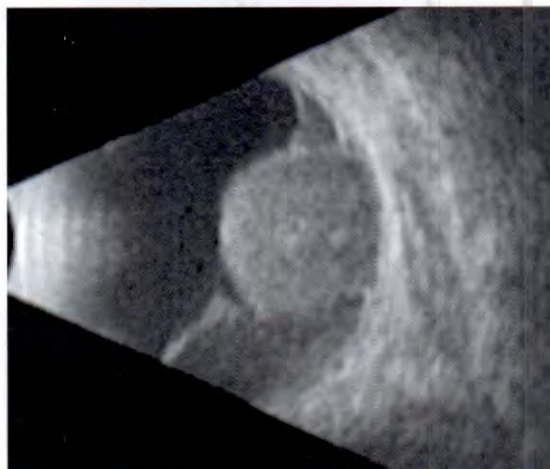


**Fig. 8.23** Malignant melanoma of the choroid causing exudative retinal detachment: A, Diagrammatic depiction in cut section; B, Fundus photograph





**Fig. 8.24** Extensive malignant melanoma of the choroid involving orbit



**Fig. 8.25** B-scan of a patient with choroidal melanoma showing dome-shaped tumour

### Differential diagnosis

1. **During quiescent stage** differential diagnosis may be considered as below:

- A small tumour without an overlying exudative retinal detachment should be differentiated from a naevus, melanocytoma and hyperplasia of the pigment epithelium.
- A tumour with overlying exudative retinal detachment should be differentiated from simple retinal detachment and other causes of exudative detachment especially choroidal haemangioma and secondary deposits.

2. **During glaucomatous stage** differentiation is to be made from other causes of acute glaucoma.

### Investigations

- Indirect ophthalmoscopic examination.** It allows three-dimensional stereoscopic view of the lesion. It also depicts the presence of shifting fluid, which is pathognomic of exudative retinal detachment.
- Transillumination test.** It indicates a tumour mass and thus helps to differentiate from choroidal detachment and simple retinal detachment.
- Ultrasonography.** Both A and B scan (Fig. 8.25) help to outline the tumour mass in the presence of hazy media.
- Fluorescein angiography** is of limited diagnostic value because there is no pathognomic pattern.
- Radioactive tracer.** It is based on the fact that the neoplastic tissue has an increased rate of phosphate ( $^{32}\text{P}$ ) uptake.
- MRI.** Choroidal melanomas are hyperintense in T1-weighted and hypointense in T2-weighted images.

### Treatment

1. **Observation.** When the diagnosis is doubtful, observation is indicated especially for small

asymptomatic lesions with absence of suspicious features (i.e. associated subretinal fluid/detachment, lipofuscin on the surface, thickness  $>2$  mm).

II. **Conservative treatment to salvage the eyeball** should be instituted when there is no doubt of diagnosis and the tumour is not very large. **Methods used for conservative treatment** and their indications are:

1. **Brachytherapy** using cobalt-60 or iodine-125 plaques surgically placed externally on the sclera is usually the treatment of choice in tumours less than 10 mm in elevation and less than 16 mm in basal diameter. **Supplemental transpupillary thermotherapy** may be required to enhance the results.

2. **External beam radiotherapy (EBR)** with protons or helium ions is indicated in tumours unsuitable for brachytherapy either because of size or posterior location to within 4 mm of disc or fovea.

3. **Transpupillary thermotherapy (TTT)** with diode laser is indicated in selected small tumours, particularly if pigmented and located near the fovea or optic disc. It can also be supplemented over brachytherapy to enhance results.

4. **Trans-scleral local resection** is indicated in tumours that are too thick for radiotherapy and usually less than 16 mm in diameter. It is a very difficult procedure which is performed under systemic arterial hypotension.

5. **Stereotactic radiosurgery** is a new method indicated in large tumours. It involves single-session delivery of ionizing radiation to a stereotactically localized volume of tissue with the help of Gamma knife.



**III. Enucleation.** It is indicated for very larger tumours >16 mm basal diameter or >10 mm apical height in which conservative methods to salvage the eyeball are not effective.

**IV. Exenteration or debulking with chemotherapy and radiotherapy** is required at the stage of extraocular spread.

**V. Palliative treatment with chemotherapy and immunotherapy** may be of some use in prolonging life of the patients with distant metastasis.

#### Prognostic indicators in uveal melanomas

- **Age of the patient.** Prognosis worsens with increasing age.
- **Size of tumour.** Larger the tumour, worse is the prognosis.
- **Location of tumour.** Ciliary melanomas carry worse prognosis as compared to choroidal melanomas.
- **Evidence of invasion.** Extrascleral or vortex vein involvement carry poor prognosis.
- **Cell type.** Spindle A carries the best prognosis followed by spindle B, mixed and epithelioid melanoma (worst).
- **Cytology.** Prognosis worsens with nucleolar size variation, vascular loops and mitotic activity.
- **Chromosomal abnormalities,** like monosomal 3 and partial duplication of chromosome 8 are associated with increased risk of metastasis and death.

### TUMOURS OF CILIARY BODY

#### Hyperplasia and benign cyst

These are insignificant lesions of the ciliary body.

#### Medulloepithelioma (Diktyoma)

It is a rare congenital tumour arising from the nonpigmented epithelium of the ciliary body. It presents in the first decade of life.

#### Malignant melanoma

In the ciliary body, it is usually diagnosed very late, due to its hidden location. It may extend anteriorly, posteriorly or grow circumferentially.

#### Clinical features

1. **Earliest features** of a localised melanoma include slight hypotony, unaccountable defective vision and localised 'sentinel' dilated episcleral veins in the quadrant containing tumour.

2. **An anterior spreading tumour** may present as follows:

- i. It may cause pressure on the lens resulting in anterior displacement, subluxation and cataract formation.
  - ii. It may involve iris and is visible immediately. Soon, it may involve the angle of anterior chamber resulting in secondary glaucoma.
  - iii. It may extend out through sclera along the vessels, presenting as an epibulbar mass.
3. **Posterior spreading tumour** may involve choroid and present as exudative retinal detachment.
4. **The tumour may extend circumferentially** involving whole of the ciliary body.

#### Pathological features

These are similar to that of choroidal melanoma.

#### Treatment

1. **Enucleation.** It is required for large ciliary body tumours extending anteriorly, posteriorly or circumferentially.
2. **Local resection.** Cyclectomy or iridocyclectomy may be enough, if fortunately tumour is detected in early stage.

### TUMOURS OF IRIS

#### Naevus

It is the most common lesion of the iris. It presents as a flat, pigmented, circumscribed lesion of variable size.

Rarely malignant change may occur in it, so it should be observed.

#### Naevoxantho endothelioma

It is a rare fleshy vascular lesion seen in babies. It may cause recurrent hyphaema. It is treated with X-rays or steroids.

#### Malignant melanoma

It presents as a single or multiple rapidly growing vascular nodules. It spreads in the angle producing secondary glaucoma. It may penetrate through limbus and present as epibulbar mass. Pathological features are similar to that of melanoma of the choroid.

#### Treatment

1. **Wide iridectomy.** It is performed for a tumour limited to the iris.
2. **Iridocyclectomy.** It is required for a tumour involving iris and ciliary body.
3. **Enucleation.** It should be performed when iris melanoma is associated with secondary glaucoma.



# 9

## Diseases of Lens

### ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY

- Applied anatomy
- Applied physiology and biochemistry

### CATARACT

- Congenital and developmental cataracts
- Acquired cataract
- Management of cataract in adults

### Surgical techniques for cataract extraction

- Intracapsular cataract extraction
- Conventional extracapsular cataract extraction
- Manual small incision cataract surgery
- Phacoemulsification
- Surgical techniques of extracapsular cataract extraction for childhood cataract

- Intraocular lens implantation
- Postoperative management after cataract operation
- Complications of cataract surgery and their management

### DISPLACEMENTS OF LENS

#### Clinico-etiological types

#### Topographical types

- Subluxation
- Dislocation

### CONGENITAL ANOMALIES OF LENS

- Coloboma of lens
- Lenticonus
- Microspherophakia

## 'TORCH' test?

### ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY

#### ■ APPLIED ANATOMY

##### Gross anatomy

- **Shape, transparency and location.** The lens is a transparent, biconvex, crystalline structure placed between iris and the vitreous in a saucer shaped depression, the patellar fossa.
- **Diameter** is 9–10 mm.
- **Thickness** varies with age from 3.5 mm (at birth) to 5 mm (at extreme of age).
- **Weight** varies from 135 mg (0–9 years) to 255 mg (40–80 years of age).
- **Surfaces.** Anterior surface is less convex (radius of curvature 10 mm) than the posterior (radius of curvature 6 mm).
- **Equator** in the area where anterior and posterior surfaces of the lens meet.

##### Attachments of the lens

- **Peripherally**, the lens is attached to the ciliary body with zonules of Zinn.
- **Posteriorly**, there are circular adhesions (about 8–9 mm in diameter) between the posterior capsule and anterior hyaloid surface of the vitreous. These are known as hyaloideocapsular ligament of Weiger or retrolental ligament. This circular attachment is termed as Egglar's line. The potential space between

the anterior hyaloid face and posterior lens capsule within the circular attachment is called Space of Burger or Egglar's space.

##### Refractive index and power

- **Refractive index** is 1.39 (mean), 1.41 (nuclear), and 1.38 (cortex).
- **Total dioptric power** is 15–16.
- **Accommodative power** of lens varies with age, being 14–16 D (at birth); 7–8 D (at 25 years of age) and 1–2 D (at 50 years of age).

##### Structure 3m

Lens consists of (Fig. 9.1):

**1. Lens capsule.** It is a thin, transparent, hyaline membrane surrounding the lens which is thicker over the anterior than the posterior surface. The lens capsule is thickest at pre-equator regions (14  $\mu$ ) and thinnest at the posterior pole (3  $\mu$ ).

**2. Lens epithelium.** Anterior epithelium is a single layer of cuboidal cells which lies deep to the anterior capsule. In the equatorial region, these cells become columnar, are actively dividing and elongating to form new lens fibres throughout the life. There is no posterior epithelium, as these cells are used up in filling the central cavity of lens vesicle during development of the lens.

**3. Lens substance** comprises lens fibres. The epithelial cells elongate to form lens fibres which have a



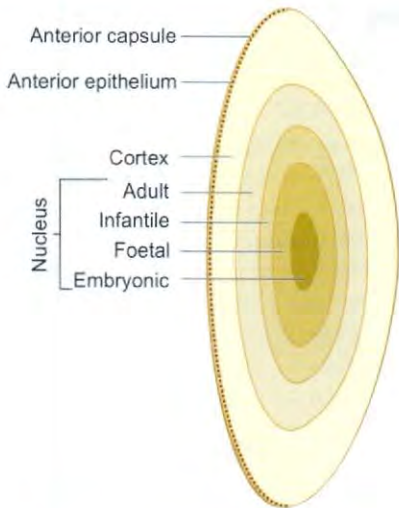


Fig. 9.1 Structure of the crystalline lens

complicated structural form. Mature lens fibres are cells which have lost their nuclei. Lens fibres make up the most of lens volume and are laid horizontally, front to back, and concentrically like layers of an onion. As the lens fibres are formed throughout the life, these are arranged compactly as nucleus and cortex of the lens (Fig. 9.2).

**i. Nucleus.** It is the central part containing the oldest fibres. It consists of different zones, which are laid down successively as the development proceeds. In the beam of slit-lamp these are seen as zones of discontinuity. Depending upon the period of development, the different zones of the lens nucleus include:

• **Embryonic nucleus.** It is the innermost part of nucleus which corresponds to the lens up to first 3 months of gestation. It consists of primary lens

fibres which are formed by elongation of the cells of posterior wall of lens vesicle,

• **Foetal nucleus.** It lies around the embryonic nucleus and corresponds to the lens from 3 months of gestation till birth. Its fibres meet around sutures which are anteriorly Y-shaped and posteriorly inverted Y-shaped (Fig. 9.2),

• **Infantile nucleus** corresponds to the lens from birth to puberty and surrounds the foetal nucleus.

• **Adult nucleus** corresponds to the lens fibres formed after puberty to rest of the life.

**ii. Cortex.** It is the peripheral part which comprises the youngest lens fibres.

### Suspensory ligaments of lens

Suspensory ligaments of lens (Zonules of Zinn), also called as ciliary zonules, consist essentially of a series of fibres passing from ciliary body to the lens. These hold the lens in position and enable the ciliary muscle to act on it.

### Arrangement of zonular fibres

According to new concept the zonular fibres run a more or less complex but continuous course from ora serrata to the edge of lens. However, for the purpose of description only, the zonular complex can be divided into following parts (Fig. 9.3):

**1. Pars orbicularis** refers to the feltwork of zonular fibres which line pars plana part of ciliary body.

**2. Zonular plexuses** refers to the intervening network of zonular fibres which are attached between ciliary processes in the region of pars plicata part of ciliary body.

**3. Zonular fork** refers to the consolidated bundle of zonular fibres which bend at right angle from the anterior margin of pars plicata towards the lens after dividing into three zonular limbs:

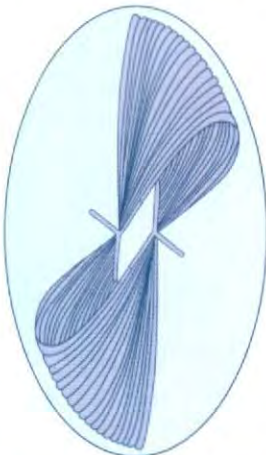


Fig. 9.2 Y-shaped sutures of the foetal nuclear fibres

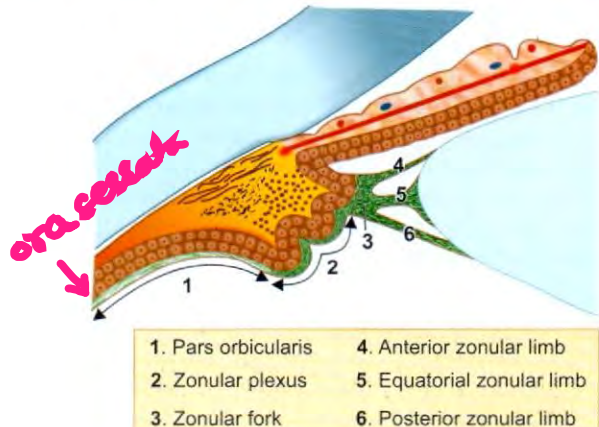


Fig. 9.3 Arrangement of main zonular fibres (New concept)



- **Anterior zonular limb** fibres are denser and insert on the anterior lens capsule about 1.5 mm from the equator.
- **Equatorial zonular limb** fibres are sparse and fan out in a brush-like manner to get inserted into the lens capsule of equatorial region.
- **Posterior zonular limb** fibres are inserted on the posterior lens capsule about 1.25 mm from the equator.

### APPLIED PHYSIOLOGY AND BIOCHEMISTRY

The crystalline lens is a transparent structure playing main role in the **focussing mechanism** for vision. Its **physiological aspects** include:

- Lens **transparency**,
- **Metabolic activities** of the lens, and
- **Accommodation** (See page 45).

#### Lens transparency

Factors that play significant role in maintaining outstanding clarity and transparency of the crystalline lens are:

- **Avascularity** of the lens
- **Epithelium** is single layering
- **Lens capsule** semipermeable in character.
- **Characteristic of lens fibre:**
  - **Tightly-packed** nature of lens cells,
  - **Narrow lens fibre** membranes,
  - **Loss of organelles**
- **Role of lens proteins.** Major intrinsic proteins of the lens belong to superfamily of **aquaporines** and is classified as **aquaporin MIP26 or aquaporin 0**. It serves two major functions to maintain the transparency of lens i.e. it **controls transport of water** (through the water channels) and **glycerol** (through the glycerol channels). Aquaporin 0 or MIP **mutation** has been postulated to result in **loss of transparency** of lens (i.e. cataract formation).
- **Pump mechanism** of lens fibre membranes that **regulate the electrolyte and water balance** in the lens, maintaining relative dehydration and
- **Auto-oxidation and high concentration of reduced glutathione** in the lens maintains the lens proteins in a reduced state and ensures the **integrity** of the cell membrane pump.

#### Metabolism

**Lens requires a continuous supply of energy (ATP)** for active transport of ions and amino acids, maintenance of **lens dehydration**, and for a continuous **protein and GSH synthesis**. Most of the energy produced is utilized in the epithelium which is the major site of all active transport processes.

Only about 10–20% of the ATP generated is used for protein synthesis.

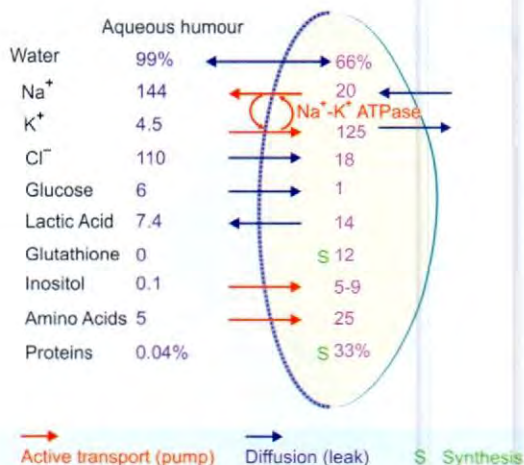
**Source of nutrient supply.** The crystalline lens, being an **avascular** structure is dependent for its metabolism on **chemical exchanges with the aqueous humour**. Through the chemical exchange with the aqueous humour, the lens **receives most of the nutrients** and releases waste products.

- **Chemical composition of the lens vis-a-vis aqueous humour** and the chemical exchange between the two is depicted in Fig. 9.4.

- Some **nutrition** is also derived from the **vitreous humour**, but it is much less than that derived from the aqueous humour.

**Pathways of glucose metabolism.** Glucose is very **essential** for the normal working of the lens. Metabolic activity of the lens is largely limited to epithelium and cortex, while the nucleus is relatively inert. **Glucose from the aqueous (mainly)** and vitreous (small) **diffuses into the lens** and is rapidly **metabolised** through four pathways:

1. **Glycolytic pathway.** In the lens, 80% glucose is metabolised **anaerobically** by this pathway.
2. **Pentose, Hexose, Monophosphate (HMP) shunt** is responsible for metabolism of 15% of glucose.
3. **Kreb's citric acid cycle** metabolises only a small proportion by the oxidative process.
4. **Sorbitol pathway** is relatively inconsequential in the normal lens; however, it is extremely important in the **production of cataract in diabetic and galactosemic patients**.



**Fig. 9.4 Chemical composition of the lens vis-a-vis aqueous humour and the chemical exchange (pump-leak mechanism) between them. Values are in mmol/kg of lens water unless otherwise stated**



Respiratory quotient of lens is 1.

### Antioxidant mechanisms of lens

The crystalline lens has protective mechanisms against oxidative damage caused by various oxidants (oxygen intermediates) generated in vivo such as superoxide anion ( $O_2^-$ ), hydrogen peroxide ( $H_2O_2$ ), lipid peroxide and lipid hydroperoxides. Of these, superoxide radicals may be most toxic to the lens proteins.

**Preventive antioxidant mechanisms of lens are:**

- **Enzymatic defence mechanism**, which includes reduced glutathione (most important), glutathione peroxidase, superoxide dismutase and catalase.
- **Non-enzymatic defence mechanism** includes vitamin C, vitamin E and possibly carotenoids.

**Pathogenesis of age-related cataract** involves oxidation of lens proteins and lipids due to deficient preventive anti-oxidant mechanisms.

10m

## CATARACT

Cataract

Opacification of lens

### DEFINITION

The word '*cataract*' dates from the Middle Ages and has been derived from the Greek word '*katarraktes*' which means '*waterfall*'. This term was coined assuming that an '*abnormal humour*' developed and flowed in front of the lens to decrease the vision.

The present definition of cataract came much later after the understanding of the lens anatomy and of the fact that normal lens is a transparent structure.

**As of today, the term cataract refers to** development of any opacity in the lens or its capsule. Cataract, thus may occur, either due to formation of opaque lens fibres (congenital and developmental cataracts) or due to degenerative process leading to opacification of the normally formed transparent lens fibres (acquired cataract).

**Clinically, the term cataract refers to** an opacification of sufficient severity to impair the vision (Dorland's Illustrated Medical Dictionary, WB. Saunders, Philadelphia).

### CLASSIFICATION

#### A. Etiological classification

##### I. Congenital and developmental cataract

##### II. Acquired cataract

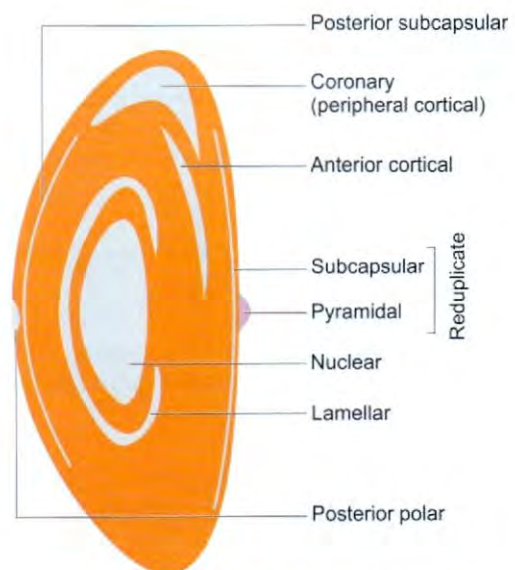
1. Senile cataract
2. Traumatic cataract (See page 448)
3. Complicated cataract
4. Metabolic cataract
5. Electric cataract
6. Radiational cataract
7. Toxic cataract, e.g.
  - i. Corticosteroid-induced cataract
  - ii. Miotics-induced cataract

iii. Copper (in chalcosis) and iron (in siderosis) induced cataract

8. Cataract associated with skin diseases (Dermatogenic cataract)
9. Cataract associated with osseous diseases
10. Cataract with miscellaneous syndromes, e.g.
  - i. Dystrophica myotonica
  - ii. Down's syndrome
  - iii. Lowe's syndrome
  - iv. Treacher-Collin's syndrome.

#### B. Morphological classification (Fig. 9.5)

1. **Capsular cataract**. It involves the capsule and may be:
  - i. Anterior capsular cataract
  - ii. Posterior capsular cataract.
2. **Subcapsular cataract**. It involves the superficial most part of the cortex (just below the capsule) and includes:
  - i. Anterior subcapsular cataract
  - ii. Posterior subcapsular cataract
3. **Cortical cataract**. It involves the major part of the cortex.
4. **Supranuclear cataract**. It involves only the deeper parts of cortex (just outside the nucleus).
5. **Nuclear cataract**. It involves the nucleus of the crystalline lens.
6. **Polar cataract**. It involves the capsule and superficial part of the cortex in the polar region only and may be:
  - i. Anterior polar cataract
  - ii. Posterior polar cataract



**Fig. 9.5 Morphological shapes of cataract**



10m

## CONGENITAL AND DEVELOPMENTAL CATARACTS

Congenital and developmental cataracts occur due to some disturbance in the normal growth of the lens. When the disturbance occurs before birth, the child is born with a *congenital cataract*. Therefore, in congenital cataract the opacity is limited to either embryonic or foetal nucleus. Developmental cataract may occur from infancy to adolescence. Therefore, such opacities may involve infantile or adult nucleus, deeper parts of cortex or capsule. Developmental cataract typically affects the particular zone which is being formed when this process is disturbed. The fibres laid down previously and subsequently are often normally formed and remain clear. Congenital and developmental opacities assume most variegated appearance and minute opacities (without visual disturbance) are very common in normal population. These are detected with the beam of slit-lamp under full mydriasis.

### ■ ETIOLOGY

About one-third cases are idiopathic, one-third are hereditary, and the rest one-third due to other causes maternal causes or total causes (maternal causes or foetal causes).

**I. Idiopathic** About 33% cases are sporadic and of unknown etiology.

**II. Heredity** About one-third of all congenital cataracts are hereditary.

■ **Inherited cases without systemic disorders.** In these cases, the mode of inheritance is usually autosomal dominant.

■ **Inherited cases with systemic disorders** include:

- Chromosomal disorders (e.g. trisomy 21),
- Skeletal disorders (e.g. Stickler syndrome),
- Central nervous system disorders (e.g. cerebro-oculo-facial syndrome),
- Renal system disorders (e.g. Lowe's syndrome).

**Common familial cataracts** include:

- Cataracta pulverulenta,
- Zonular cataract (also occurs as nonfamilial),
- Coronary cataract and total soft cataract (may also occur due to rubella).

**III. Maternal factors include:**

1. Malnutrition during pregnancy has been associated with nonfamilial zonular cataract.
2. Infections. Maternal infections like rubella are associated with cataract in 50% of cases. Other maternal infections associated with congenital

cataract include toxoplasmosis and cytomegalic inclusion disease.

3. Drugs ingestion. Congenital cataracts have also been reported in the children of mothers who have taken certain drugs during pregnancy (e.g. thalidomide, corticosteroids).
4. Radiation. Maternal exposure to radiation during pregnancy may cause congenital cataracts.

### IV. Foetal or infantile factors

1. Deficient oxygenation (anoxia) owing to placental haemorrhage.
2. Birth trauma, may cause cataract.
3. Metabolic disorders of the foetus or infant such as galactosemia, galactokinase deficiency and neonatal hypoglycemia.
4. Cataracts associated with other congenital anomalies, e.g. as seen in Down's syndrome, Lowe's syndrome, myotonia dystrophica and congenital ichthyosis.
5. Ocular diseases associated with developmental cataract include persistent hyperplastic primary vitreous (PHPV), aniridia anterior chamber cleavage syndrome retinopathy of prematurity, lenticonus posterior and microphthalmos.
6. Malnutrition in early infancy may also cause developmental cataract.

### ■ CLINICAL TYPES

Congenital and developmental cataracts have been variously classified. A simple morphological classification of congenital and developmental cataract is as under:

#### I. Congenital capsular cataracts

1. Anterior capsular cataract
2. Posterior capsular cataract

#### II. Polar cataracts

1. Anterior polar cataract
2. Posterior polar cataract

#### III. Congenital nuclear cataracts

1. Cataracta pulverulenta
2. Lamellar cataract
3. Sutural and axial cataracts
  - Floriform cataract
  - Coralliform cataract
  - Spear-shaped cataract
  - Anterior axial embryonic cataract
  - Dendritic suture cataract
4. Total nuclear cataract

#### IV. Generalized cataracts

1. Coronary cataract
2. Blue dot cataract
3. Total congenital cataract
4. Congenital membranous cataract.

Cause of cataract in prs under 30 yrs



### I. Congenital capsular cataracts

1. **Anterior capsular cataracts** are nonaxial, stationary and visually insignificant.

2. **Posterior capsular cataracts** are rare and can be associated with persistent hyaloid artery remnants.

### II. Polar cataracts

#### 1. Anterior polar cataract

It involves the central part of the anterior capsule and the adjoining superficial-most cortex. It may arise in the following ways:

- Due to **delayed development of anterior chamber**. In this case, the opacity is congenital usually bilateral, stationary and visually insignificant.
- Due to **corneal perforation**. Such cataracts may also be acquired in infantile stage and follow contact of the lens capsule with the back of cornea, usually after perforation due to **ophthalmia neonatorum** or any other cause.

#### Morphological types

Anterior polar cataracts may occur as any of the following morphological patterns:

- **Thickened white plaque** in the centre of anterior capsule.
- **Anterior pyramidal cataract**. In this, the thickened capsular opacity is cone-shaped with its apex towards cornea.
- **Reduplicated cataract (double cataract)**. Sometimes along with thickening of central point of anterior capsule, lens fibres lying immediately beneath it also become opaque and are subsequently separated from the capsule by laying of transparent fibres in between. The buried opacity is called 'imprint' and the two together constitute reduplicated cataract.

#### 2. Posterior polar cataract

It is a very common lens anomaly and consists of a small circular circumscribed opacity involving the posterior pole.

**Associations.** Posterior polar cataract may be associated with:

- Persistent hyaloid artery remnants (Mittendorf dot),
- Posterior lenticonus, and
- Persistent hyperplastic primary vitreous (PHPV).

**Types.** Posterior polar cataract occurs in two forms:

1. Stationary form and
2. Progressive form which progresses after birth. It typically has an 'onion whorl appearance' (Fig. 9.6)

### III. Congenital nuclear cataracts

#### 1. Cataracta centralis pulverulenta

Cataracta centralis pulverulenta is an embryonic nuclear cataract. It has dominant genetic trait and

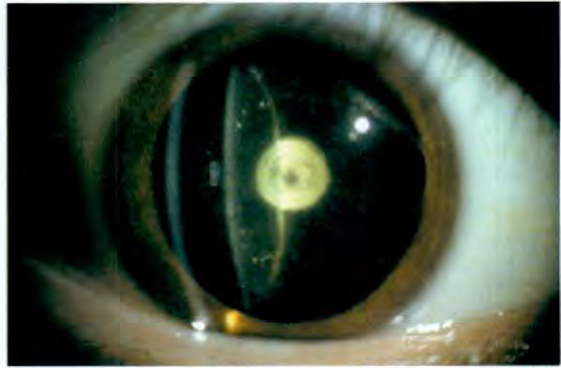


Fig. 9.6 Posterior polar cataract

occurs due to inhibition of the lens development at a very early stage and thus, involves the embryonic nucleus. The condition is bilateral and is characterised by a small rounded opacity lying exactly in the centre of the lens. The opacity has a powdery appearance (pulverulenta) and usually does not affect the vision.

#### 2. Lamellar cataract

Lamellar or Zonular cataract refer to the developmental cataract in which the opacity occupies a discrete zone in the lens. It is the most common type of congenital cataract presenting with visual impairment. It accounts for about 50% of the cases.

**Etiology.** It may be either genetic or environmental in origin.

- **Genetic pattern** is usually of familial autosomal dominant variety.

- **Environmental form** is associated with:

- vitamin D deficiency,
- hypocalcaemia
- sometimes maternal rubella infection contracted between 7th and 8th week of gestation may also cause lamellar cataract.

**Characteristic features.** Typically, this cataract occurs in a zone of foetal nucleus surrounding the embryonic nucleus (Fig. 9.7).

- It is usually bilateral and frequently causes severe visual defects.

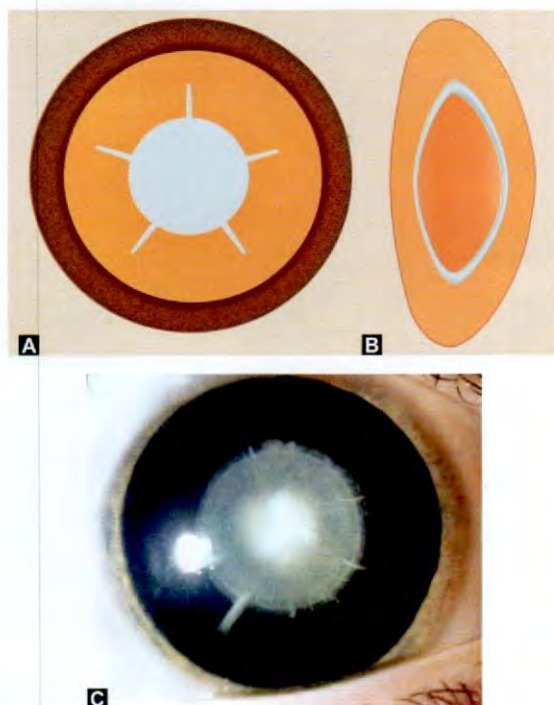
- The main mass of the lens internal and external to the zone of cataract is clear, except for small linear opacities like spokes of a wheel (riders) which may be seen towards the equator.

- Occasionally two such rings of opacity are seen.

#### 3. Sutural and axial cataracts

**Sutural cataracts** are comparatively common occurrence and consist of a series of punctate opacities scattered around the anterior and





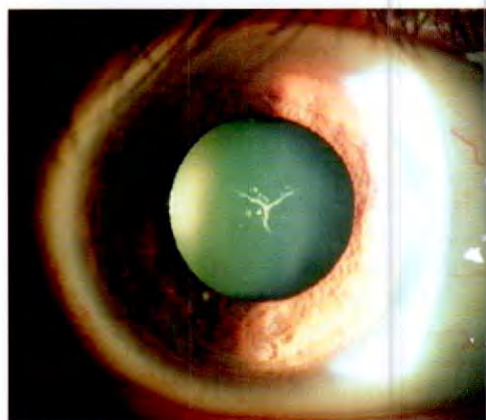
**Fig. 9.7 Lamellar cataract:** A and B, Diagrammatic depiction as seen by oblique illumination and in optical section with the beam of the slit-lamp, respectively; C, Clinical photograph

posterior Y-sutures. Such cataracts are usually static, bilateral and do not have much effect on the vision. The individual opacities vary in size and shape and have different pattern and thus are named accordingly as under:

- **Floriform cataract.** Here the opacities are arranged like the petals of a flower.
- **Coralliform cataract** also known as fusiform spindle-shaped axial cataract, is characterised by an anterior posterior spindle-shaped opacity with off shoots giving an appearance resembling a coral.
- **Spear-shaped cataract.** The lenticular opacities are in the form of scattered heaps of shining crystalline needles.
- **Anterior axial embryonic cataract** occurs as fine dot near the anterior Y-suture of foetal nucleus (Fig. 9.8).
- **Dendritic sutural cataract** occurs as fine dots along the dendritic sutures.

#### 4. Total nuclear cataract

**Total nuclear cataract.** It usually involves the embryonic and foetal nucleus and sometimes infantile nucleus as well. It is characterized by a dense chalky white central opacity seriously impairing vision. The opacities are usually bilateral and non-progressive.



**Fig. 9.8 Anterior axial embryonic sutural cataract**

### IV. Generalized cataracts

#### 1. Coronary cataract

Coronary cataract (Fig. 9.9) is an extremely common form of developmental cataract occurring about puberty; thus involving either the adolescent nucleus or deeper layer of the cortex. The opacities are often many hundreds in number and have a regular radial distribution in the periphery of lens (corona of club-shaped opacities) encircling the central axis. Since, the opacities are situated peripherally, vision is usually unaffected. Sometimes the associated large punctate opacities may marginally reduce the vision.

#### 2. Blue dot cataract

It is also called *cataracta-punctata-caerulea*. Perhaps this is the most common type of congenital cataract. It usually forms in the first two decades of life. The characteristic punctate opacities are in the form of rounded bluish dots situated in the peripheral part of adolescent nucleus and deeper layer of the cortex. Opacities are usually stationary and do not affect vision. However, large punctate opacities associated with coronary cataract may marginally reduce the vision.

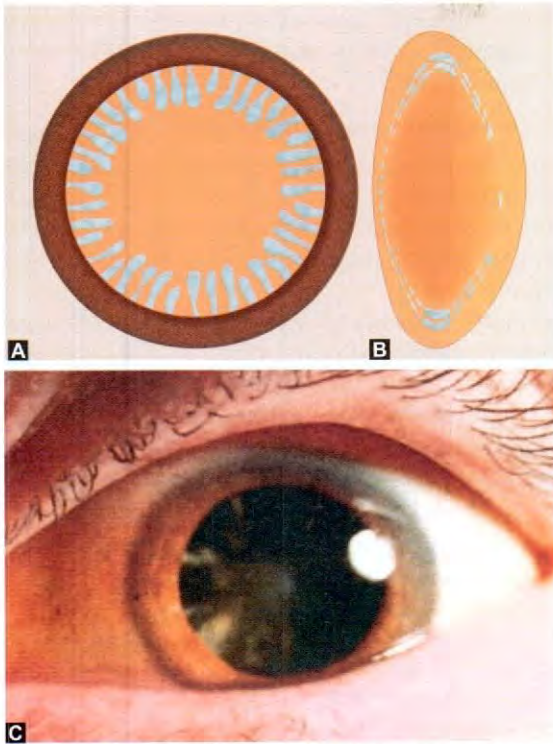
#### 3. Total congenital cataract

It is a common variety and may be unilateral or bilateral (Fig. 9.10). In many cases, there may be hereditary character. Its other important cause is maternal rubella.

#### Rubella Cataract

- **Maternal Rubella infection** acquired during first trimester (second or third month) may cause rubella cataract.
- **Rubella cataract**-typically, the child is born with a 'pearly white' nuclear cataract. It is a progressive type of cataract.





**Fig. 9.9** Corneal cataract: A and B, As seen by oblique illumination and in optical section with the beam of the slit-lamp, respectively; C, Clinical photograph



**Fig. 9.10** Total congenital cataract

- **Lens matter may remain soft or may even liquify** (congenital Morgagnian cataract).
- **Cataractous nucleus may harbour the virus up to two years of age.** Therefore, removal of such a cataract is usually followed by a severe inflammatory reaction (uveitis or even endophthalmitis) probably due to liberation of retained viruses.

**Note.** Congenital rubella can be prevented by vaccination of the mother. Since, the rubella vaccine is toxic to foetus, it must therefore, be administered at least three months before the pregnancy.

**Rubella Syndrome.** Congenital rubella cataract may occur alone or as part of the classical rubella syndrome which consists of:

- Ocular defects.** Congenital cataract, salt and pepper chorioretinopathy, microphthalmos, cloudy cornea and poorly dilating pupil.
- Ear defects.** Deafness due to destruction of organ of Corti
- Heart defects.** Patent ductus arteriosus, pulmonary stenosis and ventricular septal defects.

#### 4. Congenital membranous cataract

Sometimes, there may occur total or partial absorption of congenital cataract, leaving behind thin membranous cataract. Rarely, there is complete disappearance of all the lens fibres and only a fine transparent lens capsule remains behind. Such a patient may be misdiagnosed as having congenital aphakia. This is associated with Hallermann-Streiff-Francois Syndrome.

#### ■ DIFFERENTIAL DIAGNOSIS

*Congenital cataracts presenting with leucocoria* need to be differentiated from various other conditions presenting with leucocoria such as retinoblastoma, retinopathy of prematurity, persistent hyperplastic primary vitreous (PHPV), etc. (also See page 317).

#### ■ MANAGEMENT OF CONGENITAL AND DEVELOPMENTAL CATARACT

##### A. Clinico-investigative work up

A detailed clinico-investigative work up is most essential in the management of paediatric cataract. It should aim at knowing the prognostic factors and indications and timing of surgery.

1. **Ocular examination** should be carried out with special reference to:

- **Density and morphology of cataract.** Density is indicated by quality of red reflex seen on distant direct ophthalmoscopy before and after dilation of pupil. Cataract morphology may suggest underlying cause.
- **Assessment of visual function is difficult** in infants and small children. An idea may be made from the density and morphology of the cataract by oblique illumination examination and fundus examination. Special tests like fixation reflex, forced choice preferential looking test, visually evoked potential (VEP), optic-kinetic nystagmus (OKN), etc. also provide useful information.
- **Associated ocular defects** which need to be noted include microphthalmos, glaucoma, PHPV, foveal hypoplasia, optic nerve hypoplasia, and rubella retinopathy, etc.



**2. Laboratory investigations** should be carried out to detect following systemic associations in non-hereditary cataracts:

- **Intrauterine infections** viz. toxoplasmosis, rubella, cytomegalovirus and herpes virus **by TORCH test**.
- **Galactosaemia by urine test** for reducing substances, red blood cell transferase and galacto kinase levels.
- **Lowe's syndrome by urine chromatography** for amino acids.
- **Hyperglycaemia by blood sugar level**.
- **Hypocalcaemia by serum calcium and phosphate levels and X-ray skull**.

### B. Prognostic factors

Prognostic factors which need to be noted are:

- Density of cataract,
- Unilateral or bilateral cataract,
- Time of presentation,
- Associated ocular defects, and
- Associated systemic defects.

### C. Indications and timing of paediatric cataract surgery

**1. Partial cataracts and small central cataracts** which are visually insignificant can safely be ignored and observed or may need non-surgical treatment with pupillary dilatation.

**2. Bilateral dense cataracts** should be removed early (within 6 weeks of birth) to prevent stimulus deprivation amblyopia. **Second eye should be operated within a few days of the first eye.**

**3. Unilateral dense cataract** should preferably be removed as early as possible (within days) after birth with optical correction in the first few weeks. However, it must be borne in mind that **visual prognosis in most of the unilateral cases is very poor** even after timely operation, because correction of aphakia and prevention of amblyopia in infants is an uphill task.

### D. Surgical procedures

Childhood cataracts (congenital, developmental as well as acquired) can be dealt with **extracapsular cataract extraction technique** involving **anterior capsulorhexis** and **irrigation aspiration of the lens matter (lens aspiration) or lensectomy**.

**Lens aspiration** can be performed either by **manual technique** or by **phacoemulsification technique**. Lens aspiration should be **combined with primary posterior capsulotomy** in children below 6 years of age and also with **anterior vitrectomy** in all children below 2 years of age.

**Surgical technique** of these procedures is described on page 212.

**Note.** The **needling operation** (which was performed in the past) **is now obsolete** because of high rates of complications.

### E. Correction of paediatric aphakia

It is still an unsolved query. Presently, common views are as follows:

- **Children above the age of 2 years** can be corrected by **implantation of posterior chamber intraocular lens** during surgery.
- **Children below the age of 2 years** should preferably be treated by **extended wear contact lens**. Spectacles can be prescribed in bilateral cases. **Later on secondary IOL implantation** may be considered.

**Note.** Present trend is to do **primary implantation at the earliest possible specially in unilateral cataract**, i.e. in all cases, because most surgeons have reported negative experiences in the compliance with glasses and contact lenses.

**Paediatric IOL: size, design and power.** The main **concerns** regarding the use of IOL in children are the growth of the eye, **IOL power considerations**, **increased uveal reaction** and **long-term safety**. Present recommendations are:

**Size of IOL** above the age of 2 years may be standard 12 to 12.75 mm diameter for in the bag implantation.

**Design of IOL** of choice at present is **foldable IOLs made of hydrophobic acrylic material** (e.g. Acrysof IOL, Alcon Lab, USA). Previously one-piece PMMA IOL with modified C-shaped haptics (preferably heparin coated) were recommended. However, PMMA IOLs are no more recommended because of the disadvantages of a bigger incision. The capsular and inflammatory responses remain a problem in children.

**Power of IOL.** Most surgeons target:

- **Emmetropia** in older children (>8 years).
- **Undercorrection by 10%** in children between 2–8 years of age and
- **Undercorrection by 20%** below 2 years is recommended from the calculated biometric power to counter the myopic shift.

### F. Correction of amblyopia

It is the **central theme around which management of childhood cataract and aphakia revolves**. In spite of best efforts, it continues to be the main **cause of ultimate low vision** in these children. (For management of amblyopia (See page 356).

## ACQUIRED CATARACT

We have studied that congenital and developmental cataracts occur due to disturbance in the formation

*Amblyopia:*  
- partial reversible loss of vision  
- No cause can be found on physical exam for above



of the lens fibres, i.e. instead of clear, **opaque lens fibres are produced**. While, in acquired cataract, opacification occurs due to degeneration of the already formed normal fibres. A few common varieties of acquired cataract are described here.

### ■ AGE-RELATED CATARACT 10m

'Age-related cataract' also called as **senile cataract** is **the commonest type of acquired cataract** affecting equally persons of either sex usually above the age of 50 years. The condition is usually bilateral, but almost always one eye is affected earlier than the other.

### Morphological types of senile cataract

Morphologically, the senile cataract occurs in three forms:

**I. Cortical senile cataract (soft cataract)**, i.e. as:

- **Cuneiform** (more commonly) or
- **Cupuliform**—posterior subcapsular (PSC) cataract.

**II. Nuclear cataract (Hard cataract)**

**III. Mixed** cortical and nuclear

It is very common to find nuclear and cortical senile cataracts co-existing in the same eye; and for this reason, it is difficult to give an accurate assessment of their relative frequency. In general, the predominant form can be given as cuneiform 70%, nuclear 25% and posterior subcapsular (cupuliform) 5%.

### Etiology

Senile cataract is essentially an ageing process. Though its precise etiopathogenesis is not clear, the various factors implicated are as follows:

#### A. Risk factors

Risk factors affecting age of onset, type and maturation of senile cataract are as below:

**1. Age.** Age is the **most important** risk factor, i.e. why it is called age-related cataract. As mentioned above, it usually occurs after the age of 50 years. When it occurs **before 45 years of age**, the term **pre-senile cataract** is used. On an average about 60% by the age of 60 years, 70% by the age of 70 years, 80% by the age of 80 years, and 90% by the age of 90 years develop senile cataract.

**2. Sex.** Without any doubt, the senile cataract affects both males as well as females. However, in many studies, it is reported that prevalence of cataract is greater in females than males at all ages.

**3. Heredity.** It plays a **considerable role** in the incidence, age of onset and maturation of senile cataract in different families.

**4. Ultraviolet irradiations.** More exposure to **UV irradiation from sunlight** have been implicated for early onset and maturation of senile cataract in many epidemiological studies. Higher incidence of senile

cataract with age in tropical countries corroborates this fact.

**5. Dietary factors.** Diet deficient in certain proteins, amino acids, vitamins (riboflavin, vitamin A, C and E), and essential elements have also been blamed for early onset and maturation of senile cataract.

**6. Dehydrational crisis.** An association with prior episode of severe dehydrational crisis in childhood (due to diarrhoea, cholera, etc.) and age of onset and maturation of cataract is also suggested.

**7. Smoking** has also been reported to have some effect on the age of onset of senile cataract. In numerous studies worldwide smoking has consistently been associated with an increase in the frequency of nuclear cataract. Smoking causes accumulation of pigmented molecules—3-hydroxykynurenine and chromophores, which lead to yellowing. Cyanates in smoke causes carbamylation and protein denaturation.

### B. Causes of pre-senile cataract

The term pre-senile cataract is used when the cataractous changes similar to senile cataract occur before 45 years of age. Its common causes are:

- 1. Heredity.** As mentioned above because of influence of heredity, the cataractous changes may occur at an earlier age in successive generations.
- 2. Diabetes mellitus.** Age-related cataract occurs earlier in diabetics. Nuclear cataract is more common and tends to progress rapidly.
- 3. Myotonic dystrophy** is associated with posterior subcapsular type of pre-senile cataract. **Christmas tree cataract** is typically seen in this condition.
- 4. Atopic dermatitis** may be associated with pre-senile cataract (atopic cataract) in 10% of the cases.

### C. Concept of syn- and co-cataractogenic factors

It has been conceptualised that cataract is the result of multiple subthreshold cataractogenic stresses acting in a concert. Age has been implicated as one of these cataractogenic stresses and that superimposition of other toxic stresses on the ageing lens may accelerate the rate of cataract formation. Conversely, the elimination of one or more cataractogenic stresses may delay the cataract formation.

### D. Mechanism of loss of transparency

It is basically different in nuclear and cortical senile cataracts.

**1. Cortical senile cataract.** Its main biochemical features are decreased levels in the crystalline lens of total proteins, amino acids and potassium associated with increased concentration of sodium and marked

*Senile IMMATURE cataract? Senile MATURE Cataract*



hydration of the lens, followed by coagulation of lens proteins. The probable course of events leading to senile opacification of cortex is as shown in the Fig. 9.11.

**2. Nuclear senile cataract.** In this, the usual degenerative changes are intensification of the age-related nuclear sclerosis associated with dehydration and compaction of the nucleus resulting in a hard cataract. It is accompanied by a significant increase in water insoluble proteins. However, the total protein content and distribution of cations remain normal. There may or may not be associated deposition of pigment urochrome and/or melanin derived from amino acids in the lens.

### Stages of Maturation 3m

#### A. Maturation of the cortical type of senile cataract

**1. Stage of lamellar separation.** The earliest sign of senile cataract is formation vacuoles and water clefts in the anterior and posterior cortex. This leads to demarcation of cortical fibres owing to their separation by fluid. This phenomenon of lamellar separation can be demonstrated by slit-lamp examination only. These changes are reversible.

**2. Stage of incipient cataract.** In this stage, early detectable opacities with clear areas between them are seen. Two distinct types of senile cortical cataracts can be recognised at this stage:

**a. Cuneiform senile cortical cataract.** It is characterised by wedge-shaped opacities with clear areas in between. These extend from equator towards centre and in early stages can only be demonstrated after dilatation of the pupil. They are first seen in the lower nasal quadrant. These opacities are present both in anterior and posterior cortex and their apices slowly progress towards the pupil. On oblique illumination they present a typical radial spoke-like pattern of greyish white opacities (Fig. 9.12). On distant direct ophthalmoscopy, these opacities appear as dark lines against the red fundal glow.

Since the cuneiform cataract starts at periphery and extends centrally, the visual disturbances are noted at a comparatively late stage.

**b. Cupuliform senile cortical cataract.** Here a saucer-shaped opacity develops just below the capsule usually in the central part of posterior cortex (posterior subcapsular cataract), which gradually extends outwards. There is usually a definite demarcation between the cataract and the surrounding clear cortex. Cupuliform cataract lies right in the pathway of the axial rays and thus causes an early loss of visual acuity.

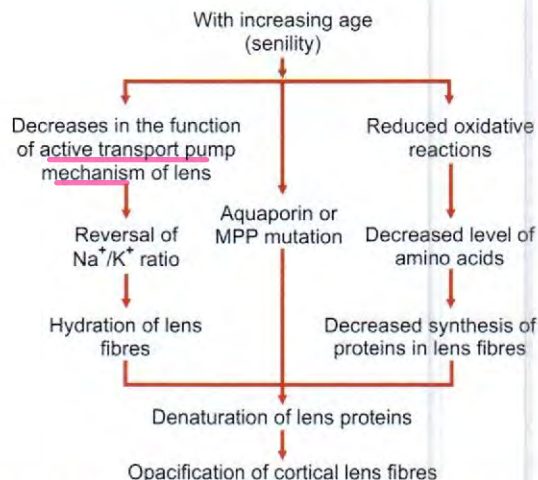


Fig. 9.11 Flowchart depicting probable course of events involved in occurrence of cortical senile cataract

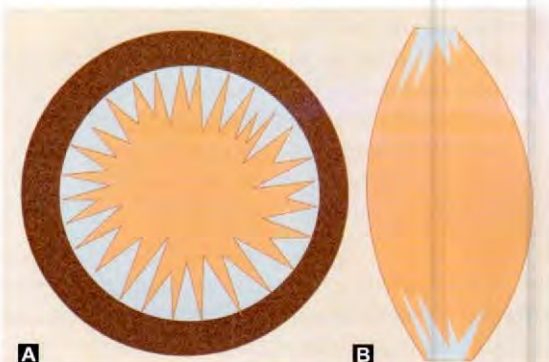


Fig. 9.12 Diagrammatic depiction of immature senile cataract (cuneiform type): A, As seen by oblique illumination; B, In optical section with the beam of the slit-lamp

### 3m

**3. Immature senile cataract (ISC).** In this stage, opacification progresses further. The cuneiform (Fig. 9.12) or cupuliform patterns can be recognised till the advanced stage of ISC when opacification becomes more diffuse and irregular. The lens appears greyish white (Fig. 9.13), but clear cortex is still present and so iris shadow is visible.

In some patients, at this stage, lens may become swollen due to continued hydration. This condition is called 'intumescent cataract'. Intumescence may persist even in the next stage of maturation. Due to swollen lens anterior chamber becomes shallow.

**4. Mature senile cataract (MSC).** In this stage, opacification becomes complete, i.e. whole of the cortex is involved. Lens becomes pearly white in colour. Such a cataract is also labelled as 'ripe cataract' (Fig. 9.14).





Fig. 9.13 Immature senile cortical cataract



Fig. 9.14 Mature senile cortical cataract

3m

**5. Hypermature senile cataract (HMSC).** When the mature cataract is left in situ, the stage of hypermaturity sets in. The hypermature cataract may occur in any of the two forms:

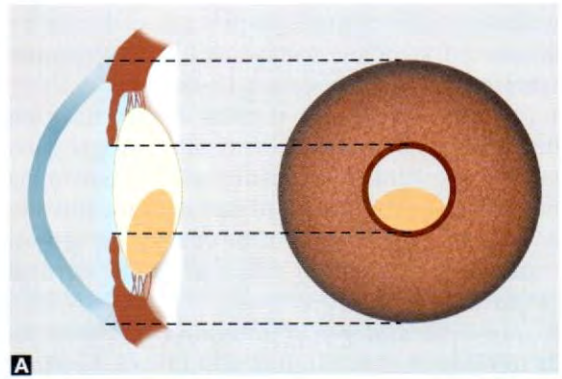
**a. Morgagnian hypermature cataract.** In some patients, after maturity the whole cortex liquefies and the lens is converted into a bag of milky fluid. The small brownish nucleus settles at the bottom, altering its position with change in the position of the head. Such a cataract is called *Morgagnian cataract* (Fig. 9.15). Sometimes in this stage, calcium deposits may also be seen on the lens capsule.

**b. Sclerotic type hypermature cataract.** Sometimes after the stage of maturity, the cortex becomes disintegrated and the lens becomes shrunken due to leakage of water. The anterior capsule is wrinkled and thickened due to proliferation of anterior cells and a dense white capsular cataract may be formed in the pupillary area. Due to shrinkage of lens, anterior chamber becomes deep and iris becomes tremulous (*iridodonesis*).

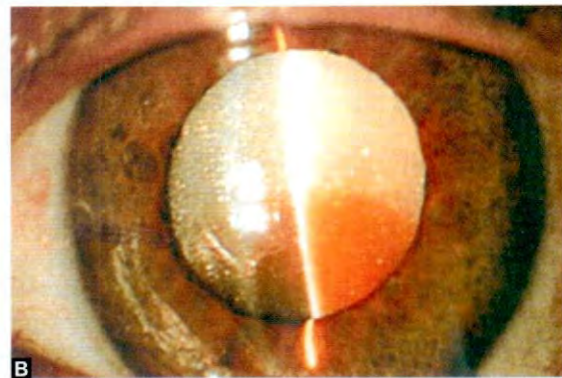
**Maturation of nuclear senile cataract**

3m

Progressive nuclear sclerotic process renders the lens inelastic and hard, decreases its ability to accommodate and obstructs the light rays. These changes begin centrally (Fig. 9.16) and spread slowly peripherally almost up to the capsule when it becomes mature; however, a very thin layer of clear cortex may remain unaffected.



A



B

Fig. 9.15 Morgagnian hypermature senile cataract: A, Diagrammatic depiction; B, Clinical photograph



Fig. 9.16 Early nuclear senile cataract



The **nucleus** may become diffusely cloudy (greyish) or tinted (yellow to black) due to deposition of pigments. In practice, the commonly observed pigmented nuclear cataracts are either amber, brown (*cataracta brunescens*) or black (*cataracta nigra*) and rarely reddish (*cataracta rubra*) in colour (Fig. 9.17).

### Clinical features

**Symptoms.** An opacity of the lens may be present without causing any symptoms; and may be discovered on routine ocular examination. Common symptoms of cataract are as follows:

1. **Glare.** One of the earliest visual disturbance with the cataract is glare or intolerance of bright light; such as direct sunlight or the headlights of an oncoming motor vehicle. The amount of glare or dazzle will vary with the location and size of the opacity, being most common with posterior subcapsular and cortical cataract.

2. **Unicocular diplopia or polyopia** (i.e. doubling or trebling of objects). It is also one of the early symptoms. It occurs due to irregular refraction by the lens owing to variable refractive index as a result of cataractous process, seen commonly with incipient stage of cortical category (spoke or cuneiform).

3. **Coloured halos around light.** These may be perceived by some patients owing to breaking of white light into coloured spectrum due to irregular refractive index being more common in nuclear cataract.

4. **Poor colour discrimination, especially at blue end of visible light spectrum,** occurs due to progressive yellowing or browning of the lens.

5. **Black spots in front of eyes.** Stationary black spots may be perceived by some patients.

6. **Image blur, and misty vision** may occur in early stages of cataract. Especially loss of ability to see objects in bright sunlight, blinded by light of oncoming headlamps when driving at night. This occurs due to loss of contrast sensitivity and also due to the fact that constriction of pupil in bright light cuts

of the peripheral vision from non-cataractous lens (typically in axial cataract: posterior polar, posterior subcapsular and nuclear cataract).

7. **Deterioration of vision.** Visual deterioration due to senile cataract has some typical features. It is painless and gradually progressive in nature.

- **Patients with central opacities** (e.g. cupuliform cataract, i.e. posterior subcapsular cataract) have early loss of vision. These patients see better when pupil is dilated due to dim light in the evening (day blindness).

- In patients with peripheral opacities (e.g. cuneiform cataract) visual loss is delayed and the vision improves in bright light when pupil is contracted.

- In patients with nuclear sclerosis, distant vision deteriorates due to progressive index myopia. Such patients may be able to read without presbyopic glasses. This improvement in near vision is referred to as 'second sight'.

- As opacification progresses, vision steadily diminishes, until only perception of light and accurate projection of light rays remains in the stage of mature cataract.

- Gradual progressive loss of vision followed by rapid deterioration may occur during stage of intumescent cataract.

**Signs.** Following examination should be carried out to look for different signs of cataract described below (Table 9.1):

- Oblique illumination examination,
- Iris shadow test,
- Slit-lamp examination, and
- Distant direct ophthalmoscopy.

1. **Visual acuity.** Depending upon the location and maturation of cataract, the visual acuity may range from 6/9 to just PL+ (Table 9.1).

2. **Test for iris shadow.** When an oblique beam of light is thrown on the pupil, a crescentic shadow of pupillary margin of the iris will be formed on the greyish opacity

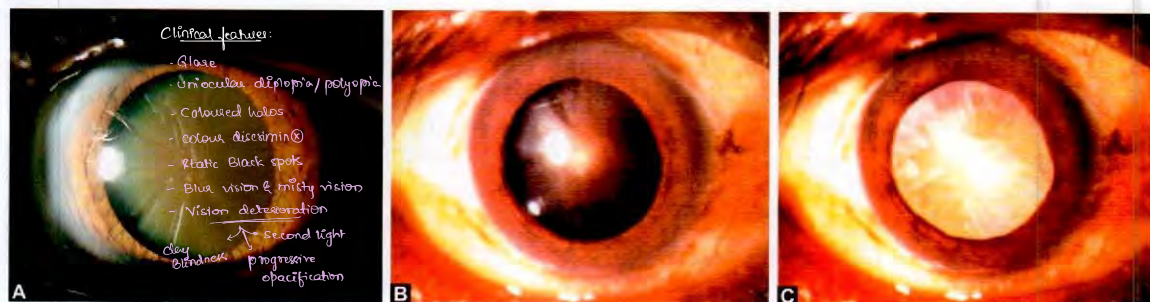


Fig. 9.17 Nuclear cataract: A, *Cataracta brunescens*; B, *Cataracta nigra*; C, *Cataracta rubra*



**Table 9.1** Signs of senile cataract

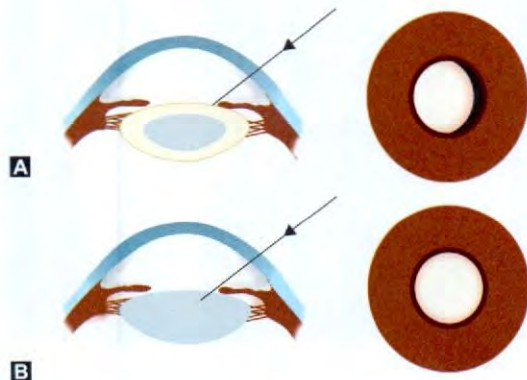
| Examination                                         | Nuclear cataract                          | ISC                                         | MSC                                                  | HMSC (M)                                        | HMSC (S)                                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Visual acuity                                    | 6/9 to PL+                                | 6/9 to CF+                                  | HM+ to PL+                                           | PL+                                             | PL+                                                     |
| 2. Colour of lens                                   | Grey, amber, brown, black or red          | Greyish white                               | Pearly white with sinking brownish nucleus           | Milky white                                     | Dirty white with hyper white spots                      |
| 3. Iris shadow                                      | Not seen                                  | Seen                                        | Not seen                                             | Not seen                                        | Not seen                                                |
| 4. Distant direct ophthalmoscopy with dilated pupil | Central dark area against red fundal glow | Multiple dark areas against red fundal glow | No red glow but white pupil due to complete cataract | No red glow milky white pupil                   | No red glow dirty white pupil                           |
| 5. Slit-lamp examination                            | Nuclear opacity clear cortex              | Areas of normal with cataractous cortex     | Complete cortex is cataractous                       | Milky white cortex with sunken brownish nucleus | Shrunk cataractous lens with thickened anterior capsule |
| 6. Refraction/Retinoscopy                           | Myopia (index)                            | Hypermetropia (index) in cortical cataract  | Not possible                                         | Not possible                                    | Not possible                                            |

ISC: Immature senile cataract, MSC: Mature senile cataract, HMSC (M) Hypermature senile cataract (Morgagnian), HMSC (S): Hypermature senile cataract (Sclerotic), PL: Perception of light, HM: Hand movements, CF: Counting finger

of the lens, as long as clear cortex is present between the opacity and the pupillary margin (Fig. 9.18). When lens is completely transparent or opaque, no iris shadow is formed. Hence, presence of iris shadow is a sign of immature cataract.

**3. Colour of lens**, is examined with oblique illumination on slit-lamp examination. Depending upon the type of cataract, colour of the lens is as below:

- **Nuclear cataract:** Amber, brown, black or reddish (See Fig. 9.17)
- **Immature senile cataract:** Greyish white (See Fig. 9.13)
- **Mature senile cataract:** Pearly white (See Fig. 9.14)



**Fig. 9.18** Diagrammatic depiction of iris shadow in: immature cataract (A) and no iris shadow in mature cataract (B)

- **Morgagnian hypermature senile cataract:** Milky white (See Fig. 9.15)
- **Sclerotic HMSC:** Dirty white with hyper white spots.

**4. Morphology of cataractous lens** is best seen with slit-lamp examination using direct illumination and in optical section of the lens with fully dilated pupil. The slit-lamp examination reveals complete morphology of lenticular opacity (site, size, shape, pattern, colour and hardness of the nucleus). Three components of the cataract noted are cortical cataract (CC), posterior subcapsular cataract (PSC), and nuclear cataract (denoted by nuclear opalescence, i.e. NO and nuclear colour changes, i.e. NC).

**Grading of cataract.** Grading of these three components has been described by, 'Lens opacity classification system' (LOCS) III, using a reference set of standard photographs as below (Fig. 9.19A):

- **Posterior subcapsular cataract:** P1 to P5
- **Cortical cataract:** C1 to C5
- **Nuclear opacity and colour:** NO1 to NO5 and NC1 to NC5.

**5. Distant direct ophthalmoscopic examination** (for procedure See page 607). A reddish yellow fundal glow is observed in the absence of any opacity in the media. Partial cataractous lens shows black shadow against the red glow in the area of cataract. Complete cataractous lens does not even reveal red glow (Table 9.1).



6. **Refraction/retinoscopy** may reveal myopia (index) in patients with nuclear sclerosis and hypermetropia (index) in patients with cortical cataract (cuneiform) during incipient and immature stage.

Grading of nucleus hardness in a cataractous lens is important for setting the parameters of machine in phacoemulsification technique of cataract extraction. The hardness of the nucleus, depending

upon its colour on slit-lamp examination, can be graded as shown in Fig. 9.19 and Table 9.2.

**Differential diagnosis**

- 1. **Immature senile cataract (ISC)** can be differentiated from the nuclear sclerosis without any cataract as shown in Table 9.3.
- 2. **Mature senile cataract** can be differentiated from retrolental causes of white pupillary reflex (leucocoria) as shown in Table 9.4.

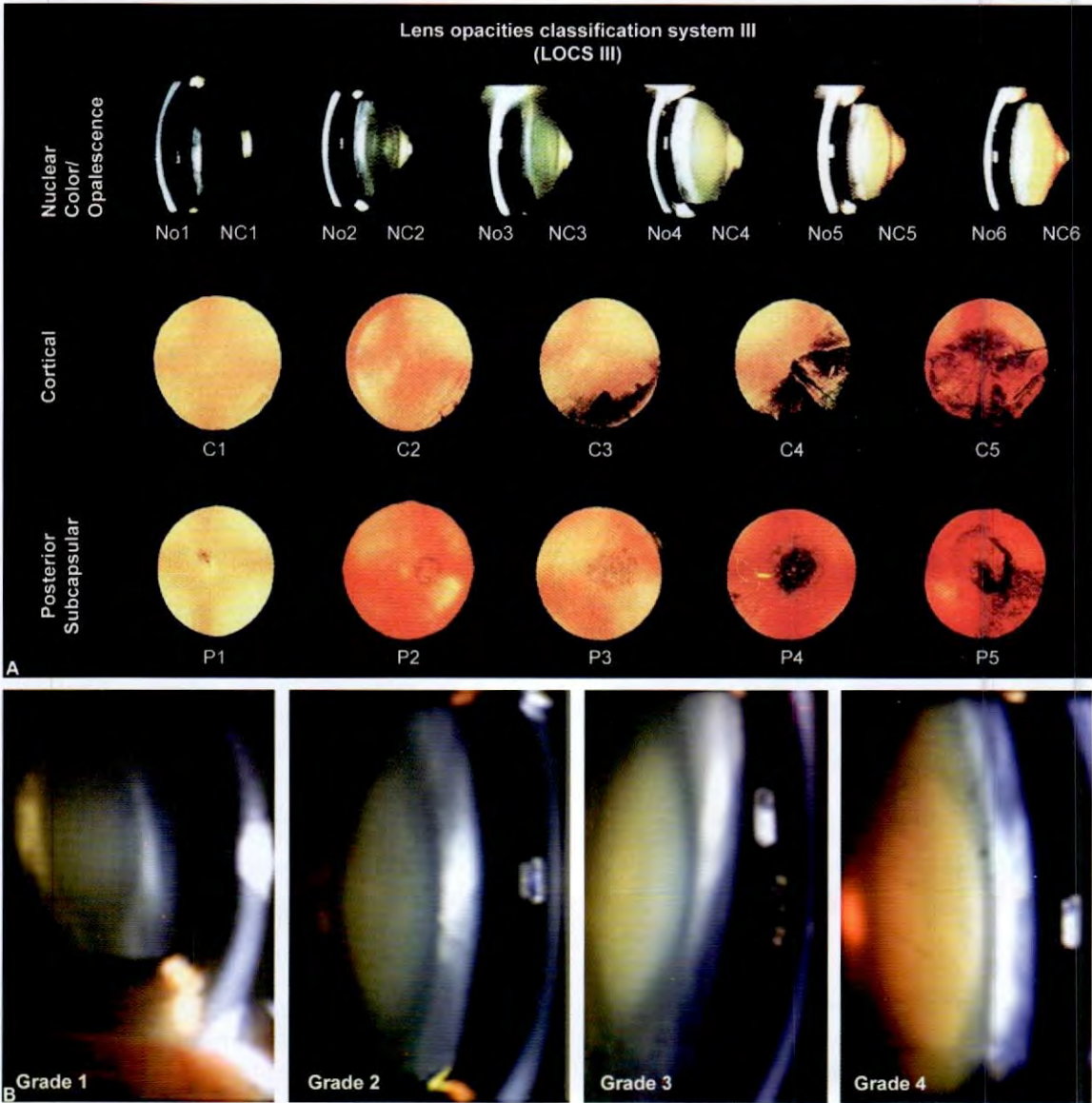


Fig. 9.19: A, Lens opacity classification system (LOCS III); B, Slit-lamp biomicroscopic grading of nucleus hardness in cataractous lens



**Table 9.2** Grading of nucleus hardness on slit-lamp biomicroscopy

| Grade of hardness | Description of hardness | Colour of nucleus        |
|-------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|
| Grade I           | Soft                    | White or greenish yellow |
| Grade II          | Soft-medium             | Yellowish                |
| Grade III         | Medium-hard             | Amber                    |
| Grade IV          | Hard                    | Brownish                 |
| Grade V           | Ultrasoft (rock hard)   | Blackish                 |

**Table 9.3** Immature senile cataract versus nuclear sclerosis

| ISC                                                                           | Nuclear sclerosis                                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Painless progressive loss of vision                                        | 1. Painless progressive loss of vision                             |
| 2. Greyish colour of lens on oblique illumination examination                 | 2. Greyish colour of lens                                          |
| 3. Iris shadow is present                                                     | 3. Iris shadow is absent                                           |
| 4. Black spots against red glow are observed on distant direct ophthalmoscopy | 4. No black spots are seen against red glow                        |
| 5. Slit-lamp examination reveals area of cataractous cortex                   | 5. Slit-lamp examination reveals clear lens with nuclear sclerosis |
| 6. Visual acuity does not improve on pin-hole testing                         | 6. Visual acuity usually improves on pin-hole testing              |

**Complications** 10m

1. **Phacoanaphylactic uveitis**. Lens proteins may leak into the anterior chamber in hypermature cataract. These proteins may act as antigen and induce antigen-antibody reaction leading to phacoanaphylactic uveitis.

2. **Lens-induced glaucoma**. It may occur by different mechanisms:

i. **Phacomorphic glaucoma** is caused by intumescent (swollen and cataractous) lens. It is a type of secondary angle closure glaucoma. It is the most common type of lens-induced glaucoma.

ii. **Phacolytic glaucoma**. Lens proteins are leaked into the anterior chamber in cases with Morgagnian

**Table 9.4** Differences between mature senile cataract and leucocoria due to retrolental causes

| MSC                                             | Leucocoria (due to retrolental causes)                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. White reflex in pupillary area               | 1. White reflex in pupillary area                                                 |
| 2. Size of pupil usually normal                 | 2. Pupil usually semidilated                                                      |
| 3. Fourth Purkinje image is absent              | 3. Fourth Purkinje image is present                                               |
| 4. Slit-lamp examination shows cataractous lens | 4. Slit-lamp examination shows transparent lens with white reflex behind the lens |
| 5. Ultrasonography normal                       | 5. Ultrasonography reveals opacity in the vitreous cavity                         |

type hypermature cataract. These proteins are engulfed by the macrophages. The swollen macrophages clog the trabecular meshwork leading to increase in IOP. Thus, the phacolytic glaucoma is a type of secondary open angle glaucoma (for details See page 255).

iii. **Phacotopic glaucoma**. Hypermature cataractous lens may subluxate/dislocate and cause glaucoma by blocking the pupil or angle of anterior chamber.

3. **Subluxation or dislocation of lens**. It may occur due to degeneration of zonules in hypermature stage.

**TRAUMATIC CATARACT**

See page 448.

**METABOLIC CATARACTS** 3m

These cataracts occur due to endocrine disorders and biochemical abnormalities. A few common varieties of metabolic cataracts are described here.

**Diabetic cataract**

Diabetes is associated with two types of cataracts:

1. **Senile cataract in diabetics** appears at an early age and progresses rapidly.

2. **True diabetic cataract**. The classical diabetic cataract is also called 'snowflake cataract' or 'snowstorm cataract'. It is a rare condition, usually occurring in young adults due to osmotic over hydration of the lens. Osmotic over hydration of the lens occurs due to accumulation of sorbitol, when glucose is metabolized by NADPH+ dependent aldose reductase. Initially, a large number of fluid vacuoles appear underneath the anterior and posterior

3m



capsules, which is soon followed by appearance of bilateral snowflake-like white opacities in the cortex (Fig. 9.20). Such opacities may resolve spontaneously or mature within a few days.

### Galactosaemic cataract

It is associated with inborn error of galactose metabolism. Galactosaemia occurs in two forms:

1. **Classical galactosaemia** occurs due to deficiency of galactose-1 phosphate uridylyltransferase (GPUT); and
2. A related disorder occurs due to deficiency of galactokinase (GK).

**Characteristic features.** Galactosaemia is frequently associated with the development of bilateral cataract (oil droplet central lens opacities). The lens changes may be reversible and occurrence of cataract may be prevented, if milk and milk products are eliminated from the diet when diagnosed at an early stage.

### Hypocalcaemic (Tetanic) cataract

Cataractous changes may be associated with parathyroid tetany, which may occur due to atrophy or inadvertent removal (during thyroidectomy) of parathyroid glands.

■ **Multicoloured crystals or small discrete white flecks** of opacities are formed in the cortex which seldom mature.

■ **Zonular cataract**, characterized by a thin opacified lamella deep in the infantile cortex is typically seen in infants with hypocalcaemia.

### Cataract due to error of copper metabolism

Inborn error of copper metabolism results in Wilson's disease (hepatolenticular degeneration).

■ **'Sunflower cataract'** characterised by yellowish brown dots (Fig. 9.21) may be observed rarely in such patients due to the deposition of cuprous oxide

in the anterior lens capsule and subcapsular cortex in a stellate pattern.

■ **'Kayser-Fleischer ring' (KF ring)**, i.e. a golden ring due to deposition of copper in the peripheral part of Descemet's membrane in the cornea, is a more commonly observed ocular feature of Wilson's disease.

### Cataract in Lowe's syndrome

Lowe's (Oculo-cerebral-renal) syndrome is a rare inborn error of amino acid metabolism.

- **Ocular features** include congenital cataract, glaucoma and blue sclera.
- **Systemic features** of this syndrome are mental retardation, dwarfism, osteomalacia, muscular hypotonia and frontal prominence.

### COMPLICATED CATARACT 5m

It refers to opacification of the lens secondary to some other intraocular disease. Some authors use the term *secondary cataract* for the complicated cataract. On the other hand, many authors use the term secondary cataract to denote after cataract. Therefore, to avoid confusion and controversy, preferably, the term secondary cataract should be discarded in general.

### Etiology

The lens depends for its nutrition on intraocular fluids. Therefore, any condition in which the ocular circulation is disturbed or in which inflammatory toxins are formed, will disturb nutrition of the crystalline lens, resulting in development of complicated cataract. Some important ocular conditions giving rise to complicated cataract are listed here.

1. **Inflammatory conditions.** These include uveal inflammations (like iridocyclitis, pars planitis, choroiditis), hypopyon corneal ulcer and

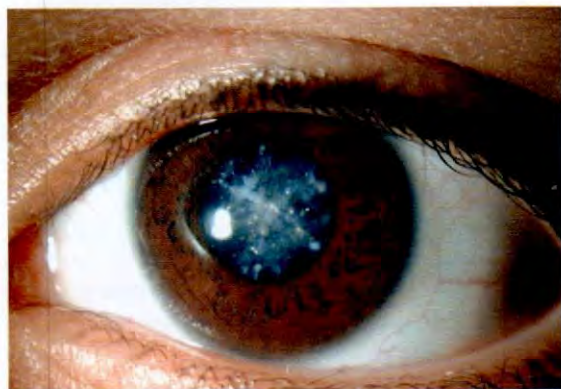


Fig. 9.20 Snow-flake (diabetic) cataract

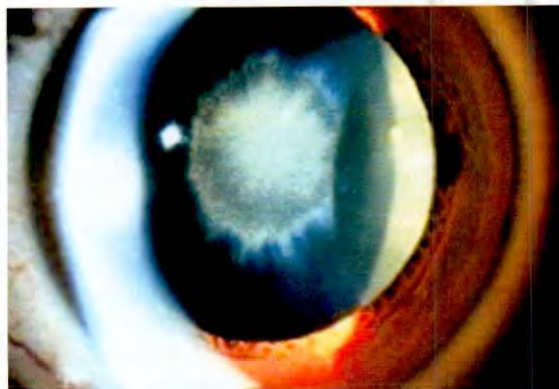


Fig. 9.21 Sunflower cataract



- endophthalmitis. **Anterior uveitis is the most common cause** of complicated cataract.
2. **Degenerative conditions** such as **retinitis pigmentosa** and other pigmentary retinal dystrophies and myopic chorioretinal degeneration.
  3. **Retinal detachment**. Complicated cataract may occur in long-standing cases.
  4. **Glaucoma (primary or secondary)** may sometimes result in complicated cataract. The underlying cause here is probably the embarrassment to the intraocular circulation, consequent to the raised pressure.
  5. **Intraocular tumours** such as **retinoblastoma** or **melanoma** may give rise to complicated cataract in late stages.

### Clinical features

Typically, the **complicated cataract starts as posterior subcapsular cortical cataract (PSC)**. The opacity is irregular in outline and variable in density. In the **beam of slit-lamp, the opacities have:**

- **'Breadcrumb'** appearance.
- **'Polychromatic luster'**, i.e. appearance of iridescent coloured particles of reds, greens and blue is a very characteristic sign (**Rainbow cataract**).
- **Diffuse yellow-haze** is seen in the adjoining cortex.
- **Slowly the opacity spreads in the rest of the cortex**, and finally the entire lens becomes opaque, giving dirty white (Fig. 9.22) or chalky white appearance.
- **Deposition of calcium** is common in the later stages.

### Drug-induced cataracts

#### Corticosteroid-induced cataract

**Posterior subcapsular opacities** are associated with the use of topical as well as systemic steroids. **Exact relationship between dose and duration of corticosteroid therapy with the development of cataract is still unclear.** However, in general,

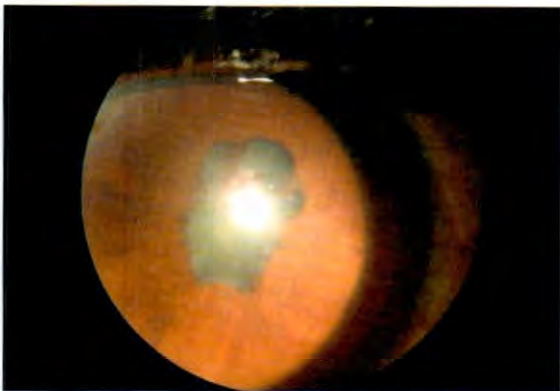


Fig. 9.22 Complicated cataract with healed iridocyclitis

Occupational cataract

prolonged use of steroids in high doses may result in cataract formation. **Children are more susceptible** than adults.

Therefore, it is recommended that all patients with diseases requiring prolonged corticosteroids therapy should be regularly examined on slit-lamp by an ophthalmologist. Further, intermittent regimes should be preferred over regular therapy and whenever possible steroids should be substituted by nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs).

#### Miotics-induced cataract

**Anterior subcapsular granular type** of cataract may be associated with long-term use of miotics, particularly **long acting cholinesterase inhibitors** such as **echothiophate, demecarium bromide, diisopropyl fluorophosphate (DFP)**. Removal of the drug may stop progression and occasionally may cause reversal of cataract.

#### Other drug-induced cataracts

Other drugs associated with fine toxic cataracts are **amiodarone, chlorpromazine, busulphan, gold** and **allopurinol**.

### RADIATIONAL CATARACT

Exposure to almost all types of radiant energy is known to produce cataract by causing damage to the lens epithelium. Following types are known:

#### 1. Infrared (heat) cataract

Prolonged exposure (over several years) to infrared rays may cause **discoid posterior subcapsular opacities** and **true exfoliation of the anterior capsule**. It is typically seen in persons working in glass industries, so also called as **'glass-blower's** or **'glass-worker's cataract'**.

#### 2. Irradiation cataract

Exposure to **X-rays, γ-rays or neutrons** may be associated with irradiation cataract. There is usually a latent period ranging from 6 months to a few years between exposure and development of the cataract. People prone to get such cataracts are **inadequately protected technicians**, patients treated for malignant tumours and **workers of atomic energy plants**.

#### 3. Ultraviolet radiation cataract

Long-term exposure to ultraviolet radiation has been linked with **senile cataract** in many studies.

### ELECTRIC CATARACT

It is known to occur after passage of **powerful electric current through the body**. The cataract usually starts as **punctate subcapsular opacities which mature rapidly**. The source of current can be a **live electricity wire** or a **flash of lightning**.

Rosette cataract



### ■ SYNDERMATOTIC CATARACT

Lens opacities associated with cutaneous disease are termed *syndermatotic cataracts*. Such cataracts are bilateral and occur at a young age.

- **Atopic dermatitis** is the most common cutaneous disease associated with cataract (*Atopic cataract*).
- **Other skin disorders** associated with cataract include *poikiloderma*, *vasculare atrophicus*, *scleroderma* and *keratosis follicularis*.

### 10m ■ MANAGEMENT OF CATARACT IN ADULTS

Treatment of cataract essentially consists of its surgical removal. However, certain nonsurgical measures may be of help, in peculiar circumstances, till surgery is taken up.

#### ■ A. NON-SURGICAL MEASURES

1. **Treatment of cause of cataract.** In acquired cataracts, **thorough search should be made to find out the cause of cataract.** Treatment of the causative disease, many a time, **may stop progression** and sometimes in early stages may cause even regression of cataractous changes and thus defer the surgical treatment. Some common examples include:

- **Adequate control of diabetes mellitus**, when discovered.
- **Removal of cataractogenic drugs** such as corticosteroids, phenothiazines and strong miotics, may delay or prevent cataractogenesis.
- **Removal of irradiation** (infrared or X-rays) may also delay or prevent cataract formation.
- **Early and adequate treatment of ocular diseases like uveitis** may prevent occurrence of complicated cataract.

2. **Measures to delay progression** include:

- **Topical preparations containing iodide salts of calcium and potassium** are being prescribed in abundance in early stages of cataract (especially in senile cataract) in a bid to delay its progression. However, till date no conclusive results about their role are available.
- **Role of vitamin E and aspirin** in delaying the process of cataractogenesis is also mentioned.

3. **Measures to improve vision in the presence of incipient and immature cataract** may be of great solace to the patient. These include:

- **Prescription of glasses for refractive status**, which often changes with considerable rapidity in patients with cataract, should be corrected at frequent intervals.
- **Arrangement of illumination.** Patients with peripheral opacities (pupillary area still free), may be instructed to use brilliant illumination.

Conversely, in the presence of central opacities, a dull light placed beside and slightly behind the patient's head will give the best result.

- **Use of dark goggles** in patients with central opacities is of great value and **comfort when worn outdoors.**
- **Mydriatics.** Patients with a small axial cataract, frequently may benefit from papillary dilatation. This allows the clear paraxial lens to participate in light transmission, image formation and focussing. Mydriatics such as **5% phenylephrine** or **1% tropicamide**; 1 drop bid. in the affected eye may clarify vision.

#### ■ B. SURGICAL MANAGEMENT

##### Indications

1. **Visual improvement.** This is by far the **most common** indication. When surgery should be advised for visual improvement varies from person to person depending upon the individual visual needs. So, an individual **should be operated for cataract, when the visual handicap becomes a significant deterrent** to the maintenance of his or her usual lifestyle and profession.

2. **Medical indications.** Sometimes patients may be comfortable from the visual point (due to useful vision from the other eye or otherwise) but may be **advised cataract surgery due to medical grounds** such as in the presence of:

- **Lens-induced glaucoma,**
- **Phacoanaphylactic endophthalmitis** and
- **Dislocated/subluxated lens**
- **Retinal diseases like diabetic retinopathy** or **retinal detachment**, treatment of which is being hampered by the presence of lens opacities.

3. **Cosmetic indication.** Sometimes patient with mature cataract may insist for cataract extraction (even with no hope of getting useful vision due to associated retinal or optic nerve disease), in order to obtain a black pupil.

##### Preoperative evaluation and workup

10m

Once it has been decided to operate for cataract, a thorough **preoperative evaluation** should be carried out before contemplating surgery. This should include:

1. **Ocular examination.** A **thorough examination** of eyes including **slit-lamp biomicroscopy** and **fundoscopy** is desirable in all cases. The following useful information is essential before the patient is considered for surgery:

1. **Visual status assessment** should include:

- **Visual acuity** should be **noted unaided**, best corrected and with **pin hole testing**.



■ **Perception of light (PL)** must be noted. Absence of PL indicates nil visual prognosis.

■ **Projection of light rays (PR)**. It is a crude but an important and easy test for function of the peripheral retina. It is tested in a semi-dark room with the opposite eye covered. A thin beam of light is thrown in the patient's eye from four directions (up, down, medial and lateral) and the patient is asked to look straight ahead and point out the direction from which the light seems to come. **Inaccurate PR** may be due to old retinal detachment, visual pathway defects, advanced glaucoma, large area of chorioretinal atrophy and indicates poor visual prognosis. However, sometimes in dense cataract PR may be inaccurate with good visual prognosis.

■ **Potential visual acuity tests** which may be required in the presence of dense opaque media (advanced stages of cataract) include:

- **Laser interferometry (LI)**, and
- **Potential acuity meter (PAM)** test.

2. **Pupils** should be examined to check for:

- **Light reactions** and **RAPD**, and
- **Ability of the pupils to dilate** adequately before surgery.

3. **Anterior segment evaluation** by slit-lamp biomicroscopy is must before cataract surgery.

■ **Cornea** should be examined to note any scarring, endothelial status (guttata). In patients with suspicion of endothelial dystrophy, specular microscopy examination should be carried out for endothelial cell count and morphology. Normal cell count in elderly patients is 2000–2500 cell/mm<sup>2</sup>. Special care is needed in patients with cell counts below 1500 cells/mm<sup>2</sup>.

■ **Keratic precipitates (KPs)** noted at the back of cornea suggest management of subtle uveitis before the cataract surgery.

■ **Cataractous lens** should be evaluated for morphology and maturity of cataract and for grade of nuclear sclerosis (especially important for planning phacoemulsification surgery, See Fig. 9.19, page 197).

■ **Other signs** to be particularly looked for include posterior synechiae, pseudoexfoliation, iridodonesis, pigments over the anterior lens capsule, and anterior chamber depth.

4. **Intraocular pressure (IOP)** should be measured in each case, preferably by applanation tonometry. Presence of a raised IOP needs a priority management.

5. **Examination of lids, conjunctiva and lacrimal apparatus**. Search for local source of infection

should be made by ruling out conjunctival infections, meibomitis, blepharitis and lacrimal sac infection. Conjunctival swab culture and sensitivity should be carried out in doubtful cases. **Lacrimal sac should receive special attention**. Lacrimal syringing should be carried out in patients with history of persistent watering from the eyes. In cases where chronic dacryocystitis is discovered, either **DCR (dacryocystorhinostomy)** or **DCT (dacryocystectomy)** operation should be performed, before the cataract surgery.

6. **Fundus examination**, wherever possible, should be carried out with special attention on macula, to rule out other causes of decreased vision. **Indirect ophthalmoscopy** may be useful in hazy media.

5m **Retinal/Macular function tests** are important to predict the visual potential in patients with very dense cataracts where fundus examination is not possible a few simple macular functions tests are as below:

■ **Two-light discrimination test**. The patient is asked to look through an opaque disc perforated with two pin-holes behind which a light is held. The holes are 2 inches apart and kept about 2 feet away from the eye. If the patient can perceive two lights, it indicates normal macular function.

■ **Maddox rod test**. The patient is asked to look at a distant bright light through a Maddox rod. An accurate perception of red line indicates normal function.

■ **Colour perception**. It indicates that some macular function is present and optic nerve is relatively normal.

■ **Entoptic visualisation**. It is evaluated by rubbing a point source of light (such as bare lighted bulb of torch) against the closed eyelids. If the patient perceives the retinal vascular pattern in black outline, it is favourable indication of retinal function. Being subjective in nature, the importance of negative test can be considered if the patient can perceive the pattern with the opposite eye.

8. **Objective test for evaluating retina** are required if some retinal pathology is suspected. These tests includes ultrasonic geographic (USG) evaluation of posterior segment of the eye; electrophysiological studies such as **ERG (electroretinogram)**, **EOG (electrooculogram)** and **VER (visually evoked response)**;

9. **Keratometry, corneal topography and biometry** to calculate power of intraocular lens (IOL) to be implanted are performed in each case to be taken up for cataract surgery (For details See page 216).



**II. General medical examination of the patient** (the so called preanaesthetic check-up, i.e. PAC) to exclude the presence of systemic diseases especially:

- Diabetes mellitus
- Hypertension
- Cardiac problems
- Obstructive lung disorders and
- Any potential source of infection in the body such as septic gums, urinary tract infection, etc.

### **Preoperative medications and preparations**

1. Consent, with detailed information about the procedure, risks involved and outcome expected, should be obtained from each patient.

2. Scrub bath, care of hair and marking of the eye. Each patient should be instructed to have a scrub bath including face and hair wash with soap and water. Male patients must get their beard cleaned and hair trimmed. Female patients should comb their hair properly. The eye to be operated should be marked.

3. Preoperative antibiotics and disinfectants are required to prevent postoperative endophthalmitis:

• Topical antibiotics such as fourth generation fluoroquinolone (0.3% moxifloxacin or 0.3% gatifloxacin) may be used QID for 3 days before surgery and every 15 minutes for 2 hours before surgery to eradicate conjunctival bacterial flora.

• Povidone-Iodine (10%) solution should be used to paint the lids and facial skin preferably 2-3 hours before surgery.

• Povidone-Iodine (5%) solution instilled as eye drops in the conjunctival sac. 10-30 minutes before surgery is one of the most effective measure to decrease the bacterial flora.

4. IOP lowering is must for conventional extracapsular cataract extraction (ECCE). A few surgeons also prefer to lower IOP in manual small incision cataract surgeons (SICS) and phacoemulsification. Most surgeon do not lower IOP. It can be accomplished by mechanical pressure (digital massage) and/or by IOP lowering drugs (IV mannitol or acetazolamide).

5. Mydriasis, sustained throughout the procedure is required for successful completion of surgery. It can be obtained by:

- Topical tropicamide 1% (or cyclopentolate) + Phenylephrine 2.5% should be instilled every 15 minutes 4-6 times before surgery.
- Topical cyclooxygenase inhibitor (NSAID), e.g. flurbiprofen 0.3% or, ketorolac 0.5%, bromfenac 0.09% or diclofenac 0.1% instilled 3 times a day before the surgery and every 15 minutes, 4 times immediately before the surgery helps in maintaining mydriasis during the procedure.

### **Anaesthesia**

3m

Cataract extraction can be performed under general or local anaesthesia. Local anaesthesia is preferred whenever possible. More and more surgeons are preferring only topical anaesthesia for phacoemulsification (for details of anesthesia for cataract surgery See page 612).

### **Types and choice of surgical techniques**

10m

#### **I. Intracapsular cataract extraction (ICCE)**

In this technique, the entire cataractous lens along with the intact capsule is removed. Therefore, weak and degenerated zonules are a pre-requisite for this method.

*Indications.* ICCE has stood the test of time and had been widely employed for about 100 years over the world (1880-1980). Now for the last four decades it has been almost entirely replaced by planned extracapsular techniques.

*Indication of ICCE* at present, is only the markedly subluxated and dislocated lens.

#### **II. Extracapsular cataract extraction techniques**

In these techniques, major portion of anterior capsule with epithelium, nucleus and cortex are removed; leaving behind the intact posterior capsule.

*Indications.* Presently, extracapsular cataract extraction techniques are the surgery of choice for almost all types of adulthood as well as childhood cataracts unless contraindicated.

*Contraindications.* The only absolute contraindication for ECCE is markedly subluxated or dislocated lens.

*Advantages of ECCE techniques over ICCE* include

1. ECCE is a universal operation and can be performed at all ages, except when zonules are not intact; whereas ICCE cannot be performed below 40 years of age.
2. Posterior chamber IOL can be implanted after ECCE, while it cannot be implanted after ICCE.
3. Postoperative vitreous related problems (such as herniation in anterior chamber, pupillary block and vitreous touch syndrome) associated with ICCE are not seen after ECCE.
4. Incidence of postoperative complications such as endophthalmitis, cystoid macular oedema and retinal detachment are much less after ECCE as compared to that after ICCE.
5. Postoperative astigmatism is less with ECCE techniques, as the incision is smaller.
6. Prognosis for subsequent glaucoma filtering or corneal transplantation (if required) is much improved with ECCE.
7. Incidence of secondary rubeosis in diabetics is reduced after ECCE.

5m



### Different techniques of extracapsular cataract extraction

The surgical techniques of ECCE presently in vogue are:

- **Conventional** extracapsular cataract extraction (ECCE),
- **Manual small incision cataract surgery (SICS)**,
- **Phacoemulsification**.
- **Femtosecond laser assisted cataract surgery (FLACS)**.

### Conventional ECCE versus SICS

Conventional large incision ECCE, though still being performed by a few surgeons, has been largely replaced by manual small incision cataract surgery (SICS) and phacoemulsification techniques.

**Demerits of conventional ECCE over SICS** include:

- **Long incision** (10 to 12 mm).
- **Multiple sutures** are required.
- **Open chamber surgery** with **high risk of vitreous prolapse, intraoperative hard eye** and **expulsive choroidal haemorrhage**.
- **High incidence of postoperative astigmatism**.
- **Postoperative suture-related problems** like irritation and **suture abscess**, etc.
- **Postoperative wound-related problems** such as **wound leak, shallowing of anterior chamber** and **iris prolapse**.
- **Needs suture removal**, during which infection may occur.

**Note.** All demerits of conventional ECCE are taken care of in SICS.

### Merits of manual SICS over phacoemulsification

1. **Universal applicability**, i.e. all types of cataracts including hard cataracts (grade IV and V) can be operated by this technique.
2. **Learning curve**. This procedure is much easier to learn as compared to phacoemulsification.
3. **Not machine dependent**. The **biggest advantage** of manual SICS is that it is not machine dependent and thus can be practised anywhere.
4. **Less surgical complications**. Disastrous complication like **nuclear drop into vitreous cavity** is much less than in phacoemulsification technique.
5. **Cost effective**. With manual SICS, the expenses are vastly reduced as compared to considerable expenses in acquiring and maintaining phaco machine. There is no need to spend on consumable items like the phaco tip, sleeves, tubing and probe. Further, in SICS nonfoldable (PMMA) IOLs are used which are much cheaper than the foldable IOLs.

### Demerits of manual SICS over phacoemulsification

1. **Conjunctival congestion** persists for 5–7 days at the site of conjunctival flap.
2. **Mild tenderness** sometime may be present owing to scleral incision.
3. **Postoperative hyphema** may be noted sometimes.
4. **Surgical induced astigmatism** is more as the incision in SICS is large (about 6 mm) as compared to phacoemulsification (about 3.2 mm).
5. **Delayed visual rehabilitation** as compared to phacoemulsification.

### Merits of phacoemulsification over manual SICS

1. **Topical anaesthesia** may be sufficient for phacoemulsification in expert hands.
2. **Postoperative congestion is minimal** after phacoemulsification, as phaco is usually performed through a clear corneal incision.
3. **Small incision**. The chief advantage of phacoemulsification over manual SICS is that it can be performed through a smaller (1.8–3.2 mm) incision.
4. **Less corneal complications**. Phacoemulsification can be performed in the posterior chamber without prolapsing the nucleus into the anterior chamber, thereby minimising the risk of corneal complications.
5. **Visual rehabilitation** is comparatively quicker in phacoemulsification as compared to manual SICS.
6. **Postoperative astigmatism** is comparatively less when foldable IOLs are implanted through a smaller incision (3.2 mm).

### Demerits of phacoemulsification vis-a-vis manual SICS

1. **Learning curve** for phacoemulsification is more painful both for the surgeons and patients.
2. **Complications encountered** during phacoemulsification like nuclear drop are unforgiving.
3. **Machine dependent**. This procedure is solely machine dependent and in the event of an unfortunate machine failure in the middle of surgery one has to shift to conventional ECCE.
4. **High cost**. Cost of this technique is very high because of expensive machine, accessories and maintenance.
5. **Limitations**. It is very difficult to deal with hard cataracts (grade IV and V) with this technique, and also there is **high-risk of serious corneal complications** due to more use of phaco energy in such cases.

**Conclusion.** Presently, the **phacoemulsification has become the preferred method** of cataract extraction



worldwide because the complication rate in the expert hands is minimal and the technique provides an **almost quiet eye** early postoperatively and an **early visual rehabilitation**.

However, **for the masses, especially in developing countries**, the **manual SICS offers the advantages of sutureless cataract surgery** as a low cost alternative to phacoemulsification with the added advantages of having wider applicability and an easier learning curve.

## SURGICAL TECHNIQUES FOR CATARACT EXTRACTION

### INTRACAPSULAR CATARACT EXTRACTION

Presently, the technique of intracapsular cataract extraction (**ICCE is obsolete and sparingly performed worldwide**). However, the surgical steps are described here as a mark of respect to the technique which has been widely employed for about 100 years over the world and is an important landmark in the history of cataract surgery.

**Surgical steps of the ICCE technique** are as follows:

1. **Superior rectus (bridle) suture** is passed to fix the eye in downward gaze (Fig. 9.23A).

2. **Conjunctival flap** (fornix based) is prepared to expose the limbus (Fig. 9.23B) and **haemostasis** is achieved by wet field or heat cautery. All surgeons do not make conjunctival flap.

3. **Partial thickness groove or gutter** is made through about two-thirds depth of anterior limbal area from 9.30 to 2.30 O'clock (150°) with the help of a razor blade knife (Fig. 9.23C).

4. **Corneoscleral section**. The anterior chamber is opened with the razor blade knife or with 3.2 mm keratome and section is completed using sclerocorneal scissors (Fig. 9.23D).

5. **Iridectomy** (Fig. 9.23E). A peripheral iridectomy may be performed by using iris forceps and de Wecker's scissors to prevent postoperative pupil block glaucoma.

6. **Methods of lens delivery**. In ICCE, the lens can be delivered by any of the following methods:

i. **Smith Indian method**. Here the lens is delivered with tumbling technique by applying pressure on limbus at 6 O'clock position with lens expressor and counterpressure at 12 O'clock with the lens spatula. With this method lower pole is delivered first.

ii. **Cryoextraction**. In this technique, cornea is lifted cataracts. The surgical techniques of ECCE presently

up, lens surface is dried with a swab, iris is in vogue for adulthood cataracts include: retracted up and tip of the cryoprobe is applied on the anterior surface of the lens in the upper quadrant. Freezing is activated ( $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) to create adhesions between the lens and the probe. The zonules are ruptured by gentle rotatory movements and the lens is then extracted out by sliding movements. In this technique, upper pole of the lens is delivered first (Fig. 9.23F).

iii. **Capsule forceps method**. The Arruga's capsule holding forceps is introduced close into the anterior chamber and the anterior capsule of the lens is caught at 6 O'clock position. The lens is lifted slightly and its zonules are ruptured by gentle sideways movements. Then the lens is extracted with gentle sliding movements by the forceps assisted by a pressure at 6 O'clock position on the limbus by the lens expressor.

iv. **Irisophake method**. This technique is obsolete and thus not in much use.

v. **Wire vectis method**. It is employed in cases with subluxated or dislocated lens only. In this method, the loop of the wire vectis is slide gently below the subluxated lens, which is then lifted out of the eye.

7. **Formation of anterior chamber**. After the delivery of lens, iris is repositioned into the anterior chamber with the help of iris reposer and chamber is formed by injecting sterile air or balanced salt solution.

8. **Implantation of anterior chamber (ACIOL)** (Figs 9.23G and H). (For details See page 216).

9. **Closure of incision** is done with 5 to 7 interrupted sutures (8-0, 9-0 or 10-0 nylon) (Fig. 9.23I).

10. **Conjunctival flap** is repositioned and secured by wet-field cautery.

11. **Subconjunctival injection** of dexamethasone 0.25 mL and gentamicin 0.5 mL is given.

12. **Patching of eye** is done with a pad and sticking plaster or a bandage is applied.

### SURGICAL TECHNIQUES OF EXTRA-CAPSULAR CATARACT EXTRACTION FOR ADULTHOOD CATARACTS

The surgical techniques of ECCE can be described separately for adulthood cataracts and childhood cataracts. The surgical techniques of ECCE presently in vogue **for adulthood cataracts include**:

- Conventional, extracapsular cataract extraction (**ECCE**),
- Manual small incision cataract surgery (**SICS**), and
- **Phacoemulsification**.





**Fig. 9.23** Surgical steps of intracapsular cataract extraction with anterior chamber intraocular lens implantation: A, Passing of superior rectus suture; B, Fornix-based conjunctival flap; C, Partial thickness groove; D, Completion of corneo-scleral section; E, Peripheral iridectomy; F, Cryo-lens extraction; G and H, Insertion of Kelman multiflex intraocular lens in anterior chamber; I, Corneoscleral suturing

### ■ CONVENTIONAL EXTRACAPSULAR CATARACT EXTRACTION

#### Surgical steps of conventional ECCE are:

1. **Superior rectus (bridle) suture** is passed to fix the eye in downward gaze (See Fig. 9.23A).
2. **Conjunctival flap** (fornix based) is prepared to expose the limbus (See Fig. 9.23B) and haemostasis is achieved by wet field cautery. Many surgeons do not make conjunctival flap.
3. **Partial thickness groove or gutter** is made through about two-thirds depth of anterior limbal area from

10 to 2 O'clock (120°) with the help of a razor blade knife (See Fig. 9.23C).

**4. Entry into anterior chamber.** The anterior chamber is entered with the razor blade knife or with 3.2 mm keratome.

**5. Injection of viscoelastic substance in anterior chamber.** A viscoelastic substance such as **2% methylcellulose** or **1% sodium hyaluronate** is injected into the anterior chamber. This maintains the anterior chamber and protects the endothelium (For details See page 477).

use of visco-elastic  
• corneal surgery  
• IOL-tissue exam  
• intra-ocular cataract surgery

to prevent iris injury  
for space for moulding ant. chamber

• 1% chondroitinase  
• hyaluronidase



**6. Anterior capsulotomy.** It can be performed by any of the following methods:

**i. Can-opener's technique.** In this an irrigating cystitome (or simply a 26-gauge needle, bent at its tip) is introduced into the anterior chamber and multiple small radial cuts are made in the anterior capsule for 360° (Fig. 9.24A).

**ii. Linear capsulotomy (Envelope technique).** Here a straight incision is made in the anterior capsule (in the upper part) from 2–10 O'clock position. The rest of the capsulotomy is completed in the end after removal of nucleus and cortex.

**iii. Continuous circular capsulorrhexis (CCC).** Recently, this is the most commonly performed procedure. In this, the anterior capsule is torn in a circular fashion either with the help of an irrigating bent-needle cystitome or with a capsulorrhexis forceps (See Fig. 9.26B).

**7. Removal of anterior capsule.** It is removed with the help of a Kelman-McPherson forceps (Fig. 9.24B).

**8. Completion of corneoscleral section.** It is completed from 10 to 2 O'clock position either with the help of corneoscleral section enlarging scissors or 5.2 mm blunt keratome (Fig. 9.24C).

**9. Hydrodissection.** After the anterior capsulotomy, the balanced salt solution (BSS) is injected under the peripheral part of the anterior capsule. This manoeuvre separates the corticonuclear mass from the capsule.

**10. Removal of nucleus.** After hydrodissection the nucleus can be removed by any of the following techniques:

**i. Pressure and counterpressure method.** In it, the posterior pressure is applied at 12 O'clock position with corneal forceps or lens spatula and the nucleus is expressed out by counterpressure exerted at 6 O'clock position with a lens hook (Fig. 9.24D).

**ii. Irrigating wire vectis technique.** In this method, loop of an irrigating wire vectis is gently passed below the nucleus, which is then lifted out of the eye.

**11. Aspiration of the cortex.** The remaining cortex is aspirated out using a two-way irrigation and aspiration cannula (Fig. 9.24E).

**12. Implantation of IOL.** The PMMA posterior chamber IOL is implanted in the capsular bag after inflating the bag with viscoelastic substance (Figs 9.24 G and H).

**13. Closure of the incision** is done by a total of 3 to 5 interrupted or continuous 10–0 nylon sutures (Fig. 9.24I).

**14. Removal of viscoelastic substance.** Before tying the last suture the viscoelastic material is aspirated out with 2 way cannula and anterior chamber is filled with BSS.

**15. Conjunctival flap** is repositioned and secured by wet field cautery.

**16. Subconjunctival injection** of dexamethasone 0.25 mL and gentamicin 0.5 mL is given.

**17. Patching of eye** is done with a pad and sticking plaster or a bandage is applied.

## MANUAL SMALL INCISION CATARACT SURGERY

Manual small incision cataract surgery (SICS) has become very popular because of its merits over conventional ECCE as well as phacoemulsification technique highlighted earlier (See page 205). In this technique, ECCE with intraocular lens implantation is performed through a sutureless self-sealing valvular sclerocorneal tunnel incision.

### Surgical steps of manual SICS 10m

**1. Superior rectus (bridle) suture** is passed to fix the eye in downward gaze (Fig. 9.25A). This is specifically important in manual SICS where in addition to fixation of globe, it also provides a countertraction force during delivery of nucleus and epinucleus.

**Note.** SICS can also be performed from temporal side, especially in patients with against the rule (ATR) astigmatism. In this situation, bridle suture is passed through the lateral rectus muscle and all the next steps are performed on the temporal quadrant.

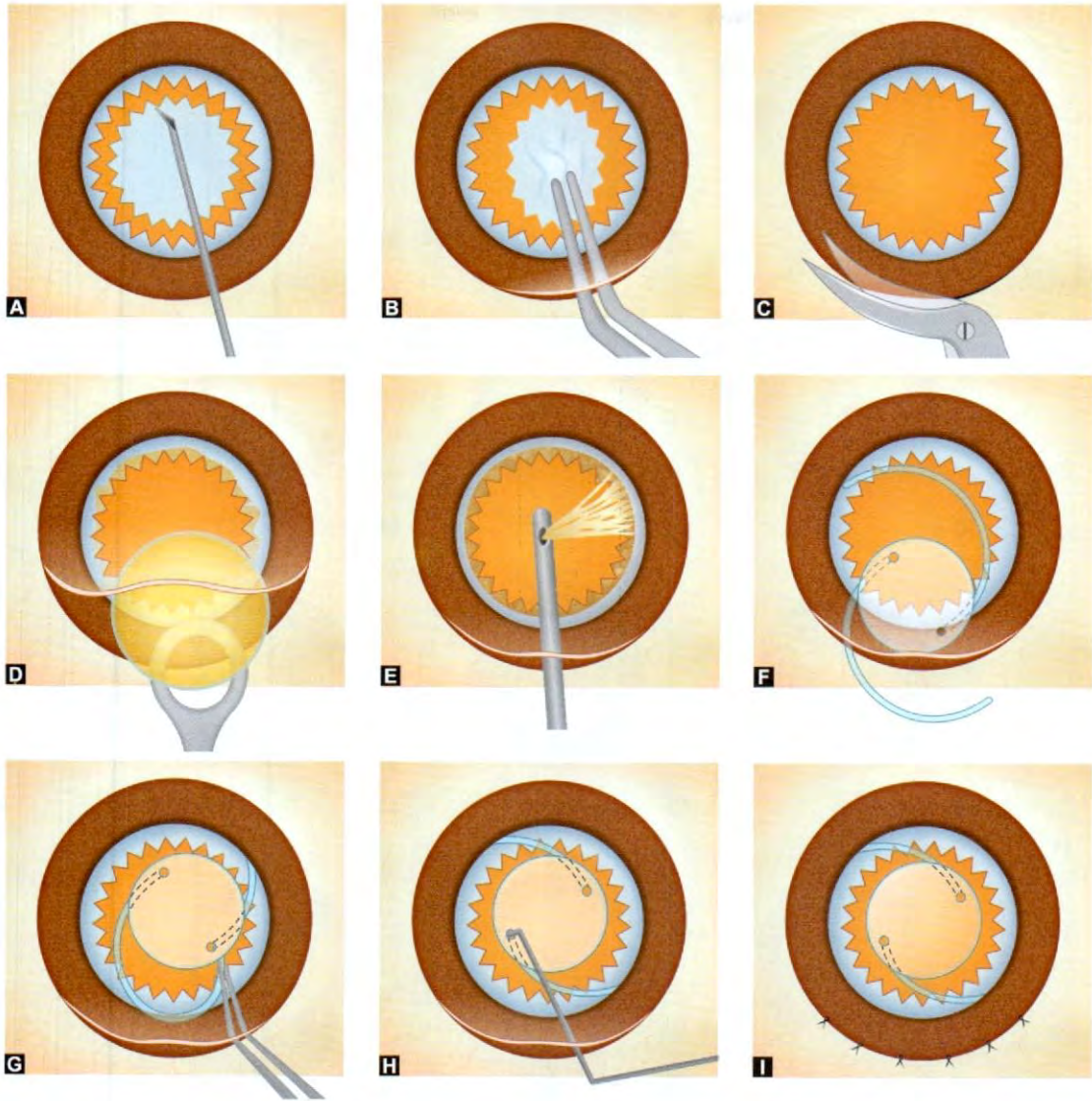
**2. Conjunctival flap and exposure of sclera** (Fig. 9.25B). A small fornix-based conjunctival flap is made with the help of sharp tipped scissors along the limbus from 10 to 2 O'clock positions. Conjunctiva and the Tenon's capsule are dissected, separated from the underlying sclera and retracted to expose about 4 mm strip of sclera along the entire incision length.

**3. Haemostasis** is achieved by applying gentle and just adequate wet field cautery.

**4. Sclerocorneal tunnel incision.** A self-sealing sclerocorneal tunnel incision is made in manual SICS. It consists of following components:

**i. External scleral incision.** A one-third to half-thickness external scleral groove is made about 1.5 to 2 mm behind the limbus. It varies from 5.5 mm to 7.5 mm in length depending upon the hardness of nucleus. It may be straight, frown shaped or chevron in configuration (Fig. 9.25C).





**Fig. 9.24** Surgical steps of conventional extracapsular cataract extraction with posterior chamber intraocular lens implantation: A, Anterior capsulotomy can-opener's technique; B, Removal of anterior capsule; C, Completion of corneoscleral section; D, Removal of nucleus (pressure and counter-pressure method); E, Aspiration of cortex; F, Insertion of inferior haptic of posterior chamber IOL; G, Insertion of superior haptic of PCIOL; H, Dialing of the IOL; I, Corneoscleral suturing

**ii. Sclerocorneal tunnel.** It is made with the help of a crescent knife. It usually extends 1–1.5 mm into the clear cornea (Fig. 9.25D).

**iii. Internal corneal incision.** It is made with the help of a sharp 3.2 mm angled keratome (Fig. 9.25E).

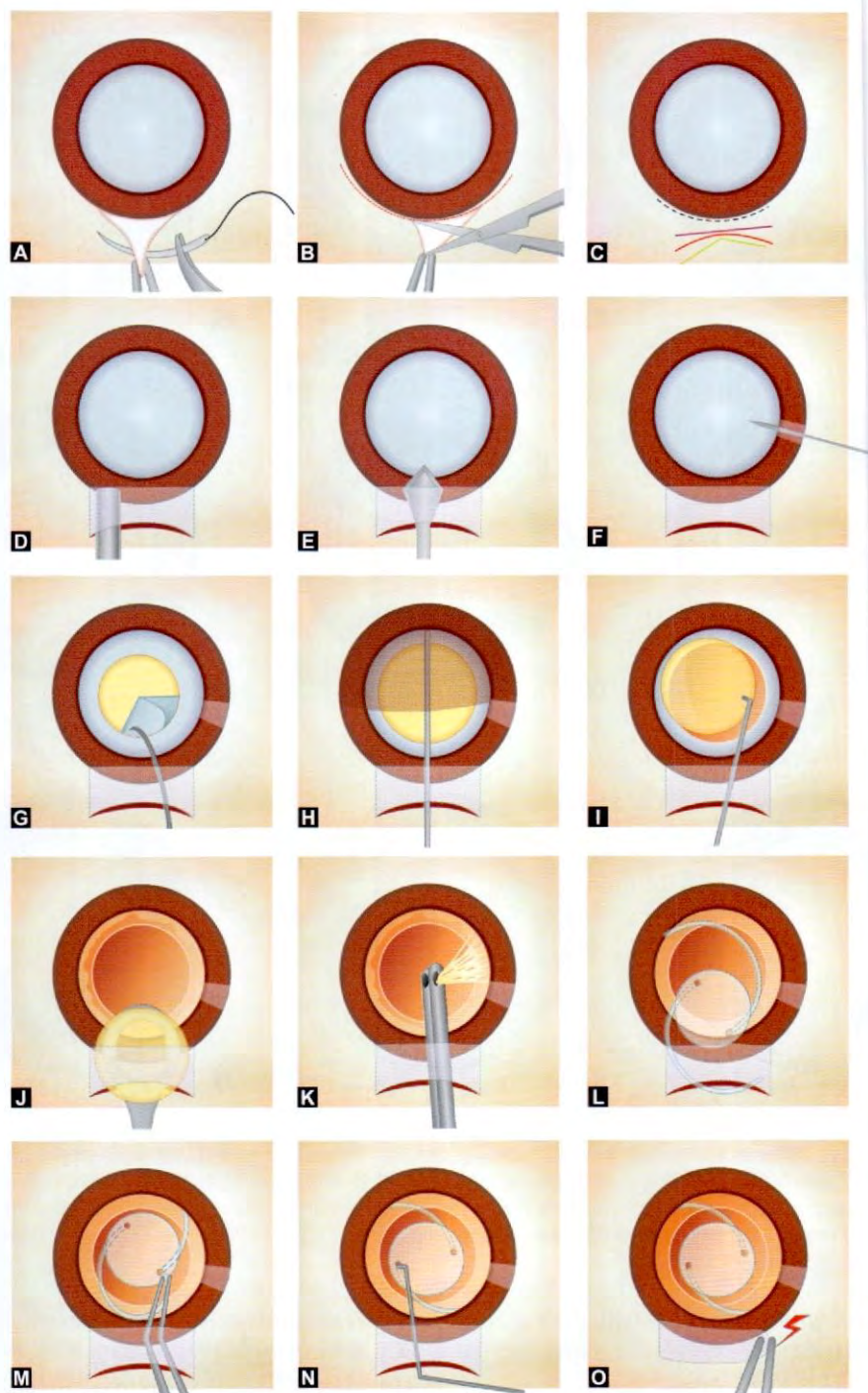
**5. Side-port entry** of about 1.5 mm valvular corneal incision is made at 9 O'clock position (Fig. 9.25F). This helps in aspiration of the subincisional cortex and deepening the anterior chamber at the end of surgery.

**6. Anterior capsulotomy.** As described in conventional ECCE, the capsulotomy in manual SICS can be either a Can Opener, or envelope or CCC. However, a large sized CCC is preferred (Fig. 9.25G).

**7. Hydrodissection.** As described in ECCE hydrodissection (Fig. 9.25H) is essential to separate corticonuclear mass from the posterior capsule in SICS.

**8. Nuclear management.** It consists of following manoeuvres:





**Fig. 9.25** Surgical steps of manual small incision cataract surgery (SICS): A, Superior rectus suture; B, Conjunctival flap and exposure of sclera; C, External scleral incisions (straight, frown shaped, and chevron, respectively) part of tunnel incision; D, Sclerocorneal tunnel with crescent knife; E, Internal corneal incision; F, Side port entry; G, Large CCC; H, Hydrodissection; I, Prolapse of nucleus into anterior chamber; J, Nucleus delivery with irrigating wire vectis; K, Aspiration of cortex; L, Insertion of inferior haptic of posterior chamber IOL; M, Insertion of superior haptic of PCIOL; N, Dialing of the IOL; O, Reposition and anchoring of conjunctival flap



i. **Prolapse of nucleus** out of the capsular bag into the anterior chamber is usually initiated during hydrodissection and completed by rotating the nucleus with Sinskey's hook (Fig. 9.25I).

ii. **Delivery of the nucleus outside** through the corneoscleral tunnel can be done by any one of the following methods:

- Irrigating wire vectis method (Fig. 9.25J)
- Blumenthal's technique,
- Phacosandwich technique,
- Phacofracture technique, and
- Fishhook technique.

9. **Aspiration of cortex.** The remaining cortex is aspirated out using a two-way irrigation and aspiration cannula (Fig. 9.25K) from the main incision and/or side port entry.

10. **IOL implantation.** A posterior chamber IOL is implanted in the capsular bag after filling the bag with viscoelastic substance (Figs 9.25L to N).

11. **Removal of viscoelastic material** is done thoroughly from the anterior chamber and capsular bag with the help of two-way irrigation aspiration cannula. Excessive left out viscoelastic material may cause secondary glaucoma.

12. **Wound closure.** The anterior chamber is deepened with balanced salt solution/Ringer's lactate solution injected through side port entry. This leads to self-sealing of the sclerocorneal tunnel incision due to valve effect. Rarely a single infinity suture may be required to seal the wound. The conjunctival flap is

reposited back and is anchored with the help of wet field cautery (Fig. 9.25O).

## ■ PHACOEMULSIFICATION 10m

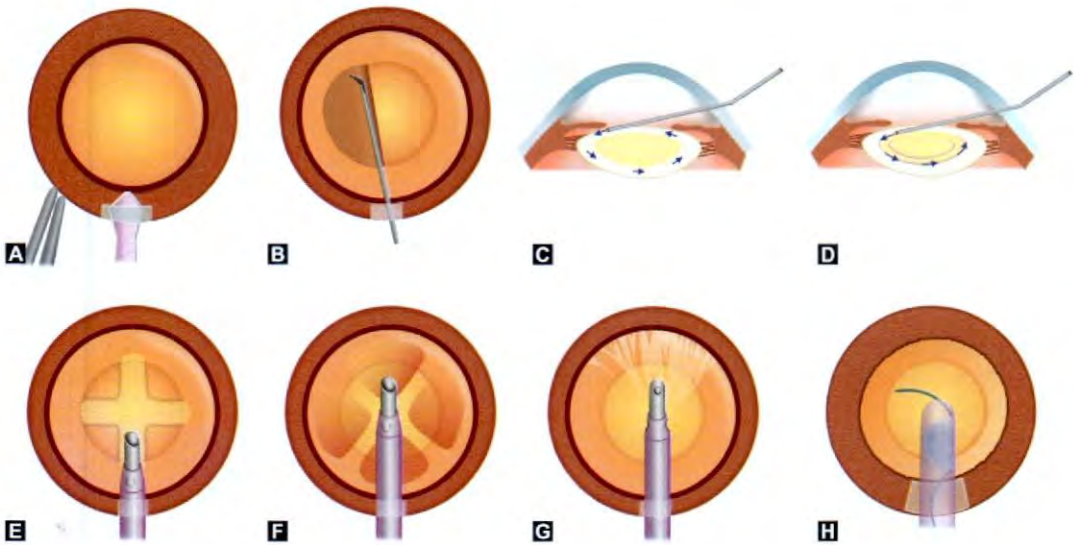
Extracapsular cataract extraction by phacoemulsification along with foldable posterior chamber intraocular lens implantation in the bag is the procedure of choice for cataract surgery. Phacoemulsification, differs from the conventional ECCE and manual SICS as follows:

1. **Clear corneal incision** required is very small (2.8 or 3 mm). Therefore, sutureless surgery is possible with self-sealing sclera corneal tunnel or clear corneal incision made with a 2.8 or 3 mm keratome (Fig. 9.26A).

2. **Continuous curvilinear capsulorhexis** (CCC) of 4–6 mm is preferred over other methods of anterior capsulotomy (Fig. 9.26B).

3. **Hydrodissection**, i.e. separation of capsule from the cortex by injecting fluid exactly between the two (Fig. 9.26C) is must for phacoemulsification and SICS. This procedure facilitates nucleus rotation and manipulation during phacoemulsification. Some surgeons also perform **hydrodelineation** by injecting fluid between the nucleus and epinuclear lens substance (Fig. 9.26D).

4. **Nucleus is emulsified** and aspirated by phacoemulsifier. Phacoemulsifier basically acts through a hollow 1 mm titanium needle which vibrates by piezoelectric crystal in its longitudinal axis at an



**Fig. 9.26** Surgical steps of phacoemulsification: A, Clear corneal incision; B, Continuous curvilinear capsulorhexis; C, Hydrodissection; D, Hydrodelineation; E and F, Nucleus emulsification by divide and conquer technique (four quadrant cracking); G, Aspiration of cortex; H, Implantation of foldable IOL with injector system



ultrasonic speed of 40,000 times a second and thus emulsifies the nucleus. Many different techniques are being used to accomplish nucleotomy. A few common names are:

- Chip and flip technique,
- Divide and conquer technique (Figs 9.26E and F),
- Stop and chop technique, and
- Direct Phaco chop technique.

5. Remaining cortical lens matter is aspirated with the help of an irrigation-aspiration technique (Fig. 9.26G).

6. **IOL implantation.** Foldable IOL implantation with the help of an injector (Fig. 9.26H) is most ideal with phacoemulsification technique (See page 217). However, phacoprofile (5.25 optic size) rigid (PMMA) IOL can also be implanted after enlarging the incision.

7. Next steps, i.e. removal of viscoelastic substance and wound closure are similar to that of SICS.

### Microincision cataract surgery

Microincision cataract surgery (MICS) refers to the phacoemulsification techniques which can be performed through a microincision (<2 mm). These techniques offer almost no surgically induced astigmatism.

### Femtosecond laser-assisted cataract surgery

Femtosecond laser assisted cataract surgery (FLACS), is the best available procedure presently. FLACS is basically a microincision cataract surgery (MICS) or microphaco in which femtosecond laser (FSL) is used to perform certain steps:

**Surgical steps with femtosecond laser** are as below:

- **Capsulorhexis** performed with FSL is more precise, accurate, controlled and centralised.
- **Lens fragmentation** with FSL allows reduction in phacoenergy and intracameral manipulation resulting in improved safety and decreased complications.
- **Clear corneal incision** fashioned with FSL offers the advantages of decreased leakage and added stability.
- **Arcuate corneal incisions** are created to tackle any co-existing astigmatism.

**Post-femtosecond laser surgical steps.** Patient is shifted under an operating microscope and following steps are performed:

- Corneal incisions are opened up with fine iris repositor.
- Anterior chamber is filled with viscoelastic material.
- Capsulorhexis flap is removed with the forceps.
- Lens fragments are phacoaspirated, and
- Foldable IOL is implanted in the capsular bag and the procedure is completed.

## SURGICAL TECHNIQUES OF EXTRACAPSULAR CATARACT EXTRACTION FOR CHILDHOOD CATARACT

Surgical techniques employed for childhood cataract are essentially of two types:

1. Lens aspiration
2. Lensectomy

### 1. LENS ASPIRATION

Irrigation and aspiration of lens matter is preferably done by corneoscleral tunnel techniques which include:

- Manual irrigation-aspiration technique, and
- Phacoaspiration technique.

The corneoscleral tunnel incision techniques (closed chamber surgery) as described for phacoemulsification is preferred.

**Surgical steps of lens aspiration by corneoscleral tunnel incision technique** are as follows:

1. **Clear corneal incision** of 2.8 mm is made with the help of a keratome
2. **Anterior chamber is filled with viscoelastic** material (preferably sodium hyaluronate).
3. **Anterior capsulorhexis** of about 5 mm size is made as described on page 211 (See Fig. 9.26A). In children, the anterior capsule is more elastic than in adults and therefore, the capsulorhexis may be difficult due to tendency to run outwards.
4. **Hydrodissection** is performed to separate the capsule from the cortex by injecting fluid. (See Fig. 9.26C).
5. **Irrigation and aspiration of lens matter** (which is soft in children) can be done by any of the following methods:
  - Manually with a two-way irrigation and aspiration Simcoe cannula (See Fig. 9.25K) or,
  - With a phaco-probe (phaco-aspiration) (See Fig. 9.26G).
6. **Posterior capsulorhexis** of about 3–4 mm size is recommended in younger children to avoid the problem of posterior capsule opacification.
7. **Anterior vitrectomy** of limited amount should be performed with a vitrector in very young children.
8. **Implantation of IOL** is done in the capsular bag after inflating it with viscoelastic substance (See Fig. 9.26H). **Foldable acrylic IOLs are preferred** in children. It has been postulated that acrylic IOLs induce less cellular reaction and are more adhesive to the capsular bag than PMMA IOLs. Some surgeons prefer to capture the lens optic through posterior capsulorhexis.



**9. Removal of viscoelastic material** is done with the help of two-way cannula or irrigation—aspiration probe of phaco machine.

**10. Intracameral antibiotics** (preservative free moxifloxacin or vancomycin) use is reported to decrease postoperative bacterial endophthalmitis.

**11. Wound closure.** Though a well-constructed corneoscleral tunnel often does not require a suture in adults. However, it is mandatory to close the wound in children to ensure wound stability and reduce postoperative astigmatism. The absorbable suture (10-0 vicryl) is adequate for closure of the wound keeping in mind the rapid healing characteristic and difficulty of removing sutures in children.

## ■ 2. LENSECTOMY

In this operation, most of the lens including anterior and posterior capsule along with anterior vitreous are removed with the help of a vitreous cutter (Fig. 9.27). Childhood cataracts, both congenital/developmental and acquired, being soft can be easily dealt with this procedure especially in very young children (less than 2 years of age) in which primary IOL implantation is not planned. Lensectomy in children is performed under general anaesthesia.

Either pars plana or limbal approach may be adopted.

In pars plana approach, the lens is punctured at its equator and stirred with the help of a Ziegler's or any other needle-knife introduced through the sclera and ciliary body, from a point about 3.5–4 mm behind the limbus. The cutter (ocutome) of the vitrectomy machine is introduced after enlarging the sclerotomy (Fig. 9.28) and lensectomy along with anterior vitrectomy is completed using cutting, irrigation

and aspiration mechanisms. The aim of modern lensectomy is to leave in situ a peripheral rim of capsule as an alternative to complete lensectomy.

Secondary IOL implantation can be planned at a later date.

## INTRAOCULAR LENS IMPLANTATION 5m

Presently, intraocular lens (IOL) implantation is the method of choice for correcting aphakia. Its advantages and disadvantages over spectacles and contact lenses are described in aphakia (See page 38).

The IOL implant history had its beginning on November 29, 1949, when Harold Ridley, a British ophthalmologist, performed his first case. Since then history of IOLs has always been exciting, as well as frustrating and finally rewarding and now highly developed.

### Types of Intraocular Lenses

During the last two decades a large number of different types and styles of lenses have been developed.

**A. Based on the method of fixation in the eye,** the major classes of IOLs are:

**1. Anterior chamber IOL (Angle supported IOLs).** These are not very popular due to comparatively higher incidence of bullous keratopathy. When indicated, 'Kelman multiflex' (Fig. 9.29A) type of ACIOL is used commonly. These lenses lie entirely in front of the iris and are supported in the angle of anterior chamber (Fig. 9.30). ACIOL can be inserted after ICCE or ECCE. Presently, AC-IOLs are used only in those cases where it is not possible to use the PC-IOL.

3m



Fig. 9.27 Vitrectomy probe

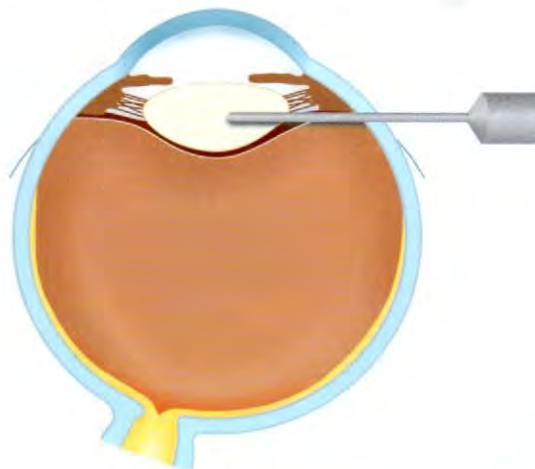
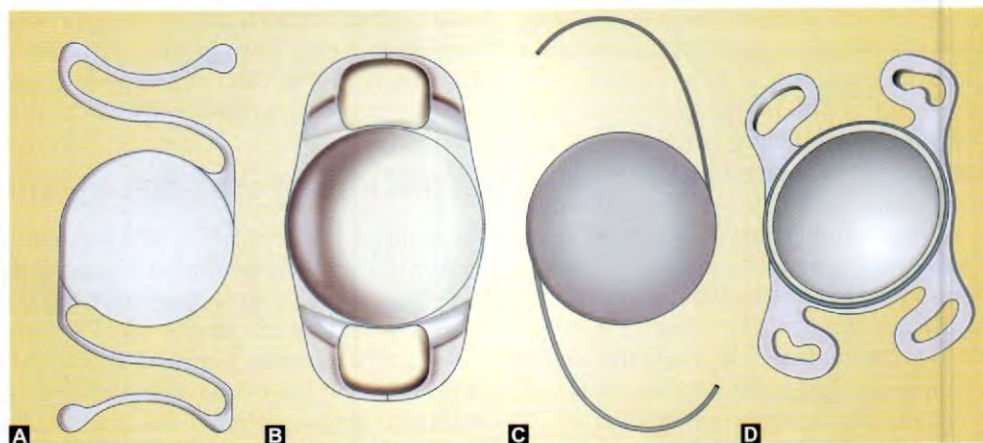


Fig. 9.28 Pars plana lensectomy





**Fig. 9.29** A, Anterior chamber IOL (Kelman multiflex); B, Singh and Worst's iris claw lens; C, Posterior chamber IOL (modified C loop type); D, Posterior chamber IOL (four loop type)

**2. Iris-supported lenses.** These lenses are fixed on the iris with the help of sutures, loops or claws. These lenses are also not very popular due to high incidence of postoperative complications. Example of iris supported lens is *Singh and Worst's iris claw lens* (Figs 9.29B and 9.31).

**3. Posterior chamber lenses.** PCIOLs rest entirely behind the iris (Fig. 9.32). They may be supported and fixed as below:

a. *In the capsular bag fixation* of PCIOL is the most ideal method. Commonly used models of PC-IOLs are modified C loop (Fig. 9.29C) and quadri loop (Fig. 9.29D).

b. *In the ciliary sulcus fixation* of PC-IOL is done in the absence of intact capsular bag but with adequate capsular support.

c. *Scleral fixation* of PC-IOL is done in the absence of capsular support. Broadly, there are two types of techniques for scleral fixation of PC-IOL:

- Trans-scleral suture fixation of PC-IOL, and
- Trans-scleral sutureless fixation of PC-IOL (glued IOL).

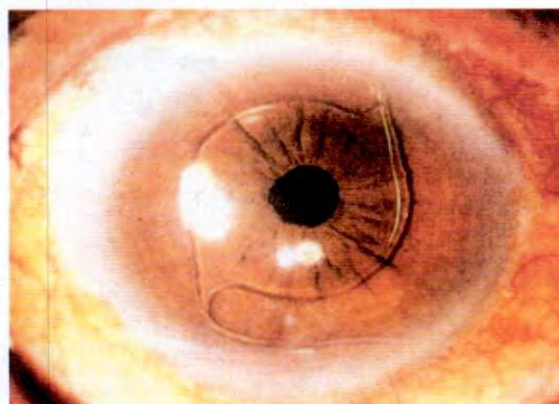
d. *Retro-iris fixation* is the technique of implanting iris claw lens in the posterior chamber.

**B. Depending on the material of manufacturing,** three types of PCIOLs are available:

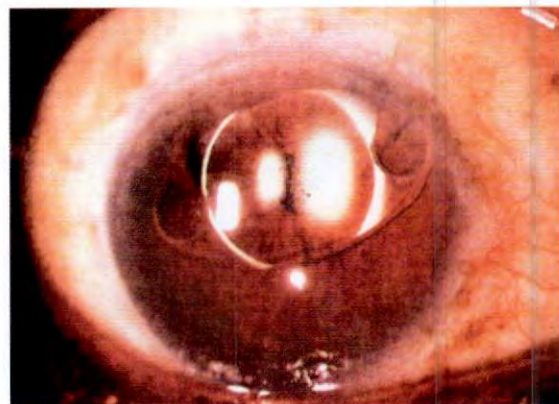
**1. Rigid IOLs.** These are made entirely from PMMA.

**2. Foldable IOLs,** to be implanted through a small incision (3.2 mm) after phacoemulsification are made of silicone, acrylic, hydrogel and collamer. Thinner foldable IOLs can be implanted through 2–2.2 mm incision. Foldable IOLs are implanted with the help of an IOL injector (See Fig. 9.26H)

**3. Rollable IOLs** are ultra-thin IOLs. These are implanted through 1 mm incision after microincision cataract surgery (MICS) technique. These are made of hydrogel.

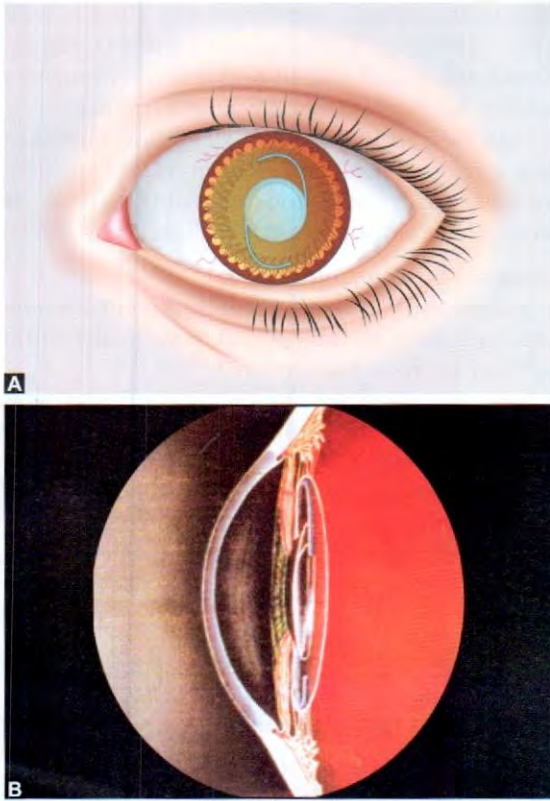


**Fig. 9.30** Pseudophakia with Kelman multiflex anterior chamber intraocular lens implant



**Fig. 9.31** Pseudophakia with iris claw intraocular lens implant





**Fig. 9.32** Pseudophakia with posterior chamber intraocular lens: A, As seen on retroillumination with slit-lamp; B, Diagrammatic depiction of PCIOL implanted in the capsular bag

**C. Based on the focussing ability the IOLs are of following types:**

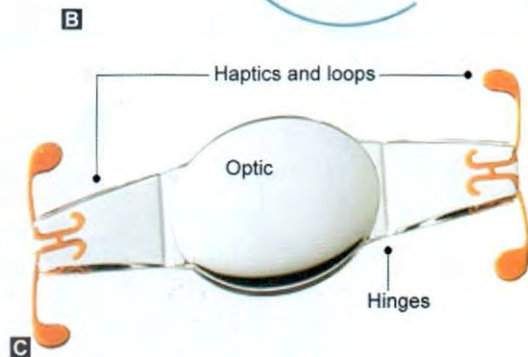
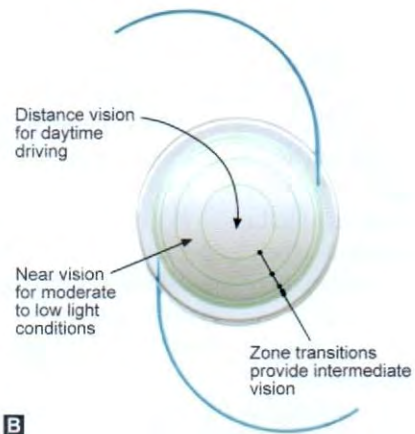
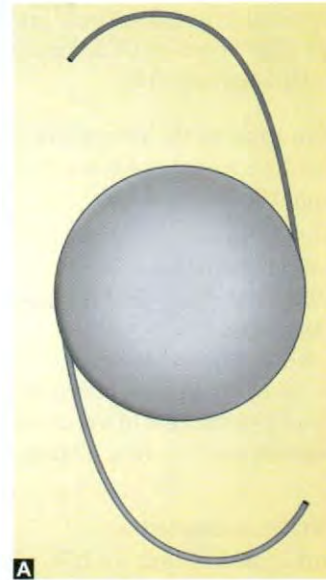
1. **Unifocal IOLs** are the **most commonly used ones** having unifocal power (Fig. 9.33A). Depending upon the power of IOLs implanted, these can **make the patient emmetropic**, myopic or hypermetropic.

2. **Multifocal IOLs** have separate optics to focus for distance and near, so also known as **simultaneous vision lenses**. These are of 2 types, either **refractive** or **diffractive** optics types (Fig. 9.33B). These are also called **pseudoaccommodative IOLs**.

3. **Accommodative IOLs** exhibit some anterior movement of optic to **improve the near vision**. Available models of accommodative IOLs are:

- **Crystalens** which is based on **optic shift principle** (Fig. 9.33C), and
- **Synchrony lens** which is based on **dual optic mechanism**.

4. **Extended-depth-of-focus IOL**, e.g. **Technis Symphony**, provides uncorrected distance, intermediate as well as near vision to some extent due to its elongated focus. However, for fine near work glasses



**Fig. 9.33** Types of IOLs based on focusing mechanism: A, Unifocal; B, Multifocal; C, Accommodative (crystalens)

may be required. These IOLs are rapidly gaining popularity.

**D. Aphakic versus phakic refractive IOLs.** In addition to the aphakic IOLs which are implanted after lens extraction, special phakic IOLs have been developed



to correct the refractive errors. These are also called implantable collamer lenses (ICLs) and are of three types (For details See page 54).

**E. Special function IOLs.** These are developed to provide some special function in addition to correcting aphakia. Examples are:

1. **Toric IOLs.** These are designed to correct the associated astigmatism (Fig. 9.34A).

2. **Aspheric IOLs.** These have been designed to reduce spherical aberrations.

3. **Aniridia IOLs.** These lenses are devised to cosmetically cover the defects of aniridia or partial iris loss in cases like trauma. In these lenses around the central optical part, there is a black diaphragm (Fig. 9.34B).

#### Indications of IOL implantation

Recent trend is to implant an IOL in each and every case being operated for cataract; unless it is contraindicated.

#### Calculation of IOL power (Biometry)

The basic formulas for determining IOL power introduced earlier the regression formula called 'SRK (Sanders, Retzlaff and Kraff) formula' is:

$P = A - 2.5L - 0.9K$ , where:

- P is the power of IOL,
- A is a constant which is specific for each lens type.
- L is the axial length of the eyeball in mm, which is determined by A-scan ultrasonography.
- K is average corneal curvature, which is determined by keratometry.

**Note.** For accurate IOL power calculation, various new formulae are available for use in different eyes

(emmetropic, myopic, hypermetropic). These include SRK-T, Holladay-1, Holladay-2, Hoffer-Q, Haigis, Barret, Olsen and Hiel-RBF. The newer biometers have in-built software for the newer formulae.

Further, all IOL power calculation formulae give spherical power only. Nowadays for correcting associated astigmatism toric-IOLs are also used, for which online toric power calculators are also available.

#### Equipment for biometry

1. **A-scan ultrasonic biometer.** The ultrasound machine equipped with A-scan and IOL power calculation software is called 'Biometer'.

2. **Optical biometers** are non-contact optical devices based on the principle of partial coherence interferometry (PCI). These are quick and more accurate devices. Commercially available optical biometers are:

- IOL Master Tm (Zeiss Humphrey system) and
- Lenstar.

#### Primary versus secondary IOL implantation

Primary IOL implantation refers to the use of IOL during surgery for cataract, while secondary IOL is implanted to correct aphakia in a previously operated eye.

#### Surgical technique of anterior chamber IOL implantation

Anterior chamber IOL implantation can be carried out after ICCE and after large posterior capsular rents with ECCE techniques.

- After completion of lens extraction, the pupil is constricted by injecting miotics (1% acetylcholine or pilocarpine without preservatives) into the anterior chamber.

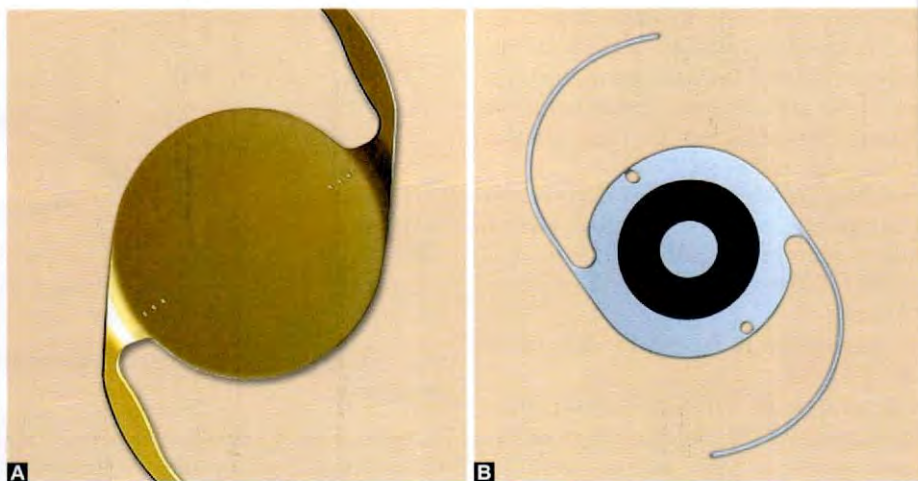


Fig. 9.34 Special function IOLs: A, Toric IOL; B, Aniridia IOL



- Anterior chamber is filled with 2% methylcellulose or 1% sodium hyaluronate (Healon).
- IOL, held by a forceps, is gently slid into the anterior chamber. Inferior haptic is pushed in the inferior angle at 6 O'clock position and upper haptic is pushed to engage in the upper angle (See Figs 9.23G and H).

### Technique of posterior chamber IOL implantation

**Implantation of rigid intraocular lens.** PCIOL is implanted after conventional ECCE and SICS and after enlarging the incision in phacoemulsification. After completion of ECCE, the capsular bag and anterior chamber are filled with 2% methylcellulose or 1% sodium hyaluronate. The PCIOL (See Fig. 9.29C), is grasped by the optic with the help of IOL holding forceps. The inferior haptic and optic of IOL is gently inserted into the capsular bag behind the iris at 6 O'clock position (See Fig. 9.24F). The superior haptic is grasped by its tip, and is gently pushed down and then released to slide in the upper part of the capsular bag behind the iris (See Fig. 9.24G). The IOL is then dialled into the horizontal position (See Fig. 9.24H).

**Implantation of foldable IOLs** is made either with the help of holder-folder forceps or the foldable IOL injector (See Fig. 9.26H).

**Scleral fixation of posterior chamber IOL** is done as an alternative to anterior chamber IOL (ACIOL). Posterior chamber IOL can be fixated to the sclera in the ciliary sulcus region with the help of sutures or a biological glue (glued IOLs).

### POSTOPERATIVE MANAGEMENT AFTER CATARACT OPERATION

1. Patient is asked to lie quietly upon the back for about 2–3 hours and advised to take nil orally.
2. Diclofenac sodium may be given orally for mild to moderate postoperative pain.
3. Bandage/eye patch is removed next morning and eye is inspected for any postoperative complication. When phacoemulsification is done under topical anaesthesia, there is no need of eye patching; and postoperative eye drops can be started immediately.
4. Antibiotic eye drops (e.g. moxifloxacin) are used for four times, 10–14 days.
5. Topical steroids (Prednisolone) eye drops 3 to 4 times a day are used for 6–8 weeks.
6. Topical ketorolac or any other NSAID eye drops 2 to 3 times/day are used for 4 weeks.

7. Topical timolol (0.5%) eye drops twice daily are used for about 5–7 days.
8. Topical cycloplegic-mydriatic, e.g. homatropine eye drops may be used OD for 10–14 days.
9. Final spectacles are prescribed after about 6–8 weeks of SICS operation and 3–4 weeks of phacoemulsification.

### COMPLICATIONS OF CATARACT SURGERY AND THEIR MANAGEMENT

5m

Nowadays cataract surgery is being performed largely by extracapsular cataract extraction technique. Therefore, complications encountered during these techniques are described in general. Wherever necessary a specific reference of the technique viz. conventional ECCE, manual SICS and phacoemulsification in relation to the particular complication is highlighted. Complications encountered during surgical management of cataract can be enumerated under the following heads:

- Preoperative complications
- Operative complications
- Early postoperative complications
- Delayed (late) postoperative complications
- IOL related complications

#### A. Preoperative complications

3m

1. **Anxiety.** Some patients may develop anxiety, on the eve of operation due to fear and apprehension of operation. Anxiolytic drugs such as alprazolam at bed time usually alleviate such symptoms.

2. **Irritative or allergic conjunctivitis** may occur in some patients due to preoperative topical antibiotic drops. Postponing the operation for 2 days along with withdrawal of such drugs is required.

#### 3. Complications due to local anaesthesia

- **Retrobulbar haemorrhage** may occur due to retrobulbar block. Immediate pressure bandage after instilling one drop of 2% pilocarpine and postponement of operation for a week is advised. Since, presently most cases are done under peribulbar or topical anaesthesia, so incidence of retrobulbar haemorrhage has decreased drastically.

- **Oculocardiac reflex**, which manifests as bradycardia and/or cardiac arrhythmia, has also been observed due to retrobulbar/peribulbar block. An intravenous injection of atropine is helpful.

- **Perforation of globe** may also occur sometimes. To prevent such catastrophe, gentle injection with blunt-tipped needle is recommended. Further, peribulbar anaesthesia may be preferred over retrobulbar block.



- **Subconjunctival haemorrhage** is a minor complication observed frequently, and does not need much attention.
- **Spontaneous dislocation of lens** in vitreous has also been reported (in patients with weak and degenerated zonules especially with hypermature cataract) during vigorous ocular massage after retrobulbar block. The operation should be postponed and further management is on the lines of posterior dislocation of lens (See page 224).

### B. Operative complications

1. **Superior rectus muscle laceration** and/or haematoma, may occur while applying the bridge suture in conventional ECCE and SICS. Usually no treatment is required.

2. **Excessive bleeding** may be encountered during the preparation of conjunctival flap or during scleral incision in SICS and ECCE. Bleeding vessels may be gently cauterised.

3. **Incision-related complications** depend upon the type of cataract surgery being performed.

i. In conventional ECCE, there may occur **irregular incision**. Irregular incision leading to defective coaptation of wound may occur due to blunt cutting instruments.

ii. In manual SICS and phacoemulsification following complications may occur while making the self-sealing tunnel incision, (correct incision, Fig. 9.35A):

- **Button holing of anterior wall of tunnel** can occur because of superficial dissection of the scleral flap (Fig. 9.35B). As a remedy, abandon this dissection and re-enter at a deeper plane from the other side of the external incision.

- **Premature entry into the anterior chamber** can occur because of deep dissection (Fig. 9.35C). Once this is detected, dissection in that area should be stopped and a new dissection started at a lesser depth at the other end of the tunnel.

- **Scleral disinsertion** can occur due to very deep groove incision. In it there occurs complete separation of inferior sclera from the sclera superior to the incision (Fig. 9.35D). Scleral disinsertion needs to be managed by radial sutures.

4. **Injury to the cornea (Descemet's detachment), iris and lens** may occur when anterior chamber is entered with a sharp-tipped instrument such as keratome or a piece of razor blade. A gentle handling reduces the incidence of such inadvertent injuries.

5. **Iris injury and iridodialysis** (tear of iris from root) may occur inadvertently during intraocular manipulation.

### 6. Complications related to anterior capsulorrhexis

Continuous curvilinear capsulorrhexis (CCC) is the preferred technique for opening the anterior capsule for SICS and phacoemulsification. Following complications may occur:

- **Escaping capsulorrhexis**, i.e. capsulorrhexis moves peripherally and may extend to the equator or posterior capsule.

- **Small capsulorrhexis**. It predisposes to posterior capsular tear and nuclear drop during hydrodissection. It also predisposes to occurrence of zonular dehiscence. Therefore, a small sized capsulorrhexis should always be enlarged by 2 or 3 relaxing incisions before proceeding further.

- **Very large capsulorrhexis** may cause problems for in the bag placement of IOL.

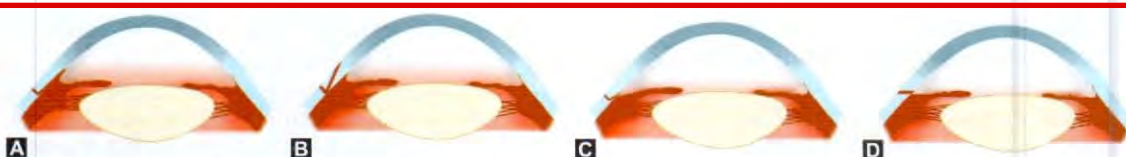
- **Eccentric capsulorrhexis** can lead to IOL decentration at a later stage.

7. **Posterior capsular rupture (PCR)**. It is a dreaded complication during cataract extraction. In manual SICS and phacoemulsification PCR is even more feared because it can lead to nuclear drop into the vitreous. The PCR can occur in following situations:

- During forceful hydrodissection,
- By direct injury with some instrument such as Sinskey's hook, chopper or phacotip, and
- During cortex aspiration (accidental PCR).

8. **Zonular dehiscence** may occur in all techniques of ECCE but is especially common during nucleus prolapse into the anterior chamber in manual SICS.

3m **Vitreous prolapse and loss**: It is the most serious complication which may occur following accidental rupture of posterior capsule during any technique of ECCE. Therefore, adequate measures as described below should be taken to prevent vitreous loss (especially useful in conventional ECCE).



**Fig. 9.35** Configuration of sclerocorneal tunnel incision: A, Correct incision; B, Buttonholing of anterior wall of the tunnel; C, Premature entry into the anterior chamber; D, Scleral disinsertion



■ **To decrease vitreous volume:** Preoperative use of hyperosmotic agents like 20% mannitol or oral glycerol is suggested.

■ **To decrease aqueous volume:** Preoperatively acetazolamide 500 mg orally should be used and adequate ocular massage should be carried out digitally after injecting local anaesthesia.

■ **To decrease orbital volume:** Adequate ocular massage and orbital compression should be carried out.

■ **Better ocular akinesia and anaesthesia** decrease the chances of pressure from eye muscles.

■ **Minimising the external pressure on eyeball** by not using eye speculum, reducing pull on bridle suture and overall gentle handling during surgery.

■ **Use of Flieringa ring to prevent collapse of sclera** especially in highly myopic patients decreases the incidence of vitreous loss.

■ **When IOP is high in spite of all above measures and operation cannot be postponed, in that situation a planned posterior sclerotomy** with drainage of vitreous from pars plana will prevent rupture of the anterior hyaloid face and vitreous loss.

**Management of vitreous loss.** Once the vitreous loss has occurred, the aim should be to clear it from the anterior chamber and incision site. This can be achieved by performing partial anterior vitrectomy with the use of automated vitrectors.

A meticulously performed partial anterior vitrectomy will reduce the incidence of postoperative problems associated with vitreous loss such as updrawn pupil, iris prolapse and vitreous touch syndrome.

**10. Nucleus drop into the vitreous cavity.** It occurs more frequently with phacoemulsification, less frequently with manual SICS and sparingly with conventional ECCE. It is a dreadful complication which occurs due to sudden and large PCR.

**Management.** Once the nucleus has dropped into the vitreous cavity, no attempt should be made to fish it out. The case must be referred to vitreoretinal surgeon after a thorough anterior vitrectomy and cortical clean up.

**11. Posterior loss of lens fragments** into the vitreous cavity may occur after PCR or zonular dehiscence during phacoemulsification. It is potentially serious because it may result in glaucoma, chronic uveitis, chronic CME and even retinal detachment.

**Management.** The case should be managed by vitreoretinal surgeon by performing pars plana vitrectomy and removal of nuclear fragments.

**12. Expulsive choroidal haemorrhage.** It is one of the most dreadful and serious complication of

cataract surgery. It usually occurs in hypertensives and patients with arteriosclerotic changes. It may occur during operation or during immediate postoperative period. Its incidence was high in ICCE and conventional ECCE but has decreased markedly with valvular incision of manual SICS and phacoemulsification technique.

*During ICCE and conventional ECCE operation, it is characterised by spontaneous gaping of the wound followed by expulsion of the lens, vitreous, retina, uvea and finally a gush of bright red blood.*

*Treatment, though, is unsatisfactory, the surgeon should attempt to drain subchoroidal blood by performing an equatorial sclerotomy. Many of the time eye is lost.*

### C. Early postoperative complications

10m

5m

**1. Hyphaema.** Collection of blood in the anterior chamber may occur from conjunctival or scleral vessels (in ECCE and SICS) and rarely from the root of the iris.

**Treatment.** Most hyphaemas absorb spontaneously and thus need no treatment. Sometimes hyphaema may be large and associated with rise in IOP. In such cases, IOP should be lowered by acetazolamide and hyperosmotic agents. If the blood does not get absorbed in a week's time, then a paracentesis should be done to drain the blood.

**2. Iris prolapse.** It is usually caused by inadequate suturing of the incision after ICCE and conventional ECCE and occurs during first or second postoperative day. This complication is not known with manual SICS and phacoemulsification technique, except in cases with poor valvular incision.

**Management.** A small prolapse of less than 24 hours duration may be repositioned back and wound sutured. A large prolapse of long duration needs abscission and suturing of wound.

**3. Striate keratopathy.** Characterised by mild corneal oedema with Descemet's folds is a common complication observed during immediate postoperative period. This occurs due to endothelial damage during surgery.

**Management.** Mild striate keratopathy usually disappears spontaneously within a week. Moderate to severe keratopathy may be treated by instillation of hypertonic saline drops (5% sodium chloride) along with steroids.

**4. Flat (shallow or nonformed) anterior chamber.** It has become a relatively rare complication due to improved wound closure. It may occur due to wound leak, ciliochoroidal detachment or pupil block.



i. **Flat anterior chamber with wound leak** is associated with hypotony. It is diagnosed by Seidel's test. In this test, a drop of fluorescein is instilled into the lower fornix and patient is asked to blink to spread the dye evenly. The incision is then examined with slit-lamp using cobalt-blue filter. At the site of leakage, fluorescein will be diluted by aqueous. In most cases, wound leak is cured within 4 days with pressure bandage and oral acetazolamide. If the condition persists, injection of air in the anterior chamber and suturing of the leaking wound should be carried out.

ii. **Ciliochoroidal detachment.** It may or may not be associated with wound leak. Detached ciliochoroid presents as a convex brownish mass in the involved quadrant with shallow anterior chamber. In most cases, choroidal detachment is cured within 4 days with pressure bandage and use of oral acetazolamide. If the condition persists, suprachoroidal drainage with injection of air in the anterior chamber is indicated.

iii. **Pupil block due to vitreous bulge** (after ICCE and in ECCE technique due to adhesions with IOL more common with ACIOLs) leads to formation of iris bombe and shallowing of anterior chamber. If the condition persists for 5–7 days, permanent peripheral anterior synechiae (PAS) may be formed leading to secondary angle closure glaucoma.

- Pupil block is **managed initially with mydriatic, hyperosmotic agents** (e.g. 20% mannitol) and acetazolamide. If not relieved, then laser peripheral iridotomy should be performed to bypass the pupillary block.

5. **Postoperative anterior uveitis** can be induced by instrumental trauma, undue handling of uveal tissue, reaction to residual cortex or chemical reaction induced by viscoelastics, pilocarpine, etc. **Management** includes more aggressive use of topical steroids, cycloplegics and NSAIDs. Rarely systemic steroids may be required in cases with severe fibrinous reaction.

6. **Toxic anterior segment syndrome (TASS)** (See page 176)

7. **Bacterial endophthalmitis.** This is one of the **most dreaded complication** with an incidence of 0.1 to 0.5%. The principal sources of infection are **contaminated solutions, instruments, surgeon's hands, patient's own flora from conjunctiva, eyelids and airborne bacteria.**

**Symptoms and signs** of bacterial endophthalmitis are generally present between 48 and 72 hours after surgery and include: **ocular pain, diminished vision, lid oedema, conjunctival chemosis and marked circumciliary congestion, corneal oedema, exudates**

**in pupillary area, hypopyon and diminished or absent red pupillary glow.**

**Management.** It is an **emergency** and should be managed energetically (See page 176).

#### D. Late postoperative complications

These complications may occur after weeks, months or years of cataract surgery.

1. **Cystoid macular oedema (CME).** Collection of fluid in the form of cystic loculi in the Henle's layer of macula is a **frequent complication** of cataract surgery. However, in most cases, it is **clinically insignificant**, does not produce any visual problem and **undergoes spontaneous regression.** In few cases, a significant CME typically produces visual diminution one to three months after cataract extraction. **On funduscopy,** it gives **honeycomb appearance.** **On fluorescein angiography** it depicts typical **flower petal pattern** (See Fig. 12.25A) due to leakage of dye from perifoveal capillaries.

- **Etiopathogenesis.** In many cases, it is associated with vitreous incarceration in the wound and mild iritis. Role of some prostaglandins is being widely considered in its etiopathogenesis.

- **Prevention.** Therefore, immediate preoperative and postoperative use of antiprostaglandins (indomethacin or flurbiprofen or ketorolac) eye drops is recommended as prophylaxis of CME.

**Treatment.** In cases of CME with vitreous incarceration, anterior vitrectomy along with steroids and antiprostaglandins may improve visual acuity and decrease the amount of discomfort.

2. **Delayed chronic postoperative endophthalmitis** is caused when an organism of low virulence (**propionibacterium acne or staph epidermidis**) becomes trapped within the capsular bag. It has an onset ranging from 4 weeks to years (mean 9 months) postoperatively and typically follows an uneventful cataract extraction with a PCIOL in the bag. **Fungal endophthalmitis** may occur rarely as delayed postoperative endophthalmitis. It is characterized by puff ball vitreous exudates. It needs to be treated by pars-plana vitrectomy and antifungal drugs administered intravitreally and orally.

3. **Pseudophakic bullous keratopathy (PBK)** is usually a continuation of postoperative corneal oedema produced by surgical or chemical insult to a healthy or compromised corneal endothelium. Over the years, PBK is becoming a common indication of penetrating keratoplasty (PK).

4. **Retinal detachment (RD).** Incidence of retinal detachment is higher in aphakic patients as



- panophthalmitis
- Endophthalmitis
- corneal epithelial bullae
- Bullous keratopathy

compared to phakics. It has been noted that retinal detachment is more common after ICCE than after ECCE and IOL implantation. Other risk factors for pseudophakic retinal detachment include vitreous loss during operation, associated myopia and lattice degeneration of the retina.

**5. Epithelial ingrowth.** Rarely conjunctival epithelial cells may invade the anterior chamber through a defect in the incision. This abnormal epithelial membrane slowly grows and lines the back of cornea and trabecular meshwork leading to intractable glaucoma. In late stages, the epithelial membrane extends on the iris and anterior part of the vitreous.

**6. Fibrous downgrowth** into the anterior chamber though uncommon now may occur occasionally when the cataract wound apposition is not perfect. It may cause secondary glaucoma, disorganisation of anterior segment and ultimately phthisis bulbi.

**7. After cataract.** It is also known as 'secondary cataract' is the **most common postoperative complication**. It is the opacity which persists or develops after extracapsular lens extraction.

**Causes.** (i) Residual opaque lens matter may persist as after cataract when it is imprisoned between the remains of the anterior and posterior capsule, surrounded by fibrin (following iritis) or blood (following hyphaema). (ii) Proliferative type of after cataract may develop from the left out anterior epithelial cells in the capsular bag. The proliferative hyaline bands may sweep across the whole posterior capsule.

**Clinical types.** After-cataract may present as:

- Tenures posterior capsule opacification (PCO),
- Dense membranous after cataract (Fig. 9.36A),
- Soemmering's ring which refers to a thick ring of after cataract formed behind the iris, enclosed between the two layers of capsule (Fig. 9.36B), or
- Elschnig's pearls in which the vacuolated subcapsular epithelial cells are clustered like soap bubbles along the posterior capsule (Fig. 9.36C).

**Treatment** is as follows:

- Thin membranous after cataract, thickened posterior capsule and Elschnig's pearls involving the central part of the posterior capsule are best treated by YAG-laser capsulotomy. In the absence of YAG-laser discission with cystitome or Zeigler's knife is an option.
- Dense membranous after cataract needs surgical membranectomy.
- Soemmering's ring after cataract with clean central posterior capsule needs no treatment.

**8. Glaucoma-in-aphakia and pseudophakia** (See page 257).

### E. IOL-related complications

3m

In addition to the complications of cataract surgery, following IOL-related complications may be seen:

**1. Complications like** cystoid macular oedema, corneal endothelial damage, uveitis and secondary glaucoma are seen more frequently with IOL implantation, especially with anterior chamber and iris supported IOLs.

- UGH syndrome refers to concurrent occurrence of uveitis, glaucoma and hyphaema. It used to occur commonly with rigid anterior chamber IOLs, which are not used nowadays.

**2. Malpositions of IOL** (Fig. 9.37). These may be in the form of decentration, subluxation and dislocation. The fancy names attached to various malpositions of IOL are:

- Sunset syndrome (Inferior subluxation of IOL).
- Sunrise syndrome (Superior subluxation of IOL).
- Lost lens syndrome refers to complete dislocation of an IOL into the vitreous cavity.
- Windshield wiper syndrome. It results when a very small IOL is placed vertically in the sulcus. In this the superior loop moves to the left and right, with movements of the head.



**Fig. 9.36** Types of after-cataract: A, Dense membranous; B, Soemmering's ring; C, Elschnig's pearls



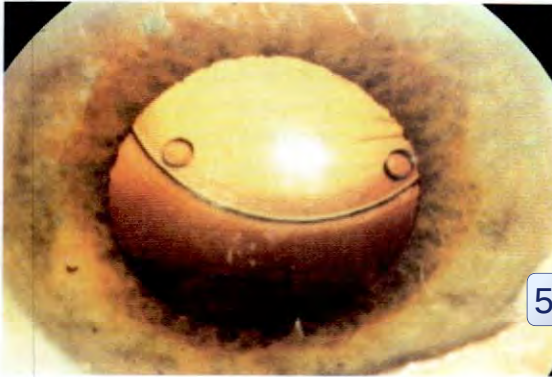


Fig. 9.37 Decentered IOL

3. **Pupillary capture of the IOL** may occur following postoperative iritis or proliferation of the remains of lens fibres.

4. **Toxic anterior segment syndrome (TASS).** It is the uveal inflammation excited by either the ethylene gas used for sterilising IOLs (in early cases) or by the lens material (in late cases). It is characterised by violent inflammation and need to be differentiated from endophthalmitis.

## DISPLACEMENTS OF LENS

Displacements of the lens from its normal position (in patellar fossa) results from partial or complete rupture of the lens zonules.

### ■ CLINICO-ETIOLOGICAL TYPES

#### A. Congenital displacements

These may occur in the following forms:

1. **Simple ectopia lentis.** In this condition, displacement is bilaterally symmetrical and usually upwards. It is transmitted by autosomal dominant inheritance.

*Coloboma of lens*  
\* Lenticonus

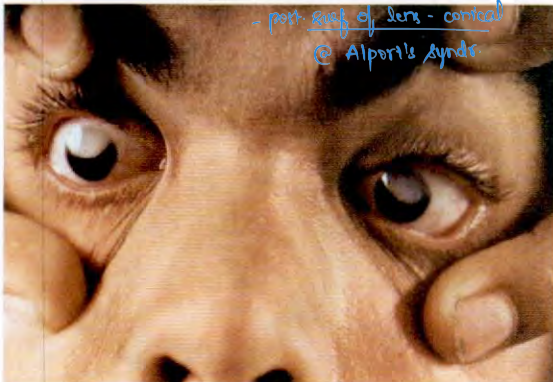


Fig. 9.38 Subluxated cataractous lens in a patient with Marfan's syndrome

II. **Ectopia lentis et pupillae.** It is an autosomal recessive disorder, characterised by displacement of the lens associated with slit-shaped pupil which is displaced in the opposite direction. Other associations may be cataract, glaucoma, axial myopia macrocornea, abnormal iris transillumination and retinal detachment.

*In children*

III. **Ectopia lentis with systemic anomalies.** Salient features of some common conditions, are as follows:

1. **Marfan's syndrome.** It is an autosomal dominant mesodermal dysplasia. In this condition, lens is displaced upwards and temporally (bilaterally symmetrical) (Fig. 9.38).

• **Systemic anomalies** include arachnodactyly (spider fingers), long extremities, hyperextensibility of joints, high arched palate and dissecting aortic aneurysm.

2. **Homocystinuria.** It is an autosomal recessive, inborn error of metabolism. In it the lens is usually subluxated inferior and nasally.

• **Systemic features** are fair complexion, malar flush, mental retardation, fits and poor motor control.

• **Diagnosis** is established by detecting homocystine in urine by sodium nitroprusside test.

3. **Weill-Marchesani syndrome.** It is condition of autosomal recessive mesodermal dysplasia.

• **Ocular features** are spherophakia, and forward subluxation of lens (Fig. 9.39) which may cause pupil block glaucoma.

• **Systemic features** are short stature, stubby fingers and mental retardation.

4. **Ehlers-Danlos syndrome.** In it the ocular features are subluxation of lens and blue sclera. The systemic features include hyperextensibility of joints and loose skin with folds.

5. **Hyperlysinemia.** It is an autosomal recessive inborn error of metabolism occurring due to deficiency of

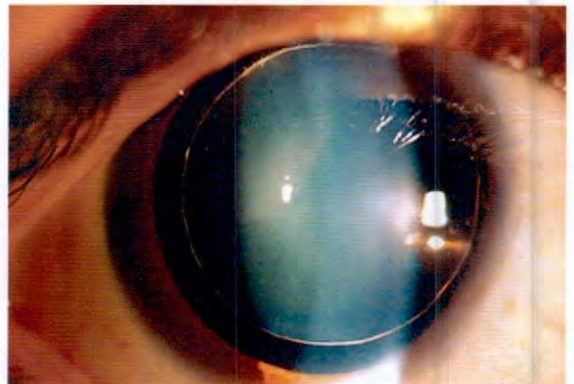


Fig. 9.39 Spherophakia and forward subluxation of lens in Weill-Marchesani syndrome



the enzyme lysine alphaketoglutarate reductase. It is an extremely rare condition occasionally associated with ectopia lentis. Systemic features include lax ligaments, hypotonic muscles, seizures and mental handicap.

**6. Stickler syndrome.** Ectopia lentis is occasionally associated in this condition (for details See page 299).

**7. Sulphite oxidase deficiency.** It is a very rare autosomal recessive disorder of sulphur metabolism. Ectopia lentis is a universal ocular feature. The systemic features include progressive muscular rigidity, decerebrate posture, and mental handicap. It is a fatal disease, death usually occurs before 5 years of age.

### B. Traumatic displacement of the lens

It is usually associated with concussion injuries. *Couching* is an iatrogenic posterior dislocation of lens performed as a treatment of cataract in older days.

### C. Consecutive or spontaneous displacement

It results from intraocular diseases giving rise to mechanical stretching, inflammatory disintegration or degeneration of the zonules. A few common conditions associated with consecutive displacements are: hypermature cataract, buphthalmos, high myopia, staphyloma, intraocular tumours and uveitis.

### ■ TOPOGRAPHICAL TYPES 3m

Topographically, displacements of the lens may be classified as subluxation and luxation or dislocation.

#### I. Subluxation

It is partial displacement in which lens is moved sideways (up, down, medially or laterally), but remains behind the pupil. It results from partial rupture or unequal stretching of the zonules (Figs 9.38 and 9.40A).

#### Clinical features

• Defective vision occurs due to marked astigmatism or lenticular myopia.

- Unilateral diplopia may result from partial aphakia.
- Anterior chamber becomes deep and irregular.
- Iridodonesis is usually present.
- Edge of the subluxated lens is seen as dark crescent line on distant direct ophthalmoscopy and as a shining (bright) golden crescent on slit-lamp examination.
- Phacodonesis, i.e. tremulousness of lens may be seen.
- Retinoscopy reveals hypermetropia in aphakic area and myopia (index) in phakic area.
- Fundus examination shows large optic disc through phakic area and small optic disc through aphakic area.

**Complications of subluxated lens include:**

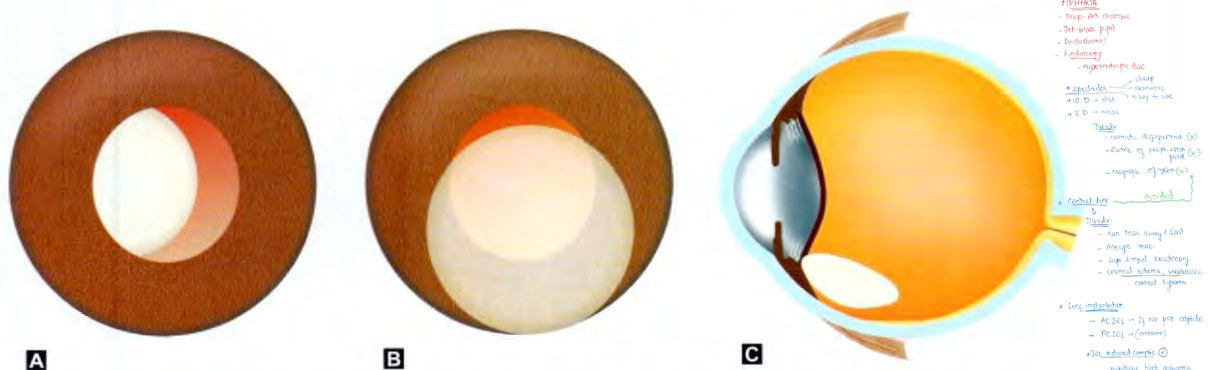
- Complete dislocation,
- Cataractous changes,
- Uveitis, and
- Secondary glaucoma.

#### Management

**I. Non-surgical management** includes:

- Spectacle correction may be given if useful and comfortable vision is attained through phakic portion. Near add may also be required as the subluxated lens lacks sufficient accommodation. Spectacle correction is useful when at least half of pupillary area is phakic or can be made by following measures:
- Miotics may sometime be useful by avoiding the edge of subluxated lens from pupillary area.
- Laser pupilloplasty may be considered as permanent measure for avoiding edge of lens from pupillary area, in cases where miotics are useful.

**II. Surgical treatment** is indicated if vision cannot be improved with spectacles due to large lenticular astigmatism or when subluxation is more or when lens is cataractous. Depending on the degree





of subluxation following surgical measures are recommended:

- **Mild zonular dialysis** (3 O'clock hours): Phacoemulsification with PCIOL implantation.
- **Moderate zonular dialysis** (3-5 O'clock hours): Phacoemulsification with capsular tension ring (CTR) and PCIOL implantation.
- **Severe zonular dialysis** (up to 7 O'clock hours): Cionni's ring fixation, phacoemulsification and PCIOL.
- **Marked zonular dialysis** (>7 O'clock hours): Complete lens extraction with scleral fixation of PCIOL.

## II. Dislocation or luxation of the lens

In dislocation all the zonules are severed from the lens.

### Types of dislocation of lens

**I. Anterior dislocation**, in which lens is either incarcerated in the pupil or is present in the anterior chamber (Fig. 9.4B).

**II. Posterior dislocation**, in which lens may be present in:

- **Vitreous cavity**, (Fig. 9.40C), where it may be floating (lens nutans), or fixed to retina (lens fixata).
- **Subretinal space**, occasionally in traumatic cases with retinal tears.
- **Subscleral space**, i.e. between the choroid and sclera.

**III. Dislocation out of the eyeball** of the lens may occur in traumatic globe rupture. Lens may be present at following sites:

- **Subconjunctival space** (partially or completely extruded out from the globe).
- **Extruded out of the eyeball.**

### Clinical features

**Clinical features of anterior dislocation** are deep anterior chamber and presence of lens in the anterior chamber. Clear lens looks like an oil drop in the aqueous.

**Complications** associated with dislocated lens are uveitis and secondary glaucoma.

**Clinical features of posterior dislocation.** These include: deep anterior chamber, aphakia in pupillary area, and iridodonesis. Ophthalmoscopic examination reveals lens in the vitreous cavity.

### Management

- **A lens dislocated in the anterior chamber** and that incarcerated in the pupil should be removed through limbal route as early as possible.

- **A dislocated lens from the vitreous cavity** should be removed by pars plana vitrectomy technique.

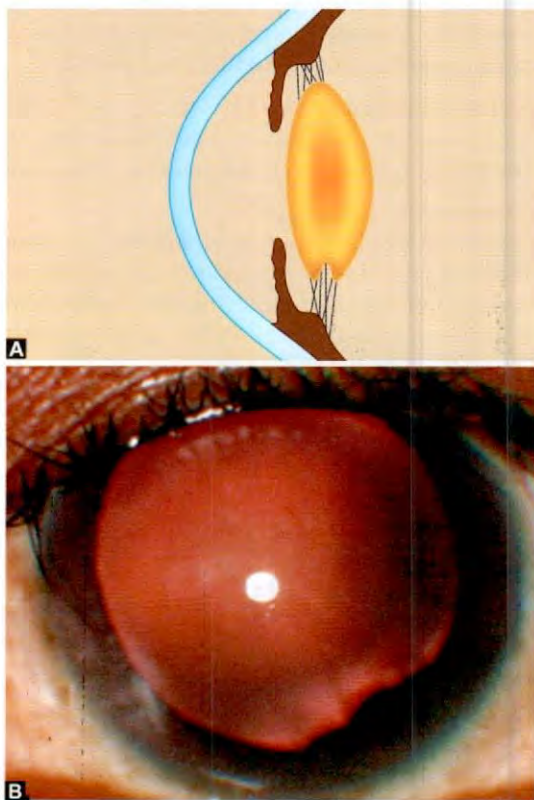
## CONGENITAL ANOMALIES OF THE LENS

**1. Congenital cataract** is the most common congenital disorder of lens. (See page 188).

**2. Congenital ectopia lentis** is the second most common congenital disorder of lens (See lens displacement page 222).

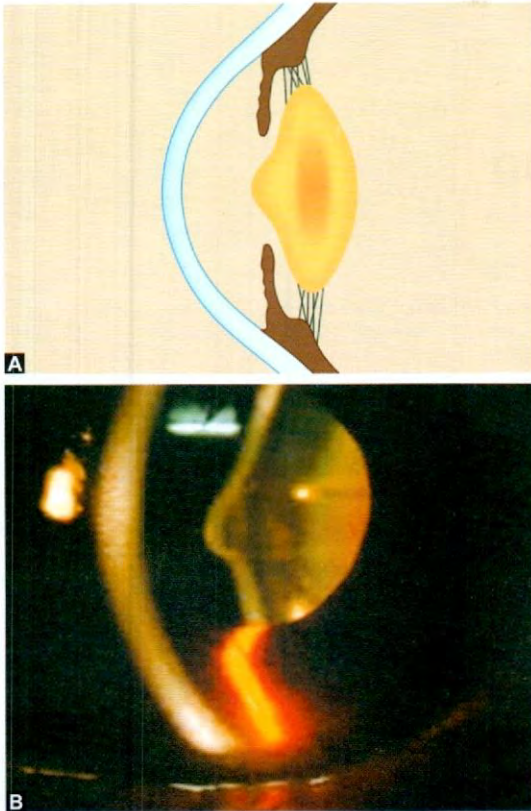
**3. Coloboma of lens.** It is seen as a notch in the lower quadrant of the equator (Fig. 9.41). It is usually unilateral and often hereditary.

**4. Lenticonus.** It refers to cone-shaped elevation of the anterior pole (*lenticonus anterior*, Fig. 9.42) or posterior pole (*lenticonus posterior*, Fig. 9.43) of the lens. Lenticonus anterior may occur in Alport's syndrome and lenticonus posterior in Lowe's syndrome. On distant direct ophthalmoscopy, both present as an oil globule lying in the centre of



**Fig. 9.41** Coloboma of the lens: A, Diagrammatic depiction; B, Clinical photograph

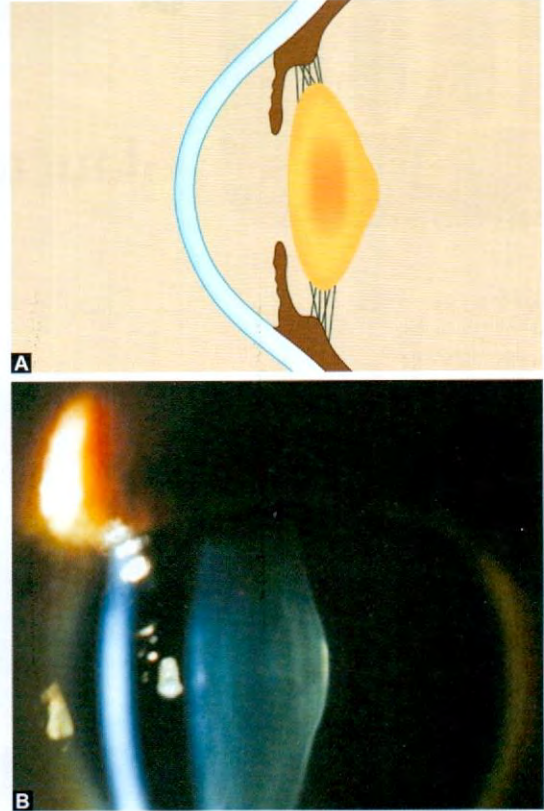




**Fig. 9.42** *Lenticonus anterior: A, Diagrammatic; B, Slit-lamp photograph*

the red reflex. Slit-lamp examination confirms the diagnosis.

**5. Microspherophakia.** In this condition, the lens is spherical in shape (instead of normal biconvex)



**Fig. 9.43** *Lenticonus posterior: A, Diagrammatic; B, Slit-lamp photograph*

and small in size (See Fig. 9.39). Microspherophakia may occur as an isolated familial condition or as a feature of other syndromes, e.g. Weill-Marchesani or Marfan's syndrome.



**ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY**

- Applied anatomy
- Applied physiology

**GLAUCOMA: AN OVERVIEW**

- Definition and classification of glaucoma
- Pathogenesis of glaucomatous ocular damage

**CONGENITAL/DEVELOPMENTAL GLAUCOMAS**

- Terminology
- Primary congenital/developmental glaucoma
- Developmental glaucomas with associated anomalies

**PRIMARY OPEN-ANGLE GLAUCOMA AND RELATED CONDITIONS**

- Primary open-angle glaucoma
- Ocular hypertension
- Normal tension glaucoma

**PRIMARY ANGLE-CLOSURE DISEASE**

- Epidemiology
- Etiopathogenesis
- Classification
- Clinical profile and management
- Primary angle-closure suspect
- Primary angle-closure
- Primary angle-closure glaucoma

**SECONDARY GLAUCOMAS****SURGICAL PROCEDURES FOR GLAUCOMA****ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY****■ APPLIED ANATOMY**

Pathophysiology of glaucoma revolves around the aqueous humour dynamics. The principal ocular structures concerned with it are ciliary body, angle of anterior chamber and the aqueous outflow system.

**Ciliary body**

It is the site of aqueous production. Applied aspects of its anatomy have been described on page 152.

**Angle of anterior chamber**

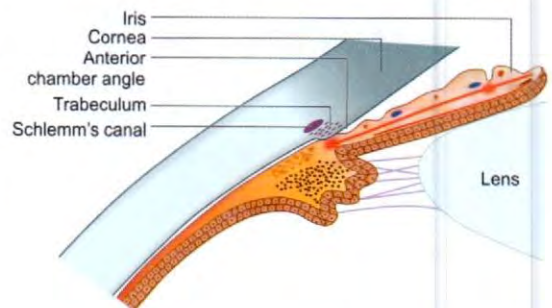
Angle of anterior chamber plays an important role in the process of aqueous drainage. It is formed by root of iris, anterior-most part of ciliary body, scleral spur, trabecular meshwork and *Schwalbe's line* (prominent end of Descemet's membrane of cornea) (Fig. 10.1). The angle width varies in different individuals and plays a vital role in the pathomechanism of different types of glaucoma. Clinically, the angle structures can be visualised by gonioscopic examination (See page 589). **Gonioscopic grading of the angle width.** Various systems have been suggested to grade angle width. The most commonly used Shaffer's system of grading the angle is given in Table 10.1 and is shown in Fig. 10.2.

**Aqueous outflow system**

It includes the trabecular meshwork, Schlemm's canal, collector channels, aqueous veins and the episcleral veins (Fig. 10.3).

**1. Trabecular meshwork.** It is the circular sponge work of connective tissue lined by trabeculocysts. It behaves as a sieve-like structure through which aqueous humour leaves the eye. It consists of three layers, which from inside out are uveal meshwork, corneoscleral meshwork and juxtacanalicular meshwork.

- Uveal meshwork.** It is the innermost part of trabecular meshwork and extends from the iris root and ciliary body to the Schwalbe's line. The arrangement of uveal trabecular bands create openings of about  $25\mu$  to  $75\mu$ .
- Corneoscleral meshwork.** It forms the larger middle portion which extends from the scleral spur to the lateral wall of the scleral sulcus. It consists of



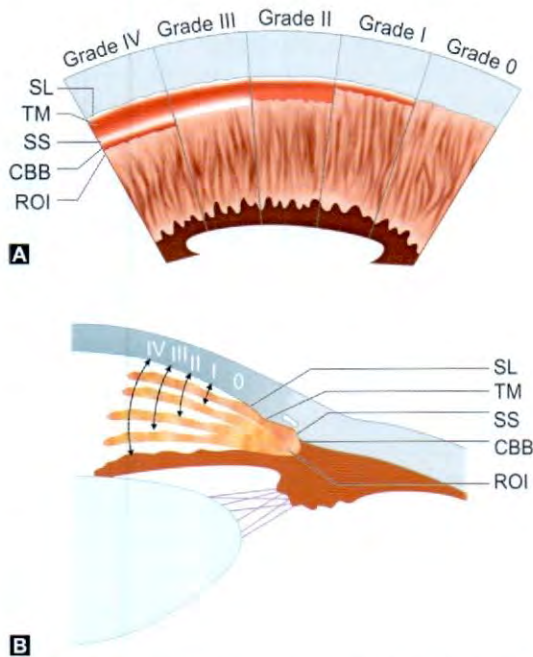
**Fig. 10.1** Section of the anterior ocular structures showing region of the anterior chamber



**Table 10.1** Shaffer's system of grading the angle width

| Grade | Angle width | Configuration     | Risk of closure      | Structures visible on gonioscopy     |
|-------|-------------|-------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 4     | 40°         | Wide open         | Closure impossible   | SL, TM, SS, CBB                      |
| 3     | 30°         | Open angle        | Closure impossible   | SL, TM, SS                           |
| 2     | 20°         | Moderately narrow | Closure possible     | SL, TM                               |
| 1     | 10°         | Very narrow       | High risk of closure | SL only                              |
| S     | <10°        | Slit angle        | Closure imminent     | No angle structures seen             |
| 0     | 0°          | Closed            | Closed               | None of the angle structures visible |

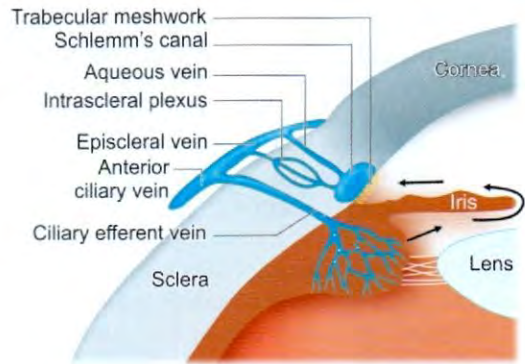
SL = Schwalbe's line, TM = Trabecular meshwork, SS = Scleral spur, CBB = Ciliary body band



**Fig. 10.2** Diagrammatic depiction of various angle structures (SL, Schwalbe's line; TM, trabecular meshwork; SS, scleral spur; CBB, ciliary body band; ROI root of iris) as seen in different grades of angle width (Shaffer's grading system): A, Gonioscopic view; B, Configuration of the angle in cross section of the anterior chamber

sheets of trabeculae that are perforated by elliptical openings which are smaller than those in the uveal meshwork (5μ–50μ).

- iii. **Juxtacanalicular (endothelial) meshwork.** It forms the outermost portion of trabecular meshwork and consists of juxtacanalicular space (filled with ground substance) and cells. The juxtacanalicular cell cytoplasmic processes attach externally to the processes arising from the innerwall endothelium of Schlemm's canal and internally to the processes arising from the cells of corneoscleral meshwork. Thus, this narrow part of trabeculum connects the corneoscleral meshwork with Schlemm's canal.



**Fig. 10.3** Aqueous outflow system

This part of trabecular meshwork mainly offers normal resistance to the aqueous outflow.

**2. Schlemm's canal.** This is an endothelial lined oval channel present circumferentially in the scleral sulcus. The endothelial cells of its inner wall are irregular, spindle-shaped and contain giant vacuoles and or aqueous valve. The outer wall of the canal is lined by smooth flat cells and contains the openings of collector channels.

**3. Collector channels.** These, also called *intrasceral aqueous vessels*, are about 25–35 in number and leave the Schlemm's canal at oblique angles to terminate into episcleral veins in a laminated fashion. These intrasceral aqueous vessels can be divided into two systems (Fig. 10.3):

- **Direct system.** It is formed by the larger vessels (*aqueous veins*) which run a short intrasceral course and terminate directly into episcleral veins.
- **Indirect system.** It is formed by the smaller collector channels which form an intrasceral plexus before eventually going into episcleral veins.

#### ■ APPLIED PHYSIOLOGY

The physiological processes concerned with the dynamics of aqueous humour are its production, drainage and maintenance of intraocular pressure.



## Aqueous Humour and its Production

### Functions and composition of aqueous humour

**Volume.** The aqueous humour is a clear watery fluid filling the anterior chamber (0.25 mL) and posterior chamber (0.06 mL) of the eyeball.

**Functions** of aqueous humour are:

- **Maintenance of a proper** intraocular pressure.
- **Metabolic and nutritional role.** It plays an important metabolic role by providing substrates (nutrition) and by removing metabolites from the avascular cornea and lens.
- **Optical function.** It maintains optical transparency.
- **Clearing function.** Aqueous humour serves as a mechanism to clear blood, macrophages, remnants of lens matter and products of inflammation from anterior chamber. Thus, it takes the place of lymph that is absent within the eyeball.

**Refractive index** of aqueous humour is 1.336.

**Composition.** Constituents of normal aqueous humour are:

- **Water** 99.9% and **solids** 0.1% (given below).
- **Proteins** (colloid content). Because of blood aqueous barrier the protein content of aqueous humour (5–16 mg%) is much less than that of plasma (6–7 gm%). However, in inflammation of uvea (iritocyclitis) the blood-aqueous barrier is broken and the protein content of aqueous is increased (plasmoid aqueous).
- **Amino acid constituent** of aqueous humour is about 5 mg/kg water.
- **Noncolloid constituents** in millimols/kg water are glucose (6.0), urea (7), ascorbate (0.9), lactic acid (7.4), inositol (0.1),  $\text{Na}^+$  (144),  $\text{K}^+$  (4.5),  $\text{Cl}^-$  (10), and  $\text{HCO}_3^-$  (34).
- **Oxygen** is present in the aqueous humour in dissolved state.

**Note.** Thus, composition of aqueous is similar to plasma except that it has:

- **High concentrations** of bicarbonate, chloride ascorbate, pyruvate and lactate; and
- **Low concentration** of proteins, urea, glucose,  $\text{Na}^+$ ,  $\text{K}^+$ ,  $\text{Ca}^{++}$  and  $\text{Mg}^{++}$ .

**Aqueous humour: anterior chamber versus posterior chamber.** The composition of aqueous humour in anterior chamber differs from that of the aqueous humour in posterior chamber because of metabolic interchange. The main differences are:

- $\text{HCO}_3^-$  in posterior chamber aqueous is higher than in the anterior chamber.
- $\text{Cl}^-$  concentration in posterior chamber is lower than in the anterior chamber.
- **Ascorbate** concentration of posterior aqueous is slightly higher than that of anterior chamber aqueous.

### Aqueous humour formation

Aqueous humour is derived from plasma within the capillary network of ciliary processes. The normal aqueous production rate is 2.3  $\mu\text{L}/\text{min}$ . The three mechanisms active *secretion* (70%), *ultrafiltration* (20%) and *diffusion* (10%) play a part in its production at different levels. The steps involved in the process of production are summarized below:

**1. Ultrafiltration.** First of all, by ultrafiltration, most of the plasma substances pass out from the capillary wall and loose connective tissue. Thus, the plasma filtrate (dialysate) accumulates behind the pigmented and nonpigmented epithelium of ciliary processes.

**2. Active secretion.** First the dialysate from the plasma is transported into the pigment epithelium. Paired  $\text{Na}^+/\text{H}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-/\text{HCO}_3^-$  antiports actively transports  $\text{Na}^+$  and  $\text{Cl}^-$  from the stroma into the cells. Inter-cellular gap junctions also play critical role. The tight junctions between the cells of the nonpigment epithelium create part of blood aqueous barrier. Certain substances are actively transported (secreted) across this barrier into the posterior chamber.

- **Active transport** is brought about by  $\text{Na}^+-\text{K}^+$  activated ATPase pump, calcium and voltage gated ion channels and carbonic anhydrase enzyme system.
- **Substances that are actively transported** include sodium, chlorides, potassium, ascorbic acid, amino acids and bicarbonates.

**3. Diffusion.** Active transport of the substances across the nonpigmented ciliary epithelium results in an osmotic gradient leading to the movement of other plasma constituents into the posterior chamber by ultrafiltration and diffusion. Sodium is primarily responsible for the movement of water into the posterior chamber. As the aqueous humour passes from the posterior chamber to Schlemm's canal, there occurs sufficient diffusional exchange with the surrounding structures (ciliary body, iris lens, cornea and trabecular meshwork). As a result the anterior chamber aqueous resembles plasma more closely than does the posterior chamber aqueous humour.

### Control of aqueous formation

The diurnal variation in intraocular pressure certainly indicates that some endogenous factors do influence the aqueous formation. The exact role of such factors is yet to be clearly understood. Vasopressin and adenylyl-cyclase have been described to affect aqueous formation by influencing active transport of sodium.

Ultrafiltration and diffusion, which primarily operate against concentration gradient, the passive mechanisms of aqueous formation, are dependent on the level of blood pressure in the ciliary capillaries,



the plasma osmotic pressure and the level of intraocular pressure.

### Drainage of Aqueous Humour

Aqueous humour flows from the posterior chamber into the anterior chamber through the pupil against slight physiologic resistance. From the anterior chamber, the aqueous is drained out by two routes (See Fig. 10.5):

#### 1. Trabecular (conventional) outflow

Trabecular meshwork is the main outlet for aqueous from the anterior chamber. Approximately 70–80% of the total aqueous is drained out via this route.

Free flow of aqueous occurs from trabecular meshwork up to juxtacanalicular tissue which along with inner wall of Schlemm's canal appears to provide some resistance to outflow.

#### Mechanism of aqueous transport across inner wall of Schlemm's canal.

Various mechanisms have been put forward to explain the flow of aqueous across the inner wall of Schlemm's canal.

**Earlier passive filter mechanisms.** Earlier it was believed that from the juxtacanalicular space. The aqueous humour enters the Schlemm's canal against slight resistance. Following mechanisms were postulated which are now discarded and have become a part of historical interest only:

- *Leaky pores in endothelial cells* forming the inner wall of Schlemm's canal were proposed.
- *Contractile microfilaments* in the endothelial cells were suggested by some workers.
- *Sondermann's channels* were also suggested to be responsible for aqueous outflow through the inner wall of Schlemm's canal.
- *Vacuolation theory.* It was one of the most accepted view till recent past. According to it, transcellular spaces exist in the endothelial cells forming inner wall of Schlemm's canal. These open as a system of vacuoles and pores, primarily in response to pressure, and transport the aqueous from the juxtacanalicular connective tissue to Schlemm's canal.

**Aqueous outflow active pump mechanism.** Aqueous flow through the aqueous outflow system has long been considered a passive filter mechanism against the pressure gradient. However, recently it has been reported that aqueous outflow system acts as a *biomechanical pump*. It has been proposed that:

- *Aqueous outflow pump* operates through oscillatory pressure transients caused by the ocular pulse, blinking and eye movements.

- *Trabecular meshwork* actively moves outward and recoils back in response to the oscillatory pressure transients. Thus, trabecular meshwork flexibility is essential for the aqueous outflow pump mechanism.
- *Aqueous valve mechanism* has been reported to operate at the level of inner wall of Schlemm's canal (SC). These valves are oriented circumferentially in SC and their lumen is continuous with the juxtacanalicular space. These valves allow one way passage of aqueous humour from the juxtacanalicular space to inside the SC and not vice-versa.

**Working of aqueous outflow pump system,** It is a part of vascular circulatory loop as explained below:

- *Flow of aqueous humour from juxtacanalicular space to inside the Schlemm's canal.* During cardiac diastole, the IOP is slightly decreased due to less blood flow to the choroidal vasculature. As a consequence, the trabecular meshwork is retracted inward leading to a negative pressure inside the Schlemm's canal and opening of the aqueous valves. This is followed by flow of aqueous inside the SC (Fig. 10.4A).
- *Aqueous humour flow from SC to collector's channels and episcleral veins.* During cardiac systole, the choroidal vasculature expansion leads to transient rise in IOP. The aqueous pulse wave distends the trabecular meshwork (TM) forcing it outward against the SC. As a consequence of this pressure push the aqueous valves close and aqueous from the SC is pushed through the collector channels in its outer wall into the aqueous veins (Fig. 10.4B).
- *From aqueous veins, the aqueous is pushed into the episcleral veins* by the same mechanism. The pressure gradient between IOP (16 mm of Hg) and episcleral venous pressure (about 10 mm of Hg) also facilitates this unidirectional pulsatile flow of aqueous humour.

#### 2. Uveoscleral (unconventional) outflow

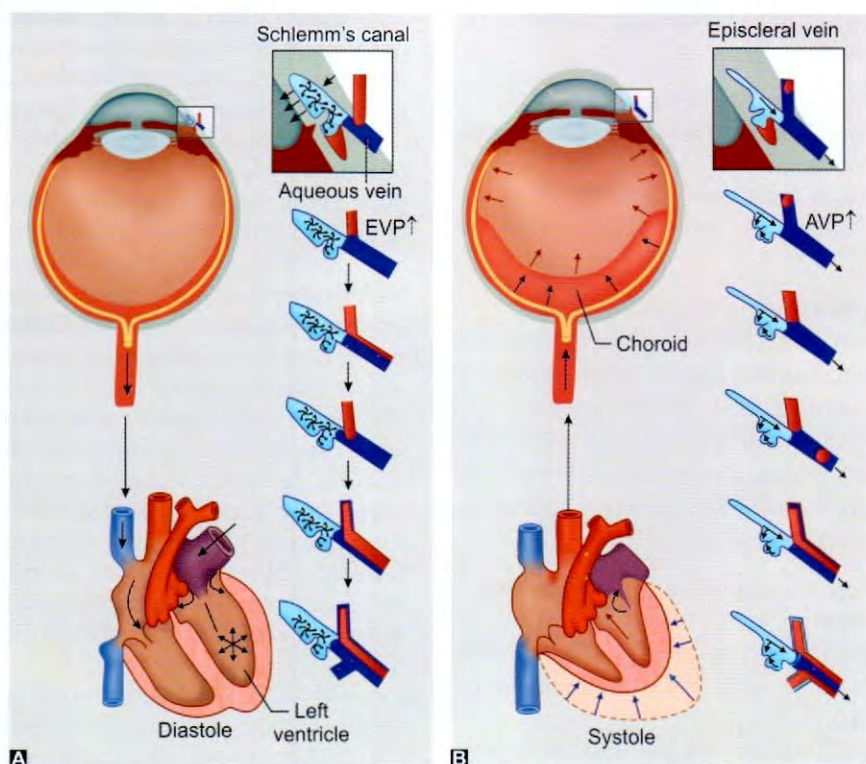
It is responsible for about 20 to 30% of the total aqueous outflow. The aqueous enters the ciliary body through the iris root, ciliary body face and uveal trabecular meshwork. Aqueous passes across the ciliary body between the bundles of ciliary muscles into the suprachoroidal space and is drained by the venous circulation of the ciliary body, choroid and sclera.

The drainage of aqueous humour is summarized in the flowchart (Fig. 10.5).

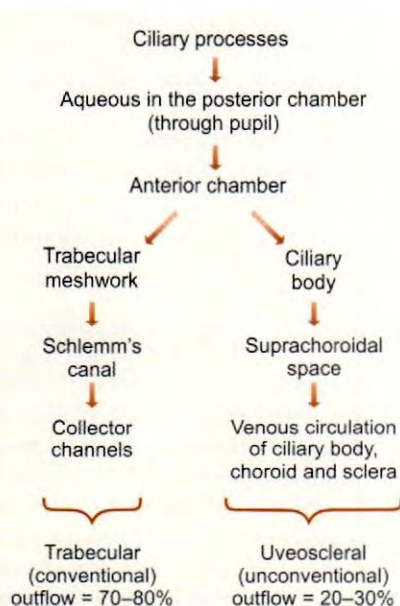
#### Maintenance of Intraocular Pressure

The intraocular pressure (IOP) refers to the pressure exerted by intraocular fluids on the coats





**Fig. 10.4** Aqueous outflow active pump mechanism (a part of vascular circulatory loop): A, During diastole; B, During systole. For explanation see text



**Fig. 10.5** Flowchart depicting drainage of aqueous humour of the eyeball. The normal IOP varies between 10 and 21 mm of Hg (mean  $16 \pm 2.5$  mm of Hg). The normal level of IOP is essentially maintained by a

dynamic equilibrium between the formation and outflow of the aqueous humour. Various factors influencing intraocular pressure can be grouped as under:

#### A. Local factors

1. *Rate of aqueous formation* influences IOP levels. The aqueous formation in turn depends upon many factors such as permeability of ciliary capillaries and osmotic pressure of the blood.
2. *Resistance to aqueous outflow* (drainage). From clinical point of view, this is the most important factor. Most of the resistance to aqueous outflow is at the level of trabecular meshwork.
3. *Increased episcleral venous pressure* may result in rise of IOP. The Valsalva manoeuvre causes temporary increase in episcleral venous pressure and rise in IOP.
4. *Dilatation of pupil* in patients with narrow anterior chamber angle may cause rise of IOP owing to a relative obstruction of the aqueous drainage by the iris.
5. *Refractive errors*. Myopic individuals have higher IOP as compared to emmetropes and



hypermetropes. Infact, IOP correlates with axial length.

### B. General factors

1. **Heredity.** It influences IOP, possibly by multifactorial modes.
2. **Age.** The mean IOP increases after the age of 40 years, possibly due to reduced facility of aqueous outflow.
3. **Sex.** IOP is equal between the sexes in ages 20–40 years. In older age groups increase in mean IOP with age is greater in females.
4. **Diurnal variation of IOP.** Usually, there is a tendency of higher IOP in the morning and lower in the late evening (See Fig. 10.9). This has been related to diurnal variation in the levels of plasma cortisol. Normal eyes have a smaller fluctuation (<5 mm of Hg) than glaucomatous eyes (>8 mm of Hg).
5. **Postural variations.** IOP increases when changing from the sitting to the supine position.
6. **Seasonal variations.** IOP is higher in winter months.
7. **Blood pressure.** As such it does not have long-term effect on IOP. However, prevalence of glaucoma is marginally more in hypertensives than the normotensives.
8. **Osmotic pressure of blood.** An increase in plasma osmolarity (as occurs after intravenous mannitol, oral glycerol or in patients with uraemia) is associated with a fall in IOP, while a reduction in plasma osmolarity (as occurs with water drinking provocative tests) is associated with a rise in IOP.
9. **General anaesthetics and many other drugs also influence IOP, e.g. alcohol lowers IOP, tobacco smoking, caffeine and steroids may cause rise in IOP. In addition, there are many antiglaucoma drugs which lower IOP.**
10. **Exercise.** Strenuous exercise lowers IOP transiently.

raised IOP without any associated glaucomatous damage. Conversely, the term *normal or low tension glaucoma (NTG/LTG)* is suggested for the typical cupping of the disc and/or visual field defects associated with a normal or low IOP.

### Classification

Clinico-etiological glaucoma may be classified as follows:

#### A. Congenital/developmental glaucomas

1. Primary congenital/developmental glaucoma (without associated anomalies).
2. Secondary congenital/developmental glaucoma (with associated anomalies).

#### B. Primary adult glaucomas

1. Primary open-angle glaucomas (POAG)
2. Primary angle-closure glaucoma (PACG)
3. Primary mixed mechanism glaucoma.

#### C. Secondary glaucomas

### ■ EPIDEMIOLOGY

#### Global prevalence of glaucoma

- About 2% of those over the age of 40 years, and
- About 10% of those over 80 years of age.

#### POAG Versus PACG in different ethnic groups

| Ethnic group                     | POAG : PACG |
|----------------------------------|-------------|
| ▪ Indian                         | 1 : 1       |
| ▪ Urban Chinese                  | 1 : 2       |
| ▪ Mongolian                      | 1 : 3       |
| ▪ European, African and Hispanic | 5 : 1       |

#### Glaucoma blindness

- Global : 8.0%
- India : 12.8%.

### ■ PATHOGENESIS OF GLAUCOMATOUS OCULAR DAMAGE

As mentioned in definition, all glaucomas (classified above and described later) are characterized by a progressive optic neuropathy. It has now been recognized that progressive optic neuropathy results from the death of retinal ganglion cells (RGCs) in a typical pattern which results in characteristic optic disc appearance and specific visual field defects.

#### Pathogenesis of Retinal Ganglion Cell Death

Retinal ganglion cell (RGC) death is initiated when some pathologic event blocks the transport of growth factors (neurotrophins) from the brain to the RGCs. The blockage of these neurotrophins initiate a damaging cascade, and the cell is unable to maintain its normal function. The RGCs losing

## GLAUCOMA: AN OVERVIEW

### ■ DEFINITION AND CLASSIFICATION OF GLAUCOMA

#### Definition

Glaucoma is not a single disease process but a group of disorders characterized by a progressive optic neuropathy resulting in a characteristic appearance of the optic disc and a specific pattern of irreversible visual field defects that are associated frequently but not invariably with raised intraocular pressure (IOP). Thus, IOP is the most common risk factor but not the only risk factor for development of glaucoma. Consequently, the term '*ocular hypertension*' is used for cases having constantly



their ability to maintain normal function undergo apoptosis and also trigger apoptosis of adjacent cells. Apoptosis is a genetically controlled cell suicide programme whereby irreversibly damaged cells die, and are subsequently engulfed by neighbouring cells, without eliciting any inflammatory response.

Retinal ganglion cell death is, of course, associated with loss of retinal nerve fibres. As the loss of nerve fibres extends beyond the normal physiological overlap of functional zones, the characteristic optic disc changes and specific visual field defects become apparent over the time.

### Etiological factors

Factors involved in the etiology of retinal ganglion cell death and thus in the etiology of glaucomatous optic neuropathy can be grouped as below:

#### A. Primary insults

##### 1. Raised intraocular pressure (Mechanical theory).

Raised intraocular pressure causes mechanical stretch on the lamina cribrosa leading to axonal deformation and ischaemia by altering capillary blood flow. As a result of this, neurotrophins (growth factors) are not able to reach the retinal ganglion cell bodies in sufficient amount needed for their survival.

**2. Pressure independent factors (Vascular insufficiency theory).** Factors affecting vascular perfusion of optic nerve head in the absence of raised IOP have been implicated in the glaucomatous optic neuropathy in patients with normal tension glaucoma (NTG). However, these may be the additional factors in cases of raised IOP as well. These factors include:

- Failure of autoregulatory mechanism of blood flow.* The retina and optic nerve share a peculiar mechanism of autoregulation of blood flow with rest of the central nervous system. Once the autoregulatory mechanisms are compromised, blood flow may not be adequate beyond some critical range of IOP (which may be raised or in normal range).
- Vasospasm* is another mechanism affecting vascular perfusion of optic nerve head. This hypothesis gets credence from the convincing association between NTG and vasospastic disorders (migrainous headache and Raynaud's phenomenon).
- Systemic hypotension*, particularly nocturnal dips in patients with night time administration of antihypertensive drugs, has been implicated for low vascular perfusion of optic nerve head resulting in NTG and progression of damage in POAG.
- Other factors* such as acute blood loss and abnormal coagulability profile have also been associated with NTG.

#### B. Secondary insults (Excitotoxicity theory)

Neuronal degeneration is believed to be driven by toxic factors such as glutamate (excitatory toxin), oxygen-free radicals, or nitric oxide which are released when RGCs undergo death due to primary insults. In this way, the secondary insult leads to continued damage-mediated apoptosis, even after the primary insult has been controlled.

## CONGENITAL/DEVELOPMENTAL GLAUCOMAS

### ■ TERMINOLOGY

The congenital glaucomas are a group of diverse disorders in which abnormal high intraocular pressure results due to developmental abnormalities of the angle of anterior chamber obstructing the drainage of aqueous humour. Sometimes, glaucoma may not occur until several years after birth; therefore, the term *developmental glaucoma* is preferred to describe such disorders.

#### Types

- Primary congenital/developmental glaucoma without associated anomalies.
- Secondary congenital/developmental glaucomas which includes:
  - Developmental glaucoma with associated congenital ocular anomalies, and
  - Developmental glaucoma with associated systemic anomalies.

### ■ PRIMARY CONGENITAL/DEVELOPMENTAL GLAUCOMA

Primary congenital glaucoma (PCG) refers to abnormally high IOP which results due to developmental anomaly of the angle of the anterior chamber, not associated with any other ocular or systemic anomaly. Depending upon the age of onset the developmental glaucomas are termed as follows:

- 1. Newborn glaucoma**, also called as *true congenital glaucoma*, is labelled when IOP is raised during intrauterine life and child is born with ocular enlargement. It accounts for about 40% of cases.
- 2. Infantile glaucoma** is labelled when the disease manifests prior to the child's third birthday. It accounts for about 55% of cases.
- 3. Juvenile glaucoma** is labelled in the rest 5% of cases who develop pressure rise after 3 years but before adulthood. Also known as Juvenile primary open angle glaucoma (POAG) usually occurs between 10 to 35 years of age. About 35% of patients with juvenile POAG are myopes. The disease has a strong autosomal dominant inheritance. Some of the



families suffering from juvenile POAG have a genetic anomaly on the long arm of chromosome 21.

**Buphthalmos.** When the disease manifests prior to age of 3 years, the eyeball enlarges and so the term 'buphthalmos' (bull-like eyes) is used. As it results due to retention of aqueous humour (watery solution), the term 'hydrophthalmos', has also been suggested.

### Prevalence and genetic pattern

- **Sporadic occurrence** is seen in most cases (90%).
- **Autosomal recessive inheritance** with incomplete penetrance is seen in about 10% cases.
- **Loci linked with PCG** are 2p21(GLC3A), 1p36 (GLC3B) and 14q24 (GLC3C).
- **Sex linkage** is not common in inheritance although over 65% of the patients are boys.
- **Bilateral occurrence** is seen in 70% cases, though the involvement may be asymmetric.
- **Prevalence** of the disease is only 1 child in 10,000 births.

### Pathogenesis

Maldevelopment, from neural crest derived cells, of trabeculum including the iridotrabecular junction (*trabeculodysgenesis*) is responsible for impaired aqueous outflow resulting in raised IOP. In primary congenital glaucoma, the trabeculodysgenesis is not associated with any other major ocular anomalies. Clinically, trabeculodysgenesis is characterized by absence of the angle recess with iris having a flat or concave direct insertion into the surface of trabeculum as follows:

- **Flat iris insertion** is more common than the concave iris insertion. In it the iris inserts flatly and abruptly into the thickened trabeculum either at or anterior to scleral spur (more often) or posterior to scleral spur. It is often possible to visualize a portion of ciliary body and scleral spur.
- **Concave iris insertion** is less common. In it the superficial iris tissue sweeps over the iridotrabecular junction and the trabeculum and, thus, obscures the scleral spur and ciliary body.

### Clinical features

**1. Lacrimation, photophobia and blepharospasm** often occur together and form the *classic triad* of symptoms of congenital glaucoma. Often there is history of **eye rubbing**. These are thought to be caused by irritation of corneal nerves, which occurs as a result of the elevated IOP. Watering (lacrimation) is and most common and photophobia is usually the second most common but most troublesome symptom noted by the parents.

**2. Corneal signs.** Corneal signs include its oedema, enlargement and Descemet's breaks.

• **Corneal oedema.** It is frequently the first sign which arouses suspicion and is often associated with marked photophobia and lacrimation. At first corneal oedema is epithelial, but later there is stromal involvement and permanent opacities may occur.

• **Corneal enlargement.** It occurs along with enlargement of globe-buphthalmos (Fig. 10.6), especially when the onset is before the age of 3 years. Normal infant cornea measures 10.5 mm. A diameter of more than 13 mm confirms enlargement. Prognosis is usually poor in infants with corneal diameter of more than 16 mm.

• **Haab's striae.** Tears and breaks in Descemet's membrane occur because Descemet's membrane is less elastic than the corneal stroma. Tears are usually peripheral, concentric with the limbus and appear as opaque lines with double contour.

• **Hazy cornea** with frosted glass appearance may results over the time.

**3. Sclera** becomes thin and appears blue due to underlying uveal tissue.

**4. Anterior chamber** becomes deep.

**5. Iris** may show iridodonesis and atrophic patches in late stage.

**6. Lens** becomes antero-posteriorly flat due to stretching of zonules and may even subluxate backward.

**7. Optic disc** may show variable cupping and atrophy especially after third year.

**8. IOP** is raised which is neither marked nor acute.

**9. Axial myopia** may occur because of increase in axial length which may give rise to anisometropic amblyopia.

**10. Large eyeball** (buphthalmos) is seen when developmental glaucoma occurs early (before 3 years of age).

### Examination (Evaluation)

A complete examination under general anaesthesia (EUA) should be performed on each child suspected



**Fig. 10.6** Corneal enlargement in a child with congenital glaucoma



of having congenital glaucoma. The examination should include following:

1. *Measurement of IOP* preferably with hand held Perkin's applanation tonometer or Tonopen should be done since scleral rigidity is very low in children. IOP measurement under GA is unpredictably altered.
2. *Measurement of corneal diameter* by callipers.
3. *Slit-lamp examination* should be carried out with portable slit-lamp.
4. *Ophthalmoscopy* to evaluate optic disc.
5. *Gonioscopic examination* of angle of anterior chamber reveals trabeculodysgenesis with either flat or concave iris insertion as described in pathogenesis. Gonioscopy is performed under general anaesthesia using Koeppe's lens for direct visualisation of the angle structures.

### Differential diagnosis

It is to be considered for different presenting signs as follows:

1. *Cloudy cornea*. In unilateral cases, the commonest cause is trauma with rupture of Descemet's membrane (forceps injury). In bilateral cases, causes may be trauma, mucopolysaccharidosis, interstitial keratitis and corneal endothelial dystrophy.
2. *Large cornea* due to buphthalmos should be differentiated from megalocornea, sclerocornea and high myopia.
3. *Lacrimation* in an infant is usually considered to be due to congenital nasolacrimal duct blockage and thus early diagnosis of congenital glaucoma may be missed. Other causes of watering in small child include corneal abrasion, Meesmann's corneal dystrophy and Reis-Buckler dystrophy.
4. *Photophobia* may be due to keratitis or uveitis.
5. *Raised IOP in infants* may also be associated with retinoblastoma, retinopathy of prematurity, persistent primary hyperplastic vitreous, traumatic glaucoma and secondary congenital glaucoma seen in rubella, aniridia and Sturge-Weber syndrome.
6. *Optic disc changes* need to be differentiated from congenital anomalies of the disc such as pit, coloboma, hypoplasia, tilted disc and large physiological cup.

### Treatment

#### Medical treatment

*Medications are not very effective* and so treatment of congenital glaucoma is primarily surgical. However, IOP must be lowered by medical treatment with hyperosmotic agents, carbonic anhydrase inhibitors

and beta-blockers (timolol 0.5% is the first drug of choice) till surgery is taken up.

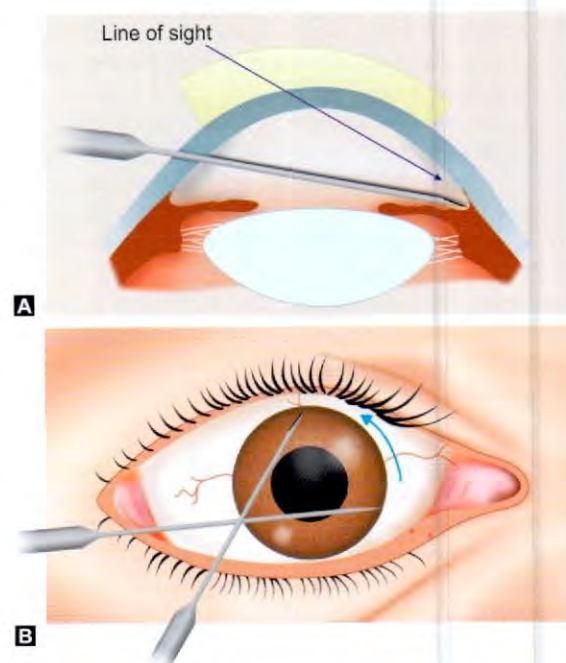
- *Miotics are not used* in such cases because they paradoxically increase IOP.
- *Alpha-2 agonist* (brimonidine) causes CNS depression in children and is thus contraindicated.

### Surgical procedures for congenital glaucoma

1. *Incisional angle surgery*, which can be performed by the internal approach (goniotomy) or by external approach (trabeculectomy).

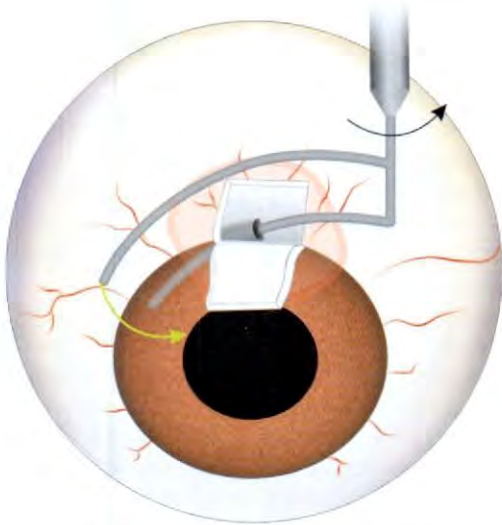
1. *Goniotomy* (Fig. 10.7). In this procedure, a Barkan's goniotomy knife is passed through the limbus on the temporal side. Under gonioscopic control the knife is passed across the anterior chamber to the nasal part of the angle. An incision is made in the angle approximately midway between root of the iris and Schwalbe's ring through approximately 75°. The knife is then withdrawn. Although the procedure may have to be repeated, the eventual success rate is about 85%.

2. *Trabeculectomy*. This is useful when corneal clouding prevents visualization of the angle or in cases where goniotomy has failed. In this, canal of Schlemm is exposed at about 12 O'clock position by a vertical scleral incision after making a conjunctival



**Fig. 10.7** Technique of goniotomy: A, Showing position of goniotomy knife in the angle under direct visualization; B, Showing procedure of sweeping the knife in the angle





**Fig. 10.8** Technique of trabeculotomy

flap and partial thickness scleral flap. The lower prong of Harm's trabeculotome is passed along the Schlemm's canal on one side and the upper prong is used as a guide (Fig. 10.8). Then the trabeculotome is rotated so as to break the inner wall over one quarter of the canal. This is then repeated on the other side. The main difficulty in this operation is localization of the Schlemm's canal.

**II. Filtration surgery** is required in many cases:

1. *Trabeculectomy* with antimetabolites gives good results.
2. *Combined trabeculotomy and trabeculectomy* with antimetabolites has been accepted as the standard procedure.

**III. Glaucoma drainage devices (GDD)** are required in intractant cases.

## ■ SECONDARY DEVELOPMENTAL GLAUCOMAS

Secondary congenital/developmental glaucomas are those where other ocular and/or systemic anomalies are also associated.

### Secondary Developmental Glaucomas with Associated Ocular Anomalies

A wide variety of ocular anomalies have an associated raised IOP, usually due to developmental defects of the anterior chamber angle. Some of the associations are as follows:

#### I. Glaucoma associated with iridodysgenesis

1. Glaucoma associated with aniridia (50%)
2. Glaucoma associated with familial iris hypoplasia

3. Glaucoma associated with congenital ectropion uvea
4. Glaucoma associated with congenital microcornea
5. Glaucoma associated with congenital nanophthalmos.

#### II. Glaucoma associated with iridocorneal dysgenesis

These include:

1. *Posterior embryotoxon* characterized by a prominent Schwalbe's ring.

2. *Axenfeld-Rieger syndrome* refers to the spectrum of following anomalies:

- *Axenfeld anomaly* is characterized by posterior embryotoxon with attachment of strands of peripheral iris tissue.
- *Rieger anomaly* is characterized by posterior embryotoxon, iris stomal hypoplasia, ectropion uveal corectopia, and full thickness iris defect.
- *Rieger syndrome* refers to Rieger anomaly associated with dental anomalies (hypodontia or microdontia), facial anomalies (maxillary hypoplasia, broad nasal bridge, telecanthus and hypertelorism) and other anomalies (hypospadias, redundant paraumbilical skin, and renal anomalies).

3. *Peter's anomaly* is characterized by central corneal opacity with or without iridocorneal or lenticulo-corneal adhesions. It may have other ocular and some systemic associations as well.

4. *Combined Rieger's syndrome and Peters anomaly* is characterized by features of the both described above.

### Secondary Developmental Glaucoma with associated systemic anomalies

1. *Glaucoma associated with chromosomal disorders* such as trisomy 13-15 (trisomy D syndrome), trisomy 18 (Edward's syndrome), trisomy 21 (Down's syndrome) and Turner's syndrome.

2. *Glaucoma associated with ectopia lentis syndromes*, which include Marfan's syndrome, Weill-Marchesani syndrome and homocystinuria.

3. *Glaucoma associated with phakomatosis* is seen in Sturge-Weber syndrome (50% cases) and Von Recklinghausen's neurofibromatosis (25% cases).

4. *Glaucoma associated with metabolic syndromes* such as: Lowe's syndrome (oculocerebrorenal syndrome), Hurler's syndrome (mucopolysaccharidosis) and Zellweger syndrome (hepato-cerebral renal syndrome).



## PRIMARY OPEN-ANGLE GLAUCOMA AND RELATED CONDITIONS

### PRIMARY OPEN-ANGLE GLAUCOMA

As the name implies, it is a type of primary glaucoma, where there is no obvious systemic or ocular cause of rise in the intraocular pressure. Primary open-angle glaucoma (POAG), also known as chronic simple glaucoma of adult onset, is typically characterised by:

- Slowly progressive raised intraocular pressure (>21 mm Hg recorded on at least few occasions) associated with,
- Open normal appearing anterior chamber angle,
- Characteristic optic disc cupping, and
- Specific visual field defects.

### ETIOPATHOGENESIS

Etiopathogenesis of POAG is not known exactly. Some of the known facts are as follows:

**A. Predisposing and risk factors.** These include the following:

1. **Intraocular pressure (IOP)**, is the most important risk factor for development of POAG.
2. **Family history (Heredity).** The approximate risk of getting disease is 10% in the siblings, and 4% in the offspring of patients with POAG. POAG has a polygenic inheritance, approximately two dozen loci have been identified for POAG out of which only following three genes have been cloned:
  - Myocilin C (MYOC),
  - Optineurin (OPTN), and
  - WD repeat domain 36 (WDR 36)
3. **Age.** The risk increases with increasing age. The POAG is more commonly seen in elders between 5th and 7th decades.
4. **Race.** POAG is significantly more common, develops earlier and is more severe in black people than in whites.
5. **Myopes** are more predisposed than the normals.
6. **Central corneal thickness (CCT).** A thinner CCT, apart from causing underestimation of IOP by applanation tonometer, is being considered as an independent risk factor for POAG.
7. **Diabetics** have a higher prevalence of POAG than nondiabetics.
8. **Cigarette smoking** is also thought to increase its risk.
9. **High blood pressure** is not the cause of rise in IOP, however, the prevalence of POAG is more in hypertensives than the normotensives. Most meaningful blood pressure variable related to glaucoma is diastolic perfusion pressure (diastolic

blood pressure-IOP). A diastolic perfusion pressure of <55 mm Hg is an important risk factor for glaucoma.

10. **Thyrotoxicosis** is also not the cause of rise in IOP, but the prevalence of POAG is more in patients suffering from Graves' ophthalmic disease than the normals.
11. **Corticosteroid responsiveness.** Patients with POAG and their offspring and sibilings are more likely to respond to 6 weeks topical steroid therapy with a significant rise of IOP.

**B. Pathogenesis of rise in IOP.** It is certain that rise in IOP occurs due to decrease in the aqueous outflow facility. Recently it has been proposed that reduced aqueous outflow facility occurs due to failure of aqueous outflow pump mechanism owing to trabecular meshwork stiffening and apposition of Schlemm's canal wall. Such changes are caused by age-related:

- Thickening and sclerosis of trabecular meshwork with faulty collagen tissue.
- Narrowing of intertrabecular spaces.
- Deposition of amorphous material in the juxtacanalicular space.
- Collapse of Schlemm's canal and absence of giant vacuoles in the cells lining it.

The exact cause of these changes is uncertain. Detection of increased gammaglobulin and plasma cells in trabecular meshwork on immunohisto-chemistry and positive antinuclear antibody reaction in some cases support an *immunogenic mechanism* in POAG.

**C. Pathogenesis of glaucomatous optic neuropathy.** (See page 231)

### EPIDEMIOLOGY OF POAG

POAG affects about 1 in 100 of the general population (of either sex) above the age of 40 years. It forms about one-third cases of all glaucomas. Prevalence of POAG versus PACG varies in different populations as below:

| Ethnic group                        | POAG : PACG |
|-------------------------------------|-------------|
| • Europeans, Africans and Hispanics | 5 : 1       |
| • Mongolian                         | 1 : 3       |
| • Urban Chinese                     | 1 : 2       |
| • Indian                            | 1 : 1       |

### CLINICAL FEATURES

#### Symptoms

**Asymptomatic.** The disease is insidious and usually asymptomatic, until it has caused a significant loss of visual field. Therefore, periodic eye examination is required after middle age.

**Non-specific symptoms;** reported by patients include:

1. **Headache and eye ache** of mild intensity may be experienced in the course of the disease.



2. *Difficulty in reading and close work*, often persistently increasing, is experienced by most patients. This occurs due to increasing accommodative failure as a result of constant pressure on the ciliary muscle and its nerve supply. Therefore, patients usually complain of, *frequent changes in presbyopic glasses*.
3. *Delayed dark adaptation* may develop, a disability which becomes increasingly disturbing in the late stages.
4. *Scotoma* (defect in the visual field) may be noticed occasionally by some observant patients.
5. *Significant loss of vision and blindness* is the end result of untreated cases of POAG.

### Signs

#### I. Anterior segment signs

Ocular examination including slit-lamp biomicroscopy may reveal normal anterior segment. In late stages, pupil reflex becomes sluggish and cornea may show slight haze. A low ( $<555 \mu\text{m}$ ) central corneal thickness (CCT) is a significant risk factor for POAG.

#### II. Intraocular-pressure changes

In the initial stages, the IOP may not be raised permanently, but there is an exaggeration of the normal diurnal variation. Therefore, repeated observations of IOP (every 3–4 hour), for 24 hours is required during this stage (*Diurnal variation test*). In most patients, IOP falls during the evening, contrary to what happens in angle-closure glaucoma. *Different patterns of diurnal variation of IOP* shown in Fig. 10.9 are:

- Morning rise in IOP–20% of cases
- Afternoon rise in IOP–25% of cases
- Biphasic rise in IOP–55% of cases.

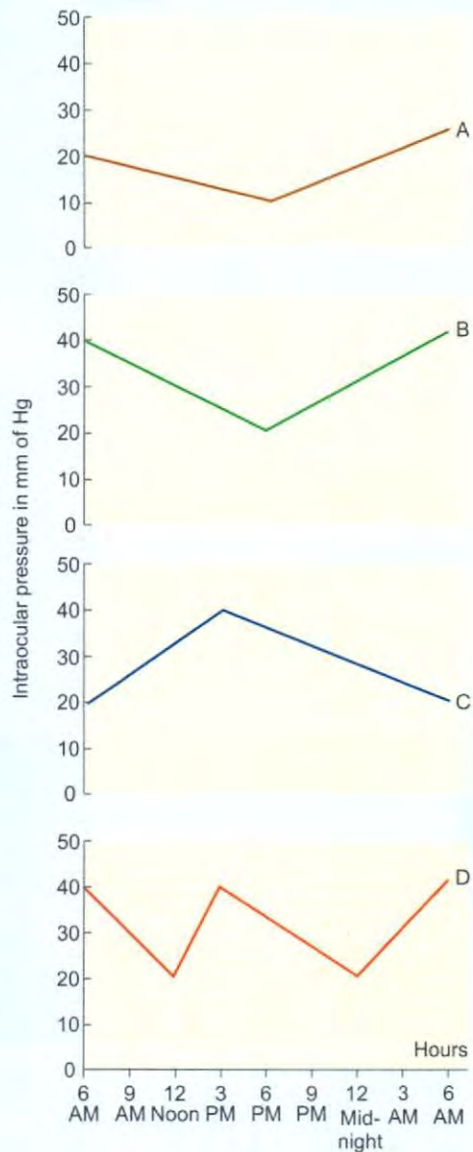
*A variation in IOP of over 5 mm Hg (Schiotz) is suspicious and over 8 mm of Hg is diagnostic of glaucoma.*

*In later stages, IOP is permanently raised above 21 mm of Hg and ranges between 30 and 45 mm of Hg.*

#### III. Glaucomatous optic nerve head changes

Optic disc changes, usually observed on routine fundus examination, provide an important clue for suspecting POAG. These are typically progressive, asymmetric and present a variety of characteristic clinical patterns. It is essential, therefore, to record the appearance of the nerve head in such a way that will accurately reveal subtle glaucomatous changes over the course of follow-up evaluation.

**Examination techniques.** Careful fundus examination should be performed to detect optic disc changes. Best technique is to have a stereoscopic view of the

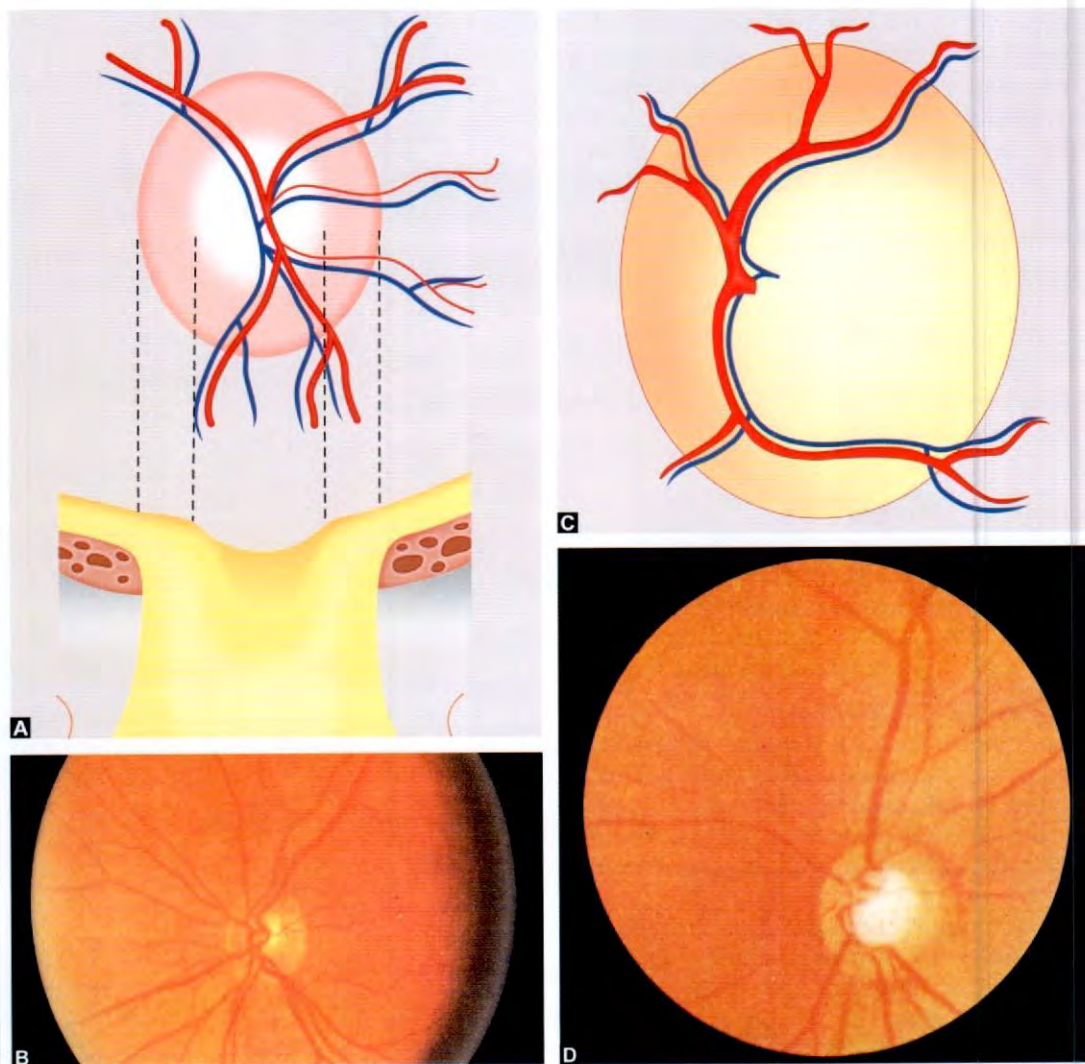


**Fig. 10.9** Patterns of diurnal variations of IOP: A, Normal slight morning rise; B, Morning rise seen in 20% cases of POAG; C, Afternoon rise seen in 25% cases of POAG; D, Biphasic variation seen in 55% cases of POAG

optic disc with contact or noncontact lenses on slit-lamp biomicroscopic examination. Non-contact lenses (+78D or +90D) are more convenient and are thus widely used.

**Recording and documentation techniques** include serial hand drawings, photography and photogrammetry. Confocal scanning laser topography (CSLT), i.e. Heidelberg retinal tomograph (HRT) is an accurate and sensitive method for this purpose. Other advanced imaging techniques include optical





**Fig. 10.10** Normal optic disc: A, Diagrammatic depiction; B, Fundus photograph and optic disc showing early glaucomatous changes: C, Diagrammatic depiction; D, Fundus photograph)

coherence tomography (OCT) and scanning laser polarimetry, i.e. nerve fibre analyser (NFA).

**Glaucomatous changes in the optic disc** can be described as early changes, advanced changes and glaucomatous optic atrophy. Figs 10.10A and B show normal optic disc configuration.

**A. Early glaucomatous changes** (Figs 10.10C and D) should be suspected to exist if fundus examination reveals one or more of the following signs:

- **Vertically oval cup** due to selective loss of neural rim tissue in the inferior and superior poles.
- **Asymmetry of the cups.** A difference of more than 0.2 between two eyes is significant.
- **Large cup,** with cup: disc ratio  $>0.4$  (normal cup size is 0.3 to 0.4) may occur due to concentric expansion.
- **Splinter haemorrhages** present on or near the optic disc margin.

- **Pallor areas** on the disc.
- **Atrophy of retinal nerve fibre layer (RNFL)** which may be seen with red free light.
- **RNFL defects** appear as wedge-shaped dark areas arising from optic nerve head. These are an early indicator of glaucomatous damage.

**B. Advanced glaucomatous changes in the optic disc** include:

- **Marked cupping** (cup size 0.7 to 0.9), excavation may even reach the disc margin, the sides are steep and not shelving (c.f. deep physiological cup) (Figs 10.11A and B) which are well-delineated on OCT examination (Fig. 10.11C).
- **Thinning of neuro-retinal rim (NRR)** which occurs in advanced cases is seen as a crescentic shadow adjacent to the disc margin. Normally, the thickest to thinnest parts of the neuro-retinal rim of the

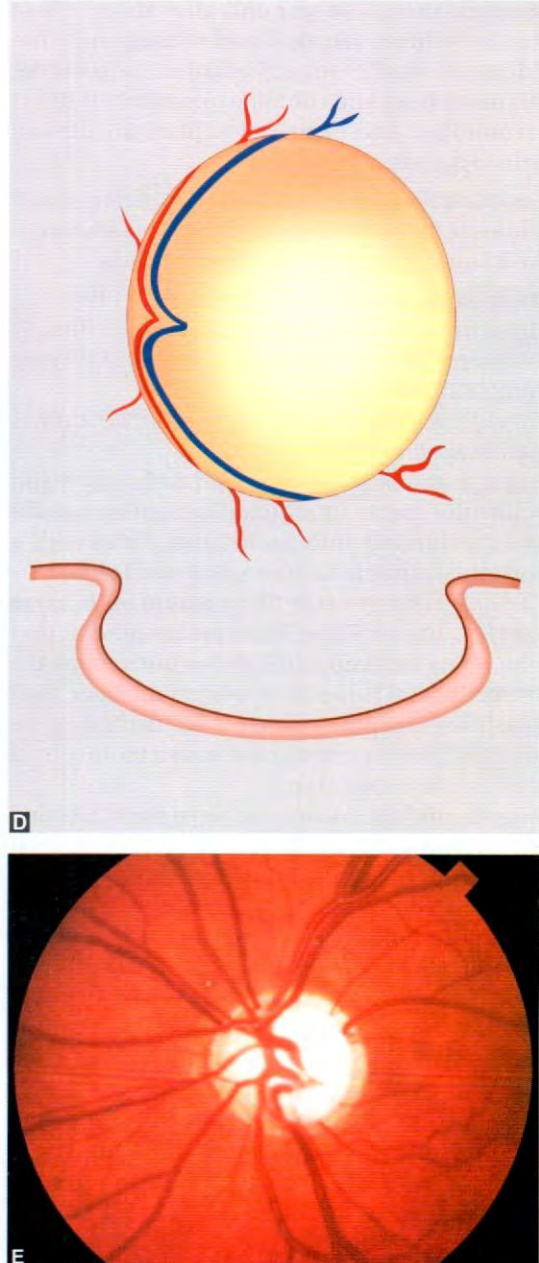
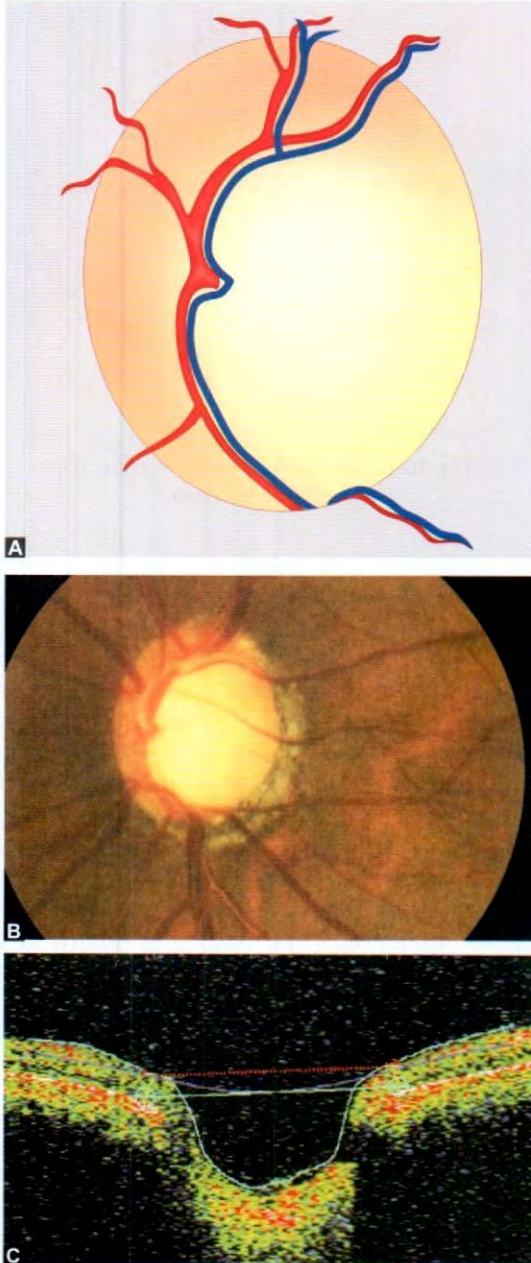


optic disc are inferior, superior, nasal and temporal (ISNT rule). Any variation from this helps to detect glaucoma. Superior or inferior notching of the rim specially up to disc margin is pathognomic.

- **Nasal shifting of retinal vessels** which have the appearance of being broken off at the margin is an important sign (*Bayonetting sign*). When the edges overhang, the course of the vessels as they climb the sides of the cup is hidden ( Figs 10.11A and B).

- **Pulsations of the retinal arterioles** may be seen at the disc margin (a pathognomic sign of glaucoma), when IOP is very high.
- **Lamellar dot sign**, i.e. become the pores in the lamina cribrosa become slit-shaped and are visible up to the margin of the disc.

**C. Glaucomatous optic atrophy.** As the damage progresses, all the neural tissue of the disc is destroyed and the optic nerve head appears white and deeply excavated ( Figs 10.11D and E).



**Fig. 10.11** Optic disc showing advanced glaucomatous changes: A, Diagrammatic depiction; B, Fundus photograph; C, OCT picture; D and E, Diagrammatic depiction and fundus photograph of glaucomatous optic atrophy



**Pathophysiology of disc changes.** Both mechanical and vascular factors play a role in the cupping of the disc.

**Mechanical effect** of raised IOP forces the lamina cribrosa backwards and squeezes the nerve fibres within its meshes to disturb axoplasmic flow.

**Vascular factors** contribute in ischaemic atrophy of the nerve fibres without corresponding increase of supporting glial tissue. As a result, large caverns or lacunae are formed (*cavernous optic atrophy*).

#### IV. Visual field defects

**Visual field defects** appear only after about 40% of axons have been damaged and subsequently the field defects usually run parallel to the changes at the optic nerve head and continue to progress if IOP is not controlled. These can be described as early and late field defects.

**Anatomical basis of field defects.** For better understanding of the actual field defects, it is mandatory to have a knowledge of their anatomical basis.

##### A. Distribution of retinal nerve fibres (Fig. 10.12).

- Fibres from nasal half of the retina come directly to the optic disc as superior and inferior radiating fibres (SRF and IRF).
- Fibres from the macular area come horizontally as papillomacular bundle (PMB).
- Fibres from the temporal retina arch above and below the macula and papillomacular bundle as superior and inferior arcuate fibres with a horizontal raphe in between (SAF and IAF).

**B. Arrangement of nerve fibres within optic nerve head** (Fig. 10.13): Those from the peripheral part of the retina lie deep in the retina but occupy the most peripheral (superficial) part of the optic disc. While fibres originating closer to the nerve head lie superficially in the retina and occupy a more central (deep) portion of the disc.

- Superior and inferior arcuate nerve fibres (SAF and IAF) occupy the superior and inferior temporal portions of optic nerve head, respectively, and are most sensitive to glaucomatous damage; accounting for the early loss in the corresponding regions of the visual field.
- Macular fibres are most resistant to the glaucomatous damage and explain the retention of the central vision till end.

**Nomenclature of glaucomatous field defects.** Visual field defects in glaucoma are initially observed in Bjerrum's area (10–20 degrees from fixation) and correlate with optic disc changes. The natural history of the progressive glaucomatous field loss, more or less, takes the following sequence:

**1. Isopter contraction.** It refers to mild generalised constriction of central as well as peripheral field. It is

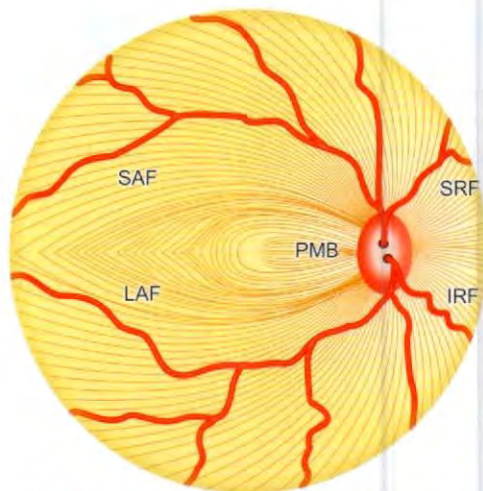


Fig. 10.12 Distribution of retinal nerve fibres



Fig. 10.13 Arrangement of nerve fibres within optic nerve head

the earliest visual field defect occurring in glaucoma. However, it is of limited diagnostic value, as it may also occur in many other conditions.

**2. Baring of blind spot.** It is also considered to be an early glaucomatous change, but is very nonspecific and thus of limited diagnostic value. Baring of the blind spot means exclusion of the blind spot from the central field due to inward curve of the outer boundary of 30° central field (Fig. 10.14A).

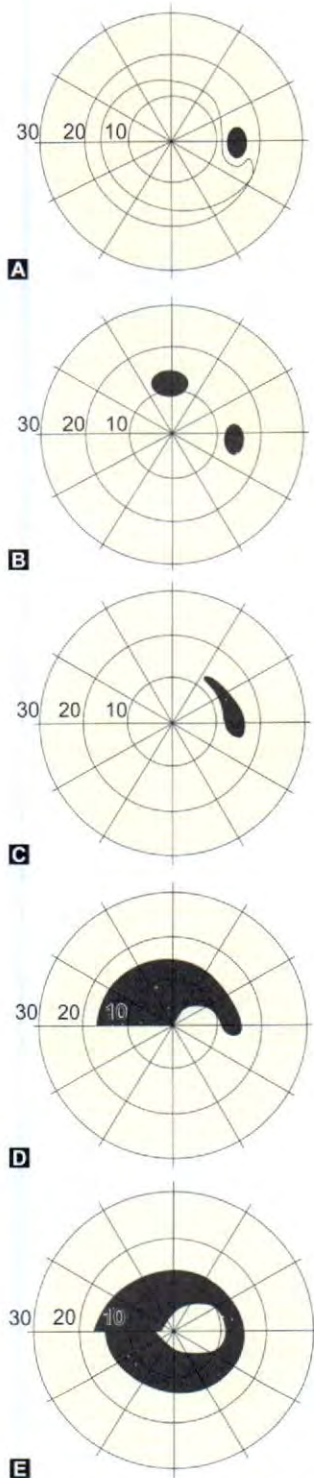
**3. Small wing-shaped paracentral scotoma** (Fig. 10.14B). It is the earliest clinically significant field defect. It may appear either below or above the blind spot in Bjerrum's area (an arcuate area extending above and below the blind spot between 10° and 20° of fixation point).

**4. Seidel's scotoma.** With the passage of time paracentral scotoma joins the blind spot to form a sickle-shaped scotoma known as Seidel's scotoma (Fig. 10.14C).

**5. Arcuate or Bjerrum's scotoma.** It is formed at a later stage by the extension of Seidel's scotoma in an area either above or below the fixation point to reach the horizontal line (Fig. 10.14D). Damage to the adjacent fibres causes a peripheral breakthrough.

**6. Ring or double arcuate scotoma.** It develops when the two arcuate scotomas join together (Fig. 10.14E).





**Fig. 10.14** Field defects in POAG: A, Baring of blind spot; B, Superior paracentral scotoma; C, Seidel's scotoma; D, Bjerrum's scotoma; E, Double arcuate scotoma and Roenne's central nasal step

**7. Roenne's central nasal step.** It is created when the two arcuate scotomas run in different arcs and meet to form a sharp right-angled defect at the horizontal meridian (Fig. 10.14E).

**8. Peripheral field defects.** These appear sometimes at an early stage and sometimes only late in the disease. The peripheral nasal step of Roenne's results from unequal contraction of the peripheral isopter.

**9. Advanced glaucomatous field defects.** The visual field loss gradually spreads centrally as well as peripherally, and eventually only a small island of central vision (*tubular vision*) and an accompanying temporal island are left. With the continued damage, these islands of vision also progressively diminish in size until the tiny central island is totally extinguished. The *temporal island of the vision* is more resistant and is lost in the end leaving the patient with no light perception.

**Diagnosis of glaucoma field defects on Humphrey field Analyser (HFA) single field printout.** Glaucomatous field defects should always be interpreted in conjunction with clinical features (IOP and optic disc changes). Further, before final interpretation, the fields must be tested twice, as there is often a significant improvement in the field when plotted second time (because patients become more familiar with the machine and test process).

**Assessing visual field progression in glaucoma.** Progression in visual defects can be judged by any of the following methods:

- *Comparing individual single field printouts* obtained over a period of time.
- *Overview printout*, in which up to 16 previously tested visual fields can be shown in a single printout without any statistical interpretation.
- *Progression analysis software* (G PA in HFA machines and Peritrend in Octopus perimeter) is now available for statistical analysis of progression in the visual field defects.
- *Visual field index (VFI)*, is a new measure which uses regression to offer a trend-based analysis of the speed of visual field loss. In it a scale of 0 to 100, i.e. complete loss of the field to normal full field is generated to grade the field loss.

#### Ocular associations

POAG may sometimes be associated with high myopia, Fuchs' endothelial dystrophy, retinitis pigmentosa, central retinal vein occlusion and primary retinal detachment.

#### ■ INVESTIGATIONS

**1. Tonometry.** Applanation tonometry should be preferred over Schiottz tonometry (See page 530).



**2. Central corneal thickness (CCT)** measurement is essential in the workup for glaucoma since a thinner cornea underestimates and a thicker cornea overestimates the IOP on applanation tonometry. A low CCT (<545 microns) is an independent risk factor for conversion of ocular hypertension to POAG. It has been suggested that a correction factor should be applied to the IOP readings in patients with CCT less than 545 microns and more than 600 microns.

**3. Diurnal variation test** is especially useful in detection of early cases (See page 237).

**4. Gonioscopy.** It reveals a wide open angle of anterior chamber. Its primary importance in POAG is to rule out other forms of glaucoma (For details, See pages 226 and 589).

**5. Documentation of optic disc changes** is of utmost importance (See page 237).

**6. Slit-lamp examination** of anterior segment to rule out causes of secondary open-angle glaucoma.

**7. Perimetry** to detect the visual field defects.

**8. Nerve fibre layer analyzer (NFLA)** is a recently introduced device which helps in detecting the glaucomatous damage to the retinal nerve fibres before the appearance of actual visual field changes and/or optic disc changes.

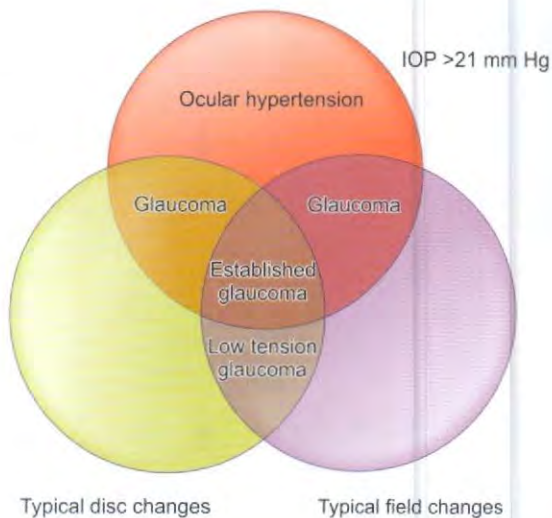
**9. Provocative tests** are required in border-line cases. The test commonly performed is water drinking test. Other provocative tests not frequently performed include combined water drinking and tonography, bulbar pressure test, prescoline test and caffeine test.

**Water drinking test.** It is based on the theory that glaucomatous eyes have a greater response to water drinking. In it after an 8 hours fast, baseline IOP is noted and the patient is asked to drink one litre of water, following which IOP is noted every 15 minutes for 1 hour. The maximum rise in IOP occurs in 15–30 minutes and returns to baseline level after 60 minutes in both normal and the glaucomatous eyes. A rise of 8 mm of Hg or more is said to be diagnostic of POAG.

## ■ DIAGNOSIS

Depending upon the level of intraocular pressure (IOP), glaucomatous cupping of the optic disc and the visual field changes (Fig. 10.15) the patients are assigned to one of the following diagnostic entities:

**1. Primary open-angle glaucoma (POAG).** Characteristically POAG is labelled when raised IOP (>21 mm of Hg) is associated with definite glaucomatous optic disc cupping and visual field changes.



**Fig. 10.15** Triad of abnormalities in disc, field and intra-ocular pressure (IOP) for the diagnosis of glaucoma

However, patients with raised IOP and either typical field defects or disc changes are also labelled as having POAG.

**2. Ocular hypertension.** This term is used when a patient has an IOP constantly more than 21 mm of Hg but no optic disc and visual field changes (for details, See page 245).

**3. Normal tension glaucoma (NTG) or low tension glaucoma (LTG)** is diagnosed when typical glaucomatous disc cupping with or without visual field changes is associated with an intraocular pressure constantly below 21 mm of Hg (for details, See pages 245–246).

## ■ MANAGEMENT

**AIM of treatment** is to lower intraocular pressure to a level where (further) visual loss does not occur. Management of glaucoma thus requires careful and regular periodic supervision by an ophthalmologist. Therefore, it is important to perform a good baseline examination with which future progress can be compared.

**Therapeutic choices** include:

- Medical therapy,
- Argon or diode laser trabeculoplasty, and
- Filtration surgery.

### A. Medical therapy

The initial therapy of POAG is still medical, with antiglaucoma drugs and surgery is considered as the last resort.



### Antiglaucoma drugs

**1. Prostaglandin analogues.** These decrease the IOP by increasing the uveoscleral outflow of aqueous. Presently, a prostaglandin analogue is being considered the drug of first choice for the treatment of POAG (provided patient can afford to buy it). Further, these form a very good adjunctive drug to beta-blockers, dorzolamide and even pilocarpine when additional therapy is indicated. The available preparations include:

- *Latanoprost* (0.005%) to be used HS,
- *Travoprost* (0.004%) to be used HS,
- *Bimatoprost* (0.03%, a prostamide) to be used HS,
- *Tafuprost* (0.015%), to be used HS, is the only preservative free prostaglandin analogue and
- *Unoprostone* (0.15%) to be used BID.

**2. Topical beta-blockers** are being recommended as the first drug of choice for medical therapy of POAG in poor and average income patients. These lower IOP by reducing the aqueous secretion due to their effect on beta-2 receptors in the ciliary processes.

**Preparations.** In terms of effectiveness, there is little difference between various beta-blockers. However, each offers a slight advantage over the other, which may help in choosing the particular medication as follows:

- *Timolol maleate*, a non-selective beta-blocker (0.25, 0.5%: 1–2 times/day), is most popular as initial therapy. However, it should not be used in patients having associated bronchial asthma and/or heart blocks.
- *Betaxolol* (0.25%: 2 times/day). Being a selective beta-1 blocker it is preferred as initial therapy in patients with asthma and other pulmonary problems.
- *Levobunolol* (0.25, 0.5%: 1–2 times/day). Its action lasts the longest and so is more reliable for once a day use than timolol.
- *Carteolol* (1%: 1–2 times/day). It raises triglycerides and lowers high density lipoproteins the least. Therefore, it is the best choice in patients with POAG having associated hyperlipidemias or atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease.

**3. Adrenergic drugs.** Role in POAG is as follows:

- Epinephrine hydrochloride* (0.5, 1, 2%: 1–2 times/day) and *dipivefrin hydrochloride* (0.1%: 1–2 times/day). These drugs lower the IOP by increasing aqueous outflow by stimulating alpha receptors in the aqueous outflow system. These are characterized by a high allergic reaction rate. Their long-term use has also been recognized as a risk factor for failure of filtration glaucoma surgery.

For these reasons, epinephrine compounds are no longer being used as first line or second line drug. However, dipivefrin may be combined with beta-blockers in patients where other drugs are contraindicated.

- Brimonidine* (0.2%: 2 times/day). It is a selective alpha-2-adrenergic agonist and lowers IOP by decreasing aqueous production and also by increasing uveo-scleral outflow. Because of increased allergic reactions and tachyphylaxis rates, it is not considered the drug of first choice in POAG. It is used as second drug of choice and also for combination therapy with other drugs. Its peak action is achieved in about 2 hours and, therefore, is used perioperatively to prevent IOP spikes postoperatively.

### 4. Carbonic anhydrase inhibitor

#### Topical carbonic anhydrase inhibitors

**Mechanism of action:** *Dorzolamide* 2%: 2–3 times/day or *Brinzolamide* 1%, BD, lower IOP by decreasing aqueous production by altering ion transport along the ciliary process epithelium. These have replaced pilocarpine as the second line of drug and even as an adjunct drug.

**Oral Carbonic anhydrase inhibitor** Acetazolamide and methazolamide are not recommended for long-term use because of their side-effects. However, Tab. acetazolamide 250 mg tds may be added to control IOP for short term. Sustained release tablets are also available now with once a day dose.

**5. Miotics, Pilocarpine** (1, 2, 4%: 3–4 times/day). It is a very effective drug and had remained as the sheet anchor in the medical management of POAG for a long time. However, presently it is *not being preferred* as the first drug of choice or even as second choice. It is because of the fact that in younger patients it causes problems due to spasm of accommodation and miosis. Most, but not all, older patients tolerate pilocarpine very well; however, axial lenticular opacities when present preclude its use in many such patients. Therefore, presently pilocarpine is being considered only as an adjunctive therapy where other combinations fail and as second choice in poor patients.

■ **Mechanism of action.** Pilocarpine contracts longitudinal muscle of ciliary body and opens spaces in trabecular meshwork, thereby mechanically increasing aqueous outflow.

**6. Hyperosmotic agents** like mannitol 1–2 gm/kg body weight may be used initially when patients present with very high IOP (>30 mm Hg).

**7. Neuroprotective agents.** Neuroprotection is an IOP independent method of treating the retinal ganglion



cells (RGCs) that are damaged in glaucoma. Some currently available neuroprotective agents have shown effects in vitro and in animal models, however, results in human clinical trials are either lacking or inconclusive.

**Note.** Further details of antiglaucoma drugs are described on pages 469-473.

**Approach to treatment of POAG**

Once diagnosed, approach to treatment of POAG should include:

- Record of baseline data and grading of severity of glaucoma
- Identification of target intraocular pressure
- Initiation of medical therapy
- Monitoring of medical therapy.

**1. Record of baseline data and grading of severity of glaucoma should be done in the beginning.**

**Record of baseline data.** Baseline data should include: visual acuity, slit lamp examination of anterior segment, tonometry with applanation tonometer, measurement of central corneal thickness, optic disc evaluation, gonioscopy and visual field charting.

**Grading.** American Academy of Ophthalmology (AAO) grades severity of glaucoma damage into mild, moderate and severe (Table 10.2).

**2. Identification of target pressure.** From the baseline evaluation data a ‘target pressure’ (below which glaucomatous damage is not likely to progress) should be identified for each patient. The target pressure is identified taking into account the severity of existing damage, the level of IOP, age, and general health of the patient. Although, it is not possible to predict the safe level of IOP, however, progression is uncommon with following level of target pressure:

- Mild glaucoma: <18 mm Hg
- Moderate glaucoma <16 mm Hg
- Severe glaucoma <14 mm Hg

**Table 10.2** Severity of glaucoma damage

| Degree   | Description                                                                                             |
|----------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Mild     | Characteristic optic-nerve head abnormalities are consistent with glaucoma but with normal visual field |
| Moderate | Visual-field abnormalities in one hemifield but not within 5 degrees of fixation                        |
| Severe   | Visual-field abnormalities in both hemifields and within 5 degrees of fixation                          |

**3. Initiation of medical therapy** is done as below:

**I. Monotherapy.** Should be initiated with topical prostaglandins (latanoprost, bimatoprost or travoprost) or topical beta blocker (0.5% timolol or betaxolol).

IOP should be checked after 15 days. If the drug chosen is ineffective or intolerable it should be replaced by drug of second choice.

**II. Combination topical therapy.** If one drug is not effective, then a combination of two drugs—one drug which decreases aqueous production (timolol or other beta blocker, or brimonidine or dorzolamide) and other drug which increase aqueous outflow (latanoprost or brimonidine or pilocarpine) may be used.

**4. Monitoring of therapy,** is most essential on regular follow-up by disc changes, field changes and tonometry. In the event of progress of glaucomatous damage in spite of IOP control the target pressure should be reset at a lower level.

**B. Laser trabeculoplasty**

Laser trabeculoplasty can be done using argon laser (ALT), or diode laser (DLT) and selective laser trabeculoplasty (SLT).

**Indications** include:

- When IOP is uncontrolled despite maximal tolerated medical therapy.
- As primary therapy where there is non-compliance to medical therapy.

**Technique and role of argon (ALT) or diode laser trabeculoplasty (DLT) in POAG.** It has an additive effect to medical therapy. Its hypotensive effect is caused by increasing outflow facility, possibly by producing collagen shrinkage on the inner aspect of the trabecular meshwork and opening the intratrabecular spaces. It has been shown to lower IOP by 8–10 mm of Hg in patients on medical therapy and by 12–16 mm in patients who are not receiving medical treatment.

**Treatment regime** usually employed consists of 50 spots on the anterior half of the trabecular meshwork over 180°.

**Complications** include:

- **Transient acute rise of IOP,** which can be prevented by pretreatment with apraclonidine (an alpha agonist) and/or acetazolamide; and
- **Transient inflammation** which can be lessened by use of topical steroids for 3–4 days.
- **Other complications,** seen less commonly, are haemorrhage, uveitis, peripheral anterior synechiae and reduced accommodation.



**Selective laser trabeculoplasty (SLT)**, based on the principle of selective photothermolysis, targets selectively pigmented trabecular meshwork (TM) cells without causing thermal or collateral damage to non-pigmented cells or structures unlike ALT or DLT. SLT is performed using Q-switched frequency doubled 532 nm Nd:YAG laser with a pulse duration of 3 ms, a spot size of 400 microns and energy setting of 0.8 mJ. Pressure lowering effect of SLT is similar to ALT with the advantage of not causing scarring and damage to TM. Further, SLT can be used in patients treated with ALT. Effect of SLT usually lasts for 3–5 years, after which it need to be repeated.

### C. Surgical therapy

#### Indications

1. *Uncontrolled glaucoma* despite maximal medical therapy and laser trabeculoplasty.
2. *Noncompliance* of medical therapy and non-availability of ALT/SLT.
3. *Failure of medical therapy* and unsuitable for ALT either due to lack of cooperation or inability to visualize the trabeculum.
4. *Eyes with advanced disease*, i.e. having very high IOP, advanced cupping and advanced field loss should be treated with filtration surgery as primary line of management.

#### Types of surgery

Surgical treatment of POAG primarily consists of a fistulizing (filtration) surgery which provides a new channel for aqueous outflow and successfully controls the IOP (below 21 mm of Hg).

- *Trabeculectomy* is the most frequently performed filtration surgery nowadays.
- *Details of filtration operations* are described on page 260.

## OCULAR HYPERTENSION

### Definition

**Ocular hypertension** is labelled when a patient has an IOP constantly more than 21 mm of Hg but no optic disc and visual field changes. These patients should be carefully monitored by an ophthalmologist and should be treated as cases of POAG in the presence of high risk factors.

**Glaucoma suspect** is defined as an adult having normal open angle on gonioscopy and

- *Elevated IOP*, consistently more than 21 mm of Hg by applanation tonometry, or
- *Suspicious disc changes* in the form of asymmetric cup-disc ratio (difference  $>0.2$ ), notching, or narrowing of neuroretinal rim, or a disc haemorrhage.

### Risk factors for development of POAG among individuals with ocular hypertension

**High-risk factors for development of POAG** reported by ocular hypertension study (OHTS) and European Glaucoma Prevention Study (EGPS) are;

- *IOP* consistently  $>30$  mm Hg,
- *Central corneal thickness*  $<550$   $\mu\text{m}$ ,
- *Vertical cup disc ratio* of more than 0.7,
- Increased age,
- *Increased pattern standard deviation* (PSD) on Humphrey visual field test, and
- *Disc haemorrhages*, i.e. splinter haemorrhages over or near the disc.

**Other risk factors reported** are:

- *Family history* of glaucoma or known genetic predisposition.
- *Fellow eye* of the unilateral POAG.
- *Ocular characteristics* such as suspicious disc appearance, myopia, positive diurnal variation, steroid responder, and low optic nerve perfusion pressure.
- *Systemic risk factors* such as diabetes mellitus, sleep apnea, hypertension, cardiovascular disease, hypothyroidism, migrainous headache and vasospasm.

**Note.** The risk of developing POAG cannot be predicted from a single risk factor. The multivariate analysis of the risk factors is more useful in predicting the development of POAG in glaucoma suspects.

### Treatment

- *Patients with high-risk factors* should be treated as POAG (See page 242). The aim should be to reduce IOP by 20%.
- *Patients with no high-risk factor* should be annually followed by examination of optic disc, perimetry and record of IOP. Treatment is not required till glaucomatous damage is documented.

## NORMAL TENSION GLAUCOMA

### Definition and prevalence

The term normal tension glaucoma (NTG), also referred to as low tension glaucoma, is labelled when typical glaucomatous disc changes and visual field defects are associated with an intraocular pressure (IOP) constantly below 21 mm of Hg. Characteristically, the angle of anterior chamber is open on gonioscopy and there is no secondary cause for glaucomatous disc changes. NTG accounts for 16% of all cases of POAG and its prevalence above the age of 40 years is 0.2%.



### Etiopathogenesis

NTG is believed to result from chronic low vascular perfusion, which makes the optic nerve head susceptible to normal IOP. This view is supported by following associations which are more common in NTG than in POAG:

- *Raynaud phenomenon*, i.e. peripheral vascular spasm on cooling,
- *Migraine*,
- *Nocturnal systemic hypotension* and overtreated systemic hypertension.
- *Reduced blood flow velocity* in the ophthalmic artery (as revealed on transcranial Doppler ultrasonography).

### Clinical features

**Intraocular pressure (IOP)** is consistently lower than 21 mm of Hg, but is usually on the higher side of normal range.

**Optic disc changes** are similar to POAG with following special features:

- *Thinning of neuroretinal rim* is more significant.
- *Splinter haemorrhages* at disc are more frequent.
- *Peripapillary atrophic changes* are more prevalent.

**Visual field defects** are essentially similar to POAG, but tend to be more deeper, steeper, more localized and closure to fixation point.

**Characteristic associations** in the form of ocular vascular abnormalities and systemic vascular and hematological abnormalities (as mentioned in etiopathogenesis) may be detected.

### Differential diagnosis

#### I. High pressure glaucomas

**1. POAG.** In early stages. POAG may present with normal IOP because of a wide diurnal variation. Diurnal variation test usually depicts IOP higher than 21 mm of Hg at some hours of the day in patients with POAG.

**2. Glaucoma with intermittent rise in IOP**, e.g. glaucomatocyclitic crisis and intermittent angle closure glaucoma.

**3. Previous episodes of glaucoma** which might have caused optic disc changes, field defects, and are now cured, e.g. corticosteroid induced glaucoma, uveitic glaucoma, and traumatic glaucoma.

#### II. Non-glaucomatous optic neuropathies

**1. Congenital optic disc anomalies** such as large optic disc pits or colobomas which may be mistaken for acquired glaucomatous damage. A careful examination should help in differentiation.

**2. Acquired optic neuropathies** such as compressive lesions of optic nerve, shock optic neuropathies,

anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy, traumatic optic neuropathy and optic neuropathy due to methyl alcohol poisoning.

### Treatment

**1. Medical treatment to lower IOP.** The aim of the treatment is to lower IOP by 30%, i.e. to achieve IOP levels of about 12–14 mm of Hg. Some important facts about medical treatment of NTG are:

- *Prostaglandin analogues*, e.g. latanoprost tend to have a greater ocular hypotensive effect in eyes with normal IOP and is thus the drug of choice.
- *Betaxolol* may also be considered because, in addition to lowering IOP, it also increases optic nerve blood flow.
- *Drugs with neuroprotective effect* like brimonidine may be preferred.

**Note.** Other beta blockers and adrenergic drugs (such as dipivefrine) should better be avoided (as these cause nocturnal systemic hypotension and are likely to affect adversely the optic nerve perfusion).

**2. Systemic calcium channel blockers** (e.g. nifedipine) may be useful in patients with confirmed peripheral vasospasm.

**3. Monitoring of systemic blood pressure** should be done for 24 hours. If nocturnal dip is detected, it may be necessary to avoid night dose of anti-hypertensive medication.

**4. Trabeculectomy** may be considered when progressive field loss occurs despite IOP in lower teens.

## PRIMARY ANGLE-CLOSURE DISEASE

### ■ TERMINOLOGY

Since in the new classification, described by 'Association of International Glaucoma Societies' (AIGS), in 2006, the word glaucoma is used only when the optic disc and visual field changes are present, so the term '*primary angle closure disease*' should replace the term '*primary angle closure glaucoma*'. **Primary angle closure disease**, is characterised by apposition of peripheral iris against the trabecular meshwork (TM) resulting in obstruction of aqueous outflow by closure of an already narrow angle of the anterior chamber. The condition is not associated with any other ocular and systemic abnormalities.

### ■ EPIDEMIOLOGY

Salient points regarding epidemiology of primary angle closure disease as per International Society of Geographical and Epidemiological Ophthalmology (ISGEO) are as below:



1. For every 10 occludable angles (PAC suspects) seen there is only one case of PACG. Thus, most occludable eyes do not get glaucoma; and so does not justify prophylactic Laser peripheral iridotomy (LPI) in all such cases.
2. Chronic PACG (asymptomatic) is more common than acute PACG (symptomatic) (3:1); meaning thereby that most patients do not know they have disease; justifying need for glaucoma screening.
3. There is great ethnic variability in the prevalence of PACG. The ratio of POAG versus PACG reported for different ethnic groups is as below:
 

| Ethnic group                          | POAG : PACG |
|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| Europeans, and Africans and Hispanics | : 5 : 1     |
| Urban Chinese                         | : 1 : 2     |
| Mongolian                             | : 1 : 3     |
| Indian                                | : 1 : 1     |
4. Major cause of world glaucoma blindness is PACG.

## ■ ETIOPATHOGENESIS

Etiopathogenesis of primary angle closure disease can be discussed as below:

- A. Predisposing risk factors
- B. Pathogenesis of rise in IOP

### A. Predisposing risk factors

#### 1. Demographic risk factors

1. Age. PACG with pupillary block occurs with greatest frequency in 6th and 7th decades of life.
2. Gender. Male to Female ratio is 1:3.
3. Race. In Caucasians, PACG accounts for about 6% of all glaucomas and presents in sixth to seventh decade. It is more common in South-East Asians, Chinese and Eskimos but uncommon in Blacks. In Asians, it presents in 5th to 6th decade and accounts for 50% of primary adult glaucomas in this ethnic group.

#### II. Anatomical and ocular risk factors

Eyes anatomically predisposed to develop primary angle-closure glaucoma (PACG) include:

- Hypermetropic eyes with shallow anterior chamber and short axial length.
- Eyes in which iris-lens diaphragm is placed anteriorly.
- Eyes with narrow angle of anterior chamber, which may be due to small eyeball, relatively large size of the lens and smaller diameter of the cornea or bigger size of the ciliary body or more anterior insertion of the iris on the ciliary body.
- Plateau iris configuration.
- Heredity. Most cases of PACG with pupillary block are sporadic in nature. However, predisposing anatomical factors, i.e. shallow anterior chamber

and narrow angles have been reported as more common in first degree relatives of the patients.

### B. Pathomechanisms of 'rise in intraocular' pressure

Three pathomechanisms implicated in the causation of rise in IOP of the eyes at risk of PACG are:

- Pupillary block mechanism,
- Plateau iris configuration and syndrome, and
- Phacomorphic mechanism.

#### 1. Pupillary block mechanism

Pupillary block mechanism is responsible for rise in IOP in most (70%) of the predisposed patients.

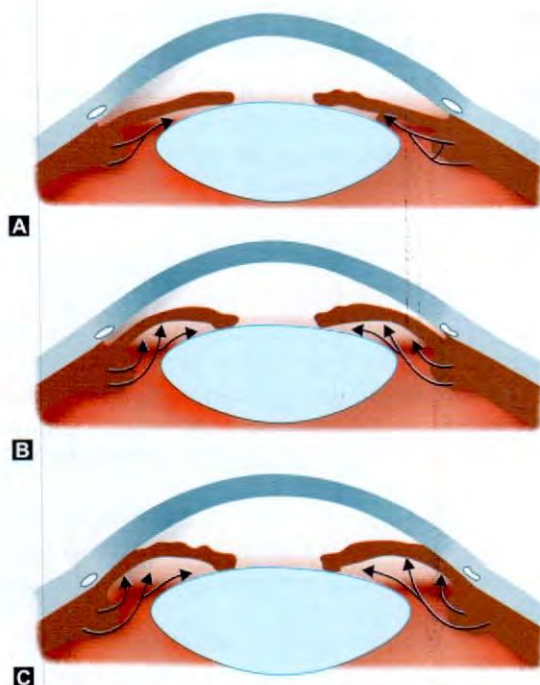
**Precipitating factors.** In a predisposed patient with occludable angles the pupillary block causing angle closure is precipitated by the following factors:

- *Physiological mydriasis*, e.g. while reading in dim illumination, watching television or cinema in a darkened room, during anxiety and emotional stress (sympathetic overactivity).
- *Pharmacological mydriasis* is well documented to precipitate an attack of acute angle closure. Medications other than topical mydriatics (e.g. phenylephrine, tropicamide, cyclopentolate, homatropine and atropine) reported to precipitate the attack include tranquilizers, bronchodilators, antidepressants, vasoconstrictors including common nasal decongestants, antimalaria agents and antispasmodics.
- *Pharmacological miosis* induced by drugs like echothiophate and pilocarpine is also reported to precipitate an attack of acute PAC.
- *Valsalva manoeuvre* is reported to precipitate angle closure in predisposed individuals.

**Mechanism of rise in IOP after mydriasis.** The probable sequence of events resulting in rise of IOP in an anatomically predisposed eye is as follows:

First of all due to the effect of precipitating factors there occurs *mid dilatation* of the pupil which increases the amount of apposition between iris and anteriorly placed lens with a considerable pressure resulting in *relative pupil block* (Fig. 10.16A). Consequently, the aqueous collects in the posterior chamber and pushes the peripheral flaccid iris anteriorly (*Iris bombe*) (Fig. 10.16B), resulting in *appositional angle closure* due to iridocorneal contact (Fig. 10.16C). Eventually, there occurs rise in IOP which is transient to begin with. But slowly the appositional angle closure is converted into *synechial angle closure* (due to formation of peripheral anterior synechiae) and an attack of rise in IOP may last long.





**Fig. 10.16 Mechanism of angle closure glaucoma:**  
A, Relative pupil block; B, Iris bombe formation;  
C, Appositional angle closure

In some cases, a mechanical occlusion of the angle by the iris is sufficient to block the drainage of aqueous. For this reason, the instillation of atropine in an eye with a narrow angle is dangerous, since it may precipitate an attack of raised IOP.

**Mechanism of rise in IOP after miosis.** The drugs that constrict pupil are also reported to increase pupillary block. Further these drugs also contract the ciliary muscles allowing the zonules to relax and the lens to move forward. Because of this reason, it is advisable to avoid miotics such as pilocarpine in the prevention of PACG in predisposed eyes (e.g. fellow eye of patient with acute attack).

## 2. Plateau iris configuration and syndrome

This mechanism is responsible for few (10%) atypical cases of acute angle closure glaucoma. Acute angle closure glaucoma associated with plateau iris is atypical in the patients that have normal central anterior chamber depth, flat iris plane and minimal pupillary block. It has also been referred in the literature as an *angle closure glaucoma without pupillary block*. The anterior chamber angle is closed by a pushing mechanism because of the anterior positioned ciliary processes displacing the peripheral iris anteriorly. Such a situation is called *plateau iris configuration* and iridotomy is sufficient to control IOP in such patients. *Plateau iris syndrome*

is labeled when acute angle closure glaucoma occurs either spontaneously or after pharmacological dilation, in spite of patent iridotomy. Such eyes are treated with miotics and laser peripheral iridoplasty to produce thinning of the peripheral iris.

## 3. Phacomorphic mechanism

Phacomorphic mechanism has now been included as one of the three basic PACG mechanisms, along with pupillary block and plateau iris. The abnormal lens may contribute by either causing pupillary block or by pushing the peripheral iris forward into the angle structures. Though the term phacomorphic glaucoma refers to an acute secondary angle closure glaucoma caused by the intumescent or other lens morphological abnormalities; but now UBM and OCT studies have shown that phacomorphic mechanism may be responsible for initiating acute primary angle closure glaucoma in predisposed patients (having occludable angle). This also forms the base of lens extraction as a treatment modality for acute primary angle closure glaucoma.

**Note.** In addition to meticulous gonioscopic examination, the high resolution ultrasonic biomicroscopy (UBM) examination and Anterior Segment OCT (AS-OCT) are very useful in understanding the pathogenesis of primary angle closure disease. These investigations are particularly useful in the documentation of plateau iris configuration, plateau iris syndrome, phacomorphic mechanism and post-peripheral iridectomy angle dynamics. Further, these investigations are also helpful in differentiating primary and secondary angle closure glaucoma.

## ■ CLASSIFICATION

### ISGEO Classification

World glaucoma experts under the auspices of the "Association of International Glaucoma Societies" (AIGS), now termed as 'International Society of Geographical and Epidemiological Ophthalmology' (ISGEO), in 2006 have proposed following 21st century consensus classification based on natural history (IOP measurements, gonioscopy, disc and visual field evaluation):

1. Primary Angle Closure Suspect (PACS),
2. Primary Angle Closure (PAC), and
3. Primary Angle Closure Glaucoma (PACG).

**Note.** In this newer classification, the word glaucoma is used only when the optic disc changes and field changes are present. Further, this classification is based only on the signs and has not taken into consideration the presenting symptoms.



### Traditional clinical classification

The old traditional clinical classification based on the clinical presenting symptoms is as below:

1. Latent primary angle-closure glaucoma,
2. Subacute (intermittent) primary angle-closure glaucoma,
3. Acute primary angle-closure glaucoma, and
4. Chronic primary angle-closure glaucoma.

### ■ CLINICAL PROFILE AND MANAGEMENT

Clinical profile of three stages of primary angle-closure disease described below is based on the integration of the new ISGEO classification (based on natural history) with traditional clinical classification (based on the presenting symptoms).

#### I. Primary Angle-Closure Suspect

*Primary angle-closure suspect (PACS)*, can be considered analogous to the term 'latent primary angle-closure glaucoma' of clinical classification.

#### Clinical features and diagnostic criteria

**Symptoms** are absent in this stage.

**Presenting situations** for diagnosis include:

- Suspicious clinical signs on routine ocular examination in patients coming for some other complaints.
- Fellow eye of the patients presenting with acute attack of PAC.
- Glaucoma screening programme.

**Suspicious clinical signs** noted on routine ocular examination include:

**1. Eclipse sign.** Eclipse sign, which indicates decreased axial anterior chamber depth, can be elicited by shining a penlight across the anterior chamber from the temporal side and noting a shadow on the nasal side (Fig. 10.17).

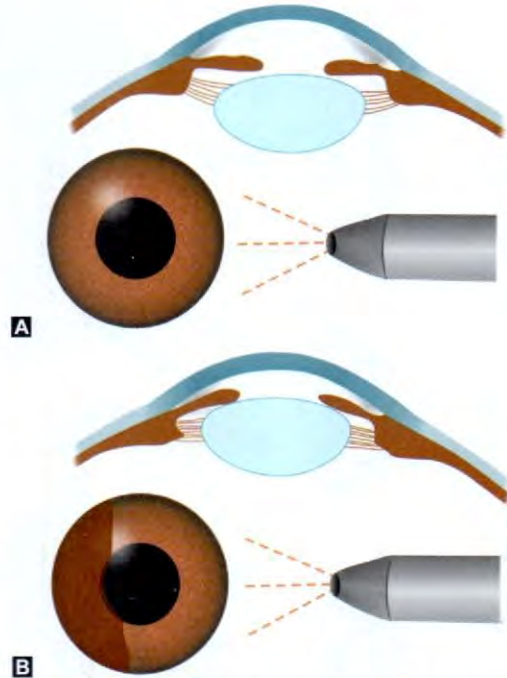
**2. Slit-lamp biomicroscopic signs** include:

- Decreased axial anterior chamber depth,
- Convex shaped iris lens diaphragm, and
- Close proximity of the iris to cornea in the periphery.

**3. Van Herick slit-lamp grading of the angle** may be used with a fair accuracy. Here, the peripheral anterior chamber depth (PACD) is compared to the adjacent corneal thickness (CT) and the presumed angle width is graded as follows (Fig. 10.18):

- **Grade 4** (Wide open angle): PACD = 3/4 to 1 CT
- **Grade 3** (Mild narrow angle): PACD = 1/4 to 1/2 CT
- **Grade 2** (Moderate narrow angle): PACD = 1/4 CT
- **Grade 1** (Extremely narrow angle): PACD < 1/4 CT
- **Grade 0** (closed angle): PACD = Nil

**Diagnostic tests** recommended to confirm diagnosis include:



**Fig. 10.17** Estimation of anterior chamber depth by oblique illumination: A, Normal; B, Shallow

- IOP measurement,
- Gonioscopy,
- Ultrasonic biomicroscopy (UBM),
- Anterior segment OCT,
- Optic disc evaluation, and
- Visual field analysis.

**Diagnostic criteria for PAC suspect** as per ISGEO classification includes:

- *Gonioscopy* should reveal irido-trabecular contact in greater than 270° angle and no peripheral anterior synechia (PAS absent).
- *IOP* should be normal.
- *Optic disc* should show no glaucomatous change.
- *Visual fields* should be normal.

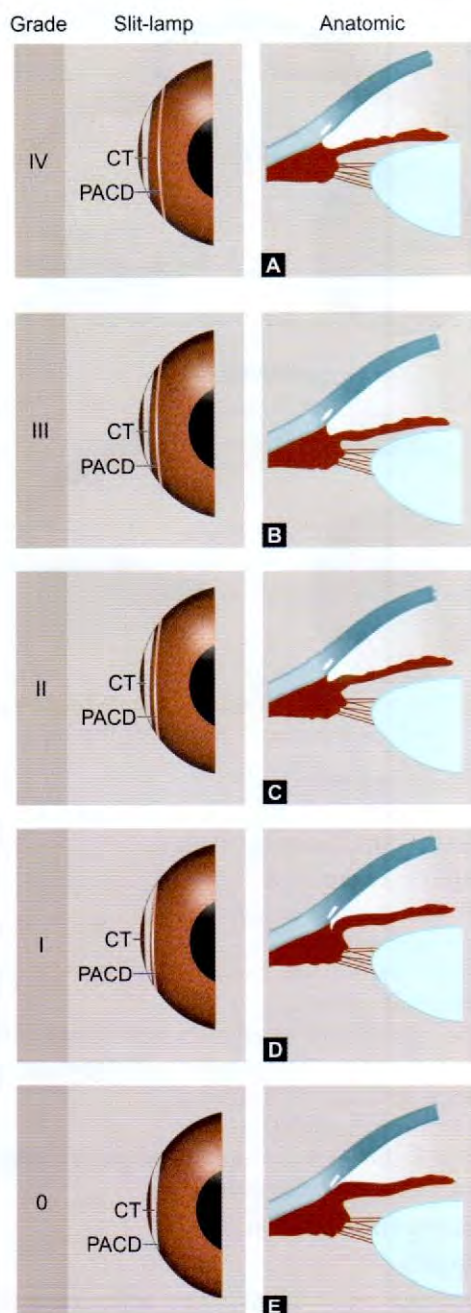
**Impression:** The angle is at risk.

#### Management

**Provocative tests** designed to precipitate closure of the angle though not popular presently but can be performed in patients with PAC suspect. These tests may be performed in the ophthalmologist's office, where it can be treated promptly.

**1. Prone-darkroom test** was considered the most popular and best physiological provocative test. In this test, baseline IOP is recorded and patient is made to lie prone in a darkroom for 1 hour. He must remain awake so that pupils remain dilated. After 1 hour, the IOP is again measured. An increase in IOP of more than 8 mm Hg is considered diagnostic of PAC suspect.





**Fig. 10.18** Van Herick method of slit-lamp grading of angle width: A, Grade IV; B, Grade III; C, Grade II; and D, Grade I; E, Grade 0. PACD = Peripheral anterior chamber depth; CT = Corneal thickeners

**2. Mydriatic provocative test** is usually not preferred nowadays because this is not physiological. In this test either a weak mydriatic (e.g. 0.5% tropicamide) or simultaneously a mydriatic and miotic (10% phenylephrine and 2% pilocarpine) are used to

produce a mid-dilated pupil. A pressure rise of more than 8 mm Hg is considered positive.

**Inferences from provocative tests** are:

- **Positive provocative test** indicates that angle is capable of spontaneous closure.
- **Negative provocative test** in the presence of occludable angles on gonioscopy does not rule out a possibility of spontaneous closure. So, patient should be warned of possible symptoms of an acute attack of PAC.

**Treatment** comprise:

**Periodic follow up.** Patients with PAC suspect in both eyes need to be followed periodically and educated about the symptoms of the disease.

**Prophylactic laser iridotomy** is warranted if more than 270° of oppositional iridotrabecular contact is seen on gonioscopy in the fellow eye of all patients presenting with acute PAC or PACG in one eye. If untreated, the risk of conversion to PACG during the next 5 years is about 50%.

## II. Primary Angle-Closure

**Defining criteria for primary angle closure (PAC)** as per ISGEO classification includes:

- **Irido-trabecular contact** noted on gonioscopy in greater than 270° angle,
- **IOP** elevated and/or **peripheral anterior synechiae (PAS)** present,
- **Optic disc:** Normal, and
- **Visual fields:** Normal.

**Impression:** Angle is abnormal either in function (elevated IOP) and/or structure (PAS +ve).

**The entity primary angle closure (PAC)** can be considered to comprise following entities of clinical classification:

- Subacute primary angle closure
- Acute PAC
- Chronic PAC (asymptomatic).

### Subacute primary angle-closure

Subacute primary angle closure is characterized by an attack of transient rise of IOP (40–50 mm Hg) which may last for few minutes to 1–2 hours.

**Precipitating factors** for such an attack in a patient with PAC include:

- **Physiological mydriasis**, e.g. while reading in dim illumination, watching television or cinema in a darkened room, or during anxiety (sympathetic overactivity); or
- **Physiological shallowing of anterior chamber** after lying in prone position.
- **Pharmacological mydriasis** following use of pupil dilating drugs for fundus examination.



**Symptoms** include:

- *Episode of subacute PAC* is marked by experience of unilateral transient blurring of vision,
- *Coloured halos* around light, headache, browache and eyeache on the affected side.
- *Self-termination of the attack* occurs possibly due to physiological miosis induced by bright light, sleep or otherwise.
- *Recurrent attacks* of such episodes are not uncommon. Between the recurrent attacks the eyes are free of symptoms.

**Signs.** Usually, during examination, the eye is white and not congested. However, all the signs described above in the definition of primary angle-closure (PAC) should be elicited to label PAC.

**Diagnosis** is made from the defining criteria for PAC as above.

#### **Differential diagnosis of coloured halos in PAC.**

Coloured halos during intermittent attacks of raised IOP in PAC occur due to accumulation of fluid in the corneal epithelium and alteration in the refractive condition of the corneal lamellae. Patients typically give history of seeing colours distributed as in the spectrum of rainbow (red being outside and violet innermost) while watching on a lighted bulb or the moon.

The coloured halos in glaucoma must be differentiated from those found in acute purulent conjunctivitis and early cataractous changes.

- *Coloured halos in conjunctivitis*, can be eliminated by irrigating the discharge.
- *Coloured halos of glaucoma and immature cataract* may be differentiated by Fincham's test in which a stenopaic slit is passed across the pupil. During this test, glaucomatous halo remains intact, while a halo due to cataract is broken up into segments (Fig. 10.19).

**Treatment** of choice is peripheral laser iridotomy (PLI).

#### **Acute primary angle-closure**

An attack of acute rise in IOP in patients with primary angle closure (PAC) may occur due to pupillary block causing sudden closure of the angle. It usually does not terminate of its own and thus if not treated lasts for many days. It is a sight-threatening emergency.

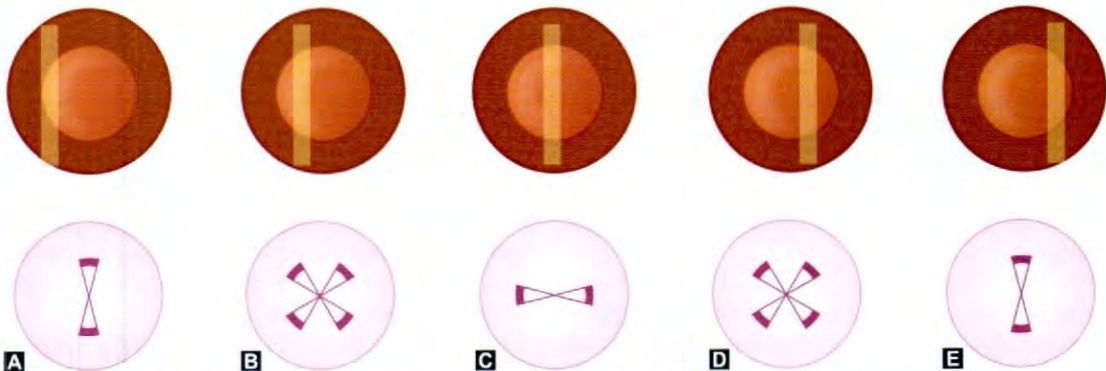
#### **Clinical features**

**Symptoms** include:

- *Pain.* Typically acute attack is characterised by sudden onset of very severe pain in the eye which radiates along the branches of 5th nerve.
- *Nausea, vomiting and prostrations* are frequently associated with pain.
- *Rapidly progressive impairment of vision, redness, photophobia and lacrimation* develop in all cases.
- *Coloured halos around light* are generally seen during an acute attack.
- *Past history.* About 5% patients give history of typical previous intermittent attacks of subacute angle-closure.

**Signs** of acute PAC (Fig. 10.20):

- *Lids* may be oedematous,
- *Conjunctiva* is chemosed, and congested, (both conjunctival and ciliary vessels are congested),
- *Cornea* becomes oedematous and insensitive,
- *Anterior chamber* is very shallow. Aqueous flare or cells may be seen in anterior chamber,
- *Angle of anterior chamber* is completely closed as seen on gonioscopy (Shaffer grade 0),
- *Iris* may be discoloured,
- *Pupil* is semidilated, vertically oval and fixed. It is non-reactive to both light and accommodation,
- *IOP* is markedly elevated, usually between 40 and 70 mm of Hg,



**Fig. 10.19** Emsley-Fincham stenopaic-slit test demonstrating breaking up of halos due to immature cataract into different segments





**Fig. 10.20** Clinical photograph of a patient with acute congestive glaucoma. Note ciliary congestion, corneal oedema and mid-dilated pupil

- Optic disc is oedematous and hyperaemic,
- Fellow eye shows shallow anterior chamber and occludable angle.

### Diagnosis

Diagnosis of an attack of acute primary angle closure is usually obvious from the clinical features. However, a *differential diagnosis* may have to be considered:

1. *From other causes of acute red eye.* Acute primary angle closure sometimes needs differentiation from other causes of inflamed red eye like acute conjunctivitis and acute iridocyclitis (See page 164 and Table 8.1).
2. *From acute secondary glaucomas* such as:
  - Phacomorphic glaucoma (See page 255),
  - Acute neovascular glaucoma (See page 257) and
  - Glaucomatocyclitic crisis (See page 175).

### Management

Acute angle closure is a *serious ocular emergency* and needs to be managed aggressively as below:

- Immediate medical therapy to lower IOP,
- Definitive treatment,
- Prophylaxis of the fellow eye, and
- Long-term glaucoma surveillance and IOP management of both eyes.

#### A. Immediate medical therapy to lower IOP

1. *Systemic hyperosmotic agents* are required initially if IOP is more than 40 mm Hg.
  - *Intravenous mannitol* (1 gm/kg body weight) should be preferred in the presence of nausea and vomiting.
  - *Oral hyperosmotics*, e.g. glycerol 1 gm/kg body weight of 50% solution in lemon juice may be given if well tolerated and not contraindicated (as in diabetes mellitus).

2. *Systemic carbonic anhydrase inhibitors*, e.g. acetazolamide 500 mg IV stat followed by 250 mg tablet 3 times a day.

3. *Topical antiglaucoma drugs* to be instilled immediately include:

- *Beta-blocker*, e.g. 0.5% timolol or 0.5% betaxolol
- *Alpha adrenergic agonists*, e.g. brimonidine 0.1–0.2%.
- *Prostaglandin analogue*, e.g. latanoprost 0.005%.

*Role of miotic therapy:*

- *Pilocarpine* 2% QID should be started after 1 hour of the commencement of the treatment, i.e. when IOP is lowered, as at higher IOP sphincter is ischaemic and unresponsive to pilocarpine.

**Note.** Intensive miotic therapy is not advised nowadays. Some glaucoma experts have given up the use of pilocarpine entirely in the management of acute PACG.

4. *Analgesics and antiemetics* may be required to alleviate the symptoms.

5. *Compressive gonioscopy* with a 4 mirror gonioscopes may help relieve pupil block and is essential to determine if the trabecular blockage is reversible.

6. *Topical steroid*, e.g. prednisolone acetate 1% or dexamethasone eye drops administered 3–4 times a day reduces the inflammation.

#### B. Definitive therapy

1. *Laser peripheral iridotomy (LPI).* Gonioscopy should be performed as soon as cornea becomes clear. Laser PI should be performed if PAS are seen in <270° angle. LPI re-establishes communication between posterior and anterior chamber, so it bypasses the pupillary block and immediately relieves the crowding of the angle.

- *Laser peripheral iridotomy* (with Nd:YAG laser or Argon Laser) should always be preferred over surgical PI. However, if lasers are not available surgical PI should be done (See page 260 for technique).

2. *Filtration surgery*, i.e. trabeculectomy should be performed in cases where IOP is not controlled with the maximum medical therapy following an attack of acute PAC or when gonioscopy reveals PAS >270° angle and also when peripheral iridotomy is not effective.

- *Mechanism:* Filtration surgery provides an alternative to the angle for drainage of aqueous from anterior chamber into subconjunctival space.

- *Surgical technique.* (See page 261).

3. *Clear lens extraction* by phacoemulsification with intraocular lens implantation has recently been



recommended by some workers, especially in the presence of phacomorphic etiology (diagnosed on UBM).

### **C. Prophylactic treatment in the normal fellow eye**

Prophylactic laser iridotomy (preferably) or surgical peripheral iridectomy should be performed on the fellow asymptomatic eye (PACS) as early as possible as chances of acute attack are 50% in such eyes.

### **D. Long-term glaucoma surveillance and IOP management in both eyes**

Long-term glaucoma surveillance and IOP management in both eyes of a patient with acute PAC is must to ultimately prevent glaucomatous blindness:

- *Eyes treated with PI* (both affected and fellow eye) may develop PACG at any time. So, it should be treated as and when required.
- *Filtration surgery* may fail anytime during the course and hence need to be repeated with antimetabolites.

### **Sequelae of acute PAC**

Clinical status of the eye after an attack of acute PAC with or without treatment is considered a sequelae of acute PAC. It may be seen as following clinical settings:

**1. Postsurgical acute PAC.** This refers to the clinical status of the eye after laser peripheral iridotomy (PI) treatment for an attack of acute PAC. It may occur in two clinical settings:

- i. *With normalized IOP after successful laser PI*, the eye usually quiets after sometime with or without marks of an acute attack (i.e. Vogt's triad, See below).
- ii. *With raised IOP after unsuccessful laser PI*, which needs to be treated by trabeculectomy operation.

**2. Spontaneous angle reopening** may occur very rarely in some cases and the attack of acute PAC may subside itself without treatment.

- *Treatment of choice* for such cases is laser peripheral iridotomy.

**3. Ciliary body shut down.** It refers to temporary cessation of aqueous humour secretion due to ischaemic damage to the ciliary epithelium after an attack of acute PAC.

*Clinical features*, in this stage are similar to acute PAC except that the IOP is low and pain is markedly reduced. Subsequent recovery of ciliary function may lead to chronic elevation of IOP with cupping and visual field defects, i.e. PACG.

*Treatment includes:*

- *Topical steroid drops* to reduce inflammation.
- *Laser peripheral iridotomy* should be performed when cornea becomes clear
- *IOP should be monitored regularly*, and

- *Trabeculectomy* is required when IOP rises constantly.

**4. Vogt's triad.** It may be seen in both treated and non-treated cases after an attack of acute PAC. It is characterized by:

- Glaukomeflecken (anterior subcapsular lenticular opacity),
- Patches of iris atrophy, and
- Slightly dilated nonreacting pupil (due to sphincter atrophy).

## **III. Primary Angle-Closure Glaucoma**

Primary angle closure glaucoma (PACG) can be considered analogous to the term 'chronic primary angle closure glaucoma' used in the clinical classification.

### **Pathogenesis**

Primary angle-closure glaucoma (PACG) results from gradual synechial closure of the angle of anterior chamber. Untreated patients with PAC may over the period covert to PACG with or without history of subacute or acute attack of PAC.

### **Clinical features**

**Clinical** features of PACG given below, are similar to POAG except that angle closure is present:

- *Intraocular pressure (IOP)* remains constantly raised.
- *Eyeball* remains white (no congestion) and painless.
- *Optic disc* shows glaucomatous cupping.
- *Visual field defects* similar to POAG occur (See page 240).
- *Gonioscopy* reveals more than 270° of angle closure along with peripheral anterior synechiae (PAS).

### **Diagnosis**

**Defining criteria for primary angle closure glaucoma (PACG)** as per ISGEO classification is:

- *Irido-trabecular contact* is noted on gonioscopy in greater than 270° of angle,
- *PAS* are formed,
- *IOP* is elevated,
- *Optic disc* shows glaucomatous damage, and
- *Visual fields* show typical glaucomatous defects.

**Impression:** Angle is abnormal in function (elevated IOP) and structure (PAS + ve) with optic neuropathy.

**Note.** In circumstances where advanced PACG disease with compromised media prohibits disc and visual field testing, e.g. cataract or corneal disease, a coarser definition holds for PACG whereby an IOP > 24 mm Hg and visual acuity of <3/60 or a history of prior glaucoma surgery, will suffice.



**Treatment**

- **Laser iridotomy** alone or along with medical therapy similar to POAG (See page 242) should be tried first.
- **Trabeculectomy** (filtration surgery) is needed when the above treatment fails to control IOP.
- **Prophylactic laser iridotomy** in fellow eye must also be performed.

**Absolute Primary Angle-closure Glaucoma**

Primary angle closure glaucoma, if untreated, gradually passes into the final phase of absolute glaucoma.

**Clinical features**

- **Painful blind eye.** The eye is painful, irritable and completely blind (no light perception).
- **Perilimbal reddish blue zone,** i.e. a slight ciliary flush around the cornea due to dilated anterior ciliary veins.
- **Caput medusae,** i.e. a few prominent and enlarged vessels are seen in long-standing cases.
- **Cornea** in early cases is clear but insensitive. Slowly it becomes hazy and may develop epithelial bullae (bullous keratopathy) or filaments (filamentary keratitis).
- **Anterior chamber** is very shallow.
- **Iris** becomes atrophic.
- **Pupil** becomes fixed and dilated and gives a greenish hue.
- **Optic disc** shows glaucomatous optic atrophy.
- **Intraocular pressure** is high; eyeball becomes stony hard.

**Management of absolute glaucoma**

**1. Retrobulbar alcohol injection:** It may be given to relieve pain. First, 1 mL of 2% xylocaine is injected followed after about 5–10 minutes by 1 mL of 80% alcohol. It destroys the ciliary ganglion.

**2. Destruction of secretory ciliary epithelium** to lower the IOP may be carried out by cyclocryotherapy (See page 263) or cyclophotocoagulation.

**3. Enucleation of eyeball.** It may be considered when pain is not relieved by conservative methods. The frequency with which a painful blind eye with high IOP contains a malignant growth, justifies its removal. (For surgical technique of enucleation See page 320).

**Complications**

Absolute glaucoma, if not treated, following complications may occur due to prolonged high IOP: **Corneal ulceration.** It results from prolonged epithelial oedema and insensitivity. Sometimes, corneal ulcer may even perforate.

**Staphyloma formation.** As a result of continued high IOP, sclera becomes very thin and atrophic and ultimately bulges out either in the ciliary region (ciliary staphyloma) or equatorial region (equatorial staphyloma).

**Atrophic bulbi.** Ultimately, the ciliary body degenerates, IOP falls and the eyeball shrinks.

**SECONDARY GLAUCOMAS**

Secondary glaucoma *per se* is not a disease entity, but a group of disorders in which rise of intraocular pressure is associated with some primary ocular or systemic disease. Therefore, clinical features comprise that of primary disease and that due to effects of raised intraocular pressure.

**Classification****A. Depending upon the mechanism of rise in IOP**

1. **Secondary open angle glaucomas** in which aqueous outflow may be blocked by:
  - **Pretrabecular** membrane,
  - **Trabecular:** clogging, oedema and scarring or
  - **Post-trabecular** elevated episcleral venous pressure.
2. **Secondary angle closure glaucomas** which may or may not be associated with pupil block.

**B. Depending upon the causative primary disease, secondary glaucomas are named as follows:**

1. Lens-induced (phacogenic) glaucomas.
2. Inflammatory glaucoma (glaucoma due to intraocular inflammation).
3. Pigmentary glaucoma.
4. Neovascular glaucoma.
5. Glaucomas associated with iridocorneal endothelial syndromes.
6. Pseudoexfoliative glaucoma.
7. Glaucomas associated with intraocular haemorrhage.
8. Steroid-induced glaucoma.
9. Traumatic glaucoma.
10. Glaucoma-in-aphakia.
11. Glaucoma associated with intraocular tumours.

**■ LENS-INDUCED (PHACOGENIC) GLAUCOMAS**

In this group, IOP is raised secondary to some disorder of the crystalline lens. Lens-induced glaucoma can be classified as below:

**Lens-induced secondary angle closure glaucoma**

- **Phacomorphic glaucoma** (due to swollen lens)
- **Phacotopic glaucoma** (due to anterior lens displacement).



### *Lens-induced secondary open angle glaucoma*

- Phacolytic glaucoma
- Lens particle glaucoma
- Phacoanaphylactic glaucoma.

## 1. Phacomorphic Glaucoma

**Causes.** Phacomorphic glaucoma is an acute secondary angle-closure glaucoma caused by:

- *Intumescent lens*, i.e. swollen cataractous lens due to rapid maturation of cataract or sometimes following traumatic rupture of capsule is the main cause of phacomorphic glaucoma.
- *Anterior subluxation or dislocation of the lens and spherophakia* (congenital small spherical lens) are causes of phacotopic (a variant of phacomorphic) glaucoma.

**Pathogenesis.** The swollen lens pushes the iris forward and obliterates the angle resulting in *secondary acute angle closure glaucoma*. Further, the increased iridolenticular contact also causes potential pupillary block and iris bombe formation.

**Clinical features.** Phacomorphic glaucoma presents as acute congestive glaucoma with features almost similar to acute primary angle-closure (See page 251) except that the lens is always cataractous and swollen (Fig. 10.21). Demonstration of normal anterior chamber and open angle in the fellow eye helps in differentiating from the acute primary angle closure glaucoma.

**Treatment** should be immediate and consists of:

- *Medical treatment* to control IOP by IV mannitol, systemic acetazolamide and topical beta-blockers.
- *Laser iridotomy* may be effective in breaking the angle-closure attack.



**Fig. 10.21** Phacomorphic glaucoma. Note ciliary congestion, dilated pupil and intumescent senile cataractous lens

- *Cataract extraction* with implantation of PCIOL (which is the main treatment of phacomorphic glaucoma) should be performed once the eye becomes quiet.

## 2. Phacolytic Glaucoma (Lens Protein Glaucoma)

**Pathogenesis.** It is a type of *secondary open angle glaucoma*, in which trabecular meshwork is clogged by the lens proteins, macrophages which have phagocytosed the lens proteins, and inflammatory debris. Leakage of the lens proteins occurs through an intact capsule in the hypermature (Morgagnian) cataractous lens.

**Clinical features.** The condition is characterised by:

- *Features of acute congestive glaucoma* (See page 251) due to an acute rise of IOP in an eye having hypermature cataract.
- *Anterior chamber* may become deep and aqueous may contain fine white protein particles, which settle down as pseudohypopyon.
- *Anterior chamber angle* is open on gonioscopy.

**Management** consists of:

- *Medical therapy* to lower the IOP (See page 243) followed by
- *Extraction of the hypermature cataractous lens* with PCIOL implantation.

## 3. Lens Particle Glaucoma

**Pathogenesis.** It is a type of *secondary open angle glaucoma*, in which trabecular meshwork is blocked by the lens particles floating in the aqueous humour. It may occur due to lens particles left after accidental or planned extracapsular cataract extraction or following traumatic rupture of the lens.

**Clinical features.** Symptoms of acute rise in IOP (See page 251) associated with lens particles in the anterior chamber.

**Management** includes:

- *Medical therapy* to lower IOP (See page 243) and
- *Irrigation-aspiration of the lens particles* from the anterior chamber.

## 4. Phacoantigenic Glaucoma

Phacoantigenic glaucoma includes the *phacoanaphylactic uveitis* and *phacotoxic glaucoma*. In this condition, there occurs fulminating acute inflammatory reaction due to antigen (lens protein)—antibody reaction. The mechanism of rise in IOP and its management is similar to that of acute inflammatory glaucoma. Typical finding is a granulomatous inflammation in the involved eye after it goes surgical trauma.



**Pathogenesis.** As in the case of lens particle glaucoma, there is usually a preceding disruption of lens capsule by extracapsular cataract extraction, penetrating injury, or leak of proteins from the capsule. Distinguishing feature is a latent period during which sensitization to the lens proteins occurs. IOP is then raised due to inflammatory reaction of the uveal tissue excited by the lens matter. Basically, it is also a type of secondary open angle glaucoma where trabecular meshwork is clogged by both inflammatory cells and the lens particles.

**Management** consists of:

- *Medical therapy* to lower IOP,
- *Treatment of iridocyclitis* with steroids and cycloplegics.
- *Irrigation-aspiration* of the lens matter from anterior chamber (if required) should always be done after proper control of inflammation.

## ■ GLAUCOMAS DUE TO UVEITIS

### Types

- I. Inflammatory glaucomas and
- II. Specific hypertensive uveitis syndromes.

### I. Inflammatory Glaucoma

The IOP can be raised by varied mechanisms in inflammations of the uveal tissue (iridocyclitis). Even in other ocular inflammations such as keratitis and scleritis, the rise in IOP is usually due to secondary involvement of the anterior uveal tract.

**Based on the mechanism of rise in IOP** the inflammatory glaucoma can be:

- Open-angle inflammatory glaucoma, and
- Angle-closure inflammatory glaucoma.

#### 1. Open-angle inflammatory glaucoma

Clinically, the open-angle inflammatory glaucoma may manifest as acute or chronic entity.

##### i. Acute open-angle inflammatory glaucoma

**Mechanisms of rise in IOP.** The acute open-angle glaucoma occurs due to trabecular clogging (by inflammatory cells, exudates and turbid aqueous humour), trabecular oedema (due to associated trabeculitis), and prostaglandin-induced rise in IOP.

**Clinical features.** It is characterized by features of acute iridocyclitis associated with raised IOP with open-angle of anterior chamber. IOP usually returns to normal after the acute episode of inflammation.

**Management.** It includes treatment of iridocyclitis and medical therapy to lower IOP by use of hyperosmotic agents, acetazolamide and beta-blocker eye drops (timolol or betaxolol).

##### ii. Chronic open angle inflammatory glaucoma

**Mechanism of rise in IOP** includes chronic trabeculitis, and trabecular scarring.

**Clinical features** include raised IOP, open angle, no active inflammation but signs of previous episode of uveitis are often present. Some chronic cases may also have signs of glaucomatous disc changes and field defects.

**Treatment** consist of:

- *Medical therapy* with topical beta-blockers, and/or carbonic anhydrase inhibitors and alpha agonist may be useful. Preferably avoid pilocarpine and prostaglandin agonists.
- *Trabeculectomy*, under cover of steroids, may be tried, if medical treatment fails. The results are usually poorer than POAG, but can be improved by augmented trabeculectomy or tube procedures.
- *Cyclodestructive procedures* (e.g. cyclodiode) may need to be considered if surgical treatment fails.

### 2. Angle-closure inflammatory glaucoma

When uveitis is not treated, over the period PAS are formed causing synechiae angle closure.

**Mechanisms of rise in IOP** include:

• *Secondary angle-closure with pupil block.* Pupillary block due to *annular synechiae* or *occlusio pupillae* leads to iris bombe formation followed by angle closure.

• *Secondary angle-closure without pupil block* occurs due to organisation of the inflammatory debris in the angle, which on contraction pulls the iris over the trabeculum. It is followed by gradual and progressive synechial angle closure with eventual elevation of IOP.

**Clinical features** include raised IOP, seclusio papillae, iris bombe, shallow anterior chamber.

**Management** includes prophylaxis and curative treatment.

1. *Prophylaxis.* Acute iridocyclitis should be treated energetically with local steroids and atropine to prevent formation of synechiae.
2. *Curative treatment.* It consists of medical therapy to lower IOP (miotics are contraindicated). Surgical or laser *iridotomy* may be useful in pupil block without angle closure. *Filtration surgery* may be performed (with guarded results) in the presence of angle closure.

### II. Specific Hypertensive Uveitis Syndromes

These include:

- Fuchs' uveitis syndrome (See page 174) and
- Glaucomatocyclitic crisis (See page 175).

### ■ PIGMENTARY GLAUCOMA

About 50% of patients with the *pigment dispersion syndrome* (PDS) develop glaucoma.



**Pathogenesis.** It is a type of *secondary open-angle glaucoma* wherein clogging up of the trabecular meshwork occurs by the pigment particles. Exact mechanism of pigment shedding is not known. It is believed that, perhaps, pigment release is caused by mechanical rubbing of the posterior pigment layer of iris with the zonular fibrils.

**Clinical features** include:

*Young myopic males* typically develop this glaucoma.

**Characteristic glaucomatous features** are similar to primary open angle glaucoma (POAG), associated with:

- *Deposition of pigment granules* in the anterior segment structures such as iris, posterior surface of the cornea (*Krukenberg's spindle*), trabecular meshwork, ciliary zonules and the crystalline lens.
- *Gonioscopy* shows pigment accumulation along the Schwalbe's line especially inferiorly (*Sampaoli's line*).
- *Iris transillumination* shows radial slit-like transillumination defects in the mid periphery (pathognomic feature).

**Treatment.** It is exactly on the lines of primary open angle glaucoma (See page 242).

### ■ NEOVASCULAR GLAUCOMA (NVG)

It is an intractable glaucoma which results due to neovascularisation of iris and the angle of anterior chamber.

**Etiology.** Neovascularization of iris (rubeosis iridis) develops following retinal ischaemia, which is a common feature of:

- Proliferative diabetic retinopathy,
- Central retinal vein occlusion,
- Sickle-cell retinopathy, and
- Eales' disease.
- Other rare causes are chronic intraocular inflammations, intraocular tumours, long-standing retinal detachment and central retinal artery occlusion.

**Clinical profile.** NVG occurs in three stages:

1. *Pre-glaucomatous stage* (stage of rubeosis iridis);
2. *Open-angle glaucoma stage*—due to formation of a pretrabecular neovascular membrane; and
3. *Secondary angle closure glaucoma*—due to goniosynechiae resulting from contracture of the neovascular membrane (zipper angle closure).

**Treatment** of NVG is usually frustrating, includes:

- *Panretinal photocoagulation* may be carried out to prevent further neovascularization.

- *Medical therapy and conventional filtration surgery* are usually not effective in controlling the IOP.
- *Glaucoma drainage device*, i.e. artificial filtration shunt (Seton operation) may control the IOP.

### ■ GLAUCOMA ASSOCIATED WITH INTRAOCULAR TUMOURS

Secondary glaucoma due to intraocular tumours such as malignant melanoma (of iris, choroid, ciliary body) and retinoblastoma may occur by one or more of the following *mechanisms*:

- *Trabecular block* due to clogging by tumour cells or direct invasion by tumour seedlings.
- *Neovascularization* of the angle.
- *Venous stasis* following obstruction of the vortex veins.
- *Angle closure* due to forward displacement of iris-lens diaphragm by increasing tumour mass.

**Treatment.** Enucleation of the eyeball should be carried out as early as possible.

### ■ PSEUDOEXFOLIATIVE GLAUCOMA (GLAUCOMA CAPSULARE)

*Pseudoexfoliation syndrome* (PES) is characterised by deposition of an amorphous grey dandruff-like material on the pupillary border, anterior lens surface, posterior surface of iris, zonules and ciliary processes.

- *Exact source of the exfoliative material* is still not known.
- *Secondary open-angle glaucoma* is associated in about 50% of the cases.
- *Exact mechanism* of rise of IOP is also not clear. Trabecular blockage by the exfoliative material is considered as the probable cause.
- *Clinically*, the glaucoma behaves like POAG and is thus managed on the same lines.

### ■ GLAUCOMAS-IN-APHAKIA/PSEUDOPHAKIA

It is the term used to replace the old term 'aphakic glaucoma'. It implies association of glaucoma with aphakia or pseudophakia. It includes following conditions:

1. *Raised IOP with deep anterior chamber in early postoperative period.* It may be due to hyphaema, inflammation, retained cortical matter or vitreous filling the anterior chamber.
2. *Secondary angle-closure glaucoma due to flat anterior chamber.* It may occur following long-standing wound leak.
3. *Secondary angle-closure glaucoma due to pupil block.* It may occur following formation of annular synechiae or vitreous herniation.



4. *Undiagnosed pre-existing primary open-angle glaucoma* may be associated with aphakia, pseudophakia.
5. *Steroid-induced glaucoma*. It may develop in patients operated for cataract due to postoperative treatment with steroids. (especially in steroid responders)
6. *Epithelial ingrowth* may cause an intractable glaucoma in late postoperative period by invading the trabeculum and the anterior segment structures.
7. *Aphakic/pseudophakic malignant glaucoma* (See page 258).

### ■ STEROID-INDUCED GLAUCOMA

It is a type of secondary open-angle glaucoma which develops following topical, and sometimes systemic steroid therapy.

**Etiopathogenesis.** It has been postulated that the response of IOP to steroids is genetically determined. Roughly, 5% of general population is *high steroid responder* (develop marked rise of IOP after about 6 weeks of steroid therapy), 35% are *moderate* and 60% are *non-responders*.

**Mechanism responsible** for the obstruction to aqueous outflow is unknown. Following theories have been put forward:

- **Glycosaminoglycans (GAG) theory.** Corticosteroids inhibit the release of hydrolases (by stabilizing lysosomal membrane). Consequently, the GAGs present in the trabecular meshwork cannot depolymerize and they retain water in the extracellular space. This leads to narrowing of trabecular spaces and decrease in aqueous outflow.
- **Endothelial cell theory.** Under normal circumstances the endothelial cells lining the trabecular meshwork act as phagocytes and phagocytose the debris from the aqueous humour. Corticosteroids are known to suppress the phagocytic activity of endothelial cells leading to collection of debris in the trabecular meshwork and decreasing the aqueous outflow.
- **Prostaglandin theory.** Prostaglandin E and F (PGE and PGF) are known to increase the aqueous outflow facility. Corticosteroids can inhibit the synthesis of PGE and PGF leading to decrease in aqueous outflow facility and increase in IOP.

**Clinical features.** Steroid-induced glaucoma typically resembles POAG (See page 236). It usually develops following weeks of topical therapy with strong steroids and months of therapy with weak steroids.

**Management.** It can be *prevented* by a judicious use of steroids and a regular monitoring of IOP when steroid therapy is a must.

**Treatment** consists of:

- **Discontinuation of steroids.** IOP may normalise within 10 days to 4 weeks in 98% of cases.
- **Medical therapy** with 0.5% timolol maleate is effective during the normalisation period.
- **Filtration surgery** is required occasionally in intractable cases.

### ■ TRAUMATIC GLAUCOMA

A secondary glaucoma may complicate perforating as well as blunt injuries.

**Mechanisms.** Traumatic glaucoma may develop by one or more of the following mechanisms:

- **Inflammatory glaucoma** due to iridocyclitis (See page 256).
- **Glaucoma** due to intraocular haemorrhage (See page 259).
- **Lens-induced glaucoma** due to ruptured, swollen or dislocated lens (See page 254).
- **Angle-closure** due to peripheral anterior synechiae formation following perforating corneal injury producing adherent leucoma.
- **Epithelial or fibrous in growth**, may involve trabeculum.
- **Angle recession (cleavage) glaucoma.** Angle recession refers to rupture in the ciliary body face (between scleral spur and iris root). Unilateral open angle glaucoma usually occurs after years (may be 10 years) of blunt trauma. Angle recession is not the cause of glaucoma but just indicator of old trauma. Glaucoma occurs due to slowly-induced fibrosis of trabecular meshwork.

**Management** includes:

- **Medical therapy** with topical 0.5% timolol and oral acetazolamide,
- **Treatment of associated causative mechanism** (e.g. atropine and steroids for control of inflammation), and
- **Surgical intervention** according to the situation.

### ■ CILIARY BLOCK GLAUCOMA

Ciliary block glaucoma (originally termed as *malignant glaucoma*) is a rare condition which may occur as a complication of any intraocular operation. It classically occurs in patients with primary angle closure glaucoma operated for peripheral iridectomy or filtration (e.g. trabeculectomy) surgery. It can also occur after cataract surgery, capsulotomy, laser iridotomy and even spontaneously. It is characterised by a markedly raised IOP associated with shallow or absent anterior chamber.

**Mechanism of rise in IOP.** It is believed that, rarely following intraocular operation, the tips of ciliary processes rotate forward and press against the



equator of the lens in phakic eyes (*cilio-lenticular block*) or against the intraocular lens in pseudophakic eyes (*cilio-IOL block*) or against the anterior hyaloid phase of vitreous in aphakic eyes (*cilio-vitreous block*) and thus block the forward flow of aqueous humour, which is diverted posteriorly and collects as aqueous pockets in the vitreous (Fig. 10.22). As a consequence of this the iris lens diaphragm is pushed forward, IOP is raised and anterior chamber becomes flat.

#### Clinical features

**Symptoms:** Patient develops severe pain and blurring of vision following any intraocular operation (usually after peripheral iridectomy, filtering surgery or trabeculectomy in patients with primary angle-closure glaucoma).

**Signs.** On examination, the main features of the ciliary block glaucoma noted are:

- Persistent *flat anterior chamber* following any intraocular operation,
- *Markedly raised IOP* in early postoperative period,
- *Negative Seidel's test* and
- *Unresponsiveness* or even aggravation by miotics.
- Malignant glaucoma may be phakic, aphakic or pseudophakic.

**Management** includes:

**Medical therapy** consists of 1% atropine drops or ointment to dilate ciliary ring and break the cilio-lenticular or cilio-vitreous contact, acetazolamide 250 mg QID and 0.5% timolol maleate eye drops

to decrease aqueous production, and intravenous mannitol to cause deturgescence of the vitreous gel. **YAG laser hyaloidotomy** can be undertaken in aphakic and pseudophakic patients. If the condition does not respond to medical therapy in 4–5 days.

**Surgical therapy** in the form of pars plana vitrectomy with or without lensectomy (as the case may be) is required when the above measures fail. It is usually effective, but sometimes the condition tends to recur.

**Note.** It is important to note that the fellow eye is also prone to meet the same fate.

#### ■ GLAUCOMAS ASSOCIATED WITH INTRAOCULAR HAEMORRHAGES

Intraocular haemorrhages include hyphaema and/or vitreous haemorrhage due to multiple causes. These may be associated with following types of glaucomas:

**1. Red cell glaucoma.** It is associated with fresh traumatic hyphaema. It is caused by blockage of trabeculae by RBCs in patients with massive hyphaema (anterior chamber full of blood). It may be associated with pupil block due to blood clot. Blood staining of the cornea may develop, if the IOP is not lowered within a few days.

**2. Haemolytic glaucoma.** It is an acute secondary open angle glaucoma due to the obstruction (clogging) of the trabecular meshwork caused by macrophages laden with lysed RBC debris.

**3. Ghost cell glaucoma.** It is a type of secondary open angle glaucoma which occurs in aphakic or pseudophakic eyes with vitreous haemorrhage. After about 2 weeks of haemorrhage the RBCs degenerate, lose their pliability and become *khaki*-coloured cells (ghost cells) which pass from the vitreous into the anterior chamber, and block the pores of trabeculae leading to rise in IOP.

**4. Hemosiderotic glaucoma.** It is a rare variety of secondary glaucoma occurring due to sclerotic changes in trabecular meshwork caused by the iron from the phagocytosed haemoglobin by the endothelial cells of trabeculum.

#### ■ GLAUCOMAS ASSOCIATED WITH IRIDOCORNEAL ENDOTHELIAL SYNDROMES

Iridocorneal endothelial (ICE) syndromes include three clinical entities:

- Progressive iris atrophy,
- Chandler's syndrome, and
- Cogan-Reese syndrome.

**Pathogenesis.** The common feature of the ICE syndromes is the presence of abnormal corneal endothelial cells which proliferate to form an



**Fig. 10.22** Pockets of aqueous humour in the vitreous in patients with ciliary-block glaucoma



endothelial membrane in the angle of anterior chamber. Glaucoma is caused by secondary synechial angle-closure as a result of contraction of this endothelial membrane.

**Clinical features.** The ICE syndromes typically affect middle-aged women. The raised IOP is associated with characteristic features of the causative condition.

- In '*progressive iris atrophy*', iris features predominate with marked corectopia, atrophy and hole formation.
- While in *Chandler's syndrome*, changes in iris are mild to absent and the corneal oedema predominates, even at normal IOP.
- Hallmark of *Cogan-Reese syndrome* is nodular or diffuse pigmented lesions of the iris (therefore, also called as *iris naevus syndrome*) which may or may not be associated with corneal changes.

**Treatment** is usually frustrating:

- Medical treatment is often ineffective,
- Trabeculectomy operation usually fails,
- Glaucoma drainage device, i.e. artificial filtration shunt may control the IOP.

## SURGICAL PROCEDURES FOR GLAUCOMA

### ■ PERIPHERAL IRIDECTOMY

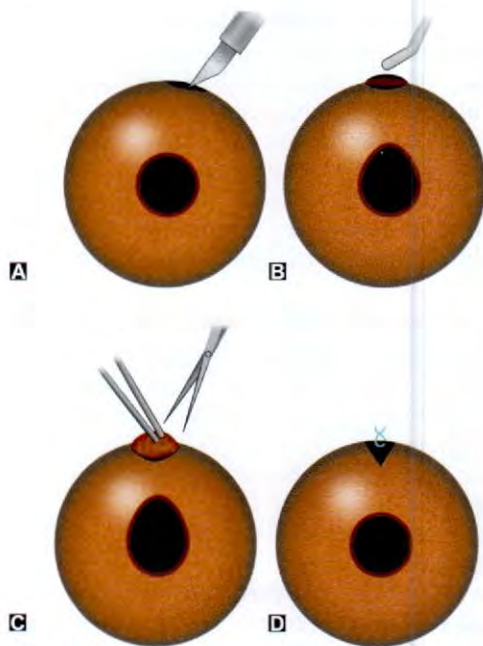
#### Indications

1. Treatment of all stages of primary angle-closure glaucoma.
2. Prophylaxis in the fellow eye.

**Note.** *Laser peripheral iridotomy* (LPI) should always be preferred over surgical iridectomy.

#### Surgical technique (Fig. 10.23)

1. **Incision.** A 4 mm limbal or preferably corneal incision is made with the help of razor blade fragment.
2. **Iris prolapsed.** The posterior lip of the wound is depressed so that the iris prolapses. If the iris does not prolapse, it is grasped at the periphery with iris forceps.
3. **Iridectomy.** A small full thickness piece of iris is excised by de Wecker's scissors.
4. **Reposition of iris.** Iris is repositioned back into the anterior chamber by stroking the lips of the wound or with iris repositors.
5. **Wound closure** is done with one or two 10-0 nylon sutures with buried knots.
6. **Subconjunctival injection** of dexamethasone 0.25 mL and gentamicin 0.5 mL is given.
7. **Patching of eye** is done with a sterile eye pad and sticking plaster.



**Fig. 10.23** Technique of peripheral iridectomy: A, Anterior limbal incision to open the anterior chamber; B, Prolapse of peripheral iris by pressure at the posterior lip of the incision; C, Excision of the prolapsed knuckle of the iris by de Wecker's scissors; D, Suturing the wound

### ■ GONIOTOMY AND TRABECULOTOMY

These operations are indicated in congenital and developmental glaucomas (For details, See page 254)

### ■ FILTERING OPERATIONS

Filtering operations provide a new channel for aqueous outflow and successfully control the IOP (below 21 mm of Hg). Filtration operations can be grouped as below:

#### A. External filtration surgery

**1. Free-filtering operations** (Full thickness fistula). These are no longer performed nowadays, because of high rate of postoperative complications. Their names are mentioned only for historical interest. These operations included Elliot's sclero-corneal trephining, punch sclerectomy, Scheie's thermosclerostomy and iridencleisis.

**2. Guarded filtering surgery** Partial thickness fistula, e.g. trabeculectomy (most common).

**3. Non-penetrating filtration surgery**, e.g. deep sclerectomy and viscocanalostomy.

#### B. Internal filtration surgeries include:

- **Angle-based surgeries:** goniotomy, trabeculotomy and goniosynaechialysis
- **Schlemm's canal-based surgeries:** canaloplasty, trabectome, trabecular microbypass stent (istent).



## A. External Filtration Surgery

### Trabeculectomy

Trabeculectomy, first described by Cairns in 1968 is the most frequently performed partial thickness filtering surgery till date.

#### Indications

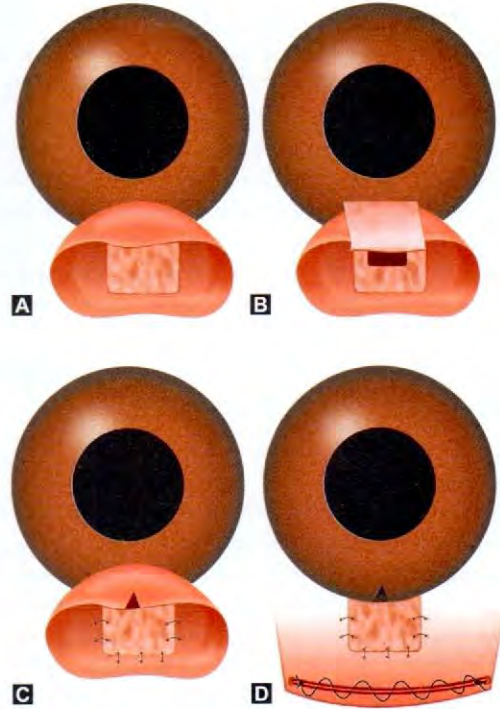
1. *Primary angle-closure glaucoma* with peripheral anterior synechial involving more than 270° angle or where PI and medical treatment fail.
2. *Primary open-angle glaucoma* not controlled with medical treatment.
3. *Congenital and developmental glaucomas* where trabeculotomy and goniotomy fail.
4. *Secondary glaucomas* where medical therapy is not effective.

#### Mechanisms of filtration

1. A new channel (fistula) is created around the margin of scleral flap, through which aqueous flows from anterior chamber into the subconjunctival space.
2. If the tissue is dissected posterior to the scleral spur, a cyclodialysis may be produced leading to increased uveoscleral outflow.
3. When trabeculectomy was introduced, it was thought that aqueous flows through the cut ends of Schlemm's canal. However, now it is established that this mechanism has a negligible role.

**Surgical technique** is as below (Fig. 10.24):

1. *Initial steps* of anaesthesia, cleansing, draping, exposure of eyeball and fixation with superior rectus suture are similar to cataract operation (See page 206).
2. *Conjunctival flap* (Fig. 10.24A). A fornix-based or limbal-based conjunctival flap is fashioned and the underlying sclera is exposed. The Tenon's capsule is cleared away using a Tooke's knife, and haemostasis is achieved with cautery.
3. *Scleral flap* (Fig. 10.24B). A partial thickness (usually half) limbal-based scleral flap of 5 mm × 5 mm size is reflected down towards the cornea.
4. *Excision of trabecular tissue* (Fig. 10.24B): A narrow strip (4 mm × 2 mm) of the exposed deeper sclera near the cornea containing the canal of Schlemm and trabecular meshwork is excised.
5. *Peripheral iridectomy* (Fig. 10.24C) is performed at 12 O'clock position with de Wecker's or Vanna's scissors.
6. *Closure*. The scleral flap is replaced and 10-0 nylon sutures are applied. Then the conjunctival flap is repositioned and sutured with two interrupted sutures (in case of fornix based flap) or continuous suture (in case of limbal-based flap) (Fig. 10.24D).
7. *Subconjunctival injections* of dexamethasone and gentamicin are given.



**Fig. 10.24** Technique of trabeculectomy: A, Fornix-based conjunctival flap; B and C, Partial thickness scleral flap and excision of trabecular tissue; D, Peripheral iridectomy closure of sclera flap, and Closure of conjunctival flap

8. *Patching*. Eye is patched with a sterile eye pad and sticking plaster or a bandage.

#### Complications

A few common complications are postoperative shallow anterior chamber, hyphaema, iritis, cataract due to accidental injury to the lens, and endophthalmitis (not very common).

#### Use of antimetabolites with trabeculectomy

It is recommended that antimetabolites should be used for wound modulation, when any of the following risk factors for the failure of conventional trabeculectomy are present:

- Previous failed filtration surgery.
- Glaucoma in aphakia.
- Certain secondary glaucomas, e.g. inflammatory glaucoma, post-traumatic angle recession glaucoma, neovascular glaucoma and glaucomas associated with ICE syndrome.
- Patients treated with topical antiglaucoma medications (particularly sympathomimetics) for over three years.
- Chronic cicatrizing conjunctival inflammation.

**Antimetabolite agents.** Either 5-fluorouracil (5-FU) or mitomycin-C can be used. Mitomycin-C is only used at the time of surgery. A sponge soaked in



0.02% (2 mg in 10 mL) solution of mitomycin-C is placed at the site of filtration between the scleral and Tenon's capsule for 2 minutes, followed by a thorough irrigation with balanced salt solution.

**Use of collagen implant with glaucoma filtration surgery** has been recommended as an alternative to mitomycin-C for modulating the wound healing in high risk cases mentioned above. Its effectivity is similar to MMC and eliminates the complications associated with MMC. However, collagen matrix implant is more expensive.

**Technique.** Usually a 6 mm diameter and 1 mm thick implant is sutured over the scleral flap.

### Sutureless trabeculectomy

1. *Initial steps*, and
2. *Conjunctival flap* fashioning is similar to conventional trabeculectomy.
3. *Sclero-corneal valvular tunnel*, 4 mm × 4 mm in size, is made by first making about 4 mm long partial thickness scleral groove about 2.5 mm away from the superior limbus with the help of a razor blade fragment (Fig. 10.25A). A 4 mm wide sclero-corneal tunnel which extends about 1.5 mm in the clear cornea is then made with the help of a crescent knife (Fig. 10.25B).
4. *Entry into the anterior chamber* is made with the help of a sharp 3.2 mm angled keratome.
5. *Punching of posterior lip of the anterior chamber entry site.* (Fig. 10.25C) is then performed with the help of a Kelly's punch (See Fig. 26.65) to make a sclerostomy of about 2 mm × 2 mm in size.
6. *Peripheral iridectomy* (Fig. 10.25D) is performed at 12 O'clock position with the help of de Wecker's or Vanna's scissors.
7. *Closure.* Anterior chamber is filled with balanced salt solution (BSS) or air to close the valvular sclero-corneal tunnel incision. Conjunctival flap is repositioned and anchored with wet-field cautery.

### Non-penetrating filtration surgeries

Recently some techniques of non-penetrating filtration surgery (in which anterior chamber is not entered) have been advocated to reduce the incidence of postoperative endophthalmitis, overfiltration and hypotony. Main disadvantage of nonpenetrating filtration surgery is inferior IOP control as compared to conventional trabeculectomy. The two currently used procedures are:

**1. Deep sclerectomy.** In this procedure, after making a partial thickness scleral flap, (as in conventional trabeculectomy, Fig. 10.24A), a second deep partial-thickness scleral flap is fashioned and excised

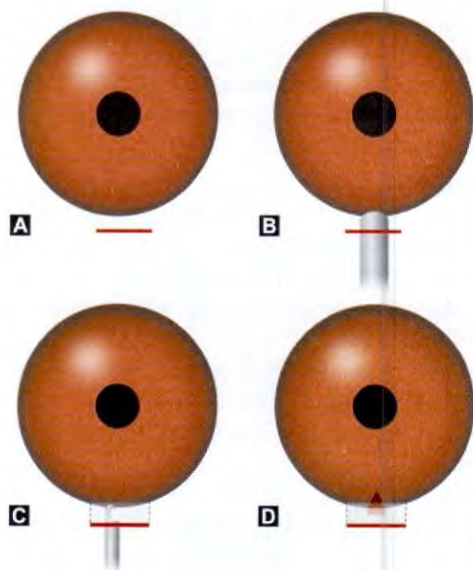


Fig. 10.25 Sutureless trabeculectomy

leaving behind a thin membrane consisting of very thin sclera, trabeculum and Descemet's membrane (through which aqueous diffuses out). The superficial scleral flap is loosely approximated and conjunctival incision is closed.

**2. Viscocanalostomy.** It is similar to deep sclerectomy, except that after excising the deeper scleral flap, high viscosity viscoelastic substance is injected into the Schlemm's canal with a special cannula.

### B. Internal Filtration Surgeries

Internal filtration surgeries, include:

#### Angle-based surgeries

These include goniotomy and trabeculotomy (See page 234)

#### Canal-based procedures

There are newer techniques that restore filtration through Schlemm's canal. These are designed to keep the normal anatomy and to be conjunctival bleb free; and thus reducing the risk of long-term endophthalmitis and ocular hypotony. These procedure includes:

**1. Canaloplasty**, i.e. dilatation and circumferential, traction of canal using 10-0 prolene suture.

**2. Trabectome** involves an ab interno microcautery that ablates the trabecular meshwork and inner wall of Schlemm's canal.

**3. iStent**, is a titanium micro device that is placed inside the Schlemm's canal. It allows the aqueous humor to flow directly into the canal bypassing the trabecular meshwork.



### ■ GLAUCOMA DRAINAGE DEVICE OPERATIONS

Glaucoma drainage device or the so called glaucoma valve implants are plastic devices which allow aqueous outflow by creating a communication between the anterior chamber and sub-Tenon's space. The operation using glaucoma valve implant is also known as *Seton operation*.

**Glaucoma drainage device** commonly used include Molteno (Fig. 10.26) Krupin-Denver and Ahmed glaucoma valve (AGV).

**Indications** of artificial drainage shunts include:

- Neovascular glaucoma,
- Glaucoma with aniridia, and
- *Intractable cases* of primary and secondary glaucoma where even trabeculectomy with adjunct antimetabolite therapy fails.

#### **Ex-PRESS glaucoma implant**

Ex-PRESS glaucoma implant (mini shunt), is small stainless steel device, which is can be implanted under the partial-thickness scleral flap as a modification of trabeculectomy. It provides a more favorable safety and postoperative recovery profile than standard trabeculectomy, but is significantly expensive. Further, it is not an alternative to glaucoma drainage valves such as AGV.

### ■ CYCLO-DESTRUCTIVE PROCEDURES

Cyclo-destructive procedures lower IOP by destroying part of the secretory ciliary epithelium thereby reducing aqueous secretion.

**Indications.** These procedures are used mainly in absolute glaucomas.

**Cyclo-destructive procedures** in current use are:

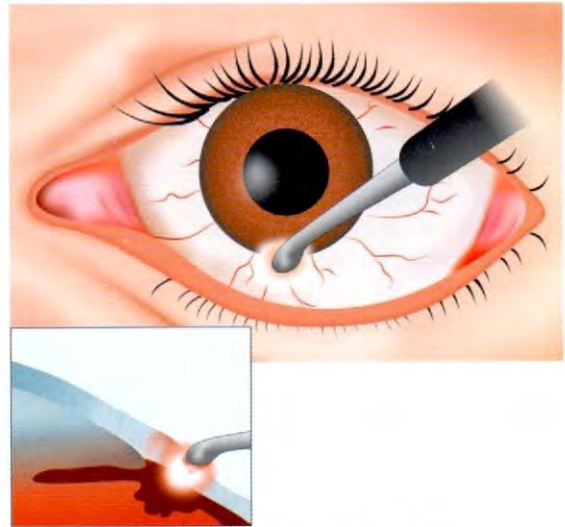
- Cyclocryotherapy,
- Nd: Yag laser cyclodestruction, and
- Diode laser cyclophotocoagulation. (also known as endocyclophotocoagulation, i.e. ECP)

#### **Technique of cyclocryotherapy**

1. **Anaesthesia.** Topical and peribulbar block anaesthesia is given.
2. **Lids separation** is done with eye speculum.
3. **Cryoapplications.** Cryo is applied with a retinal probe placed 3 mm from the limbus. A freezing at  $-80^{\circ}\text{C}$  for 1 minute is done in an area of  $180^{\circ}$  of the globe (Fig. 10.27).



**Fig. 10.26** Artificial drainage shunt operation using Molteno implant



**Fig. 10.27** Site of cyclocryopexy

If ineffective, the procedure may be repeated in the same area after 3 weeks. If still ineffective, then the remaining  $180^{\circ}$  should be treated.

**Mechanism.** IOP is lowered due to destruction of the secretory ciliary epithelium. The cells are destroyed by intracellular freezing.



## Diseases of Vitreous

### APPLIED ANATOMY

- Chemical Structure
- Attachments

### DISORDERS OF THE VITREOUS

#### Developmental disorders

- Persistent hyperplastic primary vitreous

#### Vitreous liquefaction

#### Vitreous detachments

- Posterior vitreous detachment (PVD)
- Detachment of the vitreous base and the anterior vitreous

#### Vitreous opacities

- Muscae volitantes
- Inflammatory vitreous opacities

- Vitreous aggregates and condensation with liquefaction
- Amyloid degeneration
- Asteroid hyalosis
- Synchysis scintillans
- Red cell opacities
- Tumour cell opacities

#### Vitreous haemorrhage

#### Vitreo-retinal degenerations

#### VITRECTOMY

#### Techniques

- Anterior vitrectomy: Limbal approach
- Pars plana vitrectomy

#### Vitreous substitutes

### APPLIED ANATOMY

Vitreous humour is an inert, transparent, jelly-like structure that fills the posterior four-fifth (80%) of the cavity of eyeball. Vitreous body is somewhat spherical posteriorly and has a cup-shaped depression (patellar fossa) anteriorly. Thus, it conforms to the contour of retina behind and that of lens in front. It is about 4 mL in volume and 4 gm in weight.

**Functions.** It is a hydrophilic gel that mainly serves the optical functions. In addition, it mechanically stabilizes the volume of the globe and is a pathway for nutrients to reach the lens and retina.

**Embryologically,** the vitreous body is the *secondary or definitive vitreous* secreted by neuroectoderm of optic cup. During development, when this secondary vitreous fills the cavity, *primary or primitive vitreous* (mesenchymal in origin) along with hyaloid vessels is pushed anteriorly and ultimately disappear. *Tertiary vitreous* is developed from neuroectoderm in the ciliary region and is represented by the ciliary zonules.

#### Chemical structure

The normal youthful vitreous gel is composed of water (99%) and a network of randomly-oriented collagen fibrils interspersed with numerous spheroidal macromolecules of hyaluronic acid, hyalocytes and mucopolysaccharides. The collapse

of this structure with age or otherwise leads to conversion of the gel into sol.

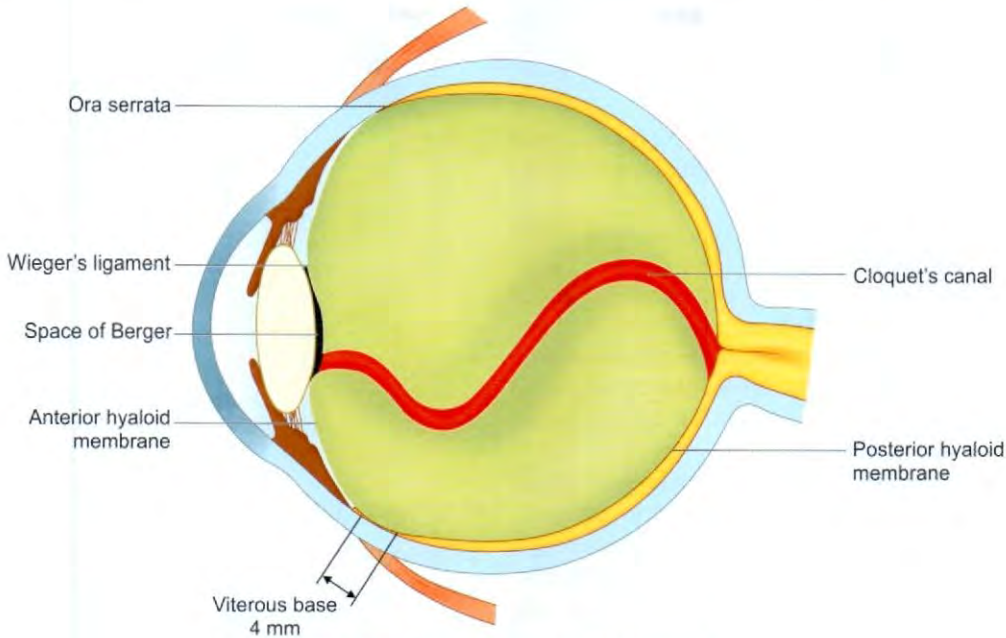
#### Parts of vitreous body

The vitreous body can be divided into two parts: the cortex and the medulla or nucleus (the main vitreous body) (Fig. 11.1).

**1. Cortical vitreous.** It lies adjacent to the retina posteriorly and ciliary body, zonules and lens anteriorly. The density of collagen fibrils is greater in this peripheral part. The condensation of these fibrils form a false anatomic membrane which is called as *anterior hyaloid membrane* anterior to ora serrata and *posterior hyaloid membrane* posterior to ora. The attachment of the anterior hyaloid membrane to the posterior lens surface is firm in young and weak in elders, whereas, posterior hyaloid membrane remains loosely attached to the internal limiting membrane of the retina throughout life with a potential space called *subhyaloid space*. These membranes cannot be discerned in a normal eye unless the lens has been extracted and posterior vitreous detachment has occurred.

**2. Main vitreous body (medulla or nucleus).** It has a less dense fibrillar structure and is a true biological gel. It is here where liquefactions of the vitreous gel start first. Microscopically the vitreous body is homogenous, but exhibits wavy lines as of watered silk in the slit-lamp beams. Running down the





**Fig. 11.1** Gross anatomy of the vitreous

centre of the vitreous body from the optic disc to the posterior pole of the lens is the *hyaloid canal* (Cloquet's canal) of doubtful existence in adults. Down this canal ran the hyaloid artery of the foetus.

#### Attachments

Outer surface of vitreous cortex is attached to the surrounding structures (Fig. 11.1):

**Vitreous base.** The part of the vitreous about 4 mm across the ora serrata is called as *vitreous base*, where the attachment of the vitreous is strongest.

**Anterior face of vitreous cortex** is attached to the posterior surface of lens (ligament of Wiegert).

**Posterior face of vitreous cortex** has moderate adhesions to the retina as below:

- Around the margins of optic disc,
- Around the fovea (attachment is weaker than around the disc),
- In rest of the retina, the vitreous cortex is attached loosely to the internal limiting membrane being comparatively less loose along the major retinal vessels.

## DISORDERS OF THE VITREOUS

### DEVELOPMENTAL DISORDERS OF VITREOUS

#### Persistent hyperplastic primary vitreous (PHPV)

Persistent hyperplastic primary vitreous (PHPV), now also termed as '*Persistent Fetal Vasculature*

*Syndrome (PFVS)*', is a developmental disorder of vitreous.

During the development of eye, a blood vessel runs between the optic nerve and the back of the lens, called *hyaloid vessel*. This vessel carries nutrients and oxygen to the developing parts of anterior section of eye. This hyaloid vessel along with surrounding embryonic material is called *primary vitreous*. Hyaloid vessels and primary vitreous begin to involute in the second month of gestation giving way to the *secondary vitreous (the vitreous humor)*. Small remnants of the system are common findings in healthy adults, e.g. *Bergmeister papilla* (tuft of tissue at the optic disc) and *Mittendorf dot* (tag of tissue on the posterior capsule of lens). However, extensive remnants of this "hyaloid vessel - primary vitreous" system are called *persistent hyperplastic primary vitreous*.

**Clinical features.** PHPV is almost always unilateral (90%). Bilateral cases are rare and may be associated with trisomy 13 (Patau syndrome), trisomy 22, Norries disease and Walkers Warburg syndrome. PHPV may present as anterior form or posterior form, most often elements of both are present.

**Anterior PHPV** occurs when the remnant vascular stalk is attached to the back of lens but no longer extends back to the optic nerve. The whitish plaque is fused with the posterior capsule of lens.

**Posterior PHPV** occurs when the remnant vascular stalk is arising off the optic nerve head but not



reaching the lens and thus not usually causing cataract. Most often some elements of both anterior and posterior PHPV, are present.

#### Features as PHPV:

- **Leucocoria** (whitish pupillary reflex) is the most common presenting feature of both anterior and posterior PHPV.
- **Microphthalmia** is often associated with both anterior and posterior PHPV.
- **Tractional retinal detachment** and retinal folds are features of posterior PHPV.
- **Congenital cataract**, shallow anterior chamber, angle closure glaucoma, long ciliary processes and recurrent intraocular haemorrhage are more common with anterior PVPV.

**Differential diagnosis** needs to be made from other causes of leucocoria especially retinoblastoma, congenital cataract and retinopathy of prematurity. Computerised tomography (CT) scanning helps in diagnosis by presence of calcification in retinoblastoma.

**Treatment** Visual prognosis of PHPV is poor despite early intervention, as neither conservative treatment nor surgery can improve visual acuity. The surgery is indicated only for complications and the only goal is to save the eye and maintain existing visual acuity. Surgery consists of pars plana lensectomy and excision of the membranes with anterior vitrectomy provided the diagnosis is made early.

### VITREOUS LIQUEFACTION

Vitreous liquefaction (synchysis) is the most common degenerative change in the vitreous.

**Causes** of liquefaction include:

1. **Age-related liquefaction** is of common occurrence after the age of 50 years.
2. **Degenerations** such as myopic degeneration, and that associated with retinitis pigmentosa.
3. **Post-inflammatory**, particularly following uveitis.
4. **Trauma to the vitreous** which may be mechanical (blunt as well as perforating).
5. **Thermal effects** on vitreous following diathermy, photocoagulation and cryocoagulation.
6. **Radiation effects** may also cause liquefaction.

**Clinical features.** On slit-lamp biomicroscopy, the vitreous liquefaction (*synchysis*) is characterised by the absence of normal fine fibrillar structure and visible pockets of liquefaction associated with appearance of coarse aggregate material which moves freely in free vitreous. Liquefaction is usually associated with collapse (*syneresis*) and opacities in the vitreous, which may be seen subjectively as black floaters in front of the eye.

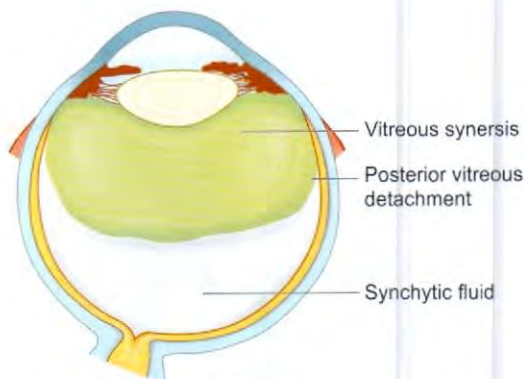


Fig. 11.2 Posterior vitreous detachment with synchysis and syneresis

### VITREOUS DETACHMENTS

#### 1. Posterior vitreous detachment (PVD)

It refers to the separation of the cortical vitreous from the retina anywhere posterior to vitreous base (3–4 mm wide area of attachment of vitreous to the ora serrata).

PVD with vitreous liquefaction (*synchysis*) and collapse (*syneresis*) is of common occurrence in majority of the normal subjects above the age of 65 years (Fig. 11.2). Previously, it was thought that it occurs in eyes with senile liquefaction, developing a hole in the posterior hyaloid membrane. The synchitic fluid collects between the posterior hyaloid membrane and the internal limiting membrane of the retina, and leads to PVD up to the base along with collapse of the remaining vitreous gel (*syneresis*). However, now it is believed that collagen cross-linking and selective loss of retinal adherence rather than the cavity formation are the primary events. These changes occur more frequently in the aphakics than the phakics, and in the myopes than the emmetropes.

#### Clinical features

▪ **Flashes of light and floaters** are often associated with PVD. Patients may describe floaters as seeing strings, spider webs, small saucer-like objects or a transparent ring in the field of vision. Flashes of light refer to photopsia caused by mechanical stimulation of the retina due to vitreous traction.

▪ **Biomicroscopic examination of the vitreous** reveals:

- A **collapsed vitreous** (*syneresis*) behind the lens and an optically clear space between the detached posterior hyaloid face and the retina.
- A **ring-like opacity** (Weiss ring or Fuchs ring), representing a ring of attachment of vitreous to the optic disc, is pathognomic of PVD.



### Complications of PVD

These include retinal breaks, vitreous haemorrhage, retinal haemorrhages cystoid maculopathy, and retinal detachment. These complications occur due to traction caused at the area of vitreo-retinal adherence. Even though the vitreous may migrate inferiorly when separated from the retina, this process causes less force at the zones of vitreo-retinal adhesions than the traction caused by saccadic eye movements. Saccadically induced dynamic forces play a significant role in the development of retinal breaks, damage to retinal surface and bleeding from the torn vessels (vitreous haemorrhage). Further contraction of the vitreous caused by invasion of retinal pigment epithelial, glial or inflammatory cells may result in sufficient static traction to detach the retina without retinal tears.

### Management

- *Uncomplicated PVD requires no treatment.* Just reassure but give 'retinal detachment warning', i.e. to report immediately on noticing an increase in floaters, or flashing lights or the appearance of persistent curtain or shadow in the field of vision.
- *Retinal tear complicating PVD* may need to be treated by laser photocoagulation.
- *Vitreous haemorrhage complicating PVD* needs to be managed (See page 268).
- *Retinal detachment complicating PVD* requires urgent treatment (See page 311).

### 2. Detachment of the vitreous base and the anterior vitreous

It may occur following blunt trauma. It may be associated with vitreous haemorrhage, anterior retinal dialysis and dislocation of crystalline lens.

### VITREOUS OPACITIES

Since vitreous is a transparent structure, any relatively nontransparent structure present in it will form an opacity and cause symptoms of floaters. Common conditions associated with vitreous opacities are described below.

#### Persistent hyperplastic primary vitreous (PHPV)

See Page 265

#### Muscae volitantes

These are physiological opacities and represent the residues of primitive hyaloid vasculature. Patient perceives them as fine dots and filaments, which often drift in and out of the visual field, against a bright background (e.g. clear blue sky).

#### Inflammatory vitreous opacities

These consist of exudates poured into the vitreous in patients with anterior uveitis (iritidocyclitis), posterior

uveitis (choroiditis), pars planitis, pan uveitis and endophthalmitis.

#### Vitreous degeneration aggregates and condensation with liquefaction

It is the commonest cause of vitreous opacities. Condensation of the collagen fibrillar network is a feature of the vitreous degeneration which may be senile, myopic, post-traumatic or post-inflammatory in origin.

#### Amyloid degeneration

It is a rare condition in which amorphous amyloid material is deposited in the vitreous as a part of the generalised amyloidosis. These vitreous opacities are linear with footplate attachments to the retina and the posterior lens surface.

#### Asteroid hyalosis

It is characterised by small, white rounded bodies suspended in the vitreous gel. These are formed due to accumulation of calcium-containing lipids. Asteroid hyalosis is a unilateral, asymptomatic condition usually seen in old patients with healthy vitreous. Previously, it was thought that there is relationship between this condition, diabetes and hypercholesterolaemia, but this has been subsequently disapproved. The genesis is unknown and neither there is effective treatment, nor is it required.

#### Synchysis scintillans (Cholesterolosis bulbi)

In this condition, vitreous is laden with small white angular and crystalline bodies formed of cholesterol. It affects the damaged eyes which have suffered from trauma, vitreous haemorrhage or inflammatory disease in the past. In this condition, vitreous is liquid and so, the crystals sink to the bottom, but are stirred up with every movement to settle down again with every pause. This phenomenon appears as a beautiful shower of golden rain on ophthalmoscopic examination. Since, the condition occurs in a damaged eye, it may occur at any age. The condition is generally symptomless, and untreatable.

#### Red cell opacities

These are caused by small vitreous haemorrhages or leftouts of the massive vitreous haemorrhage.

#### Tumour cells opacities

These may be seen as free floating opacities in some patients with retinoblastoma, and reticulum cell sarcoma and intraocular lymphomas.

### VITREOUS HAEMORRHAGE

Vitreous haemorrhage usually occurs from the retinal vessels and may present as preretinal



(sub-hyaloid) or an intragel haemorrhage. The intragel haemorrhage may involve anterior, middle, posterior or the whole vitreous body.

### Causes

Causes of vitreous haemorrhage are:

1. *Retinal tear, PVD and RD* may have associated vitreous haemorrhage.
2. *Trauma to eye*, which may be blunt or perforating (with or without retained intraocular foreign body) in nature.
3. *Inflammatory diseases* such as erosion of the vessels in acute chorioretinitis and periphlebitis retinae primary (Eales' disease), or secondary to uveitis.
4. *Vascular disorders*, e.g. hypertensive retinopathy, central retinal vein occlusion (CRVO) and, branch retinal vein occlusion (BRVO).
5. *Metabolic diseases* such as diabetic retinopathy.
6. *Exudative age-related macular degeneration* usually high CNVM, may have vitreous haemorrhage.
7. *Blood dyscrasias*, e.g. retinopathy of anaemia, leukaemias, polycythemia and sickle-cell retinopathy.
8. *Bleeding disorders*, e.g. purpura, haemophilia and scurvy.
9. *Neoplasms*. Vitreous haemorrhage may occur from rupture of vessels due to acute necrosis in tumours like retinoblastoma and malignant melanoma of choroid.
10. *Other causes* include Coat's diseases, radiation retinopathy, retinal capillary aneurysm, retinal macroaneurysm, Terson syndrome.

### Clinical features

Depending upon the location it is labeled as:

- Anterior vitreous haemorrhage,
- Mid vitreous haemorrhage,
- Posterior vitreous haemorrhage, or
- Total vitreous haemorrhage.

### Symptoms

- *Floaters of sudden onset* occur when the vitreous haemorrhage is small.
- *Sudden painless loss of vision* occurs in large vitreous haemorrhage.

### Signs

- *Distant direct ophthalmoscopy* reveals black shadows against the red glow in small haemorrhages and no red glow in a large haemorrhage.
- *Direct and indirect ophthalmoscopy* may show presence of blood in the vitreous cavity in small

vitreous haemorrhage and non-visualization of fundus in large vitreous haemorrhage.

- *Slit-lamp examination* shows normal anterior segment and a reddish mass in the vitreous.
- *Ultrasonography* with B-scan is particularly helpful in diagnosing vitreous haemorrhage.

### Fate of vitreous haemorrhage

1. *Complete absorption* may occur without organization and the vitreous becomes clear within 4–8 weeks.
2. *Organization* of haemorrhage with formation of a yellowish-white debris occurs in persistent or recurrent bleeding.
3. *Complications* like vitreous liquefaction, degeneration and khaki cell glaucoma (in aphakia) may occur.
4. *Retinitis proliferans* may occur which may be complicated by tractional retinal detachment.

### Treatment

1. *Conservative treatment* consists of bed rest and elevation of patient's head. This will allow the blood to settle down. Most of the time conservative treatment is sufficient.
2. *Treatment of the cause*. Once the blood settles down, indirect ophthalmoscopy should be performed to locate and further manage the causative lesion such as a retinal break, phlebitis, proliferative retinopathy, etc.
3. *Vitrectomy* by pars plana route should be considered to clear the vitreous, if the haemorrhage is not absorbed after 3 months. Early vitrectomy may be required when associated with retinal detachment.

## VITREO-RETINAL DEGENERATIONS

See page 299.

### VITRECTOMY

Vitrectomy, i.e. surgical removal of the vitreous is now a frequently performed procedure. Common terms used in relation to vitrectomy are:

- *Anterior vitrectomy*. It refers to removal of anterior part of the vitreous.
- *Core vitrectomy*. It refers to removal of the central bulk of the vitreous. It is usually indicated in endophthalmitis.
- *Subtotal and total vitrectomy*. In this almost whole of the vitreous is removed.

### TECHNIQUES

#### Anterior vitrectomy: Limbal approach

This technique is employed to perform only anterior vitrectomy.



### Indications

- Vitreous loss during cataract extraction.
- Aphakic keratoplasty.
- Anterior chamber reconstruction after perforating trauma with vitreous loss.
- Subluxated and anteriorly dislocated lens.

### Surgical technique

Anterior vitrectomy is performed through the primary or new limbal or clear corneal incision to manage the disturbed vitreous during cataract surgery or in aphakic keratoplasty. It should be performed using an automated vitrectomy machine. However, if the vitrectomy machine is not available, it can be performed with the help of a triangular cellulose sponge and de Wecker's or Vanna's scissors (*sponge vitrectomy*).

### Pars plana vitrectomy

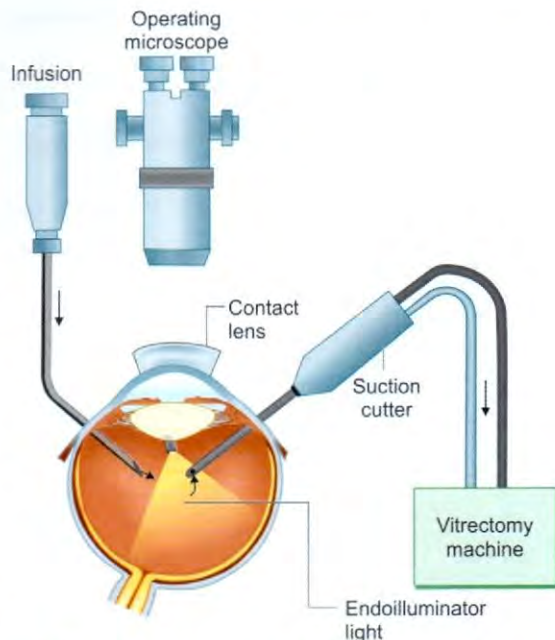
Pars plana approach is employed to perform anterior vitrectomy, core vitrectomy, subtotal and total vitrectomy.

### Indications

- Endophthalmitis with vitreous abscess.
- Vitreous haemorrhage.
- Proliferative retinopathies such as those associated with diabetes, Eales' disease, retinopathy of prematurity and retinitis proliferans.
- Complicated cases of retinal detachment such as those associated with giant retinal tears, retinal dialysis and massive vitreous traction. Presently, even simple cases of rhegmatogenous retinal detachment are managed with this technique.
- Removal of intraocular foreign bodies.
- Removal of dropped nucleus or intraocular lens from the vitreous cavity.
- Persistent primary hyperplastic vitreous.
- Vitreous membranes and bands.
- Macular pathology like macular hole, and epiretinal membrane.

### Surgical techniques

**Three-port pars plana vitrectomy (PPV)** or divided system approach is the most commonly employed technique in modern vitrectomy. In this technique, three separate incisions are given in pars plana region. The cutting and aspiration functions are contained in one probe, illumination is provided by a separate fiberoptic probe and infusion is provided by a cannula introduced through the third pars plana incision (Fig. 11.3). Conventional PPV uses 20 gauge vitrectomy probe. **23, 25 and 27 gauge three-port vitrectomy techniques** introduced recently are becoming increasingly popular alternatives to the standard 20 gauge vitrectomy.



**Fig. 11.3** Three-port pars plana vitrectomy using divided system approach

Their advantages include self-sealing sclerotomy sites, improved patient comfort, reduced postoperative inflammation and more rapid visual recovery.

**Advantages of divided system approach** include smaller instruments, easy handling, improved visualization, use of bimanual technique and adequate infusion by separate cannula.

### ■ VITREOUS SUBSTITUTES

Vitreous substitutes or the so called tamponading agents are used in vitreoretinal surgery to:

- Restore intraocular pressure, and
- Provide intraocular tamponade.

**An ideal vitreous substitute** should be:

- Having a high surface tension,
- Optically clear, and
- Biologically inert.

**Currently used vitreous substitutes** in the absence of an ideal substitute are:

- 1. Air** is commonly used internal tamponade in uncomplicated cases. It is absorbed within 3 days.
- 2. Physiological solutions** such as Ringer's lactate or balanced salt solution (BSS) can be used as substitute after vitrectomy for endophthalmitis or uncomplicated vitreous haemorrhage.
- 3. Expanding gases** are preferred over air in complex cases requiring prolonged intraocular tamponade. They are used as 40% mixture with air. Examples are:



- *Sulphur hexafluoride* ( $\text{SF}_6$ ). It doubles its volume and lasts for 10 days.
- *Perfluoropropane* ( $\text{C}_3\text{F}_8$ ). It quadruples its volume and lasts for 28 days.

**4. Perfluorocarbon liquids** (PFCLs) are heavy liquids which are mainly used:

- To remove dropped nucleus or IOL from the vitreous cavity,
- To unfold a giant retinal tear, and
- To stabilize the posterior retina during peeling of the epiretinal membrane.

*Agents* used are perfluoro-n-octane, perfluorotributylamine, perfluorodecalin and perfluorophenanthrene.

**5. Silicone oil** allows more controlled retinal manipulation during operation and can be used for prolonged intraocular tamponade after retinal detachment surgery.



## Diseases of Retina

### APPLIED ANATOMY

#### CONGENITAL AND DEVELOPMENTAL DISORDERS OF RETINA

#### INFLAMMATORY DISORDERS OF RETINA

- Retinitis
- Retinal vasculitis

#### VASCULAR DISORDERS OF RETINA

- Retinal artery occlusions
- Retinal vein occlusions
- Hypertensive retinopathy
- Retinopathy in pregnancy-induced hypertension
- Diabetic retinopathy
- Sickle-cell retinopathy
- Retinopathy of prematurity
- Retinopathies of blood disorders
- Primary retinal telangiectasia
- Ocular ischaemic syndrome

#### DYSTROPHIES AND DEGENERATIONS OF RETINA

- Retinal dystrophies
- Retinal degenerations

### MACULAR DISORDERS

#### RETINAL DETACHMENT

- Rhegmatogenous
- Exudative
- Tractional

#### TUMOURS OF RETINA

- Neuroretinal tumours
- Retinal vascular tumours
- Primary vitreoretinal lymphoma
- Retinal pigment epithelium tumours

#### PHACOMATOSES

- Angiomas of retinae
- Tuberous sclerosis
- Neurofibromatosis
- Encephalofacial angiomas

#### ENUCLEATION

- Indications
- Surgical steps

### APPLIED ANATOMY

Retina, the innermost tunic of the eyeball, is a thin, delicate and transparent membrane, which is the most highly-developed tissue of the eye. It appears purplish-red due to the visual purple of the rods and underlying vascular choroid.

#### Gross Anatomy

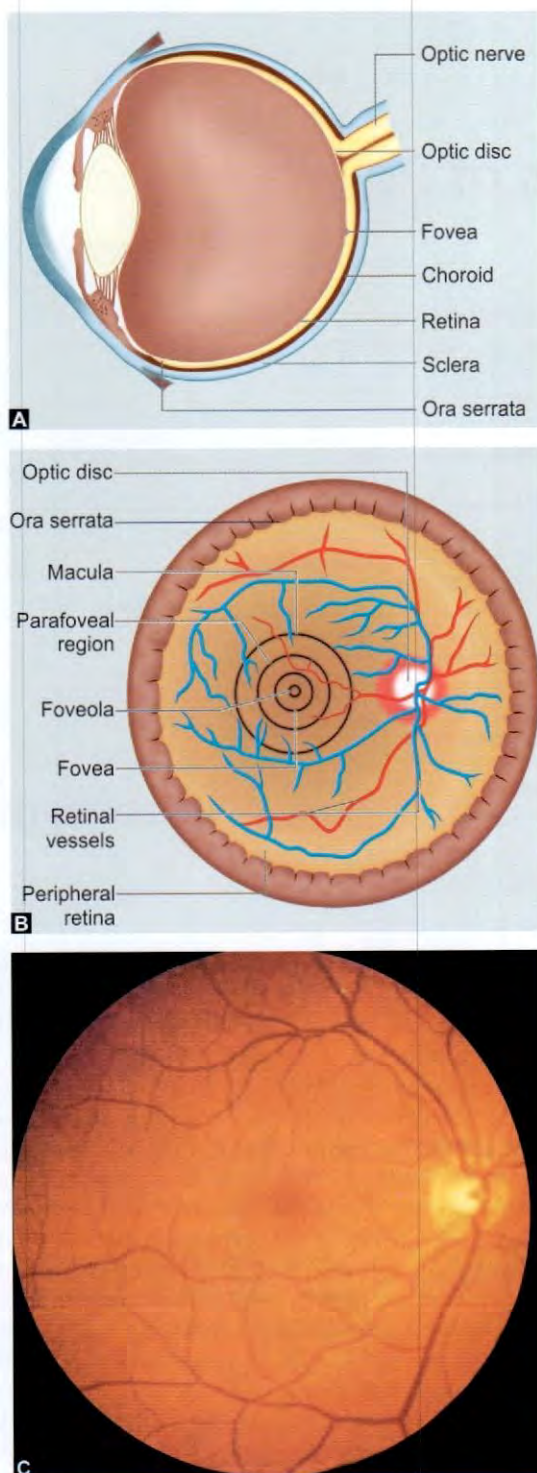
Retina extends from the optic disc to the ora serrata with a *surface area* of about 266 mm<sup>2</sup>. Retina is *thickest* in the peripapillary region (0.56 mm) and *thinnest* at ora serrata (0.1 mm). Grossly, it can be divided into two distinct regions: posterior pole and peripheral retina separated by the so called *retinal equator* an imaginary line which is considered to lie in line with the exit of the four vena vorticosae.

**Posterior pole** refers to the area of retina posterior to the retinal equator. It is best examined by slit-lamp indirect biomicroscopy using +78 D and +90 D lens and by direct ophthalmoscopy. The posterior pole of the retina includes two distinct areas: the optic disc and macula lutea (Fig. 12.1).

**Optic disc** also known as optic nerve head, is a pink coloured, well-defined vertically oval area with average dimension of 1.76 mm horizontally and 1.88 mm vertically. It is placed 3.4 mm nasal to the fovea. At the optic disc, all the retinal layers terminate except the nerve fibres (1–1.2 million), which pass through the lamina cribrosa to run into the optic nerve. The optic disc thus represents the beginning of the optic nerve and so is also referred to as *optic nerve head*. A depression seen in the disc is called the *physiological cup*. The central retinal artery and vein emerge through the centre of this cup. Because of absence of photoreceptors (rods and cones), the optic disc produces an absolute scotoma in the visual field called as *physiological blind spot*.

**Macula lutea**, also called the *yellow spot*, is comparatively darker than the surrounding fundus and is situated at the posterior pole temporal to the optic disc. It is about 5.5 mm in diameter. *Fovea centralis* is the central depressed part of the macula. It is about 1.5 mm in diameter and is the most sensitive part of the retina. With lowest threshold for light and highest visual acuity, because it contains only cones,





**Fig. 12.1** Gross anatomy of the retina: A, Parts of retina in horizontal section at the level of fovea; B, Diagrammatic fundus view; C, Fundus photograph

in its centre is a shining pit called *foveola* (0.35 mm diameter) which is situated about 2 disc diameters (3–4 mm) away from the temporal margin of the disc and about 1 mm below the horizontal meridian. The tiny depression in the centre of foveola is called *umbo* which is seen as shining foveal reflex on fundus examination. An area about 0.8 mm in diameter (including foveola and some surrounding area) does not contain any retinal capillaries and is called *foveal avascular zone* (FAZ). Surrounding the fovea are the parafoveal and perifoveal areas.

**Peripheral retina** refers to the area bounded posteriorly by the retinal equator and anteriorly by the ora serrata. Peripheral retina is best examined with indirect ophthalmoscopy and the Goldman three mirror contact lens examination (gives more magnified view).

**Ora serrata.** It is the serrated peripheral margin where the retina ends. Here the retina is firmly attached both to the vitreous and the choroid. The pars plana extends anteriorly from the ora serrata.

### Microscopic structure

Retina consists of ten layers, arranged in two distinct functional components the *pigment epithelium* and the *neurosensory retina* with a potential space between the two. The neurosensory retina consists of three types of cells and their synapses (Fig. 12.2):

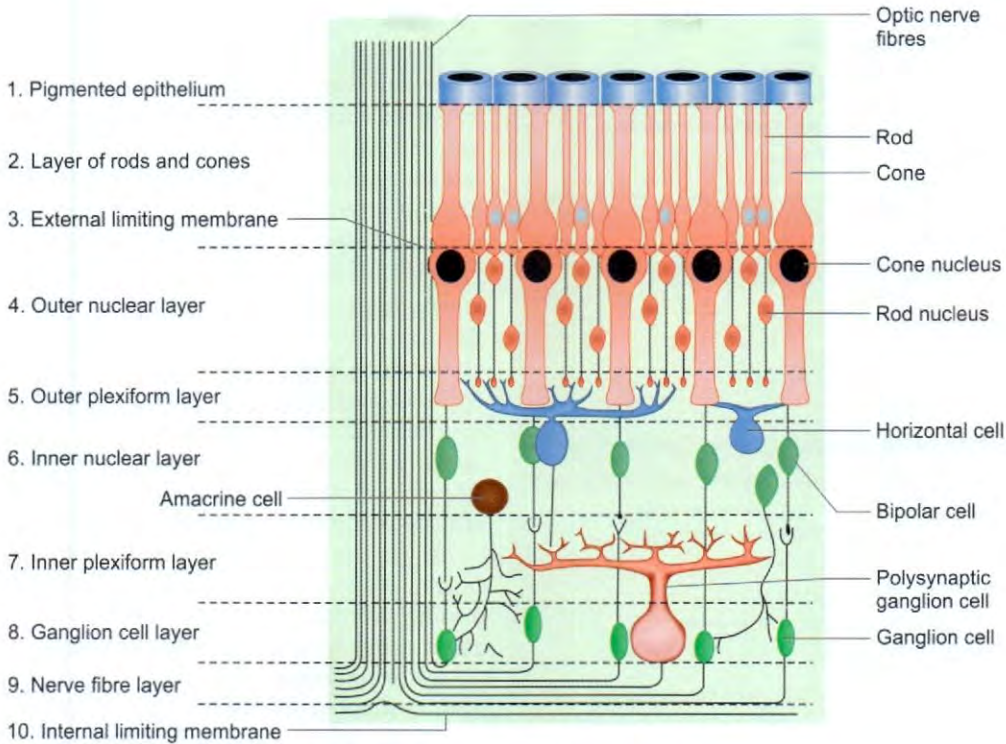
**1. Pigment epithelium.** It is the outermost layer of retina. It consists of a single layer of cells containing pigment. It is firmly adherent to the underlying basal lamina (Bruch's membrane) of the choroid. Pigment epithelium provides metabolic support to the neurosensory retina and also acts as an antireflective layer.

**Interphotoreceptor matrix (IPM)** is present in the potential space between pigment epithelium and the neurosensory retina and constitutes a strong binding mechanism between the two (by binding pigment epithelium to the photoreceptor).

**Functions of IPM** include retina attachment and adhesions, molecular trafficking, facilitation of phagocytosis and probably photoreceptor outer segment alignment.

**Constituent molecules of IPM** include: Interphotoreceptor retinal binding protein (IRBP), proteoglycans, glycosaminoglycans (sulphated and nonsulphated chondroitin and hyaluronic acid), fibronectin, sialoprotein associated with rods and cones (SPARC), intercellular adhesion molecules, hyaluronic acid receptor (CD44 antigen), and lysosomal enzymes (matrix metalloproteinases and tissue inhibitors of metalloproteinases, i.e. TIMP).





**Fig. 12.2** Microscopic structure of the retina

**2. Layer of rods and cones.** Rods and cones are the end organs of vision and are also known as *photoreceptors*. Layer of rods and cones contains only the outer segments of photoreceptor cells arranged in a palisade manner. There are about 120 millions rods and 6.5 millions cones. *Rods* contain a photosensitive substance visual purple (*rhodopsin*) and subserve the peripheral vision and vision of low illumination (*scotopic vision*). *Cones* also contain a photosensitive substance and are primarily responsible for highly discriminatory central vision (*photopic vision*) and colour vision.

**3. External limiting membrane.** It is a fenestrated membrane, through which pass processes of the rods and cones.

**4. Outer nuclear layer.** It consists of nuclei of rods and cones.

**5. Outer plexiform layer.** It consists of connections of rod spherules and cone pedicles with the dendrites of bipolar cells and horizontal cells.

**6. Inner nuclear layer.** It mainly consists of cell bodies of bipolar cells. It also contains cell bodies of horizontal, amacrine and Muller's cells and capillaries of central artery of retina. The bipolar cells constitute the *first order neurons*.

**7. Inner plexiform layer.** It essentially consists of connections between the axons of bipolar cells and

dendrites of the ganglion cells, and processes of amacrine cells.

**8. Ganglion cell layer.** It mainly contains the cell bodies of ganglion cells (the *second order neurons* of visual pathway). There are two types of ganglion cells. The *midget ganglion cells* are present in the macular region and the dendrite of each such cell synapses with the axon of single bipolar cell. *Polysynaptic ganglion cells* lie predominantly in peripheral retina and each such cell may synapse with up to a hundred bipolar cells.

**9. Nerve fibre layer** (stratum opticum) consists of axons of the ganglion cells, which pass through the lamina cribrosa to form the optic nerve. For distribution and arrangement of retinal nerve fibres See Figures 10.12 and 10.13, respectively and page 240.

**10. Internal limiting membrane.** It is the innermost layer and separates the retina from vitreous. It is formed by the union of terminal expansions of the Muller's fibres, and is essentially a basement membrane.

### Structure of fovea centralis

In this area (Fig. 12.3), there are no rods, cones are tightly packed and other layers of retina are very thin. Its central part (foveola) largely consists of cones and their nuclei covered by a thin internal limiting membrane. All other retinal layers are absent in this



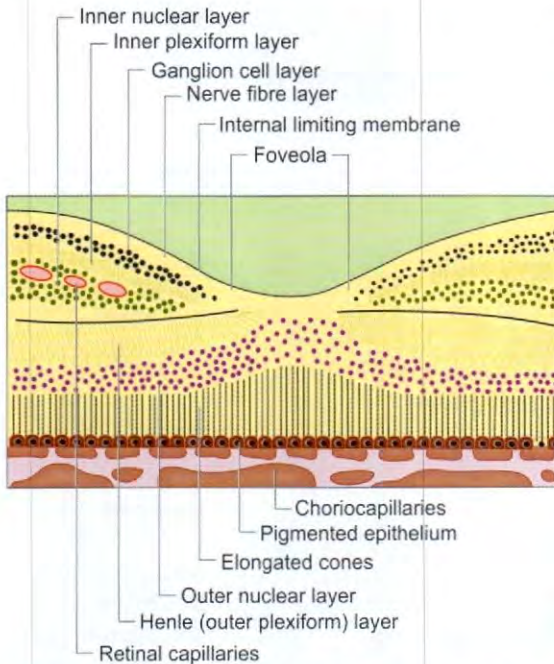


Fig. 12.3 Microscopic structure of the fovea centralis

region. In the foveal region surrounding the foveola, the cone axons are arranged obliquely (Henle's layer) to reach the margin of the fovea.

#### Functional divisions of retina

Functionally, retina can be divided into *temporal retina* and *nasal retina* by a line drawn vertically through the centre of fovea. Nerve fibres arising from temporal retina pass through the optic nerve and optic tract of the same side to terminate in the ipsilateral geniculate body while the nerve fibres originating from the nasal retina after passing through the optic nerve cross in the optic chiasma and travel through the contralateral optic tract to terminate in the contralateral geniculate body. *Neurons of geniculate body* constitutes the *third order neurons* in visual pathway (See Fig. 13.4).

#### Blood supply

**Outer four layers of the retina**, viz, pigment epithelium, layer of rods and cones, external limiting membrane and outer nuclear layer are avascular and get their nutrition from the choroidal and vascular system formed by contribution from anterior ciliary arteries and posterior ciliary arteries.

**Inner six layers** of retina are vascular and get their supply from the central retinal artery, which is a branch of the ophthalmic artery. In some individuals, *cilioretinal artery* (branch from posterior ciliary arteries) is present as a congenital variation and supplies the macular

area. In such cases central vision is retained in the eventuality of central retinal artery occlusion (CRAO). **Central retinal artery** emerges from centre of the physiological cup of the optic disc and divides into four branches, namely—the superior-nasal, superior-temporal, inferior-nasal and inferior-temporal. These are end arteries, i.e. they do not anastomose with each other. However, anastomosis between the retinal vessels and ciliary system of vessels (short posterior ciliary arteries) does exist with the vessels which enter the optic nerve head from the arterial circle of Zinn or Haller. Branches of this circle invade lamina cribrosa and also send branches to the optic nerve head (optic disc) and the surrounding retina.

**Retinal veins** follow the pattern of the retinal arteries. The central retinal vein drains into the cavernous sinus directly or through the superior ophthalmic vein. The only place where the retinal system anastomosis with ciliary system is in the region of lamina cribrosa.

#### Blood supply of optic nerve head (optic disc):

- **Surface nerve fibre layer:** From retinal arterioles.
- **Prelaminar region:** Vessels of ciliary region.
- **Lamina cribrosa region:** Short posterior ciliary arteries and circle of Zinn.
- **Retrolaminar region:** Supplied by both ciliary and retinal circulation.

## CONGENITAL AND DEVELOPMENTAL DISORDERS OF RETINA

### CLASSIFICATION

1. **Anomalies of the optic disc.** These include crescents, sites inverses, congenital pigmentation, coloboma, drusen and hypoplasia of the optic disc.
2. **Anomalies of the nerve fibres**, e.g. medullated (opaque) nerve fibres.
3. **Anomalies of vascular elements**, such as persistent hyaloid artery and congenital tortuosity of retinal vessels.
4. **Anomalies of the retina proper.** These include albinism, congenital night blindness, congenital day blindness, Oguchi's disease, congenital retinal cyst, congenital retinoschisis, congenital retinal detachment and coloboma of the fundus.
5. **Congenital anomalies of the macula** are aplasia, hypoplasia and coloboma.

A few important congenital disorders are described briefly.

### COLOBOMA OF THE OPTIC DISC

It results from the failure in closure of the embryonic fissure. It occurs in two forms.



**Minor defect** is more common and manifests as *inferior crescent*, usually in association with hypermetropic or astigmatic refractive error.

**Fully-developed coloboma** typically presents inferonasally as a very large whitish excavation, which apparently looks as the optic disc. The actual optic disc is seen as a linear horizontal pinkish band confined to a small superior wedge. Defective vision and superior visual field defect is usually associated.

### ■ DRUSEN OF THE OPTIC DISC

Drusens are intrapapillary refractile bodies, which usually lie deep beneath the surface of the disc tissue in childhood and emerge out by the early teens. Thus, in children they present as pseudo-papilloedema and by teens they can be recognised ophthalmoscopically as waxy pea-like irregular retractile bodies.

### ■ HYPOPLASIA OF OPTIC DISC

Hypoplasia of the optic nerve may occur as an isolated anomaly or in association with other anomalies of central nervous system. The condition is bilateral in 60% of cases. It is associated with maternal alcohol use, diabetes and intake of certain drugs in pregnancy. It forms a significant cause of blindness at birth in developed countries. In typical cases the disc is small and surrounded by a yellowish and a pigmented ring; referred to as 'double ring sign'.

### ■ MEDULLATED NERVE FIBRES

These, also known as *opaque nerve fibres*, represent myelination of nerve fibres of the retina. Normally, the medullation of optic nerve proceeds from brain downwards to the eyeball and stops at the level of lamina cribrosa. Occasionally, the process of myelination continues after birth for an invariable distance in the nerve fibre layer of retina beyond the optic disc. On ophthalmoscopic examination, these appear as a whitish patch with feathery margins, usually present adjoining the disc margin. The traversing retinal vessels are partially concealed by the opaque nerve fibres (Fig. 12.4). Such a lesion, characteristically, exhibits *enlargement of blind spot* on visual field charting. The medullary sheaths disappear in demyelinating disorders and optic atrophy (due to any cause) and thus no trace of this abnormality is left behind.

### ■ PERSISTENT HYALOID ARTERY

Congenital remnants of the hyaloid arterial system may persist in different forms.

**Bergmeister's papilla** refers to the flake of glial tissue projecting from the optic disc. It is the commonest congenital anomaly of the hyaloid system.

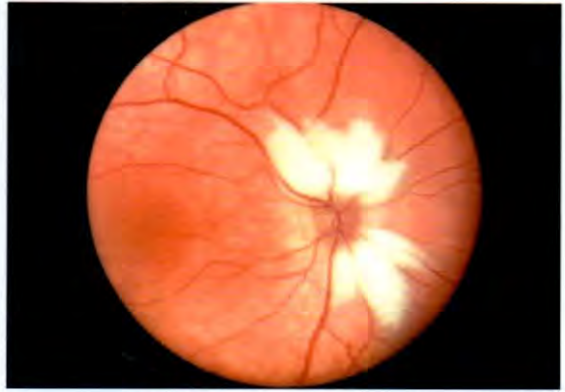


Fig. 12.4 Opaque nerve fibres

**Vascular loop** or a thread of obliterated vessel may sometimes be seen running forward into the vitreous. It may even be reaching up to the back of the lens.

**Mittendorf dot** represents remnant of the anterior end of hyaloid artery, attached to the posterior lens capsule. It is usually associated with a posterior polar cataract.

## INFLAMMATORY DISORDERS OF RETINA

These may present as retinitis (pure retinal inflammation), chorioretinitis (inflammation of retina and choroid), neuroretinitis (inflammation of optic disc and surrounding retina), or retinal vasculitis (inflammation of the retinal vessels).

### ■ RETINITIS

#### I. Infectious retinitis

**1. Bacterial retinitis.** Retinitis caused by pyogenic organisms may be either acute or subacute.

**Acute purulent retinitis.** It occurs as metastatic infection in patients with pyaemia. The infection usually involves the surrounding structures and soon converts into metastatic endophthalmitis or even panophthalmitis.

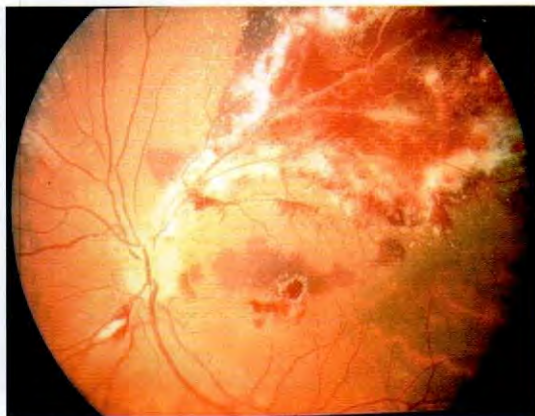
**Subacute retinitis of Roth.** It typically occurs in patients suffering from subacute bacterial endocarditis (SABE). It is characterised by multiple superficial retinal haemorrhages, involving posterior part of the fundus. Most of the haemorrhages have a white spot in the centre (Roth's spots). Vision may be blurred due to involvement of the macular region or due to associated papillitis.

*Non-pyogenic bacteria causing retinitis* include: Tuberculosis, leprosy, syphilis and actinomycosis.

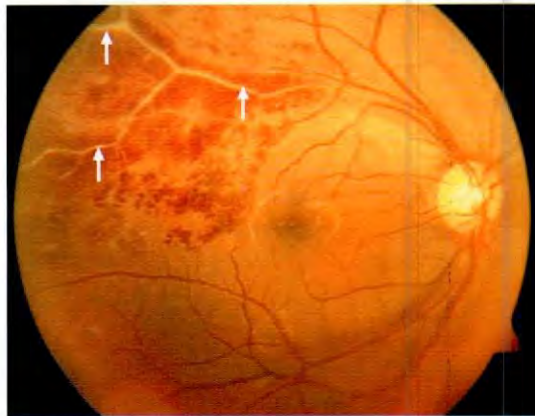
**2. Viral retinitis.** For example, cytomegalic inclusion disease, rubella, and herpes zoster.

**Cytomegalovirus (CMV) retinitis** (Fig. 12.5), zoster retinitis, progressive outer retinal necrosis (PORN)





**Fig. 12.5** Fundus photograph showing typical cytomegalovirus (CMV) retinitis in a patient with AIDS. Note white necrotic retina associated with retina haemorrhages



**Fig. 12.6** Fundus photograph of a patient with Eales' disease (stage of inflammation). Note venous congestion, perivascular exudates and sheets of haemorrhages present near the affected veins

caused by an aggressive variant of varicella zoster virus, and acute retinal necrosis (ARN) caused by herpes simplex virus II (in patients under the age of 15 years) and by varicella zoster virus and herpes simplex virus-I (in older individuals) have become more conspicuous in patients with AIDS (HIV infection).

**3. Mycotic, rickettsial or parasitic retinitis** is also known to occur.

## II. Non-infectious retinitis

Usually occurs as chorioretinitis or neuroretinitis (See page 167)

### ■ RETINAL VASCULITIS

Inflammation of the retinal vessels wall may be primary (Eales' disease) or secondary to uveitis.

#### Eales' disease

It is an idiopathic inflammation of the peripheral retinal veins. It is characterised by recurrent vitreous haemorrhage; so also referred to as primary vitreous haemorrhage. It is an important cause of visual morbidity in young Asian males.

**Etiology.** It is not known exactly. Many workers consider it to be a hypersensitivity reaction to tubercular proteins.

**Clinical features.** It is a bilateral disease, typically affecting young adult males (20–30 years). The common presenting symptoms are:

- **Sudden appearance of floaters** (black spots) in front of the eye due to small haemorrhages.
- **Sudden painless loss of vision** due to large vitreous haemorrhage. The haemorrhage clears up but recurrences are very common.

**Clinical course** of the Eales' disease can be described in four stages:

**1. Stage of active inflammation (active retinal vasculitis)** (Fig. 12.6). The affected peripheral veins are congested and perivascular exudates and sheathing are seen along their surface. Superficial haemorrhages ranging from flame-shaped to sheets of haemorrhages may be present near the affected veins.

**2. Stage of ischaemia or vascular occlusion** is characterized by obliteration of the involved vessels and development of areas of capillary non-perfusion (CNP) in the periphery as evidenced on fundus fluorescein angiography.

**3. Stage of retinal neovascularization** is marked by development of abnormal fragile vessels at the junction of perfused and non-perfused retina. Bleeding from these vessels leads to recurrent vitreous haemorrhage.

**4. Stage of sequelae or advance stage of disease** is characterized by development of complications such as proliferative vitreoretinopathy, tractional retinal detachment, rubeosis iridis and neovascular glaucoma.

**Treatment** of Eales' disease comprises:

#### 1. Medical treatment.

- **Oral corticosteroids** for extended periods is the mainstay of treatment during stage of active inflammation.
- **Antitubercular therapy** course has also been recommended in selective cases.

**2. Laser photocoagulation** of the retina either PRP or feeder vessel photocoagulation is indicated in stage of neovascularization.



**3. Vitreoretinal surgery** is required for non-resolving vitreous haemorrhage and tractional retinal detachment.

### VASCULAR DISORDERS OF RETINA

Common vascular disorders of retina include: retinal artery occlusions, retinal vein occlusions, diabetic retinopathy, hypertensive retinopathy, sickle cell retinopathy, retinopathy of prematurity and retinal telangiectasia.

### RETINAL ARTERY OCCLUSIONS

#### Etiology

Occlusive disorders of retinal vessels are more common in patients suffering from hypertension and other cardiovascular diseases. Common causes of retinal artery occlusion are:

**1. Emboli** from the carotid artery and those of cardiac origin are the most common cause of CRAO. Three types of emboli are known:

- **Cholesterol emboli** (Hollenhorst plaque) are refractile and orange and seen at retinal vessel bifurcation. These arise from atheromas in the carotid artery.
- **Calcium emboli** are white in colour and arise from the cardiac valves.
- **Platelet fibrin emboli** are dull white in colour and arise from atheromas in the carotid artery. They may cause retinal ischaemic attacks (TIA).

**2. Atherosclerosis-related thrombosis** at the level of lamina cribrosa is another common cause of CRAO.

**3. Retinal arteritis with obliteration** (associated with giant cell arteritis) and periarteritis (associated with polyarteritis nodosa, systemic lupus erythematosus, Wegner's granulomatosis and scleroderma) are other causes of CRAO.

**4. Angiospasm** is a rare cause of retinal artery occlusion. It is commonly associated with amaurosis.

**5. Raised intraocular pressure** may occasionally be associated with obstruction of retinal arteries, for example, due to tight encirclage in retinal detachment surgery.

**6. Thrombophilic disorders** such as inherited defects of anticoagulants may occasionally be associated with CRAO in young individuals.

**7. Other rare causes** are retinal migraine, sickling haemoglobinopathies and hypercoagulation disorders such as oral contraceptives, polycythemia, and antiphospholipid syndrome.

#### Clinical features

Clinically retinal artery occlusion may present as central retinal artery occlusion (60%) or branch artery

occlusion (35%) or cilioretinal artery occlusion (5%). It is more common in males than females. It is usually unilateral but rarely may be bilateral (1 to 2% cases).

#### 1. Central retinal artery occlusion (CRAO)

It occurs due to obstruction at the level of lamina cribrosa.

**Symptoms.** Patient complains of sudden painless loss of vision occurring over seconds. Patient may give history of transient visual loss (amaurosis fugax) in the past.

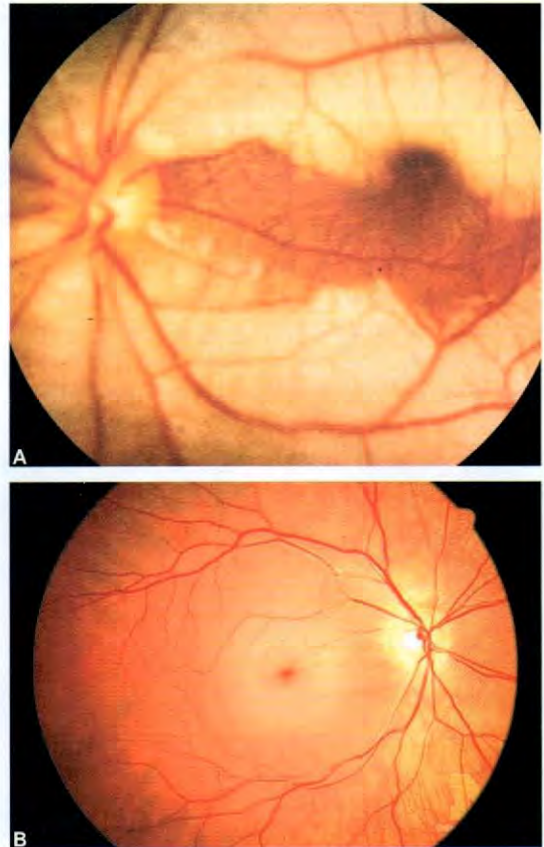
**Signs** of CRAO are as below:

**1. Visual acuity** is markedly reduced (<3/60 in 90% cases) except in a few cases with cilioretinal artery supplying the macula (Fig. 12.7).

**2. Direct pupillary reflex** is absent and relative afferent pupillary defect (RAPD) is positive.

**3. Fundus examination** shows (Fig. 12.7):

- **Marked narrowing of retinal arteries** and mild narrowing of retinal veins.



**Fig. 12.7** Fundus photograph showing marked retinal pallor in acute central retinal artery occlusion (CRAO): A, With sparing of the territory supplied by cilioretinal artery; B, Cherry-red spot in the absence of cilioretinal artery



- *Retina becomes milky white* due to ischaemic oedema. In eyes with cilioretinal artery part of macula remains normal in colour (Fig. 12.7A).
- *Cherry-red spot* is seen in the center of macula due to vascular choroid shining through the thin retina in foveal region, in contrast to the surrounding pale retina (Fig. 12.7B).
- *Cattle trucking*, i.e. segmentation of blood column is seen in the retinal veins.
- *Atrophic changes*. In most cases retinal oedema resolves over a period of 4–6 weeks and atrophic changes in the form of grossly attenuated thread like arteries atrophic appearing retina and consecutive optic atrophy occur in long standing cases.

#### 4. Fundus imaging studies include:

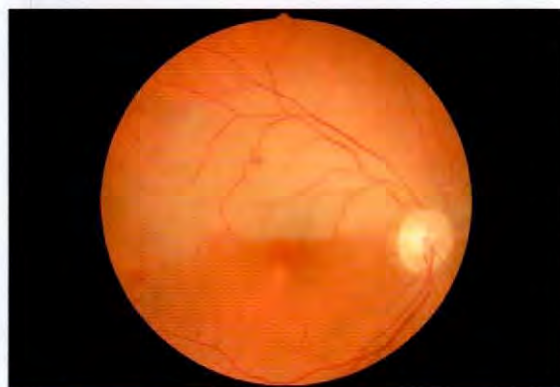
- *OCT* shows hyperreflectivity with thickening of inferior retina.
- *Autofluorescence imaging* shows reduced autofluorescence.
- *Fundus fluorescein angiography* (FFA) shows delay in arterial filling (cilioretinal artery when present will fill in early phase) and masking of choroidal vasculature due to retinal oedema.

## II. Branch retinal artery occlusion (BRAO)

It usually occurs following lodgement of embolus at a bifurcation. Retina distal to occlusion becomes oedematous with narrowed arterioles (Fig. 12.8). Later on the involved area is atrophied leading to permanent sectoral visual field defect.

### Management

Treatment of central retinal artery occlusion is unsatisfactory, as retinal tissue cannot survive ischaemia for more than 90–100 minutes.



**Fig. 12.8** Superotemporal branch of retinal artery occlusion (BRAO). Note retinal pallor in superotemporal area and whitish emboli on the optic disc and in superior temporal branch of retinal artery

**A. Aggressive treatment of acute episodes of CRAO** should be done in all cases presenting within 24 hours of onset with following measures:

1. *Immediate lowering of intraocular pressure* may aid the arterial perfusion and also help in dislodging the embolus, measure include:

- *Intermittent ocular massage*,
- *Intravenous mannitol*,
- *Paracentesis of anterior chamber* has been recommended for this purpose, and
- *Intravenous acetazolamide 500 mg* should be given immediately.

2. *Inhalation of a mixture* of 5% carbon dioxide and 95% oxygen (practically patient should be asked to breathe in a polythene bag) may help by relieving element of angiospasm.

3. *Vasodilators* like sublingual or transdermal nitroglycerine and oral isosorbide dinitrate should be given immediately. Retrobulbar injection of acetylcholine may also produce vasodilatation.

4. *Fibrinolytic therapy* may be helpful in some cases.

5. *Intravenous steroids* are indicated in patients with giant cell arteritis.

6. *Laser photodisruption* of the embolus has been reported in selected cases to dislodge the embolus.

**B. Work-up for associated systemic conditions** especially cardiovascular review including Doppler studies and echocardiography should be carried out immediately after the emergency management of acute episodes and corrective measures instituted.

### Complications

In some cases, 'neovascular glaucoma' with incidence varying from 2% to 6%, may occur as a delayed complication of central retinal artery occlusion.

## RETINAL VEINOUS OCCLUSIVE DISEASE

Retinal vein occlusions are more common than the artery occlusions. These typically affect elderly patients in sixth or seventh decade of life.

### Etiopathogenesis

#### Pathogenesis

Retinal venous occlusive disease results due to thrombus formation.

**Pressure on the vein by an atherosclerotic retinal artery** where the two share a common adventitia (e.g. just behind the lamina cribrosa and at arteriovenous crossings), secondarily induces thrombosis in the lumen of vein in predisposed patients. According to Virchow's triad the factors which cause thrombus formation are slowing of blood stream, changes in vessel wall (damage to endothelium) and changes in the blood.



**Predisposing factors** include:

1. **Age** is the most important factor which affects all the three components of Virchow's triad. Most cases occur above 50 years of age.
2. **Hypertension and diabetes mellitus** are very common predisposing factors.
3. **Hyperviscosity of blood** as in polycythemia, hyperlipidemia, macroglobulinemia, leukemia, multiple myeloma, cryoglobulinemia, hyperhomocysteinemia (common)
4. **Periphlebitis retinae** which can be central or peripheral associated with sarcoidosis, syphilis, SLE, Behcet's disease, and Wegener's granulomatosis.
5. **Raised intraocular pressure.** Central retinal vein occlusion is more common in patients with primary open-angle glaucoma.
6. **Oral contraceptive pills** in younger females and **hormone replacement therapy (HRT)** in elderly females are common risk factors.
7. **Smoking** also predisposes to venous occlusive diseases.
8. **Local causes** are orbital cellulitis, orbital tumors, facial erysipelas and cavernous sinus thrombosis.

#### **Classification to Retinal venous occlusive disease**

1. **Central retinal vein occlusion (CRVO).** It may be:
  - Impending central retinal vein occlusion
  - Non-ischaemic CRVO (venous stasis retinopathy)
  - Ischaemic CRVO (haemorrhagic retinopathy).
2. **Branch retinal vein occlusion (BRVO)** includes:
  - Hemiretinal vein occlusion,
  - Quadretinal vein occlusion, and
  - Small branch occlusion.

### **CENTRAL RETINAL VEIN OCCLUSION**

#### **Impending central retinal venous occlusion**

Impending (partial) CRVO is more common in younger patients as compared to adults.

#### **Clinical features**

##### **Symptoms**

*Mild blurring of vision*, which is worse on waking and improves over the day.

##### **Signs**

Mild retinal venous dilatation and tortuosity; associated with few, scattered, small flame shaped haemorrhages and mild macular oedema.

#### **Investigations**

- OCT reveals mild macular oedema.
- FFA shows increased retinal circulation time.
- Fundus autofluorescence (FAF) may show a fern-like perivenular appearance.

**Treatment** is empirical, and aimed at preventing progression and includes:

- Correcting the predisposing factors.
- Avoiding dehydration
- Lowering IOP by topical beta blocker and/or topical and oral carbonic anhydrase inhibitors.
- Antiplatelet agents and other anticoagulant measures may be tried.

#### **Non-ischaemic CRVO**

Non-ischaemic CRVO (venous stasis retinopathy) is the most common clinical variety (75%).

#### **Clinical features**

**Vision:** Unilateral mild to moderate blurring of vision of sudden onset is the presenting symptom.

**Relative afferent papillary defect (RAPD)** is absent or very mild.

#### **Fundus examination:**

**Early cases** show (Fig. 12.9):

- Mild venous congestion and tortuosity
- Superficial flame-shaped haemorrhages more in the peripheral than the posterior retina
- Mild papilloedema and mild or no macular oedema.

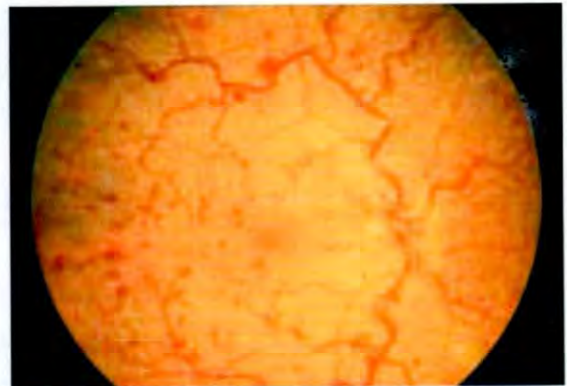
**Late stages** (after 6–9 months), there appear:

- Sheathing around the main veins,
- Cilioretinal collaterals around the disc.
- Retinal haemorrhages are partly absorbed.
- Chronic cystoid oedema in moderate cases. Macula may be normal in mild cases.

**Note.** About 15% cases of non-ischaemic CRVO are converted to ischaemic CRVO in 4 months and about 30% in 3 years.

#### **Ischaemic CRVO**

Ischaemic CRVO (haemorrhagic retinopathy) refers to acute (sudden) complete occlusion of central retinal vein.



**Fig. 12.9** Central retinal vein occlusion (non-ischaemic)



**Clinical features**

It is characterised by marked sudden visual loss and RAPD is present.

**Fundus examination**

**Early cases** on fundus examination (Fig. 12.10) reveal:

- *Retinal veins* show massive engorgement, congestion and tortuosity
- *Retinal haemorrhages* are massive (almost whole fundus is full of haemorrhages giving a 'splashed-tomato' appearance),
- *Cotton wool spots* Numerous (usually more than 6 to 10),
- *Disc* shows oedema and hyperaemia,
- *Macular area* is full of haemorrhages and is severely oedematous and
- *Break through vitreous haemorrhage* may be seen in some cases.

**In late stages, fundus shows:**

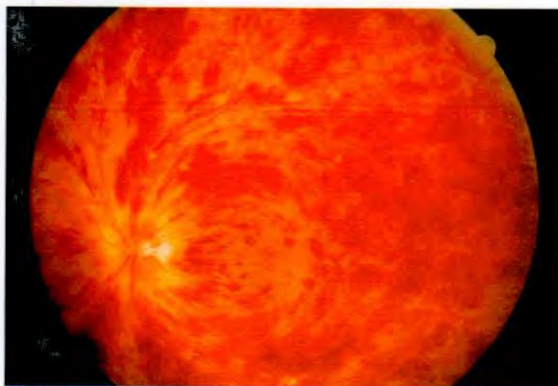
- Marked *sheathing* around veins
- *Collaterals* are seen around the disc.
- *Neovascularization* may be seen at the disc (NVD) or in the periphery (NVE).
- *Macula* shows marked pigmentary changes and chronic cystoid oedema.

**Pathognomonic features for ischaemic CRVO** differentiating it from non-ischaemic CRVO are:

- Presence of relative afferent pupillary defect (RAPD),
- Visual field defects, and
- Reduced amplitude of b-wave of electroretinogram.

**Complications include:**

- *Rubeosis iridis*, i.e. *neovascularisation of iris (NVI)* and *neovascular glaucoma (NVG)* occur in about 20% cases within 3 months (so also called as 90 days glaucoma).
- *Vitreous haemorrhage and proliferative retinopathy* occur in few cases.



**Fig. 12.10** Central retinal vein occlusion (ischaemic)

**■ BRANCH RETINAL VEIN OCCLUSION (BRVO)**

It is more common than the central retinal vein occlusion. It may occur as:

- *Hemispheric occlusion* due to occlusion in the main branch at the disc.
- *Quadrantic occlusion* due to occlusion at the level of AV crossing, and
- *Small branch occlusion* either as macular branch occlusion or peripheral branch occlusion.

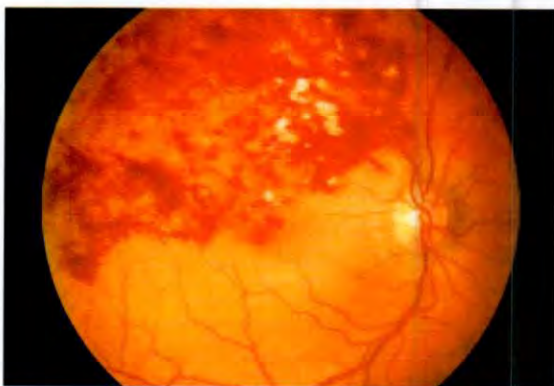
**Features of BRVO** are as below:

- *Vision* is affected only when the macular area is involved.
- *Retinal oedema* and *haemorrhages* are limited to the area drained by the affected vein (Fig. 12.11).
- *Secondary glaucoma* occurs rarely in these cases.
- *Chronic macular oedema* and *neovascularization* may occur as complications of BRVO in about one third cases.

**■ MANAGEMENT OF RETINAL VEIN OCCLUSIONS****A. Clinical evaluation and investigations****I. Ocular examination and investigations**

**Ocular examination** should include:

- *Visual acuity*, at presentation and at every follow up, is a useful guide for the interventions required.
- *IOP* should be recorded and associated POAG should be ruled out.
- *Undilated slit-lamp examination* to detect neovascularization of iris (NVI).
- *Gonioscopy* to rule out neovascularization of angle (NVA).
- *Fundus examination* with direct and indirect ophthalmoscopy and with 90D slit-lamp examination.



**Fig. 12.11** Superotemporal branch of retinal vein occlusion (BRVO)



**Ocular investigations** should include:

**Goldmann perimetry and ERG** evaluation is very important in differentiating between ischaemic and non-ischaemic CRVO.

**Fundus autofluorescence (FAF)** in both non-ischaemic and ischaemic CRVO, shows typical fern-like perivenular hypoautofluorescence due to masking of background signal by oedema.

**Fundus fluorescein angiography (FFA)** should be carried out (to assess state of retinal perfusion) after resolution of retinal haemorrhage.

- In ischaemic CRVO usually areas of capillary non-perfusion (CNP) of more than 10 disc area are seen.
- In non-ischaemic CRVO, FFA shows delayed A-V transit time, masking by haemorrhages, usually good retinal capillary perfusion and some late leakage.

**Optical coherence tomography (OCT)** is particularly useful for evaluation of macular oedema, sub-retinal fluid accumulation and development of epiretinal membrane (ERM).

## II. Systemic examination and investigations

**Systemic associations** which need to be looked for are:

- Hypertension, diabetes mellitus, heart diseases, dyslipidaemia,
- Hypercoagulable conditions, and
- Homocysteinosis, especially in young patients.

## B. Differential diagnosis

**Diabetic retinopathy** is generally bilateral and CRVO is usually unilateral.

**Ocular ischaemic syndrome (OIS)** due to carotid occlusive disease has only dilated veins without tortuosity (in CRVO tortuosity is also seen) and retinal haemorrhages are typically seen in the mid periphery.

## C. Treatment

**I. Treatment of systemic and ocular associations** such as hypertension, diabetes, hyperlipidaemias, hyperhomocysteinaemia, POAG, and other conditions mentioned in predisposing factors is important in all cases. Smoking should be avoided.

**II. Observation and monitoring** is all that is required in patients with mild to moderate visual loss (VA better than 6/18), as the condition (especially non-ischaemic CRVO), in more than 50% cases of CRVO resolves with almost normal vision.

**III. Treatment for macular oedema and retinal neovascularisation**, as described below, is required in patients presenting with marked visual loss (usually ischaemic CRVO) and those with progressive visual loss on observation.

**1. Medical therapy**, presently in vogue is:

• **Intravitreal anti-VEGFs**, e.g. 1.25 mg Bevacizumab (Avastin), or 0.3 mg Ranibizumab (Lucentis) are

useful for the associated CME and neovascularization Anti-VEGF have to be repeated every 1–2 months.

• **Intravitreal triamcinolone** (1 mg/0.1 mL) may be given for the associated CME. Repeated injections of triamcinolone may be required.

• **Intravitreal dexamethasone slow release implant (Ozurdex)** may be used as alternative to triamcinolone, which needs to be repeated every 2 months. Effect of Ozurdex lasts for about 3–6 months.

**2. Laser therapy**, recommended, is as below:

• **Grid laser** is NOT recommended for macular oedema in CRVO. However, persistent CME in BRVO may be treated by grid laser.

• **Panretinal photocoagulation (PRP)** is generally not recommended as prophylaxis even in cases with marked ischaemia (except in patients not likely to comply with regular follow-up). PRP should be performed without delay in CRVO when neovascularization develops anywhere, i.e. in angle (NVA), iris (NVI), retina (NVE & NVD). PRP involves application of 1500–3000 burns (0.5–1.0 second), spaced one burn width apart using frequency doubling YAG laser or argon green laser.

• **Scatter laser photocoagulation** is recommended for neovascularization elsewhere (NVE) in patients with BRVOs.

**3. Surgical therapy** required may be in the form of:

1. **Pars plana vitrectomy** for treating the following complications associated with venous occlusions:

- Persistent vitreous haemorrhage,
- Tractional retinal detachment,
- Epiretinal membrane (ERM), and
- Intractable neovascular glaucoma (NVG).

**Note.** PPV should be combined with endolaser PRP when required.

i. **Pars plana placement of glaucoma drainage device (GDD)** may also be required in patients with NVG.

ii. **Radial optic neurectomy**, once proposed (transvitreal incision of the scleral ring along with PPV) to surgically decompress the CRV at the level of scleral outlet, has not proved useful.

## HYPERTENSIVE RETINOPATHY

Hypertensive retinopathy refers to fundus changes occurring in patients suffering from systemic hypertension.

### Pathogenesis

Factors which play role in the pathogenesis of hypertensive retinopathy are:

**1. Vasospasm.** Arteriolar narrowing due to vasospasm is the primary response to raised blood pressure and is related to the severity of hypertension (*acute hypertensions*).



- *Vasospasm of retinal arterioles* occurs in pure form in young individuals, but is affected by the pre-existing involutional sclerosis in older patients.
- *Vasospasm of choroidal vessels* causes choroidal and RPE ischaemia, which manifests as hypertensive choroidopathy.
- *Vasospasm of peripapillary choroid* leads to optic nerve head ischaemia, manifesting as hypertensive optic neuropathy.

**2. Arteriosclerotic changes** which manifest as changes in the arteriolar reflex and A-V nipping result from thickening of the vessel wall and are a reflection of the duration of hypertension (*chronic hypertension*). In older patients, arteriosclerotic changes may pre-exist due to involutional sclerosis.

**3. Increased vascular permeability** results from hypoxia causing breakdown of inner blood retinal barrier and occurs in *severe hypertension* and is responsible for haemorrhages, exudates, focal retinal oedema, macular oedema, focal intraretinal periarterial transudates (FIPs), and disc oedema.

**4. Raised intracranial pressure** occurs in *malignant or accelerated hypertension* and manifests as hypertensive optic neuropathy, characterized by papilloedema and optic nerve ischaemia.

### Clinical features

Clinically, the hypertensive fundus changes can be described as:

- Benign or chronic hypertensive retinopathy, and
- Malignant hypertensive retinopathy.

### Benign or Chronic Hypertensive retinopathy

Patients with chronic hypertensive retinopathy are usually asymptomatic. Clinical situations in which chronic hypertensive retinopathy occurs include:

**1. Hypertension with involutional (senile) sclerosis**  
When hypertension occurs in elderly patients (after the age of 50 years) in the presence of involutional sclerosis the fundus changes comprise augmented arteriosclerotic retinopathy.

**2. Chronic hypertension with compensatory arteriolar sclerosis**  
This condition is seen in young patients with prolonged benign hypertension usually associated with benign nephrosclerosis. The young arterioles respond by proliferative and fibrous changes in the media (compensatory arteriolar sclerosis). Advanced fundus changes in these patients earlier have been described as 'albuminuric or renal retinopathy'.

**Fundus changes of chronic hypertensive retinopathy** can be summarized as below (Figs 12.12A to C):

**1. Generalized arterial narrowing** or attenuation, depending upon the severity of hypertension may

be mild or marked, and consists of vasoconstrictive and sclerotic phases.

- *Vasoconstrictive phase* occurs due to diffuse vasospasm which manifests when a significant elevation of blood pressure has persisted for an appreciable period and is characterised by an increase in retinal arteriolar tone.
- *Sclerotic phase* occurs due to intimal thickening, hypoplasia of tunica media, and hyaline degeneration; and is characterised by arteriolar narrowing associated with tortuosity.

**2. Focal arteriolar narrowing** is seen as areas of localized vasoconstriction on the disc and within ½ disc diameter of its margin zone.

**3. Arteriovenous nicking** is the hallmark of hypertensive retinopathy and occurs where arteriole crosses and compresses the vein, as the vessels share a common adventitious sheath. Also known as A-V crossing changes, these include:

- *Salu's sign*, i.e. deflection of veins at the arteriovenous crossings,
- *Bonnet sign*, i.e. banking of veins distal to arteriovenous crossings, and
- *Gunn sign*, i.e. tapering of veins on either side of the crossings.

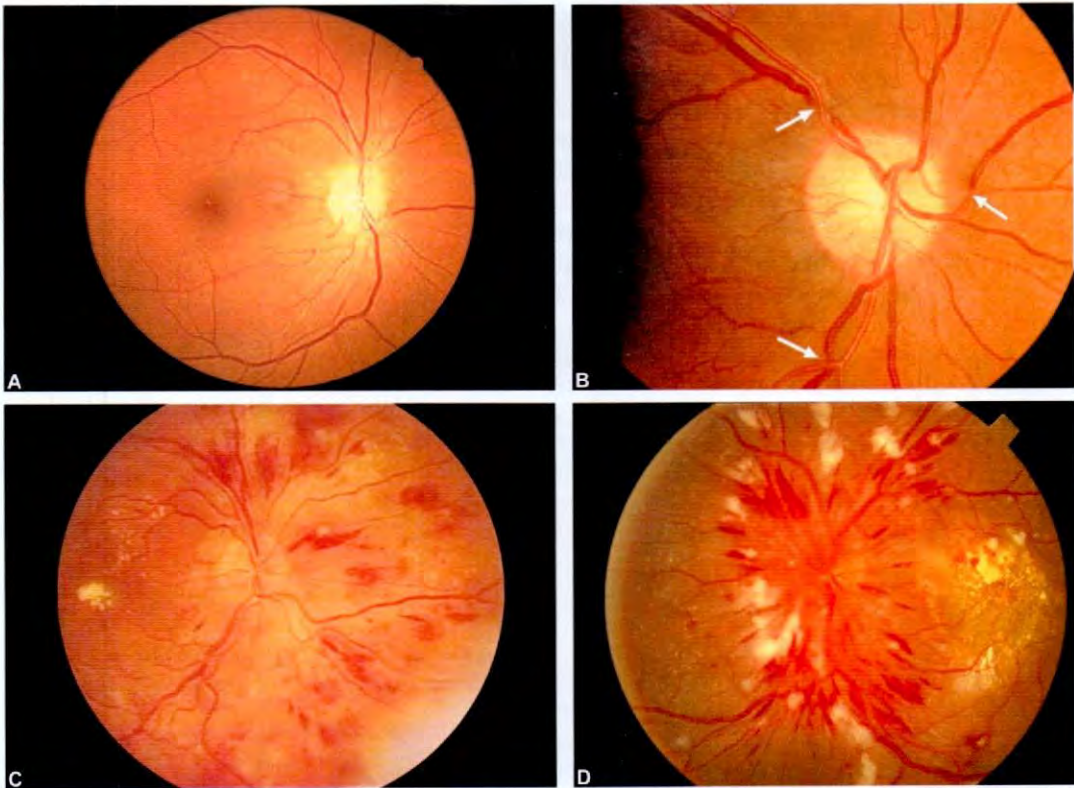
**4. Arteriolar reflex changes.** The normal light reflex of the retinal vasculature is formed by the reflection from the interface between the blood column and vessel wall.

- *Bright and thin, linear blood reflex* is seen normally over the surface of the arteriole in the young age and is predominantly because of blood column in the arteriole, since the vessel wall is by and large transparent.
- *More diffuse and less bright reflex* is seen due to thickening of vessel wall and represents changes of grade I and II hypertensive retinopathy.
- *Copper wiring*, i.e. reddish-brown reflex of the arterioles occurs due to progressive sclerosis and hyalinization, and is a sign of grade III retinopathy.
- *Silver wiring*, i.e. opaque-white reflex of the arterioles occurs ultimately due to the continued sclerosis, and is seen in grade IV hypertensive retinopathy.

**5. Superficial retinal haemorrhages** (flame-shaped) occur at the posterior pole due to disruption of the capillaries in the retinal nerve fibre layer. These haemorrhages disappear in 3 to 5 weeks.

**6. Hard exudates** are lipid deposits in the outer plexiform layer of retina which occur following leaky capillaries in severe hypertensive retinopathy. They appear as *yellowish waxy spots* with sharp margins. They are generally seen in posterior pole and may





**Fig. 12.12** Hypertensive retinopathy: A, Grade I; B, Grade II; C, Grade III; D, Grade IV

be arranged as *macular-fan* or *macular-star*. They are also temporary and may disappear in 3–6 weeks.

**7. Cotton wool spots** are fluffy white lesions and represent the areas of infarcts in the nerve fibre layer. These occur due to ischaemia caused by capillary obliterations in severe hypertensive retinopathy. Due to their cotton wool feathery appearance they are also termed as *soft exudates* (a misnomer in fact).

#### **Malignant hypertensive retinopathy**

Malignant hypertension is not a separate variety of hypertension, but is an expression of its rapid progression to a serious degree in a patient with relatively young arterioles undefended by fibrosis.

**Fundus picture** is characterised by changes of acute hypertensive retinopathy, choroidopathy and optic neuropathy (Fig. 12.12D):

#### **Acute hypertensive retinopathy**

Fundus changes include:

- **Marked arteriolar narrowing** due to spasm of the arteriolar wall, in response to sudden rise in blood pressure.
- **Superficial retinal haemorrhages**, flame shaped, appear in the posterior pole.

- **Focal intraretinal periarteriolar transudates (FIPs)** are small, white, focal oval lesions occurring due to the deposition of macromolecules along the major arterioles. These result due to break down of blood-retinal barrier following dilatation of terminal arterioles as a result of sudden rise in blood pressure in malignant hypertension.

- **Cotton wool spots** are also more marked in malignant hypertensive retinopathy.

- **Microaneurysms, shunt vessels and collaterals** may also develop as a result of capillary obliterations.

#### **Acute hypertensive choroidopathy**

Until recently, it was considered that the choroidal changes are part of hypertensive retinopathy. However, now it is clear that hypertensive retinopathy and choroidopathy are two independent and unrelated manifestations of malignant arterial hypertension. This is because of the fact that the retinal and choroidal vascular beds have some fundamentally different characteristics. Hypertensive choroidopathy is primarily due to choroidal ischaemia, which produces ischaemic damage to the overlying retinal pigment epithelium, resulting in various *fundus changes* which include:



- *Acute focal retinal pigment epitheliopathy*, characterised by *focal white spots*, occurs due to acute ischaemic changes in choriocapillaries.
- *Elschnig's spots* are small black spots surrounded by yellow halos, these are formed due to clumping and atrophy of the infarcted pigment epithelium (focal white spots) described above.
- *Siegrist streaks* are formed due to linear configuration of the pigment along the choroidal arterioles. These are formed due to fibrinoid necrosis associated with malignant hypertension.
- *Serous neurosensory retinal detachment*, which preferentially affects the macular area, may occur due to accumulation of fluid beneath the retina following breakdown of outer blood-retinal barrier owing to ischemic damage to the retinal pigment epithelium. It may also manifest as *exudative bullous retinal detachment* with shifting subretinal fluid.

#### Acute hypertensive optic neuropathy

Changes include:

- *Disc oedema* and haemorrhages *on the disc and peripapillary retina* which occur due to vasoconstriction of peripapillary choroidal vessels supplying the optic nerve head. The ischemia of the optic nerve head leads to stasis of axoplasmic flow, thus the lesion is a form of anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy.
- *Disc pallor*, of variable degree, may occur late in the course of disease.

#### Staging of Hypertensive Retinopathy

Several classification schemes have been described to stage hypertensive retinopathy. A few popular classifications, are given below:

##### Keith and Wagner classification

- *Grade I*. Mild generalized arteriolar attenuation, particularly of small branches, with broadening of the arteriolar light reflex and vein concealment (Fig. 12.12A).
- *Grade II*. Marked generalized narrowing and focal attenuation of arterioles associated with deflection of veins at arteriovenous crossings (Salus' sign) (Fig. 12.12B).
- *Grade III*. Grade II changes plus copper-wiring of arterioles, banking of veins distal to arteriovenous crossings (Bonnet sign), tapering of veins on either side of the crossings (Gunn sign) and right-angle deflection of veins (Salu's sign). Flame-shaped haemorrhages, cotton-wool spots and hard exudates are also present (Fig. 12.12C).

- *Grade IV*. All changes of grade III plus silver-wiring of arterioles and papilloedema (Fig. 12.12D).

##### Modified Scheie classification

*Staging of retinopathy changes* is as follows:

- *Grade 0*. No changes
- *Grade 1*. Barely detectable arterial narrowing
- *Grade 2*. obvious arterial narrowing with focal irregularities
- *Grade 3*. Grade 2 plus retinal haemorrhages and/or exudates
- *Grade 4*. Grade 3 plus disc swelling

*Grading of the (light reflex) changes* resulting from arteriolosclerosis is as follows:

- *Grade 0*. Normal
- *Grade 1*. Broadening of light reflex with minimal arteriovenous compression
- *Grade 2*. Light reflex changes and arteriovenous crossing changes more prominent
- *Grade 3*. Copper-wire appearance and more prominent arteriovenous compression
- *Grade 4*. Silver-wire appearance and severe arteriovenous crossing changes.

##### Mitchell-Wong classification

Severity of hypertensive retinopathy has been graded into mild, moderate and malignant, which is predictive of risk for cerebrovascular disease, coronary artery disease and mortality (Table 12.1).

#### Management of Hypertensive Retinopathy

*Mild hypertensive retinopathy* requires blood pressure control only.

*Moderate hypertensive retinopathy* patients in addition to blood pressure control benefit from further assessment of vascular risk factors (e.g. cholesterol levels) and, if indicated, risk reduction therapy (e.g. cholesterol lowering agents).

*Malignant hypertensive retinopathy* In such instances, physicians should aim for a small stepwise control of blood pressure over a few hours, and avoid a sudden reduction in blood pressure which may reduce perfusion of optic nerve head and central nervous system (causing stroke).

**Note.** With adequate hypertension treatment, resolution of signs may occur over a period of up to a year. Thus follow-up of patients for a year may be needed.

#### RETINOPATHY IN PREGNANCY-INDUCED HYPERTENSION

Pregnancy-induced hypertension (PIH), previously known as 'toxemia of pregnancy', is a disease of



**Table 12.1** *Mitchell-wong classification of hypertensive retinopathy.*

| Grade                 | Clinical signs                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Systemic associations                                                                                |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| No retinopathy        | No detectable retinal signs                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | None                                                                                                 |
| Mild retinopathy      | One or more of the following arteriolar signs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Generalised arteriolar narrowing</li> <li>• Focal arteriolar narrowing</li> <li>• Arteriovenous nicking</li> <li>• Arteriolar wall opacity (silver wiring)</li> </ul> | Moderate association with risk of stroke, subclinical stroke, coronary artery disease, and mortality |
| Moderate retinopathy  | One or more of the following retinal signs: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Haemorrhages (blot and dot, or flame-shaped)</li> <li>• Microaneurysms</li> <li>• Cotton-wool spots</li> <li>• Hard exudates</li> </ul>                                  | Strong association with risk of stroke, cognitive decline, and cardiovascular mortality              |
| Malignant retinopathy | Moderate retinopathy plus optic disc swelling                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Strong association with mortality                                                                    |

unknown etiology characterised by raised blood pressure, proteinuria and generalised oedema.

**Retinal changes are liable to occur** in this condition when blood pressure rises above 160/100 mm of Hg and are marked when blood pressure rises above 200/130 mm of Hg.

- **Earliest changes** consist of narrowing of foveal and nasal arterioles, followed by generalised narrowing.
- **Severe persistent spasm of vessels** causes retinal hypoxia characterised by appearance of 'cotton wool spots' and superficial haemorrhages.
- **Further progression of retinopathy** occurs rapidly if pregnancy is allowed to continue and changes of hypertensive optic neuropathy and acute choroidopathy (Elschnig spots and other RPE lesions) can occur.
- **Retinal oedema and exudation** is usually marked and may be associated with 'macular star' or 'flat macular detachment'. Rarely, it may be complicated by bilateral exudative retinal detachment.
- **Prognosis for retinal reattachment** is good, as it occurs spontaneously within a few days of termination of pregnancy.

**Management.** Changes of retinopathy are reversible and disappear after the delivery, unless organic vascular disease is established.

- **In preorganic stage** when patient responds well to conservative treatment, the pregnancy may justifiably be continued under close observation.
- **Advent of hypoxic retinopathy** (cotton wool spots, retinal oedema and haemorrhages), however, should be considered an indication for termination of pregnancy; otherwise, permanent visual loss or even loss of life (of both mother and foetus) may occur.

## DIABETIC RETINOPATHY

Diabetic retinopathy (DR) refers to retinal changes seen in patients with diabetes mellitus. With increase in the life expectancy of diabetics, the incidence of diabetic retinopathy (DR) has increased. Diabetic retinopathy is a leading cause of blindness.

### ■ ETIOPATHOGENESIS

#### Risk factors

**1. Duration of diabetes** is the most important determining factor.

- **After 10 years**, 20% of type I and 25% of type II diabetics develop retinopathy.
- **After 20 years**, 90% of type I and 60% of type II diabetics develop retinopathy.
- **After 30 years**, 95% of both type I and type II diabetics develop retinopathy.

**Note.** It is important to note that it is the duration of disease after the onset of puberty which acts as a risk factor. For example, the risk of retinopathy is roughly same for two 30 years old patients, of whom one developed DM at 12 years and other at the age of 4 years, because both have same duration of disease (18 years) after the onset of puberty (i.e. after the age of 12 years).

**2. Types of diabetes.** Relative risk of developing diabetic retinopathy (DR) is higher in type 1 compared to type 2. The risk of proliferative diabetic retinopathy (PDR) is higher in type 1, whereas diabetic macular edema (DME) is more common in type 2.

**3. Age of onset of diabetes also act as a risk factor.** The risk of retinopathy in a child with onset of diabetes at the age of 2 years is negligible for the first 10 years. After onset of puberty, age of onset is not a risk factor.

**4. Sex.** Incidence is more in females than males (4:3).



**5. Poor metabolic control** is less important than duration, but is nevertheless relevant to the development and progression of DR. Hyperglycaemia of long duration triggers the onset.

**6. Heredity.** It is transmitted as a recessive trait without sex linkage. The effect of heredity is more on the proliferative retinopathy.

**7. Pregnancy** may accelerate the changes of diabetic retinopathy.

**8. Hypertension**, when associated, may also accentuate the changes of diabetic retinopathy.

**9. Other risk factors** include smoking, obesity, anaemia and hyperlipidaemia.

### Pathogenesis

**Hyperglycaemia**, in uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, is the starting point for development of DR.

**Microangiopathy**, affecting retinal pre-capillary arterioles, capillaries and venules, produced by hyperglycaemia is the basic pathology in diabetic retinopathy.

**Mechanisms** by which chronic hyperglycemia produces microangiopathy include:

**i. Cellular damage.** Hyperglycaemia produces damage to the cells of retina, endothelial cells, loss of pericytes and thickening of basement membrane of capillaries by following effects:

- *Sorbitol accumulation* in the cells due to aldose reductase mediated glycolysis,
- *Advanced glycation end product (AGE) accumulates* in the cells due to non-enzymatic binding of several sugars to proteins,
- *Activation of several protein kinase C isoforms*,
- *Activation of eicosanoids, nitric oxides and intracellular adhesion molecules*, and
- *Excessive oxidative stress* to the cells due to excess of free radicals.

**ii. Hematological and biochemical changes induced by chronic hyperglycaemia** which play role in the development of microangiopathy include:

- *Platelet adhesiveness* increase,
- *Blood viscosity* increase,
- *Red blood cells* deformation and Rouleaux formation,
- *Serum lipids* altered abnormally,
- *Leukostasis* is increased due to increased intracamer adhesion molecule-1 (ICAM-1) level expression, and
- *Fibrinolysis* increase.

**Effects of microangiopathy** producing DR include:

- *Breakdown of blood-retinal barrier* leads to retinal oedema, haemorrhages, and leakage of lipids (hard exudates).
- *Weakened capillary wall* produces microaneurysms, and haemorrhages.

• *Microvascular occlusions* produce ischaemia and its effects, cotton-wool spots (due to infarct of nerve fibre layer) and arteriovenous shunts, i.e. intraretinal microvascular abnormalities (IRMAs).

**Neovascularization of retina** is induced by:

- *Proangiogenic factors* such as vasoendothelial growth factors (VEGFs), platelet derived growth factor (PDGF), and hepatocyte growth factor (HGF) which are released as a result of ischaemia produced by microvascular occlusions. Release of angiogenic factors is also mediated by hyperglycaemia-induced oxidative stress, activation of protein kinase C and cytokines.
- *Deletion of anti-angiogenic factors* such as endostatin, angiostatin, pigment epithelial derived factor (PEDF), thrombospondin-1 and platelet factor 4, also play role in causing neovascularization.

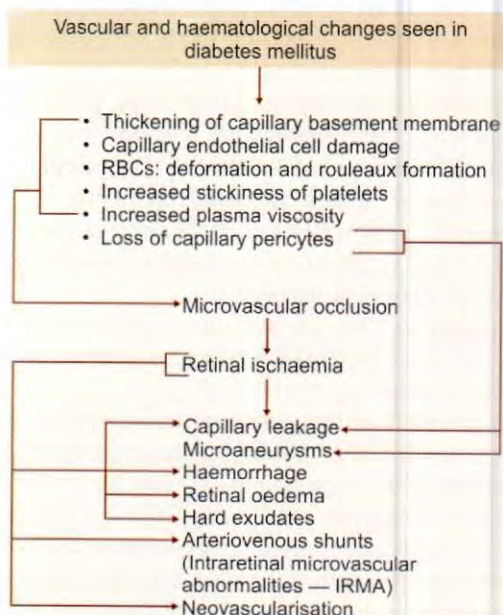
**Speculated pathogenesis of DR** based on the above described changes is summarized in a flowchart (Fig. 12.13).

### ■ CLASSIFICATION AND FEATURES

Diabetic retinopathy has been variously classified. Presently followed classification is as follows:

I. Non-proliferative diabetic retinopathy (NPDR)

- Mild NPDR
- Moderate NPDR
- Severe NPDR
- Very severe NPDR



**Fig. 12.13** Flowchart depicting pathogenesis of diabetic retinopathy



II. Proliferative diabetic retinopathy (PDR)

III. Diabetic maculopathy

IV. Advanced diabetic eye disease (ADED).

### I. Non-proliferative diabetic retinopathy (NPDR)

**Ophthalmoscopic features of NPDR** include:

- **Microaneurysms** are seen in the macular area (the earliest detectable lesion) and elsewhere in relation to area of capillary nonperfusion. These are formed due to focal dilation (out pouching) of capillary wall following loss of pericytes. These appear as red dots and leak fluid, proteins, lipids and also fluorescein dye on FFA.
- **Retinal haemorrhages**. Both deep (dot and blot haemorrhages which are more common) and superficial haemorrhages (flame-shaped), occur from capillary leakage.
- **Retinal oedema** characterized by retinal thickening is caused by capillary leakage.
- **Hard exudates**—yellowish-white waxy-looking patches are arranged in clumps or in circinate pattern. These are commonly seen in the macular area. These occur due to chronic localised oedema and are composed of leaked lipoproteins and lipid filled macrophages.
- **Cotton-wool spots**, are small whitish fluffy superficial lesions. These represent areas of nerve fibre infarcts.
- **Venous abnormalities** (beading, looping and dilatation) occur adjacent to area of capillary non-perfusion.
- **Intraretinal microvascular abnormalities (IRMA)** seen as fine irregular red lines connecting arterioles with venules, represent arteriovenular shunts.
- **Dark-blot haemorrhages** representing haemorrhagic retinal infarcts.

**ETDRS study classification:** On the basis of severity of the above findings, the NPDR has been further classified as under:

1. **Mild NPDR** (Fig. 12.14A).
  - At least one microaneurysm must be present.
2. **Moderate NPDR** (Fig. 12.14B)
  - Microaneurysms/intraretinal haemorrhage in 2 or 3 quadrants.
  - Early mild IRMA.
  - Hard exudates and cotton-wool spots may or may not be present.
3. **Severe NPDR**. Any one of the following (4-2-1 Rule) (Fig. 12.14C):
  - Four quadrants of microaneurysms and extensive intraretinal haemorrhages.
  - Two quadrants of venous beading.
  - One quadrant of IRMA changes.

4. **Very severe NPDR**. Any two of the following (4-2-1 Rule) (Fig. 12.14D):

- Four quadrants of microaneurysms and extensive intraretinal haemorrhages.
- Two quadrants of venous beading.
- One quadrant of IRMA changes.

**Risk factors for progression to PDR**, observed in ETDRS include presence of:

- IRMAs,
- Multiple increasing intraretinal haemorrhages,
- Venous beading and loops, and
- Wide spread capillary non-perfusion (CNP) areas.

**Note.** Interestingly cotton wool spots were not found to be significant predictors.

### II. Proliferative diabetic retinopathy (PDR)

Proliferative diabetic retinopathy (Figs 12.14E and F) develops in more than 50% of cases after about 25 years of the onset of disease. Therefore, it is more common in patients with juvenile onset (type I) diabetes.

■ **Occurrence of neovascularization** over the changes of very severe non-proliferative diabetic retinopathy is hallmark of PDR. It is characterised by proliferation of new vessels from the capillaries, in the form of neovascularization at the optic disc (NVD) and/or elsewhere (NVE) in the fundus, usually along the course of the major temporal retinal vessels. These new vessels may proliferate in the plane of retina or spread into the vitreous as vascular fronds. Later on results in formation of:

- **Fibrovascular epiretinal membrane** formed due to condensation of connective tissue around the new vessels.
- **Vitreous detachment and vitreous haemorrhage** may occur in this stage.

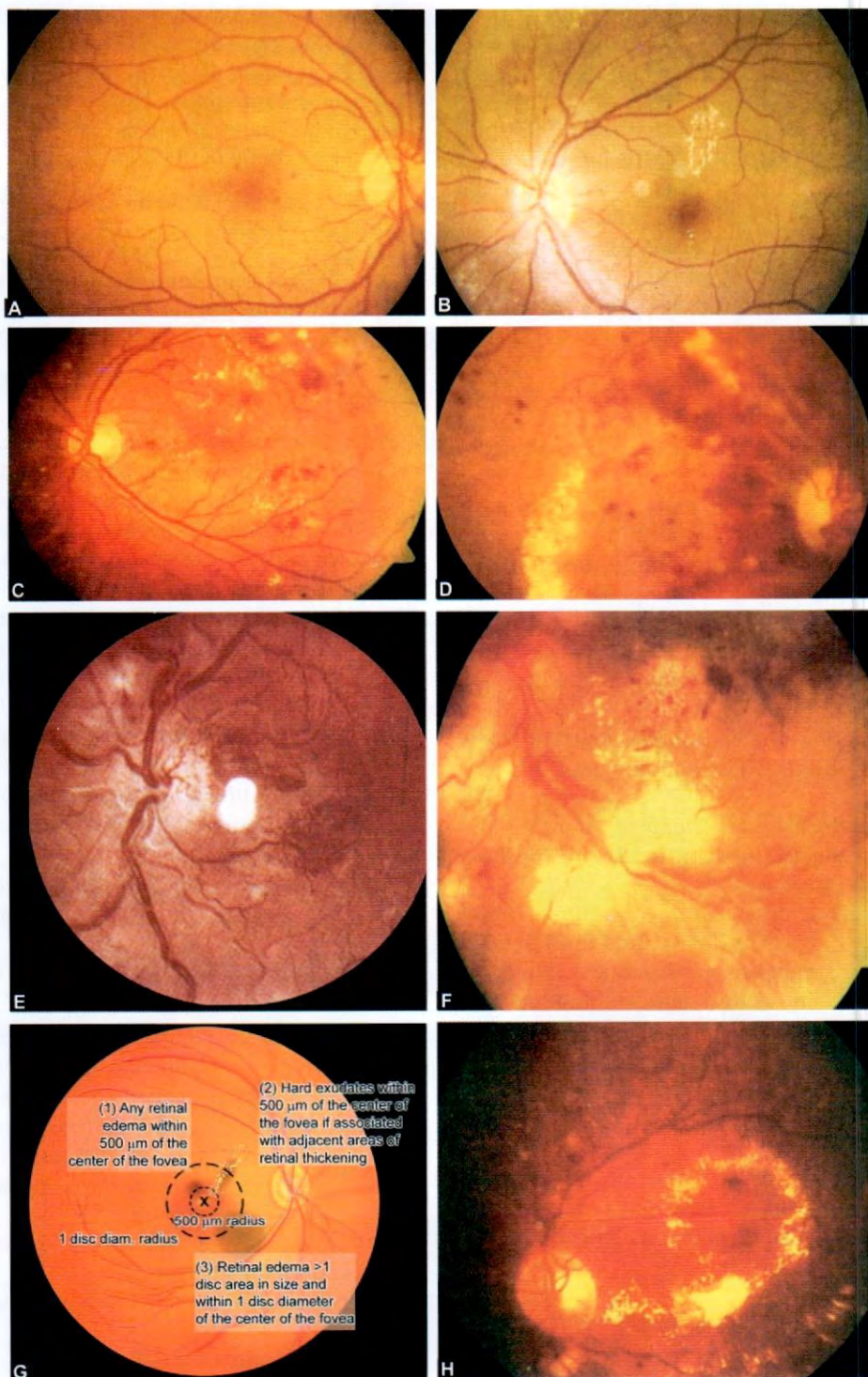
**Types.** On the basis of high-risk characteristics (HRCs) described by diabetic retinopathy study (DRS) group, the PDR can be further classified as below:

1. **PDR without HRCs (Early PDR)** is characterized by early NVD or NVE (Fig. 12.14E), and
2. **PDR with HRCs**. High-risk characteristics (HRC) of PDR are as follows (Fig. 12.14F):
  - NVD <1/4 disc area with vitreous haemorrhage (VH) or preretinal haemorrhage (PRH)
  - NVD 1/4 to 1/3 of disc area with or without VH or PRH
  - NVE >1/2 disc area with VH or PRH.

### III. Diabetic maculopathy

Changes in macular region need special mention, due to their effect on vision. These changes may be associated with non-proliferative diabetic retinopathy (NPDR) or proliferative diabetic retinopathy (PDR).





**Fig. 12.14** Diabetic retinopathy: A, Mild NPDR; B, Moderate NPDR; C, Severe NPDR; D, Very severe NPDR; E, Early PDR; F, High-risk PDR; G, Criteria of CSME; H, Focal exudative diabetic maculopathy



The diabetic macular oedema (DME) occurs due to increased permeability of the retinal capillaries.

### **Clinically significant macular oedema (CSME)**

CSME is the term coined during early treatment diabetic retinopathy study (ETDRS). It is diagnosed if one of the following three criteria are present on slit-lamp examination with 90D lens (Fig. 12.14G):

- *Thickening of the retina* at or within 500 micron of the centre of the fovea.
- *Hard exudates* at or within 500 micron of the centre of fovea associated with adjacent retinal thickening.
- *Development of a zone of retinal thickening* one disc diameter or larger in size, at least a part of which is within one disc diameter of the foveal centre.

### **Clinico-angiographic classification of diabetic maculopathy**

**1. Focal exudative maculopathy** (Fig. 12.14H). It is characterised by microaneurysms, haemorrhages, well-circumscribed macular oedema and hard exudates which are usually arranged in a circinate pattern. *Fluorescein angiography* reveals focal leakage with adequate macular perfusion.

**2. Diffuse exudative maculopathy.** It is characterised by diffuse retinal oedema and thickening throughout the posterior pole, with relatively few hard exudates. *Fluorescein angiography* reveals diffuse leakage at the posterior pole.

**3. Ischaemic maculopathy.** It occurs due to microvascular blockage. Clinically, it is characterised by marked visual loss with microaneurysms, haemorrhages, mild or no macular oedema and a few hard exudates. *Fluorescein angiography* shows areas of non-perfusion which in early cases are in the form of enlargement of foveal avascular zone (FAZ), later on areas of capillary dropouts are seen and in advanced cases precapillary arterioles are blocked.

**4. Mixed maculopathy.** In it combined features of ischaemic and exudative maculopathy are present.

### **OCT-based classification of diabetic macular edema.**

On the basis of OCT examination the diabetic macular edema (DME) has been classified as below:

**1. Non-tractional DME.** It may be of following types:

- a. Spongy thickening of macula ( $>290 \mu$ ),
- b. Cystoid macular oedema (CME), and
- c. Neurosensory detachment with or without (a) or (b) above.

**Note.** Patients with above changes, seen on OCT, are further divided into two types:

- *Centre involving diabetic macular edema* with loss of foveal contour.

- *Non-centre involving diabetic macular edema*, with thickening within 3000  $\mu$ m of the centre of the macula, but not involving the centre.

**2. Tractional DME.** It may be of following types:

- a. Vitreo-foveal traction (VFT), and
- b. Taut/thickened posterior hyaloid membrane.

**Note.** The OCT classification has a bearing on the management since non-tractional DME is treated conservatively whereas tractional DME is purely treated by pars-plana vitrectomy (PPV) with removal of posterior hyaloid.

### **IV. Advanced diabetic eye disease**

It is the end result of uncontrolled proliferative diabetic retinopathy. It is marked by complications such as:

- Persistent vitreous haemorrhage,
- Tractional retinal detachment, and
- Neovascular glaucoma.

### **Burnt-out or involutional stage of diabetic retinopathy**

Proliferative diabetic retinopathy, once vitreous contraction is complete, tends to enter the burnt-out or involutional stage.

## **MANAGEMENT**

Management of diabetic retinopathy includes its screening, investigations and treatment.

### **A. Screening for diabetic retinopathy**

To prevent visual loss occurring from diabetic retinopathy a periodic follow-up is very important for a timely intervention. The recommendations for periodic fundus examination are as follows:

- *First examination*, 3 years after diagnosis of type 1 DM and at the time of diagnosis in type 2 DM.
- *Every year*, till there is no diabetic retinopathy or there is mild NPDR.
- *Every 6 months*, in moderate NPDR.
- *Every 3 months*, in severe NPDR.
- *Every 2 months*, in PDR with no high-risk characteristics.

### **B. Investigations in a case of DR**

- Urine examination
- Blood sugar estimation
- Renal function tests: serum creatinine, blood urea, and 24 hour urinary protein
- Lipid profile
- Haemogram
- Glycosylated haemoglobin (HbA1C)
- Fundus fluorescein angiography should be carried out to elucidate areas of neovascularization, leakage and capillary nonperfusion.
- Optical coherence tomography (OCT) to study detailed structural changes in diabetic maculopathy.



### C. Metabolic control of diabetes mellitus and associated risk factors.

It is of first and foremost importance to stabilize DM metabolically. Not only the blood glucose levels be in the normal range but other biochemical parameters should also be normal. In case, these are deranged consultation from an internist/endocrinologist should be sought. The normal values as under should be targeted:

- **Control of glycaemia.** Target blood glucose level: fasting <120 mg%, post-prandial <180 mg%, and HbA1c (glycosylated haemoglobin) <7%.
- **Control of dyslipidaemia.** Target lipid profile (fasting): Cholesterol <200 mg%, Triglycerides <150 mg%, HDL >50 mg%, and LDL <150 mg%.
- **Renal function tests.** Target level are serum creatinine 1.0 mg%, blood urea 20–40 mg%, and 24-hour urinary protein <200 mg%.
- **Control of associated anaemia.** Target haemoglobin >10 mg%.
- **Control of associated hypertension.** Target blood pressure levels: 130/80 mm Hg.
- **Lifestyle changes.** Patients should be counselled to prohibit smoking and alcohol consumption, and take regular exercises.

### D. Treatment of diabetic retinopathy

Treatment modalities for diabetic retinopathy, include intravitreal anti-VEGF drugs, intravitreal steroids, laser therapy, and pars plana vitrectomy.

**I. Intravitreal anti-VEGF drugs.** Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) plays a pivotal role in the etiopathogenesis of diabetic maculopathy and retinopathy. Anti-VEGFs, e.g. *Bevacizumab* (1.25 mg) and *Ranibizumab* (0.5 mg) when given intravitreally in 0.1 mL vehicle lead to improvement in vision in >40% cases and stabilize vision in another >40% cases. These drugs should be preferred over laser therapy particularly in patients with:

- Focal CME involving centre of fovea,
- Diffuse DME
- DME with neurosensory detachment

- Anti-VEGFs are also recommended before pan-retinal photocoagulation (PRP) in patients with PDR and diffuse DME.

**Note.** Effects of the anti-VEGFs last for 4–6 weeks and frequent injections are warranted. In addition, the cost factor and risk of endophthalmitis are the deterrent of anti-VEGF therapy.

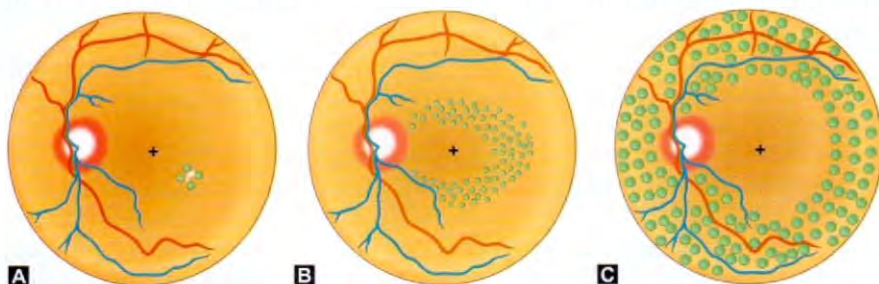
**II. Intravitreal steroids.** Intravitreal *triamcinolone acetonide* (IVTA) (20 mg) is another drug which is effective. It restores inner retinal barrier and has some anti-VEGF effects as well. However, risk of glaucoma, steroid induced cataract, and increased vulnerability to endophthalmitis restrict its use. Hence, anti-VEGFs are preferred over IVTA these days. However, in recalcitrant cases IVTA may be given along with anti-VEGFs. *Intravitreal dexamethasone slow release implant* (Ozurdex) may be used as alternative to triamcinolone (which needs to be repeated every 2 months). Effect of Ozurdex lasts for about 6 months.

**III. Laser therapy.** ETDRS had recommended *focal laser* for focal DME and *grid laser* for diffuse DME. Laser helps possibly by stimulating the RPE pump mechanism and by inhibiting VEGF release. Before the advent of anti-VEGFs, laser therapy, which only stabilizes the vision, was the mainstay in the treatment of DME. However, with the introduction of anti-VEGF drugs, which also improve vision, the role of laser therapy has become limited. Laser therapy is performed using double frequency YAG laser 532 nm or argon green laser, or diode laser. Present indicate on protocols for laser therapy are as below:

**i. Macular photocoagulation.** It is of two types:

- **Focal photocoagulation** (Fig. 12.15A). It is the treatment of choice for focal DME not involving the centre of fovea.
- **Grid photocoagulation** (Fig. 12.15B). It is no more the treatment of choice for diffuse DME. It may be considered only for recalcitrant cases not responding to anti-VEGFs and intravitreal steroids.

**Note.** Macular photocoagulation is contraindicated in ischemic maculopathy and tractional DME.



**Fig. 12.15** Protocols of laser application in diabetic retinopathy: A, Focal treatment; B, Grid treatment; C, Panretinal photocoagulation



ii. **Panretinal photocoagulation** (PRP) or scatter laser consists of 1200–1600 spots, each 500  $\mu\text{m}$  in size and 0.1 sec duration. Laser burns are applied outside the temporal arcades and on nasal side one disc diameter from the disc up to the equator. The burns should be one burn width apart (Fig. 12.15C).

In PRP inferior quadrant of retina is first coagulated. PRP produces destruction of hypoxic retina which is responsible for the production of vasoformative factors.

**Indications** for PRP are:

- PDR with HRCs,
- Neovascularization of iris (NVI),
- Severe NPDR associated with:
  - Poor compliance for follow-up,
  - Before cataract surgery/YAG capsulotomy,
  - Renal failure,
  - One eyed patient, and
  - Pregnancy.

**Note.** A shot of *anti-VEGF drug* intravitreally given before PRP may protect the macula as well as reduce the risk of vitreous haemorrhage. Further, *intravitreal steroids* may be considered as an adjunct to PRP.

**IV. Surgical treatment** is indicated in following cases:

- **Tractional DME with NPDR.** Treatment of choice is pars plana vitrectomy (PPV) with removal of posterior hyaloid.
- **Advanced PDR with dense vitreous haemorrhage.** PPV along with removal of opaque vitreous gel and endophotocoagulation should be done at an early stage.
- **Advanced PDR with extensive fibrovascular epiretinal membrane** should be treated by PPV along with removal of fibrovascular epiretinal membrane and endophotocoagulation.
- **Advanced PDR with tractional retinal detachment** should be treated by PPV with endophotocoagulation and reattachment of detached retina along with other methods like scleral buckling and internal tamponade using intravitreal silicone oil or gases like sulphur hexafluoride ( $\text{SF}_6$ ) or perfluoropropane ( $\text{C}_3\text{F}_8$ ).

## RETINOPATHIES OF BLOOD DISORDERS

These are seen in patients suffering from sickle cell anaemias, leukaemias and polycythemia.

### ■ SICKLE-CELL RETINOPATHY

Retinal changes in patients suffering from sickle cell haemoglobinopathies (abnormal haemoglobins) are primarily caused by retinal hypoxia; which results from blockage of small blood vessels by the abnormal-shaped rigid red blood cells.

### Clinical features

Sickle-cell retinopathy can be divided into five self-explanatory stages as follows:

1. Stage of peripheral arteriolar occlusion and ischaemia.
2. Stage of peripheral arteriovenous anastomoses.
3. Stage of neovascularization.
4. Stage of vitreous haemorrhage.
5. Stage of vitreoretinal traction bands and tractional retinal detachment.

### Treatment

- **Panretinal photocoagulation (PRP)** is effective in regressing the neovascularization.
- **Pars plana vitrectomy** is required for vitreoretinal tractional bands. It should be followed by repair of the retinal detachment, when present.

### ■ ANAEMIC RETINOPATHY

In anaemia, retinal changes are liable to occur when haemoglobin level falls by 50% and are consistently present when it is below 35% (5 gm%). Duration and type of anaemia do not influence the occurrence of retinopathy.

**Pathogenesis** involves factors like anoxia, venous stasis, angiospasm, increased capillary permeability, and thrombocytopenia.

**Characteristic features** of anaemic retinopathy are as below:

- **Fundus background** becomes pale
- **Retinal arterioles** are also pale
- **Retinal veins** are tortuous and dilated
- **Retinal haemorrhages**, superficial flame shaped and preretinal (subhyaloid) may be seen in the posterior half of fundus
- **Roth's spot**, i.e. haemorrhages with white center and platelet-fibrin emboli constitute the white centre
- **Cotton wool spots** may also be seen especially in patients with coexisting thrombocytopenia in aplastic anaemia.

**Management** includes:

- **Treatment of anemia**, which leads to reversal of retinopathy in most cases.
- **Intervention for a large subhyaloid haemorrhage**, which does not resolve spontaneously, in the form of intravitreal tissue plasminogen activator (tPA), or YAG posterior hyaloidotomy, or pars plana vitrectomy, may be required.

### ■ LEUKAEMIC RETINOPATHY

Ocular involvement is more common with acute than chronic leukaemia.

**Characteristic features of leukaemic retinopathy** include:

- **Fundus background** is pale and orangish
- **Retinal veins** are tortuous and dilated



- *Retinal arterioles* become pale and narrow
- *Perivascular leukaemic infiltrates*, seen as grayish white lines along the course of veins, are seen in latter stages
- *Roth's spot*, i.e. retinal haemorrhages with typical white centre are very common
- *Subhyaloid haemorrhage*, i.e. large preretinal haemorrhages may also be seen.

**Other ocular changes in leukaemia** include:

- *Orbital infiltration*, particularly in children presenting as proptosis
- *Ocular haemorrhages* in the form of subconjunctival haemorrhage and hyphaema (bleeding in anterior chamber)
- *Iris changes* in the form of iris thickening and iritis
- *Pseudohypopyon*, i.e. collection of white cells in the anterior chamber.

### RETINOPATHY OF PREMATURITY

Retinopathy of prematurity (ROP) is a bilateral proliferative retinopathy, occurring in premature infants with low birth weight who often have been exposed to high concentration of oxygen. Earlier this disease was known as *retrolental fibroplasia*.

#### Etiopathogenesis

**Primary risk factors** include:

- *Low gestation age*, especially <32 weeks
- *Low birth weight* (<1500 g, especially <1250 g),

- Supplemental oxygen therapy, and
- Other risk factors** reported include light, vitamin E deficiency, respiratory distress syndrome, asphyxia, shock, and acidosis.

**Pathogenesis** In the normal development of retina, the vessels reach the nasal periphery after 8 months of gestation and temporal periphery about 1 month after delivery, by the effect of VEGF.

In premature birth, the production of VEGF is downregulated and vessel migration is halted. However, with growing age, because of increased metabolic demands, the oxygen regulated vasculo-endothelial growth factors (VEGFs) and non-oxygen regulated insulin like growth factors (IGF-1) are produced in excess resulting in neovascularization and fibrous proliferation progressively resulting in different stages of retinopathy of prematurity described below.

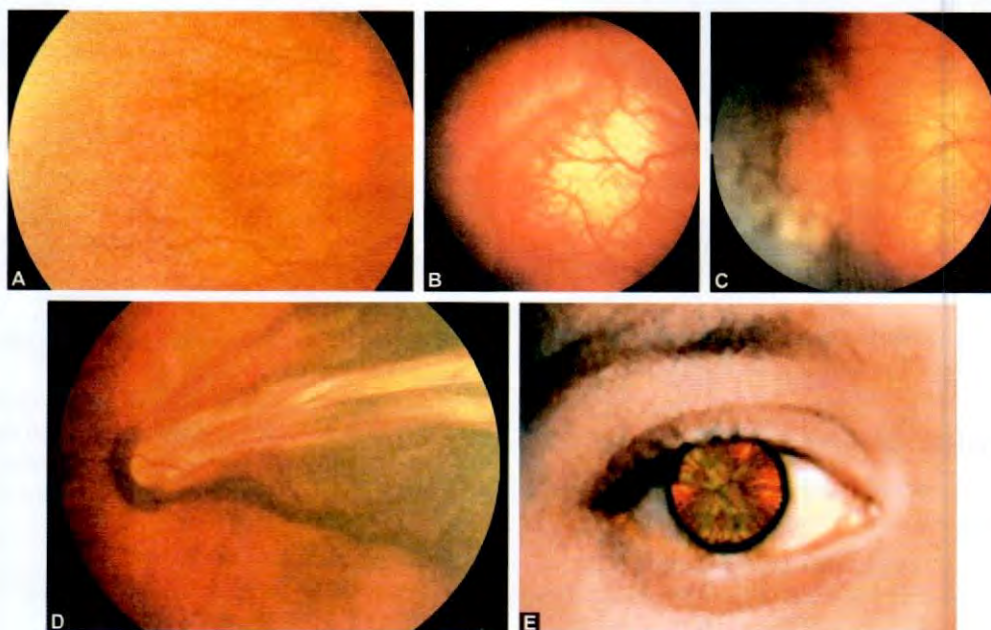
#### Clinical features

The condition has been divided into active ROP and cicatricial ROP. **International classification of ROP (ICROP)** is based on the stage, zone and extent of ROP.

#### Staging of ROP

Clinically, the evolution of ROP has been divided into five stages (Fig. 12.16):

- **Stage 1. Demarcation line formation** at the edge of vessels, dividing the vascular from the avascular retina.



**Fig. 12.16** Stages of retinopathy of prematurity (ROP): A, Stage 1—demarcation line; B, Stage 2—demarcation ridge; C, Stage 3—extraretinal neovascularization and proliferation; D, Stage 4b—subtotal retinal detachment involving macula; E, Stage 5—total retinal detachment



- **Stage 2.** The line structure of stage 1 acquires a volume to form a *ridge* with height and width.
- **Stage 3.** *Ridge with extraretinal fibrovascular proliferation* into the vitreous. This stage is further subdivided into mild, moderate and severe, depending on the amount of fibrovascular proliferation.
- **Stage 4a.** *Subtotal retinal detachment not involving the macula* is a feature of this stage. It occurs as a result of exudation from incompetent blood vessels or traction from the fibrous (cicatrical) tissue.
- **Stage 4b.** *Subtotal retinal detachment involving the macula* occur in this stage.
- **Stage 5.** *Total retinal detachment* which is always funnel-shaped.

### Zones of ROP

The retina is divided into three zones. The centre of the retinal map for ROP is the optic disc not the fovea as in other retinal charts (Fig. 12.17).

#### Zone I

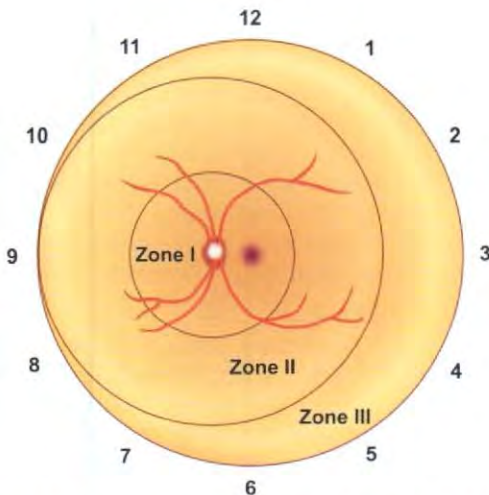
A circle drawn on the posterior pole, with the optic disc as the centre and twice the distance from the centre of disc to fovea as the radius, constitutes zone I. Any ROP in this zone is usually very severe because of a large peripheral area of avascular retina.

#### Zone II

A circle is drawn with the optic disc as the centre and the distance from the centre of disc to nasal ora serrata as the radius. The area between zone I and this boundary constitutes zone II.

#### Zone III

The temporal arc of retina left beyond the radius of zone II is zone III.



**Fig. 12.17** Division of retina into zones (I, II, III) and clock hour positions to depict involvement in retinopathy of prematurity.

### Extent of involvement

Extent of involvement is denoted by the clock hours of retinal involvement in the particular zone (Fig. 12.17).

### Clinically important terms

**Plus disease** means dilatation and tortuosity of posterior pole vessels in at least two quadrants (6 clock hours) at posterior pole with any stage of ROP.

- *Associated with it may be* the engorgement and dilatation of iris vessels which result in poor pharmacological dilatation of pupil, i.e. pupillary rigidity and vitreous haze.

- *Plus diseases signifies* a tendency to progression and is notated by adding plus sign (+) after the number of stage of ROP (e.g. stage 2+)

**Pre-plus disease** is labelled when venous dilation and arterial tortuosity is more than normal but less than be defined as plus disease.

**Aggressive posterior ROP (AP-ROP)**, also called *Rush-disease*, refers to the ROP located in zone I or posterior zone II with severe plus disease. Flat proliferation with vascular loops, haemorrhages and absence of any stage.

- *APROP requires immediate treatment.* It may progress rapidly to stage 5 ROP without passing through the other stages.

**Threshold disease** refers to stage 3 +ROP with plus disease located in zone I or II and involving 5 continuous or 8 discontinuous clock hours. This stage needs laser therapy in less than 72 hours.

**Prethreshold disease.** Early treatment of retinopathy of prematurity (ETROP) group has classified prethreshold disease into two types:

*Type 1 or high-risk prethreshold disease*, which needs laser photocoagulation. It includes:

- Zone I Plus disease, any stage,
- Zone I: Non-plus disease, stage 3, and
- Zone II: Plus disease, stage 2, and 3.

*Type 2 or low-risk prethreshold disease* which requires weekly follow-up. It includes:

- Zone I: Non-plus disease, stage 1, and 2, and
- Zone II: Non-plus disease stage 3.

### Differential diagnosis

- *Active ROP* needs to be differentiated from familial exudative vitreoretinopathy (FEVR) and incontinentia pigmenti in girls and persistent fetal vasculature.

- *Advanced retrolental fibroplasia* needs to be differentiated from other causes of *leucocoria* (See page 317).

### Management

Treatment of well-established disease is unsatisfactory.

- *Prophylaxis* is thus very important. To reduce high-risk ROP, the premature newborns should not be



placed in incubator with an O<sub>2</sub> concentration of more than 30% and efforts should be made to avoid infections and attacks of apnoea.

- **Early diagnosis and treatment** is essential to prevent blindness in high-risk cases. Therefore, a regular screening and timely intervention is recommended.

### Screening protocol

All premature babies born at less than 34 weeks of gestational age and those weighing 1750 g or less should be screened for ROP.

**First examination** by indirect ophthalmoscopy, should be done for:

- **Infants <28 weeks of gestation or <1200 gm:** at 2–3 weeks of age.
- **Infants between 28 to 34 weeks of gestation/1175 gm:** at 3–4 weeks of age
- **Infants between 34 to 36 6/7 weeks of gestation or between 1750–2000 gm** should be screened only if exposed to high-risk factors (prolonged O<sub>2</sub> therapy, mechanical ventilation and haemodynamic instability).

**Further line of action** will depend upon the status of retina:

- **Avascular Immature retina** is labelled when the vessels are short of one disc diameter of the nasal or temporal ora but ROP is not developed yet.
- **ROP, when present, should be classified** as its stage, zone, and extent of involvement.

### When to follow and treat

**Follow-up and treatment guidelines**, as per 'Early Treatment of ROP Study Group', are summarized in Table 12.2.

**Subsequent follow-up examination.** Spontaneous regression of disease occurs in about 80% of the cases.

**Table 12.2** Follow up and treatment guidelines as per early treatment of ROP EREUP's

|        |         |         |                      |
|--------|---------|---------|----------------------|
| Zone 1 | No plus | Stage 1 | Follow-up (1 Week)   |
|        |         | Stage 1 | Follow-up (1 Week)   |
|        |         | Stage 1 | Treat                |
|        | Plus    | Stage 1 | Treat                |
|        |         | Stage 1 | Treat                |
| Zone 2 | No plus | Stage 1 | Follow-up (1–2 Week) |
|        |         | Stage 1 | Follow-up (1 Week)   |
|        |         | Stage 1 | Follow-up (1 Week)   |
|        | Plus    | Stage 1 | Treat                |
|        |         | Stage 1 | Treat                |
|        |         | Stage 1 | Treat                |

So following patients should be examined as below till regression occurs or disease reaches treatment stage:

- **Avascular retina but no ROP**, every 1–2 week,
- **Stage 1 and 2 (Zone I & II ROP)**, weekly and
- **Stage 3 (Zone II ROP)** also weekly.

### Treatment protocol

ETROP group has recommended use of laser over the cryotherapy.

**Laser treatment.** Laser photocoagulation using diode laser 810 nm or frequency doubled Nd: YAG (532 nm) with LIO (laser indirect ophthalmoscope) delivery should be carried out in all patients with high-risk pre-threshold, threshold, and aggressive posterior ROP (Table 12.2).

**Post-laser treatment and follow-up.** Antibiotic and steroid eye drops should be prescribed for a week. Post-laser treatment follow-up should be done weekly for 3 weeks and if required retreatment should be done. Subsequent follow-up examination should be continued at 3, 6 and 12 weeks after treatment. Long-term follow-up is must for timely management of complications if any.

**Surgical treatment.** Patients with stage IV a, IV b, and V require lens sparing vitrectomy along with endolaser photocoagulation, and retinal reattachment measures.

## PRIMARY RETINAL TELANGIECTASIA

Primary retinal telangiectasia refer to idiopathic congenital or acquired retinal vascular malformations. Characterized by irregular dilation of capillary bed and segmental dilation of neighbouring venules and arterioles. Primary retinal telangiectasia include:

- Idiopathic juxtafoveal retinal telangiectasia,
- Coats' disease, and
- Leber's miliary aneurysm.

### IDIOPATHIC JUXTAFOVEOLAR RETINAL TELANGIECTASIA

Idiopathic juxtafoveal retinal telangiectasia also known as '*idiopathic macular telangiectasia*' is a rare condition presenting with mild decrease in visual acuity due to exudation from the juxtafoveal telangiectatic retinal capillaries. This condition has been divided into three groups: 1, 2 and 3, (each group is subdivided into A and B) depending on the characteristics of lesion.

### COATS' DISEASE

Coats' disease, also known as exudative retinopathy of Coats, is a severe form of retinal telangiectasia (idiopathic congenital vascular malformation).

**Characteristic features** of Coats' disease are:

- **Typically affects** one eye of boys in their first decade of life.
- **In early stages, it is characterised** by large areas of intra- and subretinal yellowish exudates and haemorrhages



associated with overlying dilated and tortuous retinal blood vessels and a number of small aneurysms near the posterior pole and around the disc.

- It may present with visual loss, strabismus or leucocoria (whitish pupillary reflex) and thus needs to be differentiated from retinoblastoma.
- Condition usually progresses to produce exudative retinal detachment and a retrolental mass. In late stages complicated cataract, uveitis and secondary glaucoma occur, which eventually end in phthisis bulbi.
- FFA highlights abnormal vessels, leakage and areas of capillary drop out.

**Treatment** is as below:

- Photocoagulation or cryotherapy may check progression of the disease if applied in the early stage.
- However, once the retina is detached the treatment becomes increasingly difficult and success rate declines to 33%.

### ■ LEBER'S MILIARY ANEURYSMS

- Leber's miliary aneurysm is essentially a localised less severe form of Coats' disease presenting in adults with decreased vision.
- Characterized by a local area of fusiform and saccular aneurysmal dilation of venules and arterioles with associated local exudation.
- Treatment consists of direct photocoagulation of the abnormal vessels.

## OCULAR ISCHAEMIC SYNDROME

**Etiology.** Ocular ischaemic syndrome refers to a rare condition resulting from chronic ocular hypoperfusion secondary to >90% stenosis of carotid artery.

**Carotid stenosis** refers to atherosclerotic occlusive carotid artery disease often associated with ulceration at the bifurcation of common carotid artery.

**Risk factors** for carotid stenosis include male gender, old age (60–90 years), smoking, hypertension, diabetes mellitus and hyperlipidaemia.

**Manifestations of carotid occlusive disease** include:

- Amaurosis fugax (transient retinal ischaemic attack),
- Retinal artery occlusion (due to embolus),
- Transient cerebral ischaemic attacks (TIA), and
- Stroke.

**Clinical features.** Ocular ischaemic syndrome is usually unilateral (80%), affecting elder males more commonly than females (2:1).

**Symptoms** include:

- Loss of vision, which usually progresses gradually over several weeks or months.

- Transient black outs (amaurosis fugax) may be noted by some patients.
- Pain, ocular or periorbital, may be complained by some patients.
- Delayed dark adaptation may be noted by few patients.

**Signs** include:

- Cornea may show oedema and striae.
- Anterior chamber may reveal faint aqueous flare with few, if any, cells (ischaemic pseudiritis).
- Pupil may be mid dilated and poorly reacting.
- Iris shows rubeosis iridis (in 66% cases) and atrophic patches.
- Cataract may occur as a complication in advanced cases.
- Neovascular glaucoma is a frequent sequelae to anterior segment neovascularization.
- Fundus examination may reveal:
  - Venous dilatation with irregular calibre but no or only mild tortuosity.
  - Retinal arterial narrowing is present.
  - Retina shows midperipheral dot and blot haemorrhages, microaneurysms and cotton wool spots.
  - Retinal neovascularization is noted in 37% cases, which may be in the form of NVD and occasionally NVE.
  - Macular oedema is a common complication.

**Differential diagnosis.** Ocular ischaemic syndrome needs to be differentiated from non-ischaemic CRVO, diabetic retinopathy, hypertensive retinopathy and aortic arch disease caused by Takayasu arteritis, aortoarteritis, atherosclerosis and syphilis (Table 12.3).

**Investigations.** In suspected cases, the carotid stenosis can be confirmed by Doppler ultrasound and magnetic resonance angiography.

**Treatment** of ocular ischaemic syndrome includes:

- Treatment of neovascular glaucoma (See page 257).
- Treatment of proliferative retinopathy by panretinal photocoagulation (PRP) (See page 291).
- Treatment of pseudiritis with topical steroid eye drops.
- Treatment of carotid stenosis is medical (antiplatelet therapy, oral anticoagulants) and surgical (carotid endarterectomy).

## DYSTROPHIES AND DEGENERATIONS OF RETINA

### RETINAL DYSTROPHIES

Hereditary retinal dystrophies primarily affect the outer retina (photoreceptors and RPE). Common retinal dystrophies can be classified as below:



Table 12.3 Differential diagnosis of ocular ischaemic syndrome

| Condition                   | Similarities                                                                                 | Differences                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Nonischaemic CRVO        | Unilateral retinal haemorrhages, venous dilatation and cotton wool spots                     | Veins are more tortuous, haemorrhages are more numerous, normal retinal arteriolar perfusion, disc oedema, and sometimes optociliary shunt vessels can be seen on the disc |
| 2. Diabetic retinopathy     | Microaneurysms, dot and blot haemorrhages, venous dilatation, NVD and NVE, cotton wool spots | Usually bilateral, with characteristic hard exudates                                                                                                                       |
| 3. Hypertensive retinopathy | Arteriolar narrowing and focal constriction, retinal haemorrhages and cotton wool spots      | Usually bilateral, no marked venous changes, and NVD and NVE                                                                                                               |
| 4. Aortic arch disease      | Arteriolar narrowing, retinal haemorrhages, cotton wool spots, NVD and NVE                   | Usually bilateral, absent arm and neck pulses, cold hands, and spasm of arm muscles with exercise                                                                          |

**A. Generalised photoreceptor dystrophies**

These involve the entire retina (peripheral retina more than macula) and include:

- Typical retinitis pigmentosa and its variants,
- Progressive cone dystrophy,
- Leber congenital amaurosis,
- Congenital stationary night blindness, and
- Congenital monochromatism (achromatopsia).

**B. Macular dystrophies**

These primarily involve the macular area and a few common macular dystrophies are:

- Juvenile Best’s macular dystrophy,
- Stargardt’s disease, and
- Vitelliform dystrophy.

**Note.** Only the most important retinal dystrophy, the retinitis pigmentosa and its variants, are described here.

**■ RETINITIS PIGMENTOSA**

Retinitis pigmentosa, primary pigmentary retinal dystrophy is a hereditary disorder predominantly affecting the photoreceptor (rods more than the cones).

**Inheritance**

Retinitis pigmentosa (RP) may occur as:

**1. Sporadic disorder (40–50%),** isolated without family history due to mutation of multiple gene including rhodopsin gene such cases (*unknown: simplex*) have more favourable prognosis with retained central vision till 6th decade of life.

**2. Inherited disorder as:**

- **Autosomal dominant RP (adRP),** common (15–25%), least severe with best prognosis
- **Autosomal recessive RP (arRP),** less common (5–20%), intermediate severity
- **X-linked recessive (XLR),** least common (5–15%), most severe. X-linked inheritance is further of two types — simplex and multiplex. *Simplex* reflects isolated cases with one affected member. In *multiflex*, at least two family members are affected. Most of the X-linked patients become blind by third decade.
- **Digenic inheritance** is very rare.

**Prevalence and demography**

- **Prevalence.** It occurs in 1 person per 5,000 of the world population.
- **Age.** It appears in the childhood and progresses slowly, often resulting in blindness in advanced middle age.
- **Race.** No race is known to be exempt or prone to it.
- **Sex.** Males are more commonly affected than females in a ratio of 3:2.
- **Laterality.** Disease is almost invariably bilateral and both eyes are equally affected.

**Pathogenesis**

As a group, majority of retinitis pigmentosa conditions are characterized by *death of rod photoreceptors*. The *molecular mechanism* by which the genetic mutation eventually causes rod cell death are unclear, although ample evidence indicates that apoptosis is involved in the final pathway of cell death. That the *cone photoreceptors* ultimately die from a disease that begins with rod-cell disease remains a puzzle.

**Clinic-investigative features**

Typical retinitis pigmentosa, i.e. rod-cone dystrophy, in which rods are degenerated early and cones are involved late. Depending on the relative involvement of rods and cones photoreceptors there are two types of retinitis pigmentosa.

**Type 1 RP.** Patients display *early and preferential loss of rod sensitivity* and early signs such as diminished night vision. This condition also progresses slowly and leads to a region specific vision loss.

**Type 2 RP.** Patients have a progressive and *combined loss of rods and cones sensitivity* with onset in adulthood and later onset of diminished night vision.

**A. Visual symptoms**

1. **Night blindness.** It is the characteristic and earliest feature and may present several years before the visible changes in the retina appear. It occurs due to degeneration of the rods.



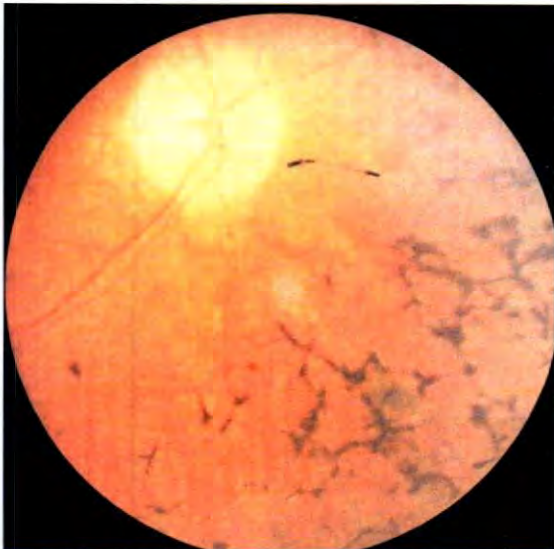
2. **Dark adaptation.** Light threshold of the peripheral retina is increased; though the process of dark adaptation itself is not affected until very late.
3. **Tubular vision,** i.e. loss of peripheral vision with preservation of central vision occurs in advanced cases.
4. **Central vision** is also lost ultimately after many years.

#### **B. Fundus changes (Fig. 12.18)**

1. **Retinal pigmentary changes.** These are typically perivascular (around veins) and jet black spots resembling bone corpuscles in shape. Initially, these changes are found in the equatorial region only and later spread both anteriorly and posteriorly.
2. **Retinal arterioles** are attenuated (narrowed) and may become thread-like in late stages.
3. **Thinning and atrophy** of retinal pigment epithelium (RPE) is seen in mid and far peripheral retina with relative sparing of RPE at the macula.
4. **Optic disc** becomes pale and waxy in later stages and ultimately consecutive optic atrophy occurs (Fig. 12.18).
5. **Other associated changes** which may be seen are colloid bodies, choroidal sclerosis, cystoid macular oedema, atrophic or cellophane maculopathy.

#### **C. Visual field changes**

**Annular or ring-shaped scotoma** (Fig. 12.19) is a typical feature which corresponds to the degenerated equatorial zone of retina. As the disease progresses, scotoma increases anteriorly and posteriorly and ultimately only central vision is left (*tubular vision*).



**Fig. 12.18** Fundus picture of retinitis pigmentosa with consecutive optic atrophy

Eventually, even this is also lost and the patient becomes blind.

#### **D. Electrophysiological changes**

Typical electrophysiological changes appear early in the disease before the subjective symptoms or the objective signs (fundus changes) appear.

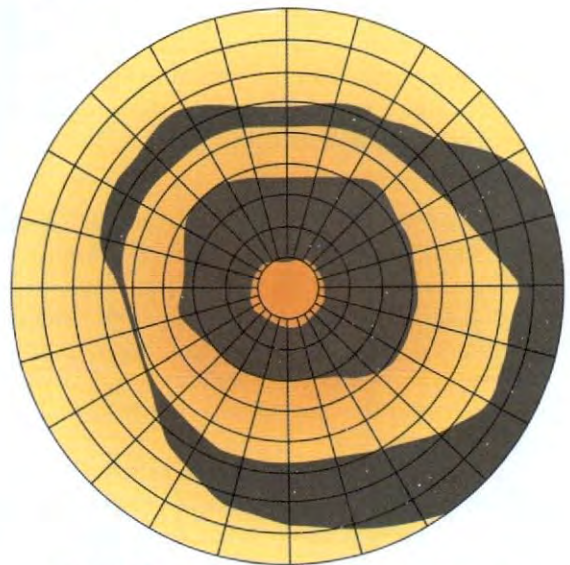
1. **Electroretinogram (ERG)** is initially subnormal (scotopic affected before photopic; b-wave affected before a wave) and eventually extinguished.
2. **Electro-oculogram (EOG)** is subnormal with an absence of light peak.

#### **Associations of retinitis pigmentosa**

**I. Ocular associations.** These include myopia, primary open-angle glaucoma, microphthalmos, conical cornea (keratoconus) and posterior subcapsular cataract.

**II. Systemic associations.** Most cases of retinitis pigmentosa (RP) are isolated, i.e. with no systemic features, such cases are labelled as '*retinitis pigmentosa non-syndromic* or *simple*'. About 25% have associated systemic diseases and such cases are labelled as '*syndromic retinitis pigmentosa*'. A number of specific syndromes are described:

1. **Laurence-Moon-Biedl syndrome.** It is characterised by retinitis pigmentosa, obesity, hypogenitalism, polydactyly and mental deficiency.
2. **Cockayne's syndrome.** It comprises retinitis pigmentosa, progressive infantile deafness, dwarfism, mental retardation, nystagmus and, ataxia.
3. **Refsum's syndrome.** It is characterised by retinitis pigmentosa, peripheral neuropathy and cerebellar ataxia.



**Fig. 12.19** Field changes in retinitis pigmentosa



4. **Usher's syndrome.** It includes retinitis pigmentosa and labyrinthine deafness. Usher syndrome is of three types:
  - **Type 1.** Congenital, profound deafness with vestibular dysfunction, extinguished ERG in first decade.
  - **Type 2.** Congenital, moderate to severe deafness with normal vestibular function, vision loss in second decade.
  - **Type 3.** Progressive hearing loss and normal dysfunction and relatively late onset pigmentary retinopathy.
5. **Hallgren's syndrome.** It comprises retinitis pigmentosa, vestibulocerebellar ataxia, congenital deafness and mental deficiency.
6. **Other associated syndromes include** Bassen-Kornzweig syndrome (Abetalipoproteinaemia), Kearns-Sayre syndrome, Friedreich's ataxia, Bardet-Biedl syndrome, NARP (neuropathy, ataxia, and retinitis pigmentosa), neuronal ceroid lipofuscinosis, and olivopontocerebellar degeneration.

#### Atypical forms of retinitis pigmentosa

**Retinitis pigmentosa sine pigmento.** It is characterised by all the clinical features of typical retinitis pigmentosa, except that there are no visible pigmentary changes in the fundus.

**Sectorial retinitis pigmentosa.** It is characterized by involvement of only one sector of the retina.

**Pericentric retinitis pigmentosa.** In this condition, all the clinical features are similar to typical retinitis pigmentosa except that pigmentary changes are confined to an area, immediately around the macula.

**Retinitis punctata albescens.** It is characterised by the presence of innumerable discrete white dots scattered over the fundus without pigmentary changes. Other features are narrowing of arterioles, night blindness and constriction of visual fields.

#### Treatment

It is most unsatisfactory; rather we can say that till date there is no effective treatment for the disease.

**1. Measures to stop progression,** which have been tried from time to time, without any breakthrough include: vasodilators, placental extracts, transplantation of rectus muscles into suprachoroidal space, light exclusion therapy, ultrasonic therapy and acupuncture therapy.

**Recently vitamin A (15000 IU, PO, qd of palmitate form)** has been recommended to check its progression.

**2. Correct any refractive error,** prescribe glasses.

**3. Systemic acetazolamide (500 mg po)** for associated cystoid macular oedema.

**4. Stem cell therapy** for retinitis pigmentosa, still under trial, is as below

- **Bone marrow derived mononuclear stem cells** are injected intravitreally and their role as *rescue therapy* is being evaluated.
- **Embryonic stem cells, induced pluripotent stem cells and retinal progenitor cells** are injected in the subretinal space and their role as *replacement therapy* is being evaluated.

**5. Gene therapy trials,** may end up in some fruitful outcome.

**6. Retinal prosthesis (e.g. Bionic eye)** may be of help for blind patients with retinitis pigmentosa.

**7. Low vision aids (LVA)** in the form of 'magnifying glasses' and 'night vision device' may be of some help.

**8. Rehabilitation** of the patient should be earned out as per his socioeconomic background.

**9. Prophylaxis.** Genetic counselling for no Consanguineous marriages may help to reduce the incidence of disease. Further, affected individuals should be advised not to produce children.

## RETINAL DEGENERATIONS

Retinal degenerations are acquired disorders of retina characterized by degenerative changes. These can be classified as below:

- Peripheral retinal degenerations,
- Vitreoretinal degenerations, and
- Macular degenerations, e.g.
  - Age-related degeneration (See page 305), and
  - Myopic macular degeneration (See page 41).

### ■ PERIPHERAL RETINAL DEGENERATIONS

**1. Lattice degeneration.** It is the most important degeneration that predisposes to retinal detachment.

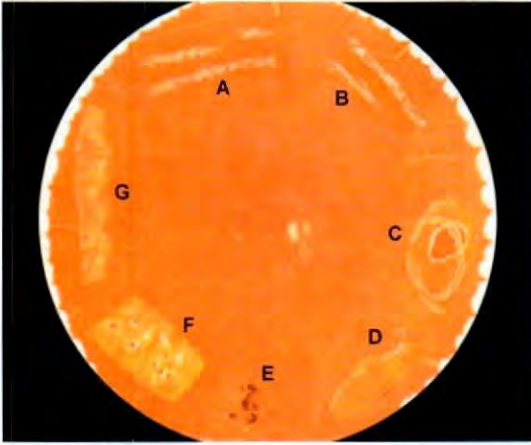
**Incidence** is 6 to 10% in general population and 15 to 20% in myopic patients being bilateral in 50% of cases.

**Characteristic feature** includes:

- **White arborizing lines arranged in a lattice pattern** along with areas of retinal thinning and abnormal pigmentation (Fig. 12.20A).
- **Small round retinal holes** are frequently present in it.
- **Typical lesion** is spindle-shaped, located between the ora serrata and the equator with its long axis being circumferentially oriented.
- Involves more frequently the temporal than the nasal, and the superior than the inferior halves of the fundus.

**2. Snail tract degeneration.** It is a variant precursor of lattice degeneration in which white lines are replaced by snow-flake areas which give the retina a white frost-like appearance (Fig. 12.20B).





**Fig. 12.20** Peripheral retinal degenerations: A, Lattice degeneration; B, Snail track degeneration; C, Acquired retinoschisis; D, White-with-pressure; E, Focal pigment clumps; F, Diffuse chorioretinal degeneration; G, Peripheral cystoid degeneration

**3. Degenerative retinoschisis.** The term *retinoschisis* refers to splitting of the sensory retina into two layers at the level of the inner nuclear and outer plexiform layers. It occurs in two forms—the congenital and acquired called as degenerative.

*Degenerative retinoschisis* is also called as *senile retinoschisis*, may rarely act as predisposing factor for primary retinal detachment. The condition occurs in about 4% of population and is frequently bilateral. Retinoschisis occur in clinically indistinguishable two forms — typical (retinal splitting in the outer plexiform layer) and reticular (retinal splitting in nerve fibre layer). Reticular degenerative retinoschisis may be predisposed to retinal detachment due to hole formation and progressive extension: and not the typical, which is usually localized. It is characterised by thin, transparent, immobile, shallow elevation of the inner retinal layers (Fig. 12.20C) which typically produces absolute field defects—the fact which helps in differentiating it from the shallow retinal detachment which produces a relative scotoma. It usually involves the inferotemporal quadrant, anterior to the equator followed by superotemporal quadrant.

**4. White-with-pressure and white-without pressure.** These are not uncommonly associated with retinal detachment.

- ‘White-with-pressure’ lesions are characterised by greyish translucent appearance of retina seen on scleral indentation (Fig. 12.20D).
- ‘White-without-pressure’ lesions are located in the peripheral retina and may be associated with lattice degeneration.

**5. Focal pigment clumps.** These are small, localised areas of irregular pigmentation, usually seen in the equatorial region (Fig. 12.20E). These may be associated with posterior vitreous detachment and/or retinal tear.

**6. Peripheral chorioretinal atrophy (paving stone degeneration).** It is characterised by diffuse areas of retinal thinning and depigmentation of underlying choroid (Fig. 12.20F). It occurs in about one-third of adult eyes and is thought to occur due to choroidal vascular insufficiency. The lesions appear as isolated or grouped, small discrete yellow-white areas with pigmented borders and prominent underlying choroidal vessels.

**7. Microcystoid retinal degeneration.** It is a common degeneration (Fig. 12.20G) seen as bubbles or vacuoles in the peripheral retina of old people that may be confused with retinal holes. It may predispose to retinal detachment in some very old people.

## ■ VITREORETINAL DEGENERATIONS

Vitreoretinal degenerations or vitreoretinopathies include:

- Wagner’s syndrome,
- Stickler syndrome,
- Favre-Goldmann syndrome,
- Familial exudative vitreoretinopathy,
- Erosive vitreoretinopathy,
- Dominant neovascular inflammatory vitreoretinopathy, and
- Dominant vitreoretinchoroidopathy.

**Note.** Characteristic features of some conditions are mentioned here.

### Wagner’s syndrome

Wagner’s syndrome has an autosomal dominant (AD) inheritance with following features:

- *Vitreous* is liquified with condensed membranes.
- *Retina* shows narrow and sheathed vessels, and pigmented spots in the periphery.
- *Choroid* may be atrophied.
- *Cataract* may develop as late complication.

### Stickler syndrome

Stickler syndrome, also known as *hereditary arthropathopathy*, is an autosomal dominant connective tissue disorder characterized by following features:

**I Ocular features** are as below:

*Vitreous* is liquified and shows syneresis giving appearance of an optically-empty vitreous cavity.

*Progressive myopia* is very common.

*Radial lattice like degeneration* associated with pigmentary changes and vascular sheathing.



**Bilateral retinal detachment** may occur in 30% cases (commonest inherited cause of retinal detachment in children).

**Ectopia lentis** is occasionally associated.

**Pre-senile cataract** occurs in 50% cases.

**II Orofacial abnormalities** include flattened nasal bridge, maxillary hypoplasia, cleft palate and high arched palate.

**III Arthropathy** is characterized by stiff, painful, prominent and hyperextensible large joints.

**Other features** include deafness and mitral valve prolapse.

### **Favre-Goldmann syndrome**

It is an autosomal recessive condition presenting in childhood with nyctalopia.

**Characteristic features** are:

- **Vitreous** shows syneresis but the cavity is not optically empty.
- **Retinoschisis**, both central (affecting macula) and peripheral, is present, although macular findings are more subtle.
- **Pigmentary changes** similar to retinitis pigmentosa are marked.
- **ERG** is subnormal.

## MACULAR DISORDERS

Macula, being concerned with central vision, has attracted the attention of many retina specialists. Consequently, many disorders have been defined and variously classified. A simple, *etiological classification* for a broad overview of the macular lesions is as follows:

**A. Congenital anomalies.** These include aplasia, hypoplasia and coloboma.

**B. Hereditary dystrophies.** These include Best's disease, Stargardt's disease, butterfly-shaped dystrophy, bull's eye dystrophy and central areolar dystrophy.

**C. Acquired maculopathies** include:

1. **Traumatic lesions.** These include traumatic macular oedema, traumatic macular degeneration, macular haemorrhage and macular hole (See page 449).
2. **Inflammations**, i.e. central chorioretinitis (See page 168).
3. **Solar retinopathy**, i.e. photoretinitis.
4. **Degenerations.** Important conditions are age-related macular degeneration (ARMD), and myopic degeneration.
5. **Metabolic disorders** include: diabetic maculopathy and sphingolipidosis.
6. **Toxic maculopathies** include: chloroquine and phenothiazine-induced maculopathy.

7. **Miscellaneous acquired maculopathies.** A few common conditions are:

- Central serous chorioretinopathy (CSCR),
- Cystoid macular oedema (CME),
- Macular hole,
- Macular epiretinal membrane,
- Vitreomacular traction syndrome, and
- Idiopathic choroidal neovascularization.

**Note.** Only a few macular disorders are described.

### ■ HEREDITARY MACULAR DYSTROPHIES

Common heredomacular dystrophies can be classified according to the anatomical level of retinal involvement as below:

- **Inner retina:** X-linked juvenile retinoschisis.
- **Photoreceptors:** Cone-rod dystrophy
- **Retinal pigment epithelium:** Best disease, Stargardt disease and fundus flavimaculatus.

#### X-linked juvenile retinoschisis

X-linked juvenile retinoschisis is thought to be due to Muller cell dysfunction and affects young males.

**Characteristic features** include:

- **Gradual progressive loss of vision** during first or second decade of life; which may remain then stable until the fifth or sixth decade.
- **Foveal schisis** is the typical macular lesion, which on slit-lamp examination is seen as stellate pattern of small superficial retinal cysts with radial striae centered on the fovea.
- **Peripheral retinoschisis** may be present in 50% of the cases.

**Investigations** which give useful information include:

- **Fundus fluorescein angiography (FFA)** shows normal posterior pole and thus differentiates from the mimicking cystoid macular edema (CME).
- **Electroretinogram (ERG)** is negative, i.e. normal amplitude of a wave with reduced b-wave amplitude; typical of inner retinal disorders sparing photoreceptors. ERG helps in differentiating it from *enhanced S-cone (Goldmann Favre) syndrome*, in which ERG is extinguished.

#### Cone-rod dystrophy

Cone-rod dystrophy, also known as 'cone-dominant dystrophy' is a comparatively rare heredomacular dystrophy.

**Inheritance.** Most cases are sporadic but there may be autosomal dominant, autosomal recessive and x-linked inheritance.

**Characteristic features.** In this condition, cones are degenerated earlier and more severely than rods. It presents in early adulthood with following features:



**Symptoms** include reduced central vision more marked in bright light (Hemeralopia) associated with defective colour vision.

**Fundus examination** may be normal in many cases or may show some macular lesions. The characteristic bilateral 'Bull's eye pattern' of macular depigmentation is relatively uncommon, when present needs to be differentiated from chloroquine retinopathy.

**Fundus fluorescein angiography (FFA)** shows patchy areas of hypo- and hyper-fluorescence. The typical Bull's eye pattern lesion is characterized by a zone of hyperfluorescence surrounding a central nonfluorescent spot.

**Electroretinography** shows a marked loss of cone function and slight to moderate loss of rod function.

**Treatment** is not known.

### Best's disease

**Inheritance:** Autosomal dominant

**Clinical picture** of Best vitelliform macular dystrophy can be divided into five stages:

- **Pre-vitelliform stage.** Normal fundus, but EOG is abnormal.
- **Vitelliform stage.** Egg yolk lesion at macula (Fig. 12.21).
- **Pseudohypopyon stage.** Partially absorbed egg yolk lesion.
- **Vitelli eruptive stage.** A scrambled egg appearance of macula.
- **Stage of scarring.** Hypertrophic or atrophic vascularized scar at macula.

**Electrophysiological tests.** Hallmark of Best disease is normal ERG with abnormal EOG (electrooculogram).

**OCT** shows hyperreflective material beneath and within the RPE.

**Fundus autofluorescence** shows intense hyperautofluorescence of the yellowish lesions and hypoauflorescence of the atrophic area.



**Fig. 12.21** Best disease: vitelliform disease (egg yolk lesion at macula)

### Stargardt's disease

Stargardt's disease, also known as 'juvenile macular dystrophy', is by far the most common macular dystrophy.

**Inheritance** is usually autosomal recessive but but rarely autosomal dominant is also known.

**Clinical presentation** is with decreased vision in first or second decade of life.

**Fundus examination** initially is normal but subsequently shows 'beaten-bronze' or 'snail-slime reflex' in macular area.

**ERG.** The full field ERG is usually normal, but *pattern ERG* is completely extinguished, even when central vision is good.

### Fundus flavimaculatus

Fundus flavimaculatus is genetically considered to be a part of the same spectrum as Stargardt's disease.

**Clinical presentation** is with reduced central vision which is late than Stargardt's disease, i.e. usually after 40 years of age.

**Fundus** shows multiple yellowish-white retinal flecks of variable size and shape distributed over whole of the posterior pole.

**ERG** changes in full field ERG may be seen even before the vision is reduced and are important for predicting prognosis.

**Treatment.** No specific treatment is known. However, Vitamin A supplementation should be avoided, as increased levels of vitamin A are associated with progression of the disease.

### ■ SOLAR RETINOPATHY

**Solar retinopathy** also known as *photoretinitis*, or *eclipse retinopathy*, refers to retinal injury induced by direct or indirect sun viewing. Solar retinopathy is associated with religious sun gazing, solar eclipse observing, telescopic solar viewing, sun bathing and sun watching in psychiatric disorders.

**Causes of photic retinopathy**, other than solar retinopathy, are:

- Welding arc exposure,
- Lightning retinopathy, and
- Retinal phototoxicity from ophthalmic instruments like operating microscope.

### Pathogenesis

Photoretinitis results from *photochemical reaction* following *exposure of the retina to shorter wavelength in the visible spectrum*, i.e. blue/violet-blue light with a small contribution by UV-A rays (and not by the infrared rays as was thought earlier). Therefore, photoretinitis is also called as *blue-light retinal injury*.



**Clinical features**

**Symptoms.** These include:

- *Persistence of negative after-image* of the sun, progressing later into a positive scotoma and metamorphopsia.
- *Decreased vision* (6/12–6/60) (unilateral or bilateral) which develops within 1 to 4 hours after solar exposure, usually improves to 6/6–6/12 within six months.

**Signs.** Initially, the fundus may appear normal. Shortly after exposure a *small yellow spot* with grey margin may be noted in the foveolar and parafoveolar region. The *typical lesion*, which appears later, consists of a central burnt-out hole in the pigment epithelium surrounded by aggregation of mottled pigment. Ophthalmoscopically, it appears as a bean- or kidney-shaped pigmented spot with yellowish white centre in the foveal region. In worst cases, typical macular hole may appear.

**Treatment**

No effective treatment is known for photoreinitis, so emphasis should be on prevention. Eclipse viewing should be discouraged unless there is proper use of protective eye wear filters (which absorb UV and infrared wavelengths).

**Prognosis** is guarded, since some scotoma and loss in visual acuity by one or two lines mostly persists.

**■ CENTRAL SEROUS CHORIORETINOPATHY**

Central serous chorioretinopathy (CSCR) or also known as central serous choroidopathy (CSC) or earlier known as central serous retinopathy (CSR) is characterised by spontaneous serous detachment of neurosensory retina in the macular region, with or without retinal pigment epithelium detachment.

**Etiopathogenesis**

**Risk factors** include:

- *Age and sex.* The idiopathic disease affects typically young adult (20–50 years), males more than females,
- *Personality.* Type A personality individuals are more prone,
- *Steroid* intake is an important risk factor,
- *Emotional stress*, may also predispose
- *Systemic lupus atheromatosis (SLE)*
- *Pregnancy* (usually 3rd trimester), and
- *Cushing's disease* are also reported as risk factors.

**Pathogenesis** is not known exactly. Various theories have been postulated. Presently, the most accepted theory is of 'choroidal vascular hyperpermeability'. This theory correlates the

clinical findings with indocyanine green (ICG) angiography findings. It proposes that sympathetic drive, sympathomimetics and corticosteroids alter the choroidal vascular permeability either directly or indirectly by affecting its autoregulation. This, in turn, increases the tissue hydrostatic pressure in the choroid causing pigment epithelial defect (PED) resulting in a breach in the outer blood retinal barrier. Leakage of fluid across this area results in development of localized serous detachment of neurosensory retina.

**Clinical features**

**Symptoms.** Patient may present with:

- *Sudden painless loss of vision* (6/9–6/24)
- *Relative positive scotoma, micropsia and metamorphopsia.*

**Signs.** Biomicroscopic fundus examination reveals:

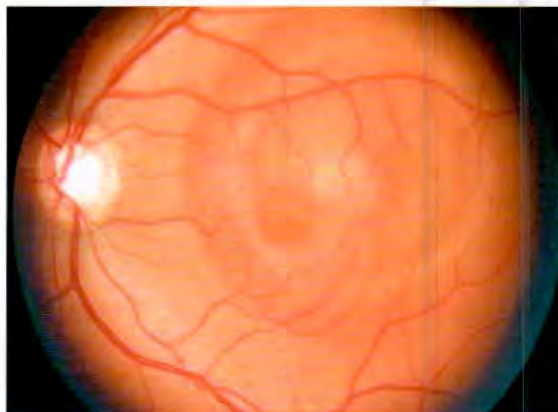
- *Mild elevation of macular area*, demarcated by a circular ring reflex.
- *Small yellow grey elevations* may be seen due to RPE detachment.
- *Foveal reflex* is absent or distorted (Fig. 12.22).
- *Subretinal deposits* may be seen.
- *Multifocal pigmentary changes* suggest chronicity.

**Clinical course**

CSCR is usually self-limiting but often recurrent. Three patterns are known:

**Acute classic CSCR** is characterized by short clinical course with spontaneous resolution within 3–6 months with near normal visual recovery. Recurrences are known in 30–50% of all the cases.

**Chronic CSCR**, also termed as *diffuse retinal pigment epitheliopathy (DRPE)*, is seen in few cases. It is characterized by a chronic course lasting more than



**Fig. 12.22** Fundus photograph showing central serous retinopathy



12 months, typically affecting individuals above 50 years of age. Such cases may have permanent visual impairment due to progressive RPE atrophy and photoreceptor degeneration.

**Bullous CSCR** is rare presentation characterized by larger and more numerous areas of serous retinal and RPE detachments often confused with bullous retinal detachment.

### Investigations

**1. Fundus fluorescein angiography** helps in confirming the diagnosis. Two patterns of progressive leakage and pooling from one or more points seen are:

- **Ink-blot pattern.** It consists of small hyperfluorescent spot which gradually increases in size (Fig. 12.23A).
- **Smoke-stack pattern.** It consists of a small hyperfluorescent spot which ascends vertically like a smoke-stack and gradually spreads laterally to take a *mushroom or umbrella configuration* (Fig. 12.23B).

**2. ICG** shows multiple areas of hyperfluorescence due to choroidal hyperpermeability.

**3. OCT** shows neurosensory retinal detachment and accompanying small detachments of the RPE (Fig. 12.23C).

### Differential diagnosis

Differential diagnosis of CSR includes other entities which may produce serous detachment of sensory retina in macular area. These include optic pit, idiopathic polypoidal choroidal vasculopathy, macular hole with serous detachment, choroidal tumors and pigment epithelial defect (PED).

### Treatment

**1. Conservative measures** include:

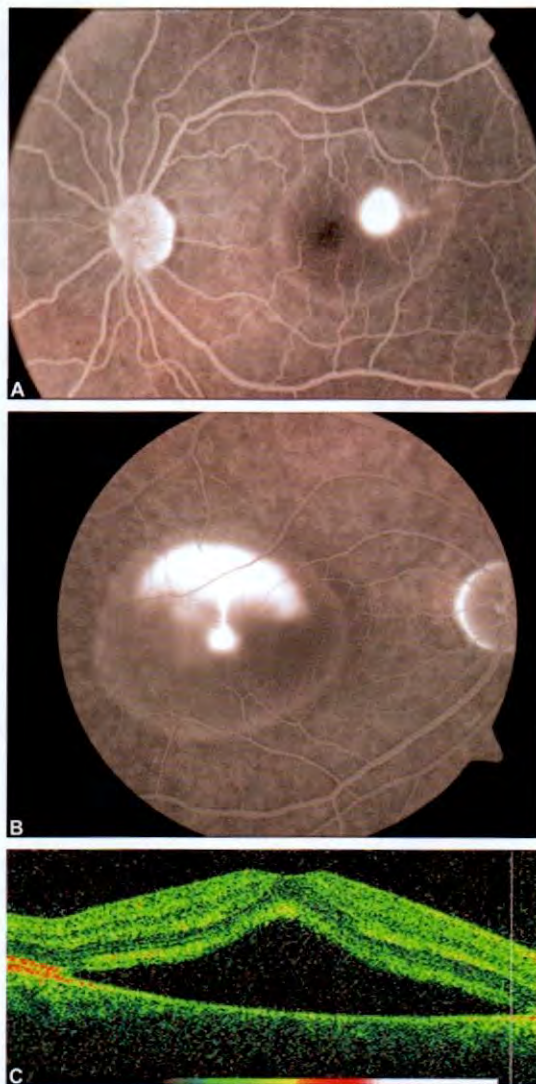
*Reassurance* is the only treatment required in majority of the cases, since CSR undergoes spontaneous resolution in 80 to 90% cases. Visual acuity returns to normal or near normal within 1 to 6 months. Only about 10–20% cases do not have spontaneous resolution. Approximately 20–30% of cases will have one or more recurrences.

- **Discontinuation of steroids**, if possible, should be done at the earliest.
- **Lifestyle changes** to reduce stress in life, should be adopted.

**2. Laser photocoagulation** is indicated in following cases:

- Long-standing cases (more than 3 months).
- Patients having recurrent CSR with visual loss.
- Patients having permanent loss of vision in the other eye due to this condition.

**Contraindications** include the cases having leak near or within the FAZ.



**Fig. 12.23** Fundus fluorescein angiogram showing ink-blot pattern; A, and smoke-stack pattern; B, of hyperfluorescence in central serous retinopathy; and C, OCT picture of CSR

**3. Photodynamic therapy (PDT)** may be beneficial for those with severe disease not amenable to conventional laser treatment, e.g. with sub-foveal leaks and chronic cases.

**4. Anti-VEGF** can be considered if CNV develops.

### ■ CYSTOID MACULAR OEDEMA (CME)

It refers to collection of fluid in the outer plexiform (Henle's layer) and inner nuclear layer of the retina, centred around the foveola.

### Etiology

It is associated with a number of disorders. A few common causes are as follows:



**1. Complication of ocular treatment** such as:

- **Ocular surgery**, e.g. cataract extraction (Irvine-Gass syndrome), penetrating keratoplasty, glaucoma filtration surgery and retinal detachment surgery.
- **Ocular laser therapy**, e.g. panretinal photocoagulation (PRP), and Nd:YAG laser capsulotomy.
- **Topical ocular therapy** with eye drops like epinephrine, dipivefrine and prostaglandin analogues, especially in patients who have undergone cataract surgery.

**2. Retinal vascular disorders**, e.g. diabetic retinopathy and central retinal vein occlusion (CRVO), branch retinal vein occlusion (BRVO), retinal telangiectasia (e.g. Coats' disease), periphlebitis retinae (Eales disease), and hypertensive retinopathy.

**3. Intraocular inflammations**, e.g. pars planitis, posterior uveitis and anterior uveitis.

**4. Retinal dystrophies**, e.g. retinitis pigmentosa.

**5. Vitreomacular traction** as seen in macular epiretinal membrane (ERM) and vitreomacular traction (VMT) syndrome.

**6. Systemic diseases** such as leukaemia, chronic renal failure and multiple myeloma.

**7. Miscellaneous causes** include intraocular tumours, choroidal neovascularization (CNV) and collagen vascular diseases.

**Pathogenesis**

CME develops due to leakage of fluid following *breakdown of inner blood-retinal barrier* (i.e. leakage from the retinal capillaries) and accumulating in the outer plexiform and inner nuclear layer of retina with the formation of cyst-like changes as depicted on OCT macular scan.

**Clinical features**

**1. Visual loss.** Initially, there is minimal to moderate loss of vision, unassociated with other symptoms. If oedema persists, there may occur permanent decrease in vision.

**2. Ophthalmoscopy** reveals loss of foveal contour, retinal thickening, a yellow spot at the center of fovea and in clinically established cases a typical 'Honey-comb appearance' of macula (due to multiple cystoid oval spaces) (Fig. 12.24). CME is best examined with a fundus contact lens on slit-lamp or +90D lens. Associated features depend on the underlying cause, e.g. CRVO, etc.

**3. Fundus fluorescein angiography** demonstrates leakage and accumulation of dye in the macular region which in a well-established case presents a 'flower petal appearance' in late frames (Fig. 12.25A).

**4. Optical coherence tomography (OCT)** reveals loss of foveal depression, intraretinal area of decreased

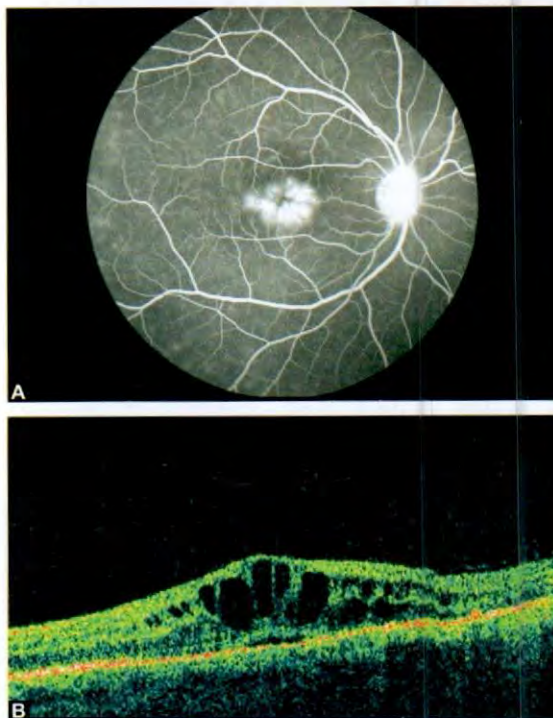
reflectivity with round optically clear regions (cystoid spaces) and over all retinal thickening (Fig. 12.25B). Detection rate on OCT is similar to FFA. It can also detect associated specific pathology, e.g. vitreomacular traction.

**Complications**

Long-standing CME may end in lamellar macular hole.



**Fig. 12.24** Fundus photograph showing honey-comb appearance in cystoid macular oedema (CME)



**Fig. 12.25** Cystoid macular oedema: A, Fundus fluorescein angiogram showing flower petal appearance; B, OCT picture showing cystoid spaces



## Treatment

1. **Treatment of the causative factor**, e.g. intravitreal anti-VEGF or photocoagulation for diabetic CSME; cessation of causative topical 2% adrenaline eye drops and so on.

2. **Topical antiprostaglandin** (NSAID) drops like ketorolac, diclofenac or profenac when used pre- and postoperatively, prevent the occurrence of CME associated with intraocular surgery. These are also useful in the treatment of most CMEs when given for 3 to 4 months.

3. **Topical and systemic steroids** may be of some use in established cases.

4. **Systemic carbonic anhydrase inhibitors (CAIs)**, e.g. oral acetazolamide may be beneficial in some cases of CME, e.g. in retinitis pigmentosa.

## AGE-RELATED MACULAR DEGENERATION

Age-related macular degeneration (AMD), also called *senile macular degeneration*, is a bilateral disease of persons over 50 years of age. It is a leading cause of blindness in developed countries, in population above the age of 65 years.

## Etiopathogenesis

AMD is an age-related disease of worldwide prevalence. Genetic and environmental factors have been implicated in the pathogenesis.

**Genetic factors.** Current evidence suggests genetic susceptibility involving the complement pathway. Twin studies and linkage analysis have identified multiple loci for ARMD genes.

**Risk factors** which may affect the age of onset and/or progression include, nutrition, smoking, female gender, hypertension, exposure to sun light, hyperopia, blue eyes and cataract particularly nuclear opacity. The disease is most prevalent in Caucasians.

## Classification of AMD

**Conventionally**, ARMD is of two types non-exudative and exudative.

1. **Non-exudative or atrophic ARMD (Fig. 12.26A):** It is also called *dry ARMD*, and is responsible for 90% cases.

2. **Exudative AMD:** It is also called *wet* or *neovascular AMD* (Fig. 12.26B). It is responsible for only 10% cases of AMD but is associated with comparatively rapidly progressive marked loss of vision.

**Macular Research Classification Committee (MRCC)** has recently given a consensus classification of ARMD based on the presence of lesions within two disc diameter of the fovea in either eye. Following stages have been described:

**Stage 1 — No apparent ageing changes:** No drusens and no pigmentary changes of ARMD.

**Stage 2 — Normal ageing changes:** Only druplets (newly proposed term for small drusen <63 µm in diameter) and no pigmentary changes.

**Stage 3 — Early AMD:** Medium drusens, (>63 µm to 125 µm in diameter) and no pigmentary changes.

**Stage 4 — Intermediate AMD:** Large drusens (>125 µm in diameter) and/or any pigmentary changes of AMD.

**Stage 5 — Late AMD:** Neovascular AMD and/or any geographic atrophy.

## Clinical features

**Symptoms of AMD** include:

- **Gradual/progressive diminution of vision** occurs in geographic/atrophic or dry AMD.
- **Common visual complaints** are distorted vision, seeing straight lines as wavy, bent or fuzzy. These are shadowed areas in the central visual field (positive scotoma) causing difficulty in reading.
- **Sudden painless loss of vision** may occur in neovascular AMD.

**Signs of AMD** include:

**Drusens in AMD** are well defined, yellowish-white slightly elevated spots seen in the macular area (Fig. 12.26A). These are formed due to extracellular deposits between the RPE and Bruch membrane. These are of three types:

- **Small drusens**, now called as *druplets* are <63 µm in diameter. Size of the drusen can be estimated by comparison with the diameter of retina vein, which is approximately 125 µm in width. Druplets are sign of normal ageing. Term hard drusen has also been used for smaller drusen.
- **Medium drusens** are 63–125 µm in diameter. Presence of medium drusens is sign of early AMD and carry very little risk of progression to late AMD over next 5 years.
- **Large drusens** are >125 µm (i.e. equal to width of retinal vein) in diameter. They are a sign of *intermediate AMD*. Earlier, the term soft drusen has also been used for large drusens. Large drusens in both eyes are associated with a 13% risk of progression to late AMD in 5 years. But when associated with bilateral pigmentary changes, risk rises to 50%.

**Pigmentary abnormalities in AMD.** Pigmentary abnormalities alone or along with large drusen may be seen in the macular area in patients with *intermediate stage of AMD*. Pigmentary changes include areas of hyperpigmentation (due to focal clumps of pigment cells in the subretinal space and



anterior retina) and hypopigmentation (due to RPE atrophy).

**Geographic/atrophic AMD.** Geographic atrophy refers to well demarcated areas, (greater than 175  $\mu$ m in diameter), of progressive atrophy of RPE and photoreceptor cells. In the areas of atrophy underlying larger choroidal vessels may become visible and pre-existing drusen may disappear.

**Neovascular AMD** is a type of late AMD and is characterized by following lesions:

- **Drusen with retinal pigment epithelial detachment (PED)** seen as sharply circumscribed dome-shaped elevation.
- **Choroidal neovascularization (CNV)** proliferating in sub-RPE space (type 1) is seen as greyish green or pinkish yellow raised lesion (Fig. 12.26B). The CNV proliferating in sub-retinal space (type 2) is seen as sub-retinal halo or pigment plaque.
- **Haemorrhagic pigment epithelial detachment (PED).** May occur which appears as dark elevated mount.
- **Haemorrhagic detachment of neurosensory retina** which assumes diffuse outline and a lighter red colour around and adjacent to the PED, may also occur.
- **Disciform sub-retinal scarring** in the macular region may result from gradual organization of blood with further fibrovascular ingrowth.

### Diagnosis

**Clinical diagnosis** is made from the typical signs described above, which are best elucidated on examination of the macula by slit-lamp biomicroscopy with a +90D/+78D non-contact lens or Mainster contact lens.

### Fundus fluorescein angiography (FFA) in AMD

**Drusen,** during the early phase of FFA show punctuate hyperfluorescence, corresponding to window defects due to overlying RPE atrophy. In the late phase, the hyperfluorescence may decrease in smaller drusen and increase in larger drusen.

**Geographic atrophy,** in early phase of FFA is seen as a well-demarcated window defect with a mild increase of hyperfluorescence in late phase. On ICGA, there may be moderate loss of choriocapillaris with preservation of medium and large choroidal vessels.

**Choroidal neovascularization (CNV)** in relation to foveal avascular zone is best detected by fundus fluorescein angiography and indocyanine green angiography CNV may be classical or occult:

- **Classical CNV** is seen as lacy hyperfluorescence with progressive leakage (Fig. 12.26C). It may be subfoveal, juxtafoveal or extrafoveal in location.
- **Occult CNV** is seen as stippled hyperfluorescence (type I) or as late leakage of undetermined source. (type II).

**On autofluorescence imaging,** areas of geographic atrophy shows hyperfluorescence.

### Optical Coherence tomography (OCT)

**Drusen,** on OCT, are seen as hyperreflective irregular nodules (bumps) located between the RPE and Bruch's membrane.

**Geographic atrophy,** on OCT, is seen as severe disruption or absence of the external limiting membrane of retina.

**Neovascular AMD,** on OCT reveals subretinal fluid, intraretinal thickening, choroidal neovascularization and haemorrhages (Fig. 12.26D).

### Treatment

#### A. Prophylactic therapy to prevent progression to late AMD

**I. Vitamin and antioxidant supplementation.** Age-related eye disease study 1 and 2 (AREDS 1 & 2), both have reported role of antioxidant supplements in preventing progression to late AMD.

**Indications include**

- Early AMD (medium drusen >63–125  $\mu$ m in diameter) in both eyes.
- Intermediate AMD (large drusen >125  $\mu$ m in diameter)
- Unilateral CNV

**Recommendations** as per AREDS 2 (daily dose) are:

- Vitamin C: 500 mg
- Vitamin E: 400 mg
- Lutein: 10 mg
- Zeaxanthin: 12 mg
- Zinc: 25–50 mg (lower dose is equally effective)
- Copper: 2 mg (this may not be required with lower zinc dose).

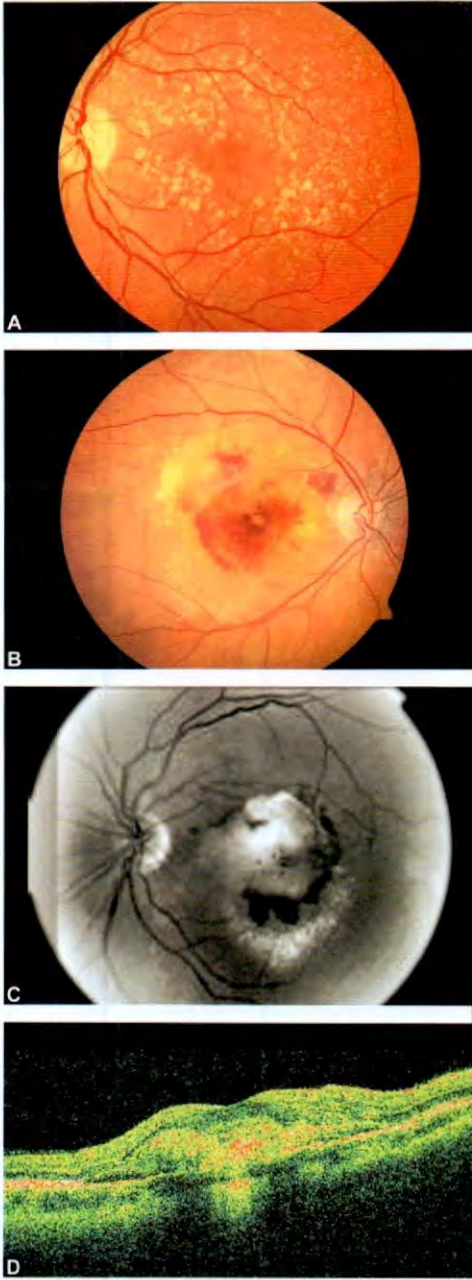
**II. Other measures** recommended to prevent progression of AMD include:

- **Cessation of smoking** may slow the progress.
- **Green leafy vegetables,** to be used liberally.
- **Protective measures against excessive sunlight** exposure should be considered.
- **Regular consumption of oily fish,** may also be useful.

#### B. General measures

- **Amsler grid** used regularly allows the patients to detect new or progressive metamorphopsia prompting them to seek ophthalmic advice.





**Fig. 12.26** Age-related macular degeneration: A, Non-exudative; B, Exudative; C, FFA showing leakage and lacy pattern in CNV; D, OCT picture of CNV

**Refraction** with increased near add may be helpful in early cases.

#### **C. Treatment modalities available for neovascular AMD:**

**1. Intravitreal anti-VEGF therapy** has become the treatment of first choice for all CNV lesions. Anti-VEGFs are injected intravitreally. These include:

- **Bevacizumab** (Avastin), dose: 1.25 mg, or 0.05 mL

- **Ranibizumab** (Lucentis), dose: 0.5 mg/0.05 mL (For detail See page 478).

Results of anti-VEGF are encouraging in the sense that they improve the vision in 30–40% of cases and stabilize the vision in rest of the cases. However, the effect is short lasting and repeated injections are required at an interval of 1–3 months. VEGF-trap-eye (aflibercept), a fusion protein, is reported to be equally effective as standard therapy, but requires fewer injections into the eyes.

**Role of anti-PDGF therapy.** Pericytes are the source to resistance to anti-VEGF therapy in neovascular AMD. Hence, there is a physiological rationale in combining the anti-PDGF and anti-VEGF therapies. The anti-PDGF agent strips pericytes from neovascular complex, rendering the CNV more vulnerable to anti-VEGF treatment.

**Note.** Although anti-VEGF therapy is the preferred strategy for the treatment of CNV, some patients may choose not to undergo an intravitreal procedure. In these cases, options include PDT, TPT, argon laser photocoagulation.

**2. Photodynamic therapy (PDT)** is the treatment of choice after anti-VEGF injections for subfoveal and juxtafoveal classic CNVM. In PDT, Verteporfin, a photosensitizer or light activated dye is injected intravenously. The area of CNVM is then exposed to light from a diode laser source at a wavelength (689 nm) that corresponds to absorption peak of the dye. The light-activated dye then causes disruption of cellular structures and occlusion of CNVM with minimum damage to the adjacent RPE, photoreceptors and capillaries.

**3. Transpupillary thermotherapy (TTT)** with a diode laser (810 nm) may be considered for subfoveal occult CNVM. PDT is definitely better than TTT but is very expensive.

**4. Double frequency YAG 532 nm photocoagulation** may be used for extrafoveal choroidal neovascular membrane (CNVM).

**5. Low vision aid** may be needed in advanced cases of geographical atrophy.

**6. Surgical treatment.** Submacular surgery to remove CNVM and macular translocation surgery are being evaluated.

#### **■ MACULAR HOLE**

Macular hole refers to a partial thickness or full thickness hole in the neurosensory retina in the foveal region.

#### **Causes**

1. **Senile or idiopathic** (83%), more common in females aged 60–80 years than males (F:M, 3:1).
2. **Traumatic macular hole** account for (5%) cases.



3. *Other causes* of macular hole include: cystoid macular oedema, vitreomacular traction, post-surgical, myopia, post-laser treatment, epiretinal membrane traction and post-inflammatory.

**Pathogenesis:** Senile macular holes are caused by tractional forces associated with early PVD.

#### Clinical features

**Symptoms** include:

- *Decreased vision*, typically around 6/60 level for a full thickness hole and better for a partial hole.
- *Metamorphopsia* or distortion of vision may be there.
- *Central scotoma* may be reported by some patients.

**Signs**, are depicted with following examination techniques:

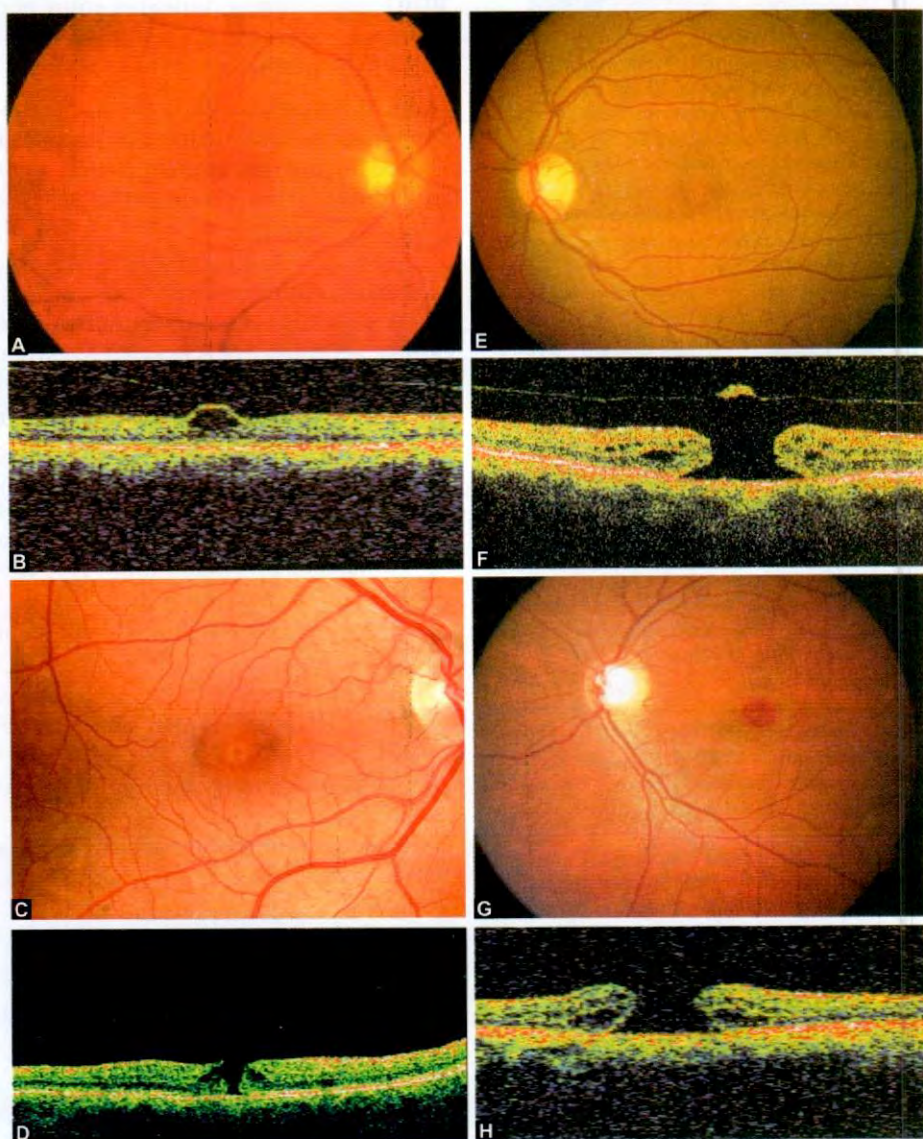
**Amsler grid testing** shows a central scotoma.

**Watzke-Allen test.** A thin line of light is projected over the macula with a slit lamp and the patient is asked to report on its appearance. A line appearing broken may indicate a macular hole.

**Fundus examination.** Based on the fundus appearance (best examined with 78/90D slit-lamp examination), the macular hole can be classified into four stages (Fig. 12.27):

#### Gass classification of macular hole

**Stage 1 or impending hole.** It is characterized by absent foveal reflex and a yellow spot (Stage 1A, Fig. 12.27A)



**Fig. 12.27** Macular hole stages 1, 2, 3, 4: Fundus appearance (A, C, E, G) and OCT pictures (B, D, F, H), respectively



or a yellow ring (Stage 1B) in the foveal region. *OCT examination* reveals a pseudocyst with a vitreous detachment in stage 1A (Fig. 12.27B), and progression of the pseudocyst with a break in the outer foveal layer in stage 1B.

**Stage 2.** A small full thickness hole (Fig. 12.27C) is seen either in the centre of the ring (central) or at the margin of the ring (eccentric). *OCT examination* shows a full thickness hole less than 400 µm in size (Fig. 12.27D).

**Stage 3.** A full thickness hole is seen as round reddish spot surrounded by a grey halo [cuff of subretinal fluid (SRF)], but no PVD (Fig. 12.27E). *OCT examination* shows a full thickness macular hole more than 400 µm in size with partial vitreomacular adhesion/traction (Fig. 12.27F).

**Stage 4.** Full thickness hole with SRF cuff and complete PVD, i.e. posterior vitreous detachment (seen as Weiss ring) (Fig. 12.27G). *OCT examination* confirms a large full thickness hole with posterior vitreous detached from the disc and macula. (Fig. 12.27H).

### Management

**Differential diagnosis** of fundus appearance include:

- Macular pucker (epiretinal membrane) with pseudohole,
- Solar retinopathy,
- Intraretinal cyst (e.g. chronic CME with prominent central cyst) and
- Vitreomacular traction syndrome.

### Investigations

1. *Fundus fluorescein angiography* reveals early foveal hyperfluorescence without leak in the late phase in patients with stage 2 to 4 macular holes.
2. *Optical coherence tomography (OCT)* (Fig. 12.27) is useful for:
  - Differentiating true holes from the lamellar holes and cysts,
  - Staging of the macular hole,
  - Determining the degree of traction from the epiretinal membrane, and
  - Planning the surgery.

### Treatment

- **Stage 1.** Treatment is not recommended as spontaneous hole closure can occur. But close follow-up and observation is required as 50% cases do progress.
- **Stage 2 to 4** holes of recent onset (<1 year) with reduced visual acuity (<6/24) should be treated with pars plana vitrectomy with posterior hyaloid removal, internal limiting membrane (ILM) peeling and gas or silicon oil tamponade with strict postoperative face down position for 7–14 days.

**Prognosis.** Anatomical closure is reported in 80–90% of cases. Visual improvement is reported in 70% cases with recent onset holes.

**Complications of surgery** include:

- **Occurrence or progression of cataract** is a comparatively common complication. Therefore, even if early cataract is present, the cataract surgery should be performed just before or at the time of macular hole surgery.
- **Other reported complications** include: retinal breaks, retinal detachment, late reopening of the hole, RPE loss under the hole, phototoxicity and endophthalmitis.

## RETINAL DETACHMENT

Retinal detachment is the separation of neurosensory retina proper from the pigment epithelium. Normally, these two layers are loosely attached to each other with a potential space in between. Hence, actually speaking the term retinal detachment is a misnomer and it should be retinal separation.

### Classification

Clinico-etiological retinal detachment can be classified into three types:

1. Rhegmatogenous or primary retinal detachment,
2. Tractional retinal detachment, and
3. Exudative retinal detachment.

### RHEGMATOGENOUS OR PRIMARY RETINAL DETACHMENT

Rhegmatogenous retinal detachment usually associated with a retinal break (hole or tear) through which subretinal fluid (SRF) seeps and separates the sensory retina from the pigmentary epithelium. This is the commonest type of retinal detachment.

### Etiology

It is still not clear exactly. The predisposing factors and the proposed pathogenesis is as follows:

**A. Predisposing factors** include:

1. **Age.** The condition is most common in 40–60 years. However, age is no bar.
2. **Sex.** More common in males (M:F—3:2).
3. **Myopia.** About 40% cases of rhegmatogenous retinal detachment are myopic.
4. **Aphakia and pseudophakia.** The condition is more common in aphakes and pseudophake than phakes.
5. **Retinal degenerations** predisposed to retinal detachment are as follows:
  - Lattice degeneration,
  - Snail track degeneration,
  - White-with-pressure and white-without-or occult pressure,



- Acquired or degenerative retinoschisis, and
  - Focal pigment clumps.
6. **Trauma.** It may also act as a predisposing factor.
  7. **Senile posterior vitreous detachment (PVD).** It is associated with retinal detachment in many cases.

#### B. Pathogenesis

Pathogenesis of rhegmatogenous retinal detachment (RRD) is summarized in Fig. 12.28. The retinal breaks responsible for RRD are caused by the interplay between the *dynamic vitreoretinal traction* and predisposing degeneration in the peripheral retina. Dynamic vitreoretinal traction is induced by rapid eye movements especially in the presence of PVD, vitreous syneresis, aphakia and myopia. Once the *retinal break* is formed, the liquified vitreous may seep through it separating the sensory retina from the pigment epithelium. As the subretinal fluid (SRF) accumulates, it tends to gravitate downwards. The final shape and position of RD is determined by location of retinal break (*Lincoff's rule*) and the anatomical limits of optic disc and ora serrata.

The degenerated fluid vitreous seeps through the retinal break and collects as subretinal fluid (SRF) between the sensory retina and pigmentary epithelium.

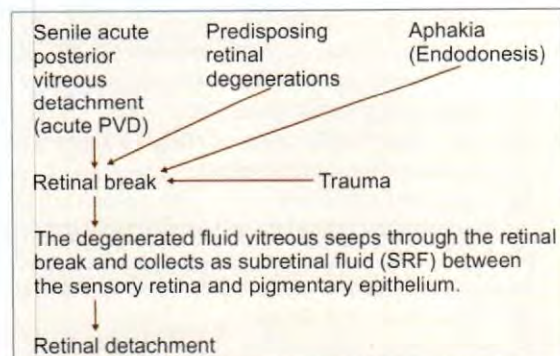
#### Clinical features

**Prodromal symptoms** include:

- **Dark spots** (floaters) in front of the eye (due to rapid vitreous degeneration), and
- **Photopsia**, i.e. sensation of flashes of light (due to irritation of retina by vitreous movements).

**Symptoms** of detached retina are as follows:

1. **Localised relative loss in the field of vision** (of detached retina) is noticed by the patient in early stage which progresses to a total loss when peripheral detachment proceeds gradually towards the macular area.



**Fig. 12.28** Flowchart depicting pathogenesis of rhegmatogenous retinal detachment

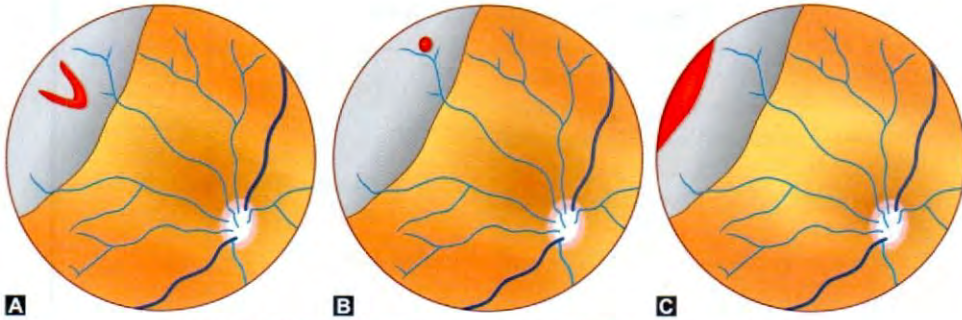
2. **Sudden appearance of a dark cloud or veil** in front of the eye is complained by the patients when the detachment extends posterior to equator.
3. **Sudden painless loss of vision** occurs when the detachment is large and central.

**Signs.** These are elicited on following examinations:

1. **External examination**, eye is usually normal.
2. **Intraocular pressure** is usually slightly lower or may be normal.
3. **Marcus Gunn pupil** (relative afferent pupillary defect) is present in eyes with extensive RD.
4. **Plane mirror examination** or **Distant Direct ophthalmoscopy** reveals an altered red reflex in the pupillary area (i.e. greyish reflex in the quadrant of detached retina).
5. **Ophthalmoscopy** should be carried out both direct and indirect techniques. Retinal detachment, is best examined by indirect ophthalmoscopy using scleral indentation (to enhance visualization of the peripheral retina anterior to equator).
  - **Freshly-detached retina** gives grey reflex instead of normal pink reflex and is raised anteriorly (convex configuration). It is thrown into folds which oscillate with the movements of the eye. These may be small or may assume the shape of balloons in large bullous retinal detachment. In total detachment retina becomes funnel-shaped, being attached only at the disc and ora serrata. Retinal vessels appear as dark tortuous cords oscillating with the movement of detached retina.
  - **Retinal breaks** associated with rhegmatogenous detachment are located with difficulty. These look reddish in colour and vary in shape. These may be round, horse-shoe shaped, slit-like or in the form of a large anterior dialysis (Fig. 12.29). Retinal breaks are most frequently found in the periphery (commonest in the upper temporal quadrant). Associated retinal degenerations, pigmentation and haemorrhages may be discovered.
  - **Vitreous pigments** may be seen in the anterior vitreous (tobacco dusting or *Shaffer sign*), with posterior vitreous detachment.
  - **Old retinal detachment** is characterized by retinal thinning (due to atrophy), formation of subretinal demarcation line (high water marks) due to proliferation of RPE cells at the junction of flat detachment and formation of secondary intraretinal cysts (in very old RD).

6. **Visual field charting** reveals scotomas corresponding to the area of detached retina, which are relative to begin with but become absolute in long-standing cases.





**Fig. 12.29** Retinal detachment associated with: A, Horse-shoe tear; B, Round retinal hole; C, Anterior dialysis

7. **Electroretinography (ERG)** is subnormal or absent.

8. **Ultrasonography** confirms the diagnosis. It is of particular value in patients with hazy media especially in the presence of dense cataracts and vitreous haemorrhage.

### Complications

Complications usually occur in long-standing cases and include proliferative vitreoretinopathy (PVR), complicated cataract, uveitis and phthisis bulbi.

### Treatment

Basic principles and steps of RD surgery are sealing of retinal breaks, reducing the vitreous traction on the retina, and flattening of retina by draining of subretinal fluid and external or internal tamponade.

1. **Sealing of retinal breaks.** All the retinal breaks should be detected, accurately localised and sealed by producing aseptic chorioretinitis, with cryocoagulation, or photocoagulation or diathermy. Cryocoagulation (Fig. 12.30) is utilised, with scleral buckling and pneumoretinopexy while endo-laser photocoagulation is used during V-R surgery.

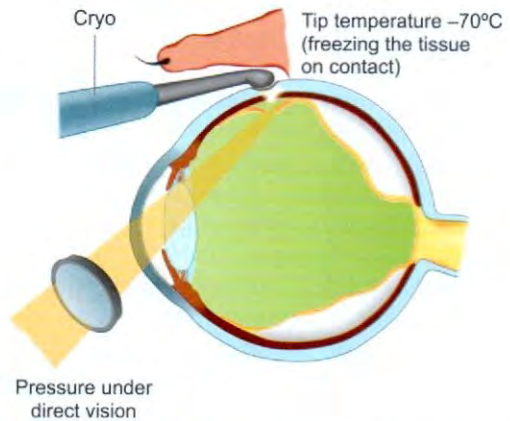
2. **Drainage of SRF.** It allows immediate apposition between sensory retina and RPE. SRF drainage is done very carefully by inserting a fine needle through the sclera and choroid into the subretinal space and allowing SRF to drain away. SRF drainage may not be required in some cases.

3. **Maintenance of chorioretinal apposition** is required for at least a couple of weeks. This can be accomplished by either of the following procedures depending upon the clinical condition of the eye:

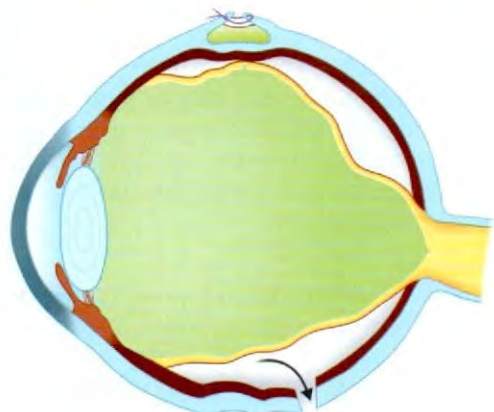
i. **Scleral buckling**, i.e. inward indentation of sclera to provide *external tamponade* is still widely used to achieve the above mentioned goal successfully in simple cases of primary RD. Scleral buckling is achieved by inserting an explant (silicone sponge or solid silicone band) with the help of mattress type sutures applied in the sclera (Fig. 12.31).

Radially-oriented explant is most effective in sealing an isolated hole, and circumferential explant (encircage) is indicated in breaks involving three or more quadrants.

ii. **Pneumatic retinopexy** is a simple out-patient procedure which can be used to fix a fresh superior



**Fig. 12.30** Cryocoagulation of the retinal hole area under direct vision with indirect ophthalmoscopy



**Fig. 12.31** Diagram depicting scleral buckling and subretinal fluid (SRF) drainage



RD with one or two small holes extending over less than two clock hour area in the upper two-thirds of peripheral retina. In this technique after sealing the breaks with cryopexy, an expanding gas bubble ( $\text{SF}_6$  or  $\text{C}_3\text{F}_8$ ) is injected in the vitreous. Then proper positioning of the patient is done so that the break is uppermost and the gas bubble remains in contact with the tear for 5–7 days.

**iii. Pars plana vitrectomy, endolaser photocoagulation and internal tamponade.** This procedure is indicated in:

- All complicated primary RDs, and
- All tractional RDs.
- Presently, even in uncomplicated primary RDs (where scleral buckling is successful), the primary vitrectomy is being used with increasing frequency by the experts in a bid to provide better results.

*Main steps of this procedure are:*

- *Pars plana, 3-port vitrectomy* (See page 269) is done to remove all membranes and vitreous and to clean the edges of retinal breaks.
- *Internal drainage of SRF* through existing retinal breaks using a fine needle or through a posterior retinotomy is done.
- *Flattening of the retina* is done by injecting silicone oil or perfluorocarbon liquid.
- *Endolaser* is then applied around the area of posterior retinotomy, retinal tears, and holes to create chorioretinal adhesions.
- *To tamponade the retina internally* either silicone oil is left inside or is exchanged with some long-acting gas (gas-silicone oil exchange). Gases commonly used to tamponade the retina are sulphur hexafluoride ( $\text{SF}_6$ ) or perfluoropropane ( $\text{C}_3\text{F}_8$ ) (See page 269).

### Prognosis

Anatomical results of surgery are very good, i.e. attachments of retina is achieved in most cases. However, visual results depend on the pre-operative status of the macula. If the macula has been detached, recovery of central vision is usually incomplete. Thus, surgery should be performed urgently if the macula is still not detached. Once the macula is detached, delay in surgery for up to 1 week does not adversely influence visual outcome.

### Prophylaxis

Occurrence of primary retinal detachment can be prevented by timely application of laser photocoagulation or cryotherapy in the areas of retinal breaks and/or predisposing lesions like lattice degeneration. Prophylactic measures are particularly indicated in patients having associated high-risk factors like

myopia, aphakia, retinal detachment in the fellow eye or history of retinal detachment in the family.

### EXUDATIVE OR SOLID RETINAL DETACHMENT

Exudative (serous) retinal detachment occurs due to the retina being pushed away by a neoplasm or accumulation of fluid beneath the retina following inflammatory or vascular lesions.

### Etiology

Common causes of exudative retinal detachment can be grouped as under:

**1. Systemic diseases.** These include: toxæmia of pregnancy, renal hypertension, blood dyscrasias and polyarteritis nodosa.

**2. Ocular diseases.** These include:

- Congenital abnormalities* such as nanophthalmos, optic pit, choroidal coloboma and familial exudative vitreoretinopathy (FEVR);
- Inflammations* such as Harada's disease, sympathetic ophthalmia, posterior scleritis, and orbital cellulitis;
- Vascular diseases* such as central serous retinopathy and exudative retinopathy of Coats;
- Neoplasms*, e.g. malignant melanoma of choroid retinoblastoma (exophytic type), haemangioma, and metastatic tumours of choroid;
- Sudden hypotony* due to perforation of globe and intraocular operations.
- Uveal effusion syndrome* is characterised by bilateral detachment of the peripheral choroid, ciliary body and retina.
- Choroidal neovascularization* may also cause exudative retinal detachment.

### Clinical features

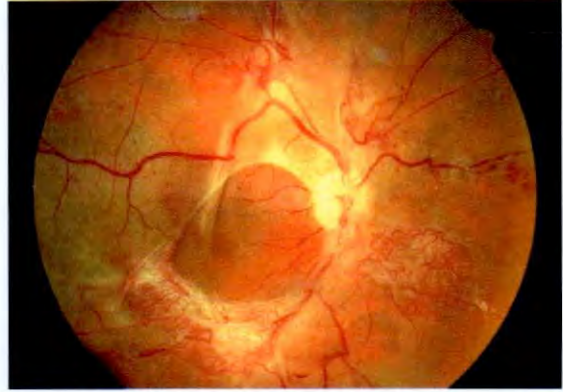
Exudative retinal detachment can be differentiated from a simple primary detachment by:

- *Absence* of photopsia, holes/tears, folds and undulations.
- *The exudative retinal detachment* is smooth and convex (Fig. 12.32). At the summit of a tumour it is usually rounded and fixed and may show pigmentary disturbances.
- *Pattern of retinal vessels* may be disturbed occasionally, due to presence of neovascularization on the tumour summit.
- *Shifting fluid* characterised by changing position of the detached area with gravity is the hallmark of exudative retinal detachment.
- *On transillumination test* a simple detachment appears transparent while solid detachment is opaque.





**Fig. 12.32** Exudative retinal detachment in a patient with malignant melanoma of choroid



**Fig. 12.33** Tractional retinal detachment in a patient with advanced diabetic retinopathy

### Investigations

1. *Ocular and systemic examination* should be carried out thoroughly.
2. *B-scan ultrasonography* may help delineate the underlying cause.
3. *FFA* may show source of fluid.
4. *CT scan* and/or *MRI* is useful, especially in cases of intraocular tumours.

### Treatment

*Treatment of the cause* is required in most of the cases, as the exudative retinal detachment due to transudate, exudate and haemorrhage may undergo spontaneous regression following absorption of the fluid. Thus, the treatment should be for the causative disease.

- *Enucleation* is usually required in the presence of intraocular tumours.

### TRACTIONAL RETINAL DETACHMENT

Tractional retinal detachment (TRD) occurs due to retina being mechanically pulled away from its bed by the contraction of fibrous tissue in the vitreous (vitreo-retinal tractional bands).

### Etiology

TRD is associated with the following conditions:

- Proliferative diabetic retinopathy (most common)
- Post-traumatic retraction of scar tissue especially following penetrating injury,
- Post-haemorrhagic retinitis proliferans,
- Retinopathy of prematurity,
- Plastic cyclitis,
- Sick cell retinopathy,
- Proliferative retinopathy in Eales' disease,
- Vitreomacular traction syndrome,
- Incontinentia pigmenti,
- Retinal dysplasia, and
- Toxocariasis.

### Clinical features

Photopsia and floaters are not complained. Tractional retinal detachment (Fig. 12.33) is characterised by:

- *Presence of vitreo-retinal bands* with lesions of the causative disease.
- *Retinal breaks* are usually absent.
- *Configuration of the detached area* is concave and more localized and usually does not extend up to ora serrata.
- *Highest elevation of the retina* occurs at sites of vitreo-retinal traction.
- *Retinal mobility* is severely reduced and shifting fluid is absent.
- *Focal traction from cellular membranes* can sometimes produce a retinal tear and lead to a combined traction-rhegmatogenous retinal detachment.

### Treatment

- *Surgery* is difficult and requires pars plana vitrectomy to cut the vitreo-retinal tractional bands and internal tamponade with either a long-acting gas or silicon oil.
- *Prognosis* in such cases is usually not so good.

## TUMOURS OF RETINA

Tumours of retina have become a subject of increasing interest to clinical ophthalmologists as well as ocular pathologists. Classification of retinal tumours is given below and only a few, which are commonly seen are described.

### Classification

#### A. Primary tumours

1. *Neuroretinal tumors*
  - Retinoblastoma
  - Astrocytoma



## 2. Retinal pigment epithelial(RPE) tumours

- Congenital hypertrophy of RPE
- Congenital simple hamartoma of RPE
- Combined hamartoma of retina and RPE
- Adenoma and adenocarcinoma of RPE
- Hyperplasia and migration of RPE simulating uveal melanoma

## 3. Retinal vascular tumours

- Capillary haemangioma
- Cavernous haemangioma
- Racemose haemangioma
- Vasoproliferative tumor

## 4. Primary vitreoretinal lymphoma.

### B. Secondary tumours

1. Direct extension, e.g. from malignant melanoma of the choroid.
2. Metastatic carcinomas from the gastrointestinal tract, genitourinary tract, lungs, and pancreas.
3. Metastatic sarcomas.
4. Metastatic malignant melanoma from the skin.

### C. Paraneoplastic syndromes

1. Cancer-associated retinopathy
2. Melanoma-associated retinopathy.

## NEURORETINAL TUMOURS

### ■ RETINOBLASTOMA

Retinoblastoma is a common malignant tumour arising from the neurosensory retina in one or both eyes. After uveal melanoma, it is the second most common malignant intraocular tumor.

#### Demographic data

1. **Prevalence.** It is the most common intraocular tumour of childhood occurring 1 in 15,000 to 20,000 live births, and accounts for about 3% of all childhood cancers.
2. **Age.** Retinoblastoma is confined to infancy and very young children usually seen between 1 and 2 years of age.
3. **Sex.** There is no sex predisposition.
4. **Race.** It is rarer in Negroes than Whites.
5. **Laterality.** Retinoblastoma is unilateral in 70–75 of cases. In 25–30% cases, there is bilateral involvement, although one eye is affected more extensively and earlier than the other.

#### Genetics and heredity

Retinoblastoma gene (RB) has been identified as 14 band on the long arm of chromosome 13 (13q 14) and is a 'cancer suppressor' or 'antioncogenic' gene. Deletion or inactivation of both the normal alleles of this protective gene by two mutations (*Knudson's two hit hypothesis, 1971*) results in occurrence of retinoblastoma.

**Some facts about occurrence of retinoblastoma** are as below:

- *Of all cases*, only 10% are familial (inherited by autosomal dominant mode) and the rest about 90% occur sporadically.
- *Of sporadic cases*, about two-thirds (i.e. 60% of all cases) occur by somatic mutation and one-third (i.e. 30% of all cases) occur by germline mutation.
- *The retinoblastoma thus, occurs* either as heritable (germline) cases (40%) or non-heritable somatic cases (60%).

#### 1. Heritable or germline cases.

- **First hit (mutation)**, in such cases occurs in one of the two alleles of retinoblastoma gene on the germ cells (gametes), before fertilization. This occurs in 40% of all cases either due to inheritance from the affected parent (10% cases) or sporadically in one of the gametes (30% cases). This means mutation will occur in all the somatic cells (predisposing to develop even nonocular tumours such as osteosarcoma).
- **Second hit (mutation)** occurs late in the postzygotic phase and affects second allele of one or more retinal cells, resulting in multifocal and usually bilateral tumour formation. About 15% of heritable cases are unilateral. Some heritable cases have trilateral retinoblastoma (i.e. having associated pinealoblastoma).
- **Heritable cases can transmit the disease** by autosomal dominant way to 50% of offsprings. However, due to variable penetrance only 40% are affected.

**2. Non-heritable or somatic cases.** About 60% of retinoblastoma cases occur sporadically by both hits (mutations) occurring in the same retinal cell in the embryo after fertilization. These mutations generally result in unifocal and unilateral tumours which cannot be passed on to the offsprings. Such patients are not predisposed for nonocular tumours.

#### Pathology

**Origin.** Retinoblastoma arises as malignant proliferation of the immature retinal neural cells which are small round cells with large nuclei, i.e. it is a tumour of a group called *small round blue cell tumour*.

**Histopathology.** The tumour chiefly consists of small round cells with large nuclei, resembling the cells of the nuclear layer of retina. These cells may present as a highly undifferentiated or well-differentiated tumour.

- **Microscopic features of a well-differentiated tumour** include Flexner-Wintersteiner rosettes, (highly specific of retinoblastoma), Homer-Wright rosettes, pseudorosettes and fleurettes formation (Fig. 12.34).
- **Other histologic features** are presence of areas of necrosis and calcification.



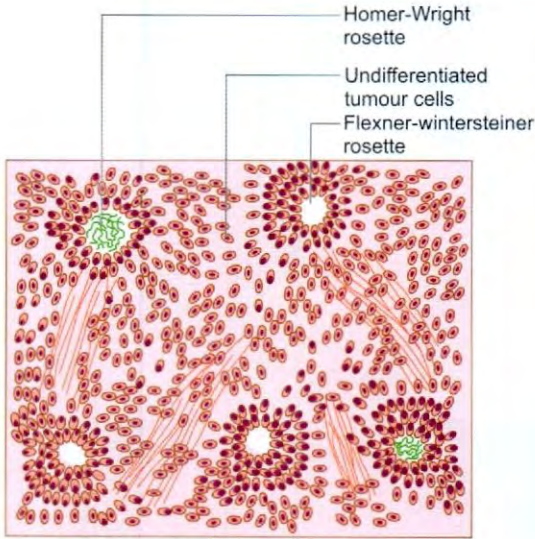


Fig. 12.34 Histopathological picture of retinoblastoma

### Clinical features

Common presenting features of retinoblastoma are listed in Table 12.4. These can be described as below:

#### 1. Manifestations of Intraocular stage of retinoblastoma

Presentation of this stage can be divided into two subgroups: quiescent presentations and painful red eye presentations.

##### a. Quiescent presentations include:

1. **Leucocoria or yellowish-white pupillary reflex** (also called as *amaurotic cat's eye appearance*) is the commonest presenting feature (60%) (Fig. 12.35).
2. **Squint**, usually convergent, is the second commonest mode of presentation.
3. **Nystagmus** is a rare feature, noticed in bilateral cases.
4. **Defective vision**. Very rarely, when the tumour arises late (3–5 years of age), the child may complain of defective vision.

Table 12.4 Presenting features of retinoblastoma

| Presenting features  | Percentages |
|----------------------|-------------|
| Leucocoria           | 60%         |
| Strabismus           | 20%         |
| Painful red eye      | 07%         |
| Poor vision          | 05%         |
| Asymptomatic         | 03%         |
| Orbital cellulitis   | 03%         |
| Unilateral mydriasis | 02%         |
| Heterochromia iridis | 01%         |
| Hyphema              | 01%         |



Fig. 12.35 Leucocoria right eye in a patient with retinoblastoma

#### Ophthalmoscopic features of intraocular retinoblastoma.

In the early stages, before the appearance of leucocoria, fundus examination after full mydriasis performed in children presenting with strabismus, poor vision, or other quiescent features, or on screening in predisposed children, may reveal the growth. Ophthalmoscopic signs in three types of retinoblastoma are as follows:

**i. Endophytic retinoblastoma** (Fig. 12.36A): It grows inwards from the retina into the vitreous cavity. On ophthalmoscopic examination, the tumour looks like a well-circumscribed polypoidal mass of white or pearly pink colour (Fig. 12.36B). Fine blood vessels and sometimes a haemorrhage may be present on its surface. In the presence of calcification, it gives the typical '*cottage cheese*' appearance. There may be multiple growths projecting into the vitreous, which may seed into the gel.

**ii. Exophytic retinoblastoma** (Fig. 12.36D). It grows outwards and separates the retina from the choroid. On fundus examination it gives appearance of exudative retinal detachment (Fig. 12.36E, also See page 312).

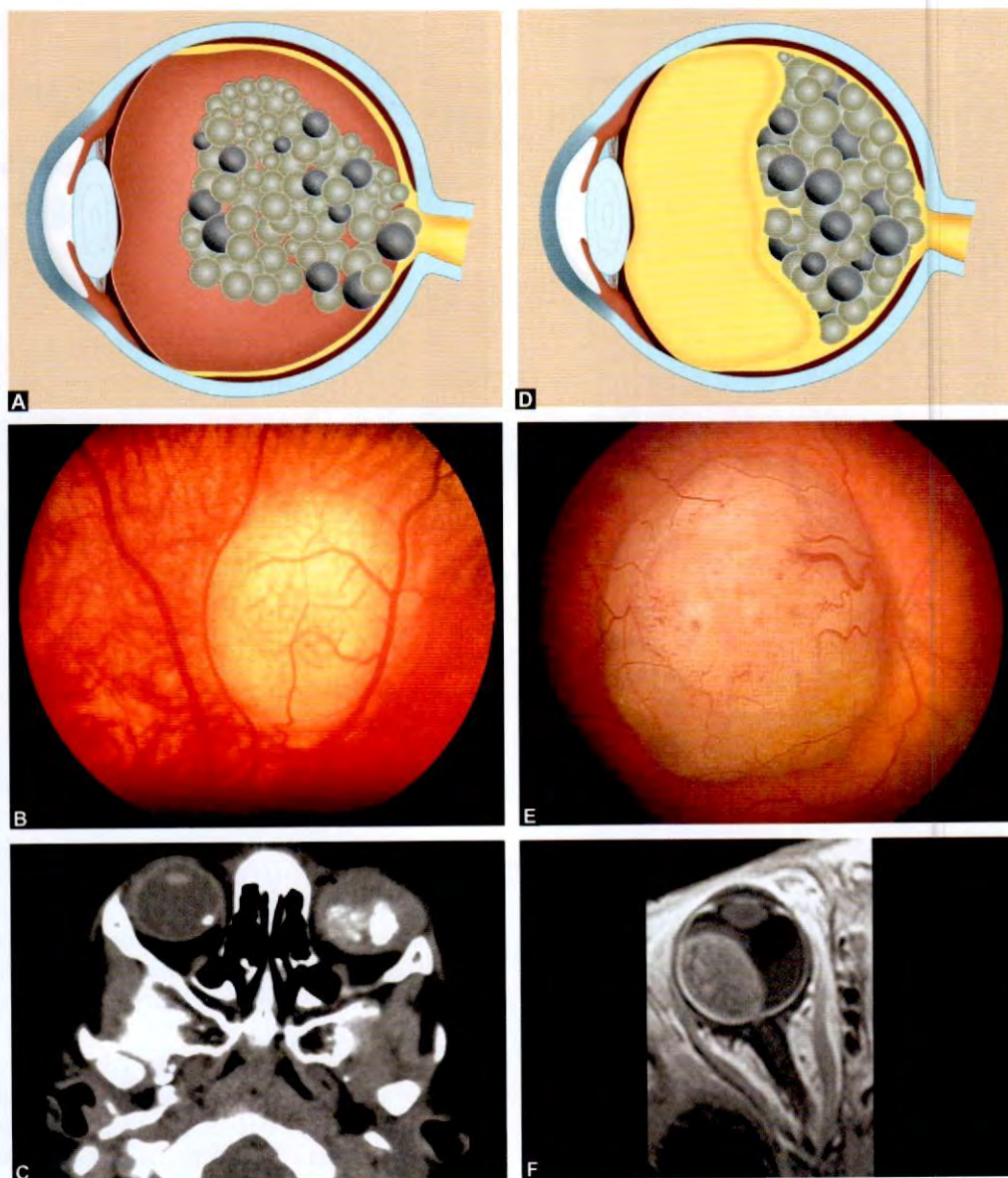
**iii. Mixed endophytic and exophytic** growth pattern having features of both is also reported in some cases.

**iv. Diffuse infiltrating tumours** show just a placoid thickness of retina and not a mass. Such cases are usually diagnosed late.

**b. Painful red eye presentations.** When retinoblastoma is left untreated during the quiescent stage, some patients may present with severe pain, redness, and watering. These symptoms occur either due to acute secondary glaucoma or apparent intraocular inflammation or orbital cellulitis.

■ **Acute secondary glaucoma** may occur either due to tumour pushing the lens-iris diaphragm forward or tumour cells clogging the trabecular meshwork





**Fig. 12.36** Diagrammatic depiction (A&D); Fundus photographs (B&E); CT scan/MRI scan (C&F) of endophytic and exophytic retinoblastoma, respectively

or neovascular glaucoma. In this stage, eyeball is enlarged (*buphthalmos*) with apparent proptosis, conjunctiva is congested, cornea become hazy, intraocular pressure is raised.

- **Apparent intraocular inflammation.** Occasionally, picture simulating severe, acute uveitis usually associated with pseudohypopyon and/or hyphaema may be the presenting mode (*retinoblastoma masquerading as iridocyclitis*).
- **Orbital inflammation, mimicking preseptal or Orbital cellulitis** like presentation may

occur with necrotic tumours. It does not imply extraocular extension and the exact mechanism is not known.

## **II. Manifestations of extraocular extension of retinoblastoma**

Due to progressive enlargement of tumour, the globe bursts through the sclera, usually near the limbus or near the optic disc. It is followed by rapid fungation and involvement of extraocular tissues resulting in marked proptosis (Fig. 12.37).





Fig. 12.37 Fungating retinoblastoma involving the orbit

### III. Manifestations of distant metastasis of retinoblastoma

It is characterised by the involvement of distant structures as follows:

1. *Lymphatic spread* first occurs in the preauricular and neighbouring lymph nodes.
2. *Direct extension* by continuity to the optic nerve and brain is common.

### Classifications of retinoblastoma

i. **Reese-Ellsworth classification**, which was of prognostic significance for the control of local disease has become irrelevant with the availability of newer chemotherapeutic agents and modes of therapy, and so not described here.

ii. **International classification of retinoblastoma (ICRB)**, which is presently being followed worldwide to decide the treatment modality, is given below:

**Group A (very low risk):** includes all *small tumours* <3 mm in greatest dimension, confined to retina, located >3 mm from fovea and >1.5 mm from the optic disc.

**Group B (low risk):** includes large tumours >3 mm in dimension, and any size tumours located <3 mm from fovea, and <1.5 mm from the optic disc margin.

**Group C (moderate risk):** includes retinoblastoma with *focal seeds* characterized by subretinal and or vitreous seeds ≤3 mm from the retinoblastoma.

**Group D (high risk):** includes *retinoblastoma with diffuse seeds* characterized by subretinal and or vitreous >3 mm seeds from the retinoblastoma.

**Group E (very high risk):** includes extensive retinoblastoma characterized by any of the following: tumour touching the lens, neovascular glaucoma, tumour anterior to anterior vitreous face involving ciliary body and anterior segment, diffuse infiltrating

tumour, opaque media with haemorrhage, tumour necrosis with aseptic orbital cellulitis, invasion of postlaminar optic nerve, choroid, sclera, orbit, and anterior chamber, or phthisis bulbi.

### Differential diagnosis

1. **Differential diagnosis of leucocoria.** Various conditions other than retinoblastoma, which present as leucocoria are collectively called as '*pseudoglioma*'. A few common conditions are congenital cataract, inflammatory deposits in vitreous following a plastic cyclitis or choroiditis, coloboma of the choroid, the retrolental fibroplasia (retinopathy of prematurity), persistent hyperplastic primary vitreous, toxocara endophthalmitis and exudative retinopathy of Coats.

2. **Endophytic retinoblastoma** discovered on fundus examination should be differentiated from *retinal tumours* in tuberous sclerosis and neurofibromatosis, astrocytoma and a patch of exudative choroiditis.

3. **Exophytic retinoblastoma** should be differentiated from other causes of exudative retinal detachment in children such as: Coats' disease (See pages 294 and 312).

### Diagnosis

1. **Examination under anaesthesia:** It should be performed in all clinically suspected cases. It should include fundus examination of both eyes after full mydriasis with atropine (direct as well as indirect ophthalmoscopy), measurement of intraocular pressure and corneal diameter.

2. **Plain X-rays of orbit** may show calcification which occurs in 75% cases of retinoblastoma.

3. **Lactic dehydrogenase (LDH)** level is raised in aqueous humour.

4. **Ultrasonography and CT/MRI scanning** are very useful in the diagnosis. CT/MRI also demonstrate extension to optic nerve, orbit and CNS, if any (Figs 12.36C and F). However, CT should be used sparingly because of potential risk of radiation sarcomas.

### Treatment

#### A. Conservative tumour destructive therapy to salvage eyeball

It is indicated when tumour is diagnosed in (stages A to D of ICRB). Present recommendations for the treatment are **multimodal therapy** comprising primary systemic chemotherapy for chemoreduction followed by focal therapy for consolidation.

**Chemotherapy.** Dose in mg/kg body weight for chemoreduction of retinoblastoma are as below:

▪ **Standard dose CVE regimen**, recommended for group A, B, and, C patients, consists of 3-weekly, 6 cycles of carboplatin (18.6 mg) on day 1, vincristine



(0.05 mg) on day 1, and etoposide (5 mg) on day 1 and 2.

• **High dose CVE regimen**, recommended for group D patients, consists of 3-weekly, 6–12 cycles of carboplatin (28 mg) on day 1, vincristine (0.25 mg) on day 1 and etoposide (12 mg) on day 1 and 2.

**Focal therapy.** Depending upon the location and size of the tumour, focal therapy can be chosen from the following modalities:

**Cryotherapy** is indicated for a small tumour located anterior to equator.

**Laser photocoagulation** is used for a small tumour located posterior to equator.

**Thermotherapy** with diode laser is used for a small tumour located posterior to equator away from macula.

**Plaque radiotherapy** is very effective against localised vitreous disease and for the elevated tumours when laser is ineffective.

**External beam radiotherapy** (EBR), once the mainstay of treatment, is now reserved for diffuse disease in the only remaining eye.

**Note.** If the above modalities are not available, the eyeball should be enucleated without hesitation.

### B. Enucleation

It is the treatment of choice for group E tumors and when:

- Tumour involves more than half of the retina.
- Optic nerve is involved.
- Glaucoma is present and anterior chamber is involved.

Eyeball should be enucleated along with maximum length of the optic nerve taking special care not to perforate the eyeball. *If optic nerve shows invasion*, postoperative treatment should include:

- **External beam radiotherapy** (5,000 rads) should be applied to the orbital apex.
- **Chemotherapy**, consisting of carboplatin, vincristine, and etoposide (CVE) which may be combined with cyclosporin should be supplemented.

### C. Palliative therapy

It is given in following cases where prognosis for life is dismal in spite of aggressive treatment:

- Retinoblastoma with orbital extension,
- Retinoblastoma with intracranial extension, and
- Retinoblastoma with distant metastasis.

**Palliative therapy** should include combination of:

- **Chemoreduction** (CVE regimen),
- **Surgical debulking** of the orbit or orbital exenteration, and
- **External beam radiotherapy** (EBRT).

**Note. Exenteration of the orbit** (a mutilating surgery commonly performed in the past) is now not preferred by many surgeons.

### Prognosis

**If untreated** the prognosis is almost always bad and the patient invariably dies. Rarely *spontaneous regression* with resultant cure and shrinkage of the eyeball may occur due to necrosis followed by calcification; suggesting role of some *immunological phenomenon* (tumour immunity).

**If the eyeball is enucleated** before the occurrence of extraocular extension, prognosis is fair (survival rate 70–85%).

**Poor prognostic factors** are: Optic nerve involvement, undifferentiated tumour cells and massive choroidal invasion.

### ■ RETINAL ASTROCYTOMA

Astrocytoma, also known as astrocytic hamartoma, can rarely involve the retina or optic nerve head. It may occur as an isolated tumor of retina, or in association with:

- Tuberous sclerosis (most frequent) (See page 320)
- Neurofibromatosis type I
- Retinitis pigmentosa

**Origin.** It is an acquired benign tumor that arises from the astrocytes within the retinal nerve fibre layer.

**Clinical features.** Most astrocytomas are asymptomatic and are detected on a routine fundus examination or on screening of tuberous sclerosis. Syndromic astrocytomas are usually multifocal and bilateral while non-syndromic astrocytoma is unilateral and unifocal.

**Ophthalmoscopic features** Astrocytomas look as yellowish white plaque, nodule or mulberry like lesion. It is often semitransparent in periphery and calcified centrally. Sometimes, it may be large and may even have cystic components.

**Treatment** is generally not required.

### RETINAL VASCULAR TUMOURS

#### ■ CAPILLARY HAEMANGIOMA

Capillary haemangioma of retina is rare sight threatening benign acquired tumor. It may present as a solitary or multiple lesions. Almost 50% of solitary tumors and almost all multiple tumours are a part of Von-Hippel Lindau (VHL) disease (See page 319)

#### Clinical features

Retinal capillary haemangioma may be detected on routine fundus examination or because of visual symptoms due to macular exudates.



**Ophthalmoscopic features****Features of tumors**

- *Early tumors appear as small red oval or round lesion* located between the arteriole.
- *A well-established tumor* presents as round orange red mass located temporally in the superior or inferior quadrant or near the temporal margin of the optic disc (juxtapapillary).

**Features of complications.** Leakage with exudate formation and /or retinal haemorrhage are quite common and cause decreased vision due to macular exudates.

Vitreous haemorrhages, fibrotic bands and tractional retinal detachment may also be seen.

**Treatment**

*Juxta-papillary tumors* are best treated with photodynamic therapy (PDT).

*Posteriorly located tumors*, away from disc and fovea are best treated with laser photocoagulation.

*Peripheral tumors* located anterior to the equator are best treated with cryotherapy.

*Large tumors* need to be treated with brachytherapy.

*Anterior complications*, like non-absorbing vitreous haemorrhage, tractional bands and tractional RD, require vitreoretinal surgery.

**■ CAVERNOUS HAEMANGIOMA OF RETINA**

Cavernous haemangioma of retina and optic disc head is a rare unilateral congenital hamartoma.

**Clinical features.** Cavernous haemangioma may present as loss of vision due to vitreous haemorrhage or mostly is discovered on routine fundus examination. It may involve any part of retina, occasionally optic nerve.

**Ophthalmoscopic features.** Retinal cavernous haemangioma is a cluster of aneurysms with associated greyish tissue, resembling a bunch of grapes in appearance. Fluid levels in the form of menisci are also seen in the lesion.

**Complications** in the form of haemorrhages and epiretinal membrane (ERM) formation can occur.

**PRIMARY VITREORETINAL LYMPHOMA**

Primary vitreoretinal lymphoma (PVRL) is a distinct subtype of primary central nervous system lymphoma (PCNSL). The malignant lymphoid cells in this disorder are usually of *B-cell lineage*. Primary PVRL, is a variant of *extended non-Hodgkin lymphoma*.

**Clinical features.** PVRL presents as masquerade syndrome as it is misdiagnosed as uveitis, because of following clinical features.

**Symptoms** include unilateral floaters, blurred vision, photophobia. In many cases, symptoms soon become bilateral.

**Signs** noted include:

- *Mild anterior uveitis* with KPs, anterior chamber cells and flare.
- *Vitritis*, mild to severe, which obscures fundus view.
- *Subretinal infiltrates* are large and multifocal.
- *Retinal vasculature* may be seen.
- *Exudative retinal detachment* may be seen in some cases.
- *Vascular occlusions* are also known.
- *Absence of cystoid macular oedema*, is a conspicuous feature which is a consistent feature of true uveitis.
- *CNS involvement* also occurs ultimately in most of the cases.

**Diagnosis** in a suspected case on OCT, FA, USG and MRI is confirmed by *cytology of vitreous* samples or subretinal nodule.

**Treatment.** Systemic and local chemotherapy and radiotherapy are the mainstay. Eye and brain need to be treated simultaneously.

**RETINAL PIGMENT EPITHELIUM TUMOURS****RPE tumours include:**

- Congenital hypertrophy of RPE
- Congenital simple hamartoma of RPE
- Combined hamartoma of retina and RPE
- Adenoma and adenocarcinoma of RPE
- Hyperplasia and migration of RPE simulating uveal melanoma.

**PHACOMATOSES**

Phacomatoses or neurocutaneous syndromes refer to a group of familial conditions (having autosomal dominant transmission) which are characterised by development of neoplasms in eye, skin and central nervous system.

**Note.** Phacomatosis is covered here, since in each type there is involvement of retina. Phacomatoses includes the following conditions:

**■ 1. ANGIOMATOSIS RETINAE (VON HIPPEL LINDAU SYNDROME)**

This is a rare condition affecting males more often than females, in the third and fourth decade of life.

- *Angiomatosis involves* retina, brain, spinal cord, kidneys and adrenals.
- *Clinical course of angiomatosis retinae* comprises vascular dilatation, tortuosity and formation of aneurysms which vary from small and miliary to balloon-like angiomas, followed by appearance of



haemorrhages and exudates, resembling eventually the exudative retinopathy of Coats. Massive exudation is frequently complicated by retinal detachment which may be prevented by an early destruction of angiomas with cryopexy or photocoagulation.

## ■ 2. TUBEROUS SCLEROSIS (BOURNEVILLE DISEASE)

It is characterised by a classic diagnostic triad of adenoma sebaceum, mental retardation and epilepsy associated with hamartomas of the brain, retina and viscera. The name tuberous sclerosis is derived from the potato-like appearance of the tumours in the cerebrum and other organs. Two types of *hamartomas found in the retina are*: (1) relatively flat and soft appearing white or grey lesions usually seen in the posterior pole; and (2) large nodular tumours having predilection for the region of the optic disc.

## ■ 3. NEUROFIBROMATOSIS (VON RECKLINGHAUSEN'S DISEASE)

It is characterised by multiple tumours in the skin, nervous system and other organs.

- *Cutaneous manifestations* are very characteristic and vary from cafe-au-lait spots to neurofibromata.
- *Ocular manifestations* include neurofibromas of the lids and orbit, glioma of optic nerve and congenital glaucoma.

## ■ 4. ENCEPHALOFACIAL ANGIOMATOSIS (STURGE-WEBER SYNDROME)

It is characterised by angiomatosis in the form of port-wine stain (naevus flammeus), involving

one side of the face which may be associated with choroidal haemangioma, leptomeningeal angioma and congenital glaucoma on the affected side.

## ENUCLEATION

Enucleation refers to excision of the eyeball. It can be performed under local anaesthesia in adults and under general anaesthesia in children.

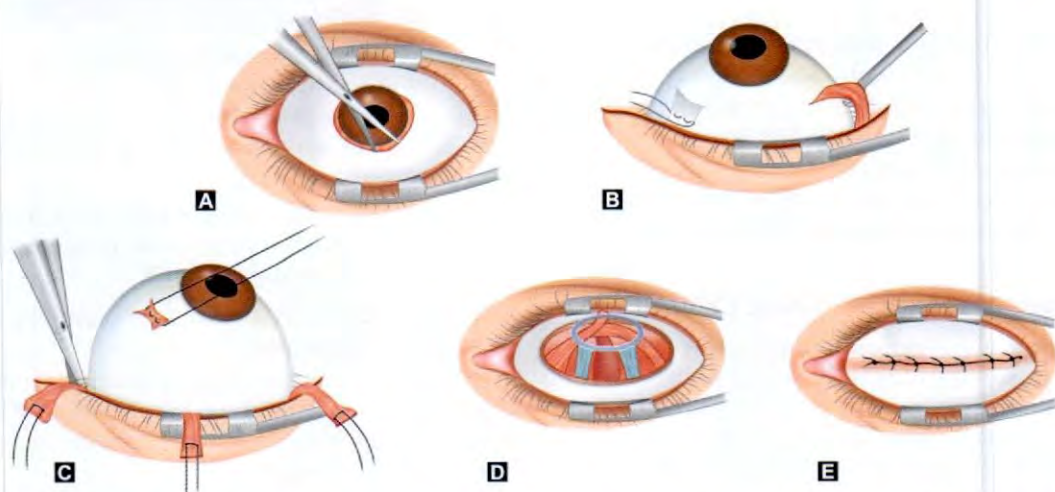
### Indications

1. *Absolute indications* are retinoblastoma and malignant melanoma.
2. *Relative indications* are painful blind eye, non-responsive to conservative measure mutilating ocular injuries, anterior staphyloma and phthisis bulbi.
3. *Indication for eye donation* from cadaver is presently the most common indication for enucleation.

### Surgical technique

1. *Separation of conjunctiva and Tenon's capsule* (Fig. 12.38A): Conjunctiva is incised all around the limbus with the help of spring scissors. Undermining of the conjunctiva and Tenon's capsule is done combinedly, all around up to the equator, using blunt-tipped curved scissors. This manoeuvre exposes the extraocular muscles.

2. *Separation of extraocular muscles* (Fig. 12.38B): The rectus muscles are pulled out one by one with the help of a muscle hook and a 3-0 silk suture is passed near the insertion of each muscle. The muscle is then cut with the help of tenotomy scissors leaving behind



**Fig. 12.38** Surgical steps of enucleation operation: A, Separation of conjunctiva and Tenon's capsule; B, Separation of extraocular muscles; C, Cutting of optic nerve and removal of eyeball; D, Insertion of an orbital implant; and E, Closure of the conjunctiva



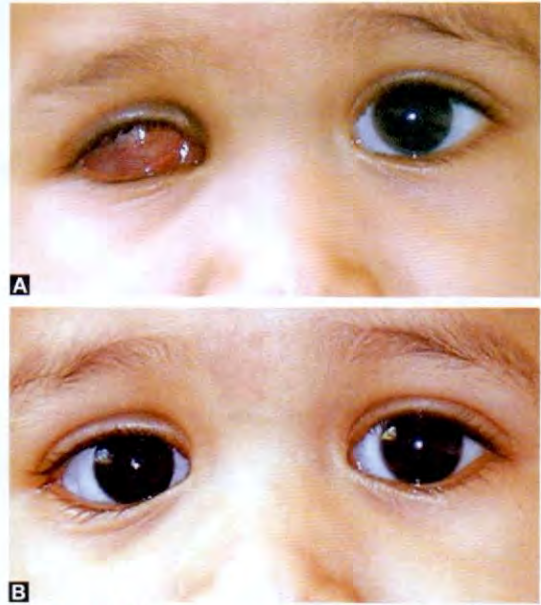
a small stump carrying the suture. The inferior and superior oblique muscles are hooked out and cut near the globe.

**3. Cutting of optic nerve** (Fig. 12.38C): The eyeball is prolapsed out by stretching and pushing down the eye speculum. The eyeball is pulled out with the help of sutures passed through the muscle stumps. The enucleation scissors is then introduced along the medial wall up to the posterior aspect of the eyeball. Optic nerve is felt and then cut with the scissors while maintaining a constant pull on the eyeball.

**4. Removal of eyeball.** The eyeball is pulled out of the orbit by incising the remaining tissue adherent to it and *haemostasis* is achieved by packing the orbital cavity with a wet pack and pressing it back.

**5. Inserting an orbital implant** (Fig. 12.38D): Preferably an orbital implant (made up of PMMA Medpor or hydroxyapatite) of appropriate size should be inserted into the orbit and sutured with the rectus muscles.

**6. Closure of conjunctiva and Tenon's capsule** is done separately. Tenon's capsule is sutured horizontally with 6-0 vicryl or chromic catgut. Conjunctiva is sutured vertically so that conjunctival fornices are retained deep with 6-0 silk sutures (Fig. 12.38E) which are removed after 8–10 days. After completion of surgery, antibiotic ointment is applied, lids are closed and dressing is done with firm pressure using sterile eye pads and a bandage.



**Fig. 12.39** Photographs of a patient: A, Without artificial eye; B, With artificial eye

#### **Fitting of artificial prosthetic eye**

Conformer may be used postoperatively so that the conjunctival fornices are retained deep. A proper sized prosthetic eye can be inserted for good cosmetic appearance (Fig. 12.39) after 6 weeks when healing of the enucleated socket is complete.



# 13

## Neuro-ophthalmology

### ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY

- Anatomy of visual pathway
- Pathway of visual sensations versus somatic sensations

### LESIONS OF VISUAL PATHWAY

- Optic nerve lesions
- Chiasmal lesions
- Retrochiasmal lesions

### PUPILLARY REFLEXES AND THEIR ABNORMALITIES

### DISEASES OF OPTIC NERVE

- Congenital anomalies
- Optic neuritis
- Toxic/nutritional optic neuropathy
- Anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy
- Papilloedema
- Optic atrophy
- Tumours

### SYMPTOMATIC DISTURBANCES OF THE VISION

- Night blindness Nyctalopia

- Day blindness Hemeralopia
- Colour blindness
- Amaurosis
- Amblyopia
- Cortical blindness
- Malingering
- Hysterical blindness
- Disorders of higher visual functions

### OCULAR MANIFESTATIONS OF DISEASES OF CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

- Intracranial infections
- Intracranial aneurysms
- Intracranial haemorrhages
- Intracranial space-occupying lesions (ICSOLs)
- Demyelinating diseases
- Ocular signs in head injury

## ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY

### ■ ANATOMY OF VISUAL PATHWAY

#### Components of visual pathway

The visual pathway starting from retina consists of optic nerves, optic chiasma, optic tracts, lateral geniculate bodies, optic radiations and the visual cortex (Fig. 13.1).

#### Optic nerve

Each optic nerve (second cranial nerve) starts from the optic disc and extends up to optic chiasma, where the two nerves meet. It is the backward continuation of the nerve fibre layer of the retina, which consists of the axons originating from the ganglion cells (second order neuron). It also contains the afferent fibres of the pupillary light reflex.

**Morphologically and embryologically**, the optic nerve is comparable to a sensory tract:

- *Not covered by neurilemma* unlike peripheral nerves. So, it does not regenerate when cut.
- *Fibres of optic nerve*, numbering about a million, are very fine (2–10  $\mu\text{m}$  in diameter as compared to 20  $\mu\text{m}$  of sensory nerves).
- *Covered by meningeal sheaths* like other parts of CNS.

**Parts of optic nerve.** The optic nerve is about 47–50 mm in length, and can be divided into 4 parts: intraocular (1 mm), intraorbital (30 mm), intracanalicular (6–9 mm) and intracranial (10 mm).

**1. Intraocular part** starts from the optic disc (See page 271), pierces the choroid and sclera (converting it into a sieve-like structure the lamina cribrosa). At the back of eyeball, it becomes continuous with the intraorbital part.

**2. Intraorbital part** extends from back of the eyeball to the optic foramina. This part is slightly sinuous to give play for the eye movements. Posteriorly, near the optic foramina, it is closely surrounded by the annulus of Zinn and the origin of the four rectus muscles. Some fibres of superior rectus muscle are adherent to its sheath here, and accounts for the painful ocular movements seen in retrobulbar neuritis. Anteriorly, the nerve is separated from the ocular muscles by the orbital fat.

**3. Intracanalicular part** is closely related to the ophthalmic artery which lies inferolateral to it and crosses obliquely over it, as it enters the orbit, to lie on its medial side. Sphenoid and posterior ethmoidal sinuses lie medial to it and are separated by a thin bony lamina. This relation accounts for retrobulbar neuritis following infection of the sinuses.



**4. Intracranial part** of the optic nerve lies above the cavernous sinus and converges with its fellow (over the diaphragma sellae) to form the optic chiasma.

**Meningeal sheaths.** Pia mater, arachnoid and dura covering the brain are continuous over the optic nerves. In the optic canal, the dura is firmly adherent with the surrounding bone. The subarachnoid and subdural spaces around the optic nerve are also continuous with those of the brain.

### Optic chiasma

It is a flattened structure measuring 12 mm (horizontally) and 8 mm (anteroposteriorly). It lies directly above the tuberculum and diaphragma sellae and, therefore, presence of visual field defects in a patient with pituitary tumor indicates suprasellar extension.

Fibres originating from the nasal halves of the retina decussate at the chiasma (Fig. 13.1).

### Optic tracts

These are cylindrical bundles of nerve fibres running outwards and backwards from the posterolateral aspect of the optic chiasma. *Each optic tract consists of fibres from the temporal half of the retina of the same eye and the nasal half of the opposite eye.* Posteriorly, each optic tract ends in the lateral geniculate body (Fig. 13.1). The pupillary reflex fibres pass on to pretectal nucleus in the midbrain through the superior brachium. Some fibres terminate in the superior colliculus (See Fig. 13.6).

### Lateral geniculate bodies

These are oval structures situated at the posterior termination of the optic tracts. Each geniculate

body consists of six layers of neurons (grey matter) alternating with white matter (formed by optic fibres). The fibres of second-order neurons coming via optic tracts relay in these third-order neurons.

### Optic radiations

Optic radiations (geniculocalcarine pathway) extend from the lateral geniculate bodies to the visual cortex and consist of the axons of third-order neurons of visual pathway (Fig. 13.1). Inferior fibres of optic radiations subserve upper visual fields and superior fibres subserve inferior visual fields.

### Visual cortex

It is located on the medial aspect of the occipital lobe, above and below the calcarine fissure. It is subdivided into the visuosensory area (striate area 17) that receives the fibres of the radiations, and the surrounding visuopsychic area (peristriate area 18 and parastriate area 19).

### Blood supply of the visual pathway

The visual pathway is mainly supplied by pial network of vessels except the orbital part of optic nerve which is also supplied by an axial system derived from the central artery of retina. The pial plexus around different parts of the visual pathway gets contribution from different arteries as shown in Fig. 13.2.

**Blood supply of the optic nerve head** needs special mention (Fig. 13.3):

- **Surface layer** of the optic disc is supplied by capillaries derived from the retinal arterioles.
- **Prelaminar region** is mainly supplied by centripetal branches of the peripapillary choroid with some contribution from the vessels of lamina cribrosa.

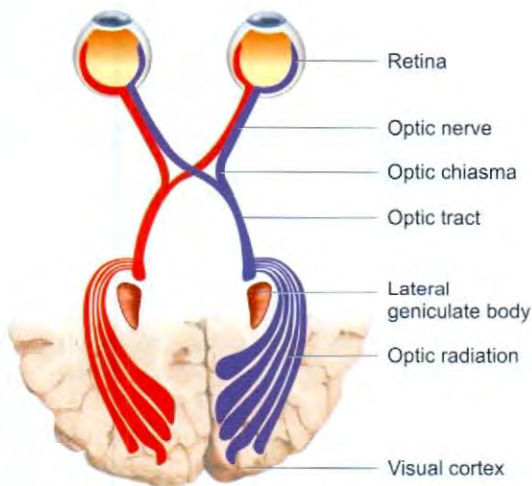


Fig. 13.1 Components of the visual pathway

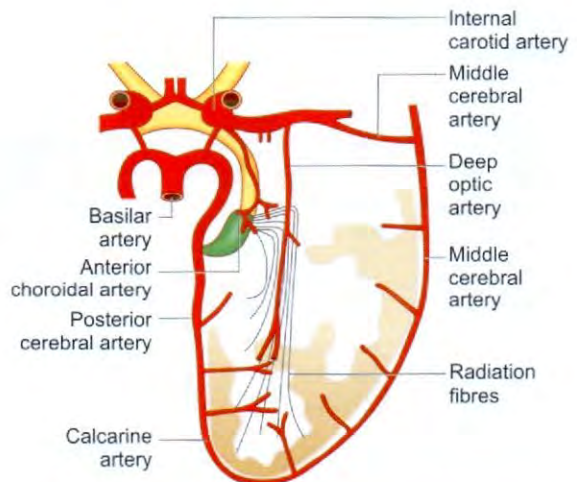


Fig. 13.2 Blood supply of posterior visual pathway



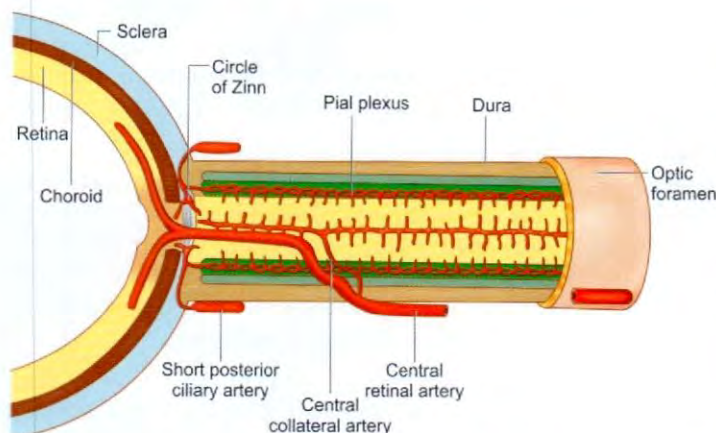


Fig. 13.3 Blood supply of the optic nerve

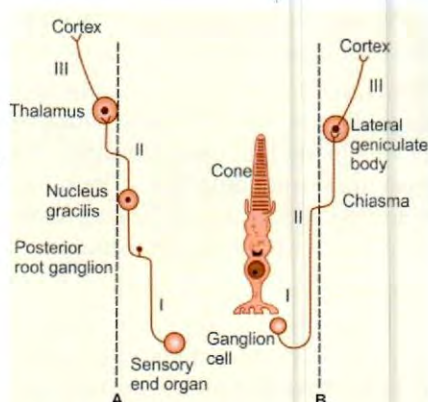


Fig. 13.4 Pathway of visual sensations (B) versus somatic sensations (A)

- *Lamina cribrosa* is supplied by branches from the posterior ciliary arteries and arterial circle of Zinn.
- *Retrolaminar part* of the optic nerve is supplied by centrifugal branches from central retinal artery and centripetal branches from pial plexus formed by branches from the choroidal arteries, circle of Zinn, central retinal artery and ophthalmic artery.

### ■ PATHWAY OF VISUAL SENSATIONS VERSUS SOMATIC SENSATIONS

The pathway of somatic as well as visual sensations consists of three neurons (Fig. 13.4). The corresponding parts of the pathway of these sensations are shown in Table 13.1.

### LESIONS OF VISUAL PATHWAY

Salient features and important causes of lesions of the visual pathway at different levels (Fig. 13.5) are as follows:

Table 13.1 Somatic vs. visual sensations

| Feature                    | Somatic sensation                   | Visual sensation                        |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| 1. Sensory end organ       | Nerve endings in the skin           | Rods and cones                          |
| 2. Neurons of first order  | Lie in posterior root ganglion      | Lie in bipolar cell layer of the retina |
| 3. Neurons of second order | Lie in nucleus gracilis or cuneatus | Lie in ganglion cells of the retina     |
| 4. Neurons of third order  | Lie in thalamus                     | Lie in geniculate body                  |

### ■ OPTIC NERVE LESIONS

#### 1. Lesions of distal part of optic nerve

*Salient features* are:

- Marked loss of vision or complete blindness on the affected side associated (See 1 and A in Fig. 13.5) with
- Abolition of the direct light reflex on the ipsilateral side and consensual on the contralateral side.
- Near (accommodation) reflex is present.

*Common causes* of optic nerve lesions are: optic atrophy, traumatic avulsion of the optic nerve, indirect optic neuropathy, ischemic optic neuropathy and acute optic neuritis.

#### 2. Lesions of proximal part of optic nerve.

*Salient features* of such lesions are:

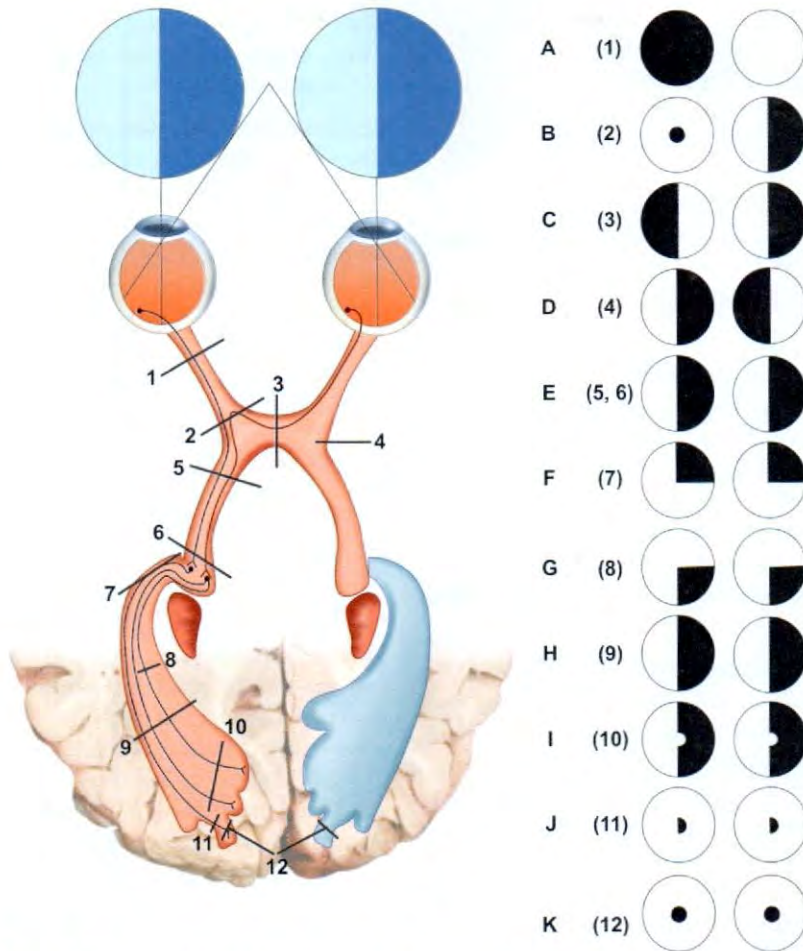
- Ipsilateral blindness,
- Contralateral hemianopia, this is because while decussating in the optic chiasma some nasal fibres loop in the proximal part of opposite optic nerve (See 2 in Fig. 13.5).
- Abolition of direct light reflex on the affected side and consensual on the contralateral side, and
- Near reflex is intact.

### ■ CHIASMAL LESIONS

#### Causes of chiasmal lesions

1. *Intrinsic causes*, i.e. which produce thickening of chiasma itself include gliomas, and multiple sclerosis.
2. *Extrinsic causes* include compressive lesions such as pituitary adenoma (most common cause), craniopharyngiomas, and meningioma.





**Fig. 13.5** Lesions of the visual pathways at the level of: 1. optic nerve; 2. proximal part of optic nerve; 3. central chiasma; 4. lateral chiasma (both sides); 5. optic tract; 6. geniculate body; 7. part of optic radiations in temporal lobe; 8. part of optic radiations in parietal lobe; 9. optic radiations; 10. visual cortex sparing the macula; 11. visual cortex, only macula; 12. bilateral visual cortex only macula

3. Other causes of chiasmal syndrome include metabolic, toxic, traumatic, and inflammatory conditions (lymphoid hypophysitis and sarcoidosis).

### Features of chiasmal lesions

#### Chiasmal syndrome

Chiasmal syndrome refers to the set of signs and symptoms associated with lesions of optic chiasma. Chiasmal syndrome has been classified into three types:

**1. Anterior chiasmal syndrome** is produced by lesions that affect the ipsilateral optic nerve fibres and the contralateral inferonasal fibres located in the Willebrand knee; typically producing the so-called *junctional scotoma*, i.e. a combination of central scotoma in one eye and temporal hemianopia defect in the other eye. (Fig. 13.5B)

**2. Middle chiasmal syndrome** is produced by lesions involving the decussating fibres in the body of chiasma typically producing *bitemporal hemianopia* (Fig. 13.5C) and bitemporal hemianopic paralysis of pupillary reflexes.

**3. Posterior chiasmal syndrome** is produced by lesions affecting the caudal fibres in chiasma. *Characteristic features* are as below:

- *Paracentral bitemporal field defects* occur because the macular fibres which cross more posteriorly in the chiasma are damaged in the posterior chiasmal lesions.
- *Visual acuity and colour vision* may be preserved as temporal macular fibres are not damaged.
- *Homonymous hemianopia* on the contralateral side may occur when posterior chiasmal lesions involve the optic tract (Fig. 13.5E).



**Lateral chiasmal lesions**

**Salient features** of such lesions are:

- **Binasal hemianopia** (Fig. 13.5D) associated with
- **Binasal hemianopic** paralysis of the pupillary reflexes. These usually lead to partial descending optic atrophy.

**Common causes** of such lesions are:

- Distension of third ventricle causing pressure on each side of the chiasma and
- Atheroma of the carotids or posterior communicating arteries.

**RETROCHIASMAL LESIONS**

**Retrochiasmal lesions** include lesions of optic tract, lateral geniculate nucleus, optic radiations and occipital lobe.

**Contralateral homonymous hemianopia** of different forms such as incomplete (congruous or incongruous) or complete, depending upon the site of lesion is the predominant field defect of all retrochiasmal lesions.

**Lesions of optic tract**

**Causes** of optic tract lesions include:

- **Intrinsic lesions** include demyelinating diseases and infarction. Such lesions produce optic tract syndrome type II.
- **Extrinsic, i.e. compressive lesions** include pituitary adenomas (most common cause), craniopharyngioma (common), tumours of optic thalamus, and large aneurysm of superior cerebellar or posterior cerebral arteries.
- **Other causes** include syphilitic meningitis, gumma and tubercular meningitis.

**Characteristic features** include:

- **Incongruous homonymous hemianopia**, i.e. asymmetrical field defect involving either right halves of visual field of both eyes (right homonymous hemianopia (Fig. 13.5E) in left optic tract lesions) or left halves of visual fields of both eyes (left homonymous hemianopia due to lesions of right optic tract). This is explained anatomically by the fact that each optic tract contains fibres from the ipsilateral temporal half of retina and contralateral nasal half of retina.
- **Contralateral hemianopic pupillary responses**, i.e. Wernicke's reaction.
- **Optic disc changes.** Optic tract lesions produce descending type of partial optic atrophy characterized by temporal pallor on the side of lesion and bow-tie atrophy on the contralateral side.
- **Visual acuity** is usually intact in the intrinsic lesions of optic tract.

- **Ipsilateral third nerve palsy** and **ipsilateral hemiplegia** may be associated with optic tract lesions in some cases.

**Lesions of lateral geniculate nucleus**

**Characteristic features** of lateral geniculate nucleus (LGN) lesions are as below:

- **Homonymous hemianopia** produced is usually incongruous (Fig. 13.5E).
- **Pupillary reflexes** are normal, as fibres for pupillary reflexes from the optic tract are diverted to pretectal nucleus and do not reach the LGN.
- **Optic disc pallor** may occur due to partial descending atrophy.

**Lesions of optic radiations**

**Common lesions** of optic radiations include:

- Vascular occlusions,
- Tumours (primary or secondary),
- Trauma, and
- Temporal lobectomy for seizures.

**Characteristic features** include:

1. **Visual field defects** in the lesions of optic radiations vary depending upon the site of lesion as below:
  - **Superior quadrantic hemianopia** (pie in the sky) (Fig. 13.5E) is produced when **inferior fibres** are involved in **temporal lobe lesions**. Anatomically, it is explained by the fact that inferior fibres of optic radiations contain fibres from ipsilateral lower temporal retina and contralateral lower nasal retina. Inferior most fibres of optic radiation form the so called **Meyer's loop**.
  - **Inferior quadrantic hemianopia** (pie on the floor) (Fig. 13.5G) is produced when **superior fibres** are involved in **parietal lobe lesions**. This is explained anatomically by the fact that superior fibres of optic radiations contain fibres from ipsilateral upper temporal retina and contralateral upper nasal retina.
  - **Complete homonymous hemianopia**, (Fig. 13.5H) is produced when total fibres of optic radiations, are involved sometimes with sparing of macula (as macular fibres lie in the central part of optic radiations).
2. **Pupillary reflexes are spared** in lesions of optic radiations.
3. **Optic disc atrophy does not occur** in lesions of optic radiations, as the second order neurons synapse in the lateral geniculate nucleus (LGN).

**Lesions of visual cortex**

**Characteristic features** of visual cortex lesions can be described as visual field defects and other manifestations.



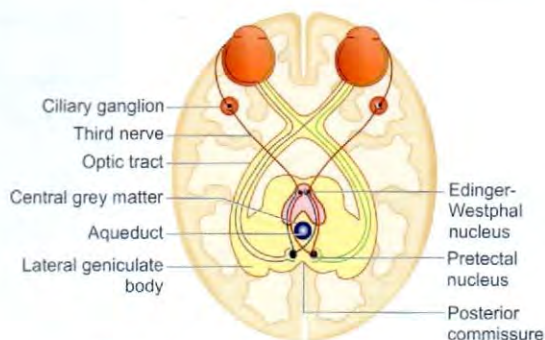
**I. Visual field defects in occipital lobe lesions** include:

- **Congruous homonymous hemianopia** (Fig. 13.5I) (usually sparing the macula) is a feature of occlusion of posterior cerebral artery supplying the anterior part of visual cortex.
- **Congruous homonymous macular defects** (Fig. 13.5J) occur in lesions of the tip of occipital cortex following head injury or gunshot injuries.
- **Bilateral homonymous hemianopia with macula sparing** producing a picture of ring scotoma is seen in bilateral occipital lobe lesions.
- **Bilateral homonymous macular defects**, presenting like bilateral central scotoma (Fig. 13.5K) occur in bilateral lesions of occipital cortex.

**Note.** Pupillary light reflexes are normal and optic atrophy does not occur following visual cortex lesions.

**II. Other manifestations of occipital lobe lesions** include:

- **Cortical blindness** can occur in bilateral occipital lobe lesions.
- **Dyschromatopsia**, i.e. acquired colour blindness.
- **Visual hallucinations** occurring in occipital lobe lesions are unformed, while in temporal lobe lesions the visual hallucinations are formed.
- **Palinopsia**, i.e. persistent or recurrent perception of a visual image, may occur.
- **Visual anaesthesia**, i.e. transpositioning of visual stimuli from one hemifield to another.
- **Polyopsia**, i.e. multiple images of a single object, seen in occipital lobe lesions, does not disappear on closing of eye.



**Fig. 13.6** Pathway of the light reflex

**2. Internuncial fibres** connect each pretectal nucleus with Edinger-Westphal nuclei of both sides. This connection forms the basis of consensual light reflex.

**3. Efferent pathway** consists of the parasympathetic fibres which arise from the Edinger-Westphal nucleus in the midbrain and travel along the third (oculomotor) cranial nerve. The preganglionic fibres enter the inferior division of the third nerve and via the nerve to the inferior oblique reach the ciliary ganglion to relay. Post-ganglionic fibres travel along the short ciliary nerves to innervate the sphincter pupillae.

**Near reflex**

Near reflex occurs on looking at a near object. It consists of two components: (a) convergence reflex, i.e. constriction of pupil on convergence; and (b) accommodation reflex, i.e. constriction of pupil associated with accommodation.

**Pathway of convergence reflex** (Fig. 13.7). Its afferent pathway is still not elucidated. It is assumed that the afferents from the medial recti travel centrally via the third nerve to the mesencephalic nucleus of the fifth nerve, to a presumptive convergence centre in the tectal or pretectal region. From this, the impulse is relayed to the Edinger-Westphal nucleus and the subsequent efferent pathway of near reflex is along the 3rd nerve. The efferent fibres relay in the accessory ganglion before reaching the sphincter pupillae.

**Pathway of accommodation reflex** (Fig. 13.7). The afferent impulses extend from the retina to the parastriate cortex via the optic nerve, chiasma, optic tract, lateral geniculate body, optic radiations, and striate cortex. From the parastriate cortex, the impulses are relayed to the Edinger-Westphal nucleus of both sides via the occipitomesencephalic tract and the pontine centre. From the Edinger-Westphal nucleus the efferent impulses travel along the 3rd nerve and reach the sphincter pupillae and ciliary muscle after relaying in the accessory and ciliary ganglions.

## PUPILLARY REFLEXES AND THEIR ABNORMALITIES

**PUPILLARY REFLEXES****Light reflex**

When light is shone in one eye, both the pupils constrict. Constriction of the pupil to which light is shone is called *direct light reflex* and that of the other pupil is called *consensual (indirect) light reflex*. Light reflex is initiated by rods and cones.

**Pathway of light reflex** include (Fig. 13.6):

**1. Afferent fibres** extend from retina to the pretectal nucleus in the midbrain. These travel along the optic nerve to the optic chiasma where fibres from the nasal retina decussate and travel along the opposite optic tract to terminate in the contralateral pretectal nucleus. While the fibres from the temporal retina remain uncrossed and travel along the optic tract of the same side to terminate in the ipsilateral pretectal nucleus.



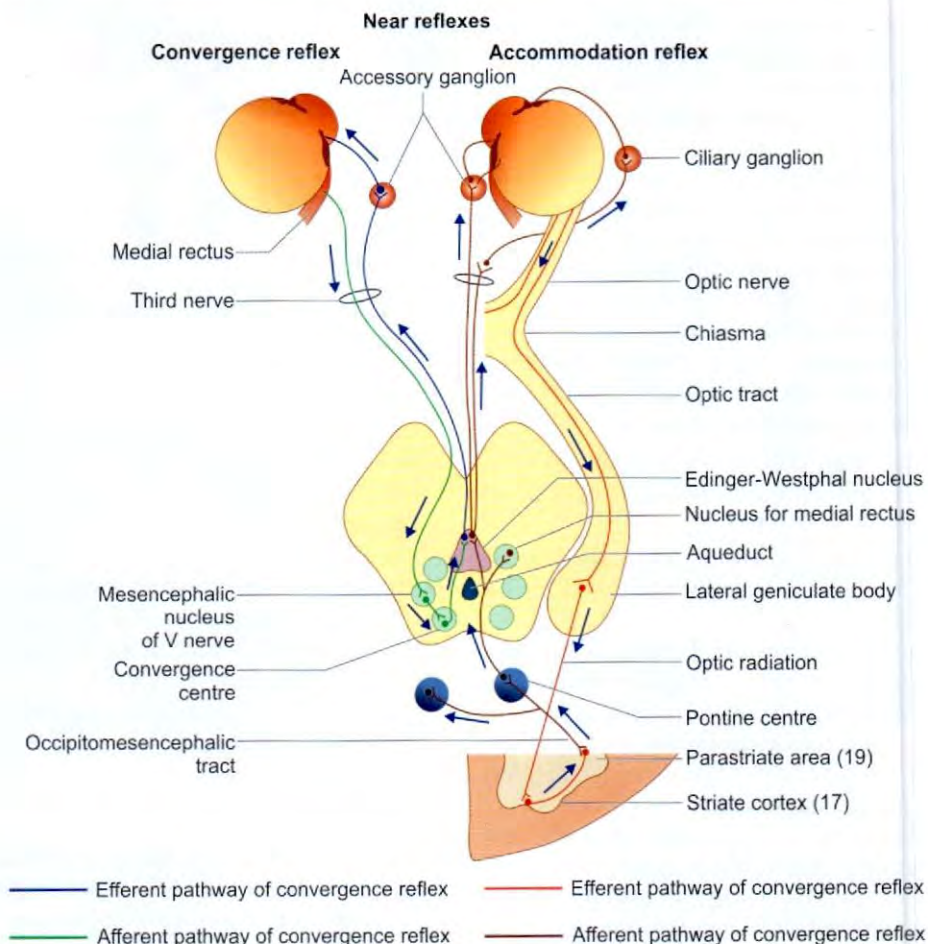


Fig. 13.7 Pathway of the near reflex

**Psychosensory reflex**

It refers to dilatation of the pupil in response to sensory and psychic stimuli. It is very complex and its mechanism is still not elucidated.

**■ EXAMINATION OF PUPILLARY REFLEXES**

See pages 525–526.

**■ ABNORMALITIES OF PUPILLARY REACTIONS**

**1. Amaurotic light reflex.** It refers to the absence of direct light reflex on the affected side (say right eye) and absence of consensual light reflex on the normal side (i.e. left eye). This indicates lesions of the optic nerve or retina on the affected side (i.e. right eye), leading to complete blindness. In diffuse illumination both pupils are of equal size.

**2. Efferent pathway defect.** Absence of both direct and consensual light reflex on the affected side (say right eye) and presence of both direct and consensual Q light reflex on the normal side (i.e. left eye) indicates efferent pathway defect (sphincter paralysis). Near reflex is also absent on the affected side. Its causes

include: effect of parasympatholytic drugs (e.g. atropine, homatropine), internal ophthalmoplegia, and third nerve paralysis.

**3. Wernicke's hemianopic pupil.** It indicates lesion of the optic tract. In this condition, light reflex (ipsilateral direct and contralateral consensual) is absent when light is thrown on the temporal half of the retina of the affected side and nasal half of the opposite side; while it is present when the light is thrown on the nasal half of the affected side and temporal half of the opposite side.

**4. Marcus Gunn pupil.** It is the paradoxical response of a pupil to light in the presence of a relative afferent pathway defect (RAPD). Causes of Marcus Gunn pupil include incomplete optic nerve lesions and severe retinal diseases.

**Tests.** It is tested by swinging flash light test (For details See page 526).

**Note.** Marcus Gunn pupil is the earliest indication of optic nerve disease even in the presence of normal visual acuity in the affected eye.



**5. Argyll Robertson pupil (ARP).** Here the both pupils are slightly irregular and small in size and reaction to near reflex is present but light reflex (both direct and consensual) is absent, i.e. there is light near dissociation (to remember, the acronym ARP may stand for 'accommodation reflex present'). Both pupils are involved and dilate poorly with mydriatics. It is caused by a lesion (usually neurosyphilis) in the region of tectum.

**6. Adie's tonic pupil.** The affected pupil is toxically dilated (anisocoria). In this condition, reaction to light is absent and to near reflex is very slow and tonic. It is caused by post-ganglionic parasympathetic pupillomotor damage. It is usually unilateral, associated with absent knee jerk and occurs more often in young women. Adie's pupil constricts with weak pilocarpine (0.125%) drops, while normal pupil does not, because the denervated iris sphincter is supersensitive to topical parasympathomimetics.

## ■ ANISOCORIA

Normal size of pupil varies between 3 to 4 mm depending upon the room illumination. Difference between the size of two pupils is called anisocoria.

### Causes

Anisocoria may be physiological or pathological.

**Physiological anisocoria** is usually minimal, both pupils react well to light and there is no dilation lag.

**Pathological anisocoria** is usually a difference of 2 mm or more and may either be due to abnormal miosis or mydriasis of one pupil.

- Causes of miosis (See page 525)
- Causes of mydriasis (See page 525).

**Note.** Anisocoria is not caused by optic nerve lesions or other afferent pupil pathway defects. Assuming the sphincter and dilator pupillae muscles are structurally normal, *anisocoria is a sign of autonomic (sympathetic or parasympathetic) dysfunction.*

### Evaluation of anisocoria

**1. Pupil size** in dim and bright illumination should be noted first.

- *Anisocoria same in dark and bright illumination* is usually physiological.
- *Anisocoria greater in dim illumination* is suggestive of sympathetic palsy (i.e. Horner's syndrome) and the smaller pupil is normal. Physiological anisocoria also sometimes behaves in this manner.

**2. Pupillary light reflex** should be tested after noting the pupil size.

- *Poor light reaction* indicates defect in parasympathetic system (3rd nerve palsy, tonic pupil, anticholinergic drugs).

- *Normal light reaction* (constriction) followed by dilation lag indicates Horner's syndrome (in physiological anisocoria there is no dilation lag).

**3. Pharmacological tests** are conducted after noting the pupillary light reaction.

**i. Pharmacological tests for suspected parasympathetic palsy.** Pilocarpine test is used to determine if a dilated pupil is due to 3rd nerve palsy, pharmacological mydriasis, or tonic pupil.

- *Pupil constricts to low concentration of pilocarpine (0.125%):* Adie's tonic pupil.
- *Pupil constricts to usual concentration of pilocarpine (1 to 2%):* 3rd nerve palsy.
- *Pupil does not constrict with pilocarpine:* Mydriasis due to parasympathetic drugs. Other conditions where dilated pupil does not constrict with pilocarpine are traumatic mydriasis and fixed pupil in iritis.

**ii. Pharmacological tests for suspected sympathetic palsy** include:

- *Cocaine test* (2 to 4%). Small pupil fails to dilate in Horner's syndrome.
- *Hydroxyamphetamine test* (1%). Small pupil dilates in central and pre-ganglionic and does not dilate in post-ganglionic Horner's syndrome.

## DISEASES OF OPTIC NERVE

Diseases of the optic nerve include:

- *Congenital anomalies* (See page 274).
- *Traumatic lesions* (See page 335)
- *Inflammatory lesions*
  - Optic neuritis
  - Toxic/nutritional optic neuropathy
- *Vascular disturbances* include:
  - Anterior ischaemic neuropathy
  - Papilloedema
- *Degenerations:* Optic atrophy
- *Tumours:* Glioma and meningioma (See page 437).

### ■ OPTIC NEURITIS

Optic neuritis includes inflammatory and demyelinating disorders of the optic nerve.

#### Etiology

1. *Idiopathic.* In a large proportion of cases, the underlying cause is unidentifiable.
2. *Hereditary optic neuritis* (Leber's disease).
3. *Demyelinating disorders* are by far the most common cause of optic neuritis. These include multiple sclerosis, neuromyelitis optica (Devic's disease) and diffuse periaxial encephalitis of Schilder. About 70% cases of established multiple sclerosis may develop optic neuritis.



4. *Parainfectious optic neuritis* is associated with various viral infections such as measles, mumps, chickenpox, whooping cough and glandular fever. It may also occur following immunization.
5. *Infectious optic neuritis* may be sinus related (with acute ethmoiditis) or associated with cat scratch fever, syphilis (during primary or secondary stage), tuberculosis, lyme disease and cryptococcal meningitis in patients with AIDS.
6. *Autoimmune disorders associated with optic neuritis* include sarcoidosis, systemic lupus erythematosus, polyarteritis nodosa, Guillain-Barre syndrome and Wegener's granulomatosis.
7. *Toxic optic neuritis* (See page 332).

### Clinical Profile

#### Anatomical types

Optic neuritis can be classified into three anatomical types:

- *Papillitis*. It refers to involvement of the optic disc in inflammatory and demyelinating disorders. This condition is usually unilateral but sometimes may be bilateral.
- *Neuroretinitis* refers to combined involvement of optic disc and surrounding retina in the macular area.
- *Retrobulbar neuritis* is characterized by involvement of optic nerve behind the eyeball. Clinical features of acute retrobulbar neuritis are essentially similar to that of acute papillitis except for the fundus changes and ocular changes described below.

#### Typical versus atypical optic neuritis

Traditionally, the term *typical optic neuritis* refers to the one associated with demyelination, particularly multiple sclerosis and the term *atypical neuritis* is labeled for the one associated with causes other than demyelination disorders.

#### Clinical features

**Symptoms.** Optic neuritis may be asymptomatic or may be associated with following symptoms:

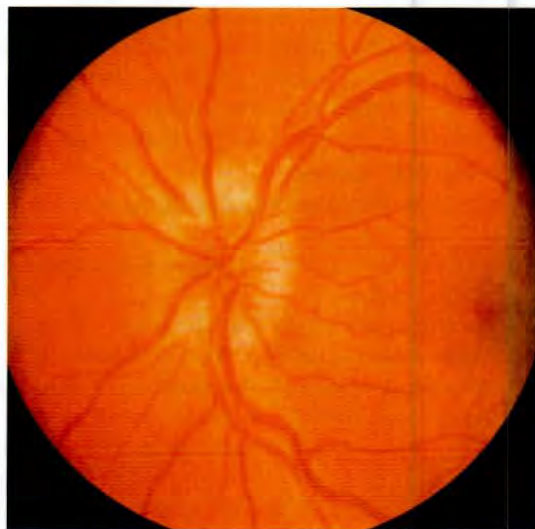
- *Visual loss*. Monocular sudden, progressive and profound visual loss is the hallmark of acute optic neuritis.
- *Dark adaptation* may be lowered.
- *Visual obscuration in bright light* is a typical symptom of acute optic neuritis.
- *Impairment of colour vision* is always present in optic neuritis. Typically, the patients observe reduced vividness of saturated colours.
- *Movement phosphenes and sound induced phosphenes* may be perceived by patients with optic neuritis. Phosphenes refer to glowing sensations

produced by nonphotic or the so called inadequate stimuli.

- *Episodic transient obscuration of vision* on exertion and on exposure to heat, which recovers on resting or moving away from the heat (*Uhthoff's symptom*) occurs in patient with isolated optic neuritis.
- *Depth perception*, particularly for the moving object may be impaired (*Pulfrich's phenomenon*).
- *Pain*. Patients may complain of mild dull eyeache. It is more marked in patients with retrobulbar neuritis than with papillitis. Pain is usually aggravated by ocular movements, especially in upward or downward directions due to attachment of some fibres of superior rectus to the dura mater.

**Signs** are as follows:

1. *Visual acuity* is usually reduced markedly.
2. *Colour vision* is often severely impaired (typically red desaturation).
3. *Pupil* shows ill-sustained constriction to light. Marcus Gunn pupil which indicates relative afferent pupillary defect (RAPD) is a diagnostic sign. It is detected by the swinging flash light test (See page 526).
4. *Ophthalmoscopic features* (Fig. 13.8). Papillitis is characterised by hyperaemia of the disc and blurring of the margins. Disc becomes oedematous and physiological cup is obliterated (in papillitis disc oedema rarely exceeds 2-3 D, while in papilloedema it become 3-6 D). Retinal veins are congested and tortuous. Splinter haemorrhages and fine exudates may be seen on the disc. Slit-lamp examination may reveal inflammatory cells in the vitreous. Inflammatory signs may also be



**Fig. 13.8** Fundus photograph showing papillitis



present in the surrounding retina when papillitis is associated with macular star formation and the condition is labelled as 'neuroretinitis.' In majority of the cases with retrobulbar neuritis fundus appears normal and the condition is typically defined as a disease where neither the ophthalmologist nor the patient sees anything. Occasionally, temporal pallor of the disc may be seen.

5. **Visual field changes.** The most common field defect in optic neuritis is a relative central or centrocaecal scotoma. Other field defects noted rarely include: paracentral nerve fibre bundle defect, a nerve fibre bundle defect extending up to periphery and a nerve fibre bundle defect involving fixation point and periphery. The field defects are more marked to red colour than the white.
6. **Contrast sensitivity** is impaired.
7. **Visually evoked response (VER)** shows reduced amplitude and delay in the transmission time.
8. **Fundus fluorescein angiography** reveals mild to moderate leak in early phase which increases with the time.

### Differential diagnosis

- **Papillitis** should be differentiated from papilloedema, ischaemic optic neuropathy, anterior orbital compressive neuropathy and pseudopapilloedema (See Table 13.2).
- **Acute retrobulbar neuritis.** It must be differentiated from malingering, hysterical blindness, cortical blindness and indirect optic neuropathy.

### Investigations

**Multifocal VEP** is helpful in making early diagnosis of optic neuritis.

**MRI scan of brain and orbit** should preferably be performed in each case presenting with acute optic neuritis.

- **Optic nerve MRI scan** may show gadolinium enhancement, increased signal, and sometimes swelling of the affected nerve.
- **Brain MRI** may show cerebral, brainstem, and/or cerebellar white matter lesions (plaques).

**Other investigations** are not needed if there is expected recovery of lesion.

However, if vision deterioration continues after 2 weeks or no recovery after 4–6 weeks, investigate for other causes of optic neuritis.

### Evolution, recovery and complications

**Evolution.** In optic neuritis, typically, the visual acuity and colour vision is lost progressively over 2–5 days.

**Recovery.** The rate of visual recovery is slower than the rate of visual loss and usually starts within 2 weeks

and takes between 4 and 6 weeks. About 75 to 90% cases get good visual recovery.

**Complications.** Recurrent attacks of acute retrobulbar neuritis are followed by primary optic atrophy and recurrent attack of papillitis are followed by postneuritic optic atrophy leading to complete blindness.

### Treatment

**1. Treatment of the causes.** Efforts should be made to find out and treat the underlying cause. There is no effective treatment for idiopathic and hereditary optic neuritis and that associated with demyelinating disorders.

**2. Corticosteroid therapy** may shorten the period of visual loss, but will not influence the ultimate level of visual recovery in patients with optic neuritis. *Optic neuritis treatment trial (ONTT)* group has made following recommendations for the use of corticosteroids:

- **Oral prednisolone therapy** alone is contraindicated in the treatment of acute optic neuritis, since, it did not improve visual outcome and was associated with a significant increase in the risk of new attacks of optic neuritis.
- **Intravenous methylprednisolone.** If the MRI brain shows lesions supportive of multiple sclerosis (MS), regardless of the severity of visual loss, each patient should receive immediate *intravenous methylprednisolone* (1 gm daily) for 3 days followed by oral prednisolone (1 mg/kg/day) for 11 days. Then taper prednisolone over 4 days. This therapy will delay conversion to clinical MS over the next 2 years.

**Note.** *Intravenous dexamethasone has been reported to be as effective as methylprednisolone in many studies.*

■ **Indications for intravenous methylprednisolone in acute optic neuritis** patients with a normal brain MRI scan are:

- Visual loss in both eyes simultaneously or subsequently within hours or days of each other.
- When the only good eye is affected.
- When the slow progressive visual loss continues to occur.

**3. Interferon therapy** has been reported to reduce recurrences in patients with multiple sclerosis. However, the treatment is very expensive and with unknown long term benefits.

### ■ LEBER'S HEREDITARY OPTIC NEUROPATHY

Leber's hereditary optic neuropathy (LHON) is characterized by *sequential subacute optic neuropathy* in males aged 11–30 years. The underlying genetic abnormality is a *point mutation in mitochondrial*



DNA, the MT-ND<sub>4</sub> gene. Since, mitochondrial DNA is exclusively derived from mother, males do not transmit the disease. It is transmitted by carrier females. Males are four times more likely than the females to be affected.

#### Presenting symptoms

- **Visual acuity.** Affected individuals are usually entirely *asymptomatic* in early phase until they develop blurring affecting the central visual field of one eye. *Bilateral, painless, subacute visual failure* usually develops during young adult life. Thus, ultimately, patients generally have bilateral impairment of visual acuity.
- **Pupillary reactions** are often normal.
- **Ophthalmoscopic examination** shows fundus abnormalities in acute phase like swelling of disc, and peripapillary retinal telangiectasia. But, characteristically there is no leak from the optic disc during fluorescein angiography. Later the disc becomes atrophic and pale.
- **Visual fields** show centrocecal scotoma that begins nasal to the blind spot and extends to involve fixation of both sides of the vertical meridian.

#### Investigations

- **OCT optic disc** may show peripapillary retinal thinning.
- **Fluorescein angiography** shows no leakage from the disc or microangiopathic vessel.
- **Genetic testing** is required to look for the three common causative mutations.

#### Treatment

- **No effective treatment** is known.
- **Avoid smoking and excessive alcohol consumption**, to reduce risk of precipitation of visual loss.
- **Avoid dietary deficiency, particularly B<sub>12</sub>**
- **Low vision aids** may be of some use.

#### ■ AUTOSOMAL HEREDITY OPTIC ATROPHY

Autosomal hereditary optic atrophy is of two types.

**1. Autosomal recessive (infantile) optic atrophy.** It presents as severe visual loss at birth or within two years of life. It is commonly associated with nystagmus.

**2. Autosomal dominant (juvenile) optic atrophy.** It is associated with mutation of *OPA1* gene on chromosome 3.

**Characteristic features** include:

- Insidious onset in childhood.
- Slowly progression of visual loss throughout life.
- Colour vision is impaired.
- Temporal pallor of optic disc is usually present.
- Centrocaecal scotoma in visual field.

**Associations**, include congenital or progressive deafness or ataxia.

**Wolfram's syndrome** consists of diabetes insipidus, diabetes mellitus, optic atrophy and deafness (DIDMOAD). Although, there is a *recessive pattern* of inheritance, with gene defect localised to chromosome 4.

#### ■ TOXIC/NUTRITIONAL OPTIC NEUROPATHY

Toxic/nutritional optic neuropathy, also known as *toxic amblyopia*, is basically chronic retrobulbar neuritis. Wherein visual loss results from damage to the optic nerve fibres (papillomacular bundle due to the effects of exogenous (commonly) or endogenous (rarely) poisons. It is frequently bilateral and has a chronic course with permanent visual deterioration.

**Toxic agents involved** may be: tobacco, ethyl alcohol, methyl alcohol, ethylene glycol, lead, arsenic, cannabis, indica, carbon di-sulphide, various drugs like quinine, chloroquine, ethambutol, isoniazid, streptomycin, digitalis (digoxin), amiodaron, NSAIDs, vigabatrin and disulfiram.

**Varieties of toxic amblyopia** described here include:

- Tobacco amblyopia,
- Ethyl alcohol amblyopia,
- Methyl alcohol amblyopia,
- Quinine amblyopia, and
- Ethambutol amblyopia.

#### Tobacco-Alcohol/Nutritional-Amblyopia

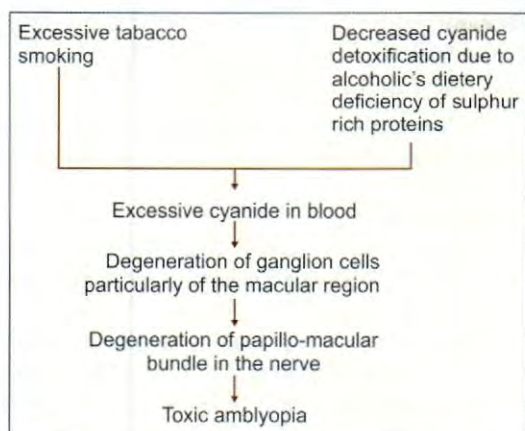
Tobacco amblyopia typically occurs in men who are generally pipe smokers, heavy drinkers and have a diet deficient in proteins and vitamin B complex; and hence also labelled as '*tobacco-alcohol-amblyopia*'. *Nutritional amblyopia* is probably a more accurate term for this entity.

**Pathogenesis.** It is caused by excessive use of tobacco by smoking and chewing. The toxic agent involved is cyanide found in tobacco. The pathogenesis is summarised in Fig. 13.9.

**Clinical features.** The condition usually occurs in men between 40 and 60 years and is characterised by: *Impairment of central vision*, which is bilateral and gradually progressive. Patients usually complain of foginess and difficulty in doing near work.

- **Visual field examination** reveals bilateral centrocaecal scotomas with diffuse margins which are not easily defined. The defect is greater for red than for the white colour.
- **Fundus examination** is essentially normal or there may be slight temporal pallor of the disc and few peripapillary haemorrhage.





**Fig. 13.9** Flowchart depicting pathogenesis of tobacco amblyopia

**Treatment.** It consists of:

- **Complete cessation** of tobacco and alcohol consumption
- **Hydroxocobalamin** 1000 µg intramuscular injections weekly for 10 orally weeks
- **Thiamine** 100 mg BD
- **Folate** 1 mg once a day
- Care of general health and nutrition
- **Vasodilators** have also been tried.

**Prognosis.** It is good, if complete abstinence from tobacco and alcohol is maintained along with adequate nutrition and vitamin B<sub>12</sub> supplements. Visual recovery is slow and may take several weeks to months.

### Ethyl alcohol amblyopia

It usually occurs in association with tobacco amblyopia. However, it may also occur in non-smokers, who are heavy drinkers suffering from chronic gastritis. The optic neuritis occurs along with the peripheral neuritis of chronic and debilitated alcoholics.

**Clinical feature** and treatment is similar to tobacco amblyopia, but the prognosis is not so good.

### Methyl alcohol amblyopia/Methanol Poisoning

Unlike ethyl alcohol (which produces chronic amblyopia), poisoning by methyl alcohol (methanol) is typically acute, usually resulting in optic atrophy and permanent blindness.

**Etiology.** It usually occurs due to intake of wood alcohol or methylated spirit in cheap adulterated or fortified beverages. Sometimes, it may also be absorbed by inhalation of fumes in industries, where methyl alcohol is used as a solvent. Rarely, it may also be absorbed from the skin following prolonged daily use of liniments.

**Pathogenesis.** Methyl alcohol is metabolised very slowly and thus stays for a longer period in the body. It is oxidised into formic acid and formaldehyde in the tissues. These toxic agents cause oedema followed by degeneration of the ganglion cells of the retina, resulting in complete blindness due to optic atrophy.

**Clinical features** include:

**General symptoms of acute poisoning** are headache, dizziness, nausea, vomiting, abdominal pain, delirium, stupor and even death. **Presence of a characteristic odour** due to excretion of formaldehyde in the breath or sweat is a helpful diagnostic sign.

**Ocular features.** Patients are usually brought with almost complete blindness, which is noticed after 2–3 days, when stupor weans off. **Fundus examination** in cases reveals mild disc oedema and markedly narrowed blood vessels. Finally bilateral primary optic atrophy ensues.

**Treatment** includes:

1. **Gastric lavage** to wash away the methyl alcohol should be carried out immediately and at intervals during the first few days, as the alcohol in the system is continuously returned to stomach.
2. **Administration of alkali** to overcome acidosis should be done in early stages. Soda bicarb may be given orally or intravenously (500 mL of 5% solution).
3. **Ethyl alcohol.** It should also be given in early stages. It competes with the methyl alcohol for the enzyme alcohol dehydrogenase, thus preventing the oxidation of methanol to formaldehyde. It should be given in small frequent doses, 90 cc every 3 hours for 3 days.
4. **Eliminative treatment** by diaphoresis in the form of peritoneal dialysis is also helpful by washing the alcohol and formaldehyde from the system.
6. **Prognosis** is usually poor; death may occur due to acute poisoning. Blindness often occurs in those who survive.

### Quinine Amblyopia

Quinine overdose produces optic neuropathy. However, it is reported that it may occur even with small doses of the drug in susceptible individuals.

**Clinical features.** Patient may develop near total blindness. Deafness and tinnitus may be associated. The pupils are fixed and dilated. **Fundus examination** reveals retinal oedema, marked pallor of the disc and extreme attenuation of retinal vessels. **Visual fields** are markedly contracted.

### Ethambutol Amblyopia

Ethambutol is a frequently used antitubercular drug. It is used in the doses of 15 mg/kg per day.



Sometimes, it may cause toxic optic neuropathy. Ethambutol optic neuropathy is dependent on dose, body weight, and renal function. Ethambutol toxicity usually occurs in patients who have associated alcoholism and diabetes.

**Clinical features.** There may occur optic neuritis with typical central scotoma. Involvement of optic chiasma may result in a true bitemporal hemianopia. Patients usually complain of reduced vision or impairment of colour vision during the course of antitubercular treatment. *Fundus examination* may reveal signs of papillitis. In most of the cases, *recovery* occurs following cessation of the intake of drug.

### ■ ANTERIOR ISCHAEMIC OPTIC NEUROPATHY (AION)

Anterior Ischaemic Optic Neuropathy (AION) refers to ischaemic damage to the optic nerve head from occlusion of the short posterior ciliary arteries. It is of two types:

- Arteritic anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy (AAION), and
- Non-arteritic anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy (NAAION).

#### Arteritic anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy

##### Etiology

Arteritic anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy (AAION), results from inflammatory and thrombotic occlusion of short posterior ciliary arteries caused by *Giant Cell Arteritis* (GCA). It usually occurs in older patients (mean age 70 years) and accounts for only 5–10% cases of AION.

##### Clinical features

Systemic and/or other ocular features of Giant Cell Arteritis (GCA) may also be associated with AAION.

**Systemic features** of GCA include:

- **Headache and tenderness** of the temporal arteries and scalp.
- **Jaw claudication**, characterized by pain on speaking or chewing, is pathognomonic of GCA. It is caused by ischaemia of masseter muscle.
- **Other symptoms** include fever, malaise, anorexia, weight loss, night sweats and joint and muscle pain.

**Ocular presentations of GCA, other than AAION** include:

- **Transient Ischaemic Attacks (TIA)**, i.e. amaurosis fugax, may precede AAION by several weeks.
- **Central retinal artery occlusion (CRAO)**, or cilioretinal artery occlusion may sometimes be associated with AAION.
- **Ocular Ischaemic Syndrome** (See page 295) due to involvement of ophthalmic artery, is comparatively rare association of AAION.

- **Diplopia** may occur due to ischaemic paresis of extraocular muscles.

**Features of AAION** are as follows:

- **Visual loss** is usually marked (visual acuity  $<6/60$ ) and sudden, may be preceded by TIA and general features of GCA.
- **RAPD** is present.
- **Optic disc oedema** in AAION is typically pale as compared to NAION and may be associated with cotton wool spots and splinter haemorrhages.
- **Peripapillary pallor and oedema deep to retina** may occur due to accompanying choroidal ischaemia.
- **Temporal arteries** loose pulsation and become tender.

##### Investigations

- **Fundus fluorescein angiography** reveals delayed choroidal filling, an important differentiating sign of AAION from NAION.
- **Visual fields** show typical altitudinal hemianopia involving the inferior (commonly) or superior half (Fig. 13.10).
- **ESR and C-reactive protein levels** are raised in patients with giant cell arteritis.
- **Temporal artery biopsy** is required for confirmation of diagnosis.

##### Treatment

**Goal of treatment** is to prevent visual loss in the fellow eye, apart from avoiding systemic vascular complications.

**Corticosteroids**, started immediately, as follows, constitute the main treatment.

- **Methylprednisolone** 1 gm/day, intravenously for 3–5 days followed by

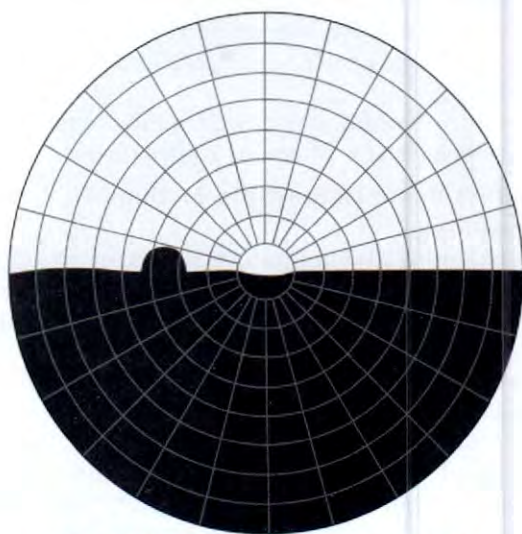


Fig. 13.10 Altitudinal hemianopia in AION



- *Prednisolone* per oral 80 mg/day to be tapered every week by 10 mg. Daily maintenance therapy of 10 mg may have to be continued for 1–2 years.

**Note.** Since treatment lasts long, special care has to be taken for side effects of steroids.

### Non-arteritic anterior ischaemic neuropathy

Non-arteritic anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy (NAION) accounts for 90–95% cases of AION.

#### Etiology

Exact etiology of occlusion of posterior ciliary arteries causing infarction of the retrolaminar portion of the disc in this condition is not known.

**Risk factors** associated with NAION may be ocular or systemic.

- *Ocular risk factors* are: disc at risk (structural crowding of the disc with a small cup) cataract surgery, and neglected acute primary angle closure.
- *Systemic risk factors* include hypertension, diabetes (particularly in young patients), smoking, hyperlipidemia, collagen vascular disease, hyperhomocystinemia, severe anemia and sudden hypotensive events (e.g. massive haemorrhage).
- *Drugs*, such as sildenafil (Viagra), presumably because of its hypotensive effect, may be associated with NAION.

#### Clinical features

Clinical features of NAION vis-a-vis AAION can be summarized as below:

- *Age of presentation* is slightly younger, i.e. mean age is 60 years as compared to 70 years in AAION.
- *Sex*. NAION is equally common in males and females while AAION is more common in females than males.
- *Associated symptoms* such as headache, scalp tenderness, jaw claudication and amaurosis fugax seen with AAION and absent in NAION.
- *Visual loss* with NAION is comparatively less marked.
- *Optic disc oedema* is hyperaemic as compared to pale oedema noted with AAION.

#### Investigations

- *ESR* as compared to AAION (mean 70 mm after 1st hour) is less raised in NAION (mean 20–40 mm after 1st hour).
- *C-reactive proteins* are normal in NAION, while they are raised in AAION.
- *FFA reveals* only disc delay in NAION, while in AAION both disc delay and choroidal delay are noted.

### Differential diagnosis

NAION also need to be differentiated from optic neuritis, infiltrative optic neuropathy, anterior orbital compressive optic neuropathy and other forms of optic disc oedema including diabetic papillopathy.

#### Treatment

- No proven benefit of any treatment measures including steroids is reported.
- *Addressing the systemic risk factors* may probably reduce the incidence.
- *Aspirin* in low dose has a proven effect in reducing the incidence of stroke in patients at risk. May have role in reducing involvement of other eye is not clear.

### ■ TRAUMATIC OPTIC NEUROPATHY

Traumatic optic neuropathy is of two types direct and indirect:

- *Direct traumatic optic neuropathy* is less common and involves direct anatomical disruption of the optic nerve in cranio-orbital trauma.
- *Indirect traumatic optic neuropathy* occurs in closed head injury due to shearing or avulsion of nutrient vessels or by the pressure transmitted along the bone to the optic canal.

**Characteristic features** of traumatic optic neuropathy are:

- *Loss of vision*/or decreased visual acuity.
- *Dilation of pupil* is noted.
- *Pupillary light reflex*. There occurs loss of direct light reflex on the affected side with preservation of ipsilateral consensual light reflex and loss of consensual light reflex on the contralateral side with preservation of contralateral direct light reflex.
- *Relative afferent pupillary defect (RAPD)* or *Marcus Gunn pupil* is the first sign.
- *Preservation of near reflex* (convergence and accommodation reflex) as optic nerve is not involved in the pathway of near reflex.
- *Light brightness sensitivity* and contrast sensitivity are diminished.
- *Subjective red colour saturation and light intensity* are the two best tests for overall optic nerve function.
- *Visual field testing* in an awake and fully cooperative patients can be more revealing than visual acuity determination. Visual field testing is done by perimetry. *Visual fields* show central or centrocecal scotoma.
- *Visual evoked potential (VEP)* shows reduced amplitude.



- **Imaging.** High resolution CT scan is the diagnostic procedure of choice for determining the site of trauma. MRI is the investigation of choice for visualization of optic nerve.

**Treatment** includes:

- **High dose steroids.** Intravenous methylprednisolone 1 gm/day for 3 days followed by oral prednisolone tapered over the time.
- **Surgical decompression,** of the optic canal should be done early if required.

## ■ PAPILLOEDEMA

The terms papilloedema and disc oedema look alike and per se mean swelling of the optic disc. However, arbitrarily the term 'papilloedema' has been reserved for the passive disc swelling associated with increased intracranial pressure which is almost always bilateral although it may be asymmetrical. The term 'disc oedema or disc swelling' includes all causes of active or passive oedematous swelling of the optic disc other than the causes of papilloedema.

### Causes of disc oedema

1. **Inflammations** such as papillitis, neuroretinitis, papillophlebitis, and uveitis.
2. **Ocular hypotony** due to any cause.
3. **Vascular causes** include CRVO, diabetic papillopathy, uremia, anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy (AION).
4. **Orbital causes** are: tumours, Graves' orbitopathy, and orbital cellulitis.
5. **Infiltrative condition** include leukaemias, and lymphomas.

### Etiopathogenesis of papilloedema

**Causes.** As discussed above, papilloedema is a non-inflammatory oedema of optic disc which occurs secondary to raised intracranial pressure associated with following conditions:

1. **Congenital conditions** include aqueductal stenosis and craniosynostosis.
2. **Intracranial space-occupying lesions (ICSOLs).** These include brain tumours, abscess, tuberculoma, gumma, subdural haematoma and aneurysms. The ICSOLs in any position excepting medulla oblongata may induce papilloedema. Papilloedema is most frequently associated with tumours arising in posterior fossa, which obstruct aqueduct of Sylvius and least with pituitary tumours. Thus, the ICSOLs of cerebellum, midbrain and parieto-occipital region produce papilloedema more rapidly than the mass lesions of other areas. Further, the fast progressing lesions produce papilloedema more frequently and acutely than the slow growing lesions.

3. **Intracranial infections** such as meningitis and encephalitis may be associated with papilloedema.

4. **Intracranial haemorrhages.** Cerebral as well as subarachnoid haemorrhage can give rise to papilloedema which is frequent and considerable in extent.

5. **Obstruction of CSF absorption** via arachnoid villi which have been damaged previously.

6. **Tumours of spinal cord** occasionally give rise to papilloedema.

7. **Idiopathic intracranial hypertension (IIH)** also known as pseudotumour cerebri, is an important cause of raised intracranial pressure. It is a poorly understood condition, usually found in young obese women. It is characterised by chronic headache and bilateral papilloedema without any ICSOLs or enlargement of the ventricles due to hydrocephalus.

8. **Systemic conditions** include malignant hypertension, pregnancy-induced hypertension (PIH), cardiopulmonary insufficiency, blood dyscrasias and nephritis.

9. **Diffuse cerebral oedema** from blunt head trauma may cause papilloedema.

10. **Cerebral venous sinus thrombosis** may also cause papilloedema.

**Unilateral versus bilateral papilloedema.** Disc swelling due to ocular and orbital lesions is usually unilateral. In majority of the cases with raised intracranial pressure, papilloedema is bilateral. However, unilateral cases as well as of unequal change do occur with raised intracranial pressure. A few such conditions are as follows:

1. **Foster-Kennedy syndrome.** It is associated with olfactory or sphenoidal meningiomata and frontal lobe tumours. In this condition, there occurs pressure optic atrophy on the side of lesion and papilloedema on the other side (due to raised intracranial pressure).

2. **Pseudo-Foster-Kennedy syndrome.** It is characterised by occurrence of unilateral papilloedema associated with raised intracranial pressure (due to any cause) and a pre-existing optic atrophy (due to any cause) on the other side.

**Pathogenesis.** Till date, Hayreh's theory is the most accepted one. It states that, 'papilloedema develops as a result of stasis of axoplasm in the prelaminar region of optic disc, due to an alteration in the pressure gradient across the lamina cribrosa.'

Increased intracranial pressure, malignant hypertension and orbital lesions produce disturbance in the pressure gradient by increasing the tissue pressure within the retrolaminar region.



While, ocular hypotony alters it by lowering the tissue pressure within the prelaminar area.

Thus, the *axonal swelling* due to axoplasmic stasis in prelaminar region is the initial structural alteration, which in turn produces *venous congestion* and ultimately the *extracellular oedema*. This theory discards the old view that the papilloedema results due to compression of the central retinal vein by the raised cerebrospinal fluid pressure around the optic nerve.

**Evolution and recovery.** Papilloedema usually develops quickly, appearing within 1–5 days of raised intracranial pressure.

In cases with acute subarachnoid haemorrhage, it may develop even more rapidly (within 2–8 hours). However, recovery from fully developed papilloedema is rather slow. It takes about 6–8 weeks to subside after the intracranial pressure is normalised.

## Clinical features

### A. General features

Patients usually present to general physicians with general features of raised intracranial pressure. These include headache, nausea, projectile vomiting and diplopia. Focal neurological deficit may be associated.

### B. Ocular features

Patients may give history of recurrent attacks of transient blackout of vision (amaurosis fugax). *Visual acuity and pupillary reactions* usually remain fairly normal until the late stages of diseases when optic atrophy sets in, so, loss of vision is not a common feature of papilloedema.

Clinical features of papilloedema can be described under four stages: early, fully developed, chronic and atrophic.

#### 1. Early (incipient) papilloedema

**Symptoms** are usually absent and visual acuity is normal.

**Pupillary reactions** are normal.

**Ophthalmoscopic features** of early papilloedema are (Fig. 13.11A):

- Obscuration of the disc margins (nasal margins are involved first followed by the superior, inferior and temporal).
- Blurring of peripapillary nerve fibre layer.
- Absence of spontaneous venous pulsation at the disc (appreciated in 80% of the normal individuals).
- Mild hyperaemia of the disc.
- Splinter haemorrhages in the peripapillary region may be present.

**Visual fields** are fairly normal.

#### 2. Established (fully developed) papilloedema

**Symptoms.** Patient may give history of transient visual obscurations in one or both eyes, lasting a few seconds, after standing. Visual acuity is usually normal.

**Pupillary reaction** remain fairly normal.

**Ophthalmoscopic features** (Fig. 13.11B):

- *Apparent optic disc oedema* is seen as its forward elevation above the plane of retina; usually up to 1–2 mm (1 mm elevation is equivalent to +3 dioptres).
- *Physiological cup* of the optic disc is obliterated.
- Disc becomes markedly hyperaemic and blurring of the margin is present all around.
- *Multiple cotton wool spots* and *superficial haemorrhages* may be seen near the disc.
- *Veins become tortuous and engorged.* In advanced cases, the disc appears to be enlarged and elevated (mushroom or dome shaped) so that vessels bend sharply over its margins. There occurs difference of 2–6 D between the vessels at the top of dome and those on the retina. By indirect ophthalmoscopy, a definitive parallax can be elicited.
- *Paton's lines*, i.e. circumferential greyish white folds may develop due to separation of nerve fibres by the oedema.
- *Hard exudates* rarely, may radiate from the fovea in the form of an incomplete star (macular star or macular fan).

**Visual fields** show enlargement of blind spot.

#### 3. Chronic or long-standing (vintage) papilloedema

**Symptoms.** Visual acuity is variably reduced depending upon the duration of the papilloedema.

**Pupillary reactions** are usually normal.

**Ophthalmoscopic features** (Fig. 13.11C). In this stage:

- Acute haemorrhages and cotton wool spots resolve, and peripapillary oedema is resorbed.
- The optic disc gives appearance of the dome of a *champagne cork*. The central cup remains obliterated. Small drusen like crystalline deposits (*corpora amylacea*) may appear on the disc surface.

**Visual fields.** Blind spot is enlarged and the visual fields begin to constrict.

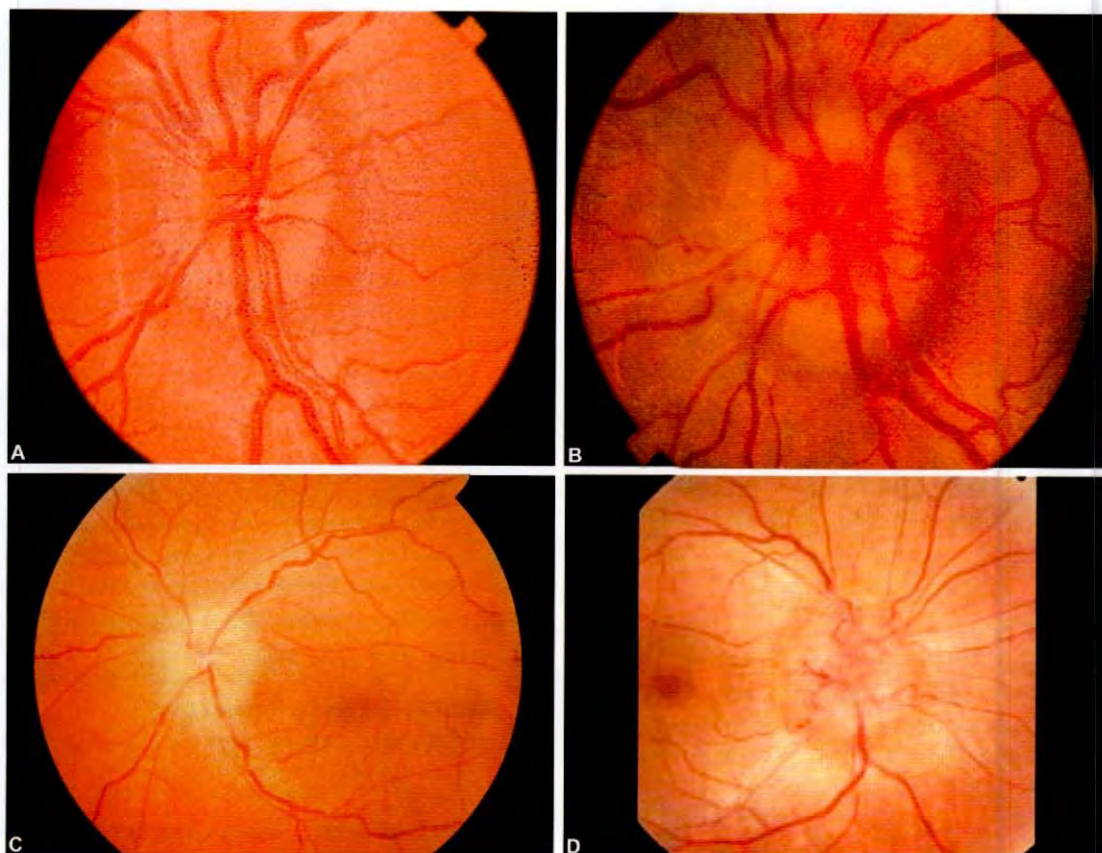
#### 4. Atrophic papilloedema

**Symptoms.** Atrophic papilloedema develops after 6–9 months of chronic papilloedema and is characterized by severely impaired visual acuity.

**Pupillary reaction.** Light reflex is impaired.

**Ophthalmoscopic features** of the so called postneuritic optic atrophy are as below (Fig. 13.11D):





**Fig. 13.11** Fundus photograph showing papilloedema: A, Early; B, Established; C, Chronic; D, Atrophic

- There occur greyish white discolouration and pallor of the disc due to atrophy of the neurons and associated gliosis.
- Prominence of the disc decreases in spite of persistent raised intracranial pressure.
- Retinal arterioles are narrowed and veins become less congested. Whitish sheathing develops around the vessels.

**Visual fields.** Concentric contraction of peripheral fields becomes apparent as atrophy sets in.

#### Differential diagnosis

Papilloedema should be differentiated from pseudopapilloedema and papillitis. *Pseudopapilloedema* is a non-specific term used to describe elevation of the disc similar to papilloedema, in conditions such as optic disc drusen, hypermetropia, and persistent hyaloid tissue. The differentiating points between papilloedema, papillitis and pseudopapilloedema (pseudopapillitis) due to hypermetropia are enumerated in Table 13.2.

#### Treatment and prognosis

Papilloedema is a neurological emergency and requires immediate hospitalisation. Urgent neuroimaging (CT scan or preferably MRI with a gadolinium enhancement) may reveal primary pathology. As a rule unless the causative disease is treatable or cerebral decompression is done, the course of papilloedema is chronic and ultimate visual prognosis is bad.

#### ■ OPTIC ATROPHY

Optic atrophy refers to degeneration of the optic nerve, which occurs as an end result of any pathologic process that damages axons in the anterior visual system, i.e. from retinal ganglion cells to the lateral geniculate body.

#### Classification

**A. Primary versus secondary optic atrophy.** It is customary to divide the optic atrophy into primary and secondary.

■ *Primary optic atrophy* refers to the simple degeneration of the nerve fibres without any



**Table 13.2:** Differentiating features of papilloedema, papillitis and pseudopapillitis

| Feature                    | Papilloedema                                                                       | Papillitis                            | Pseudopapillitis                                               |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Laterality              | Usually bilateral                                                                  | Usually unilateral                    | May be unilateral or bilateral                                 |
| 2. Symptoms                |                                                                                    |                                       |                                                                |
| • Visual acuity            | Transient attacks of blurred vision<br>Later vision decreases due to optic atrophy | Marked loss of vision of sudden onset | Defective vision depending upon the degree of refractive error |
| • Pain and tenderness      | Absent                                                                             | May be present with ocular movements  | Absent                                                         |
| 3. Pupil                   | Normal reaction                                                                    | RAPD in unilateral cases              | Normal                                                         |
| 4. Colour vision           | Normal                                                                             | Often impaired (red desaturation)     | Normal                                                         |
| 5. Fundus examination      |                                                                                    |                                       |                                                                |
| • Media                    | Clear                                                                              | Posterior vitreous haze is common     | Clear                                                          |
| • Disc-colour              | Red and juicy appearance                                                           | Marked hyperaemia                     | Reddish                                                        |
| • Disc-margins             | Blurred                                                                            | Blurred                               | Not well defined                                               |
| • Disc-swelling            | 2–6 dioptres                                                                       | Usually not more than 3 dioptres      | Depending upon the degree of hypermetropia                     |
| • Peripapillary oedema     | Present                                                                            | Present                               | Absent                                                         |
| • Venous engorgement       | More marked                                                                        | Less marked                           | Not present                                                    |
| • Retinal haemorrhages     | Marked                                                                             | Usually not present                   | Not present                                                    |
| • Retinal exudates         | More marked                                                                        | Less marked                           | Absent                                                         |
| • Macula                   | Macular star may be present                                                        | Macular fan may be present            | Absent                                                         |
| 6. Fields                  | Enlarged blind spot                                                                | Central scotoma more for colours      | No defect                                                      |
| 7. Fluorescein angiography | Vertical oval pool of dye due to leakage                                           | Minimal leakage of dye                | No leakage of dye                                              |

complicating process within the eye, e.g. syphilitic optic atrophy of tabes dorsalis.

▪ *Secondary optic atrophy* occurs following any pathologic process which produces optic neuritis or papilloedema.

Recently, most of the authors have discarded the use of this time-honoured but noninformative classification. Further, such a classification is misleading since identical lesion at disc (e.g. papillitis in multiple sclerosis) will produce secondary optic atrophy and when involving optic nerve a little distance up (e.g. retrobulbar neuritis in multiple sclerosis) will produce an apparently primary optic atrophy.

**B. Ophthalmoscopic classification.** It is more useful to classify optic atrophy based on its ophthalmoscopic appearance. Common types are as follows:

1. Primary (simple) optic atrophy
2. Consecutive optic atrophy
3. Glaucomatous optic atrophy
4. Post-neuritic optic atrophy
5. Vascular (ischaemic) optic atrophy.

The etiology and salient features of each type will be considered separately.

**C. Ascending versus descending optic atrophy.**

▪ *Ascending or autograde optic atrophy (Wallerian degeneration)* follows damage to ganglion cells or nerve fibre layer due to diseases of the retina or optic disc. In it the nerve fibre degeneration progresses (ascends) from the eyeball towards the geniculate body.

▪ *Descending or retrograde optic atrophy* proceeds from the region of the optic tract, chiasma or posterior portion of the optic nerve towards the optic disc. Damage beyond lateral geniculate nucleus (LGN),



i.e. optic radiations and occipital cortex does not cause optic atrophy as the second order neurons (axons of ganglion cells) synapse in LGN.

### Pathological features

Degeneration of the optic nerve fibres is associated with attempted but unsuccessful regeneration which is characterised by proliferation of astrocytes and glial tissue. Ophthalmoscopic appearance of the atrophic optic disc depends upon the degree of loss of nerve tissue vis-vis gliosis. Following three situations may occur:

**1. Degeneration of the nerve fibres may be associated with excessive gliosis.** These changes are pathological features of the consecutive and postneuritic optic atrophy.

**2. Degeneration and gliosis may be orderly** and the proliferating astrocytes arrange themselves in longitudinal columns replacing the nerve fibres (columnar gliosis). Such pathological features are seen in primary optic atrophy.

**3. Degeneration of the nerve fibres may be associated with negligible gliosis.** It occurs due to progressive decrease in blood supply. Such pathological changes are labelled as cavernous (Schnabel's) optic atrophy and are features of glaucomatous and ischaemic (vascular) optic atrophy.

### Etiology

**1. Primary (simple) optic atrophy.** It results from the lesions proximal to the optic disc without antecedent papilloedema. Its common causes are: multiple sclerosis, retrobulbar neuritis (idiopathic), Leber's and other hereditary optic atrophies, intracranial tumours pressing directly on the anterior visual pathway (e.g. pituitary tumour), traumatic severance or avulsion of the optic nerve, toxic amblyopias (chronic retrobulbar neuritis) and tabes dorsalis.

**2. Consecutive optic atrophy.** It occurs following destruction of ganglion cells secondary to degenerative or inflammatory lesions of the choroid and/or retina. Its common causes are: diffuse chorioretinitis, retinal pigmentary dystrophies such as retinitis pigmentosa, pathological myopia and occlusion of central retinal artery.

**3. Post-neuritic optic atrophy.** It is secondary optic atrophy which develops as a sequelae to long-standing papilloedema or papillitis.

**4. Glaucomatous optic atrophy.** It results from the effect of long-standing raised intraocular pressure.

**5. Vascular (ischaemic) optic atrophy.** It results from the conditions (other than glaucoma) producing

disc ischaemia. These include: giant cell arteritis, severe haemorrhage, severe anaemia and quinine poisoning.

### Clinical features of optic atrophy

**1. Loss of vision,** may be of sudden or gradual onset (depending upon the cause of optic atrophy) and partial or total (depending upon the degree of atrophy). It is important to note that ophthalmoscopic signs cannot be correlated with the amount of vision.

**2. Pupil** is semidilated and direct light reflex is very sluggish or absent. Swinging flash light test depicts Marcus Gunn pupil (RAPD).

**3. Visual field loss** will vary with the distribution of the fibres that have been damaged. In general, the field loss is peripheral in systemic infections, central in focal optic neuritis and eccentric when the nerve or tracts are compressed.

**4. Ophthalmoscopic appearance** of the disc will vary with type of optic atrophy. However, ophthalmoscopic features of optic atrophy in general are pallor of the disc and decrease in the number of small blood vessels (Kestenbaum index). The pallor is not due to atrophy of the nerve fibres but to loss of vasculature. Ophthalmoscopic features of different types of optic atrophy are as described below:

i. **Primary optic atrophy** (Fig. 13.12A). Colour of the disc is chalky white or white with bluish hue. Its edges (margins) are sharply outlined. Slight recession of the entire optic disc occurs in total atrophy. Lamina cribrosa is clearly seen at the bottom of the physiological cup. Major retinal vessels and surrounding retina are normal.

ii. **Consecutive optic atrophy** (Fig. 13.12B). Disc appears yellow waxy. Its edges are not so sharply defined as in primary optic atrophy. Retinal vessels are attenuated.

iii. **Post-neuritic optic atrophy** (also labeled as secondary optic atrophy) (Fig. 13.12C). Optic disc looks dirty white in colour. Due to gliosis, its edges are blurred, physiological cup is obliterated and lamina cribrosa is not visible. Retinal vessels are attenuated and perivascular sheathing is often present.

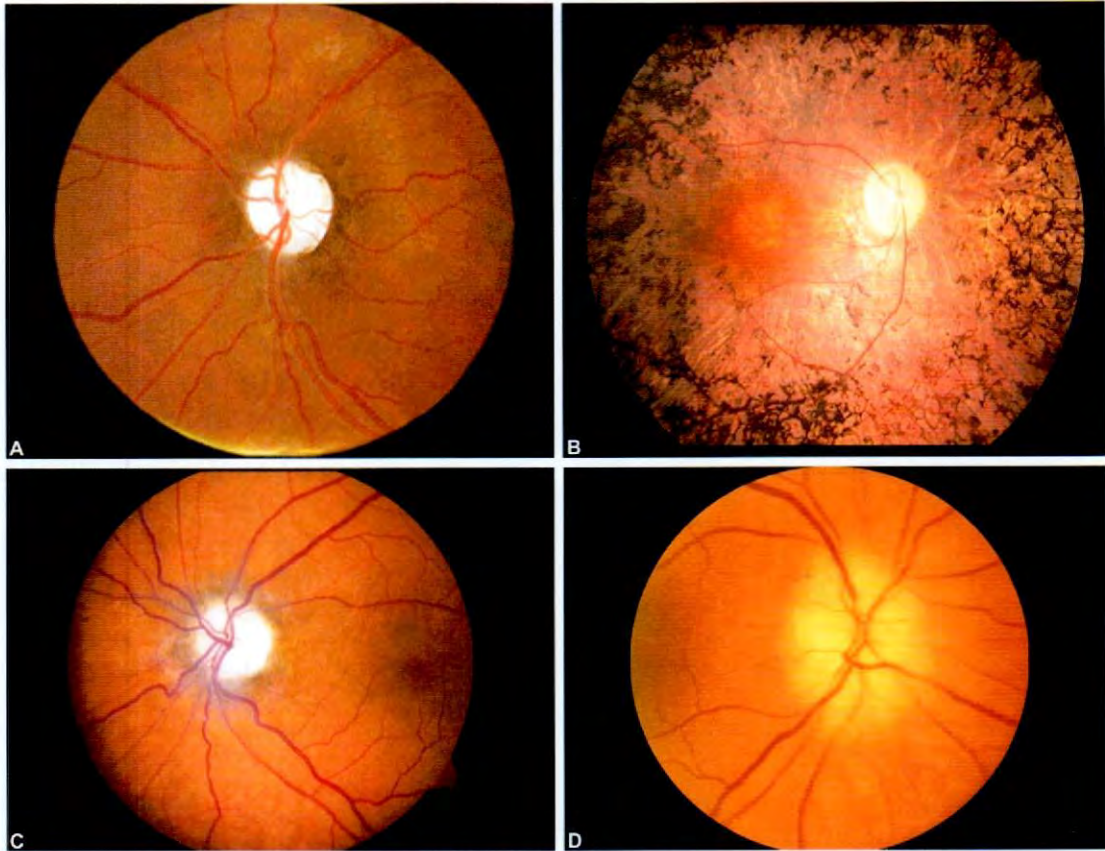
iv. **Glaucomatous optic atrophy.** It is characterised by deep and wide cupping of the optic disc and nasal shift of the blood vessels (for details See page 239 and Fig. 10.11).

v. **Ischaemic optic atrophy.** Ophthalmoscopic features are pallor of the optic disc associated with marked attenuation of the vessels (Fig. 13.12D).

### Differential diagnosis

**1. Primary versus secondary and consecutive optic atrophy.** Differences are summarised in Table 13.3.





**Fig. 13.12** Optic atrophy: A, Primary; B, Consecutive (in a patient with retinitis pigmentosa); C, Postneuritic; D, Ischaemic

**Table 13.3** Primary versus secondary and consecutive optic atrophy

| Feature            | Primary      | Secondary               | Consecutive    |
|--------------------|--------------|-------------------------|----------------|
| APPEARANCE         | Chalky white | Dirty grey white        | Waxy pallor    |
| MARGINS            | Well defined | Ill defined             | Well defined   |
| LAMINA CRIBROSA    | Well seen    | Obscured                | Well seen      |
| VESSELS            | Normal       | Peripapillary sheathing | Attenuation    |
| SURROUNDING RETINA | Healthy      | Hyaline bodies/drusen   | Pathology seen |

## 2. Optic atrophy versus other causes of pale optic disc.

Pallor of optic disc seen in partial optic atrophy must be differentiated from other causes of pallor disc which may be non-pathological and pathological.

i. *Non-pathological pallor of optic disc* is seen in: axial myopia, infants, and elderly people with sclerotic

changes. Temporal pallor is associated with large physiological cup.

ii. *Pathological causes of pallor disc* (other than optic atrophy) include hypoplasia, congenital pit, and coloboma.

### Treatment

Treatment of underlying cause may help in preserving some vision in patients with partial optic atrophy. However, once complete atrophy has set in, the vision cannot be recovered.

## SYMPTOMATIC DISTURBANCES OF THE VISION

### ■ NIGHT BLINDNESS (NYCTALOPIA)

Night blindness may occur in patients with rod dysfunction and also in patients having media opacities and advanced POAG.

### Rod dysfunction

Night (scotopic) vision is a function of rods. Therefore, the conditions in which functioning of these nerve



endings is deranged will result in night blindness. These include:

- Vitamin A deficiency, tapetoretinal degenerations (e.g. retinitis pigmentosa),
- Congenital high myopia,
- Familial congenital night blindness, and
- Oguchi's disease.

### Media opacities

Night blindness may also develop in conditions of the ocular media interfering with the light rays in dim light (i.e. with dilated pupils). These include:

- Paracentral lenticular, and
- Corneal opacities.

### Advanced POAG

In advanced cases of primary open angle glaucoma, dark adaptation may be so much delayed that patient gives history of night blindness.

### DAY BLINDNESS (HEMERALLOPIA)

It is a symptomatic disturbance of the vision, in which the patient is able to see better in dim light as compared to bright light of the day. Its causes are:

- Congenital deficiency of cones
- Central lenticular opacities (polar cataracts)
- Central corneal opacities.

### COLOUR BLINDNESS

An individual with normal colour vision is known as *trichomate*. This is because the normal human eye can appreciate three primary colours (red, green and blue) due to presence of three different types of cones, i.e. red sensitive, green sensitive and blue sensitive. All colours of the spectrum can be perceived by fusion of these three primary colours in varying proportions. (Young-Helmholtz trichromatic theory of colour vision.) In colour blindness, mechanism to appreciate one or more primary colours is either defective (anomalous) or absent (anopia). It may be congenital or acquired.

#### A. Congenital colour blindness

It is a hereditary condition affecting males more (3–4%) than females (0.4%). It may be of the following types:

- Dyschromatopsia
- Achromatopsia.

##### 1. Dyschromatopsia

Dyschromatopsia, literally means colour confusion due to deficiency of mechanism to perceive colours.

It can be classified into:

- Anomalous trichromacy
- Dichromacy
- Blue cone monochromatism

**a. Anomalous trichromatic colour vision.** Here, the mechanism to appreciate all the three primary colours is present but is defective for one or two of them. It may be of following types:

- **Protanomalous.** It refers to defective red colour appreciation.
- **Deuteranomalous.** It means defective green colour appreciation.
- **Tritanomalous.** It implies defective blue colour appreciation.

**b. Dichromatic colour vision.** In this condition, faculty to perceive one of the three primary colours is completely absent. Such individuals are called *dichromates* and may have one of the following types of defects:

- **Protanopia**, i.e. complete red colour defect.
- **Deuteranopia**, i.e. complete defect for green colour.
- **Tritanopia**, i.e. absence of blue colour appreciation.

*Red-green deficiency* (protanomalous, protanopia, deuteranomalous and deuteranopia) is more common. Such a defect is a source of danger in certain occupations such as drivers, sailors and traffic police. Blue deficiency (tritanomalous and tritanopia) is comparatively rare.

**c. Blue cone monochromatism (BCM).** It is a condition of complete absence of red and green cone function. It is characterised by:

- Poor day vision but normal night vision,
- Colour vision severely limited, only differences in blue hues are detectable,
- Reduced visual acuity (6/24 to 6/6),
- Small amplitude nystagmus, and
- Photosensitivity.

#### 2. Achromatopsia

It is an extremely rare condition presenting as rod monochromatism.

**Rod monochromatism** may be complete or incomplete. It is inherited as an autosomal recessive trait affecting both sexes equally. It is characterized by:

- Total colour blindness,
- Day blindness (visual acuity is about 6/60),
- Nystagmus, and
- Fundus is usually normal.

#### B. Acquired colour blindness

It may follow damage to macula or optic nerve. Usually, it is associated with a central scotoma or decreased visual acuity.

• **Blue-yellow impairment** is seen in retinal lesions such as CSR, macular oedema and shallow retinal detachment.

• **Red-green deficiency** is seen in optic nerve lesions such as optic neuritis, Leber's optic atrophy and compression of the optic nerve.



■ **Acquired blue colour defect** (blue blindness) may occur in old age due to increased sclerosis of the crystalline lens. It is owing to the physical absorption of the blue rays by the increased amber coloured pigment in the nucleus.

### Tests for colour vision

These tests are designed for: (1) Screening defective colour vision from normal; (2) Qualitative classification of colour blindness i.e. protans, deuteran and tritan; and (3) Quantitative analysis of degree of deficiency, i.e. mild, moderate or marked.

Commonly employed colour vision tests are as follows:

**1. Pseudoisochromatic charts.** It is the most commonly employed test using Ishihara's plates (Fig. 13.13). In this there are patterns of coloured and grey dots which reveal one pattern to the normal individuals and another to the colour deficient. It is a quick method to screen Congenital protan and deuteran (i.e. red-green defects). Another test based on the same principle are:

Hardy-Rand-Rittler plates (HRR) (more sensitive than Ishihara since it can detect all the three congenital defects).

American optical colour plate test.

**2. Edridge-Green lantern test.** In this test the subject has to name the various colours shown to him by a lantern and the judgement is made by the mistake he makes.

**3. Farnsworth-Munsell 100 hue test.** It is a spectroscopic test in which subject has to arrange the coloured chips in ascending order. The colour vision is judged by the error score, i.e. greater the score poorer the

colour vision. It is the *most sensitive test* for both congenital and acquired colour vision defects. It consists of 85 hue caps (not 100) and colour vision is judged by error score (higher score means poorer colour vision).

**4. Farnsworth D15 hue discrimination test** is similar test but utilizes only 15 hue caps.

**5. City university colour vision test.** It is also a spectroscopic test where a central coloured plate is to be matched to its closest hue from four surrounding colour in each of 10 plates.

**6. Nagel's anomaloscope.** In this test, the observer is asked to mix red and green colour in such a proportion that the mixture should match the given yellow coloured disc. The judgement about the defect is made from the relative amount of red and green colours and the brightness setting used by the observer.

**7. Holmgren's wools test.** In this, the subject is asked to make a series of colour-matches from a selection of skeins of coloured wools.

**Note.** Currently, there is no treatment for the colour blindness.

### ■ AMAUROSIS

It implies complete loss of sight in one or both eyes, in the absence of ophthalmoscopic or other marked objective signs.

#### 1. Amaurosis fugax

It refers to a sudden, temporary and painless monocular visual loss occurring due to a transient failure of retinal circulation.

**Common causes** of amaurosis fugax are: carotid transient ischaemic attacks (TIA), embolization of retinal circulation, papilloedema, giant cell arteritis, Raynaud's disease, migraine, as a prodromal symptom of central retinal artery or carotid artery occlusion, hypertensive retinopathy, and venous stasis retinopathy.

**Clinical characteristics.** An attack of amaurosis fugax is typically described by the patients as a curtain that descends from above or ascends from below to occupy the upper or lower halves of their visual fields.

The attack lasts for two to five minutes and resolves in the reverse pattern of progression, leaving no residual deficit. Due to brief duration of the attack, it is rarely possible to observe the fundus. When observed shortly after an attack, the fundus may either be normal or reveal signs of retinal ischaemia such as retinal oedema and small superficial haemorrhages. In some cases, retinal emboli in the form of white plugs (fibrin-platelet aggregates) may be seen.

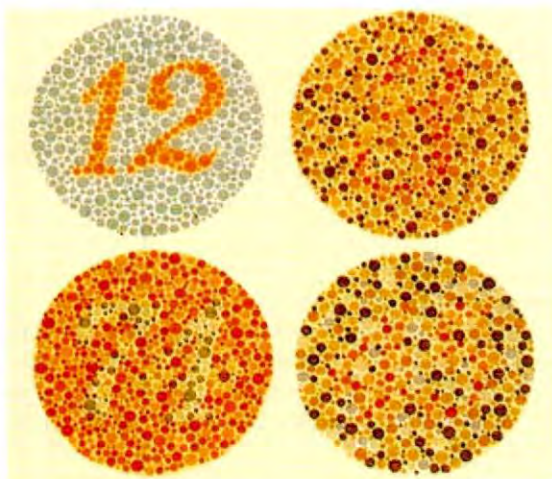


Fig. 13.13 Ishihara's pseudoisochromatic chart



## 2. Uraemic amaurosis

It is a sudden, bilateral, complete loss of sight occurring probably due to the effect of certain toxic materials upon the cells of the visual centre in patients suffering from acute nephritis, eclampsia of pregnancy and renal failure. The visual loss is associated with dilated pupils which generally react to light. The fundi are usually normal except for the coincidental findings of hypertensive retinopathy, when associated. Usually, the vision recovers in 12–48 hours.

## ■ AMBLYOPIA

It implies a partial loss of sight in one or both eyes, in the absence of ophthalmoscopic or other marked objective signs. It may be either congenital or acquired. Acquired amblyopia may be organic (toxic amblyopia; page 332) or functional.

**Functional amblyopia** results from the psychical suppression of the retinal image. It may be anisometropic, strabismic or due to stimulus deprivation (amblyopia ex anopsia) (See page 355).

## ■ CORTICAL BLINDNESS

Cortical blindness (visual cortex disease) is produced by bilateral occipital lobe lesions. Unilateral occipital lobe lesions typically produce contralateral macular sparing congruous homonymous hemianopia.

**Causes** of cortical blindness include:

- **Vascular lesions** producing bilateral occipital infarction are the commonest cause of cortical blindness (e.g. embolisation of posterior cerebral arteries).
- **Head injury** involving bilateral occipital lobes is the second common cause.
- **Tumours**, primary (e.g. falcatentorial meningiomas, bilateral gliomas) or metastatic are rare causes.
- **Other rare causes** of cortical blindness are migraine, hypoxic encephalopathy, Schilder's disease and other leukodystrophies.

**Clinical features.** Cortical blindness is characterized by:

- Bilateral loss of vision,
- Normal pupillary light reflexes,
- Visual imagination and visual imagery in dream are preserved,
- **Anton syndrome**, i.e. denial of blindness by the patients who obviously cannot see,
- **Riddoch phenomenon**, i.e. ability to perceive kinetic but not static targets.

**Management.** A thorough neurological and cardiovascular investigative workup including MRI and MRI angiography should be carried out. Treatment depends upon the underlying cause.

Partial or complete recovery may occur in patients with stroke progressing from cortical blindness through visual agnosia, and partially impaired perceptual function to recovery.

## ■ MALINGERING

In malingering a person poses to be visually defective, while he is not. The person may do so to gain some undue advantage or compensation. Usually, one eye is said to be blind which does not show any objective sign. Rarely, a person pretends to be completely blind. In such cases, a constant watch over the behaviour may settle the issue.

## Differential diagnosis

Before diagnosing malingering following conditions (which produce visual loss with apparently normal anterior segment and a normal fundus) should be ruled out:

1. **Amblyopia.** Many a time an individual may suddenly notice poor vision in one eye though the onset is usually in early childhood. It is important to identify an amblyogenic factor (See page 355).
2. **Cortical blindness** must be ruled out from its characteristic features (See page 344).
3. **Retrobulbar neuritis** a common cause of visual loss with normal fundus. Presence of a definite or relative afferent pupillary defect (RAPD) and VER are diagnostic.
4. **Cone rod dystrophy** is characterized by a positive family history, photophobia in bright light, abnormal dark adaptation and abnormal cone dystrophy electroretinogram.
5. **Chiasmal tumours** may sometimes present with visual loss and normal fundus (before the onset of optic atrophy). Sluggish pupillary reactions to light with characteristic visual field defects may be noted.

## Tests for malingering

1. **Convex lens test.** Place a low convex or concave lens (0.25 D) before the blind eye and a high convex lens (+10 D) before the good eye. If the patient can read distant words, malingering is proved.
2. **Prism base down test.** Place a prism with its base downwards before the good eye and tell the person to look at a light source. If the patient admits seeing two lights, it confines malingering.
3. **Prism base out test.** Ask the patient to look at a light source. Then a prism of 10 D is placed before the alleged blind eye with its base outwards. If the eye moves inwards (to eliminate diplopia) malingering is proved.
4. **Snellen's coloured types test.** It has letters printed in red and green. Place a red glass before the good eye.



If the person can read all the letters, it confines malingering because, normally one can see only red letters through red glass.

### Hysterical blindness

It is a form of psychoneurosis, commonly seen in attention-seeking personalities, especially females.

**Characteristic features** include:

- **Sudden bilateral** loss of vision (c.f. malingering). The patient otherwise shows little concern for the symptoms and negotiates well with the surroundings (c.f. malingering).
- **Blepharospasm** and lacrimation may be associated.
- **Pupillary responses** are essentially normal and so is the blink response.
- **Optokinetic nystagmus** is intact.
- **Visual fields** are concentrically contracted. One can commonly find spiral fields as the target moves closer to the fixation point.

**Treatment** includes psychological support and reassurance. Placebo tablets may also be helpful. A psychiatrist's help should be sought for, if these fail.

## ■ DISORDERS OF HIGHER VISUAL FUNCTIONS

### Visual agnosia

**Definition.** Visual agnosia refers to a rare disorder in which ability to recognise the objects by sight (despite adequate visual acuity) is impaired while the ability to recognise by touch, smell or sound is retained.

**Types** of visual agnosia include:

- **Prosopagnosia.** In this patient cannot recognize familiar faces.
- **Object agnosia.** In this patient is not able to name and indicate the use of a seen object by spoken or written words or by gestures.

**Site of lesion** in visual agnosia is bilateral inferior (ventromedial) occipitotemporal junction.

**Associated features** include:

- **Bilateral homonymous hemianopia.**
- **Dyschromatopsia** (disturbance of colour vision).

### Visual hallucinations

Visual hallucinations refer to the conditions in which patient alleges of seeing something that is not evident to others in the same environment.

**Types.** Visual hallucinations are of two types:

- **Elementary (unformed) hallucinations** include flashes of light, colours, luminous points, stars, multiple lights and geometric forms. They may be stationary or moving.

- **Complex (formed) hallucinations** include objects, persons or animals.

**Causes** of visual hallucinations include:

- **Occipital and temporal lobe lesions.** Elementary hallucinations are considered to have their origin in the occipital cortex and complex ones in the temporal cortex.
- **Drug induced.** Many drugs acting on the CNS in high doses are hallucinogenic.
- **Bilateral visual loss** in elderly individuals may be associated with formed hallucinations (Charles Bonnet syndrome).
- **Migraine** is a common cause of unformed hallucinations.
- **Optic nerve diseases** and **vitreal traction** are reported to produce unformed hallucinations.
- **Psychiatric disorders** are not the causes of isolated visual hallucinations.

### Alexia and agraphia

Alexia means the inability to read (despite good vision). It is commonly associated with *agraphia* (inability to write).

**Causes.** Alexia associated with *agraphia* is produced by lesions of the angular gyrus of the dominant hemisphere.

▪ **Alexia without agraphia** is usually caused by lesions that destroy the visual pathway in the left occipital lobe and also interrupt the association fibres from the right occipital lobe that have crossed in the splenium of corpus callosum.

### Visual illusions

In visual illusions patients perceive distortions in form, size, movement or colour of the objects seen. Some of the visual illusions are:

- **Palinopsia** (visual perservation) is an illusion whereby the patient continues to perceive an image after the actual object is no longer in view.
- **Optic anaesthesia** refers to false orientation of objects in space.
- **Cerebral dyschromatopsia** may occur as disappearance of colour (achromatopsia) or illusionary colouring (e.g. erythropsia).
- **Cerebral diplopia or polyopia** are also reported to occur as rare symptoms of central nervous system disease.

**Causes.** Visual illusions are reported to occur in lesions of the occipital, occipitoparietal or occipitotemporal regions, and right hemisphere appears to be involved more often than the left.



## OCULAR MANIFESTATIONS OF DISEASES OF CENTRAL NERVOUS SYSTEM

Ocular involvement in diseases of the central nervous system is not infrequent. A few common ocular lesions of these diseases are mentioned here.

### ■ INTRACRANIAL INFECTIONS

These include meningitis, encephalitis, brain abscess and neurosyphilis.

**1. Meningitis.** It may be complicated by papillitis, and paralysis of third, fourth and sixth cranial nerves. Chronic chiasmal arachnoiditis may produce bilateral optic atrophy. Tuberculous meningitis may be associated with choroidal tubercles.

**2. Encephalitis.** It may be complicated by papillitis and/or papilloedema. Cranial nerve palsies are usually incomplete. Diplopia and ptosis are often present.

**3. Brain abscess.** It is frequently associated with papilloedema. Focal signs depend upon the site of the abscess, and are thus similar to tumours.

**4. Neurosyphilis.** Ocular involvement is quite frequent. Gummatous meningitis may be associated with papillitis, papilloedema or postneuritic optic atrophy and cranial nerve palsies. Third nerve is paralysed in nearly 30% cases, less frequently the fifth and sixth, and least frequently the fourth. Tabes dorsalis and generalised paralysis of insane may be associated with primary optic atrophy, Argyll Robertson pupil, and internal and/or external ophthalmoplegia.

### ■ INTRACRANIAL ANEURYSMS

Intracranial aneurysms associated with ocular manifestations are located around the circle of Willis. Intracranial aneurysms may produce complications by following mechanisms:

**1. Pressure effects** are as follows:

**i. Aneurysms of circle of Willis and internal carotid artery** (supraclinoid, infraclinoid, intracavernous, and anterior communicating artery) may produce following pressure effects:

- **Central and peripheral visual loss** due to pressure on intracranial part of optic nerve and chiasma.
- **Slowly progressive ophthalmoplegia**, due to pressure, on motor nerves in the cavernous sinus.
- **Facial pain and paraesthesia** associated with corneal anaesthesia due to pressure on the branches of trigeminal nerve.
- **Horner's syndrome** due to pressure on sympathetic fibres along the carotid artery.

**ii. Posterior communicating artery aneurysm** typically presents with isolated painful third nerve palsy.

**iii. Vertebrobasilar artery aneurysms** may also be associated with third nerve palsy.

**2. Production of arteriolar venous fistula.** Carotid-cavernous fistula may be produced by rupture of a giant aneurysm of the intracavernous part of the internal carotid artery. *Pulsating exophthalmos* is a typical presentation of carotid-cavernous fistula.

**3. Subarachnoid haemorrhage.** Subarachnoid haemorrhage is a life-threatening complication associated with sudden rupture of aneurysm of the circle of Willis. It is characterized by:

- Sudden violent headache.
- Third nerve palsy with pupillary dilatation.
- Photophobia, signs of meningeal irritation, vomiting and unconsciousness.
- *Terson syndrome* refers to the combination of bilateral intraocular haemorrhages (intraretinal, subhyaloid and vitreous haemorrhage) and subarachnoid haemorrhage due to aneurysmal rupture.

### ■ INTRACRANIAL HAEMORRHAGES

Ophthalmic signs of *intracerebral haemorrhage* are tonic conjugate and dysconjugate deviations. *Subarachnoid haemorrhage* may produce retinal haemorrhages (especially subhyaloid haemorrhage of the posterior pole), papilloedema, and ocular palsies.

### ■ INTRACRANIAL SPACE-OCCUPYING LESIONS (ICSOLS)

These include primary and secondary brain tumours, haematomas, granulomatous inflammations and parasitic cysts. Clinical features of the ICSOLS may be described under three heads:

#### I. General effects of raised intracranial pressure

These include headache, vomiting, papilloedema, drowsiness, giddiness, slowing of pulse rate and rise in blood pressure.

#### II. False localising signs

These occur due to the effect of raised intracranial pressure and displacement or distortion of the brain tissue. False localising signs of ophthalmological interest are as follows:

**1. Diplopia:** It occurs due to pressure palsy of the sixth nerve.

**2. Sluggish pupillary reflexes and unilateral mydriasis** may occur due to pressure on the 3rd nerve.

**3. Bitemporal hemianopia:** It results from downward pressure of the distended third ventricle on the chiasma.

**4. Homonymous hemianopia:** It may result from occipital herniation through the tentorium cerebelli with compression of the posterior cerebral artery.



### III. Focal signs of intracranial mass lesions

These depend upon the site of the lesion. Focal signs of ophthalmological interest are as follows:

**1. Prefrontal tumours**, particularly meningioma of the olfactory groove, are associated with a pressure atrophy of the optic nerve on the side of lesion and papilloedema on the other side due to raised intracranial pressure (Foster-Kennedy syndrome).

**2. Temporal lobe tumours**. These may produce incongruous *crossed upper quadrantanopia* due to pressure on the optic radiations. *Visual hallucinations* may occur owing to irritation of the visuo-psycho area. Third and fifth cranial nerves may be involved due to downward pressure. Impairment of convergence and of superior conjugate movements may occur in late stages due to prolapse of the uncus through the tentorium cerebelli into the posterior fossa, with resulting distortion of the ventral part of midbrain.

**3. Parietal lobe tumours**. These are associated with crossed lower homonymous quadrantanopia due to involvement of the upper fibres of the optic radiations. Other lesions include visual and auditory hallucinations, conjugate deviations of the eyes and optokinetic nystagmus.

**4. Occipital lobe tumours**. These may produce crossed homonymous quadrantic or hemianopic defect involving the fixation point. Visual agnosia may also be associated.

**5. Midbrain tumours**. These may be associated with homonymous hemianopia due to pressure on the optic tracts. Other signs depending upon the site of involvement are as follows:

i. *Tumours of the upper part* produce spasmodic contraction of the upper lid followed by ptosis and loss of upward conjugate movements. In about 25% cases, an upper motor neuron facial paralysis and ipsilateral hemiplegia may also develop.

ii. *Tumours of the intermediate level* may be associated with the following syndromes: (i) *Weber's syndrome*. It is characterised by ipsilateral third nerve palsy, contralateral hemiplegia and facial palsy of upper motor neuron type. (ii) *Benedikt's syndrome*. It is characterised by ipsilateral third nerve palsy associated with tremors and jerky movements of the contralateral side which occur due to involvement of the red nucleus.

**6. Tumours of the pons**. Lesions in the upper part are characterised by ipsilateral third nerve palsy, contralateral hemiplegia and upper motor neuron type facial palsy. While the lesions in the lower part of the pons produce *Millard-Gubler syndrome* which consists of ipsilateral sixth nerve

palsy, contralateral hemiplegia and ipsilateral facial palsy; or *Foville's syndrome* in which sixth nerve paralysis is replaced by a loss of conjugate movements to the same side.

**7. Cerebellar tumours**. Those arising from the cerebellopontine angle produce *corneal anaesthesia* due to involvement of fifth nerve, early deafness and tinnitus of one side, sixth and seventh cranial nerve paralysis, cerebellar symptoms such as ataxia and vertigo, marked papilloedema and nystagmus.

**8. Chiasmal and pituitary tumours**. These include: pituitary adenomas, craniopharyngiomas and suprasellar meningiomas. These tumours typically produce *chiasmal syndrome* which is characterised by bitemporal visual field defects, optic atrophy and sometimes endocrinal disturbances.

### ■ DEMYELINATING DISEASES

These include multiple sclerosis, neuromyelitis optica and diffuse sclerosis. Ocular involvement may occur in all these conditions. Their salient features are as follows:

#### Multiple sclerosis

It is a demyelinating disorder of unknown etiology, affecting women more often than men, usually in the 15–50 years age group. Pathologically, the condition is characterised by a patchy destruction of the myelin sheaths throughout the central nervous system. Clinical course of the condition is marked by remissions and relapses. In this condition, optic neuritis is usually unilateral (See page 329). Other ocular lesions include internuclear ophthalmoplegia and vestibular or cerebellar nystagmus.

#### Neuromyelitis optica (Devic's disease)

It is characterised by bilateral optic neuritis associated with ascending myelitis, entailing a progressive quadriplegia and anaesthesia. **Unlike multiple sclerosis, this condition is not** characterised by remissions and is not associated with ocular palsies and nystagmus.

#### Diffuse sclerosis (Schilder's disease)

It typically affects children and adolescents and is characterised by progressive demyelination of the entire white matter of the cerebral hemispheres. *Ocular lesions* include: optic neuritis (papillitis or retrobulbar neuritis), cortical blindness (due to destruction of the visual centres and optic radiations), ophthalmoplegia and nystagmus.

### ■ OCULAR SIGNS IN HEAD INJURY

Ocular signs related only to the intracranial damage are described here. However, direct trauma to the eyeball



and/or orbit is frequently associated with the head injury. Lesions of direct ocular trauma are described in the chapter on ocular injuries (See pages 444–459).

#### **A. Concussion injuries to the brain**

These are usually associated with subdural haemorrhage and unconsciousness which may produce the following ocular signs:

**1. Hutchinson's pupil.** It is characterised by initial ipsilateral miosis followed by dilatation with no light reflex due to raised intracranial pressure. If the pressure rises still further, similar changes occur in the contralateral pupil. Therefore, presence of bilateral fixed and dilated pupils is an indication of immediate cerebral decompression.

**2. Papilloedema.** When it appears within 48 hours of the trauma, it indicates extra or intracerebral haemorrhage and is an indication for immediate surgical measures. While the papilloedema appearing after a week of head injury is usually due to cerebral oedema.

#### **B. Fractures of the base of skull**

Associated ocular signs are as follows:

**1. Cranial nerve palsies.** These are often seen with fractures of the base of the skull; most common being the ipsilateral facial paralysis of the lower motor neuron type. Extraocular muscle palsies due to involvement of sixth, third and fourth cranial nerves may also be seen.

**2. Optic nerve injury.** It may be injured directly, indirectly or compressed by the haemorrhage. Primary optic atrophy may appear in 2–4 weeks following injury. Presence of papilloedema suggests haemorrhage into the nerve sheath.

**3. Subconjunctival haemorrhage.** It may be seen when fracture of the base of skull is associated with fractures of the orbital roof. The subconjunctival haemorrhage is usually more marked in the upper quadrant and its posterior limit cannot be reached.

**4. Pupillary signs.** These are inconsistent and thus not pathognomonic. However, usually pupil is dilated on the affected side.



# 14

## Ocular Motility and Strabismus

### ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY OF OCULAR MOTILITY SYSTEM

- Extraocular muscles
- Ocular motility
- Supranuclear control of eye movements

### BINOCULAR SINGLE VISION

- Definition
- Development of binocular single vision
- Grades of binocular single vision
- Anomalies of binocular vision

### STRABISMUS

- Definition and classification

- Pseudostrabismus
- Heterophoria
- Concomitant strabismus
- Incomitant strabismus
- Strabismus surgery

### NYSTAGMUS

- Definition and features
- Pathogenesis and classification
- Physiological nystagmus
- Pathological nystagmus
- Nystagmus like movements

### ANATOMY AND PHYSIOLOGY OF OCULAR MOTILITY SYSTEM

#### ■ EXTRAOCULAR MUSCLES

A set of six extraocular muscles (4 recti and 2 obliques) control the movements of each eye (Fig. 14.1). Rectus muscles are superior (SR), inferior (IR), medial (MR) and lateral (LR). The oblique muscles include superior (SO) and inferior (IO).

#### Origin and insertion

##### Rectus muscles

**Origin** rectus muscles originate from a common tendinous ring (the annulus of Zinn), which is attached at the apex of the orbit, encircling the optic foramina and medial part of the superior orbital fissure (Fig. 14.2).

- *Medial rectus* arises from the medial part of the ring,
- *Superior rectus* from the superior part and also the adjoining dura covering the optic nerve,
- *Inferior rectus* from the inferior part and
- *Lateral rectus* from the lateral part by two heads which join in a 'V' form.

**Insertion** all the four recti run forward around the eyeball and are inserted into the sclera, by flat tendons (about 10 mm broad) at different distances from the limbus as under (Fig. 14.3):

- Medial rectus : 5.5 mm
- Inferior rectus : 6.5 mm
- Lateral rectus : 6.9 mm
- Superior rectus : 7.7 mm

#### Oblique muscles

**Superior oblique muscle** arises from the bone above and medial to the optic foramina. It runs forward and turns around a pulley—'the *trochlea*' (present in the anterior part of the superomedial angle of the orbit) and is inserted in the upper and outer part of the sclera behind the equator (Fig. 14.3C).

**Inferior oblique muscle** arises by a rounded tendon from the orbital plate of maxilla just lateral to the orifice of the nasolacrimal duct. It passes laterally and backward to be inserted into the lower and outer part of the sclera behind the equator (Fig. 14.3C).

#### Nerve Supply

The extraocular muscles are supplied by third, fourth and sixth cranial nerves:

- *Third cranial nerve* (oculomotor) supplies the superior, medial and inferior recti and inferior oblique muscles.
- *Fourth cranial nerve* (trochlear) supplies the superior oblique, and
- *Sixth nerve* (abducent) supplies the lateral rectus muscle.



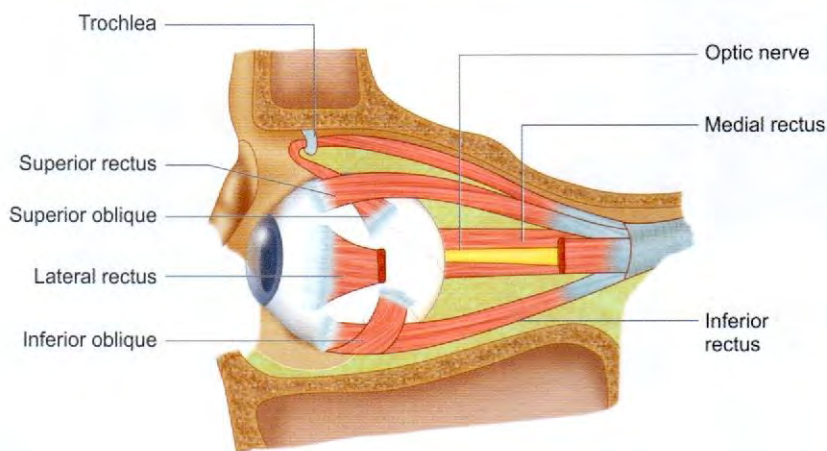


Fig. 14.1 Extraocular muscles

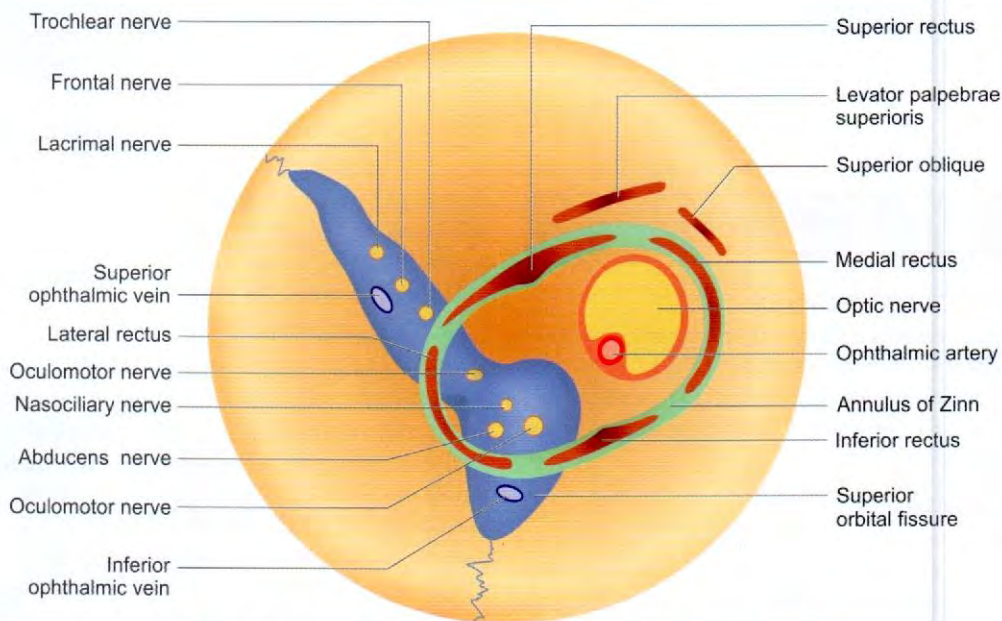


Fig. 14.2 Origin of the rectus muscles and the superior oblique muscle

**Actions**

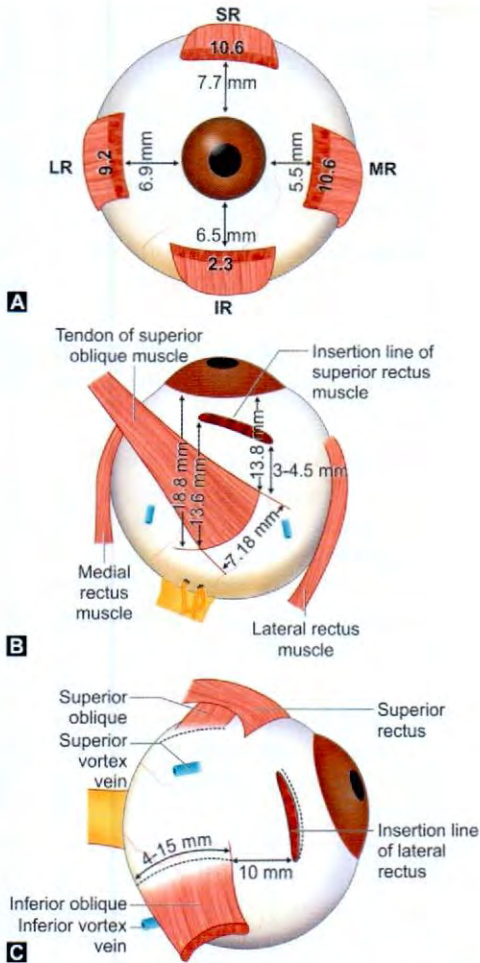
The extraocular muscles rotate the eyeball around vertical, horizontal and anteroposterior axes. Medial and lateral rectus muscles are almost parallel to the optical axis of the eyeball; so they have got only the main action. While superior and inferior rectus muscles make an angle of  $23^\circ$  (Fig. 14.4) and reflected tendons of the superior and inferior oblique muscles of  $51^\circ$  (Fig. 14.5) with the optical axis in the primary position; so they have subsidiary actions in addition to the main action. Actions of each muscle (Fig. 14.6) are shown in Table 14.1.

**OCULAR MOTILITY****Types of ocular movements**

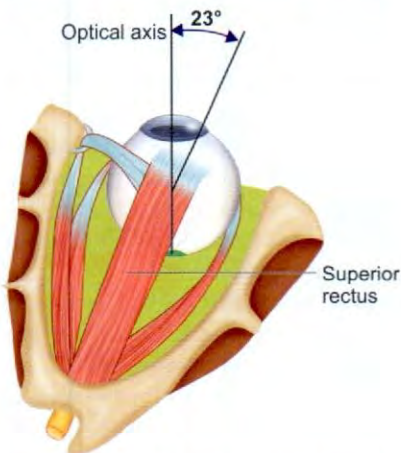
**A. Unilateral movements** are called 'ductions' and include the following:

1. **Adduction:** It is inward movement (nasal side) around the vertical axis.
2. **Abduction:** It is outward movement (temporal) around the vertical axis.
3. **Supraduction:** It is upward movement (elevation) around the horizontal axis.
4. **Infraduction.** It is downward movement (depression) around the horizontal axis.

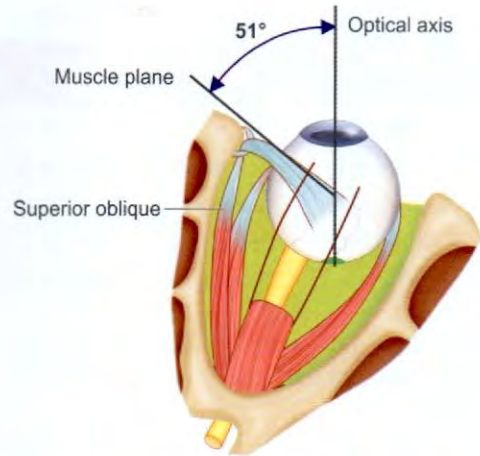




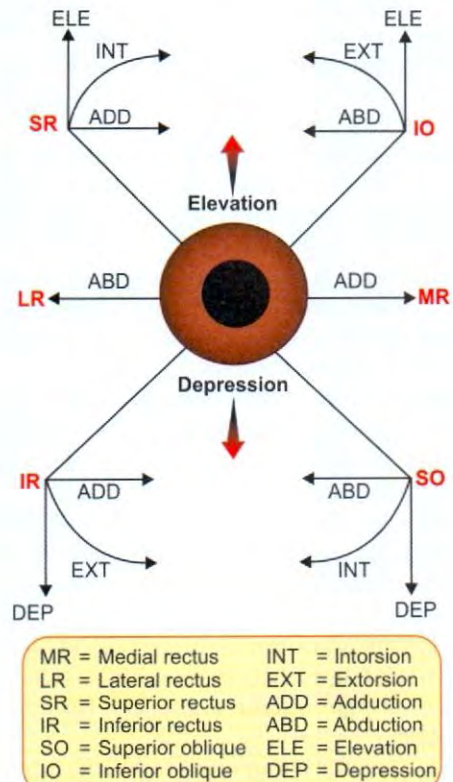
**Fig. 14.3** Insertion lines of the extraocular muscles on the sclera as seen from: A, Front; B, Above; C, Behind. SR, superior rectus; MR, medial rectus; IR, inferior rectus; LR, lateral rectus; SO, superior oblique; IO, inferior oblique



**Fig. 14.4** Relation of the superior and inferior rectus muscles with the optical axis in primary position



**Fig. 14.5** Relation of the superior and inferior oblique muscles with the optical axis in primary position



**Fig. 14.6** Action of the extraocular muscles

5. **Incycloduction** (intorsion). It is a rotatory movement along the anteroposterior axis in which superior pole of the cornea (12 O'clock point) moves medially (internal rotation or medial rotation).
6. **Excycloduction** (extorsion). It is a rotatory movement along the anteroposterior axis in



**Table 14.1** Actions of extraocular muscles

| Muscle | Primary action | Secondary action | Tertiary action |
|--------|----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| LR     | Abduction      | —                | —               |
| SR     | Elevation      | Intorsion        | Adduction       |
| IR     | Depression     | Extorsion        | Adduction       |
| SO     | Intorsion      | Depression       | Abduction       |
| IO     | Extorsion      | Elevation        | Abduction       |

which superior pole of the cornea (12 O'clock point) moves laterally (external rotation or lateral rotation).

**B. Binocular movements.** These are of two types: versions and vergences.

**a. Versions**, also known as *conjugate movements*, are synchronous (simultaneous) symmetric movements of both eyes in the same direction. These include:

1. **Dextroversion.** It is the movement of both eyes to the right (Fig. 14.7D). It results due to simultaneous contraction of right lateral rectus and left medial rectus.
2. **Levoversion.** It refers to movement of both eyes to the left (Fig. 14.7F). It is produced by simultaneous contraction of left lateral rectus and right medial rectus.
3. **Suprversion.** It is upward movement of both eyes in primary position (Fig. 14.7B). It results due to simultaneous contraction of bilateral superior recti and inferior obliques.
4. **Infraversion.** It is downward movement of both eyes in primary position (Fig. 14.7H). It results due to simultaneous contraction of bilateral inferior recti and superior obliques.
5. **Dextroelevation.** It is movement to the right and up side (Fig. 14.7A). It is caused by simultaneous action of right superior rectus and left inferior oblique.
6. **Dextrodepression.** It is movement to the right and down side (Fig. 14.7G). It is caused by simultaneous action of right inferior rectus and left superior oblique.
7. **Levoelevation.** It is movement to the left and up side (Fig. 14.7C). It is caused by simultaneous action of left superior rectus and right inferior oblique.
8. **Levo depression.** It is movement to the left and down side (Fig. 14.7I). It is caused by simultaneous action of left inferior rectus and right superior oblique.
9. **Dextrocycloverision.** It is rotational movement around the anteroposterior axis, in which superior pole of cornea of both the eyes tilts towards the right. It occurs when the head is tilted towards left shoulder.

10. **Levocycloverision.** It is just the reverse of dextrocycloverision. In this superior pole of cornea of both the eyes tilts towards the left. It occurs when the head is tilted towards right shoulder.

**b. Vergences**, also called *disconjugate movements*, are synchronous and symmetric movements of both eyes in opposite directions, for example:

1. **Convergence.** It is simultaneous inward movement of both eyes which results from contraction of the medial recti.
2. **Divergence.** It is simultaneous outward movement of both eyes produced by contraction of the lateral recti.

### Synergists, antagonists and yoke muscles

**1. Agonist and synergists.** Contraction of extraocular muscles produces eye movement. The muscle causing the movement is called *agonist*. Two muscles moving an eye in the same direction are called *synergists*. Superior rectus and inferior oblique of the same eye act as synergistic elevators.

**2. Antagonists.** These are the muscles having opposite actions in the same eye. For example, medial and lateral recti, superior and inferior recti and superior and inferior obliques are antagonists to each other in the same eye.

**3. Yoke muscles (contralateral synergists).** These refers to the pair of muscles (one from each eye) which contract simultaneously to move the two eyes in the same direction (version movements). For example, right lateral rectus and left medial rectus act as yoke muscles for dextroversion movements. Other pairs of yoke muscles are: right MR and left LR, right LR and left MR, right SR and left IO, right IR and left SO, right SO and left IR and right IO and left SR.

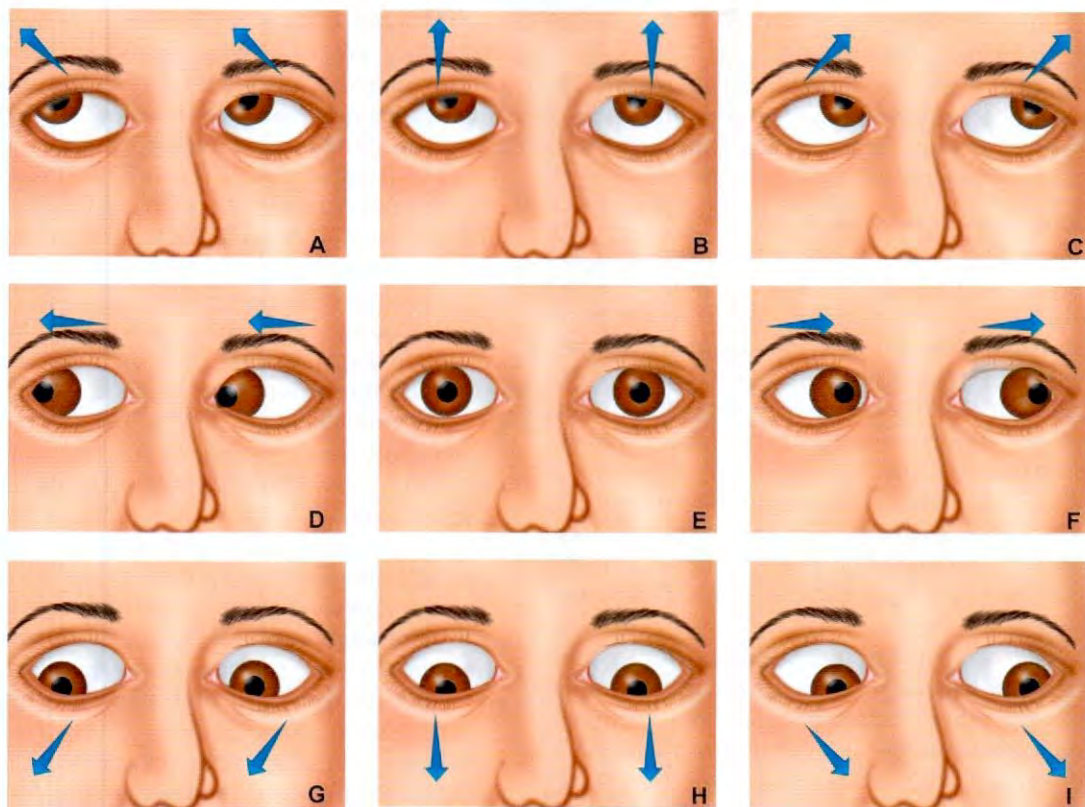
**4. Contralateral antagonists.** These are a pair of muscles (one from each eye) having opposite action; for example, right LR and left LR, right MR and left MR.

### Laws governing ocular movements

**1. Hering's law of equal innervation.** According to law an equal and simultaneous innervation flows from the brain to a pair of muscles which contract simultaneously (yoke muscles) in different binocular movements, for example:

- i. **During dextroversion:** right lateral rectus and left medial rectus muscles receive an equal and simultaneous flow of innervation.
- ii. **During convergence,** both medial recti get equal innervation.
- iii. **During dextroelevation,** right superior rectus and left inferior oblique receive equal and simultaneous innervation.





**Fig. 14.7** Diagnostic positions of gaze: primary position (E); Secondary positions (B, D, F, H); Tertiary positions (A, C, G, I); Cardinal positions (A, C, D, F, G, I)

## 2. Sherrington's law of reciprocal innervation.

According to it, during ocular motility increased flow of innervation to the contracting muscle is accompanied by decreased flow of innervation to the relaxing antagonist muscle. For example, during dextroversion, an increased innervation flow to the right LR and left MR is accompanied by decreased flow to the right MR and left LR muscles.

## Diagnostic positions of gaze

There are nine diagnostic positions of gaze (Fig. 14.7). These include one primary, four secondary and four tertiary positions.

**1. Primary position of gaze.** It is the position assumed by the eyes when fixating a distant object (straight ahead) with the erect position of head (Fig. 14.7E).

**2. Secondary positions of gaze.** These are the positions assumed by the eyes while looking straight up (Fig. 14.7B, straight down (Fig. 14.7H), to the right (Fig. 14.7D) and to the left (Fig. 14.7F).

**3. Tertiary positions of gaze.** These describe the positions assumed by the eyes when combination of vertical and horizontal movements occur. These include position of eyes in dextrolevation (Fig. 14.7A),

dextrodepression (Fig. 14.7G), levoelevation (Fig. 14.7C) and levodepression (Fig. 14.7I).

**4. Cardinal positions of gaze.** These are the positions which allow examination of each of the 12 extraocular muscles in their main field of action. There are six cardinal positions of gaze, viz, **dextroversion, levoversion, dextrolevation, levoelevation, dextrodepression and levodepression** (Figs 14.7A, C, D, F, G and I).

## SUPRANUCLEAR CONTROL OF EYE MOVEMENTS

There exists a highly accurate, still not fully elucidated, supranuclear control of eye movements which keeps the two eyes yoked together so that the image of the object of interest is simultaneously held on both fovea despite movement of the perceived object or the observer's head and/or body.

*Supranuclear eye movement systems include:*

1. Saccadic system
2. Smooth pursuit system
3. Vergence system
4. Vestibular system



5. Optokinetic system
6. Position maintenance system.

All these systems perform specific functions and each one is controlled by a different neural system but share the same final common path the motor neurons that supply the extraocular muscles.

### **Supranuclear eye movements**

Supranuclear eye movements, also known as *fixation movements*, are meant to stabilize image of the visual world on the fovea centralis (the site of sharpest vision) during head movements or movements of the visual world. These fixation movements (controlled by the supranuclear eye movement systems described above) are simultaneous movements of the two eyes described below.

**I. Versions**, also known as conjugate movements, are synchronous (simultaneous) symmetric movements of both eyes in the same direction. Depending upon the fixation function performed these are of following subtypes:

**1. Saccades** are sudden rapid, jerky conjugate eye movements, that occur as the gaze shifts from one object to another. Thus, they are performed to bring the image of an object quickly on the fovea. Direction and velocity of saccades is too rapid for visual processing and cannot be corrected during their course. Saccades are of two types:

- **Voluntary saccades**: serve to bring new objects of interest on the fovea centralis.
- **Reflex saccades (involuntary or reflective)** are generated to correct the preceding slow deviations of the eyes from the target following vestibular optokinetic stimulation (= rapid phase of the vestibular and optokinetic nystagmus).

**2. Smooth pursuit eye movements** are slow conjugate tracking movements of the eye that follow the moving objects of interest and keep them stable on the fovea centralis of retina. These occur *voluntarily* when the eyes track moving objects but take place *involuntarily* if a repetitive visual pattern is displayed continuously. When the velocity of the moving object is more, the smooth pursuit movement is replaced by *small saccades (catch-up saccades)*.

**3. Vestibular eye movements** are slow conjugate movements that are usually effective in compensating for the effects of head movements in disturbing visual fixation. These movements operate through the vestibular system and constitute the vestibulo ocular reflex (VOR). It is important to note that VOR is operative to fix the image on retina during head/body movements while smooth pursuit system is operative when object is moving.

**4. Optokinetic movements** are slow reflexive (involuntary) conjugate movements that helps to hold the images of the seen world steady on the retinae during sustained head rotation. This system becomes operative, when the vestibulo-ocular reflex (VOR) gets fatigued after 30 seconds. It consists of a smooth pursuit movement following the moving scene (for example, viewing trees from a moving train), succeeded by a rapid saccade in the opposite direction (Optokinetic nystagmus).

**5. Position maintenance system.** This system helps to maintain a specific gaze position by means of rapid micromovements called '*flips*' and slow micromovements called '*drifts*'. This system co-ordinates with other systems. *Neural pathway* for this system is believed to be the same as for saccades and smooth pursuits.

**II. Vergence movement.** Vergence movements allow focussing of an object which moves away from or towards the observer or when visual fixation shifts from one object to another at a different distance. Vergence movements are very slow disconjugate movements, i.e. in vergence movements the eyes move in the opposite direction. These include:

- **Convergence**, in which both eyes move nasally, e.g. when focussing on an object moving from a distance towards the individual.
- **Divergence**, in which both eyes move temporally, e.g. when focussing on an object moving away from the eyes.

## **BINOCULAR SINGLE VISION**

### **■ DEFINITION**

When a normal individual fixes his visual attention on an object of regard, the image is formed on the fovea of both the eyes separately; but the individual perceives a single image. This state is called *binocular single vision*. In other words, *binocular single vision is the coordinated use of both eyes so as to produce a single mental impression*.

### **■ DEVELOPMENT OF BINOCULAR SINGLE VISION**

Binocular single vision is a conditioned reflex which is not present since birth but is acquired during first 4 months and is completed during first few years (6 to 7 years), called as critical period of visual development.

The process of its development is complex and partially understood.

**Important milestones** in the visual development are:

- **At birth**, there is no central fixation and the eyes move randomly.



- By the first month of life, fixation reflex starts developing and becomes established by 4 months.
- By 6 months, the macular stereopsis and accommodation reflex is fully developed.
- By 6–7 years of age full visual acuity (6/6) is attained and binocular single vision is well developed.

#### Prerequisites for development of binocular single vision

1. *Straight eyes* starting from the neonatal period, with precise coordination for all directions of gaze (*motor mechanism*).
2. *Reasonably clear vision* in both eyes so that similar images are presented to each retina (*sensory mechanism*).
3. *Ability of visual cortex* to promote binocular single vision (*mental process*).

Therefore, pathologic states disturbing any of the above mechanisms during the first few years of life will hinder the development of binocular single vision and may cause strabismus.

#### GRADES OF BINOCULAR SINGLE VISION

Worth has described three grades of binocular single vision, which are best tested with the help of a synoptophore.

**Grade I—Simultaneous macular perception.** It is the power to see two dissimilar objects simultaneously. It is tested by projecting two dissimilar objects (which can be joined or superimposed to form a complete picture) in front of the two eyes. For example, when a picture of a bird is projected onto the right eye and that of a cage on to the left eye, an individual with presence of simultaneous perception will see the bird in the cage (Fig. 14.8A).

**Grade II—Fusion.** It consists of the power to superimpose two incomplete but similar images to form one complete image (Fig. 14.8B).

The ability of the subject to continue to see one complete picture when his eyes are made to converge or diverge a few degrees, gives the positive and negative fusion range, respectively.

**Grade III—Stereopsis.** It consists of the ability to perceive the third dimension (depth perception). It can be tested with stereopsis slides in synoptophore (Fig. 14.8C).

#### ANOMALIES OF BINOCULAR VISION

Anomalies of binocular vision include suppression, amblyopia, abnormal retinal correspondence (ARC), confusion and diplopia.

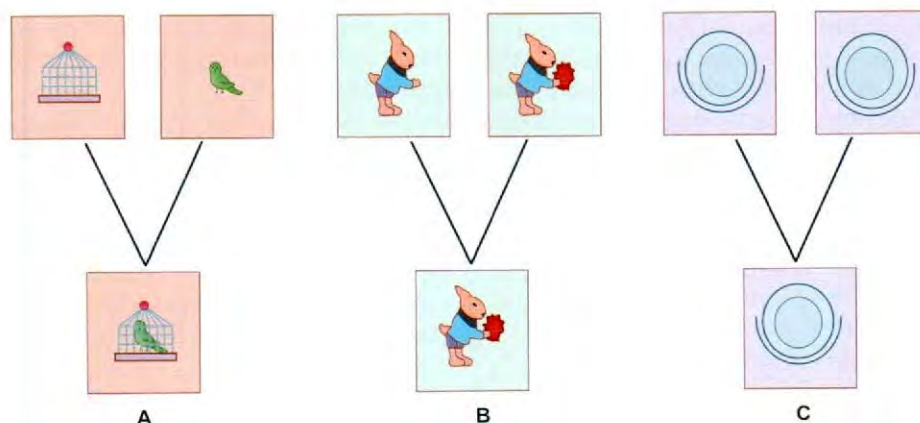
##### Suppression

It is a temporary active cortical inhibition of the image of an object formed on the retina of the squinting eye. This phenomenon occurs only during binocular vision (with both eyes open). However, when the fixating eye is covered, the squinting eye fixes (i.e. suppression disappears).

**Tests to detect suppression** include Worth's 4-dot test, four dioptre base out prism test, red glass test Bagolini glasses test and synoptophore test (See page 366).

##### Amblyopia

**Definition.** Amblyopia, by definition, refers to a partial reversible loss of vision in one or both eyes, for which no cause can be found by physical examination of the eye, i.e. there is absence of any organic disease of ocular media, retina and visual pathway.



**Fig. 14.8** Slides for testing three grades of binocular vision: A, Simultaneous perception; B, Fusion; C, Stereopsis



**Pathogenesis.** Amblyopia is produced by certain amblyogenic factors operating during the critical period of visual development (birth to 6–7 years of age). During this period, the visual pathway continues to develop and brain learns to interpret the signals that come from the eye. If, for any reason, a young child cannot use one or both eyes normally, then the vision is not developed completely and the condition is called amblyopia. The most sensitive period for development of amblyopia is first six months of life and it usually does not develop after the age of 6–7 years.

**Amblyogenic factors** include:

- *Visual (form sense) deprivation* as occurs in anisometropia,
- *Light deprivation*, e.g. due to congenital cataract, and
- *Abnormal binocular interaction*, e.g. in strabismus.

**Types.** Depending upon the cause, amblyopia is of following types:

1. **Strabismic amblyopia** results from prolonged uniocular suppression in children with unilateral constant squint who fixates with normal eye. Squint is the most common cause of amblyopia.

2. **Stimulus deprivation amblyopia** (old term: amblyopia ex anopsia) develops when one eye is totally excluded from seeing early in life as, in congenital or traumatic cataract, complete ptosis and dense central corneal opacity.

3. **Anisometropic amblyopia** occurs in an eye having higher degree of refractive error than the fellow eye. It is more common in anisohypermetropic than the anisomyopic children. Even 1–2 D hypermetropic anisometropia may cause amblyopia while upto 3 D myopic anisometropia usually does not cause amblyopia. However, unilateral high myopia (>6D) often results in severe amblyopia.

4. **Isoametropic amblyopia** is bilateral amblyopia occurring in children with bilateral uncorrected high refractive error. Bilateral hyperopia >+5DS and myopia >-8DS are at risk of inducing bilateral amblyopia. Such amblyopia is usually of mild degree.

5. **Meridional amblyopia** occurs in children with uncorrected astigmatic refractive error. It is a selective amblyopia for a specific visual meridian. Uncorrected astigmatism of >1.5 D may cause unilateral meridional amblyopia while bilateral meridional amblyopia is caused by bilateral astigmatism of >2.5 D.

**Clinical characteristics** of an amblyopic eye are:

1. *Visual acuity* is reduced. Recognition acuity is more affected than resolution acuity. Depending upon the level of visual acuity, amblyopia can be graded as below:

- *Mild amblyopia*: visual acuity 20/25 to 20/60
- *Moderate amblyopia*: visual acuity 20/70 to 20/100
- *Deep or severe amblyopia*: visual acuity 20/200 or worse.

2. *Effect of neutral density filter.* Visual acuity when tested through neutral density filter improves by one or two lines in amblyopia and decreases in patients with organic lesions.
3. *Crowding phenomenon* is present in amblyopics, i.e. visual acuity is less when tested with multiple letter charts (e.g. Snellen's chart) than when tested with single charts (optotype).
4. *Fixation pattern* may be central or eccentric. Degree of amblyopia in eccentric fixation is proportionate to the distance of the eccentric point from the fovea.
5. *Colour vision* is usually normal, may be affected in deep amblyopia with vision below 6/36.

**Treatment.** Amblyopia treatment should be started as early as possible (younger the child, better the prognosis). Amblyopia therapy works best when initiated in young children under 3 years of age and comprise:

1. **Occlusion therapy**, i.e. occlusion of the sound (normal) eye to force use of amblyopic eye is the main stay in the treatment of amblyopia. However, before the occlusion therapy is started, it should be ensured that:
  - *Opacity in the media* (e.g. cataract), if any, should be removed first, and
  - *Refractive error*, if any, should be fully corrected.

**Methods of occlusion.** Occlusion can be accomplished by an adhesive patch on skin, gauze pad and tape, use of Doyne's rubber occluder which can be stuck to spectacle lens, opaque contact lens, adhesive tape on glasses, and ground glass occluder.

**Types of occlusion** are as below.

- i. **Full time occlusion.** It involves occlusion of the sound eye for all waking hours or all but one waking hour a day.

It is recommended that children need to be observed at intervals of 1 week per year of age, if undergoing full-time occlusion to avoid occlusion amblyopia in the sound eye.

**Simplified schedule for occlusion therapy** depending on the age is as below:

- Up to 2 years, the occlusion should be done in 2:1, i.e. 2 day in sound eye and one day in amblyopic eye.
- At the age of 3 years, 3:1,
- At the age of 4 years, 4:1,
- At the age of 5 years, 5:1, and
- After the age of 6 years, 6:1.



ii. *Part time occlusion.* Above given schedule is for the conventional full time occlusion. However, as per 'Amblyopia Treatment Study (ATS)', only part time occlusion for 4–6 hours per day of the normal eye is equally effective in the treatment.

*Duration of occlusion* should be until the visual acuity develops fully, or there is no further improvement of vision after 3 months of occlusion.

**Maintenance occlusion.** Once the vision has been equalized, the maintenance occlusion should be continued till the amblyogenic age, i.e. up to at least 8 years of age. Maintenance occlusion is accomplished by part time occlusion for 2 hours in a day.

**2. Penalization, i.e. blurring of vision of normal eye** either by using atropine (*atropine penalization*) or by using over plus lenses in spectacles (*optical penalization*) can be used as alternative when occlusion is not possible.

**3. Pleoptic exercises,** recommended in the past to re-establish foveal fixation especially in young children, are not of much use.

**4. Pharmacologic manipulation** using levodopa/carbidopa has been studied as an adjunct to occlusion therapy. Role of newer drugs like citicoline and omega fatty acids has also been reported.

**5. Perceptual learning** is also suggested as an adjunct to occlusion therapy.

**6. Computerized 'active vision therapy'** using especially designed software has come into vogue for the treatment of amblyopia along with occlusion therapy. Vision therapy works on the concept of operant conditioning (a form of psychological learning). Computerized Home Vision Therapy (CHVT) can be prescribed as supplementary treatment to the occlusion therapy.

### Abnormal retinal correspondence (ARC)

In a state of normal binocular single vision, there exists a precise physiological relationship between the corresponding points of the two retinae. Thus, the foveae of two eyes act as corresponding points and have the same visual direction. This adjustment is called *normal retinal correspondence* (NRC). When squint develops, patient may experience either diplopia or confusion. To avoid these, sometimes (especially in children with small degree of esotropia), there occurs an active cortical adjustment in the directional values of the two retinae. In this state fovea of the normal eye and an extrafoveal point on the retina of the squinting eye acquire a common visual direction, i.e. become corresponding points. This condition is called *abnormal retinal correspondence* (ARC) and the child gets a crude type of binocular single vision.

**Tests to detect abnormal retinal correspondence** include Worth's four-dot test, Prism bar and red filter test. Bagolini striated glass tests, after image tests and synoptophore tests (See pages 365–366).

### Diplopia

Diplopia refers to simultaneous perception of two images of a single object. Diplopia may be binocular or uniocular.

#### Binocular diplopia

Binocular diplopia occurs due to formation of image on dissimilar points of the two retinae (See page 368, Fig. 14.24).

**Causes** of binocular diplopia are:

- *Paralysis or paresis* of the extraocular muscles (commonest cause)
- *Displacement of one eyeball* as occurs in space occupying lesion in the orbit, and fractures of the orbital wall,
- *Mechanical restriction of ocular movements* as caused by thick pterygium, symblepharon and thyroid ophthalmopathy
- *Deviation of ray of light in one eye* as caused by decentred spectacles
- *Anisometropia*, i.e. disparity of image size between two eyes as occurs in acquired high anisometropia (e.g. uniocular aphakia with spectacle correction).

**Types.** Binocular diplopia may be crossed or uncrossed.

- *Uncrossed diplopia.* In uncrossed (harmonious) diplopia the false image is on the same side as deviation. It occurs in convergent squint as in lateral rectus paralysis.
- *Crossed diplopia.* In crossed (unharmonious) diplopia the false image is seen on the opposite side. It occurs in divergent squint as in medial rectus paralysis.

#### Uniocular diplopia

Though not an anomaly of binocular vision, but it will not be out of place to describe uniocular diplopia along with binocular diplopia. In uniocular diplopia, an object appears double from the affected eye even when the normal eye is closed.

**Causes** of uniocular diplopia are:

- *Subluxated clear lens* (pupillary area is partially phakic and partially aphakic).
- *Subluxated intraocular lens* (pupillary area is partially aphakic and partially pseudophakic).
- *Double pupil* due to congenital anomaly, or large peripheral iridectomy or iridodialysis.
- *Incipient cataract.* Usually polyopia, i.e. multiple images may be seen due to multiple water clefts within the lens.



- **Keratoconus.** Diplopia occurs due to changed refractive power of the cornea in different parts.

### Treatment of diplopia

Treat the causative disease. Temporary relief from annoying diplopia can be obtained by occluding the affected eye.

## STRABISMUS

### ■ DEFINITION AND CLASSIFICATION

#### Definition

Normally, visual axis of the two eyes are parallel to each other in the 'primary position of gaze' and this alignment is maintained in all positions of gaze.

A misalignment of the visual axes of the two eyes is called *squint* or *strabismus*.

#### Pseudostrabismus

In pseudostrabismus (apparent squint), the visual axes are in fact parallel, but the eyes seem to have a squint:

1. **Pseudoesotropia** or apparent convergent squint may be associated with:

- **Prominent epicanthal fold** (which covers the normally visible nasal aspect of the globe and gives a false impression of esotropia).
- **Negative angle kappa.**

2. **Pseudoexotropia** or apparent divergent squint may be associated with:

- **Hypertelorism**, a condition of wide separation of the two eyes (i.e. wide IPD), and
- **Positive angle kappa.**

#### Classification of strabismus

Broadly, strabismus can be classified as below:

- Latent squint (Heterophoria)
- Manifest squint (Heterotropia)
  - Concomitant squint
  - Incomitant squint.

## HETEROPHORIA

Heterophoria also known as '*latent strabismus*' is a condition in which the tendency of the eyes to deviate is kept latent by the faculty of fusion. Therefore, when the influence of fusion is removed the visual axis of one eye deviates away. *Orthophoria* is a condition of perfect alignment of the two eyes which is maintained even after the removal of influence of fusion. However, orthophoria is a theoretical ideal. Practically, a small amount of heterophoria is of universal occurrence and is known as '*physiological heterophoria*'.

### Types of heterophoria

1. **Esophoria or latent convergent squint** refers to tendency of the eyeballs to deviate inward.

It may be:

- Convergence excess type** (esophoria greater for near than distance).
- Divergence weakness type** (esophoria greater for distance than near).
- Non-specific type** (esophoria which does not vary significantly in degree for any distance).

2. **Exophoria** or latent divergent squint refers to tendency of the eyeballs to deviate outwards. It may be:

- Convergence weakness type** (exophoria greater for near than distance).
- Divergence excess type** (exophoria greater on distant fixation than the near).
- Non-specific type** (exophoria which does not vary significantly in degree for any distance).

3. **Hyperphoria** is a tendency of the eyeball to deviate upwards, while hypophoria is a tendency to deviate downwards. However, in practice it is customary to use the term right or left hyperphoria depending on the eye which remains up as compared to the other.

4. **Cyclophoria** or latent torsional deviation is a tendency of the eyeball to rotate around the anteroposterior axis. When the 12 O'clock meridian of cornea rotates nasally, it is called *incyclophoria* and when it rotates temporally it is called *excyclophoria*.

### Etiology

#### A. Anatomical factors

Anatomical factors responsible for development of heterophoria include:

- Orbital asymmetry.
- Abnormal interpupillary distance (IPD). A wide IPD is associated with exophoria and small with esophoria.
- Faulty insertion of extraocular muscles.
- A mild degree of extraocular muscle weakness.
- Anomalous central distribution of the tonic innervation of the two eyes.
- Anatomical variation in the position of the macula in relation to the optical axis of the eye.

#### B. Physiological factors

- Age. Esophoria is more common in younger age group as compared to exophoria which is more often seen in elderly.
- Role of accommodation.** Increased accommodation is associated with esophoria (as seen in hypermetropes and individuals doing excessive



near work) and decreased accommodation with exophoria (as seen in simple myopes).

3. *Role of convergence.* Excessive use of convergence may cause esophoria (as occurs in bilateral congenital myopes) while decreased use of convergence is often associated with exophoria (as seen in presbyopes).
4. *Dissociation factor* such as prolonged constant use of one eye may result in exophoria (as occurs in individuals using uniocular microscope and watch makers using uniocular magnifying glass).

#### Factors predisposing to decompensation

- Inadequacy of fusional reserve,
- General debility and lowered vitality,
- Psychosis, neurosis, and mental stress,
- Precision of job, and
- Advancing age.

#### Symptoms

Depending upon the symptoms heterophoria can be divided into compensated and decompensated.

**Compensated heterophoria.** It is associated with no subjective symptoms. Compensation of heterophoria depends upon the reserve neuromuscular power to overcome the muscular imbalance and individual's desire for maintenance of binocular vision.

**Decompensated heterophoria.** It is associated with multiple symptoms which may be grouped as under:

1. *Symptoms of muscular fatigue.* These result due to continuous use of the reserve neuromuscular power. These include:

- *Headache and eyeache* after prolonged use of eyes, which is relieved when the eyes are closed.
- *Difficulty in changing the focus* from near to distant objects of fixation or vice versa.
- *Photophobia* due to muscular fatigue is not relieved by using dark glasses, but relieved by closing one eye.

2. *Symptoms of failure to maintain binocular single vision* are:

- *Blurring* or crowding of words while reading,
- *Intermittent diplopia* due to temporary manifest deviation under conditions of fatigue, and
- *Intermittent squint* (without diplopia) which is usually noticed by the patient's close relations or friends.

3. *Symptoms of defective postural sensations* cause problems in judging distances and positions

especially of the moving objects. This difficulty may be experienced by cricketers, tennis players and pilots during landing.

#### Examination of a case of heterophoria

1. **Testing for vision and refractive error.** It is most important, because a refractive error may be responsible for the symptoms of the patient or for the deviation itself. Preferably, refraction should be performed under full cycloplegia, especially in children.

2. **Cover-uncover test.** It tells about the presence and type of heterophoria. To perform it, one eye is covered with an occluder and the other is made to fix an object. In the presence of heterophoria, the eye under cover will deviate. After a few seconds, the cover is quickly removed and the movement of the eye (which was under cover) is observed. Direction of movement of the eyeball tells the type of heterophoria (e.g. the eye will move outward in the presence of esophoria) and the speed of movement tells whether recovery is slow or rapid.

3. **Measurement of heterophoria.** The heterophoria should be measured for distance as well as near. The patient should be asked to fixate a distant target and should not accommodate with full optical correction. For near it should be measured at a distance of 33 cm using accommodative targets.

*Commonly used objective test is:* prism and cover test. *Subjective tests are:* Maddox rod test, Maddox Wing test and double prism test.

i. **Prism cover test.** (See page 365).

ii. **Maddox rod test.** Patient is asked to fix on a point light in the centre of Maddox tangent scale (Fig. 14.9) at a distance of 6 metres. A Maddox rod (which consists of many glass rods of red colour set together in a metallic disc) (Fig. 14.10) is placed in front of one eye with axis of the rod parallel to the axis of deviation (Fig. 14.11).

The Maddox rod converts the point light image into a line. Thus, the patient will see a point light with one eye and a red line with the other. Due to dissimilar images of the two eyes, fusion is broken and heterophoria becomes manifest. The number on Maddox tangent scale where the red line falls will be the amount of heterophoria in degrees. In the absence of Maddox tangent scale, the dissociation between the point light and red line is measured by the superimposition of the two images by means of prisms placed in front of one eye with apex towards the phoria.



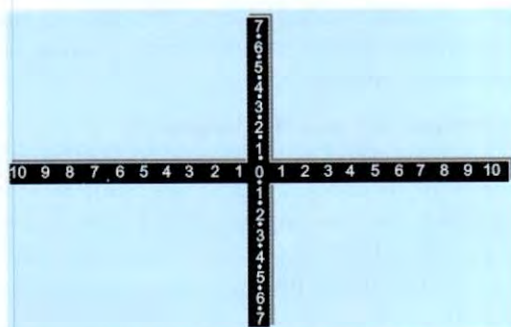


Fig. 14.9 Maddox tangent scale



Fig. 14.10 Maddox rod

iii. **Maddox Wing test.** Maddox Wing is an instrument (Fig. 14.12) by which the amount of phoria for near (at a distance of 33 cm) can be measured. It is also based on the basic principle of dissociation of fusion by dissimilar objects.

The instrument is designed in such a way that, through its two slits, right eye sees a vertical white arrow and a horizontal red arrow and the left eye sees a vertical and a horizontal line of numbers. The patient is asked to tell the number on the horizontal line which the vertical white arrow is pointing (this will give amount of horizontal phoria) and the number on the vertical line at which the red arrow is pointing (this will measure the vertical phoria). The cyclophoria is measured by asking the patient to align the red arrow with the horizontal line of numbers (Fig. 14.13).

**4. Measurement of convergence and accommodation** is important in planning the management of heterophorias.

- **Near point of convergence (NPC)** can be measured with the help of a RAF rule or the Livingstone binocular gauge. The normal NPC is considered to be around 70 mm.
- **Near point of accommodation (NPA)** should be measured after the NPC. NPA can be measured with the help of a RAF or Prince's rule. Normal NPA varies with the age of patient (See page 47).

**5. Measurement of fusional reserve.** The *fusional* vergence available in excess of the amount necessary to overcome the phoria and to bring the eyes into

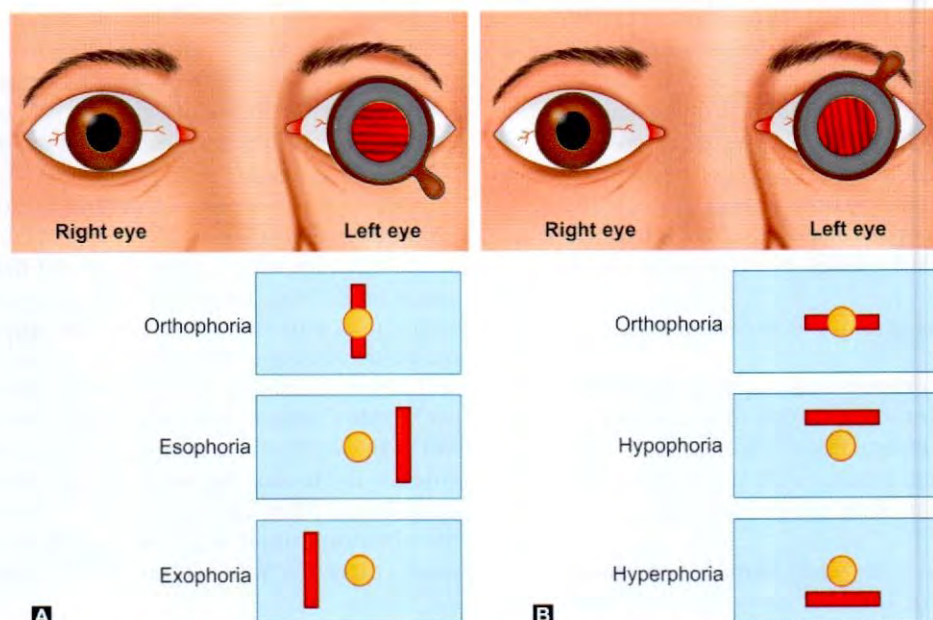


Fig. 14.11 Maddox rod test for horizontal A, and vertical; B, heterophorias





Fig. 14.12 Maddox wing

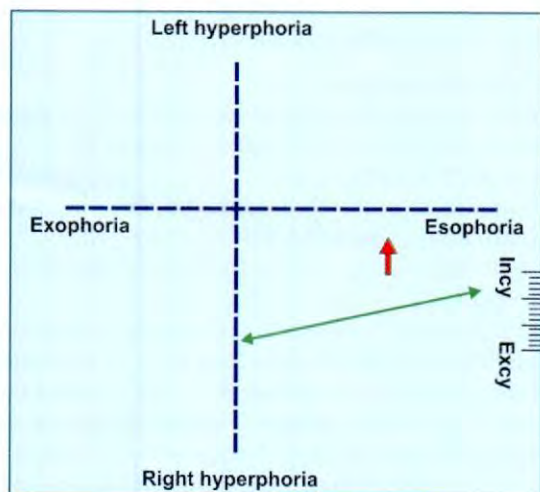


Fig. 14.13 Maddox wing test

orthoposition is called the *fusional reserve* or relative vergence. It can be measured with the help of a synoptophore or prism bar. The normal values of fusional reserve are as follows:

- Vertical fusional reserve:  $1.5^{\circ}$ – $2.5^{\circ}$
- Horizontal negative fusional reserve (abduction range):  $3^{\circ}$ – $5^{\circ}$
- Horizontal positive fusional reserve (adduction range):  $20^{\circ}$ – $40^{\circ}$ .

#### Treatment

Treatment described below, is indicated mainly in patients with decompensated heterophoria (i.e. symptomatic cases).

**1. Correction of refractive error** when detected, is most important. It may correct the phoria and/or relieve the symptoms.

**2. Orthoptic treatment.** It is indicated in patients with heterophoria without refractive error and in those where heterophoria and/or symptoms are not corrected by glasses. Aim of orthoptic treatment is to improve convergence insufficiency and the fusional reserve. Orthoptic treatment, also known as '*vision therapy*', includes: divergence exercises in cases of convergence excess and divergence insufficiency and convergence exercises in cases of convergence insufficiency.

*Orthoptic treatment* comprises:

- *Non-computerised exercises* can be done using synoptophore, using vectogram, Brock string, prisms and simple pencil push-ups.
- *Computerized exercises* software are available for in-office as well as for home use.

**3. Prescription of prism in glasses.** It may be tried in selected cases of hyperphoria and in troublesome cases of esophoria and exophoria. Prism is prescribed with apex towards the direction of phoria to correct only half or at the most two-thirds of heterophoria.

**4. Surgical treatment.** It is undertaken in patients with marked symptoms which are not relieved by other measures. Aim of the surgical management is to strengthen the weak muscle or weaken the strong muscle.

## CONCOMITANT STRABISMUS

It is a type of manifest squint in which the amount of deviation in the squinting eye remains constant (unaltered) in all the directions of gaze; and there is no limitation of ocular movements.

#### Etiology

It is not clearly defined. The causative factors differ in individual cases. As we know, the binocular vision and coordination of ocular movements are not present since birth but are acquired in the early childhood. The process starts by the age of 3–6 months and is completed up to 6–7 years. Therefore, any obstacle to the development of these processes may result in concomitant squint. These obstacles can be arranged into three groups, namely: sensory, motor and central.

**1. Sensory obstacles.** These are the factors which hinder the formation of a clear image in one eye. These include:

- Refractive errors,
- Prolonged use of incorrect spectacles,
- Anisometropia,



- Corneal opacities,
- Lenticular opacities,
- Diseases of macula (e.g. central chorioretinitis),
- Optic atrophy, and
- Obstruction in the pupillary area due to congenital ptosis.

**2. Motor obstacles.** These factors hinder the maintenance of the two eyes in the correct positional relationship in primary gaze and/or during different ocular movements. A few such factors are:

- Congenital abnormalities of the shape and size of the orbit,
- Abnormalities of extraocular muscles such as faulty insertion, faulty innervation and mild paresis,
- Abnormalities of accommodation, convergence and AC/A ratio.

**3. Central obstacles.** These may be in the form of:

- Deficient development of fusion faculty, or
- Abnormalities of cortical control of ocular movements as occurs in mental trauma, and hyperexcitability of the central nervous system during teething.

#### Clinical features of concomitant strabismus (in general)

The cardinal features of different clinico-etiological types of concomitant strabismus are described separately. However, the clinical features of concomitant strabismus (in general) are as below:

**1. Ocular deviation.** Characteristics of ocular deviation are:

- Unilateral (monocular squint) or alternating (alternate squint).
- Inward deviation (esotropia) or outward deviation (exotropia) or vertical deviation (hypertropia).
- Primary deviation (of squinting eye) is equal to secondary deviation (deviation of normal eye under cover when patient fixes with squinting eye).
- Ocular deviation is equal in all the directions of gaze.

**2. Ocular movements** are not limited in any direction.

**3. Refractive error** may or may not be associated.

**4. Suppression and amblyopia** may develop as sensory adaptation to strabismus. Suppression may be monocular (in monocular squint) and alternating (in alternating strabismus). Amblyopia develops in long standing monocular strabismus only and is responsible for poor visual acuity.

**5. A-V patterns** may be observed in horizontal strabismus. When A-V patterns are associated, the horizontal concomitant strabismus becomes vertically incomitant (See page 373).

#### Types of concomitant squint

Three common types of concomitant squint are:

1. Convergent squint (esotropia),
2. Divergent squint (exotropia), and
3. Vertical squint (hypertropia).

#### CONVERGENT SQUINT

Concomitant convergent squint or esotropia denotes inward deviation of one eye (Fig. 14.14) and is the most common type of squint in children. It can be *unilateral* (the same eye always deviates inwards and the second normal eye takes fixation) or *alternating* (either of the eyes deviates inwards and the other eye takes up fixation, alternately).

#### Clinico-etiological types

Depending upon the clinico-etiological features convergent concomitant squint can be further classified into following types:

##### 1. Infantile esotropia

**Clinical features.** Infantile esotropia, previously called as congenital esotropia, is characterised by following features (Fig. 14.14):

- **Age of onset**, is usually 2–4 months of age, but may occur any time in first 6 months of life.
- **Angle of deviation** is usually constant and fairly large ( $>35^\circ$ ).
- **Fixation pattern.** Binocular vision does not develop and there is *alternate fixation* in primary gaze and *cross fixation* in the lateral gaze. The infant cross fixates so that the targets of interest presented to the left of the head elicit fixation with the right eye and targets presented to the right of the head elicit fixation with the left eye.
- **Amblyopia** develops in 25–40% cases. Amblyopia is implied when the infant consistently prefers to fix with one eye.
- **Associations** include inferior oblique overaction (usually developing after 1 year of age), dissociated



**Fig. 14.14** Concomitant convergent squint (infantile esotropia)



vertical deviation (DVD) which develops in about 70–90% cases by the age of 3 years, and latent horizontal nystagmus.

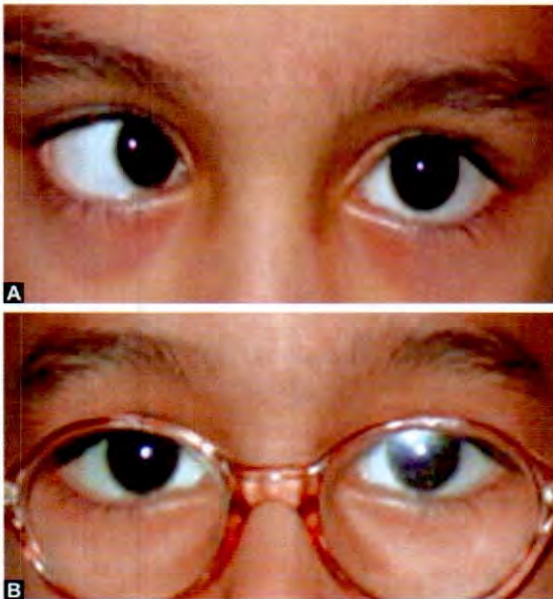
**Treatment.** Surgery is the treatment of choice.

- **Amblyopia treatment** by patching the normal eye should always be done before performing the surgery.
- **Recession of both medial recti** is preferred over unilateral recess-resect procedure.
- **Time of surgery.** Surgery should be done between 6 months to 2 years (preferably before 1 year of age), for proper development of binocular vision.

## 2. Accommodative esotropia

It occurs due to overaction of convergence associated with accommodation reflex. Accommodative esotropia is the most common type of squint in children (previously, it was believed that congenital esotropia was most common). When esotropia develops around 2–3 years of age, it is most likely accommodative. It is of three types: refractive, nonrefractive and mixed.

**i. Refractive accommodative esotropia**, also known as *normal AC/A ratio accommodative esotropia*, usually develops at the age of 2 to 3 years and is associated with high hypermetropia (+4 to +7 D). Mostly, it is for near and distance (marginally more for near) and fully correctable by use of spectacles (Fig. 14.15).



**Fig. 14.15** A, Accommodative esotropia;  
B, Fully corrected by spectacles

**ii. Non-refractive accommodative esotropia:** It is caused by abnormal large AC/A (accommodative convergence/accommodation) ratio. This may occur even in patients with no refractive error.

- Typically esotropia is greater for near than that for distance (minimal or no deviation for distance).
- It is fully corrected by bifocal glasses with +3 DS add for near vision.
- Miotics may be useful in younger children not suitable for bifocals. Miotics facilitate accommodation and thus reduce the accommodative convergence.

**iii. Mixed accommodative esotropia:** It is caused by combination of hypermetropia and high AC/A ratio. Esotropia for distance is corrected by correction of hypermetropia; and the residual esotropia for near is corrected by an addition of +3 DS lens.

## 3. Acquired Non-accommodative esotropias

This group includes all those acquired primary esodeviations in which amount of deviation is not affected by the state of accommodation. It includes:

- Essential acquired or late onset esotropia,
- Acute concomitant esotropia,
- Cyclic esotropia,
- Nystagmus blockage syndrome,
- Esotropia in myopia and microtropia.

**Essential acquired or late onset esotropia.** It is a common variety of concomitant convergent squint. It typically occurs during first few years of life any time after six months of age. It is of three types:

- **Basic type.** In it, the deviation is usually equal at distance and near.
- **Convergence excess type.** In it, the deviation is large for near and small or no deviation for distance.
- **Divergence insufficiency type.** It is characterised by a greater deviation for distance than near.

**Treatment** includes early surgery after correction of the associated refractive error and amblyopia.

## 4. Sensory esotropia

It results from monocular lesions (in childhood) which either prevent the development of normal binocular vision or interfere with its maintenance. Examples of such lesions are: cataract, severe congenital ptosis, aphakia, anisometropia, optic atrophy, retinoblastoma, central chorioretinitis, and so on.

## 5. Consecutive esotropia

It results from surgical overcorrection of exotropia.

## ■ DIVERGENT SQUINT

Concomitant divergent squint (exotropia) is characterised by outward deviation of one eye while the other eye fixates. It can be classified into following clinico-etiological types:



### 1. Congenital exotropia

It is rare usually present at birth and almost always presents before six months of age. It is characterised by a fairly large and constant angle of squint, usually alternate with homonymous fixation in lateral gaze. Amblyopia is seen in a minority of cases (from 0 to 25 %). Both DVD and IOOA may be associated with infantile exotropia.

### 2. Primary exotropia

It may be unilateral or alternating and may present as intermittent or constant exotropia.

**Intermittent exotropia.** It is the most common type of exodeviation with following features:

- *Age of onset* is usually early between 2 to 5 years.
- *Deviation* becomes manifest at times and latent at others. Precipitating factors include bright light, fatigue, ill health and day dreaming.
- *Sensory testing* usually reveals good fusion, stereopsis and no amblyopia.

**Constant exotropia.** If not treated in time the intermittent exotropia may decompensate to become constant exotropia (Fig. 14.16).

**Types.** Primary exotropia may be of following three types:

- *Convergence insufficiency* type of exotropia is greater for near than distance,
- *Divergence excess* type of exotropia is greater for distance than near, or
- *Basic non-specific* type exotropia is equal for near and distance.

### 3. Sensory exotropia

It is a constant unilateral deviation which results from long-standing monocular lesions (in adults), associated with low vision in the affected eye.

**Common causes** include: traumatic cataract, corneal opacity, optic atrophy, anisometropic amblyopia, retinal detachment and organic macular lesions.

### 4. Consecutive exotropia

It is a constant unilateral exotropia which results either due to surgical overcorrection of esotropia, or

spontaneous conversion of small degree esotropia with amblyopia into exotropia.

## EVALUATION OF A CASE OF CONCOMITANT STRABISMUS

### I. History

A meticulous history is very important. It should include: age of onset, duration, mode of onset (sudden or gradual), any illness preceding squint (fever, trauma, infections, etc.), intermittent or constant, unilateral or alternating, history of diplopia, family history of squint, history of head tilt or turn and so on.

### II. Examination

**1. Inspection.** Large degree squint (convergent or divergent) is obvious on inspection.

**2. Ocular movements.** Both uniocular as well as binocular movements should be tested in all the cardinal positions of gaze.

**3. Pupillary reactions.** These may be abnormal in patients with sensory exotropia due to diseases of retina and optic nerve.

**4. Media and fundus examination.** It may reveal associated disease of ocular media, retina or optic nerve.

**5. Testing of vision and refractive error.** It is most important, because a refractive error may be responsible for the symptoms of the patient or for the deviation itself. Preferably, refraction should be performed under full cycloplegia, especially in children.

**6. Cover tests.** There are of three types:

**i. Direct cover test** (Fig. 14.17). It confirms the presence of manifest squint. To perform it, the patient is asked to fixate on a point light. Then, the normal looking eye is covered while observing the movement of the uncovered eye. In the presence of squint, the uncovered eye will move in opposite direction to take fixation, while in apparent squint there will be no movement. This test should be performed for near fixation (i.e. at 33 cm) as well as distance fixation (i.e. at 6 metres).

**ii. Cover-uncover Test:** One eye is covered with an occluder and the other is made to fixate on an object. In the presence of phoria the eye under cover will deviate (as the fusion is interrupted by covering one eye thus unmasking latent squint). The direction of movement of the eye on removing the cover tells about the type of heterophoria (the eye moves inwards in cases of exophoria and outwards in cases of esophoria).



Fig. 14.16 A patient with primary exotropia



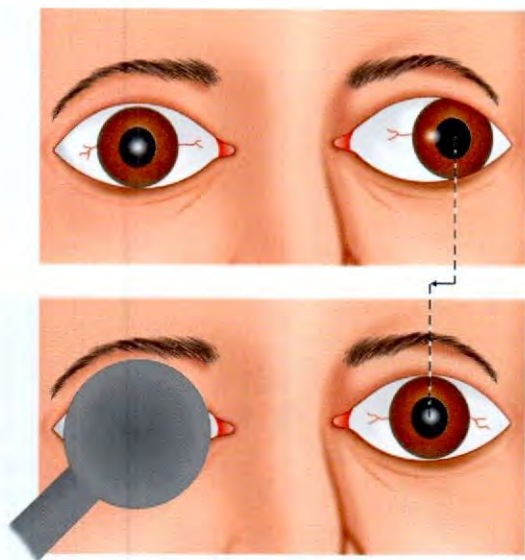


Fig. 14.17 Direct cover test depicting left exotropia

**iii. Alternate cover test.** It reveals whether the squint is unilateral or alternate and also differentiates concomitant squint from paralytic squint (where secondary deviation is greater than primary).

**7. Estimation of angle of deviation** can be done by:

**i. Hirschberg corneal reflex test.** It is a rough but handy method to estimate the angle of manifest squint. In it, the patient is asked to fixate at point light held at a distance of 33 cm and the deviation of the corneal light reflex from the centre of pupil is noted in the squinting eye. Roughly, the angle of squint is  $15^\circ$  and  $45^\circ$  when the corneal light reflex falls on the border of pupil and limbus, respectively and  $30^\circ$  when it lies between the two (Fig. 14.18).

**ii. The prism and cover test** (prism bar cover test, i.e. PBCT). Prisms of increasing strength with apex towards the deviation are placed in front of one eye and the patient is asked to fixate an object with the other. The cover-uncover test is performed till there is no recovery movement of the eye under cover. This will tell the amount of deviation in prism dioptres. Both heterophoria as well as heterotropia can be measured by this test.

**iii. Modified Krimsky corneal reflex test.** In this test, the patient is asked to fixate on a point light and prisms of increasing power (with apex towards the direction of manifest squint) are placed in front of the normal fixating eye till the corneal light reflex is centred in the squinting eye. The power of prism required to centre the light reflex in the squinting eye equals the amount of squint in prism dioptres.

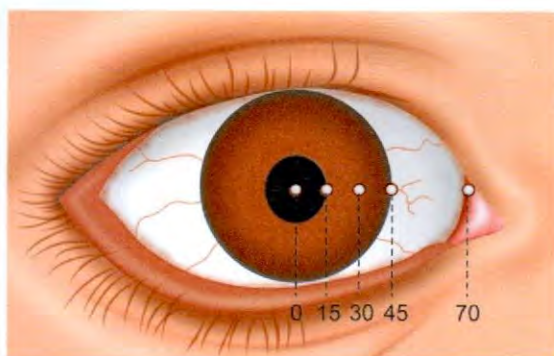


Fig. 14.18 Hirschberg corneal reflex test

**iv. Measurement of deviation with synoptophore.** All types of heterophorias and heterotropias (both objective and subjective angle of squint) can be measured accurately with it. In addition, many other tests can also be performed with this instrument (for details See page 365).

**8. Tests for grade of binocular vision and sensory functions.** Normal binocular single vision consists of three grades. Sensory anomalies include disturbances of binocular vision, eccentric fixation, suppression, amblyopia, abnormal retinal correspondence and diplopia. A few common tests for sensory functions are as follows:

**i. Worth's four-dot test.** For this test, patient wears goggles with red lens in front of the right and green lens in front of the left eye and views a box with four lights—one red, two green and one white (Fig. 14.19). Results are interpreted as below:

- In *normal binocular single vision*, the patient sees all the four lights in the absence of manifest squint (Fig. 14.19A).
- In *abnormal retinal correspondence* (ARC), patient sees four lights even in the presence of a manifest squint (Fig. 14.19B).
- In *left suppression*, the patient sees only two red lights, (Fig. 14.19C).
- In *right suppression*, the patient sees only three green lights, (Fig. 14.19D).
- In *alternating suppression*, the patient sees three green lights and two red lights, alternately.
- In *diplopia*, the patient sees five lights (2 red and 3 green) (Fig. 14.19E).

**ii. Tests for fixation.** It can be tested with the help of a visuoscope or fixation star of the ophthalmoscope. Patient is asked to cover one eye and fix the star with the other eye. Fixation may be centric (normal on the fovea) or eccentric (which may be unsteady, parafoveal, macular, paramacular, or peripheral (Fig. 14.20).



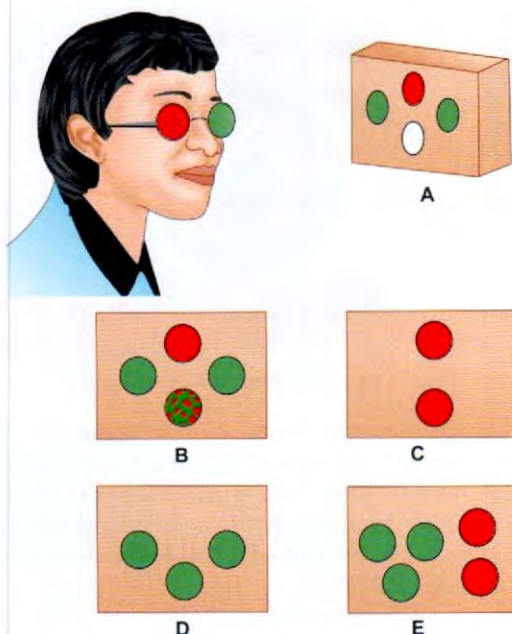


Fig. 14.19 Worth's four-dot test

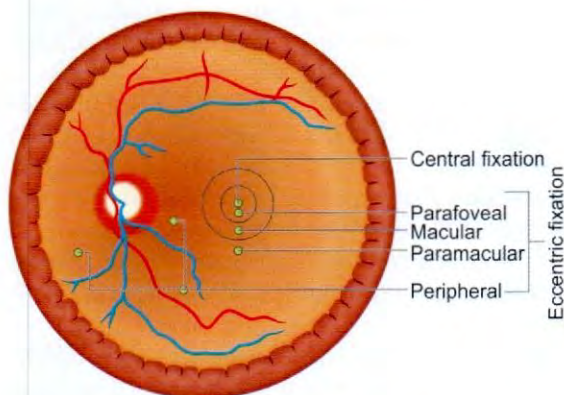


Fig. 14.20 Types of fixation

iii. **After-image test.** In this test, the right fovea is stimulated with a vertical and left with a horizontal bright light and the patient is asked to draw the position of after-images. Results are interpreted as below:

- A patient with normal retinal correspondence will draw a cross (Fig. 14.21A).
- An esotropic patient with abnormal retinal correspondence (ARC) will draw vertical image to the left of horizontal (Fig. 14.21B).
- An exotropic patient with ARC will draw vertical image to the right of horizontal (Fig. 14.21C).

iv. **Sensory function tests with synoptophore.** Synoptophore (major amblyoscope) consists of two tubes, having a right-angled bend, mounted on a

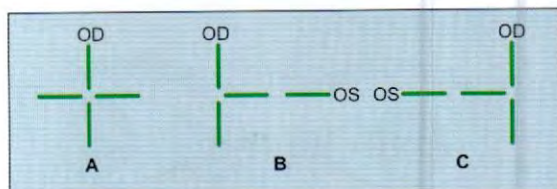


Fig. 14.21 After-image test: A, Normal retinal correspondence; B, Esotropia with ARC; C, Exotropia with ARC

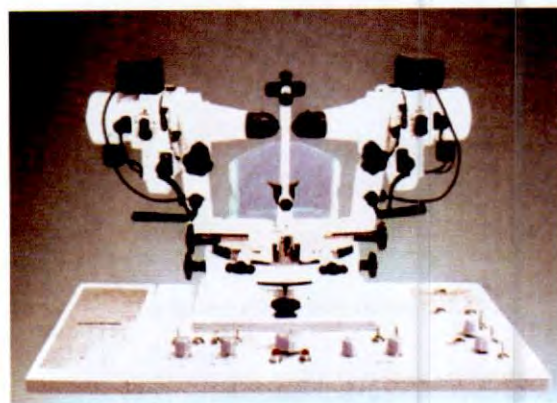


Fig. 14.22 Synoptophore

base (Fig. 14.22). Each tube contains a light source for illumination of slides and a slide carrier at the outer end, a reflecting mirror at the right-angled bend and an eyepiece of +6.5 D at the inner end (Fig. 14.23). The two tubes can be moved separately or together by means of knobs around a semicircular scale. Synoptophore is used for many diagnostic and therapeutic indications in orthoptics.

*Synoptophore tests for sensory functions include:*

- *Estimation of grades of binocular vision* (See page 355).
- *Detection of normal/abnormal retinal correspondence (ARC).* It is done by determining the subjective and objective angles of the squint. In normal retinal correspondence, these two angles are equal. In ARC, objective angle is greater than the subjective angle and the difference between these is called the *angle of anomaly*. When the angle of anomaly is equal to the objective angle, the ARC is harmonious. In unharmonious ARC angle of anomaly is smaller than the objective angle.

v. **Neutral density filter test.** In this test, visual acuity is measured without and with neutral density filter placed in front of the eye. In cases with functional amblyopia visual acuity slightly improves while in organic amblyopia it is markedly reduced when seen through the filter.



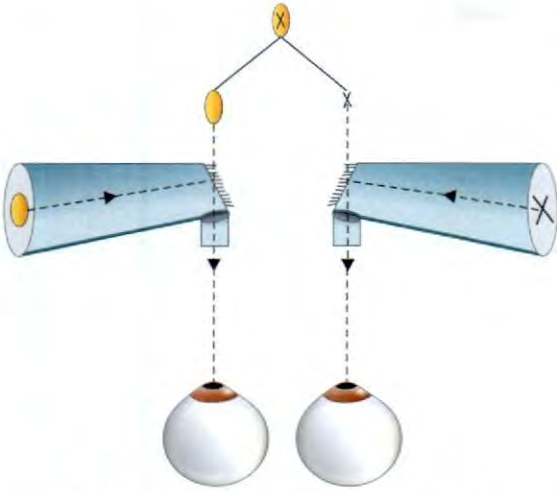


Fig. 14.23 Optical principle of synoptophore

### ■ TREATMENT OF CONCOMITANT STRABISMUS

**Goals of treatment** are:

- To achieve good cosmetic correction,
- To improve visual acuity, and
- To maintain binocular single vision.

However, many times it is not possible to achieve all the goals in every case.

**Treatment modalities.** These include the following:

1. **Spectacles with full correction of refractive error** should be prescribed in every case. It will improve the visual acuity and at times may correct the squint partially or completely (as in accommodative squint).

2. **Occlusion therapy.** It is indicated in the presence of amblyopia. After correcting the refractive error, the normal eye is occluded and the patient is advised to use the squinting eye. Regular follow-ups are done in squint clinic. Occlusion helps to improve the vision in children below the age of 10 years. (For occlusion regimen See page 355).

3. **Preoperative orthoptic exercises.** These are given after the correction of amblyopia to overcome suppression.

4. **Squint surgery.** It is required in most of the cases to correct the deviation. However, it should always be instituted after the correction of refractive error, treatment of amblyopia and orthoptic exercises.

■ **Basic principles of squint surgery.** These are to weaken the strong muscle by recession (shifting the insertion posteriorly) or to strengthen the weak muscle by resection (shortening the muscle).

■ **Type and amount of muscle surgery.** It depends upon the type and angle of squint, age of patient, duration of the squint and the visual status. Therefore, degree of correction versus amount of extraocular muscle

manipulation required cannot be mathematically determined. However, roughly 1 mm resection of medial rectus (MR) will correct about 2–2.5 PD and 1 mm recession will correct about 2–3 PD. While 1 mm resection and recession of lateral rectus (LR) muscle will correct 2 PD. The maximum limit allowed for MR resection is 8 mm and recession is 7 mm. The corresponding figures for LR muscle are 8 mm and 10 mm, respectively.

5. **Postoperative orthoptic exercises.** These are required to improve fusional range and maintain binocular single vision.

### INCOMITANT STRABISMUS

It is a type of heterotropia (manifest squint) in which the amount of deviation varies in different directions of gaze. It includes following conditions:

1. Paralytic squint,
2. 'A' and 'V' pattern heterotropias, and
3. Restrictive squint.

### ■ PARALYTIC STRABISMUS

It refers to ocular deviation resulting from complete or incomplete paralysis of one or more extraocular muscles.

#### **Etiology**

The lesions may be neurogenic, myogenic or at the level of neuromuscular junction.

#### **1. Neurogenic lesions**

Neurogenic lesions may occur at the level of nerve nucleus, nerve root, or any part of the nerve in its course. Nuclear ophthalmoplegia refers to paralysis of extraocular muscles due to lesions of 3rd cranial nerve. They are more often bilateral.

**Common causes** of neurogenic lesions are:

1. **Congenital.** Hypoplasia or absence of nucleus is a known cause of third and sixth cranial nerve palsies. Birth injuries may mimic congenital lesions.
2. **Inflammatory lesions.** These may be in the form of encephalitis, meningitis, neurosyphilis or peripheral neuritis (commonly viral). Nerve trunks may also be involved in the infectious lesions of cavernous sinus and orbit.
3. **Neoplastic lesions.** These include brain tumours involving nuclei, nerve roots or intracranial part of the nerves; and intraorbital tumours involving peripheral parts of the nerves.
4. **Vascular lesions.** These are known in patients with hypertension, diabetes mellitus and



atherosclerosis. These may be in the form of haemorrhage, thrombosis, embolism, aneurysms or vascular occlusions. Cerebrovascular accidents are more common in elderly people. *Ophthalmoplegic migraine or episodic ophthalmoplegia* is a well-known vascular condition characterized by recurrent attacks of headache associated with paralysis of 3rd (most common), 4th or 6th cranial nerve. The condition is often unilateral, persists for days or weeks and even tends to become permanent, in some cases.

5. **Traumatic lesions.** These include head injury and direct or indirect trauma to the nerve trunks. Head injury is common cause of 6th and 4th nerve palsy.
6. **Toxic lesions.** These include carbon monoxide poisoning, effects of diphtheria toxins (rarely), alcoholic and lead neuropathy.
7. **Demyelinating lesions.** Ocular palsy may occur in multiple sclerosis and diffuse sclerosis.

## II. Myogenic lesions

1. **Congenital lesions.** These include absence, hypoplasia, malinsertion, weakness and musculo-facial anomalies.
2. **Traumatic lesions.** These may be in the form of laceration, disinsertion, haemorrhage into the muscle substance or sheath and incarceration of muscles in blow out fractures of the orbital walls (floor or medial wall).
3. **Inflammatory lesions.** Myositis is usually viral in origin and may occur in influenza, measles and other viral fevers.
4. **Myopathies.** These include thyroid myopathy, carcinomatous myopathy and that associated with certain drugs. *Chronic progressive ophthalmoplegia (CPO)* is a bilateral myopathy of extraocular muscles; which may be sporadic or inherited as an autosomal dominant disorder. It is the most common (75% cases) type of mitochondrial myopathy. It is characterised by:
  - **Bilateral ptosis** with slowly progressive ophthalmoplegia is typical presentation.
  - **Diplopia** is usually not a complaint since all eye movements are reduced equally.
  - **Other associated symptoms** of CPO include exercise intolerance, hearing loss, ataxia, sensory axonal neuropathy, parkinsonism, and clinical depression.

## III. Neuromuscular junction lesion

It includes *myasthenia gravis*. The disease is characterised primarily by fatigue of muscle groups, usually starting with the small extraocular muscles, before involving other large muscles.

## Clinical features

### Symptoms

1. **Diplopia.** It is the main symptom of paralytic squint. It is more marked in the field of action of paralysed muscle. It may be crossed (in divergent squint) or uncrossed (in convergent squint). It may be horizontal, vertical or oblique depending on the muscle paralysed. Diplopia occurs due to formation of image on dissimilar points of the two retinae (Fig. 14.24). The false image (seen by the squinting eye) is less distinct than the true image (seen by the other eye).

2. **Confusion.** It occurs due to formation of image of two different objects on the corresponding points of two retinae.

3. **Nausea and vertigo.** These result from diplopia and confusion and may cause vomiting also.

4. **Ocular deviation** is typically of sudden onset.

### Signs

1. **Primary deviation.** It is deviation of the affected eye and is away from the action of paralysed muscle, e.g. if lateral rectus is paralysed the eye is converged. Angle of deviation varies in different directions of gaze (incomitant).

2. **Secondary deviation.** It is deviation of the normal eye seen under cover, when the patient is made to fix with the squinting eye. It is greater than the primary deviation. This is due to the fact that the strong impulse of innervation required to enable the eye with paralysed muscle to fix is also transmitted to the yoke muscle of the sound eye resulting in a greater



Fig. 14.24 Diplopia



amount of deviation. This is based on Hering's law of equal innervation of yoke muscles.

**3. Limitation of ocular movement.** It occurs in the direction of the action of paralysed muscles.

**4. Compensatory head posture.** It is adopted to avoid diplopia and confusion. Head is turned towards the direction of action of the paralysed muscle, e.g. if the right lateral rectus is paralysed, patient will keep the head turned towards right. *Ocular torticollis* refers to tilting of head occurring to compensate for the vertical diplopia. It needs to be differentiated from the *true torticollis* occurring due to undue contracture of sternocleidomastoid muscle.

**5. False projection or orientation.** It is due to increased innervational impulse conveyed to the paralysed muscle. It can be demonstrated by asking the patient to close the sound eye and then to fix an object placed on the side of paralysed muscle. Patient will locate it further away in the same direction. For example, a patient with paralysis of right lateral rectus will point towards right more than the object actually is.

**Note.** Visual acuity is normal and there is no amblyopia as usually the paralytic squint develops in adults when visual acuity has already developed. However, if it occurs in children below 6 years than amblyopia can occur.

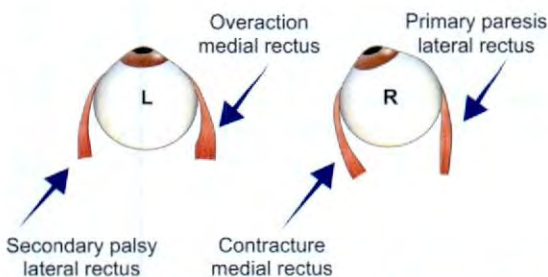
#### Pathological sequelae of an extraocular muscle palsy

In all cases of extraocular muscle palsy, certain sequelae take place after some time. These occur more in paralysis due to lesions of the nerves than the lesions of muscles. These include:

1. Overaction of the contralateral synergistic muscle.
2. Contracture of the direct antagonist muscle.
3. Secondary inhibitory palsy of the contralateral antagonist muscle.

For example, in paralysis of the right lateral rectus muscle there occurs (Fig. 14.25):

- Overaction of the left medial rectus,
- Contracture of the right medial rectus and
- Inhibitory palsy of the left lateral rectus muscle.



**Fig. 14.25** Pathological sequelae of the right lateral rectus muscle paralysis

#### Clinical varieties of ocular palsies

##### Isolated muscle paralysis

Lateral rectus and superior oblique are the most common muscles to be paralysed singly, as they have separate nerve supply. Isolated paralysis of the remaining four muscles is less common, except in congenital lesions.

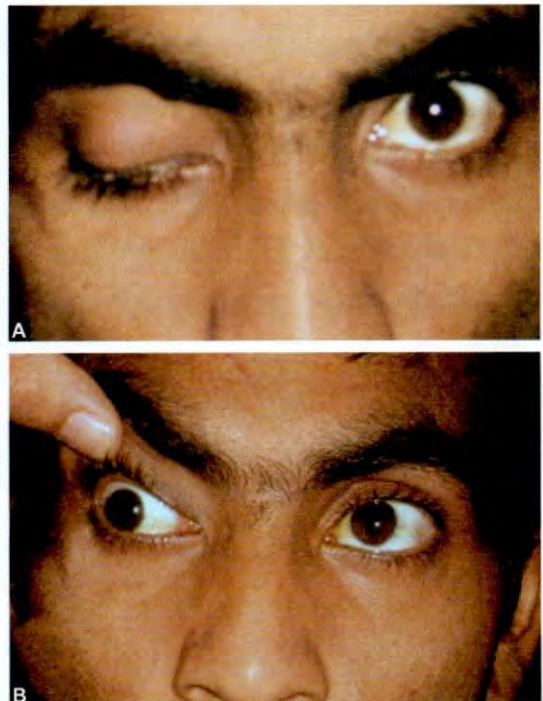
##### Paralysis of the third cranial nerve

It is of common occurrence. It may be congenital or acquired. *Clinical features* of third nerve palsy (Fig. 14.26) include:

- *Ptosis* due to paralysis of the LPS muscle.
- *Deviation.* Eyeball is turned down, out and slightly intorted due to actions of the lateral rectus and superior oblique muscles.
- *Ocular movements* are limited in all the directions except outward.
- *Pupil* is fixed and dilated due to paralysis of the sphincter pupillae muscle.
- *Accommodation* is completely lost due to paralysis of the ciliary muscle.
- *Crossed diplopia* is elicited on raising the eyelid.
- *Head posture* may be changed if pupillary area remains uncovered.

##### Double elevator palsy

Also known as monocular elevation deficiency (MED) is a congenital condition caused by



**Fig. 14.26** A patient with third cranial nerve paralysis showing: A, Ptosis; B, Divergent squint



supranuclear defects. It is characterised by paresis of the superior rectus and the inferior oblique muscle of the involved eye. Supranuclear defects, primary SR paresis and IR restriction secondary to SR paresis. The classic presentation of congenital MED is a unilateral limitation of upgaze above midline with hypotropia on the affected side. The limited upgaze is same in adduction as well as abduction.

#### **Total ophthalmoplegia**

In this condition, all extraocular muscles including LPS and intraocular muscles, viz., sphincter pupillae, and ciliary muscle are paralysed. It results from combined paralysis of third, fourth and sixth cranial nerves. It is a common feature of orbital apex syndrome and cavernous sinus thrombosis.

#### **External ophthalmoplegia**

In this condition, all extraocular muscles are paralysed, sparing the intraocular muscles. It results from lesions at the level of motor nuclei sparing the Edinger-Westphal nucleus.

#### **Internuclear ophthalmoplegia.**

In this condition, there is lesion of the medial longitudinal fasciculus (MLF). It is the pathway by which various ocular motor nuclei are linked.

**Characteristic features** include:

- *Defective action of medial rectus* on the side of lesion,
- *Horizontal abducting nystagmus* of the opposite side
- *Convergence is spared in the involved eye*, as the pathway of convergence runs directly into the midbrain without involving the MLF.

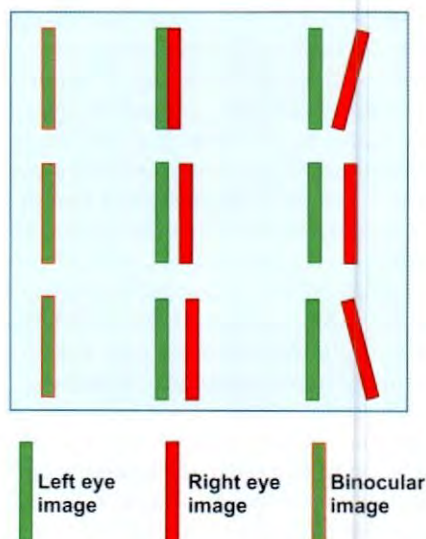
#### **Investigations of a case of paralytic strabismus**

##### **A. Evaluation for strabismus**

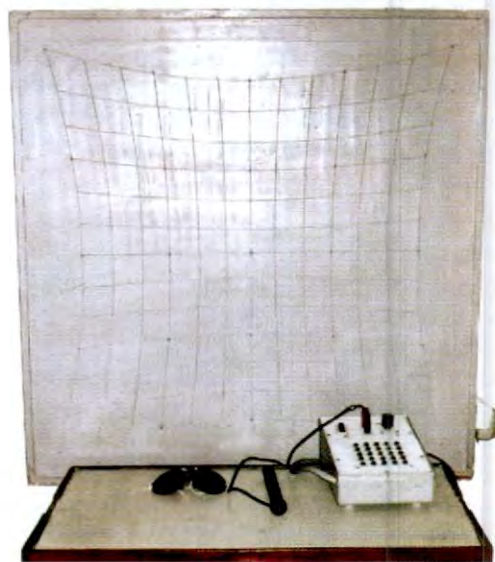
Every case of squint should be evaluated utilising the tests described on pages 364–366. Additional tests required for a case of paralytic squint are:

**1. Diplopia charting.** It is indicated in patients complaining of confusion or double vision. In it, patient is asked to wear red and green diplopia charting glasses. Red glass being in front of the right eye and green in front of the left. Then in a semi-dark room, he is shown a fine linear light from a distance of 1 m, and asked to comment on the images in primary position and in other positions of gaze. Patient tells about the position and the separation of the two images in different fields. Fig. 14.27 shows diplopia charting in a patient with right lateral rectus palsy.

**2. Hess screen test.** Hess screen/Lees screen (Fig. 14.28) test tells about the paralysed muscles and the pathological sequelae of the paralysis, viz., overaction, contracture and secondary inhibitional



**Fig. 14.27** Diplopia chart of a patient with right lateral rectus palsy



**Fig. 14.28** Hess screen

palsy. The two charts are compared. The smaller chart belongs to the eye with paralytic muscle and the larger to the eye with overacting muscle (Fig. 14.29).

**3. Field of binocular fixation.** It should be tested in patients with paralytic squint where applicable, i.e. if patient has some field of single vision. This test is performed on the perimeter using a central chin rest.

**4. Forced duction test (FDT).** It is performed to differentiate between the incomitant squint due to paralysis of extraocular muscle and that due to mechanical restriction of the ocular movements. FDT is positive (resistance encountered during



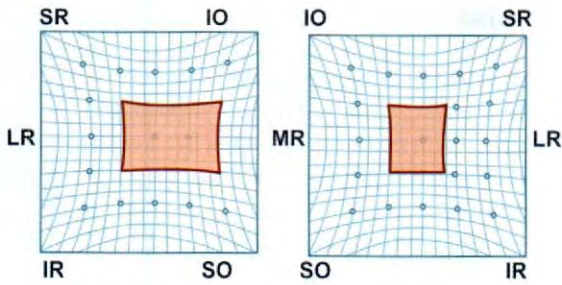


Fig. 14.29 Hess chart in right lateral rectus palsy

passive rotation) in cases of incomitant squint due to mechanical restriction and negative in cases of extraocular muscle palsy.

#### B. Investigations to find out the cause of paralysis

These include orbital ultrasonography, orbital and skull computerised tomography scanning and neurological investigations.

#### Paralytic vs. Non-paralytic strabismus

Differences between paralytic and non-paralytic squint are depicted in Table 14.2.

#### Management

1. *Treatment of the cause.* An exhaustive investigative work-up should be done to find out the cause and, if possible, treat it.
2. *Conservative measures.* These include: wait and watch for self-improvement to occur for a period of 6 months, vitamin B-complex as neurotonic; and systemic steroids for non-specific inflammations.
3. *Treatment of annoying diplopia.* It includes use of occluder on the affected eye, with intermittent use of both eyes with changed headposture to avoid suppression amblyopia.

4. *Chemodenervation* of the contralateral muscle with botulinum toxin may be useful during the recovery period.
5. *Surgical treatment.* It should be carried out in case the recovery does not occur in 6 months. *Aim of treatment* is to provide a comfortable field of binocular fixation, i.e. in central field and lower quadrants. The *principles of surgical treatment* involve strengthening of the paralysed muscle by resection; weakening of the overacting muscle by recession, and transplantation of normal muscle tendon at or near the insertion of paralysed muscle.

#### ■ 'A' AND 'V' PATTERN HETEROTROPIA

##### Terminology

The terms 'A' or 'V' pattern squint are labeled when the amount of deviation in squinting eye varies by more than 10 PD and 15 PD, respectively, between upward and downward gaze.

**'A' and 'V' esotropia.** In 'A' esotropia, the amount of deviation increases in upward gaze and decreases in downward gaze. The reverse occurs in 'V' esotropia.

**'A' and 'V' exotropia.** In 'A' exotropia, the amount of deviation decreases in upward gaze and increases in downward gaze. The reverse occurs in 'V' exotropia.

##### Etiology

- *Oblique muscle dysfunction* is the commonest cause of AV pattern.
- *Other causes* include horizontal rectus muscle dysfunction, vertical muscle dysfunction and certain orbital factors.

##### Clinical presentations

A and V pattern heterotropia essentially refers to vertically incomitant horizontal strabismus.

Table 14.2: Differences between paralytic and non-paralytic strabismus

| Features                                             | Paralytic strabismus                                                                                                                            | Nonparalytic strabismus      |
|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Onset                                             | Usually sudden                                                                                                                                  | Usually slow                 |
| 2. Diplopia                                          | Usually present                                                                                                                                 | Usually absent               |
| 3. Ocular movements                                  | Limited in the direction of action of paralysed muscle                                                                                          | Full                         |
| 4. False projection                                  | It is positive, i.e. patient cannot correctly locate the object in space when asked to see in the direction of paralysed muscle in early stages | False projection is negative |
| 5. Head posture                                      | A particular head posture depending upon the muscle paralysed may be present                                                                    | Normal                       |
| 6. Nausea and vertigo                                | Present                                                                                                                                         | Absent                       |
| 7. Secondary deviation                               | More than the primary deviation                                                                                                                 | Equal to primary deviation   |
| 8. In old cases pathological sequelae in the muscles | Present                                                                                                                                         | Absent                       |



Thus, the horizontally comitant esotropias and exotropias (described on pages 362–365) may be associated with A or V patterns.

### Treatment

Surgical treatment consists of correction of horizontal deviation along with:

- *Weakening of overacting oblique muscle*, inferior oblique for V pattern and superior oblique for A pattern.
- *Transpositioning of horizontal rectus muscles* is to be considered when there is no associated overaction of the oblique muscle. As shown in Fig. 14.29, **M**edial recti are transposed toward **A**pex of A or V (pattern) and **L**ateral recti toward **E**mpy space (to remember mnemonic is **MALE**).

### ■ RESTRICTIVE STRABISMUS

In restrictive strabismus, the extraocular muscle is not paralysed but its movement is restricted.

### Etiology

The restriction can be either due to a misdirected muscle forces or due to mechanical restriction.

I. *Restrictive strabismus due to misdirected muscle forces*–

1. *Congenital cranial dysinnervation disorders (CCDDs)*, e.g. Duane's retraction syndrome, congenital fibrosis of extraocular muscles, mobius syndrome.
2. *Congenital ectopic extraocular muscles insertion.*
3. *Displaced extraocular muscles* such as in cranial anomalies.

II. *Restrictive strabismus due to mechanical restriction*, e.g.:

- Brown syndrome
- Thyroid ophthalmopathy
- Entrapped inferior rectus muscle in blow-out fracture of orbital floor.
- Orbital mass lesions causing mass effect on the globe movements.
- Strabismus fixus.

**Characteristic features** of restrictive squints are:

- *Smaller ocular deviation* in primary position in proportion to the limitation of movement and
- *Positive forced duction test* (i.e. a restriction is encountered on passive rotation) (See page 370).

### 1. Duane's retraction syndrome

Duane's retraction syndrome is a congenital ocular motility defect, a type of congenital cranial dysinnervation disorders (CCDD) occurring due to paradoxical innervation of lateral or medial or both rectus muscles. It is of three types: DRS I, II, and III.

**Characteristics features** are:

- *Limitation of abduction* (type I DRS) or adduction (type II DRS) or both (type III DRS).
- *Retraction of the globe and narrowing of the palpebral fissure* on attempted adduction and widening of the palpebral fissure on attempted abduction.
- *Eye in the primary position* may be orthotropic, esotropic or exotropic.

### 2. Brown's superior oblique tendon sheath syndrome

It is a congenital ocular motility defect due to fibrous tightening of the superior oblique tendon. It is characterized by

- *Limitation of elevation* of the eye in adduction (normal elevation in abduction)
- *Straight eyes in primary position* except in severe Brown syndrome where hypotropia may be present in the primary position and
- *Positive forced duction test* on attempts to elevate eye in adduction.

### 3. Strabismus fixus

**Strabismus fixus convergence** is a rare condition characterised by bilateral fixation of eyes in convergent position due to fibrous tightening of the medial recti.

## STRABISMUS SURGERY

### Surgical techniques

1. *Muscle weakening procedures* include recession, marginal myotomy and myectomy.
2. *Muscle strengthening procedures* are resection, tucking and advancement.
3. *Procedures that change direction of muscle action.*

These include:

- *Vertical transposition* of horizontal recti to correct 'A' and 'V' patterns,
- *Posterior fixation suture* (Faden operation) to correct dissociated vertical deviation, and
- *Transposition of muscles* in paralytic squints. In it normally innervated muscles are transposed to the paralysed muscle to improve the rotation in that field.

### Steps of recession (Fig. 14.30)

1. Muscle is exposed by reflecting a flap of overlying conjunctiva and Tenon's capsule.
2. Two vicryl sutures are passed through the outer quarters of the muscle tendon near the insertion.
3. The muscle tendon is disinserted from the sclera with the help of tenotomy scissors.



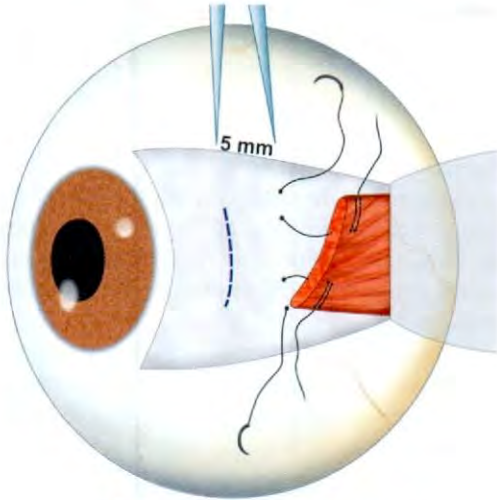


Fig. 14.30 Technique of recession

4. The amount of recession is measured with the callipers and marked on the sclera.
5. The muscle tendon is sutured with the sclera at the marked site posterior to original insertion.
6. Conjunctival flap is sutured back.

#### Steps of resection (Fig. 14.31)

1. Muscle is exposed as for recession and the amount to be resected is measured with callipers and marked.
2. Two absorbable sutures are passed through the outer quarters of the muscles at the marked site.
3. The muscle tendon is disinserted from the sclera and the portion of the muscle anterior to sutures is excised.

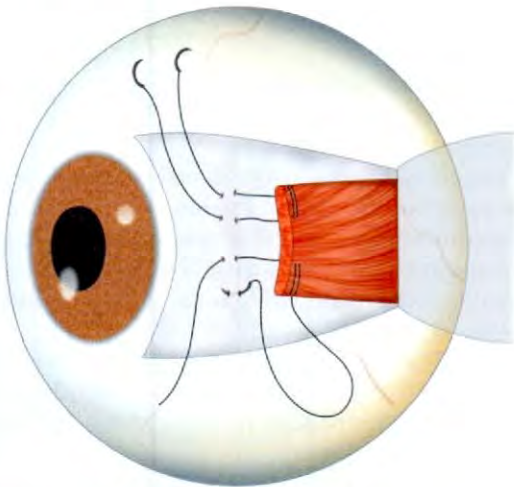


Fig. 14.31 Technique of resection

4. The muscle stump is sutured with the sclera at the original insertion site.
5. Conjunctival flap is sutured back.

## NYSTAGMUS

### ■ DEFINITION AND FEATURES

Nystagmus is defined as regular and rhythmic to-and-fro involuntary oscillatory movements of the eyes. It may be characterised by any of the following features:

- **Waveform:** Pendular or jerk nystagmus. In *pendular nystagmus* movements are of equal velocity in each direction. It may be horizontal, vertical or rotatory. In *jerk nystagmus*, the movements have a slow component in one direction (defoveating movement, i.e. the movement that moves the fovea away from the object and a fast component in other direction (refoveating saccadic movement), i.e. the refixation movement that brings the object of interest back at fovea in the other direction. The direction of jerk nystagmus is defined by direction of the fast component (phase). It may be right, left, up, down or rotatory.
- **Direction of nystagmus** may be horizontal, vertical, rotatory, torsional, oblique or a combination of these.
- **Amplitude of nystagmus** may be small, medium or large.
- **Rate or frequency of nystagmus** may be fast (rapid), or slow. Generally speaking faster the rate, smaller is the amplitude and vice versa.
- **Conjugacy.** Nystagmus may be *conjugate* (symmetrical in both eyes), *disconjugate* (in different directions and different frequencies in two eyes) or *disassociative* (unidirectional but asymmetrical).
- **Manifest** (present all the time) or **latent** (present only when one eye is covered).

### ■ PATHOGENESIS AND CLASSIFICATION

Nystagmus occurs due to disturbance of the factors responsible for maintaining normal ocular posture. These include disorders of sensory visual pathway, vestibular apparatus, semicircular canals, midbrain and cerebellum.

Many classifications are in vogue for nystagmus. A simple classification modified from "Classification of Eye Movements Abnormalities and Strabismus (CEMAS)" is as below:

#### A. Physiological nystagmus

- Optokinetic nystagmus
- Endpoint nystagmus



- Physiological vestibular nystagmus.
- Voluntary nystagmus.

### **B. Pathological nystagmus**

#### **I. Early onset (childhood) nystagmus**

- Infantile nystagmus syndrome (INS)
- Fusion maldevelopment nystagmus syndrome (FMNS)
- Spasmus nutans syndrome (SNS)

#### **II. Acquired nystagmus**

- Nystagmus due to disorders of visual fixation
- Nystagmus caused by vestibular imbalance
- Nystagmus due to disorders of gaze holding.

### **A. PHYSIOLOGICAL NYSTAGMUS**

Physiological nystagmus occurs normally in a variety of situations including optokinetic nystagmus (OKN), end gaze nystagmus (EGN) and physiological vestibular nystagmus (vestibulo-ocular reflex, i.e. VOR)

**1. Optokinetic nystagmus.** It is a physiological jerk nystagmus induced by presenting to gaze the objects moving serially in one direction, such as strips of a spinning optokinetic drum. The eyes will follow a fixed strip momentarily and then jerk back to reposition centrally to fix up a new strip. Similar condition occurs while looking at outside things from a moving train.

**2. End-gaze nystagmus.** It is a fine jerk horizontal nystagmus seen in normal persons on extreme right or left gaze.

**3. Physiological vestibular nystagmus** (vestibulo-ocular reflex, i.e. VOR). It is a jerk nystagmus which can be elicited by stimulating the tympanic membrane with hot or cold water. It forms the basis of caloric test. If cold water is poured into right ear the patient develops left jerk nystagmus (rapid phase towards left), while the reverse happens with warm water, i.e. patient develops right jerk nystagmus. It can be remembered by the mnemonic 'COWS' (Cold-Opposite, Warm-Same).

### **B. PATHOLOGICAL NYSTAGMUS**

#### **I. Early onset (childhood) Nystagmus**

Three most common forms of nystagmus seen in childhood begin in infancy and therefore, are not congenital as believed earlier. These include:

- Infantile nystagmus syndrome,
- Fusion maldevelopment nystagmus syndrome, and
- Spasmus nutans syndrome.

**1. Infantile nystagmus syndrome** is the new name given in the CEMAS system for the old congenital, motor and sensory nystagmus.

**Etiology.** It may be (I) *Idiopathic* or (II) *Associated with sensory deprivation* due to any of the following causes:

- *Ocular albinism,*
- *Aniridia,*
- *Leber's congenital amaurosis,* and
- *Other causes* which include, bilateral congenital cataract, achromatopsia, congenital stationary night blindness, bilateral optic nerve hypoplasia, bilateral congenital toxoplasmosis and bilateral macular hypoplasia.

**Characteristic features.** It is characterized by erratic waveform with or without roving eye movements associated with reduced visual acuity due to above mentioned conditions.

**CEMAS criteria for INS** include:

- Infantile onset,
- Ocular motor recordings show accelerating slow phases (diagnostic)
- Wave forms may change in early infancy,
- Head posture usually evident by 4 years of age.
- Vision prognosis dependent on integrity of sensory system.

**Common associated findings:**

- Progression from pendular to jerk,
- Family history often positive,
- Null and neutral zones present, and
- May decrease with induced convergence, increased fusion, extraocular muscle surgery, contact lenses, and sedation.

**2. Fusion maldevelopment nystagmus syndrome (FMNS)** is the new name for the old term- 'latent/latent manifest nystagmus' as described in CEMAS.

**Characteristic features are:**

- Infantile onset
- Associated strabismus, may be congenital esotropia and dissociated vertical deviation (DVD).
- Intensity decrease with age
- Nystagmus is latent is not present, when both eyes are open but appears when one eye is covered. It becomes manifest under monocular viewing conditions, i.e. in the presence of decreased vision in one eye as in anisometropic amblyopia, strabismic amblyopia, etc.
- It is usually jerk nystagmus with rapid phase towards the uncovered eye. It may also be low-amplitude pendular nystagmus (dual-jerk waveform) with jerk in direction of fixing eye.

**Note.** While testing visual acuity in such patients, one eye should be fogged (by adding plus lenses in front)



rather than occluding to minimize induction of latent nystagmus.

**3. Spasmus Nutans syndrome (SNS)** is the 3rd most common nystagmus seen in infancy.

**Characteristic features include:**

- Infantile onset
- Abnormal head posture and head oscillation which improve (disappears) during childhood. Usually spontaneously remits clinically in 2 to 8 years.
- Normal MRI/CT scan of visual pathways.
- High-frequency (>10 Hz), asymmetric, variable conjugacy, pendular oscillations.

## II. Acquired nystagmus

Late onset or acquired nystagmus is usually characterized by oscillopsia, and is often associated with other neurological abnormalities. Acquired nystagmus includes:

### i. Nystagmus due to disorders of visual fixation.

Also called as 'Vision loss nystagmus' may occur due to diseases affecting any part of the visual system from retina to visual cortex or conditions interrupting visual projection to the pons and cerebellum as below:

- Nystagmus in diseases of the retina.
- Nystagmus in diseases of the optic nerve.
- Nystagmus in diseases affecting the optic chiasma.
- Nystagmus in diseases affecting the postchiasmal visual system.

### ii. Vestibular nystagmus

#### a. Peripheral vestibular nystagmus

**Features.** Conjugate horizontal jerk nystagmus with fast phase away from the side of lesion. Nystagmus improves with fixation and worsens with gaze towards fast phase.

**Causes.** It is associated with destructive lesions of vestibular system such as labyrinthitis and vestibular neuritis.

#### b. Central vestibular nystagmus

It may be of the following types:

**1. Up beat nystagmus.** In primary position of gaze, the fast component is upward. It is usually seen in lesions of central tegmentum of brainstem.

**2. Down beat nystagmus.** In primary position of gaze the fast component is downward. It is usually associated with posterior fossa diseases and is typical of compression at the level of foramen magnum. It is a common feature of cerebellar lesions and Arnold Chiari syndrome.

**Causes.** It is usually associated with brainstem and cerebellar diseases.

### 3. See-saw nystagmus

**Features.** In it, one eye rises up and intorts, while other shifts down and extorts.

**Causes.** It is usually associated with upper brainstem lesions.

### 4. Periodic alternating nystagmus

**Features.** Conjugate, horizontal jerk nystagmus present in the primary gaze characterized by spontaneous direction changes every 60–90 seconds, with 10–15 second gap or null period, i.e. period of no nystagmus.

**Causes.** It occurs usually due to vestibulo-cerebellar diseases such as demyelination and Arnold Chiari malformation. It may also be associated with cervicomedullary junction lesions.

### iii. Nystagmus due to disorders of gaze holding

#### 1. Gaze-evoked nystagmus

**Features.** Slow, conjugate horizontal jerk nystagmus in the direction of gaze (no nystagmus in primary gaze). It occurs at smaller angles than physiological end-gaze nystagmus, i.e. around 45° movement.

**Causes.** It may occur due to:

- **Neurological lesions** of brainstem and posterior fossa, and
- **CNS depression** caused by certain drugs such as alcohol, anticonvulsants, and barbiturates.

#### 2. Dissociated or disconjugate nystagmus (Ataxic nystagmus)

**Features.** It is special type of pathologic gaze evoked nystagmus which is unilateral or asymmetric nystagmus usually of the abducting and occasionally of the adducting eye.

**Causes.** It commonly occurs with internuclear ophthalmoplegia (INO)

### 3. Convergence retraction syndrome

**Features.** It is a jerk nystagmus with bilateral fast component towards the medial side. It is associated with retraction of the globe in convergence.

**Causes.** Classically associated with pinealoma, but may also occur with other neoplasms, stroke, trauma or multiple sclerosis.

### 4. Brun's nystagmus.

Tumours in the cerebello-pontine angle, produce a low-frequency, large amplitude nystagmus, when the patient looks towards the side of the lesion, and



a high-frequency, small-amplitude nystagmus, when the patient looks toward the side opposite to the lesion. The nystagmus that occurs on gaze towards the side of the lesion is gaze-evoked nystagmus caused by defective gaze holding, whereas the nystagmus that occurs during gaze towards the side opposite the lesion is caused by vestibular imbalance. This is called Brun's nystagmus.

#### 5. Centripetal and rebound nystagmus.

If a patient with gaze-evoked nystagmus attempts to look eccentrically for a sustained period, the nystagmus begins to decrease in amplitude and may even reverse the direction, this is called *centripetal nystagmus*. If the eyes are then returned to the central position, a short-lived nystagmus with slow drifts in the direction of the prior eccentric gaze occurs. This is called rebound nystagmus. Both centripetal and rebound nystagmus reflect an attempt by brainstem or cerebellar mechanisms to correct for the drift of gaze-evoked nystagmus.

**Causes of rebound nystagmus** include:

- Cerebellar diseases,
- Lateral medullary infarction, and
- Tumours confined to the flocculus.

#### iv. Acquired pendular nystagmus

- Usually disconjugate with horizontal, vertical and torsional components.
- May be associated with involuntary, repetitive movements of palate, pharynx and face (oculopalatal myoclonus).

#### ■ NYSTAGMUS LIKE MOVEMENTS

These are ocular movements which mimic nystagmus. These include:

**1. Ocular flutter** occurs due to interruption of cerebellar connection to brainstem. It is characterized by horizontal oscillation and inability to fixate after change of gaze.

**2. Opsoclonus** refers to combined horizontal, vertical and/or torsional oscillations associated with myoclonic movement of face, arms and legs. It is seen in patients with encephalitis.

**3. Superior oblique myokymia** is characterized by monocular, rapid, intermittent, torsional and vertical movements (which are best seen on slit-lamp examination).

**4. Ocular bobbing** refers to rapid downward deviation of the eyes with slow updrift. It occurs due to pontine dysfunctions.



## Disorders of Eyelids

### APPLIED ANATOMY

- Gross anatomy
- Structure
- Glands of eyelids
- Blood supply
- Nerve supply

### CONGENITAL ANOMALIES

#### OEDEMA OF EYELIDS

#### INFLAMMATORY DISORDERS OF EYELIDS

- Blepharitis
- External hordeolum (stye)
- Chalazion
- Internal hordeolum
- Molluscum contagiosum

#### EYELASH DISORDERS

- Trichiasis

- Distichiasis
- Madarosis

#### ANOMALIES IN THE POSITION OF LID MARGINS

- Entropion
- Ectropion
- Symblepharon
- Ankyloblepharon
- Blepharophimosis
- Lagophthalmos
- Blepharospasm
- Ptosis
- Lid retraction

#### TUMOURS OF EYELIDS

- Benign tumours
- Premalignant tumours
- Malignant tumours

### APPLIED ANATOMY

#### GROSS ANATOMY

The eyelids are mobile tissue curtains placed in front of the eyeballs (Fig. 15.1). These act as shutters protecting the eyes from injuries and excessive light. These also perform an important function of spreading the tear film over the cornea and conjunctiva and also help in drainage of tears by lacrimal pump system.

**Parts of eyelid.** Each eyelid is divided by a horizontal furrow (sulcus) into an orbital and tarsal part.

**Position of lids.** When the eye is open, the upper lid covers about one-sixth of the cornea and the lower lid just touches the limbus.

**Canthi.** The two lids meet each other at medial and lateral angles (or inner and outer canthi). In Caucasians with the lids open, the lateral canthus is about 2 mm higher than the medial canthus.

**Palpebral aperture.** It is the elliptical space between the upper and the lower lid. When the eyes are open it measures about 10–11 mm vertically in the centre and about 28–30 mm horizontally.

**Lid margin.** It is about 2 mm broad and is divided into two parts by the punctum. The medial,

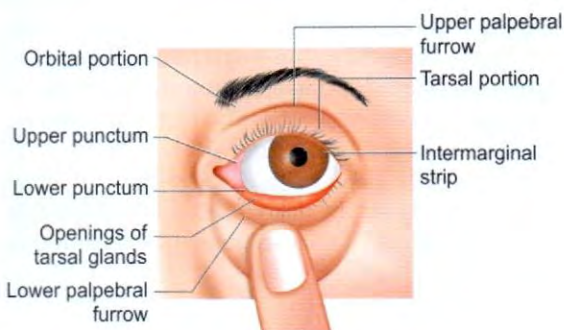


Fig. 15.1 Gross anatomy of the eyelid

*lacrimal portion* is rounded and devoid of lashes or glands.

The lateral, *ciliary portion* consists of a rounded anterior border, a sharp posterior border (placed against the globe) and an intermarginal strip (between the two borders). The *grey line* (which marks junction of skin and conjunctiva) divides the intermarginal strip into an anterior strip bearing 2–3 rows of lashes and a posterior strip on which openings of meibomian glands are arranged in a row. The splitting of the eyelids when required in operations is done at the level of grey line.



## ■ STRUCTURE

Each eyelid consists (from anterior to posterior) of the following layers (Fig. 15.2):

**1. Skin.** It is elastic, having a fine texture and is the thinnest in the body.

**2. Subcutaneous areolar tissue.** It is a very loose connective tissue containing no fat. It is thus readily distended by oedema or blood.

**3. Layer of striated muscle.** It consists of:

**Orbicularis muscle** which forms an oval sheet across the eyelids. It comprises three portions:

- **Orbital part** encircles the orbital margin.
- **Preseptal part** lies anterior to septum orbitale and is loosely attached to it. At the junction of preseptal and pretarsal parts, the palpebral furrow is formed.
- **Pretarsal part** is adhered firmly to the tarsus. A portion of the pretarsal fibres attaches to the anterior lacrimal crest and posterior lacrimal crest (called the *Horner's muscle*) plays a vital role in tear drainage. A small bundle of pretarsal muscle fibres that extends to the eyelid margin is called *muscle of Rion*.

**Orbicularis muscle** closes the eyelids and is supplied by zygomatic branch of the facial nerve. Therefore, in paralysis of facial nerve there occurs lagophthalmos which may be complicated by exposure keratitis.

**Levator palpebrae superioris muscle (LPS)** is present in upper eyelid only. It arises from the apex of the orbit and is inserted by three parts on the skin of lid, anterior surface of the tarsal plate and conjunctiva of superior fornix. It raises the upper lid. It is supplied by a branch of oculomotor nerve.

**4. Submuscular areolar tissue.** It is a layer of loose connective tissue. The nerves and vessels lie in this layer. Therefore, to anaesthetise lids, injection is given in this plane.

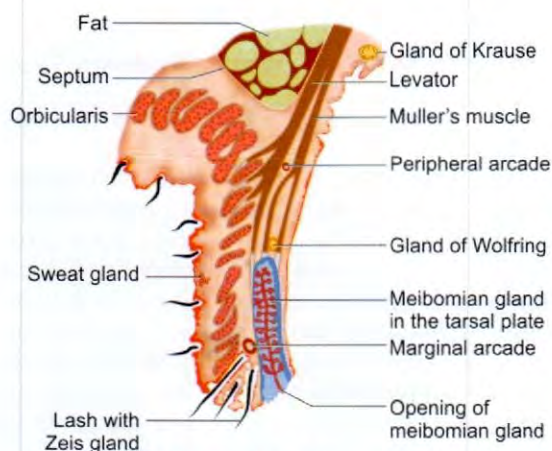


Fig. 15.2 Structure of the upper eyelid

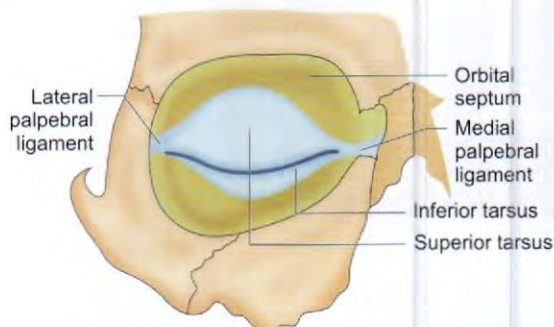


Fig. 15.3 Tarsal plates and septum orbitale

**5. Fibrous layer.** It is the framework of the lids and consists of two parts: the central tarsal plate and the peripheral septum orbitale (Fig. 15.3).

**i. Tarsal plate.** There are two plates of dense connective tissue, one for each lid, which give shape and firmness to the lids. The upper and lower tarsal plates join with each other at medial and lateral canthi; and are attached to the orbital margins through medial and lateral palpebral ligaments. In the substance of the tarsal plates lie meibomian glands in parallel rows.

**ii. Septum orbitale (palpebral fascia).** It is a thin membrane of connective tissue attached centrally to the tarsal plates and peripherally to periosteum of the orbital margin. It is perforated by nerves, vessels and levator palpebrae superioris (LPS) muscle, which enter the lids from the orbit.

**6. Layer of non-striated muscle fibres.** It consists of the palpebral muscle of Muller which lies deep to the septum orbitale in both the lids. In the upper lid, it arises from the fibres of LPS muscle and in the lower lid from prolongation of the inferior rectus muscle; and is inserted on the peripheral margins of the tarsal plate. It is supplied by sympathetic fibres and its paralysis leads to *Horner's syndrome*.

**7. Conjunctiva.** The part which lines the lids is called *palpebral conjunctiva*. It consists of three parts: marginal, tarsal and orbital. (For structures of conjunctiva See page 60).

## ■ GLANDS OF EYELIDS (FIG. 15.4)

**1. Meibomian glands.** These are also known as *tarsal glands* and are present in the stroma of tarsal plate arranged vertically. They are about 30–40 in the upper lid and about 20–30 in the lower lid. They are modified sebaceous glands. Their ducts open at the lid margin. Their secretion constitutes the oily layer of tear film.

**2. Glands of Zeis.** These are also sebaceous glands which open into the follicles of eyelashes.



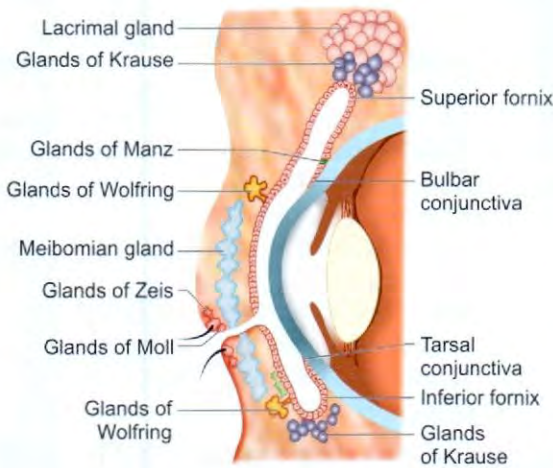


Fig. 15.4 Glands of eyelids

**3. Glands of Moll.** These are modified sweat glands situated near the hair follicle. They open into the hair follicles or into the ducts of Zeis glands. They do not open directly onto the skin surface as elsewhere.

**4. Accessory lacrimal glands of Wolfring.** These are present near the upper border of the tarsal plate.

#### BLOOD SUPPLY

**Arteries** of the lids (medial and lateral palpebral) form *marginal arterial arcades* which lie in the submuscular plane in front of the tarsal plate, 2 mm away from the lid margin, in the upper lid and about 4 mm away in the lower lid. In the upper lid, another arcade (*superior arterial arcade*) is formed which lies near the upper border of the tarsal plate. Branches go forward and backward from these arches to supply various structures.

**Veins.** These are arranged in two plexuses: a post-tarsal which drains into ophthalmic veins and a pre-tarsal opening into subcutaneous veins.

**Lymphatics.** These are also arranged in two sets: the pre-tarsal and the post-tarsal. Those from lateral half of the lids drain into preauricular lymph nodes and those from the medial half of the eyelids drain into submandibular lymph nodes.

#### NERVE SUPPLY

**Motor nerves** are facial (which supplies orbicularis muscle), oculomotor (which supplies LPS muscle) and sympathetic fibres (which supply the Muller's muscle).

**Sensory nerve** supply is derived from branches of the trigeminal nerve such as lacrimal, supraorbital

and supratrochlear nerves for upper lid; and the infraorbital nerve with infratrochlear branch for lower lid.

### CONGENITAL ANOMALIES

**1. Congenital ptosis.** It is a common congenital anomaly. It is described in detail in the section of ptosis on page 395.

**2. Congenital coloboma.** It is a rare condition characterised by a full thickness triangular gap in the tissues of the lids (Fig. 15.5). The anomaly usually occurs near the nasal side and involves the upper lid more frequently than the lower lid. *Treatment* consists of plastic repair of the defect.

**3. Epicanthus.** It is a semicircular fold of skin which covers the medial canthus. It is a bilateral condition and may disappear with the development of nose. It is a normal facial feature in Mongolian races. It is the most common congenital anomaly of the lids. *Treatment* consists of plastic repair of the deformity.

**4. Distichiasis.** (See page 386)

**5. Cryptophthalmos.** It is a very rare anomaly in which lids fail to develop and the skin passes continuously from the eyebrow to the cheek hiding the eyeball (Fig. 15.6).

**6. Microblepharon.** In this condition, eyelids are abnormally small. It is usually associated with microphthalmos or anophthalmos. Occasionally, the lids may be very small or virtually absent and the condition is called *ablepharon*.

**7. Epiblepharon** refers to a congenital anomaly in which a horizontal fold of tissue rides above the lower eyelid margin. It usually disappears



Fig. 15.5 Congenital coloboma upper eyelid





**Fig. 15.6** *Cryptophthalmos*

with the growth of face and needs no surgical correction.

**8. Euryblepharon** refers to unilateral or bilateral horizontal widening of palpebral fissure. It is usually associated with lateral canthal malposition and lateral ectropion. Congenital euryblepharon usually involves the lateral portion of lower eyelids.

**9. Congenital ankyloblepharon** is a rare anomaly in which single or multiple strands of connective tissue join the upper and lower lid margins anywhere but never at medial and lateral canthi. Such a congenital ankyloblepharon is also called ankyloblepharon filiforme adnatum (AFA). It should be surgically divided to prevent amblyopia.

**10. Congenital entropion.** See page 387

**11. Congenital ectropion.** See page 389

## OEDEMA OF EYELIDS

Owing to the looseness of the tissues, oedema of the lids is of common occurrence. It may be classified as inflammatory, solid and passive oedema.

**I. Inflammatory oedema.** It is seen in the following conditions.

1. *Inflammations of the lid itself*, which include dermatitis, sty, hordeolum internum, insect bites, cellulitis and lid abscess.
2. *Inflammations of the conjunctiva*, such as acute purulent, membranous and pseudomembranous conjunctivitis.
3. *Inflammations of the lacrimal sac*, i.e. acute dacryocystitis and lacrimal abscess.
4. *Inflammations of the lacrimal gland*, i.e. acute dacryoadenitis.
5. *Inflammations of the eyeball*, such as acute iridocyclitis, endophthalmitis and panophthalmitis.

6. *Inflammations of the orbit*, which include orbital cellulitis, orbital abscess and pseudotumour.
7. *Inflammations of the paranasal sinuses*, e.g. maxillary sinusitis.

**II. Solid oedema of the lids.** It is chronic thickening of the lids, which usually follows recurrent attacks of erysipelas. It resembles inflammatory oedema of the lids but is harder in consistency.

**III. Passive oedema of the lids.** It may occur due to local or general causes.

1. *Local causes* are: cavernous sinus thrombosis, head injury and angioneurotic oedema.
2. *General causes* are congestive heart failure, renal failure, hypoproteinaemia and severe anaemia.

## INFLAMMATORY DISORDERS OF EYELIDS

### ■ BLEPHARITIS

Blepharitis is a subacute or chronic inflammation of the lid margins. It is an extremely common disease which can be divided into following clinical types:

- Bacterial blepharitis,
- Seborrhoeic or squamous blepharitis,
- Mixed staphylococcal with seborrhoeic blepharitis,
- Posterior blepharitis or meibomitis, and
- Parasitic blepharitis.

### Bacterial Blepharitis

Bacterial blepharitis, also known as chronic anterior blepharitis, or staphylococcal blepharitis or ulcerative blepharitis, is a chronic infection of the anterior part of the lid margin. It is a common cause of ocular discomfort and irritation. The disorder usually starts in childhood and may continue throughout life.

### Etiology

**Causative organisms**, most commonly involved are coagulase positive *Staphylococci*. Rarely, *Streptococci*, *Propionibacterium acnes*, and *Moraxella* may be involved.

**Predisposing factors**, usually none, may rarely include chronic conjunctivitis and dacryocystitis.

### Clinical features

**Symptoms** include chronic irritation, itching, mild lacrimation, gluing of cilia, and mild photophobia. The symptoms are characteristically worse in the morning. Remissions and exacerbations in symptoms are quite common.

**Signs** (Fig. 15.7) are as below:

- **Yellow crusts** are seen at the root of cilia which glue them together.





**Fig. 15.7 Bacterial blepharitis**

- *Small ulcers*, which bleed easily, are seen on removing the crusts.
- *Red, thickened lid margins* are seen with dilated blood vessels (rosettes).
- *Mild papillary conjunctivitis* and conjunctival hyperemia are common associations.

**Complications and sequelae** of long standing bacterial blepharitis include:

- *Lash abnormalities* such as madarosis (sparseness or absence of cilia), trichiasis (misdirected cilia), and poliosis (graying of lashes).
- *Tylosis*, i.e. thickening and scarring of lid margin.
- *Eversion of punctum* leading to epiphora.
- *Eczema of skin and ectropion* may develop due to prolonged watering.
- *Recurrent styes* (external hordeola) are a common complication.
- *Marginal keratitis*, and occasionally phlyctenulosis may develop.
- *Tear film instability*, and dry eye may result.
- *Secondary inflammatory and mechanical changes in the conjunctiva and cornea* are common because of intimate relationship between the lid margins and ocular surface.

### Treatment

Bacterial blepharitis should be treated promptly, as below, to avoid complications and sequelae:

**1. Lid hygiene** is essential at least twice daily and should include:

- *Warm compresses* for 5–10 minutes to soften the crusts,
- *Crust removal and lid margin cleaning* with the help of cotton buds dipped in the dilute baby shampoo or solution of 3% sodium bicarbonate.
- *Avoid rubbing of the eyes* or fingering of the lids.

**2. Antibiotics** should be used as below:

- *Eye ointment* should be applied at the lid margin, immediately after removal of the crusts.

- *Antibiotic eye drops* should be used 3–4 times a day.
- *Oral antibiotics* such as erythromycin or doxycycline may be useful in unresponsive patients and those complicated by external hordeola and abscess of lash follicle.

**3. Topical steroids (low potency)** such as fluorometholone may be required in patients with papillary conjunctivitis, marginal keratitis and phlyctenulosis.

**4. Ocular lubricants**, i.e. artificial tear drops, are required for associated tear film instability and dry eye.

### Seborrhoeic or Squamous Blepharitis

Seborrhoeic blepharitis is primarily anterior blepharitis with some spill over posteriorly. It is of common occurrence.

**Etiology.** It is usually associated with seborrhoea of scalp (dandruff). Some constitutional and metabolic factors play a part in its etiology. In it, glands of Zeis secrete abnormal excessive neutral lipids which are split by *Corynebacterium acne* into irritating free fatty acids.

**Symptoms.** Patients usually complain of deposition of whitish material (soft scales) at the lid margin associated with mild discomfort, irritation, occasional watering and a history of falling of eyelashes.

**Signs** include:

- *Accumulation of white dandruff-like scales* is seen on the lid margin, among the lashes (Fig. 15.8). On removing these scales underlying surface is found to be hyperaemic and greasy (no ulcers).
- *The lashes fall out easily* but are usually replaced quickly without distortion.
- *Lid margin* is thickened and the sharp posterior border tends to be rounded leading to epiphora, in long standing cases.
- *Signs of bacterial blepharitis*, as described above, may be superadded in patients with mixed seborrhoeic and bacterial blepharitis.



**Fig. 15.8 Seborrhoeic blepharitis**



**Complications** are similar to bacterial blepharitis with comparatively lesser frequency (See page 381).

**Treatment** includes:

- **General measures** include improvement of health and balanced diet.
- Associated *seborrhoea of the scalp* should be adequately treated.
- **Local measures** include removal of scales from the lid margin with the help of lukewarm solution of 3% soda bicarb or baby shampoo and frequent application of combined antibiotic and steroid eye ointment at the lid margin.
- **Antibiotics**, as described above in bacterial blepharitis, may be required in patients with mixed seborrhoeic and bacterial blepharitis.

### Posterior Blepharitis (Meibomitis)

Meibomitis, i.e. inflammation of Meibomian glands occurs in chronic and acute forms.

#### 1. Chronic meibomitis

Chronic meibomitis is a commonly occurring meibomian gland dysfunction, seen more commonly in middle-aged persons, especially those with acne rosacea and/or seborrhoeic dermatitis. Bacterial lipases are being blamed to play main role in the pathogenesis of chronic meibomitis.

#### Clinical features

**Symptoms** include chronic irritation, burning, itching, grittiness, mild lacrimation with remissions and exacerbations intermittently. Symptoms are characteristically worse in the morning.

**Signs** include (Fig. 15.9):

- **White frothy (foam like) secretions** are frequently seen on the eyelid margins and canthi (meibomian seborrhoea).
- **Opening of meibomian glands** become prominent with thick secretions which can be expressed out by pressure on the lids giving toothpaste appearance.

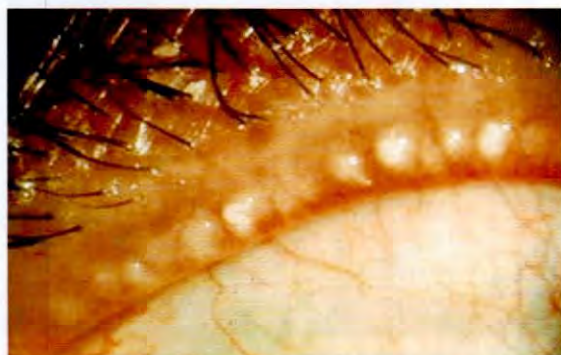


Fig. 15.9 Chronic meibomitis

Meibomian gland orifices may also show capping with oil globules, pouting, recession, or plugging.

- **Vertical yellowish streaks shining** through conjunctiva can be seen on eversion of the lids. These represent the meibomian ducts filled with thick secretion.
- **Hyperaemia and telangiectasia** of posterior lid margin around the orifices of meibomian glands can be seen frequently.
- **Oily and foamy tear film** with accumulation of froth on the lid margins or inner canthus.
- **Secondary changes** in the form of papillary conjunctivitis, and inferior corneal punctate epithelial erosions may be seen.

#### 2. Acute meibomitis

Acute meibomitis occurs due to staphylococcal infection. It is characterized by painful swelling around the involved gland. Pressure on it results in expression of pus bead followed by serosanguinous discharge.

#### Treatment of meibomitis

**1. Lid hygiene** is essential at least once a day and should include:

- **Warm compresses** for several minutes.
- **Expression** of accumulated secretions by repeated vertical massage of lids in the form of milking.

**2. Topical antibiotics** in the form of eye ointment should be rubbed at the lid margin immediately after massage, and

- Eye drops may be used 3–4 times a day.

**3. Systemic tetracyclines**, e.g. doxycycline 100 mg b.d. for 1 week and then o.d. for 6–12 weeks, remain the mainstay of treatment of posterior blepharitis because of their ability to block staphylococcal lipase production. Erythromycin may be used where tetracyclines are contraindicated.

**4. Ocular lubricants**, i.e. artificial tear drops are required for associated tear film instability and dry eye disease.

**5. Topical steroids** (weak) such as fluorometholone may be required in patients with papillary conjunctivitis.

### Parasitic Blepharitis (Lash Infestation)

#### Etiology

Blepharitis associated with infestation of lashes by lice is not uncommon in persons living in poor hygienic conditions. The lice infestations include the following:

- **Phthiriasis palpebrarum** refers to the infestation by *phthirus pubis* (crab louse). It is most commonly seen in adults in whom it is usually acquired as a sexually transmitted infection.



- *Pediculosis* refers to the infestation by *pediculus humanus corporis* or *capitis* (head louse). If heavily infested the lice may spread to involve lashes.
- *Demodex blepharitis* is caused by two distinct species: *Demodex folliculorum* which causes anterior blepharitis and *demodex brevis* which causes posterior blepharitis.

### Clinical features

Infestation of lashes with lice causes chronic blepharitis and chronic follicular conjunctivitis.

**Symptoms** include chronic irritation, itching, burning, and mild lacrimation.

**Signs** are as below (Fig. 15.10):

- **Lid margins** are red and inflamed.
- **Lice** anchoring the lashes with their claws may be seen on slit-lamp examination.
- **Nits (eggs)** may be seen as opalescent pearls adherent to the base of cilia.
- **Conjunctival congestion** and follicles may be seen in long standing cases.

### Treatment

- **Mechanical removal** of the lice and nits with forceps.
- **Application of antibiotic ointment** and yellow mercuric oxide 1% to the lid margins and lashes.
- **Delousing** of the patient, family members, clothing and bedding is important to prevent recurrences.

## EXTERNAL HORDEOLUM (STYE)

It is an acute suppurative inflammation of lash follicle and its associated glands of Zeis or Moll.

### Etiology

**1. Predisposing factors** are as below:

- **Age.** It is more common in children and young adults (though no age is bar) and in patients with eye strain due to muscle imbalance or refractive errors.
- **Habitual rubbing of the eyes** or fingering of the lids and nose, chronic blepharitis and diabetes mellitus are usually associated with recurrent styes.

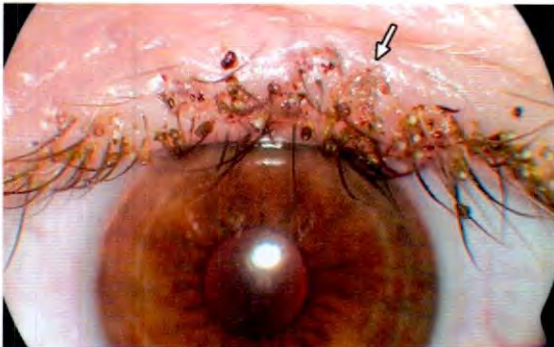


Fig. 15.10 Phthiriasis palpebrarum

- **Metabolic factors,** chronic debility, excessive intake of carbohydrates and alcohol also act as predisposing factors.

**2. Causative organism** commonly involved is *Staphylococcus aureus*.

### Clinical features

**Symptoms** include acute pain associated with swelling of lid, mild watering and photophobia.

**Signs** are as follows:

- **Stage of cellulitis** is characterised by localised, firm, red, tender swelling at the lid margin associated with marked oedema (Fig. 15.11). Usually, there is one sty, but occasionally, these may be multiple.
- **Stage of abscess formation** is characterised by a visible pus point on the lid margin in relation to the affected cilia.

### Treatment

- **Hot compresses** 2–3 times a day are very useful especially in cellulitis stage.
- **Evacuation of the pus** should be done by epilating the involved cilia, when the pus point is formed.
- **Surgical incision** is required rarely for a large abscess.
- **Antibiotic eye drops** (3–4 times a day) and eye ointment (at bed time) should be applied to control the infection.
- **Systemic anti-inflammatory and analgesics** relieve pain and reduce oedema.
- **Systemic antibiotics** should be used for early control of infection.
- **In recurrent styes,** try to find out and treat the associated predisposing condition.

## CHALAZION

Chalazion, also called a *tarsal* or *meibomian cyst*, is a chronic non-infective (non-suppurative) lipogranulomatous inflammation of the meibomian gland. This is the commonest of all lid lumps.



Fig. 15.11 Hordeolum externum (stye) upper eyelid



### Etiology

1. **Predisposing factors** are similar to hordeolum externum.

2. **Pathogenesis.** Usually, first there occurs mild grade infection of the meibomian gland by organisms of very low virulence. As a result, there occurs proliferation of the epithelium and infiltration of the walls of the ducts, which are blocked. Consequently, there occurs retention of secretions (sebum) in the gland, causing its enlargement. The pent-up and extravasated secretions (fatty in nature) act like an irritant and excite non-infective lipogranulomatous inflammation of the blocked meibomian glands and surrounding tissue.

### Clinical features

**Symptoms** include:

- **Painless swelling** in the eyelid, gradually increasing in size is the main presenting symptom.
- **Mild heaviness** in the lid may be felt with moderately large chalazion.
- **Blurred vision** may occur occasionally due to induced astigmatism by a very large chalazion pressing on the cornea.
- **Watering (epiphora)** may occur sometimes due to eversion of lower punctum caused by a large chalazion of the lower eyelid.

**Signs** include:

- **Nodule** is noted slightly away from the lid margin (Fig. 15.12) which is firm to hard and non-tender on palpation. Upper lid is involved more commonly than the lower lid probably because of the fact that upper lid contains more meibomian glands than the lower lid. Frequently multiple chalazia may be seen.
- **Reddish purple area**, where the chalazion usually points, is seen on the palpebral conjunctiva after eversion of the lid.



Fig. 15.12 Chalazion upper eyelid

- **Projection** of the main bulk of the swelling on the skin side may be seen rarely instead of conjunctival side.
- **Marginal chalazion**, occurring occasionally, may present as small reddish grey nodule on the lid margin.

### Clinical course and complications

- **Complete spontaneous resolution** may occur rarely.
- **Slow increase in size** is often seen and eventually it may become very large.
- **Fungating mass of granulation tissue** may be formed occasionally when the lesion bursts on the conjunctival side.
- **Secondary infection** may lead to formation of hordeolum internum.
- **Calcification** may occur, though very rarely.
- **Malignant change** into meibomian gland adenocarcinoma (sebaceous cell carcinoma) may be seen occasionally in elderly people.

### Treatment

1. **Conservative treatment.** In a small, soft and recent chalazion, self-resolution may be helped by conservative treatment in the form of hot fomentation, topical antibiotic eye drops and oral anti-inflammatory drugs.

2. **Intralesional injection of long-acting steroid** (triamcinolone) is reported to cause resolution in about 50% cases, especially in small and soft chalazia of recent onset, located near the puncta, where incision and curettage may cause damage.

3. **Incision and curettage** (Fig. 15.13) is the conventional and effective treatment for chalazion.

- **Surface anaesthesia** is obtained by instillation of xylocaine drops in the eye and the lid in the region of the chalazion is infiltrated with 2% xylocaine solution.

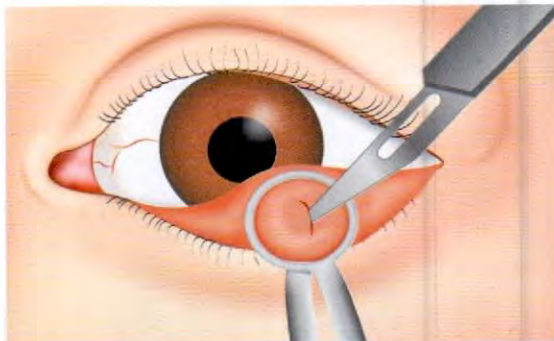


Fig. 15.13 Incision and curettage of chalazion from the conjunctival side



- *Incision is made* with a sharp blade, which should be vertical on the conjunctival side (to avoid injury to other meibomian ducts) and horizontal on skin side (to have an invisible scar).
- *Contents are curetted out* with the help of a chalazion scoop.
- Carbolic acid cautery followed by neutralization with methylated spirit should be preformed in the cavity to avoid recurrence.
- Patching of eye should be done, after instilling antibiotic eye ointment, for about 6 to 12 hours.
- Postoperative treatment, to decrease discomfort and prevent infection, should be given in the form of hot fomentation, antibiotic eye drops, oral anti-inflammatory, analgesics and oral antibiotics for 4–5 days.

**4. Diathermy.** A marginal chalazion is better treated by diathermy.

**5. Oral tetracycline** should be given as prophylaxis in recurrent chalazia, especially if associated with acne rosacea or seborrhoeic dermatitis.

**Note.** In recurrent chalazion, malignancy should be ruled out.

### ■ INTERNAL HORDEOLUM

It is a suppurative inflammation of the meibomian gland associated with blockage of the duct.

#### Etiology

**Predisposing factors** are similar to hordeolum externum (See page 383).

**Causative mechanism.** Hordeolum internum may occur as:

- *Primary Staphylococcal infection* of the meibomian gland, or
- *Secondary infection in a chalazion* (infected chalazion).

#### Clinical features

**Symptoms** include acute pain associated with swelling of the lid, mild watering and photophobia. Thus, the symptoms are similar to hordeolum externum, except that pain is more intense, due to the swelling being embedded deeply in the dense fibrous tissue.

**Signs** include a localized, firm, red, tender swelling of the lid associated with marked oedema. On examination, hordeolum internum can be differentiated from hordeolum externum by the fact that in it, the point of maximum tenderness and swelling is away from the lid margin and that pus usually points on the tarsal conjunctiva (seen as yellowish area on everting the lid) and not on the root of cilia (Fig. 15.14). Sometimes, pus point may

be seen at the opening of involved meibomian gland or rarely on the skin.

#### Treatment

It is similar to hordeolum externum (See page 383), except that, when pus is formed, it should be drained by a vertical incision from the tarsal conjunctiva.

### ■ MOLLUSCUM CONTAGIOSUM

**Etiology.** It is a viral infection of the lids, commonly affecting children. It is caused by a large poxvirus.

**Clinical features.** Its typical lesions are multiple, pale, waxy, umbilicated swellings scattered over the skin near the lid margin (Fig. 15.15).

**Complications** include chronic follicular conjunctivitis and superficial keratitis.

**Treatment.** The skin lesions should be incised and the interior cauterised with tincture of iodine or pure carbolic acid.

## EYELASH DISORDERS

### ■ TRICHIASIS

It refers to inward misdirection of cilia (which rub against the eyeball) with normal position of the lid margin (Fig. 15.16).

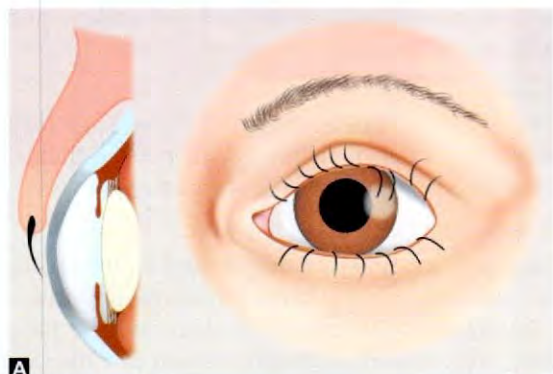


**Fig. 15.14** Hordeolum internum lower eyelid



**Fig. 15.15** Molluscum contagiosum of the lids





**Fig. 15.16** Trichiasis; A, Diagrammatic depiction; B, Clinical photograph

**Pseudotrachiasis.** The inward turning of lashes along with the lid margin (seen in entropion) is called pseudotrachiasis.

### **Etiology**

Common causes of trichiasis are: cicatrizing trachoma, ulcerative blepharitis, healed membranous conjunctivitis, hordeolum externum, mechanical injuries, burns, and operative scar on the lid margin.

### **Clinical features**

**Symptoms.** These include foreign body sensation and photophobia. Patient may feel troublesome irritation, pain and lacrimation.

**Signs.** Examination reveals:

- **Misdirected cilia** one or more touching the cornea.
- **Reflex blepharospasm** and photophobia occur when cornea is abraded.
- **Conjunctiva** may be congested.
- **Signs of causative disease** viz. trachoma, blepharitis, etc. may be present.

**Complications.** These include recurrent corneal abrasions, superficial corneal opacities, corneal vascularisation (Fig. 15.16B) and non-healing corneal ulcer.

### **Treatment**

A few misdirected cilia may be treated by any of the following methods:

**1. Epilation** (mechanical removal with forceps). It is a temporary measure, as recurrence occurs within 3–4 weeks.

**2. Electrolysis.** It is a method of destroying the lash follicle by electric current. In this technique, infiltration anaesthesia is given to the lid and a current of 2 mA is passed for 10 seconds through a fine needle inserted into the lash root. The loosened cilia with destroyed follicles are then removed with epilation forceps.

**3. Cryoepilation.** It is also an effective method of treating trichiasis. After infiltration anaesthesia, the cryoprobe ( $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) is applied for 20–25 seconds to the external lid margin by double freeze-thaw technique. Its main disadvantage is depigmentation of the skin.

**4. Surgical correction.** When many cilia are misdirected operative treatment similar to cicatricial entropion should be employed.

### **DISTICHIASIS**

**Congenital distichiasis** (Fig. 15.17) is a rare anomaly in which an extra row of cilia occupies the position of Meibomian glands which open into their follicles as ordinary sebaceous glands. These cilia are usually directed backwards and when rubbing the cornea, should be electroepilated or cryoepilated.

**Acquired distichiasis** (metaplastic lashes) occurs when due to metaplasia and differentiation, the meibomian glands are transformed into hair follicles. The most important cause is late stage of cicatrizing conjunctivitis associated with chemical injury, Stevens-Johnson syndrome and ocular cicatricial pemphigoid.



**Fig. 15.17** Distichiasis



### ■ MADAROSIS

Madarosis refers to partial or complete loss of eyelashes.

**Causes** can be local or systemic.

- **Local causes** of madarosis include chronic blepharitis, cicatrizing conjunctivitis, and complication of cryotherapy, radiotherapy or surgery done for any eyelid lesion.
- **Systemic causes** of madarosis are alopecia (patchy, totalis/universalis), psoriasis, hypothyroidism and leprosy.

### ■ TRICHOMEGALY

Trichomegaly refers to excessive growth of eyelashes.

**Causes** include:

- Congenital
- Familial
- Drug induced, e.g. topical prostaglandin analogues, phenytoin and ciclosporin.
- Malnutrition
- Hypothyroidism
- Porphyria
- Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome.

### ■ POLIOSIS

Poliosis refers to greying of eyelashes and eyebrows.

**Causes** include:

- I. Ocular causes** such as chronic anterior blepharitis, sympathetic ophthalmitis, and idiopathic uveitis.
- II. Systemic conditions** associated with poliosis are: vogt koyanagi-harada syndrome, Waardenburg syndrome, vitiligo, marfan syndrome, tuberous sclerosis.

## ANOMALIES IN THE POSITION OF LID MARGINS

### ■ ENTROPION

Entropion refers to inward rolling and rotation of the lid margin toward globe.

#### Etiological types

- 1. Congenital entropion.** It is a rare condition seen since birth. Seen more commonly in lower than upper eyelid.
  - **Lower eyelid congenital entropion** is caused by improper development of the lower lid retractors.
  - **Upper eyelid congenital entropion** is usually secondary to mechanical effects of microphthalmos.
- 2. Cicatricial entropion** (Fig. 15.18). It is a common variety usually involving the upper lid. It is caused by cicatricial contraction of the palpebral conjunctiva, with or without associated distortion of the tarsal plate.

**Common causes** are trachoma, membranous conjunctivitis, chemical burns, pemphigus and Stevens-Johnson syndrome.

**3. Senile (involutional) entropion.** It is common occurrence and affects only the lower lid in elder people (Fig. 15.19).

**Etiological factors** which contribute for its development are:

- **Horizontal laxity** of the lid due to weakening of orbicularis muscle. It can be tested by snap-back test and pinch test.
- **Vertical lid instability** due to weakening or dehiscence of capsulopalpebral fascia (lower lid retractor).
- **Over-riding of pretarsal orbicularis.** Degeneration of palpebral connective tissue separates the orbicularis muscle fibres and thus allows preseptal fibres to over-ride the pretarsal fibres and thus tipping the lid margin inwards.
- **Laxity of orbital septum** along with prolapse of orbital fat into the lower lid also contribute to inward rolling of lid margin.

**4. Mechanical entropion.** It occurs due to lack of support provided by the globe to the lids. Therefore, it may occur in patients with phthisis bulbi, enophthalmos and after enucleation or evisceration operation.



Fig. 15.18 Cicatricial entropion



Fig. 15.19 Senile entropion right lower eyelid



### Clinical features

**Symptoms** occur due to rubbing of cilia against the cornea and conjunctiva and are thus similar to trichiasis. These include foreign body sensation, irritation, lacrimation and photophobia.

**Signs** are as follows:

**1. Inturning of lid margins.** On examination, lid margin is found inturned. Depending upon the degree of inturning, it can be divided into three grades:

- **Grade I entropion**, only the posterior lid border is in rolled,
- **Grade II entropion**, includes inturning up to the inter-marginal strip, and
- **Grade III entropion**, in which the whole lid margin including the anterior border is inturned.

**2. Signs of causative disease**, e.g. scarring of palpebral conjunctiva in cicatricial entropion, and horizontal lid laxity in involutional entropion may be seen.

**3. Signs of complications** include recurrent corneal abrasions, superficial corneal opacities, corneal vascularization and even corneal ulceration.

### Treatment

**1. Congenital entropion** may resolve with time without need of any intervention or may require excision of a strip of skin and muscle with plastic reconstruction of the lid crease (*Hotz procedure*).

**2. Cicatricial entropion.** It is treated by a plastic operation, which is based on any of the following *basic principles*:

- Altering the direction of lashes, or
- Transplanting the lashes, or
- Straightening the distorted tarsus.

**Surgical techniques** employed for correcting cicatricial entropion are as follows:

**i. Anterior lamellar resection.** It is the simplest operation employed to correct mild degree of entropion. In this operation, an elliptical strip of skin and orbicularis muscle is resected 3 mm away from the lid margin.

**ii. Tarsal wedge resection.** It corrects moderate degree of entropion associated with atrophic tarsus. In this operation, in addition to the elliptical resection of skin and muscle, a wedge of tarsal plate is also removed (Fig. 15.20).

**iii. Tarsal fracture or Transposition of tarsoconjunctival wedge.** (Modified Ketssey's operation) (Fig. 15.21): This is indicated to treat mild to moderate amount of cicatricial entropion. It basically involves tarsal fracture and eversion of distal tarsus. A horizontal incision is made along the whole length of sulcus subtarsalis (2–3 mm above the lid margin) involving conjunctiva and tarsal plate (Fig. 15.21A). The lower

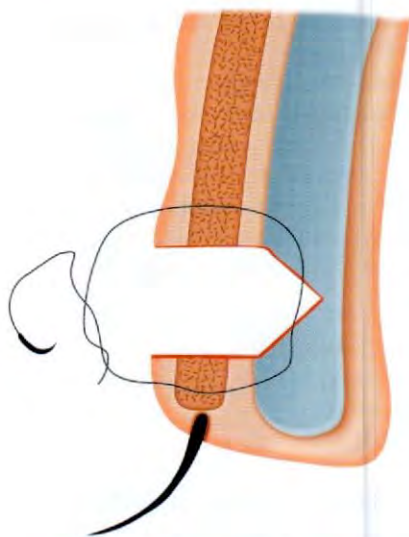


Fig. 15.20 Tarsal wedge resection

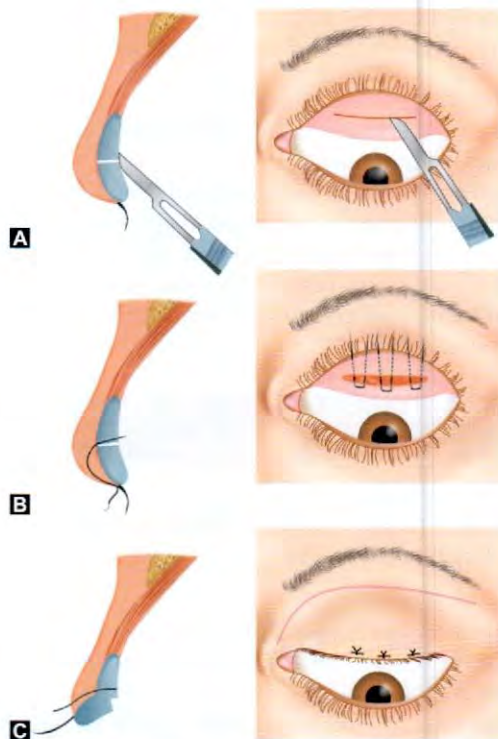


Fig. 15.21 Transposition of tarsoconjunctival wedge

piece of tarsal plate is undermined up to lid margin. Mattress sutures are then passed from the upper cut end of the tarsal plate to emerge on the skin 1 mm above the lid margin (Fig. 15.21B). When sutures are tied the entropion is corrected by transposition of tarsoconjunctival wedge (Fig. 15.21C).



**iv. Posterior lamellar graft.** Indications of this operation include severe entropion with upper eyelid retraction. In this operation, the deficient or keratinized conjunctiva and the scarred and contracted tarsus are replaced by a composite posterior lamellar graft. Tarsus may be replaced by preserved sclera or ear cartilage or hard palate along with conjunctival or mucous membrane graft.

**3. Involutional (Senile) entropion.** Surgical techniques are as below:

**i. Transverse suture and everting suture.** Transverse suture offer temporary cure (up to 18 months) and are thus indicated in very old patients. The transverse sutures are applied through full thickness of the lids (Fig. 15.22) to prevent over-riding of the preseptal muscles.

*Everting sutures* tighten the lower lid retractors. These are similar to transverse sutures except that these are passed at lower level in the inferior fornix and emerge out from the skin near the lash line (Fig. 15.22C and D).

**ii. Wies operation** (Transverse lid split and everting sutures). This operation is indicated for long term cure in patients with little horizontal laxity. In this operation, an incision involving skin, orbicularis and tarsal plate is given 3 mm below the lid margin, along the whole length of the eyelid. Mattress sutures are then passed through the lower cut end of the tarsus to emerge on the skin, 1 mm below the lid margin and are tied firmly (Fig. 15.23). The entropion is corrected by prevention of over-riding of preseptal muscle by the horizontal fibrous scar tissue barrier

and transferring of the pull of lid retractors to the upper border of tarsus by the everting sutures.

**iii. Plication of lower lid retractors (Jones operation).** It is performed in severe cases or when recurrence occurs after the above described operations. In this operation, the lower lid retractors are exposed via horizontal skin incision at the lower border of the tarsal plate, shortened and the sutures are used to create a barrier to prevent over-riding of the preseptal muscle. (Fig. 15.24).

**iv. Quickert procedure.** This is indicated in patients having associated marked horizontal lid laxity. This operation consists of transverse lid split to create barrier for over-riding of preseptal muscle, everting sutures to transfer pull of lower lid retractors to upper border of tarsus and horizontal lid shortening to correct the laxity (Fig. 15.25). Thus, Quickert procedure basically combines horizontal lid shortening with Weis procedure.

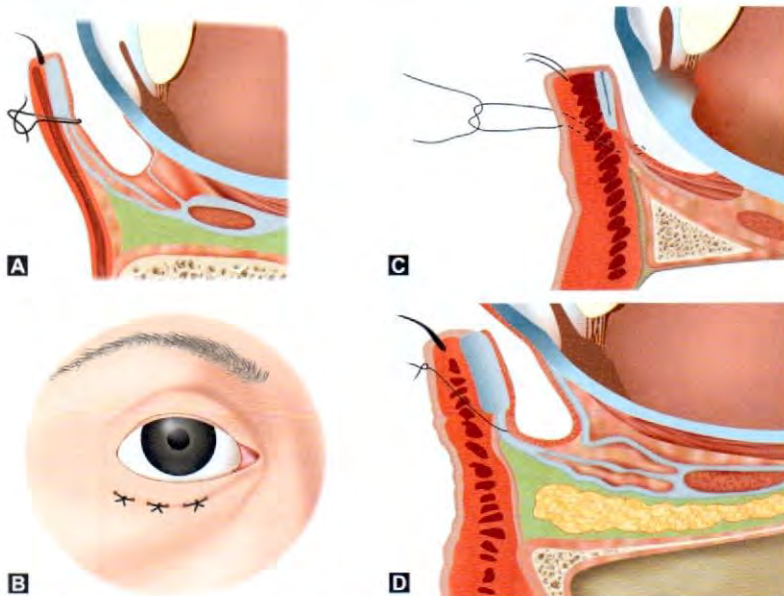
**v. Lateral tarsal strip (LTS),** is basically a lateral canthal tightening procedure in which lateral tarsal strip is excised. It is useful in marked lid laxity of lateral tarsal strip.

## ■ ECTROPION

Out rolling or outward turning of the lid margin is called ectropion.

### Etiological types

**i. Congenital ectropion.** This is rare entity and is usually associated with other eyelid malformations such as ankyloblepharon, ptosis, epicanthus inversus, Down syndrome and blepharophimosis syndrome. It may

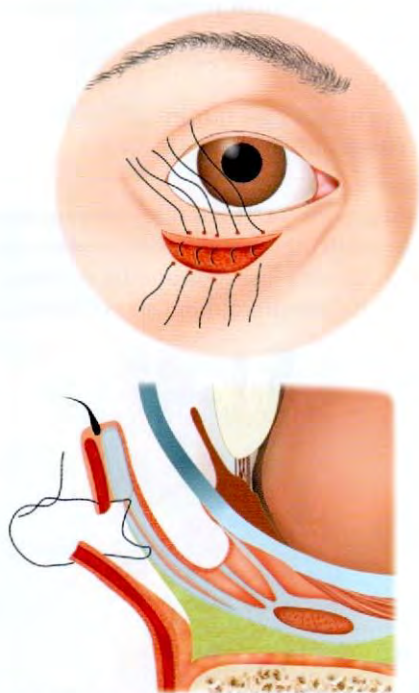


**Fig. 15.22** Transverse sutures: (A, Diagrammatic section; B, Frontal view to show the position of sutures) and Everting sutures: (C, D)





**Fig. 15.23** Wies operation

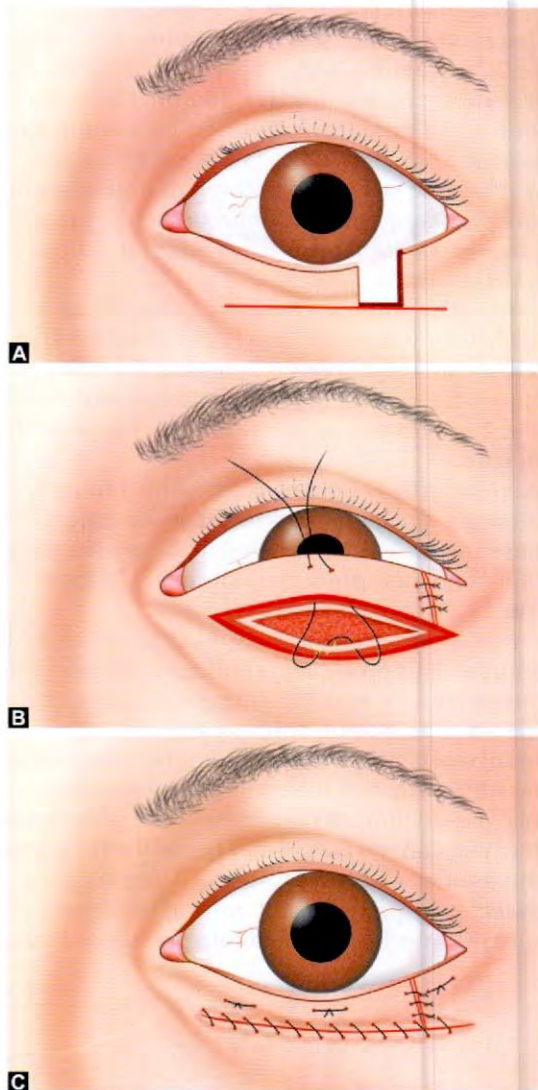


**Fig. 15.24** Plication of lower lid retractors:  
A, Front view; B, Cut section

occur in both the upper and lower lids and is due to a congenital shortage of the skin.

**2. Involutional ectropion.** It is the commonest variety and involves only the lower lids (Fig. 15.26A). It occurs due to following age-related changes:

- Horizontal laxity of eyelid,
- Medial canthal tendon laxity,



**Fig. 15.25** Quickert procedure: A, Lid tissue excision for horizontal lid shortening and horizontal split incision; B, Passage of lid everting suture after completion of horizontal lid resection; C, Final position of the sutures

- Lateral canthal tendon laxity, and
- Dehiscence or disinsertion of lower lid retractors.

**3. Cicatricial ectropion.** It occurs due to scarring of the skin and can involve both the lids (Fig. 15.26B). Common causes of skin scarring are: thermal burns, chemical burns, lacerating injuries skin ulcers, scarring skin tumours and medication allergies.

**4. Paralytic ectropion.** It results due to paralysis of the seventh nerve. It mainly occurs in the lower lids. Common causes of facial nerve palsy are: Bell's palsy, head injury, infections of the middle ear and operations on parotid gland.





**Fig. 15.26** A, Involutional ectropion;  
B, Cicatricial ectropion lower eyelid

**5. Mechanical ectropion.** It occurs in conditions where either the lower lid is pulled down (as in tumours) or pushed out and down (as in proptosis and marked chemosis of the conjunctiva).

### Clinical features

#### Symptoms

- **Epiphora** is the main symptom in ectropion of the lower lid.
- **Symptoms due to associated chronic conjunctivitis** include: irritation, discomfort and mild photophobia.

#### Signs

**1. Lid margin is outrolled.** Depending upon the degree of outrolling, ectropion can be divided into three grades:

- **Grade I:** In it only punctum is everted.
- **Grade II:** Lid margin is everted and palpebral conjunctiva is visible.
- **Grade III:** The fornix is also visible.

**2. Signs of the etiological condition** such as:

- **Skin scars** in cicatricial ectropion and
- **Seventh nerve palsy** in paralytic ectropion may also be seen.

**3. In involutional ectropion** one or more of the following signs can be elicited:

- **Horizontal lid laxity** can be demonstrated by positive snap test, i.e. lid can be easily pulled away from the globe but fails to snap back to the normal position on release.

- **Medial canthal tendon laxity.** Normally on pulling the lid laterally the inferior punctum moves by 1–2 mm only; while it can be moved up to limbus in mild and up to pupil in severe degree of medial tendon laxity.
- **Lateral canthal tendon laxity** is evidenced by rounded appearance of the lateral canthus and its more than 2 mm movement on pulling the lid medially.

### Complications

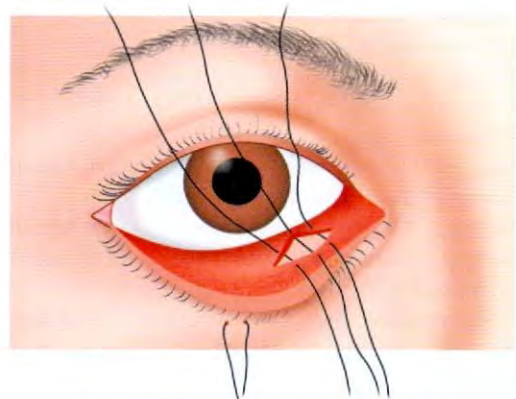
- **Dryness and thickening of conjunctiva and corneal ulceration** (exposure keratitis) may occur due to prolonged exposure.
- **Eczema and dermatitis** of the lower lid skin may occur due to prolonged epiphora.

### Treatment

**1. Congenital ectropion.** Mild ectropion often requires no treatment. Moderate or severe ectropion is treated like cicatricial ectropion with horizontal lid tightening and full thickness skin graft to vertically lengthen anterior lamella.

**2. Involutional ectropion.** Depending upon the severity, following three operations are commonly performed:

- Medial conjunctivoplasty.** It is useful in mild cases of ectropion involving punctal area. It consists of excising a spindle-shaped piece of conjunctiva and subconjunctival tissue from below the punctal area (Fig. 15.27).
- Horizontal lid shortening.** It is performed by a full thickness pentagonal excision in patients with moderate degree of ectropion (Fig. 15.28).
- Byron Smith's modified Kuhnt-Szymanowski operation.** It is performed for severe degree of ectropion which is more marked over the lateral half of the lid. In it, a base up pentagonal full thickness excision from the lateral third of the eyelid is combined with triangular excision of the skin from the area just lateral to lateral canthus to elevate the lid (Fig. 15.29).



**Fig. 15.27** Medial conjunctivoplasty



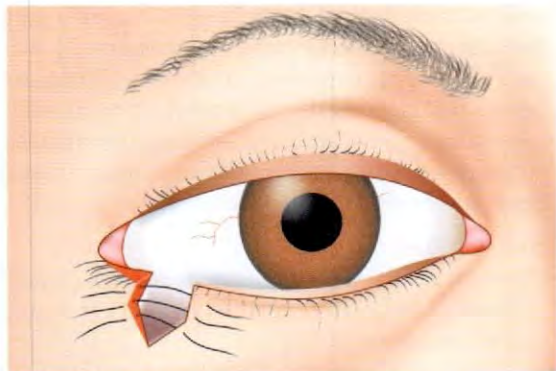


Fig. 15.28 Horizontal lid shortening

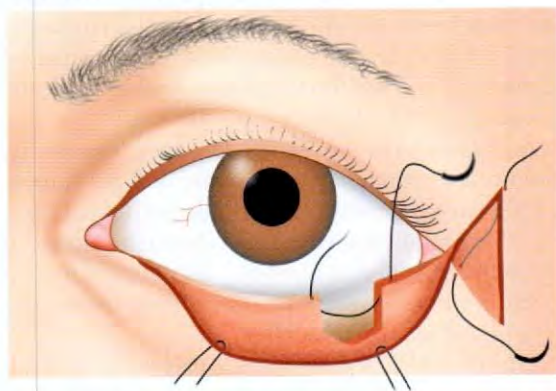


Fig. 15.29 Modified Kuhnt-Szymanowski operation

iv. **Lateral tarsal strip technique** is very useful for generalized ectropion associated with horizontal lid laxity.

**3. Paralytic ectropion.** Paralytic ectropion often resolves spontaneously within 6 months especially when due to Bell's palsy. Therefore, temporary measures are taken initially. Permanent surgical treatment is required only in non-resolving cases.

**Temporary measures include:**

- Topical lubricants,
- Taping temporal side of eyelid, and
- Suture tarsorrhaphy.

**Permanent measures include:**

- **Horizontal lid tightening** with or without middle lamellar buttress such as ear cartilage or
- **Palpebral sling operation**, in which a fascia lata sling is passed in the subcutaneous layer all around the lid margins.

**4. Cicatricial ectropion.** Depending upon the degree it can be corrected by any of the following plastic operations:

- V-Y operation.** It is indicated in mild degree ectropion. In it, a V-shaped incision is given, skin is undermined and sutured in a Y-shaped pattern (Fig. 15.30).
- Z-plasty (Elschnig's operation).** It is useful in mild to moderate degree of ectropion.
- Excision of scar tissue and full thickness skin grafting.** It is performed in severe cases. Skin graft may be taken from the upper lid, behind the ear, or inner side of upper arm.

**5. Mechanical ectropion.** It is corrected by treating the underlying mechanical factor causing ectropion.

### ■ SYMBLEPHARON

In this condition, lids become adherent with the eyeball as a result of adhesions between the palpebral and bulbar conjunctiva.

#### Etiology

It results from healing of the kissing raw surfaces upon the palpebral and bulbar conjunctiva.

**Common causes** are thermal or chemical burns, membranous conjunctivitis, injuries, conjunctival ulcerations, ocular pemphigus and Stevens-Johnson syndrome.

#### Clinical features

Clinical features of symblepharon are:

- **Ocular movements** become restricted,
- **Diplopia** may be experienced due to restricted ocular motility,
- **Lagophthalmos**, i.e. inability to close the lids may occur due to adhesions.
- **Cosmetic disfigurement** is a common complaint.

**Types of symblepharon**, depending upon the extent of adhesions, are as below:

- **Anterior symblepharon**—adhesions present only in the anterior part (Figs 15.31A and D).
- **Posterior symblepharon**—adhesions present in the fornices (Figs 15.31B and E).
- **Total symblepharon**—adhesions involving whole of the lid (Fig. 15.31C).

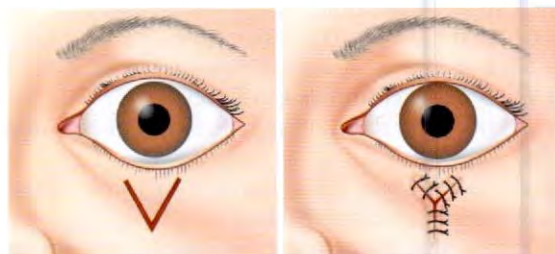
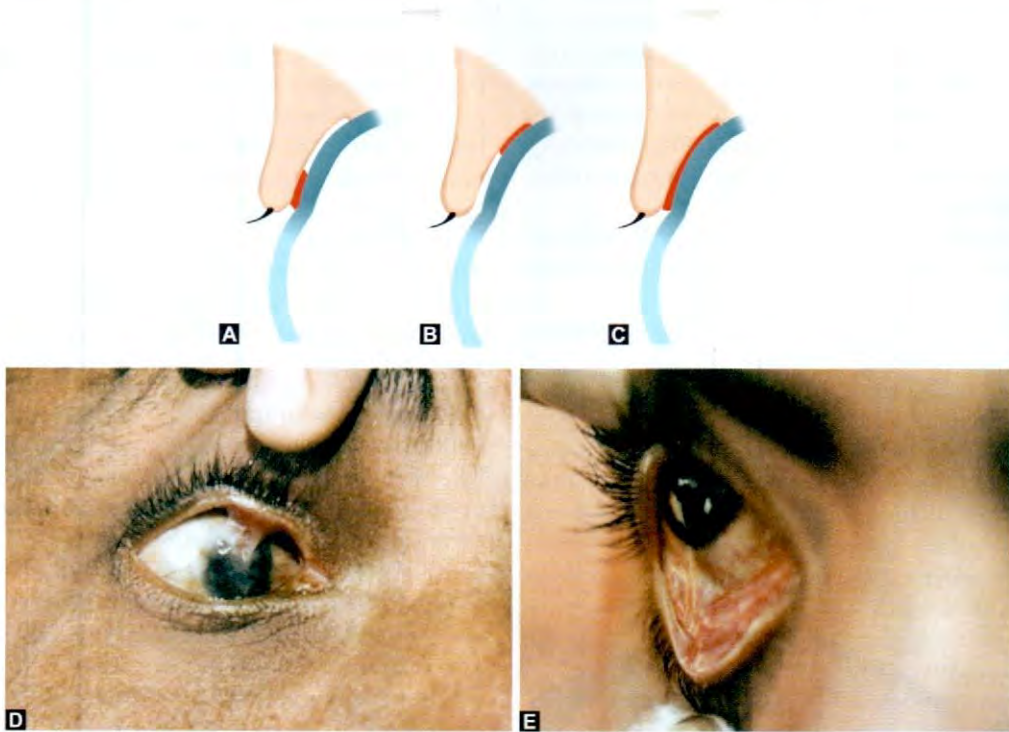


Fig. 15.30 V-Y operation





**Fig. 15.31** Symblepharon: Diagrammatic depiction of anterior: A, Posterior; B, Total symblepharon; C, Clinical photographs of anterior; D, Posterior; E, Symblepharon

### Complications

These include dryness, thickening and keratinisation of conjunctiva due to prolonged exposure and corneal ulceration (exposure keratitis).

### Treatment

**1. Prophylaxis.** During the stage of raw surfaces, the adhesions may be prevented by:

- *Sweeping a glass rod coated with lubricant around the fornices several times a day.*
- *Therapeutic soft contact lens* of large size, also helps in preventing the adhesions.

**2. Curative treatment** consists of symblepharectomy. The raw area created may be covered by:

- *Mobilising the surrounding conjunctiva* in mild cases.
- *Conjunctival or buccal mucosal graft* is required in severe cases.
- *Amniotic membrane transplantation (AMT)*, also gives good results.

### ■ ANKYLOBLEPHARON

It refers to the adhesions between margins of the upper and lower lids.

**Etiology.** Ankyloblepharon may occur as:

- *Congenital anomaly* (see page 380) and

- *Acquired adhesions* after healing of chemical burns, thermal burns, ulcers and traumatic wounds of the lid margins.

**Clinically** ankyloblepharon may be complete or incomplete. It is usually associated with symblepharon.

**Treatment.** Lids should be separated by excision of adhesions between the lid margins and kept apart during healing process. When adhesions extend to the angles, epithelial grafts should be given to prevent recurrences.

### ■ BLEPHAROPHIMOSIS

In this condition, the extent of the palpebral fissure is decreased. It appears contracted at the outer canthus.

**Etiology.** It may be congenital (See page 395) or acquired, due to formation of a vertical skin fold at the lateral canthus (epicanthus lateralis) following eczematous contractions.

**Treatment.** Usually no treatment is required. In marked cases, canthoplasty operation is performed.

### ■ LAGOPHTHALMOS

This condition is characterised by inability to close the eyelids voluntarily.



**Etiology.** It occurs in patients with paralysis of orbicularis oculi muscle, cicatricial contraction of the lids, symblepharon, severe ectropion, proptosis, following over-resection of the levator muscle for ptosis, and in comatosed patients. Physiologically, some people sleep with their eyes open (nocturnal lagophthalmos).

**Clinical features.** It is characterised by incomplete closure of the palpebral aperture associated with features of the causative disease.

**Complications** include conjunctival and corneal xerosis and exposure keratitis.

**Treatment** is as below:

#### 1. Measures to prevent exposure keratitis

- **Artificial tear drops** should be instilled frequently and the open palpebral fissure should be filled with an antibiotic eye ointment during sleep and in comatosed patients.
- **Soft bandage contact lens** may be used to prevent exposure keratitis.
- **Tarsorrhaphy** may be performed to cover the exposed cornea when indicated.

2. Measures to treat the cause of lagophthalmos, wherever possible should be taken.

### Tarsorrhaphy

In this operation, adhesions are created between a part of the lid margins with the aim to narrow down or almost close the palpebral aperture. It is of two types: temporary and permanent.

#### 1. Temporary tarsorrhaphy

**Indications.** (i) To protect the cornea when seventh nerve palsy is expected to recover. (ii) To assist healing of an indolent corneal ulcer. (iii) To assist in healing of skin-grafts of the lids in the correct position.

**Surgical technique.** This can be carried out as median or paramedian tarsorrhaphy (Fig. 15.32).

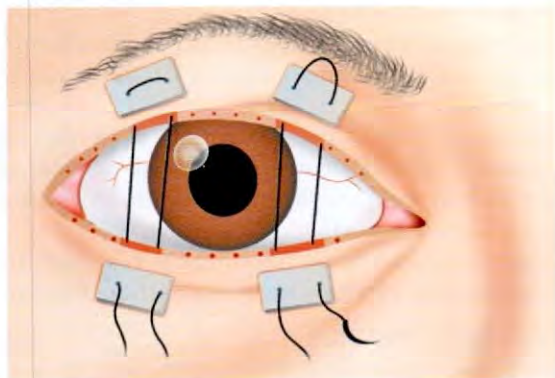


Fig. 15.32 Surgical technique of paramedian tarsorrhaphy

**i. Incision.** For paramedian tarsorrhaphy, about 5 mm long incision site is marked on the corresponding parts of the upper and lower lid margins, 3 mm on either side of the midline. An incision 2 mm deep is made in the grey line on the marked site and the marginal epithelium is then excised taking care not to damage the ciliary line anteriorly and the sharp lid border posteriorly.

**ii. Suturing.** The raw surfaces thus created on the opposing parts of the lid margins are then sutured with double-armed 6-0 silk sutures passed through a rubber bolster.

#### 2. Permanent tarsorrhaphy

**Indications.** (i) Established cases of VII nerve palsy where there is no chance of recovery; and (ii) established cases of neuroparalytic keratitis with severe loss of corneal sensations.

**Technique.** It is performed at the lateral canthus to create permanent adhesions. The eyelids are overlapped after excising a triangular flap of skin and orbicularis from the lower lid and corresponding triangular tarsoconjunctival flap from the upper lid.

### ■ BLEPHAROSPASM

It refers to the involuntary, sustained and forceful closure of the eyelids.

#### Etiology

Blepharospasm occurs in two forms:

1. **Essential (spontaneous) blepharospasm.** It is a rare idiopathic condition involving patients between 45 and 65 years of age.

2. **Reflex blepharospasm.** It usually occurs due to reflex sensory stimulation through branches of fifth nerve, in conditions such as: phlyctenular keratitis, interstitial keratitis, corneal foreign body, corneal ulcers and iridocyclitis. It is also seen in excessive stimulation of retina by dazzling light, stimulation of facial nerve due to central causes and in some hysterical patients.

#### Clinical features

- **Persistent epiphora** may occur due to spasmodic closure of the canaliculi which may lead to eczema of the lower lid.
- **Oedema of the lids** is of frequent occurrence.
- **Spastic entropion** (in elderly people) and spastic ectropion (in children and young adults) may develop in long-standing cases.
- **Blepharophimosis** may result due to contraction of the skin folds following eczema.



### Treatment

#### Treatment of essential blepharospasm:

- **Botulinum toxin**, injected subcutaneously over the orbicularis muscle, blocks the neuromuscular junction and relieves the spasm.
- **Facial denervation** may be required in severe cases.

#### Treatment of reflex blepharospasm:

- **Causative disease** should be treated to prevent recurrences.
- **Associated complications** should also be treated.

### PTOSIS

Abnormal drooping of the upper eyelid is called ptosis. Normally, upper lid covers about upper one-sixth of the cornea, i.e. about 2 mm. Therefore, in ptosis it covers more than 2 mm.

### Clinic-etiological Types

#### I. Congenital ptosis

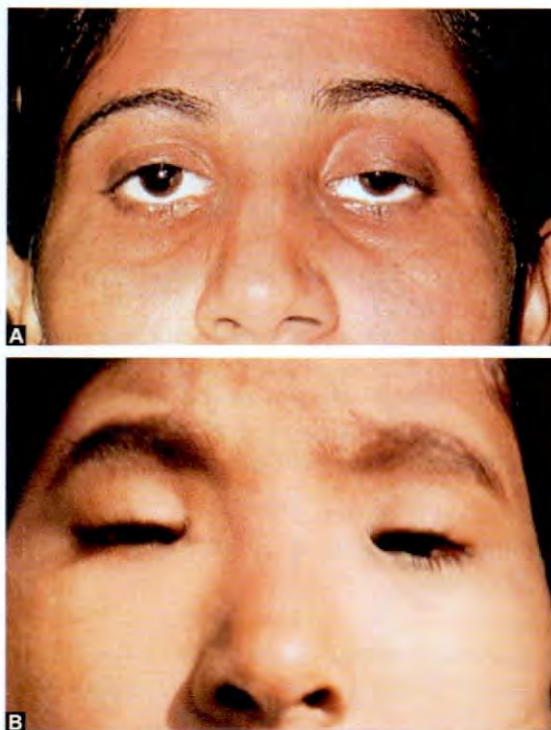
**Etiology.** It is associated with congenital weakness (maldevelopment) of the levator palpebrae superioris (LPS) muscle.

**Characteristic features** of congenital ptosis are:

- **Drooping** of one or both upper lids more often since birth of variable severity (mild, moderate or severe).
- **Lid crease** is either diminished or absent.
- **Lid lag** on downgaze (i.e. ptotic lid is higher than the normal) due to tethering effect of abnormal LPS muscle. This is in contrast to acquired ptosis in which ptotic lid is lower than the normal in downgaze also.
- **LPS function** may be poor, fair or good depending upon the degree of weakness.

**Associated features.** Based on the absence or presence of other associated features, the congenital ptosis may occur in following forms:

1. **Simple congenital ptosis** (not associated with any other anomaly) (Fig. 15.33A).
2. **Congenital ptosis with associated weakness of superior rectus muscle.**
3. **Blepharophimosis syndrome**, which comprises congenital ptosis, blepharophimosis, telecanthus and epicanthus inversus (Fig. 15.33B).
4. **Congenital synkinetic ptosis** (Marcus Gunn jaw-winking ptosis). In this condition, there occurs retraction of the ptotic lid with jaw movements, i.e. with stimulation of ipsilateral pterygoid muscle. The levator palpebrae is also stimulated. It occurs due to trigemino-oculomotor synkinesis (Vth and IIIrd cranial nerve), i.e. two or more muscles innervated independently by these two cranial nerves have simultaneous or co-ordinated movement.



**Fig. 15.33** Congenital ptosis: A, Simple; B, Blepharophimosis syndrome

#### II. Acquired ptosis

Depending upon the cause it can be neurogenic, myogenic, aponeurotic or mechanical.

**1. Neurogenic ptosis.** It is caused by innervational defects such as:

- Third nerve palsy (See page 369),
- Horner's syndrome,
- Ophthalmoplegic migraine, and
- Multiple sclerosis.

**Horner's syndrome**, occurring due to oculo-sympathetic paresis, is characterised by classic triad of:

- **Mild ptosis** (due to paralysis of Muller's muscles),
- **Miosis** (due to paralysis of dilator pupillae), and
- **Reduced ipsilateral sweating** (anhidrosis),
- **Other features** include mild enophthalmos, loss of cilio-spinal reflex, heterochromia, i.e. ipsilateral iris is lighter in color, pupil is slow to dilate, and there occurs slight elevation of the lower eyelid.

**Note.** Also See page 329

**2. Acquired myogenic ptosis.** It occurs due to acquired disorders of the LPS muscle or of the myoneural junction. It may be seen in patients with myasthenia gravis, dystrophia myotonica, ocular myopathy, oculopharyngeal muscular dystrophy and following trauma to the LPS muscle, thyrotoxicosis, and Lambert-Eaton myasthenia syndrome.



**3. Aponeurotic ptosis.** It develops due to defects of the levator aponeurosis in the presence of a normal functioning muscle. It includes:

- *Involucional (senile) ptosis*,
- *Postoperative ptosis* (which is some times observed after cataract and retinal detachment surgery),
- *Ptosis* due to aponeurotic weakness associated with blepharochalasis, and
- *Traumatic dehiscence* or disinsertion of the aponeurosis.

**4. Mechanical ptosis.** It may result due to excessive weight on the upper lid as seen in patients with lid tumours, multiple chalazia and lid oedema. It may also occur due to scarring (cicatricial ptosis) as seen in patients with ocular pemphigoid and trachoma.

### Clinical evaluation

Following scheme may be adopted for work up of a ptosis patient:

#### I. History

It should include age of onset, family history, history of trauma, eye surgery and variability in degree of the ptosis.

#### II. Examination

**1. Exclude pseudoptosis** (simulated ptosis) on inspection. Its common causes are:

- *Ipsilateral conditions* such as microphthalmos, phthisis bulbi, enophthalmos, prosthesis, brow ptosis, dermatochalasis, and hypotropia.
- *Contralateral conditions* include: eyelid retraction, high myopia, and proptosis.

**2. Observe the following points** in each case:

- Whether ptosis is unilateral or bilateral. *Causes of bilateral ptosis* include congenital ptosis, myasthenia gravis, myotonic dystrophy, Kearns-Sayre syndrome, Lambert-Eaton myasthenic syndrome, and chronic progressive external ophthalmoplegia.
- Function of orbicularis oculi muscle.
- Eyelid crease is present or absent.
- Jaw-winking phenomenon is present or not.
- Associated weakness of any extraocular muscle.
- Bell's phenomenon (up and outrolling of the eyeball during forceful closure) is present or absent.

**3. Measurement of amount (degree) of ptosis.**

- *In unilateral cases*, difference between the vertical height of the palpebral fissures of the two sides indicates the degree of ptosis (Fig. 15.34).
- *In bilateral cases* it can be determined by measuring the amount of cornea covered by the upper lid and

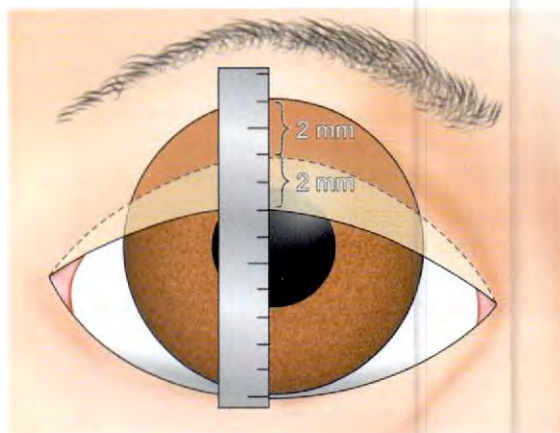


Fig. 15.34 Measurement of degree of ptosis in millimeters

then subtracting 2 mm. *Ptosis is graded* depending upon its amount as:

- Mild ptosis : 2 mm
- Moderate ptosis : 3 mm
- Severe ptosis : 4 mm

**4. Margin reflex distance (MRD)** refers to the distance between the upper lid margins and corneal light reflex (of a pen torch held in front, on which patient is looking). Normal value of MRD is 4–5 mm.

**5. Assessment of levator function.** It is determined by the lid excursion caused by LPS muscle (*Burke's method*). Patient is asked to look down, and thumb of one hand is placed firmly against the eyebrow of the patient (to block the action of frontalis muscle) by the examiner. Then the patient is asked to look up and the amount of upper lid excursion is measured with a ruler (Fig. 15.35) held in the other hand by the examiner. *Levator function is graded* as follows:

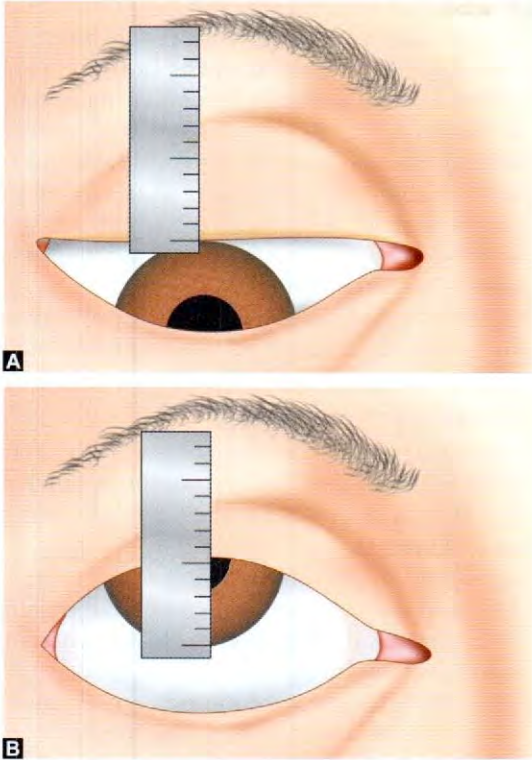
- Normal : 15 mm
- Good : 8 mm or more
- Fair: : 5–7 mm
- Poor : 4 mm or less

**6. Special investigations.** Those required in patients with acquired ptosis are as follows:

- Tensilon test* is performed when myasthenia is suspected. There occurs improvement of ptosis with intravenous injection of edrophonium (Tensilon) in myasthenia.
- Phenylephrine test* is carried out in patients suspected of Horner's syndrome.
- Neurological investigations* may be required to find out the cause in patient with neurogenic ptosis.

**7. Photographic record** of the patient should be maintained for comparison. Photographs should





**Fig. 15.35** Assessment of levator function:  
A, Looking down: B, Looking up

be taken in primary position as well as in up and down gazes.

## Treatment

### 1. Treatment of Congenital ptosis

It almost always needs surgical correction. In severe ptosis, surgery should be performed at the earliest to prevent stimulus deprivation amblyopia. However, in mild and moderate ptosis, surgery should be delayed until the age of 3–4 years, when accurate measurements are possible. Congenital ptosis can be treated by any of the following operations:

**1. Tarso-conjunctivo-Mullerectomy (Fasanella-Servat operation).** It is performed in cases having mild ptosis (1.5–2 mm) and good levator function. In it, upper lid is everted and the upper tarsal border along with its attached Muller's muscle and conjunctiva are resected (Fig. 15.36).

**2. Levator resection.** It is a very commonly performed operation for moderate and severe grades of ptosis. It is contraindicated in patients having severe ptosis with poor levator function.

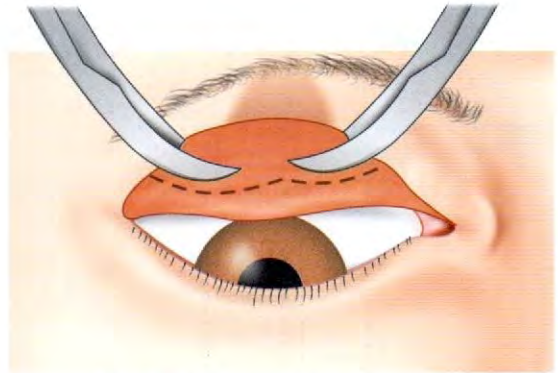
**Amount of levator resection required:** Most of the surgeons find it out by adjusting the lid margin in relation to cornea during operation on the table

in individual case. However, a rough estimate in different grades of ptosis can be made:

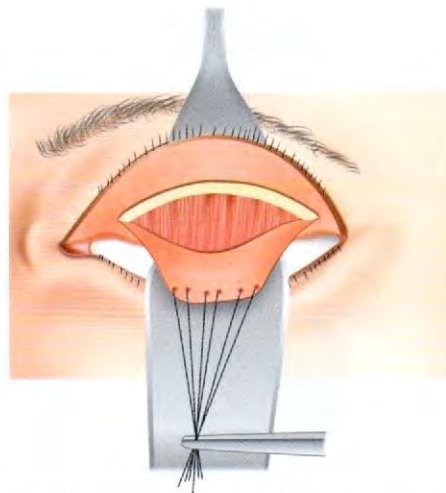
- **Moderate ptosis.** Depending on the level of LPS function the amount of LPS to be resected is as below:
  - Good function : 16–17 mm (minimal)
  - Fair function : 18–22 mm (moderate)
  - Poor function : 23–24 mm (maximum)
- **Severe ptosis.** Fair levator function: 23–24 mm (maximum LPS resection).

**Techniques.** Levator muscle may be resected by either conjunctival or skin approach.

i. **Conjunctival approach** (Blaskowics' operation): This technique is comparatively easy but not suitable for large amount of resection. In it LPS muscle is exposed by an incision made through the conjunctiva near the upper tarsal border, after the upper lid is doubly everted over a Desmarre's lid retractor (Fig. 15.37).



**Fig. 15.36** Fasanella-Servat operation



**Fig. 15.37** Conjunctival approach for levator resection



ii. *Skin approach (Everbush's operation)*: It is a more frequently employed technique. It allows comparatively better exposure of the LPS muscle through a skin incision along the line of future lid crease (Fig. 15.38).

**3. Frontalis sling operation (Brow suspension)**. This is performed in patients having severe ptosis with no levator function. In this operation, lid is anchored to the frontalis muscle via a sling (Fig. 15.39). Fascia lata (best material) or some non-absorbable material (e.g. supramide suture, silicon rod) may be used as sling.

- In *Marcus Gun Jaw winking ptosis*, LPS excision is combined with frontalis sling operation.
- In *blepharophimosis syndrome*, frontalis sling operation is combined with telecanthus correction (by arrow head resection or Mustarde double Z-plasty) and lateral cantholysis.

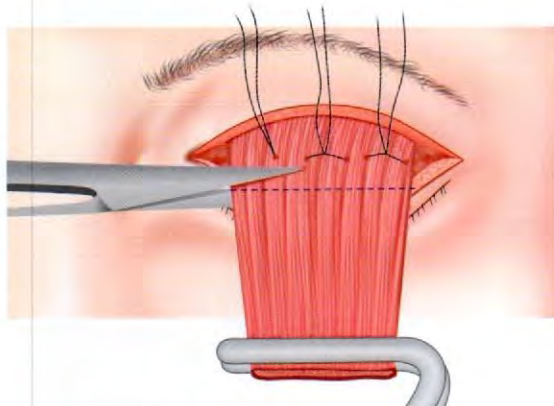


Fig. 15.38 Skin approach for levator resection

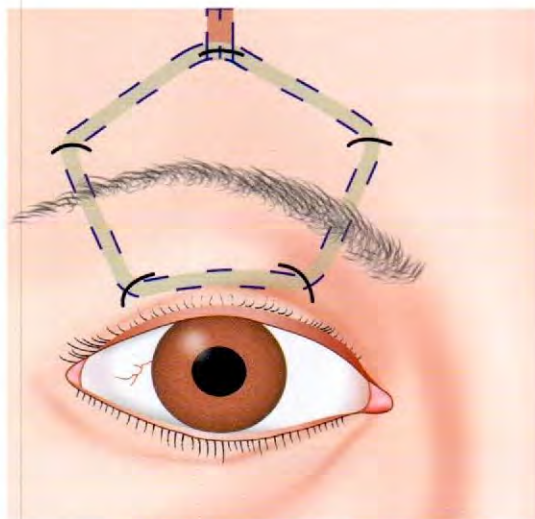


Fig. 15.39 Frontalis sling operation

## II. Treatment of acquired ptosis

- *Treat the underlying cause* wherever possible.
- *Conservative treatment* should be carried out and surgery deferred at least for 6 months in neurogenic ptosis.
- *Surgical procedures* (when required) for acquired ptosis are essentially the same as described for congenital ptosis. However, the amount of levator resection required is always less than the congenital ptosis of the same degree.
- *For Horner's syndrome*: Fasanella Servat operation.
- *For neurogenic ptosis in 3rd nerve palsy*: Frontalis sling operation.

## ■ LID RETRACTION

Normally, the upper eyelid covers 1/6th of the cornea (about 2 mm). Lid retraction is labelled when the lid margin is either at or above the level of superior limbus.

*Causes of lid retraction* are as below:

1. *Congenital*. The lid retraction may occur isolated or in association with Duane's retraction syndrome and Down's syndrome.
2. *Thyroid eye disease* is the more common cause.
3. *Mechanical causes* of lid retraction are:
  - Surgical overcorrection of ptosis, and
  - Scarring of the upper eyelid skin after burns, trauma or infection.
4. *Neurogenic causes* include:
  - Facial palsy (due to unopposed levator action),
  - Third nerve misdirection,
  - Marcus-Gunn jaw winking syndrome
  - Parinaud syndrome, and
  - Effect of sympathomimetic eye drops
5. *Systemic causes*:
  - Uraemia.

## TUMOURS OF EYELIDS

Almost all types of tumours arising from the skin, connective tissue, glandular tissue, blood vessels, nerves and muscles can involve the eyelids. A few common tumours are listed and only the important ones are described here.

### Classification

1. *Benign tumours*. These include; simple papilloma, naevus, angioma, haemangioma, neurofibroma and sebaceous adenoma.
2. *Pre-cancerous conditions*. These are solar keratosis, carcinoma in situ and xeroderma pigmentosa.
3. *Malignant tumours*. Commonly observed tumours include squamous cell carcinoma, basal cell carcinoma, malignant melanoma and sebaceous gland adenocarcinoma.



## BENIGN TUMOURS

### 1. Papillomas

Papillomas are the most common benign tumours arising from the surface epithelium. These occur in two forms: squamous papillomas and seborrhoeic keratosis.

**i. Squamous papillomas** derived from squamous cells occur in adults, as very slow growing or stationary, raspberry-like growths or as a pedunculated lesion, usually involving the lid margin. These may be nonspecific or related to human papilloma virus (viral wart or verruca vulgaris). Its treatment consists of simple excision.

**ii. Seborrhoeic keratosis (basal cell papilloma)**, derived from basal cells occurs in middle-aged and older persons. Their surface is friable, verrucous and slightly pigmented.

### 2. Xanthelasma

These are creamy-yellow plaque-like lesions which frequently involve the skin of upper and lower lids near the inner canthus (Fig. 15.40). Xanthelasma occurs more commonly in middle-aged women. Xanthelasma represents lipid deposits in histiocytes in the dermis of the lid. These may be associated with diabetes mellitus or high cholesterol levels.

■ **Treatment:** Excision may be advised for cosmetic reasons; but recurrences are common.

### 3. Haemangioma

Haemangiomas of the lids are common tumours. These occur in three forms:

**i. Capillary haemangioma** (Fig. 15.41) is the most common variety which occurs at or shortly after birth, often grows rapidly and in many cases resolves spontaneously by the age of 7 years. These may be superficial and bright red in colour (*strawberry naevus*) or deep bluish or violet in colour. They consist of proliferating capillaries and endothelial cells.



Fig. 15.40 Xanthelasma



Fig. 15.41 Capillary haemangioma

**Treatment** include:

I. **Observation.** Unless the tumour is very large it may be left untouched until the age of 7 years (as in many cases it resolves spontaneously).

II. **Medical treatment** includes:

- **Intralesional steroid** (triamcinolone) injection is effective in small to medium size tumours.
- **High dose oral steroid therapy**, alternate day regimen is recommended for large diffuse tumours.
- **Oral prednisolone**, 2 to 4 mg/kg/day for 2–4 weeks may be administered under supervision of a paediatrician.
- **Propranolol**, is quite effective effective when given orally 2 to 3 mg/kg/day till regression and additionally for a month to prevent recurrences.

III. **Superficial radiotherapy** may also be given for large tumours.

IV. **Surgery** is rarely necessary, but can be combined in those which are not responding to pharmacological modalities.

**ii. Naevus flammeus (port wine stain).** It may occur paripassu or more commonly as a part of Sturge-Weber syndrome. It consists of dilated vascular channels and does not grow or regress like the capillary haemangioma.

**iii. Cavernous haemangiomas** are developmental venous anomaly and usually occur after first decade of life. It consists of large endothelium-lined vascular channels and usually does not show any regression. **Treatment** is similar to capillary haemangiomas.

### 4. Neurofibroma

Lids and orbits are commonly affected in neurofibromatosis (von Recklinghausen's disease, See page 320).

**Eyelid neurofibroma** may occur as:

- **Solitary tumour**, which is well circumscribed.
- **Diffuse or plexiform neurofibroma**, which is usually associated with orbital involvement. The involved eyelid is thickened, ptotic and has an S-shaped



contour (Fig. 15.42). The thickened nerve can be palpated giving a 'bag of worm' feel.

### 5. Keratoacanthomas

Keratoacanthomas occur as nonpigmented protrusions with a keratin filled central crater.

These are comparatively uncommon tumours that grow rapidly for 2 to 6 weeks and then spontaneously involute over a few months.

▪ *Differential diagnosis* need to be made sometimes from the squamous cell carcinoma.

▪ *Treatment* consists of complete excision and biopsy. Incomplete specimen may be indistinguishable from a squamous cell carcinoma on histopathological examination.

### 6. Naevi

Naevi are common cutaneous lesions that arise from the arrested epidermal melanocytes. Pigmented naevi can be congenital or acquired.

1. *Congenital naevi* are usually small and uniform in colour. RARE variants include a 'kissing or split naevus' or *divided naevus* that involves corresponding parts of upper and lower eyelid (Fig. 15.43).



Fig. 15.42 Neurofibroma upper eyelid



Fig. 15.43 Divided naevi of eyelids

II. *Acquired naevi* Depending upon the depth of involvement acquired naevi are of three types:

- *Junctional naevi*, located at the epidermis/dermis junction are flat, brown in appearance.
- *Intradermal naevi*, located within the dermis, are elevated lesions which may not be visibly pigmented.
- *Compound naevi*, are slightly elevated and share features of junctional and dermal naevi.

### ■ PREMALIGNANT TUMOURS

#### Eye lid actinic (solar) keratosis

Actinic keratosis, though a common lesion of sun exposed skin is relatively uncommon on the eyelids.

- *Clinical features* include a flat, scaly lesion with hyperkeratosis with or without keratin horn.
- *Histologically*, it is characterized by parakeratosis and cellular atypia but no invasion.

#### Xeroderma pigmentosa

Characteristic features of this autosomal recessive (AR) disease are:

- *Progressive cutaneous pigmentation* resulting from damage on exposure to natural sunlight.
- *Bird-like facies* is typical of this condition.
- *Predisposition* to develop lid tumours (basal cell carcinoma, squamous cell carcinoma and melanoma) and conjunctival malignancies.

### ■ MALIGNANT TUMOURS

#### 1. Basal cell carcinoma

As per western literature it is the commonest malignant tumour of the lids (90%) usually seen in elderly people. It is locally malignant and involves most commonly lower lid (50%) followed by medial canthus (25%), upper lid (10–15%) and outer canthus (5–10%).

*Predisposing factors* include increasing age, white skin, sun exposure, xeroderma pigmentosa and basal cell naevus syndrome.

*Clinical features.* It may present in four forms:

- *Non-ulcerated nodular form*
- *Sclerosing or morphea type*
- *Pigmented basal cell carcinoma.*
- *Noduloulcerative basal cell carcinoma* is the most common presentation. It starts as a small nodule which undergoes central ulceration with pearly rolled margins. The tumour grows by burrowing and destroying the tissues locally like a rodent and hence the name *rodent ulcer* (Fig. 15.44).

*Histological features.* The most common pattern is solid basal cell carcinoma in which the dermis is invaded by irregular masses of basaloid cells with characteristic peripheral palisading appearance.



**Treatment** includes:

- **Surgery.** Local surgical excision of the tumour along with a 3 mm surrounding area of normal skin with primary repair is the treatment of choice. Mohs' microsurgical technique or frozen section biopsy should be adopted for complete removal.
- **Radiotherapy and cryotherapy** should be given only in inoperable cases for palliation.

## 2. Squamous cell carcinoma

It forms the second commonest malignant tumour of the lid. Its incidence (5%) is much less than the basal cell carcinoma. It commonly arises from the lid margin (mucocutaneous junction) in elderly patients de novo or from pre-existing lesion such as actinic keratosis, Bowen's disease and radiation dermatosis. It affects lower lids more frequently.

**Risk factors** include sun exposure, radiation, fair skin, injury or other irritative insults. There is a male predilection.

**Clinical features.** Squamous cell carcinoma (SCC) may present in three forms:

- **Ulcerated SCC**, present as scaly, erythematous plaque like growth with elevated and indurated margins is the common presentation (Fig. 15.45).



Fig. 15.44 Basal cell carcinoma lower eyelid



Fig. 15.45 Squamous cell carcinoma of upper lid

- **Nodular SCC or polypoid verrucous** lesion without ulceration, is a rare presentation.
- **Cutaneous horns** with underlying invasive SCC.

**Metastasis.** It is metastasized in preauricular and submandibular lymph nodes.

**Histological features.** It is characterised by an irregular downward proliferation of epidermal cells into the dermis. In well-differentiated form, the malignant cells have a whorled arrangement forming epithelial pearls which may contain laminated keratin material in the centre.

**Treatment** is on the lines of basal cell carcinoma.

## 3. Sebaceous gland carcinoma

It is a rare tumour arising from the meibomian glands (western literature). However, *Indian literature reports* the sebaceous gland carcinoma being the commonest malignancy of eyelid followed by basal cell and squamous cell carcinoma.

**Clinical features.** It usually presents initially as a *nodule* (which may be mistaken for a chalazion), more frequently on the upper eyelid. Which then grows to form a big growth (Fig. 15.46). Rarely, a *diffuse tumour* along the lid margin may be mistaken as chronic blepharitis.

**Treatment.** Surgical excision with reconstruction of the lids is the treatment of choice. Recurrences are common.

## 4. Malignant melanoma (Melanocarcinoma)

Malignant melanoma (Fig. 15.47) is a rare tumour of the lid (less than 1% of all eyelid lesions). It may arise from a pre-existing naevus, but usually arises de novo from the melanocytes present in the skin.

**Clinical features.** It may present in three forms:

- **Lentigo maligna type** is characterized initially by a flat, pigmented, well-defined lesion which



Fig. 15.46 Meibomian gland carcinoma lower eyelid





**Fig. 15.47** *Malignant melanoma*

later on becomes elevated as it invades the dermis.

- *Superficial spreading type* is characterized by mildly elevated, pigmented lesion with irregular margins.
- *Nodular type* is characterized by a rapidly growing lesion (may not be visibly pigmented), which ulcerates and bleeds frequently.

**Metastasis.** The tumour spreads locally as well as to distant sites by lymphatics and bloodstream.

**Treatment.** It is a radio-resistant tumour. Therefore, surgical excision with 10 mm margins (confirmed on frozen section) with reconstruction of the lid is the treatment of choice.



# 16

## Diseases of Lacrimal Apparatus

### APPLIED ANATOMY

- Main lacrimal gland
- Accessory lacrimal glands
- Lacrimal passages

### TEAR FILM

- Structure
- Functions
- Secretion of tears
- Elimination of tears

### DRY EYE DISEASE

- Sjogren's syndrome

### THE WATERING EYE

- Etiology

- Clinical evaluation

### DACRYOCYSTITIS

- Congenital dacryocystitis
- Adult dacryocystitis
- Surgical technique of DCR and DCT

### SWELLINGS OF LACRIMAL GLAND

- Dacryoadenitis
- Mikulicz's syndrome
- Dacryops
- Tumours

## Dacryocystectomy?

### APPLIED ANATOMY

The lacrimal apparatus comprises:

- Lacrimal glands, and
- Lacrimal passages, which include: puncta, canaliculi, lacrimal sac and nasolacrimal duct (NLD) (Fig. 16.1)

### LACRIMAL GLANDS

Lacrimal glands include main and accessory.

#### Main lacrimal gland

It consists of an upper orbital and a lower palpebral part.

#### 1. Orbital part

Orbital part is larger, about the size and shape of a small almond, and is situated in the fossa for lacrimal gland at the outer part of the orbital plate of frontal

bone. It has got two surfaces—superior and inferior. The superior surface is convex and lies in contact with the bone. The inferior surface is concave and lies on the levator palpebrae superioris muscle.

#### 2. Palpebral part

Palpebral part is small and consists of only one or two lobules. It is situated upon the course of the ducts of orbital part from which it is separated by LPS muscle. Posteriorly, it is continuous with the orbital part.

#### Ducts of lacrimal gland

Approximately 10–12 ducts pass downward from the main gland to open in the lateral part of superior fornix. One or two ducts also open in the lateral part of inferior fornix.

#### Accessory lacrimal glands

**1. Glands of Krause.** These are microscopic glands lying beneath the palpebral conjunctiva between fornix and the edge of tarsus. These are about 42 in the upper fornix and 6–8 in the lower fornix (See Fig. 15.4).

**2. Glands of Wolfring.** These are present near the upper border, of the superior tarsal plate and along the lower border of inferior tarsus (See Fig. 15.4).

#### Structure, blood supply and nerve supply

**Structure.** All lacrimal glands are serous acini, similar in structure to the salivary glands.

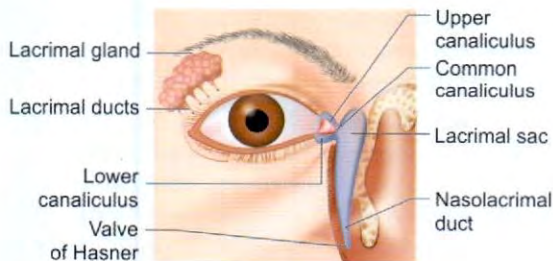


Fig. 16.1 The lacrimal apparatus



**Microscopically** these consist of glandular tissue (acini and ducts), connective tissue and puncta.

**Blood supply.** Main lacrimal gland is supplied by lacrimal artery which is a branch of ophthalmic artery.

**Nerve supply** includes:

1. **Sensory supply** comes from lacrimal nerve, a branch of the ophthalmic division of the fifth nerve.
2. **Sympathetic supply** comes from the carotid plexus of the cervical sympathetic chain.
3. **Secretomotor fibres** are derived from the superior salivary nucleus (pons) → greater petrosal nerve → synapse at pterygopalatine ganglion → zygomatic nerve → lacrimal nerve → lacrimal gland.

## ■ LACRIMAL PASSAGES 5m

### 1. Lacrimal puncta

These are two small, rounded or oval openings on upper and lower lids, about 6 and 6.5 mm, respectively, temporal to the inner canthus. Each punctum is situated upon a slight elevation called lacrimal papilla which becomes prominent in old age. Normally, the puncta dip into the lacus lacrimalis (collection of tear fluid in the inner canthus).

### 2. Lacrimal canaliculi

As shown in Fig. 16.1, the superior and inferior canaliculi join the puncta to the lacrimal sac. Each canaliculus has two parts: vertical (1–2 mm) and horizontal (6–8 mm) which lie at right angle to each other. The horizontal part converges towards inner canthus to open in the sac. The two canaliculi may open separately or may join to form common canaliculus which opens immediately into the outer wall of lacrimal sac. A fold of mucosa at this point forms the valve of Rosenmuller which prevents reflux of tears.

### 3. Lacrimal sac

**Location:** It lies in the lacrimal fossa located in the anterior part of medial orbital wall. The lacrimal fossa is formed by lacrimal bone and frontal process of maxilla. It is bounded by anterior and posterior lacrimal crests. Lacrimal fascia, which encloses the lacrimal sac, is formed by periorbita. The periorbita splits at the posterior lacrimal crest into two layers which enclose the sac and again fuse at the anterior lacrimal crest. Between the lacrimal sac and the fascia lies alveolar tissue and venous plexus which becomes continuous around the nasolacrimal duct.

**Size:** When distended, lacrimal sac is about 12–15 mm in length and 5–6 mm in breadth with a volume of about 2 cc.

**Parts:** It has got three parts: fundus (portion above the opening of canaliculi), body (middle part) and the neck (lower small part which is narrow and continuous with the nasolacrimal duct).

### 4. Nasolacrimal duct (NLD)

**Dimensions and location.** It extends from neck of the lacrimal sac to inferior meatus of the nose (See Fig. 16.1). It is about 15–18 mm long and lies in a bony canal formed by the maxilla and the inferior turbinate.

**Direction** of the NLD is downwards, backwards and laterally. Externally, its location is represented by a line joining inner canthus to the ala of nose. The upper end of the NLD is the narrowest part.

**Numerous membranous valves** are present in the NLD, the most important is the valve of Hasner, which is present at the lower end of the duct and prevents reflux from the nose.

## TEAR FILM 5m

### Structure of tear film

Wolff was the first to describe the detailed structure of the fluid covering the cornea and called it precorneal film. He described this film to consist of three layers, which from posterior to anterior are mucus layer, aqueous layer and lipid or oily layer (Fig. 16.2).

**1. Mucus layer.** It is the innermost and about 0.2 µm thick stratum of the tear film. It consists of mucin secreted by conjunctival goblet cells and glands of Manz. It converts the hydrophobic corneal surface into hydrophilic one.

**2. Aqueous layer.** The bulk of tear film (7.0 µm) is formed by this intermediate layer which consists of tears secreted by the main and accessory lacrimal glands. The tears mainly comprise of water and small quantities of solutes such as sodium chloride, sugar, urea and proteins. Therefore, it is alkaline and salty in taste. It also contains antibacterial substances like lysozyme, beta-lysin and lactoferrin.

**3. Lipid or oily layer.** This is the outermost and thinnest (0.1 µm) layer of tear film formed at air-tear interface from the secretions of meibomian, zeis, and moll glands. This layer prevents the overflow of tears, retards their evaporation and lubricates the eyelids as they slide over the surface of the globe.

### Functions of tear film

1. Keeps to the cornea and conjunctiva moist.
2. Provides oxygen to the corneal epithelium.
3. Washes away debris and noxious irritants.
4. Prevents infection due to presence of anti-bacterial substances.
5. Facilitates movements of the lids over the globe.



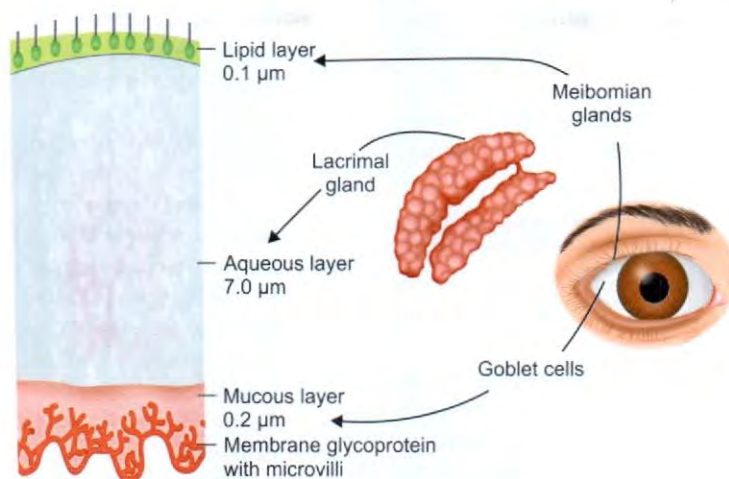


Fig. 16.2 Structure of the tear film

### Secretion of tears

Tears are continuously secreted throughout the day by accessory (*basal secretion*) and main (*reflex secretion*) lacrimal glands. Reflex secretion is in response to sensations from the cornea and conjunctiva, probably produced by evaporation and breakup of tear film. *Hyperlacrimation* occurs due to irritative sensations from the cornea and conjunctiva. *Afferent pathway* of this secretion is formed by fifth nerve and *efferent* by parasympathetic (secretomotor) supply of lacrimal gland.

### Elimination of tears

From the lacrimal gland, the tears flow downwards and laterally across the ocular surface. A variable amount of tears is lost by evaporation from the ocular surface. The remainder of tears flow along the superior and inferior marginal strips and collect as *lacus lacrimalis* in the inner canthus (Fig. 16.3A), from where it is drained by the lacrimal passage into the nasal cavity. About 70% tears is drained

via inferior canaliculus and 30% via the superior canaliculus by an active lacrimal pump mechanism constituted by the fibres of orbicularis as below:

**When the eyelids close** with each blink there occurs:

- **Contraction of pretarsal orbicularis oculi** which compresses the ampulla and shortens the canaliculi. This movement propels the tear fluid present in the ampulla and horizontal part of canaliculi towards the lacrimal sac.

- **Contraction of preseptal fibres of orbicularis** distends the lacrimal sac and creates therein a negative pressure which draws the tear fluid from canaliculi into the lacrimal sac (Fig. 16.3B).

**When the eyelids open** following events occur:

- **Relaxation of pretarsal orbicularis** allows the canaliculi and ampulla to expand and reopen, and to draw the tear fluid from the lacus lacrimalis and marginal tear strips.

- **Relaxation of preseptal fibres (Horner's muscle)** results in collapse of sac, as a consequence a positive pressure is created which forces the tears

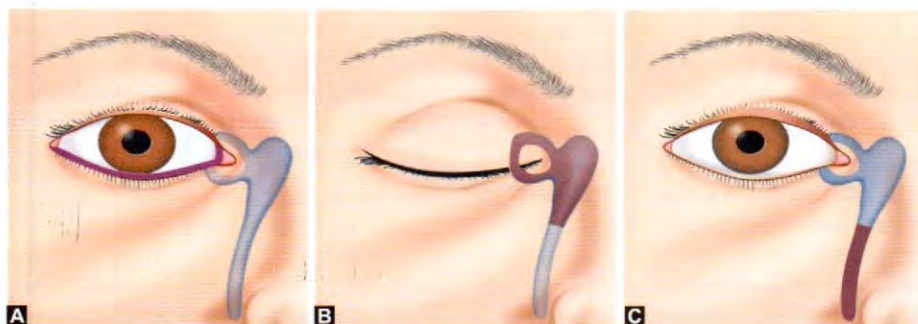


Fig. 16.3 Elimination of tears by lacrimal pump mechanism



down the nasolacrimal duct (NLD) into the nose (Fig. 16.3C). Gravity also helps in downward flow of tears along the NLD.

**Note.** In atonia of sac, tears are not drained through the lacrimal passages, in spite of anatomical patency; resulting in epiphora.

## 5m DRY EYE DISEASE

**Definition of Tear Film and Ocular Surface Society Dry Eye Workshop II (TFOS DEWS II)** in 2007 has redefined dry eye as: "Dry eye is a multifactorial disease of the ocular surface characterized by loss of homeostasis of the tear film, and accompanied by ocular symptoms, in which tear film instability and hyperosmolarity, ocular surface inflammation and damage, and neurosensory abnormalities play etiological roles".

### Etiological classification

According to Dry Eye Workshop report II (DEWS report II 2017), the causes of dry eye disease can be classified as below:

#### I. Aqueous deficiency dry eye

Aqueous deficiency dry eye also known as keratoconjunctivitis sicca (KCS). Its causes include:

- a. Sjogren's syndrome (Primary or Secondary).
- b. Non-Sjogren's keratoconjunctivitis sicca. Causes can be grouped as below:

##### 1. Lacrimal deficiency as seen in:

- **Primary age-related hyposecretion** is the most common cause.
- **Other causes** include congenital alacrima, infiltrations of lacrimal gland, e.g. in sarcoidosis, tumours, post-radiation fibrosis of lacrimal gland and surgical removal.

##### 2. Lacrimal gland duct obstruction as seen in old trachoma, chemical burns, cicatricial pemphigoid and Stevens-Johnson syndrome.

##### 3. Hypersecretory states as seen in familial dysautonomia (Riley-Day syndrome), Parkinson disease, reflex sensory block, reflex motor blade, 7th cranial nerve damage, reduced corneal sensations after refractive surgery and corneal lens wear.

##### 4. Other disorders include: Meige syndrome, diabetes mellitus and pseudoexfoliation.

#### II. Evaporative dry eye

It is caused by the conditions which decrease tear film stability and thus increase evaporation.

**Causes** can be grouped as:

##### 1. Meibomian gland diseases-related evaporative dry eye as seen in:

- Meibomian gland dysfunction
- Age-related changes,
- Chronic posterior blepharitis
- Rosacea, and
- Congenital absence of meibomian glands.

##### 2. Evaporative any eye in disorders of lid aperture congruity and blink dynamics:

- **Lagophthalmos** as seen in facial nerve palsy, severe proptosis, symblepharon and eyelid scarring.
- **Defective blinking** such as low blink rate as seen in prolonged computer users and in other condition, e.g. parkinsonism and progressive external ophthalmoplegia.

##### 3. Ocular surface-related evaporative dry eye as occurs following allergic eye disease, vitamin A deficiency and other factors affecting ocular surface, e.g. topical drugs, preservatives, contact lens wear, ocular surface allergic disease and scarring disorders.

### Clinical features

**Symptoms** suggestive of dry eye include irritation, foreign body (sandy) sensation, feeling of dryness, itching, nonspecific ocular discomfort and chronically sore eyes not responding to a variety of drops instilled earlier.

**Signs** of dry eye are as below:

- **Tear film signs.** It may show presence of stingy mucous and particulate matter. Marginal tear strip is reduced or absent (normal height is 1 mm). Froth in the tears along the lid margin is a sign of meibomian gland dysfunction.
- **Conjunctival signs.** It becomes lustreless, mildly congested, conjunctival xerosis and keratinization may occur. Rose Bengal or Lissamine green staining may be positive (details given in tear film tests).
- **Corneal signs.** It may show punctate epithelial erosions, filaments and mucus plaques. Cornea may lose lustre. Vital stains, fluorescein, Rose Bengal or Lissamine green may delineate the above lesions.
- **Signs of causative disease** such as posterior blepharitis, conjunctival scarring diseases (trachoma, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, chemical burns, ocular pemphigoid) and lagophthalmos may be depicted.

**Complications of dry eye disease** can be vision threatening and include epithelial breakdown, corneal ulceration, melting and even perforation.

### Tear film tests

These include tear film break-up time (BUT), Schirmer-I test, vital staining with Rose Bengal, tear levels of lysozyme and lactoferrin, tear osmolarity and conjunctival impression cytology. Out of these



**BUT, Schirmer-I test and Rose Bengal staining are most important** and when any two of these are positive, diagnosis of dry eye syndrome is confirmed.

**1. Tear film break-up (BUT).** It is the interval between a complete blink and appearance of first randomly distributed dry spot on the cornea. It is noted after instilling a drop of fluorescein and examining in a cobalt-blue light of a slit-lamp. BUT is an indicator of adequacy of mucin component of tears. Its normal values range from 15 to 35 seconds. Values less than 10 seconds imply an unstable tear film.

**5m Schirmer-I test.** It measures total tear secretions. It is performed with the help of a 5 × 35 mm strip of Whatman-41 filter paper which is folded 5 mm from one end and kept in the lower fornix at the junction of lateral one-third and medial two-thirds. The patient is asked to look up and not to blink or close the eyes (Fig. 16.4). After 5 minutes wetting of the filter paper strip from the bent end is measured. Normal values of Schirmer-I test are more than 15 mm. Values of 5–10 mm are suggestive of moderate to mild keratoconjunctivitis sicca (KCS) and less than 5 mm of severe KCS.

**3. Rose Bengal staining.** It is a very useful test for detecting even mild cases of KCS. Depending upon the severity of KCS three staining patterns A, B and C have been described: 'C' pattern represents mild or early cases with fine punctate stains in the interpalpebral area; 'B' the moderate cases with extensive staining; and 'A' the severe cases with confluent staining of conjunctiva and cornea.

### Grading of dry eye severity

Various criteria have been proposed to grade severity of dry eye. Recently accepted system based on severity of signs and tear film tests recommended by Dry Eye Workshop (DEWS) Report (2007) grades the severity of dry eye into 4 levels:



Fig. 16.4 Schirmer test

- Level 1 (mild dry eye),
- Level 2 (moderate dry eye),
- Level 3 (severe dry eye), and
- Level 4 (very severe dry eye).

### Treatment

At present, there is **no cure for dry eye**. The following treatment modalities have been tried with variable results:

**I. Supplementation with tear substitutes.** Artificial tears remains the mainstay in the treatment of dry eye. These are available as drops, ointments and slow-release inserts. Mostly available artificial tear drops contain either cellulose derivatives (e.g. 0.25 to 0.7% methyl cellulose and 0.3% hypromellose) or polyvinyl alcohol (1.4%).

**II. Anti-inflammatory agents.** Since ocular surface inflammation is associated with DED, so any of the following anti-inflammatory agents may be added.

- **Low potency topical steroids** like fluorometholone is an effective supplementary treatment for acute exacerbations. Long-term use should be avoided.

- **Topical cyclosporine (0.05%, 0.1%)** is reported to be very effective drug for dry eye in many recent studies. It helps by **reducing the cell-mediated inflammation** of the lacrimal tissue and ocular surface.

- **Chloroquine eye drops** are also effective as anti-inflammatory drugs.

- **Omega fatty acid supplements** (e.g. omega - 3/5 fish oil, flax seed oil) is effective and useful in reduction of topical medicines.

**III. Secretagogues**, e.g. oral cholinergic agonists such as **pilocarpine (5 mg QID)**, and **cevimeline** may reduce symptoms of dry eye and dry mouth in patients with Sjogren's syndrome.

**IV. Mucolytics**, such as 5% acetylcysteine used 4 times a day helps by **dispersing the mucus threads** and decreasing tear viscosity.

**V. Preservation of existing tears by reducing evaporation and decreasing drainage.**

- **Evaporation can be reduced** by decreasing room temperature, use of moist chambers and protective glasses.

- **Punctal occlusion** to decrease drainage can be carried out by collagen implants, cyanoacrylate tissue adhesives, electrocauterisation, argon laser occlusion and surgical occlusion to decrease the drainage of tears in patients with very severe dry eye.

- **Permanent lateral tarsorrhaphy** may be required in very severe cases.

**VI. Treatment of the causative disease** of dry eye when discovered is very useful, for example:



- **Systemic tetracyclines** and **lid hygiene** in patients with chronic posterior blepharitis
- **Vitamin A supplement** for the deficiency
- **Treatment of the cause** of lagophthalmos.

**VII. Additional measures for severe dry eye disease** include:

- **Serum eye drops**, autologous or umbilical cord serum.
- **Contact lenses** are useful in producing a fluid reservoir and relieving symptoms from secondary corneal changes.
- **Submandibular gland transplantation** has been suggested for extreme dry eye.

### ■ SJOGREN'S SYNDROME

**Etiology:** It is an autoimmune chronic inflammatory disease with **multisystem** involvement. It typically occurs in women **between 40 and 50 years** of age.

**Characteristic feature** is an aqueous deficiency dry eye—the keratoconjunctivitis sicca (KCS), with symptoms and signs of dry eye disease described on page 406

- In **primary Sjogren's syndrome**, patients present with **sicca complex**—a combination of KCS and xerostomia (dryness of mouth).
- In **secondary Sjogren's syndrome**, dry eye and/or dry mouth are associated with an autoimmune disease, commonly rheumatoid arthritis.

**Pathological features** include focal accumulation and **infiltration by lymphocytes and plasma cells** with destruction of lacrimal and salivary glandular tissue.

## 10m THE WATERING EYE

It is characterised by **overflow of tears from the conjunctival sac**. The condition may occur either due to excessive secretion of tears (hyperlacrimation) or may result from inadequate drainage (outflow) of normally secreted tears (**epiphora**).

5m

### Etiology

#### A. Causes of hyperlacrimation

**1. Primary hyperlacrimation.** It is a **rare** condition which occurs due to direct stimulation of the lacrimal gland. It may occur in early stages of lacrimal gland tumours and cysts and **due to the effect of strong parasympathomimetic drugs**.

**2. Reflex hyperlacrimation.** It results from stimulation of **sensory branches of fifth nerve** due to irritation of cornea or conjunctiva. It may occur in multitude of conditions which include:

- **Affections of the lids:** Sty, hordeolum internum, acute meibomitis, trichiasis, concretions and entropion.

- **Affections of the conjunctiva:** Conjunctivitis which may be infective, allergic, toxic, irritative or traumatic.

- **Affections of the cornea:** These include, corneal abrasions, corneal ulcers and non-ulcerative keratitis.

- **Affections of the sclera:** Episcleritis and scleritis.

- **Affections of uveal tissue:** Iritis, cyclitis, iridocyclitis.

- **Acute glaucomas.**

- **Endophthalmitis and panophthalmitis.**

- **Orbital cellulitis.**

**3. Central lacrimation** (psychical lacrimation). The exact area concerned with central lacrimation is still not known. It is seen in **emotional states**, **voluntary lacrimation** and **hysterical lacrimation**.

#### B. Causes of epiphora

Inadequate drainage of tears may occur due to physiological or anatomical (mechanical) causes.

**1. Physiological cause** is '**lacrimal pump**' failure due to lower lid laxity or weakness of orbicularis muscle.

**II. Mechanical obstruction** in lacrimal passages may lie at the level of punctum, canaliculus, lacrimal sac or nasolacrimal duct.

**1. Punctal causes** include:

- **Eversion of lower punctum:** It is commonly seen in old age due to laxity of the lids. It may also occur following **chronic conjunctivitis**, **chronic blepharitis** and due to any cause of ectropion.

- **Punctal obstruction:** There may be **congenital absence of puncta** or **cicatricial closure** following injuries, burns or infections. Rarely, a **small foreign body**, **concretion** or **cilia** may also block the punctum. Prolonged use of drugs like **idoxuridine** and **pilocarpine** is also associated with punctal stenosis.

**2. Causes in the canaliculi.** Canalicular obstruction may be **congenital** or **acquired** due to **foreign body**, **trauma**, **idiopathic fibrosis** and **canaliculitis**.

**Commonest cause of canaliculitis is actinomycetes.**

**3. Causes in the lacrimal sac.** These include **congenital mucous membrane folds**, **traumatic strictures**, **dacryocystitis**, **specific infections** like **tuberculosis** and **syphilis**, **dacryolithiasis** and **tumours** (Atonia of the sac is a physiological cause).

**4. Causes in the nasolacrimal duct.** **Congenital** lesions include **noncanalization**, **partial canalization** or **imperforated membranous valves**. **Acquired** causes of obstruction are **traumatic strictures**, **inflammatory strictures**, **idiopathic stenosis**, **tumours** and **diseases** of the surrounding bones.



### Clinical evaluation of a case of 'Watering eye'

**1. Ocular examination with diffuse illumination using magnification** should be carried to rule out any cause of reflex hypersecretion located in lids, conjunctiva, cornea, sclera, anterior chamber, uveal tract and so on. This examination should also exclude punctal causes of epiphora and any swelling in the sac area.

**2. Regurgitation test.** A steady pressure with index finger is applied over the lacrimal sac area above the medial palpebral ligament. Reflux of mucopurulent discharge indicates chronic dacryocystitis with obstruction at lower end of the sac or the nasolacrimal duct.

**3. Fluorescein dye disappearance test (FDDT).** In this test, 2 drops of fluorescein dye are instilled in both the conjunctival sacs and observations are made after 2 minutes. Normally, no dye is seen in the conjunctival sac. A prolonged retention of dye in conjunctival sac indicates inadequate drainage which may be due to atonia of sac or mechanical obstruction.

**4. Lacrimal syringing test.** It is performed after topical anaesthesia with 4% xylocaine (Fig. 16.5). Normal saline is pushed into the lacrimal sac from lower punctum with the help of a syringe and lacrimal cannula.

- A free passage of saline through lacrimal passages into the nose rules out any mechanical obstruction.
- In the presence of partial obstruction, saline passes with considerable pressure on the syringe.
- In the presence of obstruction no fluid passes into nose and it may reflux through same punctum (indicating obstruction in the same or common canaliculus) or through opposite

punctum (indicating obstruction in the lower sac or nasolacrimal duct).

**5. Jones dye tests.** These are performed when partial obstruction is suspected. Jones dye tests are of no value in the presence of total obstruction.

**i. Jones primary test (Jones test I).** It is performed to differentiate between watering due to partial obstruction of the lacrimal passages from that due to primary hypersecretion of tears. Two drops of 2% fluorescein dye are instilled in the conjunctival sac and a cotton bud dipped in 1% xylocaine is placed in the inferior meatus at the opening of nasolacrimal duct. After 5 minutes, the cotton bud is removed and inspected. A dye-stained cotton bud indicates adequate drainage through the lacrimal passages and the cause of watering is primary hypersecretion (further investigations should aim at finding the cause of primary hypersecretion). While the unstained cotton bud (negative test) indicates either a partial obstruction or failure of lacrimal pump mechanism. To differentiate between these conditions, Jones dye test-II is performed.

**ii. Jones secondary test (Jones test II).** When primary test is negative, the cotton bud is again placed in the inferior meatus and lacrimal syringing is performed. A positive test suggests that dye was present in the sac but could not reach the nose due to partial obstruction. A negative test indicates presence of lacrimal pump failure.

**6. Dacryocystography.** It is valuable in patients with mechanical obstruction. It tells the exact site, nature and extent of block (Fig. 16.6). In addition, it also gives information about mucosa of the sac, presence of any fistulae, diverticulae, stone, or tumour in the sac.

To perform it a radiopaque material such as lipiodol, pantopaque, dianosil or condray-280 is pushed in the sac with the help of a lacrimal cannula and X-rays are taken after 5 minutes and 30



Fig. 16.5 Technique of lacrimal syringing



Fig. 16.6 Normal dacryocystogram





**Fig. 16.7** Lacrimal scintillography showing: A, Normal lacrimal excretory system on right side; B, Obstruction at the junction of lacrimal sac and nasolacrimal on left side

minutes to visualize the entire passage. For better anatomical visualization, the modified technique known as **subtraction macrodacryocystography with canalicular catheterisation** should be preferred.

**7. Radionuclide dacryocystography** (lacrimal scintillography). It is a **noninvasive technique** to assess the functional efficiency of lacrimal drainage apparatus. A **radioactive tracer** (sulphur colloid or technetium) is instilled into the conjunctival sac and its passage through the lacrimal drainage system is visualised with an Anger gamma camera (Fig. 16.7).

## DACRYOCYSTITIS

Inflammation of the lacrimal sac is not an uncommon condition. It may occur in two forms: **congenital and adult dacryocystitis**.

### ■ CONGENITAL DACRYOCYSTITIS

It is **chronic inflammation of the lacrimal sac** occurring in newborn infants; and thus also known as **dacryocystitis neonatorum** or **infantile dacryocystitis**.

#### Etiology

It follows stasis of secretions in the lacrimal sac due to **congenital blockage in the nasolacrimal duct**. It is of **very common occurrence**. As many as **30% of newborn infants** are believed to have closure of nasolacrimal duct at birth.

- **Membranous occlusion**, at its lower end, near the valve of Hasner is the commonest cause.
- **Other causes of congenital NLD block** are: presence of epithelial debris, membranous occlusion at its upper end near lacrimal sac, **complete noncanalisation** and **rarely bony occlusion**.
- **Common bacteria** associated with congenital dacryocystitis are Staphylococci, Pneumococci and Streptococci, Haemophilus influenzae and enterobacteriaceae species.

#### Clinical features

Congenital dacryocystitis usually presents as a **mild grade chronic inflammation**. It is characterised by:

1. **Epiphora**, usually developing after seven days of birth. It is followed by **mucopurulent discharge** from the eyes.

2. **Regurgitation test** is usually **positive**, i.e. when pressure is applied over the lacrimal sac area, mucopurulent discharge regurgitates from the lower punctum.

3. **Swelling** on the sac area may appear eventually.

#### Differential diagnosis

Congenital dacryocystitis needs to be differentiated from other causes of watering in early childhood especially:

- **Ophthalmia neonatorum**, and
- **Congenital glaucoma**.

#### Complications

When not treated in time, congenital dacryocystitis may be complicated by **recurrent conjunctivitis**, acute or chronic dacryocystitis, **lacrimal abscess** and **fistulae formation**.

#### Treatment

It depends upon the age at which the child is brought. The treatment modalities employed are as follows:

1. **Massage over the lacrimal sac area and topical antibiotics** constitute the mainstay of treatment of congenital NLD block. Massage **increases the hydrostatic pressure in the sac** and helps to open up the membranous occlusions. It should be carried out at least 4 times a day to be followed by instillation of antibiotic drops. This conservative treatment **coupled with spontaneous recanalization cures obstruction** in about 90% of the infants up to 6–9 months.

2. **Probing of NLD with Bowman's probe**. It should be performed **in case** the condition is **not cured by the age of 6 months**. Some surgeons prefer to wait till the age of 9–12 months. It is usually performed under **general anaesthesia**. While performing probing, care must be taken **not to injure the canaliculus**. In most instances, a single probing will relieve the obstruction. **In case of failure**, it may be **repeated after an interval of 3–4 weeks**.

3. **Balloon catheter dilation**, with the help of a probe carrying inflatable balloon, may be carried out **in children where repeated probing is failure or directly** in cases where the obstruction seems to be **due to scarring or constriction** rather than merely by a distal membrane.

4. **Intubation with silicone tube** may be performed if **repeated probings and balloon catheter dilation** are failure. The **silicone tube should be kept in the NLD** for about **six months**.



**5. Dacryocystorhinostomy (DCR) operation:** When the child is brought very late or repeated probing, balloon catheter dilation and intubation are a failure, then conservative treatment by massaging, and topical antibiotics as and when required should be continued till the age of 4 years. After this, DCR operation should be performed.

### ■ ADULT DACRYOCYSTITIS

Adult dacryocystitis may occur in an acute or a chronic form.

### Chronic Dacryocystitis 10m

Chronic dacryocystitis is more common than the acute dacryocystitis.

#### Etiology

The etiology of chronic dacryocystitis is multifactorial. The well-established fact is a vicious cycle of stasis and mild infection of long duration. The etiological factors can be grouped as under:

#### A. Predisposing factors

1. **Age.** It is more common between 40 and 60 years of age.
2. **Sex.** The disease is predominantly seen in females (80%) probably due to comparatively narrow lumen of the bony canal.
3. **Race.** It is rarer among Negroes than in Whites; as in the former NLD is shorter, wider and less sinuous.
4. **Heredity.** It plays an indirect role. It affects the facial configuration and so also the length and width of the bony canal.
5. **Socio-economic status.** It is more common in low socio-economic group.
6. **Poor personal hygiene** is also an important predisposing factor.

#### B. Factors responsible for stasis of tears in lacrimal sac

1. **Anatomical factors,** which retard drainage of tears include: comparatively narrow bony canal, partial canalization of membranous NLD and excessive membranous folds in NLD.
2. **Foreign bodies** in the sac may block opening of NLD.
3. **Excessive lacrimation,** primary or reflex, causes stagnation of tears in the sac.
4. **Mild grade inflammation** of lacrimal sac due to associated recurrent conjunctivitis may block the NLD by epithelial debris and mucus plugs.
5. **Obstruction of lower end of the NLD** by nasal diseases such as polyps, hypertrophied inferior

concha, marked degree of deviated nasal septum, tumours and atrophic rhinitis causing stenosis may also cause stagnation of tears in the lacrimal sac.

#### C. Source of infection

Lacrimal sac may get infected from the conjunctiva, nasal cavity (retrograde spread), or paranasal sinuses.

#### D. Causative organisms

These include: *Staphylococci*, *Pneumococci*, *Streptococci* and *Pseudomonas pyocyanea*. Rarely chronic granulomatous infections like tuberculosis, syphilis, leprosy and occasionally rhinosporidiosis may also cause dacryocystitis.

#### Clinical features

Clinical features of chronic dacryocystitis can be divided into four stages:

1. **Stage of chronic catarrhal dacryocystitis.** It is characterised by mild inflammation of the lacrimal sac associated with blockage of NLD.
  - **Watery eye** is the only symptom in this stage and sometimes mild redness in the inner canthus.
  - **On syringing** the lacrimal sac, either clear fluid or few fibrinous mucoid flakes regurgitate.
  - **Dacryocystography** reveals block in NLD, a normal-sized lacrimal sac with healthy mucosa.
2. **Stage of lacrimal mucocele.** It follows chronic stagnation causing distension of lacrimal sac.
  - **Characteristic features** include constant epiphora associated with a swelling just below the inner canthus (Fig. 16.8).
  - **Regurgitation test.** Milky or gelatinous mucoid fluid regurgitates from the lower punctum on pressing the swelling.
  - **Dacryocystography** at this stage reveals a distended sac with blockage somewhere in the NLD.
  - **Encysted mucocele.** Sometimes due to continued chronic infection, opening of both the canaliculi into the sac are blocked and a large fluctuant



Fig. 16.8 Lacrimal mucocele



swelling is seen at the inner canthus with a negative regurgitation test. This is called **encysted mucocele**.

**3. Stage of chronic suppurative dacryocystitis.** Due to pyogenic infection, the mucoid discharge becomes purulent, converting the mucocele into 'pyocoele'.

- The condition is characterised by epiphora, associated recurrent conjunctivitis and swelling at the inner canthus with mild erythema of the overlying skin.

- On regurgitation a frank purulent discharge flows from the lower punctum.

- If openings of canaliculi are blocked at this stage the so called **encysted pyocoele** results.

**4. Stage of chronic fibrotic sac.** Low-grade repeated infections for a prolonged period ultimately result in a small fibrotic sac due to thickening of mucosa, which is often associated with persistent epiphora and discharge.

- **Dacryocystography**, at this stage reveals a very small sac with irregular folds in the mucosa.

### Complications

- **Chronic intractable conjunctivitis**, acute on chronic dacryocystitis.

- **Ectropion of lower lid**, maceration and eczema of lower lid skin due to prolonged watering.

- **Chances of corneal ulceration** are there as simple corneal abrasions may become infected.

- **High risk of developing endophthalmitis** is always there if an intraocular surgery is performed in the presence of dacryocystitis. Because of this, syringing of lacrimal sac is always done in suspected cases before attempting any intraocular surgery.

### Treatment

**1. Conservative treatment** by probing and lacrimal syringing may be useful in recent cases only. Long-standing cases are almost always associated with blockage of NLD which usually does not open up with probing.

**2. Balloon catheter dilation**, also known as **balloon dacryocystoplasty**, can be tried in patient with partial nasolacrimal duct obstruction. Success rate reported in adults is about 50%.

**3. Dacryocystorhinostomy (DCR).** It should be the operation of choice as it re-establishes the lacrimal drainage. However, before performing surgery, the infection especially in pyocoele should be controlled by topical antibiotics and repeated lacrimal syringings.

**4. Dacryocystectomy (DCT).** It should be performed only when DCR is contraindicated. **Indications of DCT** include: (i) Too old patient. (ii) Markedly

shrunken and fibrosed sac. (iii) Tuberculosis, syphilis, leprosy or mycotic infections of sac. (iv) Tumours of sac. (v) Gross nasal diseases like atrophic rhinitis (for surgical procedure See page 413).

**5. Conjunctivodacryocystorhinostomy (CDCR).** It is performed in the presence of blocked canaliculi.

### Acute Dacryocystitis 10m

Acute dacryocystitis is an acute suppurative inflammation of the lacrimal sac, characterised by presence of a painful swelling in the region of sac.

### Etiology

Acute dacryocystitis may develop in two ways:

1. As an acute exacerbation of chronic dacryocystitis.
2. As an acute peridacryocystitis due to direct involvement from the neighbouring infected structures such as: paranasal sinuses, surrounding bones and dental abscess or caries teeth in the upper jaw.

- **Causative organisms.** Commonly involved are *Streptococcus haemolyticus*, *Pneumococcus* and *Staphylococcus*.

### Clinical features

Clinical features of acute dacryocystitis can be divided into 3 stages:

**1. Stage of cellulitis.** It is characterised by a painful swelling in the region of lacrimal sac associated with epiphora and constitutional symptoms such as fever and malaise. The swelling is red, hot, firm and tender. Redness and oedema also spread to the lids and cheek. When treated resolution may occur at this stage. However, if untreated, self-resolution is rare.

**2. Stage of lacrimal abscess.** Continued inflammation causes occlusion of the canaliculi due to oedema. The sac is filled with pus, distends and its anterior wall ruptures forming a pericystic swelling. In this way, a large fluctuant swelling the lacrimal abscess is formed. It usually points below and to the outer side of the sac, owing to gravitation of pus and presence of medial palpebral ligament in the upper part (Fig. 16.9).

**3. Stage of fistula formation.** When the lacrimal abscess is left unattended, it discharges spontaneously, leaving an external fistula below the medial palpebral ligament (Fig. 16.10). Rarely, the abscess may open up into the nasal cavity forming an internal fistula.

### Complications

These include:

- Acute conjunctivitis,
- Conversion of corneal abrasion into corneal ulceration,
- Lid abscess,
- Osteomyelitis of lacrimal bone,





**Fig. 16.9** Acute dacryocystitis: Stage of lacrimal abscess



**Fig. 16.10** Acute dacryocystitis: Stage of external lacrimal fistula

- Orbital cellulitis,
- Facial cellulitis and acute ethmoiditis.
- Rarely cavernous sinus thrombosis and very rarely generalized septicaemia may also develop.

### Treatment

1. **During cellulitis stage**, treatment consists of systemic and topical antibiotics to control infection; and systemic anti-inflammatory analgesic drugs and hot fomentation to relieve pain and swelling.
2. **During stage of lacrimal abscess**, in addition to the above treatment, when pus starts pointing on the skin, it should be drained with a small incision.

The pus should be gently squeezed out and dressing should be done with betadine soaked roll gauze.

Later on depending upon condition of the lacrimal sac either DCT or DCR operation should be carried out, otherwise recurrence will occur.

3. **Treatment of external lacrimal fistula.** After controlling the acute infection with systemic antibiotics, fistulectomy along with DCT or DCR operation should be performed.

### ■ SURGICAL TECHNIQUE OF DACRYOCYSTORHINOSTOMY

5m

Dacryocystorhinostomy (DCR) operation can be performed by following techniques:

- Conventional external approach, DCR and
- Endonasal surgical DCR
- Endonasal laser DCR
- Endocanalicular laser DCR.

#### Conventional external approach DCR (Fig. 16.11)

1. **Anaesthesia.** General anaesthesia is preferred, however, it may be performed with local infiltration anaesthesia in adults.

2. **Skin incision.** Either a curved incision along the anterior lacrimal crest or a straight incision 8 mm medial to the medial canthus is made (Fig. 16.11A).

3. **Exposure of medial palpebral ligament (MPL) and anterior lacrimal crest.** MPL is exposed by blunt dissection and cut with scissors to expose the anterior lacrimal crest.

4. **Dissection of lacrimal sac.** Periosteum is separated from the anterior lacrimal crest and along with the lacrimal sac is reflected laterally with blunt dissection exposing the lacrimal fossa (Fig. 16.11B).

5. **Exposure of nasal mucosa.** A 15 mm × 10 mm bony osteum is made by removing the anterior lacrimal crest and the bones forming lacrimal fossa, exposing the thick pinkish white nasal mucosa (Fig. 16.11C).

6. **Preparation of flaps of sac.** A probe is introduced into the sac through lower canaliculus and the sac is incised vertically. To prepare anterior and posterior flaps, this incision is converted into H shape (Fig. 16.11D).

7. **Fashioning of nasal mucosal flaps** is also done by vertical incision converted into H shape (Fig. 16.11D).

8. **Suturing of flaps.** Posterior flap of the nasal mucosa is sutured with posterior flap of the sac using 6-0 vicryl or chromic cat gut sutures. It is followed by suturing of the anterior flaps (Figs 16.11E and F).

9. **Closure.** MPL is sutured to periosteum, orbicularis muscle is sutured with 6-0 vicryl and skin is closed with 6-0 silk sutures.

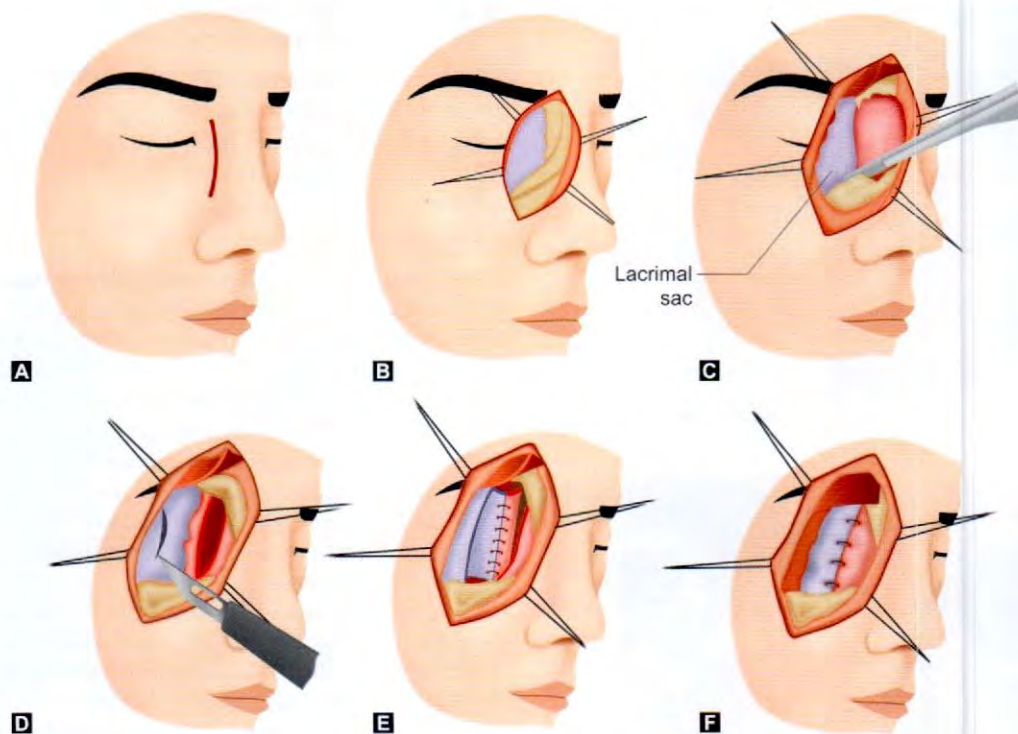
#### Endonasal DCR

Presently many eye surgeons, alone or in collaboration with the ENT surgeons, are preferring endonasal DCR over conventional external approach DCR because of its advantages.

**Surgical steps of endonasal DCR** are (Fig. 16.12):

1. **Preparation and anaesthesia.** Nasal mucosa is prepared for 15–30 minutes before operation with nasal decongestant drops and local anaesthetic agent. Conjunctival sac is anaesthetised with





**Fig. 16.11** Surgical steps of external dacryocystorhinostomy: A, Skin incision; B, Exposure of bony lacrimal fossa; C, Preparation of bony osteum and exposure of nasal mucosa; D, Preparation of flaps of the nasal mucosa and lacrimal sac; E, Suturing of posterior flaps; F, Suturing of anterior flaps

topically instilled 2% lignocaine. Then 3 mL of lignocaine 2% with 1 in 2 lac adrenaline is injected into the medial parts of upper and lower eyelids and via subcaruncular injection to the lacrimal fossa region.

**2. Identification of sac area.** A 20-gauge light pipe is inserted via the upper canaliculi into the sac. With the help of endoscope, the sac area which is transilluminated by the light pipe is identified (Fig. 16.12A) and a further injection of lignocaine with adrenaline is made below the nasal mucosa in this area.

**3. Creation of opening in the nasal mucosa, bones forming the lacrimal fossa and posteromedial wall of sac** can be accomplished by two techniques:

- i. By cutting the tissues with appropriate instruments or
- ii. By ablating with Holmium YAG laser (endoscopic laser-assisted DCR).

**Note.** The size of opening is about 12 mm × 10 mm (Fig. 16.12B).

**4. Stenting of rhinostomy opening.** The outflow system is then stented using fine silicone tubes passed via the

superior and inferior canaliculi into the rhinostomy and secured with a process of knotting (Fig. 16.12C). Nasal packing and dressing is done.

**5. Postoperative care and removal of silastic lacrimal stents.** After 24 hours of operation nasal packs are removed and patient is advised to use decongestant, antibiotic and steroid nasal drops for 3–4 weeks. The silastic lacrimal stents are removed 8–12 weeks after surgery and the nasal drops are continued further for 2–3 weeks.

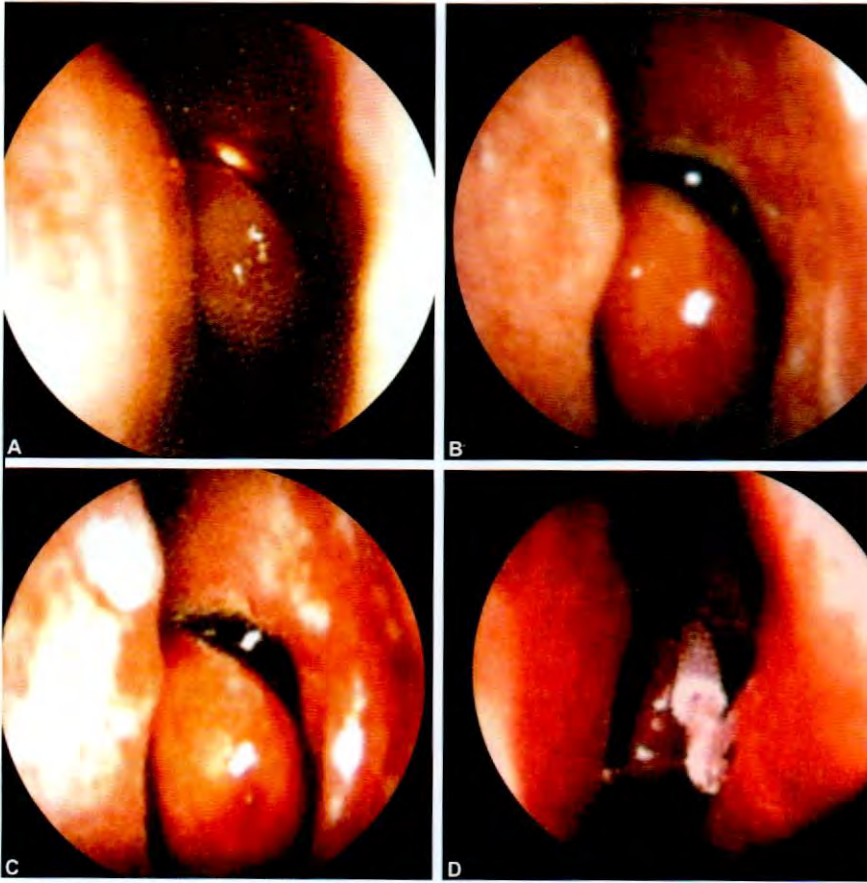
#### Advantages and disadvantages of endonasal DCR vis-a-vis external DCR

Advantages and disadvantages of endoscopic DCR vis-a-vis external DCR are summarized in Table 16.1.

#### Endocanalicular Laser DCR

In this technique, laser probe is passed through a canaliculus up to the medial wall of sac. An opening is created by ablating the posteromedial wall of the sac, bone forming the lacrimal fossa and adjacent nasal mucosa. It is performed with a Holmium YAG or KTP laser. This is a quick procedure and can be carried out under local anaesthesia. It is particularly useful for the elderly patients. Success rate is only





**Fig. 16.12** Surgical steps of endonasal DCR: A, Endoscopic identification of sac area in the middle meatus; B and C, Opening created in the middle meatus; D, Stenting of rhinostomy opening with fine silicone tubes

70%. Failure can be tackled either by endonasal surgical DCR or conventional external DCR.

### ■ SURGICAL TECHNIQUE OF DACTRYOCYSTECTOMY (DCT) 10m

**1 to 4 steps** are same as for external DCR operation (page 413).

**5. Removal of lacrimal sac.** After exposing the sac, it is separated from the surrounding structures by blunt dissection followed by cutting its connections from the lacrimal canaliculi. It is then held with artery forceps and twisted 3–4 times to tear it away from the nasolacrimal duct (NLD).

**6. Curettage of bony NLD** is done with the help of a lacrimal curette to remove the infected parts of membranous NLD.

**7. Closure** is done as for external DCR (Step 9 page 413).

## SWELLINGS OF LACRIMAL GLAND

### ■ DACTRYOADENITIS

Dacryoadenitis, i.e. inflammation of lacrimal gland may be acute or chronic.

#### I. Acute dacryoadenitis

**Etiology.** It may develop as a primary inflammation of the gland or secondary to some local or systemic infection. Dacryoadenitis secondary to local infections occurs in trauma, erysipelas of the face, conjunctivitis (especially gonococcal and staphylococcal) and orbital cellulitis. Dacryoadenitis secondary to systemic infections is associated with mumps, influenza, infectious mononucleosis and measles.

**Clinical features.** Acute inflammation of the palpebral part is characterised by *a painful swelling in the lateral part of the upper lid*. The lid becomes red and swollen with a typical S-shaped curve of its margin (Fig. 16.13). Acute dacryoadenitis of orbital part produces some *painful proptosis* in which the eyeball moves down and in. A *fistula* in the upper and lateral quadrant of the upper lid may develop as a complication of suppurative dacryoadenitis.

**Treatment.** It consists of a course of appropriate systemic antibiotic, analgesic and anti-inflammatory drugs along with hot fomentation. When pus is formed, incision and drainage should be carried out.



**Table 16.1** Advantages and disadvantages of endonasal DCR vis-a-vis external DCR

| Endonasal DCR                                                                                   | External DCR                                             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Advantages</b>                                                                               | <b>Disadvantages</b>                                     |
| • No external scar                                                                              | • Cutaneous scar                                         |
| • Relatively blood less surgery                                                                 | • Relatively more bleeding during surgery                |
| • Better visualisation of nasal pathology                                                       |                                                          |
| • Less chances of injury to ethmoidal vessels and cribriform plate                              | • Potential injury to adjacent medial canthus structures |
| • Less time consuming (15–30 minutes) since nasal mucosal flaps and sac wall flaps are not made | • More operating time (45–60 minutes)                    |
| • No postoperative morbidity                                                                    | • Significant postoperative morbidity                    |
| <b>Disadvantages</b>                                                                            | <b>Advantages</b>                                        |
| • Less success rate (70–90%)                                                                    | • More success rate (95%)                                |
| • Requires skilled ophthalmologist and/or rhinologist                                           | • Easily performed by ophthalmologists                   |
| • Expensive equipment                                                                           | • Cheap (expensive equipment not required)               |
| • Requires reasonable access to middle meatus and familiarity with endoscopic anatomy           | • Does not require familiarity with endoscopic anatomy   |

**Fig. 16.13** A patient with bilateral dacryoadenitis: note, S-shaped curve of upper eyelid**II. Chronic dacryoadenitis**

It is characterised by engorgement and simple hypertrophy of the gland.

**Etiology.** Chronic dacryoadenitis may occur:

- As sequelae to acute inflammation;
- In association with chronic inflammations of conjunctiva and;

- Due to systemic diseases such as tuberculosis, syphilis and sarcoidosis.

**Clinical features.** These include (i) a painless swelling in upper and outer part of lid associated with ptosis; (ii) eyeball may be displaced down and in; and (iii) diplopia may occur in up and out gaze.

*On palpation*, a firm lobulated mobile mass may be felt under the upper and outer rim of the orbit.

**Differential diagnosis** from other causes of lacrimal gland swellings is best made after fine needle aspiration biopsy or incisional biopsy.

**Treatment** consists of treating the cause.

**■ MIKULICZ'S SYNDROME**

It is characterised by bilaterally symmetrical enlargement of the lacrimal and salivary glands associated with a variety of systemic diseases. These include: leukaemias, lymphosarcomas, benign lymphoid hyperplasia, Hodgkin's disease, sarcoidosis and tuberculosis.

**■ DACRYOPS**

It is a cystic swelling, which occurs due to retention of lacrimal secretions following blockage of the lacrimal ducts.

**■ TUMOURS OF THE LACRIMAL GLAND**

These are not so common and in a simplified way can be classified as below:

**I. Epithelial tumours of lacrimal gland.** These account for 50% tumorous swellings of lacrimal gland and include:

1. *Benign epithelial tumours.* These include 'benign mixed tumour' which accounts for 50% of epithelial tumours and 25% of all tumours of lacrimal gland.
2. *Malignant epithelial tumours.* These also constitute 25% of all cases and 50% of epithelial tumours and include: malignant mixed tumour, adenoid cystic carcinoma, mucoepidermoid carcinoma and adenocarcinoma.

**II. Non-epithelial tumours of lacrimal gland.**

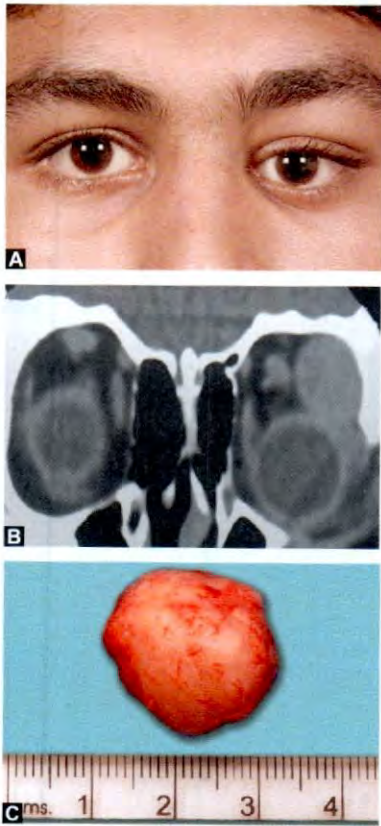
These constitute approximately 50% of all cases and include:

1. *Lymphoproliferative tumours* (See page 439) and
2. *Inflammatory conditions* such as idiopathic orbital inflammatory disease (See page 430), sarcoidosis, and Mikulicz's syndrome.

**Epithelial tumours of lacrimal gland****Pleomorphic adenoma**

Also known as benign mixed tumour, is the commonest benign lacrimal gland tumour and occurs predominantly in young adult males.





**Fig. 16.14** A, Down and in displacement of left eyeball in a patient with benign mixed tumour; B, CT scan coronal view showing well defined mass in superotemporal quadrant; C, Well circumscribed benign mixed tumour removed by lateral orbitotomy

**Clinically**, it presents as a slowly progressive painless swelling in the upper-outer quadrant of the orbit displacing the eyeball downwards and inwards (Fig. 16.14). It is locally invasive and may infiltrate its own pseudocapsule to involve the adjacent periosteum.

**Histologically**, it is characterised by presence of pleomorphic myxomatous tissue, just like benign mixed tumour of salivary gland.

**Treatment** consists of complete surgical removal with the capsule. Recurrences are very common following incomplete removal.

### Lacrimal gland carcinoma

Lacrimal gland malignancies, occurring in 4th–5th decade of life are comparatively rare but have a high mortality. In order of the frequency, the main histological types are:

- Adenoid cystic carcinoma,
- Pleomorphic adenocarcinoma,
- Mucoepidermoid carcinoma, and
- Squamous cell carcinoma.

**Clinical features.** Lacrimal gland malignancies present as a painful mass of short duration in superotemporal quadrant of the orbit causing inferonasal dystopia. There may be associated sensory loss and paraesthesia in the region supplied by lacrimal nerve.

**CT scan** often shows an infiltrative tumour moulding the globe.

**Treatment** includes complete macroscopic excision and high-dose radiotherapy to the orbit.



## Diseases of Orbit

### APPLIED ANATOMY

- Bony orbit
- Orbital fascia
- Contents of orbit
- Surgical spaces in orbit

### PROPTOSIS

- Classification
- Etiology
- Investigations

### Enophthalmos

### DEVELOPMENTAL ANOMALIES

### OF THE ORBIT

### ORBITAL INFECTIONS AND INFLAMMATIONS

#### Classification

#### Orbital infections

- Preseptal cellulitis
- Orbital cellulitis and intraorbital abscess
- Orbital mucormycosis

- Cavernous sinus thrombosis

### Non-infective orbital inflammations

- Idiopathic orbital inflammatory disease (pseudotumour)
- Tolosa-Hunt syndrome

### Thyroid eye disease

- Etiopathogenesis
- Clinical profile
- Management

### CAROTID-CAVERNOUS FISTULA

### ORBITAL TUMOURS

- Primary orbital tumours
- Secondary orbital tumours
- Metastatic orbital tumours

### ORBITAL BLOW-OUT FRACTURES

### ORBITAL SURGERY

- Orbitotomy
- Exenteration

### APPLIED ANATOMY

#### ■ BONY ORBIT

The bony orbits are quadrangular truncated pyramids situated between the anterior cranial fossa above and the maxillary sinuses below (Fig. 17.1). Each orbit is a pear-shaped cavity, the stalk of which is the optic canal, and measures about 40 mm in height, width and depth. It is formed by portions of seven bones: (1) frontal, (2) maxilla, (3) zygomatic, (4) sphenoid, (5) palatine, (6) ethmoid and (7) lacrimal. It has four walls (medial, lateral, superior and inferior), base and an apex.

**Medial walls** of the two orbits are parallel to each other and, being thinnest, are frequently fractured during injuries as well as during orbitotomy operations and, also accounts for ethmoiditis being the commonest cause of orbital cellulitis.

**Inferior orbital wall** (floor) is triangular in shape and being quite thin is commonly involved in blow-out fractures and is easily invaded by tumours from the maxillary antrum.

**Lateral wall of the orbit** is triangular in shape. It covers only posterior half of the eyeball. Therefore,

palpation of the retrobulbar tumours is easier from this side. Because of its advantageous anatomical position, a surgical approach to the orbit by lateral orbitotomy is popular.

**Roof** of the orbit is triangular in shape and is formed mainly by the orbital plate of frontal bone.

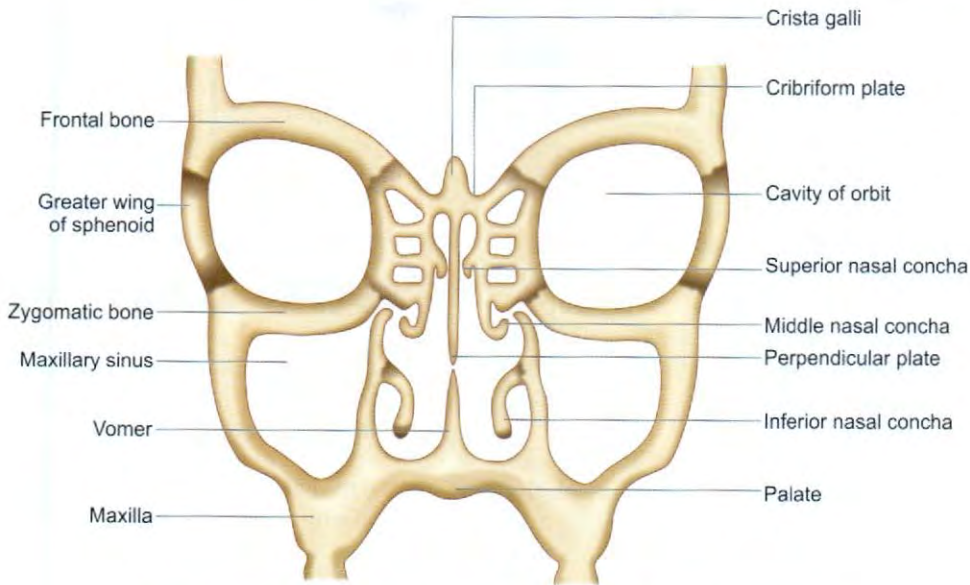
**Base of the orbit** is the anterior end which opens in the face and is bounded by thick orbital margins.

**Orbital apex** (Fig. 17.2). It is the posterior end of orbit where the four orbital walls converge. It has two orifices, the *optic canal* which transmits optic nerve and ophthalmic artery and the *superior orbital fissure* which transmits a number of nerves, arteries and veins (See Fig. 14.2).

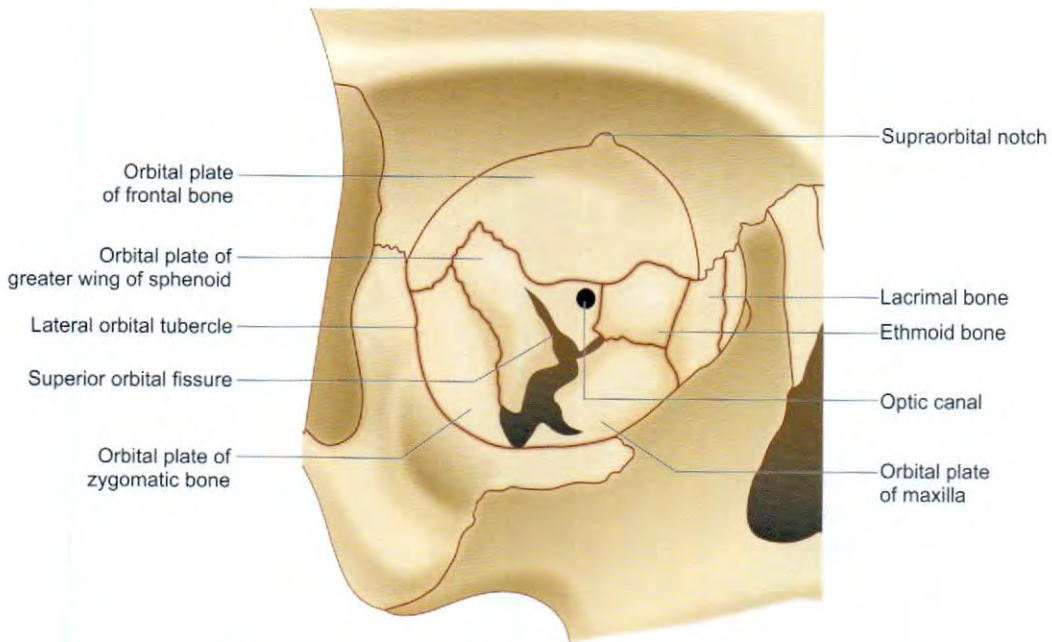
#### ■ ORBITAL FASCIA

It is a thin but tough connective tissue membrane lining the various intraorbital structures. Though, it is one continuous tissue, but for the descriptive convenience, it has been divided into fascia bulbi, muscular sheaths, intermuscular septa, membranous expansions of the extraocular muscles and ligament of Lockwood. **Fascia bulbi** (Tenon's capsule) envelops the globe from the margins of cornea to the optic nerve. Its lower part is thickened to form a sling or





**Fig. 17.1** Schematic coronal section through the orbits and nasal cavity



**Fig. 17.2** Schematic view of the orbital cavity and orbital rim

hammock on which the globe rests; this is called 'suspensory ligament of Lockwood.'

#### ■ CONTENTS OF ORBIT

The *volume* of each orbit is about 30 cc. Approximately one-fifth of it is occupied by the eyeball. Other

contents of the orbit include: part of optic nerve, extraocular muscles, lacrimal gland, lacrimal sac, ophthalmic artery and its branches, third, fourth and sixth cranial nerves and ophthalmic and maxillary divisions of the fifth cranial nerve, sympathetic nerve, orbital fat and fascia.



### ■ SURGICAL SPACES IN ORBIT

These are of importance as most orbital pathologies tend to remain in the space in which they are formed. Therefore, their knowledge helps the surgeon in choosing the most direct surgical approach. Each orbit is divisible into four surgical spaces (Fig. 17.3).

**1. Subperiosteal space.** This is a potential space between the bone and the periorbita (periosteum).

**2. Peripheral space.** It is bounded peripherally by the periorbita and internally by the four recti with thin intermuscular septa. Tumours present here produce eccentric proptosis and can usually be palpated. For peribulbar anaesthesia, injection is made in this space.

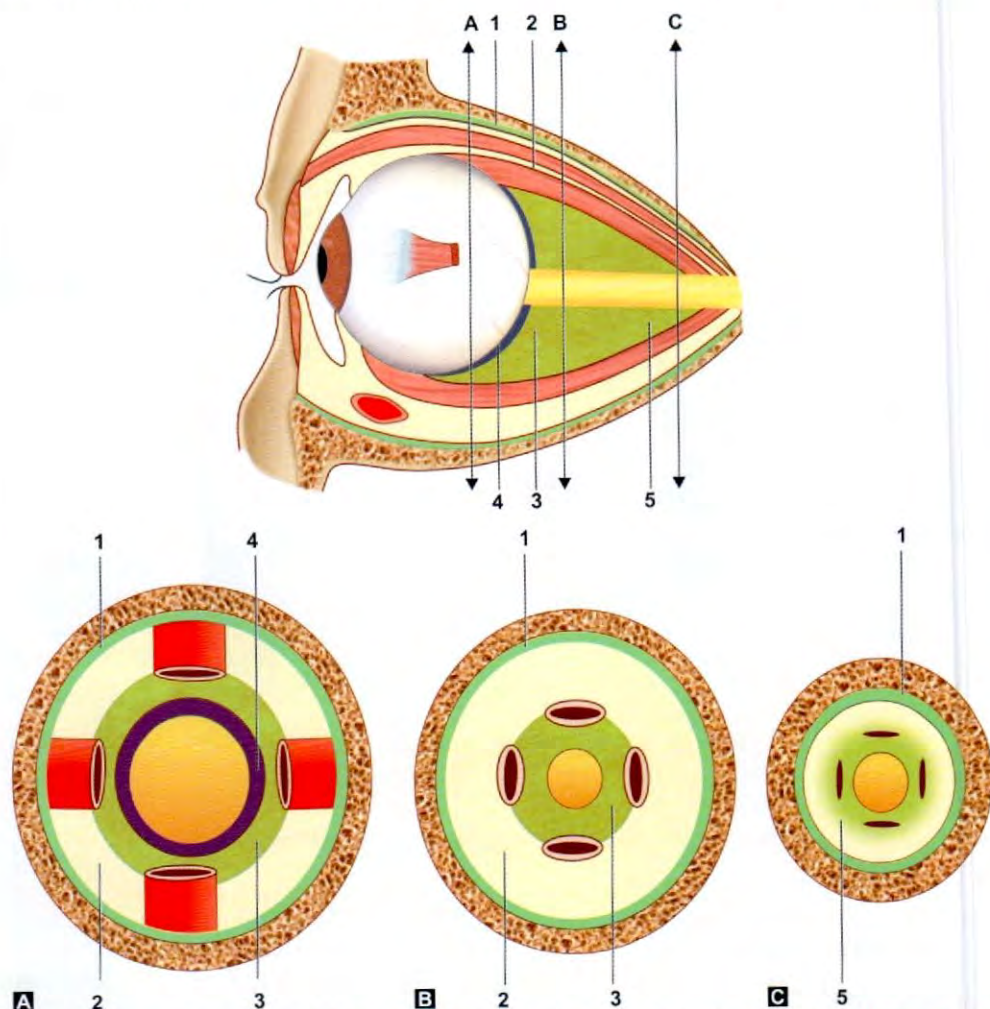
**3. Central space.** It is also called *muscular cone* or *retrobulbar space*. It is bounded anteriorly by the Tenon's capsule lining back of the eyeball and

peripherally by the four recti muscles and their intermuscular septa in the anterior part. In the posterior part, it becomes continuous with the peripheral space. Tumours lying here usually produce axial proptosis. Retrobulbar injections are made in this space.

**4. Sub-Tenon's space.** It is a potential space around the eyeball between the sclera and Tenon's capsule.

### PROPTOSIS

Proptosis is defined as forward displacement of the eyeball beyond the line joining the superior and inferior orbital margins. Though the word exophthalmos (out eye) is synonymous with proptosis; but somehow it has become customary to use the term exophthalmos for the displacement associated with thyroid eye disease.



**Fig. 17.3** Schematic sections of the orbital cavity to demonstrate surgical spaces of the orbit. Above sagittal section; below coronal sections at levels A, B, C (1. subperiosteal space; 2. peripheral space; 3. central space; 4. Tenon's space; 5. peripheral and central spaces merged with each other at the orbital apex)



## ■ CLASSIFICATION

Proptosis can be divided into following clinical groups:

- Unilateral proptosis
- Bilateral proptosis
- Acute proptosis
- Intermittent proptosis
- Pulsating proptosis.

## ■ ETIOLOGY

Important causes of proptosis in each clinical group are listed here:

### A. Causes of unilateral proptosis

1. *Congenital conditions.* These include: dermoid cyst, congenital cystic eyeball, and orbital teratoma.
2. *Traumatic lesions.* These are: orbital haemorrhage, retained intraorbital foreign body, traumatic aneurysm and emphysema of the orbit.
3. *Inflammatory lesions.* Acute inflammations are orbital cellulitis, abscess, thrombophlebitis, panophthalmitis, and cavernous sinus thrombosis (proptosis is initially unilateral but ultimately becomes bilateral). Chronic inflammatory lesions include: pseudotumours, tuberculoma, gumma and sarcoidosis.
4. *Circulatory disturbances and vascular lesions.* These are: angioneurotic oedema, orbital varix and aneurysms.
5. *Cysts of orbit.* These include: haematic cyst, implantation cyst and parasitic cyst (hydatid cyst and cysticercus cellulosae).
6. *Tumours of the orbit.* These can be primary, secondary or metastatic (See page 435).
7. *Mucocele of paranasal sinuses,* especially frontal (most common), ethmoidal and maxillary sinus are common causes of unilateral proptosis.
8. *Systemic diseases,* e.g. leukaemias and thyroid eye disease are initially unilateral.
9. *Paralysis of extraocular muscles,* as in external ophthalmoplegia, due to decrease in tone of the extraocular muscles.

**Note.** Most common cause of unilateral proptosis in children is orbital cellulitis and in adults is thyroid ophthalmopathy.

### B. Causes of bilateral proptosis

1. *Developmental anomalies of the skull:* Craniofacial dysostosis, e.g. oxycephaly (tower skull).
2. *Osteopathies:* Osteitis deformans, rickets and acromegaly.
3. *Inflammatory conditions:* Mikulicz's syndrome and late stage of cavernous sinus thrombosis.

4. *Endocrinal exophthalmos:* It may be thyrotoxic or thyrotropic.

5. *Tumours:* These include symmetrical lymphoma or lymphosarcoma, secondaries from neuroblastoma, nephroblastoma, Ewing's sarcoma and leukaemic infiltration.

6. *Systemic diseases:* Histiocytosis, systemic amyloidosis, xanthomatosis and Wegener's granulomatosis.

**Note.** Most common cause of bilateral proptosis in children is neuroblastoma and leukemia (chloroma) and in adults is thyroid ophthalmopathy.

### C. Causes of acute proptosis

It develops with extreme rapidity (sudden onset). Its common causes are: orbital emphysema, fracture of the medial orbital wall, orbital haemorrhage and rupture of ethmoidal mucocele.

### D. Causes of intermittent proptosis

This type of proptosis appears and disappears on its own. Its common causes are: orbital varix, periodic orbital oedema, recurrent orbital haemorrhage and highly vascular tumours. *Most important cause of intermittent proptosis is orbital varix*, in which proptosis develops intermittently and rapidly in one eye when venous stasis is induced by forward bending or lowering of the head, turning the head forcefully, hyperextension of the neck, coughing, forced expiration with or without compression of the nostrils, or pressure on the jugular veins.

### E. Causes of pulsatile proptosis

Pulsatile proptosis is caused by:

- *Pulsating vascular lesions* such as carotico-cavernous fistula and saccular aneurysm of ophthalmic artery.
- *Due to transmitted cerebral pulsations* in conditions associated with deficient orbital roof. These include congenital meningocele or meningoencephalocele, neurofibromatosis and traumatic or operative hiatus.

## ■ INVESTIGATIONS

### I. Clinical evaluation

#### A. History

It should include: age of onset, nature of onset, duration, progression, chronology of orbital signs and symptoms, and associated, systemic symptoms.

#### B. Local examination

It should be carried out as follows:

##### 1. Inspection should be performed:

**To differentiate proptosis from pseudoproptosis.**

Pseudoproptosis is a condition in which the eyeball



appears to be proptosed but actually there is no forward displacement.

- **Causes of pseudoproptosis** are buphthalmos, high axial myopia, retraction of upper lid (e.g. stimulation of the Muller's muscle by cocaine) and enophthalmos of the opposite eye.

**To ascertain whether the proptosis is unilateral or bilateral,**

**To note the shape of the skull,**

**To observe whether proptosis is axial or eccentric,**

**Axial proptosis** is a feature of intraconal masses and thyroid ophthalmopathy.

**Eccentric proptosis** is produced by extraconal masses as given below:

- Medially placed masses**, e.g. ethmoidal sinus mucocoele/tumours and subperiosteal collection, will produce lateral eccentricity.
- Laterally placed masses**, e.g. lacrimal gland enlargement, will push the eyeball down and medially.
- Superiorly located masses**, e.g. frontal sinus mucocoele, encephalocoele, lacrimal gland mass, sphenoid wing meningioma, orbital roof fracture and nerve sheath tumours will produce inferior displacement of the eyeball.
- Inferiorly located masses**, e.g. maxillary sinus tumours, and lymphoproliferative disorders, will produce superior displacement of the eyeball.

**2. Palpation.** It should be carried out for retrodisplacement of globe to know compressibility of the tumour.

**Retrodisplacement** of globe is analysed as below:

- Increased resistance indicates solid tumors, while
- Increased compressibility suggests soft and vascular tumors.

**Palpation is also carried out for:**

- Orbital rims (to rule out the possibility of fracture)
- Localizing anterior orbital masses
- Orbital thrill (highly vascular tumors)
- Paranasal sinuses (inflammation)
- Regional lymph nodes (particularly, preauricular lymph nodes which might suggest an infection or neoplasia).

**3. Auscultation.** It is primarily of value in searching for abnormal vascular communications that generate a bruit, such as caroticocavernous fistula.

**4. Transillumination.** It is helpful in evaluating anterior orbital lesions.

**5. Visual acuity.** Orbital lesions may reduce visual acuity by three mechanisms: refractive changes due to pressure on back of the eyeball, optic nerve compression and exposure keratopathy.

**6. Pupil reactions.** The presence of Marcus Gunn pupil is suggestive of optic nerve compression.

**7. Fundoscopy.** It may reveal venous engorgement, haemorrhage, disc oedema and optic atrophy. Choroidal folds and opticociliary shunts may be seen in patients with meningiomas.

**8. Ocular motility.** It is restricted in thyroid ophthalmopathy, extensive tumour growths and neurological deficit.

**9. Exophthalmometry.** It evaluates the degree of forward displacement of the globe. It measures the forward distance between the lateral orbital rim and apex of cornea, with the eyes looking straight ahead. Normal values vary between 10 and 21 mm and are symmetrical in both eyes. A difference of more than 2 mm between the two eyes is considered significant. The simplest instrument to measure proptosis is *Luedde's exophthalmometer* (Fig. 17.4). However, the *Hertel's exophthalmometer* (Fig. 17.5) is the most commonly used instrument. Its advantage is that it measures the two eyes simultaneously.

**10. Perimetry** is useful for assessing optic nerve function and temporal change.

### C. Systemic examination

A thorough examination should be conducted to rule out systemic causes of proptosis such as

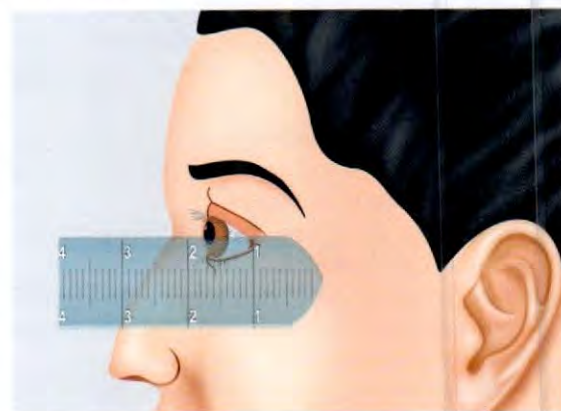


Fig. 17.4 Luedde's exophthalmometer



Fig. 17.5 Hertel's exophthalmometer



thyrotoxicosis, histiocytosis, and primary tumours elsewhere in the body (secondaries in orbits). Otorhinolaryngological examination is necessary when the paranasal sinus or a nasopharyngeal mass appears to be a possible etiological factor.

## II. Laboratory Investigations

These should include:

- Thyroid function tests,
- Haematological studies (TLC, DLC, ESR, VDRL test),
- Casoni's test (to rule out hydatid cyst),
- Stool examination for cysts and ova, and
- Urine analysis for Bence Jones proteins for multiple myeloma.

## III. Imaging techniques

### A. Non-invasive techniques

**1. Plain X-rays.** Though with the availability of CT scan the plain X-rays have little value, but it is still the most frequently used initial radiological investigation. Commonly required exposures are in the *Caldwell view*, the *Water's view*, a lateral view and the *Rhese view* (for optic foramina). X-ray signs of orbital diseases include enlargement of orbital cavity, enlargement of optic foramina, calcification and hyperostosis.

**2. Computed tomography scanning.** Presently, CT is the first line imaging modality for orbital diseases. It is very useful for determining the location and size of an orbital mass. A combination of axial (CAT) and coronal (CCT) cut enables a three-dimensional visualisation. CT scan is capable of visualising various structures like globe, extraocular muscles and optic nerves. Further, this technique is also useful in examining areas adjacent to the orbits such as orbital walls, cranial cavity, paranasal sinuses and nasal cavity. 3-D reconstructions are especially useful in trauma cases.

**Disadvantage** is the inability to distinguish between pathologically soft tissue masses which are radiologically isodense, radiation exposure, and reactions to contrast medium.

**3. Ultrasonography.** It is a non-radiational non-invasive, completely safe and extremely valuable initial scanning procedure for orbital lesions. It is superior to CT scanning in actual tissue diagnosis of orbital lesions and can usually differentiate between solid, cystic, infiltrative and spongy masses. *Doppler flow studies* may help in diagnosing and monitoring vascular lesions such as capillary haemangioma.

**4. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).** A major advance in the imaging techniques is very sensitive for

detecting differences between normal and abnormal tissues due to its excellent image resolution. The technique produces tomographic images which are superficially very similar to CT scan but rely on entirely different physical principles for their production. *MRI* is mainly indicated for diseases located at the orbitocranial junction, e.g. optic sheath tumours. Orbital MRI requires fat-suppression to allow delineation of the soft tissue structures.

**MR angiography** is useful in vascular lesions of the orbit.

### B. Invasive procedures

Before the advent of CT and MR angiography, the invasive investigations were needed for vascular lesions as below:

- *Orbital venography* for the suspected orbital varix,
- *Carotid angiography* for suspected arteriovenous malformations, aneurysm and arteriovenous fistulas.
- *Radioisotope arteriography* in proptosis due to vascular lesions.

**Note.** However, because of the availability of non-invasive techniques of CT and MR *angiography*, most of the vascular lesions can now be easily evaluated without the need of potentially dangerous invasive procedures mentioned above.

## IV. Histopathological studies

The exact diagnosis of many orbital lesions cannot be made without the help of histopathological studies which can be accomplished by the following techniques:

**1. Fine-needle aspiration biopsy (FNAB).** It is a reliable, accurate (95%), quick and easy technique for cytodiagnosis in orbital tumours. The biopsy aspirate is obtained under direct vision in an obvious mass and under CT scan or ultrasonographic guidance in retrobulbar mass using a 23-gauge needle.

**Note.** In general, it is preferable to obtain tissue by open biopsy (incisional or excisional) rather than FNAB, as histology gives better structural representation than cytology. Further, with biopsy tissue many specialized stains and immunohistopathological studies are also possible.

**2. Incisional biopsy.** Undoubtedly, for accurate tissue diagnosis a proper biopsy specimen of at least 5 to 10 mm length is required. Incisional biopsy in the diagnosis of orbital tumours may be undertaken along with frozen tissue study in infiltrative lesions which remain undiagnosed.

**3. Excisional biopsy.** It should always be preferred over incisional biopsy in orbital masses which are well encapsulated or circumscribed. It is performed by



anterior orbitotomy for a mass in the anterior part of orbit and by lateral orbitotomy for a retrobulbar mass.

■ ENOPHTHALMOS

It is the inward displacement of the eyeball. About 50% cases of mild enophthalmos are misdiagnosed as having ipsilateral ptosis or contralateral proptosis.

**Common causes** are:

- 1. *Congenital.* Microphthalmos and maxillary hypoplasia.
- 2. *Traumatic.* Blow out fractures of floor of the orbit.
- 3. *Post-inflammatory.* Cicatrization of extraocular muscles as in the pseudotumour syndromes.
- 4. *Paralytic enophthalmos.* It is seen in Horner's syndrome (due to paralysis of cervical sympathetics).
- 5. *Atrophy of orbital contents.* Senile atrophy of orbital fat, atrophy due to irradiation of malignant tumours, following cicatrizing metastatic carcinoma and due to scleroderma.

DEVELOPMENTAL ANOMALIES OF THE ORBIT

Developmental anomalies of the orbit are commonly associated with abnormalities of skull and facial bones. They are frequently hereditary (autosomal dominant) in origin.

Details of such anomalies are beyond the scope of the book. However, a few salient features of some anomalies are mentioned below:

Craniosynostosis

Craniosynostosis results from premature closure of one or more cranial sutures. Depending upon the suture involved craniosynostosis may be of the following types:

| Anomaly                             | Suture closed prematurely |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| • Brachycephaly (clover-leaf skull) | Coronal sutures           |
| • Oxycephaly (tower-shaped skull)   | Coronal suture            |
| • Scaphocephaly (boat-shaped skull) | Sagittal suture           |
| • Trigonocephaly (egg-shaped skull) | Frontal suture            |
| • Acrocephaly suture                | Multiple cranial          |

Craniofacial dysostosis

Craniofacial dysostosis (Crouzon syndrome) refers to premature closure of coronal and sagittal sutures (brachycephaly) associated with maxillary

hypoplasia. Inheritance is autosomal dominant, but 25% of cases occurs as fresh mutation.

**Ocular features** include:

- *Proptosis* due to shallow orbits,
- *V-pattern exotropia* and *hypertropia*,
- *Hypertelorism*, i.e. widely separated eyeballs (increased interpupillary distance), and
- *Optic atrophy* may occur due to compression at optic foramen.

**Ocular associations** include blue sclera, megalocornea, aniridia, glaucoma, cataract, ectopia lentis and optic nerve hypoplasia.

**Systemic features** are:

- Mental retardation,
- High-arched palate,
- Irregular dentition, and
- Hooked (parrot beak) nose.

Mandibulofacial dysostosis

Mandibulofacial dysostosis (Treacher-Collins syndrome) refers to a condition resulting from hypoplasia of zygoma and mandible.

**Ocular features** include:

- Indistinct inferior orbital margin,
- Coloboma of the lower eyelid, and
- Anti-mongoloid slant.

**Systemic features** are:

- Macrostomia with high-arched palate,
- External ear deformity, and
- Bird-like face.

Median facial cleft syndrome

**Main ocular features** of this anomaly are:

- Hypertelorism,
- Telecanthus, and
- Divergent squint.

**Main systemic features** include:

- Cleft-nose, lip and palate; and
- V-shaped frontal hairline (widow's peak).

Acrocephaly-Syndactyly (Apert Syndrome)

It is the most severe of craniosynostosis in which all the cranial sutures may be involved.

**Systemic features** include:

- Tower skull with flat occiput,
- Mental retardation,
- Ventricular septal defect,
- High arched palate, and
- Syndactyly of the fingers and toes.

**Ocular features** are:

- Hypertelorism—increased IPD,
- Bilateral proptosis due to shallow orbits,
- Congenital ptosis,
- Antimongoloid slant, and
- Divergent squint.



**Ocular associations** include keratoconus, congenital glaucoma and ectopia lentis.

### Hypertelorism

It is a condition of widely separated eyeballs resulting from widely separated orbits and broad nasal bridge.

Hypertelorism may occur de novo or as a part of various syndromes such as Apert syndrome, Crouzon syndrome and median facial cleft syndrome.

**Ocular features** of hypertelorism are:

- Increased interpupillary distance (IPD)—may be 85 mm (normally average IPD in an adult is 60 mm),
- Telecanthus,
- Divergent squint,
- Antimongoloid slant, and
- Optic atrophy may be associated in some cases due to narrow optic canal.

## ORBITAL INFECTIONS AND INFLAMMATIONS

### CLASSIFICATION

#### A. Orbital infections

##### I. Acute orbital and related infections

1. Preseptal cellulitis
2. Orbital cellulitis and intraorbital abscess
3. Orbital osteoperiostitis
4. Orbital thrombophlebitis
5. Tenonitis
6. Cavernous sinus thrombosis.

##### II. Chronic orbital infections

1. Tuberculosis
2. Syphilis
3. Actinomycosis
4. Mycotic infections, e.g. mucormycosis
5. Parasitic infestations.

#### B. Non-infective orbital inflammations

##### I. Isolated orbital inflammations

- a. Diffuse
  - Idiopathic orbital inflammatory disease (IOID)
  - Idiopathic sclerosing inflammation of the orbit
- b. Focal
  - Myositis
  - Dacryoadenitis
  - Tolosa-Hunt syndrome.

##### II. Systemic inflammations

- Thyroid eye disease,
- Wegner's granulomatosis, and
- Sarcoidosis.

Salient features of some infections and inflammations of the orbit are described here.

### A. ORBITAL INFECTIONS

#### ■ PRESEPTAL CELLULITIS

Preseptal (or periorbital) cellulitis refers to infection of the subcutaneous tissues anterior to the orbital septum. Strictly speaking it is not an orbital disease but is included here under because the facial veins are valveless and preseptal cellulitis may spread posteriorly to produce orbital cellulitis.

#### Etiology

**Causative organisms** are usually *Staphylococcus aureus* or *Streptococcus pyogenes* and occasionally *Haemophilus influenzae*.

**Modes of infection.** The organisms may invade the preseptal tissue by any of the following modes.

1. *Exogenous infection* may result following skin lacerations, insect bites and eyelid operations.
2. *Extension from local infections* such as from an acute hordeolum or acute dacryocystitis.
3. *Endogenous infection* may occur by haematogenous spread from remote infection of the middle ear or upper respiratory tract.

#### Clinical features

Preseptal cellulitis presents as inflammatory oedema of the eyelids and periorbital skin with no involvement of the orbit.

**Characteristic features** are (Fig. 17.6):

- Painful acute periorbital swelling,
- Erythema and hyperaemia of the lids,
- Fever and leukocytosis may be associated,
- Proptosis is absent,
- Ocular movements are normal,
- Conjunctiva is usually not congested, and
- Visual acuity is normal.



Fig. 17.6 Preseptal cellulitis



### Treatment

1. **Systemic antibiotics**, form the mainstay of treatment.

- **Mild-to-moderate cases** may be treated by oral co-amoxiclav 500/125 mg tds or flucloxacillin 500 mg QID for about 10 days.
- **Severe cases** need hospitalization for intravenous ceftriaxone, 1–2 g/day in divided doses, for 4–5 days. Then treat as mild cases.

2. **Systemic analgesics** and anti-inflammatory drugs help in reducing pain and swelling.

3. **Warm compresses**, 2–3 times a day, have a soothing effect.

4. **Surgical exploration** and debridement is required in the presence of a fluctuant mass or abscess, or when retained foreign body is suspected.

### ■ ORBITAL CELLULITIS AND INTRAORBITAL ABSCESS

Orbital cellulitis refers to an acute infection of the soft tissues of the orbit behind the orbital septum. Orbital cellulitis may or may not progress to a subperiosteal abscess or orbital abscess.

### Etiology

#### Modes of infection

1. **Exogenous infection.** It may result from penetrating injury especially when associated with retention of intraorbital foreign body, and following operations like evisceration, enucleation, dacryocystectomy and orbitotomy.

2. **Extension of infection from neighbouring structures.** These include paranasal sinuses, teeth, face, lids, intracranial cavity and intraorbital structures. It is the commonest mode of orbital infections.

3. **Endogenous infection.** It may rarely develop as metastatic infection from breast abscess, puerperal sepsis, thrombophlebitis of legs and septicaemia.

#### Causative organisms

Those commonly involved are: *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Streptococcus pyogenes* and *Haemophilus influenzae*.

### Pathology

Pathological features of orbital cellulitis are similar to suppurative inflammations of the body in general, except for the following special features:

- **Infection establishes early** due to absence of lymphatics in the orbit.
- **Rapid spread with extensive necrosis** is common since in most cases infection spreads as thrombophlebitis from the surrounding structures.
- **Damage produced is rapid and extensive** as orbital infection is associated with raised intraorbital pressure due to the tight compartment.

### Clinical features

**Symptoms** include:

- **Swelling and severe pain** (which is increased by movements of the eyeball or pressure) are main symptoms.
- **Associated general symptoms** include fever, nausea, vomiting and prostrations.
- **Vision loss** and/or **diplopia** may be complained by patients with moderate to advanced disease.

**Signs** of orbital cellulitis (Fig. 17.7) are:

- **Swelling of lids**, characterised by woody hardness and redness, is usually marked.
- **Chemosis of conjunctiva**, which may protrude and become desiccated or necrotic.
- **Axial proptosis** of varying degree is present.
- **Restriction of ocular movements**, mild to severe, is frequently present.
- **RAPD** may occur due to complications in the form of optic neuropathy or central retinal artery occlusion.
- **Fundus examination** may show congestion of retinal veins and signs of papillitis or papilloedema.

### Complications

These are quite common if not treated promptly.

1. **Ocular complications** usually cause vision loss and include exposure keratopathy, optic neuritis and central retinal artery occlusion.

2. **Orbital complications** are progression of orbital cellulitis into subperiosteal abscess and/or orbital abscess:

i. **Subperiosteal abscess** is a collection of purulent material between the orbital bony wall and periosteum, most frequently located along the medial orbital wall. Clinically, subperiosteal abscess



Fig. 17.7 Orbital cellulitis in a three-year-old female child



is suspected when clinical features of orbital cellulitis are associated with eccentric proptosis; and the diagnosis is confirmed by CT scan.

**ii. Orbital abscess** is collection of pus within the orbital soft tissue. Clinically, it is suspected by signs of severe proptosis, marked chemosis, complete ophthalmoplegia, and pus points below the conjunctiva, and is confirmed by CT scan.

**3. Temporal or parotid abscesses** may occur due to spread of infection around the orbit.

**4. Intracranial complications** include cavernous sinus thrombosis, meningitis and brain abscesses.

**5. General septicemia or pyaemia** may occur eventually in few cases.

### Investigations

1. *Bacterial cultures* should be performed from nasal and conjunctival swabs and blood samples.
2. *Complete haemogram* may reveal leukocytosis.
3. *X-ray PNS* to identify associated sinusitis.
4. *Orbital ultrasonography* to detect intraorbital abscess.
5. *CT scan and MRI* are useful:
  - In differentiating preseptal and postseptal cellulitis;
  - In detecting subperiosteal abscesses;
  - Orbital abscesses,
  - In detecting intracranial extension; and
  - In deciding when and from where to drain an orbital abscess.

### Treatment

Orbital cellulitis is an emergency and so the patient should be hospitalised for aggressive management.

**1. Intensive antibiotic therapy** should be initiated to overcome the infection. After obtaining nasal, conjunctival and blood culture samples, intravenous antibiotics should be administered:

- For *Staphylococcal infections* high doses of penicillinase-resistant antibiotic (e.g. oxacillin) combined with ampicillin should be given.
- Cefotaxime, ciprofloxacin or vancomycin may be used alternative to oxacillin and penicillin combination.
- To cover *H. influenzae* especially in children, chloramphenicol or clavulanic acid should also be added.
- To cover anaerobes oral metronidazole 500 mg every 8 hours. should be added.

**2. Analgesic and anti-inflammatory drugs** are helpful in controlling pain and fever.

**3. Topical antibiotic eye ointment**, QID, for corneal exposure and chemosis when there is severe proptosis.

**4. Nasal decongestant drops** should be started.

**5. Reevaluation**, at least twice to thrice daily in the hospital, is required to monitor the response and modify the treatment accordingly.

**6. Surgical intervention.** Its indications include unresponsiveness to antibiotics, decrease in vision and presence of an orbital or subperiosteal abscess. Surgical intervention may be required as follows:

- *Immediate canthotomy/cantholysis* may be needed, if the orbit is tight, an optic neuropathy is present, or the IOP is severely elevated.
- *A free incision into the abscess* should be made when it points under the skin or conjunctiva.
- *Subperiosteal abscess is drained* by a 2–3 cm curved incision in the upper medial aspect.
- In most cases, it is necessary to drain both the orbit as well as the infected paranasal sinuses.

### ■ ORBITAL MUCORMYCOSIS

**Etiology.** Mucormycosis, also known as phacomycosis, is an aggressive fungal infection of the orbit. The most common fungal genera causing infections are *Mucor* (mucormycosis) and *Rhizopus*. Infection usually begins in the sinuses and erodes into the orbital cavity. The organisms have a tendency to invade vessels and cause ischemic necrosis. A necrotizing reaction destroys muscles, bone and soft tissues, frequently without causing signs of orbital cellulitis.

**Clinical features.** Mostly patients prone to such infections are either diabetics or immunocompromised such as those with renal failure, malignant tumours and those on antimetabolite or steroid therapy. So, most of the patients are seriously ill and present with:

- Pain
- Proptosis, and
- Necrotic areas with black eschar formation may be seen on the mucosa of palate, turbinates and nasal septum and skin of eyelids (Fig. 17.8).

**Complications.** If not treated energetically, patient may develop meningitis, brain abscess and die within days to weeks.

**Diagnosis** is made clinically and confirmed by biopsy of the involved area and finding of nonseptate broad branching hyphae.

**Treatment** is often difficult and inadequate. Therefore, recurrences are common. Treatment includes:

- *Correction of underlying disease* (e.g. diabetic ketoacidosis) if possible;





**Fig. 17.8** Areas of black-eschar and necrosis on the eyelids in a patient with rhino-orbital mucormycosis

- Surgical excision of the involved tissue; and
- Intravenous amphotericin B or other appropriate antifungal drug.
- Adjunctive hyperbaric oxygen may be helpful.
- Exenteration may be required in severe unresponsive cases.

### ■ CAVERNOUS SINUS THROMBOSIS

Cavernous sinus thrombosis, refers to infected blood clot. It is described along with infections of the orbit as it also manifests as acute inflammatory type of proptosis.

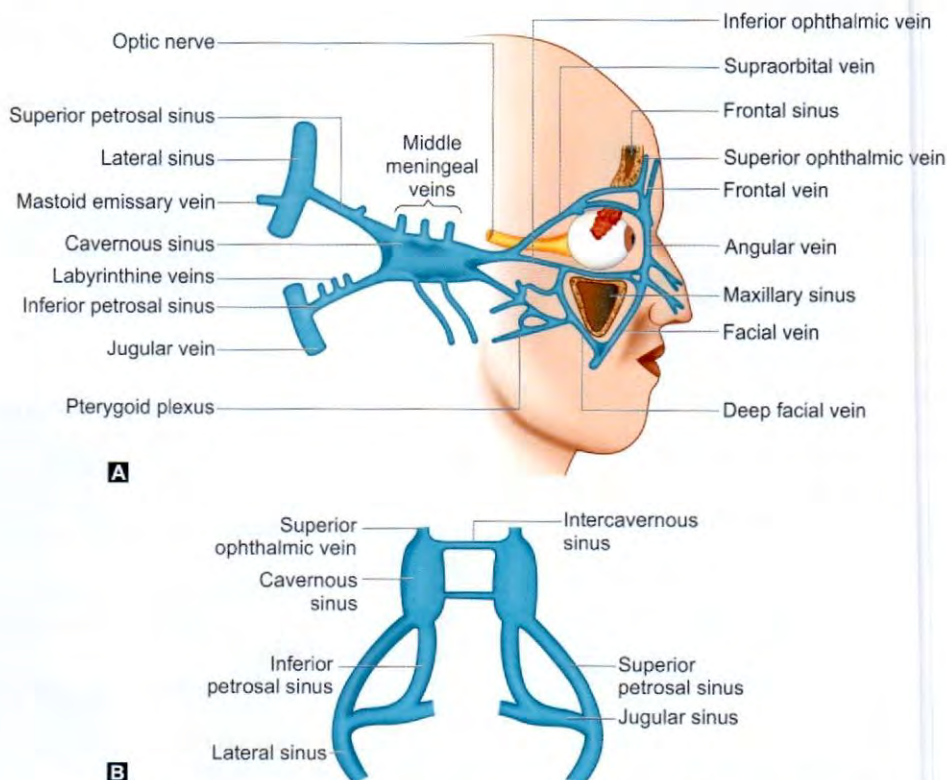
#### Etiology

Septic thrombosis of the cavernous sinus is a disastrous sequelae, resulting from spread of sepsis travelling along its tributaries from the infected sinuses, teeth, ears, nose, and skin of the face. Very rarely cavernous sinus thrombosis may also occur after trauma (head injury).

#### Communications of cavernous sinus and sources of infection (Fig. 17.9)

**1. Anteriorly**, the superior and inferior ophthalmic veins drain in the sinus. These veins receive blood from face, nose, paranasal sinuses and orbits. Therefore, infection to cavernous sinus may spread from infected facial wounds, erysipelas, squeezing of sty, furuncles, orbital cellulitis and sinusitis.

**2. Posteriorly**, the superior and inferior petrosal sinuses leave it to join the lateral sinus. Labyrinthine veins opening into the inferior petrosal sinuses bring



**Fig. 17.9** Tributaries of the cavernous sinus: A, Lateral view; B, Superior view



infections from the middle ear. Mastoid emissary veins may spread infection from the mastoid air cells.

**3. Superiorly**, the cavernous sinus communicates with veins of the cerebrum and may be infected from meningitis and cerebral abscesses.

**4. Inferiorly**, the sinus communicates with pterygoid venous plexus.

**5. Medially**, the two cavernous sinuses are connected with each other by transverse sinuses which account for transfer of infection from one side to the other.

### Clinical features

Cavernous sinus thrombosis (CST) starts initially as a unilateral condition, which soon becomes bilateral in more than 50% of cases due to intercavernous communication. Therefore, appearance of signs and symptoms in the opposite eye is diagnostic of CST. The condition is characterised by general and ocular features.

**General features.** Mostly patient is seriously ill having abrupt on set of high grade fever with chills and rigors, vomiting and headache.

**Ocular features** include:

- **Severe pain** in the eye and forehead on the affected side.
- **Vision loss** is not an early feature. Late vision loss may occur.
- **Conjunctiva** is swollen and congested.
- **Proptosis** develops rapidly.
- **Ipsilateral ophthalmoplegia**, causing diplopia, may occur due to palsy of 3rd, 4th and 6th cranial nerves. Ophthalmoplegia is sequential with 6th nerve palsy occurring first of all as it passes through the cavernous sinus; 3rd and 4th nerves

are involved later as they are related to the lateral wall of cavernous sinus.

- **Ipsilateral ptosis**, dilated pupil, and absence of direct as well as consensual pupillary light reflex are signs of 3rd nerve palsy.
- **Corneal anaesthesia**, i.e. loss of corneal reflex, may occur due to involvement of the ophthalmic division of 5th cranial nerve.
- **Oedema in mastoid region** is a pathognomic sign. It is due to back pressure in the mastoid emissary vein.
- **Fundus** may be normal with unimpaired vision in early cases. In advanced cases, retinal veins show congestion and there may appear papilloedema.

### Investigations

- **CT scan head and orbit** may show involvement of cavernous sinuses and proptosis.
- **Magnetic resonance venography (angiography)** is the investigation of choice which shows an absence of flow void in thrombosed sinuses.
- **Blood culture** is recommended for sepsis.

### Complications

At any stage, hyperpyrexia and signs of meningitis or pulmonary infarction may precede death.

### Differential diagnosis

The rapidly developing, acute inflammatory type of proptosis seen in cavernous sinus thrombosis needs to be differentiated from orbital cellulitis and panophthalmitis as summarised in Table 17.1.

### Treatment

1. **Antibiotics** are the sheet anchor of treatment. Massive doses of modern potent broad spectrum antibiotics should be injected intravenously.

**Table 17.1** Differential diagnosis of acute inflammatory proptosis

| Clinical features                                | Cavernous sinus thrombosis                       | Orbital cellulitis          | Panophthalmitis                                         |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Laterality                                    | Initially unilateral, but soon becomes bilateral | Unilateral                  | Unilateral                                              |
| 2. Degree of proptosis                           | Moderate                                         | Marked                      | Moderate                                                |
| 3. Vision                                        | Not affected in early stage                      | Not affected in early stage | Complete loss of vision from the beginning              |
| 4. Cornea and anterior chamber                   | Clear in early stages                            | Clear in early stages       | Hazy due to corneal oedema. Pus in the anterior chamber |
| 5. Ocular movements                              | Complete limitation to palsy                     | Marked limitation           | Painful and limited                                     |
| 6. Oedema in mastoid region                      | Present                                          | Absent                      | Absent                                                  |
| 7. General symptoms with fever, and prostrations | Marked                                           | Mild                        | Mild                                                    |



2. *Analgesics* and anti-inflammatory drugs control pain and fever.
3. *Anticoagulants' role* is controversial.

## B. NON-INFECTIVE ORBITAL INFLAMMATIONS

### ■ IDIOPATHIC ORBITAL INFLAMMATORY DISEASE (PSEUDOTUMOUR)

The term '*pseudotumour*' was coined for those conditions of the orbit which clinically presented as tumours but histopathologically proved to be chronic inflammations. However, recently, the use of this term has been restricted for an idiopathic localized inflammatory disease consisting principally of a lymphocytic infiltration associated with a polymorphonuclear cellular response and a fibrovascular tissue reaction that has a variable but self-limiting course. Since, etiology is not known exactly, the 'non-specific orbital inflammatory diseases (NSOIDS)'; presently, *idiopathic orbital inflammatory disease (IOID)* is the term being preferred to denote this condition.

#### Clinical features

IOID (Fig. 17.10) can occur throughout the orbit from the region of lacrimal gland to the orbital apex and thus produce varied clinical presentations.

#### General features

The most commonly noted features are:

- *Age*. The condition typically affects individuals between 40 and 50 years; however, age is no bar.
- *Laterality*. Most cases are unilateral, although both sides may be involved occasionally.
- *Spontaneous remissions*. After few weeks, are known in IOID.
- *Recurrences* are also common.



Fig. 17.10 Pseudotumour involving the right orbit

#### Presenting ocular features

Depending upon the primary site of involvement, the IOID can present as:

- I. *Diffuse anterior IOID*, or
- II. *Focal IOID* in any of the following forms:
  - Orbital myositis,
  - Dacryoadenitis, or
  - Apical IOID

#### Diffuse anterior IOID

- *Presenting ocular features* are swelling or puffiness of the eyelids, congestive proptosis, orbital pain, restricted ocular movements, diplopia, chemosis and redness.
- *Optic nerve dysfunction* may occur when inflammation involves the posterior orbit.
- *Severe prolonged inflammation* in some patients may cause progressive fibrosis of the orbital tissues leading to a *frozen orbit* with visual impairment.

#### Diagnosis

- *Clinically*, IOID is suspected only by exclusion of the known conditions.
- *Ultrasonic and CT scanning* show a diffuse infiltrative lesion with irregular ill-defined margins, and variable density.
- *MRI* shows hypointense lesion c.f. muscle on T1 and hyperintense lesion c.f. muscle on T2. There occurs moderate enhancement with gadolinium. *Fine-needle aspiration biopsy* may give histological clue.
- *Incisional biopsy* may be needed to confirm the diagnosis in persistent cases.

#### Treatment

- *Observation* is suggested in anticipation of spontaneous remission, for relatively mild disease.
- *NSAIDs* are effective in some cases and should be tried before the steroid therapy.
- *Systemic steroids* should preferably be administered after the diagnostic biopsy, as they may mask other pathologies such as infections and Wegner granulomatosis. Oral prednisolone 60–80 mg of prednisolone per day for 2 weeks, initially and then to be tapered gradually forms the mainstay of treatment. Usually, more than half of the patients show a positive response.
- *Radiotherapy* is usually effective in patients nonresponsive to steroid therapy.
- *Cytotoxic agents*. Such as methotrexate or mycophenolate mofetil may be required in patients resistant to steroid and radiation therapy.
- *Tumour necrosis factor inhibitor*, e.g. systemic infliximab, may be required in recurrent and



recalcitrant cases despite full conventional therapy.

- *Surgical resection* of an inflammatory focus may be contemplated in highly resistant cases.

### ■ TOLOSA-HUNT SYNDROME

Tolosa-Hunt syndrome refers to the idiopathic non-specific granulomatous inflammation involving the superior orbital fissure, and/or orbital apex.

#### Clinical features

Clinically, it manifests as *painful ophthalmoplegia* and depending upon the extent of involvement may present as superior orbital fissure syndrome or orbital apex syndrome.

**Superior orbital fissure syndrome** refers to the symptom complex produced by involvement of the structures passing through the superior orbital fissure. It is characterized by:

- *Pain*, typically labeled as retro-orbital ache,
- *Sensory loss/disturbances* in the distribution of ophthalmic division of 5th cranial nerve.
- *Ipsilateral ophthalmoplegia* due to 3rd, 4th, and 6th cranial nerve involvement.
- *Ptosis* due to 3rd nerve paralysis.

**Orbital apex syndrome** refers to the symptom complex produced by involvement of structures present at the apex of orbit, i.e. structures passing through the superior orbital fissure and the optic canal. So the features of orbital apex syndrome include:

- *Features of superior orbital fissure* described above, and
- *Features of optic nerve involvement*, i.e. early visual loss and afferent pupillary defect.

**Note.** In addition to Tolosa-Hunt syndrome other conditions which can involve the orbital apex such as infections, non-infective inflammations, neoplasms or trauma can also present with similar symptom complex.

#### Treatment

- *Systemic steroids* remain the mainstay of treatment of Tolosa-Hunt syndrome.
- *Radiotherapy* may be effective in cases non-responsive to steroid therapy.

### ■ THYROID EYE DISEASE

The term thyroid eye disease (TED) denotes typical ocular changes which include lid retraction, lid lag, and proptosis. These changes have also been labelled as: endocrine exophthalmos, malignant exophthalmos, dysthyroid ophthalmopathy, ocular Graves' disease (OGD), Graves' ophthalmopathy

(GO), and thyroid associated ophthalmopathy (TAO).

#### Etiopathogenesis

Thyroid eye disease may be associated with hyperthyroidism (in 90% cases), hypothyroidism (4%) or even euthyroidism (6%).

#### Risk factors

- *Female sex* (4–6 times more common than males).
- *Smoking* (Risk is directly related to the number of cigarettes smoked per day).
- *Middle age*. Most cases occur in middle age.
- *Autoimmune thyroid disease*.
- HLA-DR3 and HLA-B8.

#### Pathogenesis

Thyroid eye disease is being considered an autoimmune disease with orbital fibroblasts as the primary target of inflammatory attack and extraocular muscles being secondarily involved.

- It is probable that the *target antigen* is shared between the thyroid follicular cells and orbital fibroblasts.
- *T-cells, probably, act on the fibroblast-adipocyte lineage* within the orbit and stimulate adipogenesis, fibroblast proliferation, and glycosaminoglycan synthesis.
- *Extraocular muscles are enlarged* as a consequence due to edema and infiltration with round cells.
- *Orbital soft tissue shows* increased amounts of acid mucopolysaccharide and infiltration with lymphocytes, plasma cells, macrophages and mast cells.

#### Clinical profile

##### Clinical features (Fig. 17.11)

1. *Lid signs.* These are:

- *Retraction of the upper lids* producing the characteristic staring and frightened appearance (*Dalrymple's sign*); is the most common and earliest clinical feature (90% of cases).



**Fig. 17.11** A patient with Graves' ophthalmopathy having bilateral exophthalmos and lid retraction



- **Lid lag (von Graefe's sign)**, i.e. when globe is moved downward, the upper lid lags behind (50% cases).
- **Fullness of eyelids** due to puffy oedematous swelling (**Enroth's sign**);
- **Difficulty in eversion** of upper lid (**Gifford's sign**).
- **Infrequent blinking** (**Stellwag's sign**).
- Increased pigmentation of the lids (**Jellinek's sign**).
- Poor forehead wrinkling on looking up (**Joffroy's sign**).

**2. Conjunctival signs.** These include 'deep injection' and 'chemosis'.

**3. Pupillary signs.** These are of less importance and may be evident as inequality of dilatation of pupils.

**4. Ocular motility defects.** These range from convergence weakness (**Mobius's sign**) to partial or complete immobility of one or all of the extrinsic ocular muscles (40% of cases). The most common ocular motility defect is a unilateral elevator palsy caused by an involvement of the inferior rectus muscle followed by failure of abduction due to involvement of medial rectus muscle. It is important to note that due to *restrictive ocular myopathy* the eyeball may be deviated towards the action of involved muscle with restriction of ocular motility in opposite direction. For example in medial rectus involvement, the eyeball may deviate medially with restriction of abduction in spite of the lateral rectus being normal.

**5. Exophthalmos.** It is second most common (60%) and classical sign of the disease, as a rule both eyes are symmetrically affected; but it is frequent to find one eye being more prominent than the other. Even unilateral proptosis is not uncommon. Thus, Grave's ophthalmopathy is the commonest cause of both unilateral as well as bilateral proptosis in adults. In majority of cases, it is self-limiting.

**6. Exposure keratitis and symptoms of ocular surface discomfort.** These include sandy or gritty sensation, lacrimation and photophobia. Corneal exposure has been attributed to upper lid retraction, exophthalmos, lagophthalmos, inability to elevate the eyes and a decreased blink rate.

**7. Optic neuropathy.** It occurs in about 60% of cases due to direct compression of the nerve or its blood supply by the enlarged rectus muscles at the orbital apex. It may manifest as papilloedema or optic atrophy with associated slowly progressive impairment of vision.

### Classification

**1. American Thyroid Association (ATA)** has classified Graves' ophthalmopathy, irrespective of the

hormonal status into following classes, characterised by the acronym 'NOSPECS'.

**Class 0 : N :** No signs and symptoms.

**Class 1 : O :** Only signs, no symptoms (signs are limited to lid retraction, with or without lid lag and mild proptosis).

**Class 2 : S :** Soft tissue involvement with signs (as described in Class 1) and symptoms including lacrimation, photophobia, lid or conjunctival swelling.

**Class 3 : P :** Proptosis is well established.

**Class 4 : E :** Extraocular muscle involvement (limitation of movement and diplopia).

**Class 5 : C :** Corneal involvement (exposure keratitis).

**Class 6 : S :** Sight loss due to optic nerve involvement with disc pallor or papilloedema and visual field defects.

**II. EUGOGO Classification of the Severity of the Ophthalmopathy.** The management of patients with TAO depends on the degree of severity of the ophthalmopathy, which is established according to the impact of the disease on the patient's quality of life and the risk of vision loss. The disease is classified as mild, moderate, severe, or sight-threatening as follows:

**1. Mild TAO:** characteristics of TAO have a minimum impact on the patient's life. They usually present with one or more of the following signs:

- Minor lid retraction (<2 mm).
- Mild soft tissue involvement.
- Exophthalmos <3 mm (above the normal range for the race and gender).
- Transient or no diplopia.
- Corneal exposure responsive to lubricants.

**2. Moderate-to-severe TAO:** patients without sight-threatening GO whose eye disease has sufficient impact on daily life to justify the risks of immunosuppression (if active) or surgical intervention (if inactive). Patients usually present one or more of the following signs:

- Lid retraction (>2 mm).
- Moderate or severe soft tissue involvement.
- Exophthalmos ≥3 mm (above the normal range for the race and gender).
- Inconstant, or constant diplopia.

**3. Sight-threatening TAO:** patients with

- Dysthyroid optic neuropathy
- Corneal breakdown due to severe exposure
- Ocular globe subluxation
- Severe forms of frozen eye
- Choroidal folds
- Postural visual darkening

This category warrants immediate intervention.



**Note.** As a rule of thumb, it is considered that all patients who do not have a mild or a sight-threatening ophthalmopathy present a moderate-to-severe disease.

### Clinical course

Thyroid eye disease (TED) is a self-limiting disease that lasts from 1–5 years (longer in smokers as compared to non-smokers). Its clinical course is divided into two phases:

**1. Congestive or Active phase** of increasing severity is characterized by active inflammation with marked lid oedema, conjunctival chemosis and congestion and increasing exophthalmos. Within 2 to 3 years, in majority of cases, there starts regression and most of the signs slowly settle down.

**2. Fibrotic or Inactive phase**, also known as quiescent burnt-out phase, ensues after the regression phase. In this phase, eyes are white, however, a painless motility defect may be present.

### Diagnosis

#### Clinical diagnosis

Clinical diagnosis is not difficult in advanced cases of Graves' ophthalmopathy with bilateral proptosis.

However, early cases having unilateral proptosis need to be differentiated from other causes of unilateral proptosis of adulthood onset (See page 421).

### Investigations

**1. Thyroid function tests.** These should include: serum T3, T4, TSH and estimation of radioactive iodine uptake.

**2. Thyroid autoantibody assay** may include anti TSH receptors, anti-thyroid peroxidase, anti-thyroglobulin, and thyroid stimulating antibodies. Some of these have poor sensitivity and specificity.

**3. Ultrasonography.** It can detect changes in extraocular muscles even in class 0 and class 1 cases and thus helps in early diagnosis. Enlargement of the extraocular muscles without enlargement of tendon in the hallmark of thyroid ophthalmopathy. The extraocular muscle involvement in order of decreasing frequency is inferior rectus (most common) > medial rectus > superior rectus > lateral rectus > oblique. In addition to the increase in muscle thickness, erosion of temporal wall of orbit, accentuation of retrobulbar fat and perineural inflammation of optic nerve can also be demonstrated in some early cases.

**4. Computerised tomographic scanning.** It may show proptosis, muscle thickness, thickening of optic nerve and anterior prolapse of the orbital septum (due to excessive orbital fat and/or muscle swelling).

**5. MRI** (T2-weighted and STIR) gives better soft tissue resolution and identifies active disease.

### Management

Management of thyroid eye disease (TED), described below, it is in addition to and independent of the therapy for the associated thyroid dysfunction; as the latter usually does not alter the course of ophthalmic features. Management of TED includes:

- Periodic clinical work up,
- Non-surgical measures, and
- Surgical management.

#### A. Periodic clinical work up

It is essential to document the clinical course of the disease periodically to decide the treatment required and to monitor the effect of therapy.

**Clinical activity score** has been described to measure the activity of disease at a given time. Total score is noted by giving a score of 1 for each of the following 10 features:

- |                          |                                                                   |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Pain:</i>             | 1. Retrobulbar pain,                                              |
|                          | 2. Pain on ocular movement,                                       |
| <i>Redness:</i>          | 3. Redness of lids,                                               |
|                          | 4. Redness (congestion) of conjunctiva,                           |
| <i>Swelling:</i>         | 5. Swelling of lids,                                              |
|                          | 6. Swelling (chemosis) of conjunctiva,                            |
|                          | 7. Swelling of caruncle,                                          |
|                          | 8. Proptosis ( $\geq 2$ mm increase in proptosis over 1–3 months, |
| <i>Loss of function:</i> | 9. Decrease in eye movement by $\pm 5^\circ$ over 1–3 months,     |
|                          | 10. Decreased vision by $\geq 1$ Snellen line over 1–3 months.    |

**Ocular motility work up.** In addition to eye movements, the ocular motility workup should also include:

- Field of binocular single vision.
- Field of uniocular fixation, and
- Hess/Lees charting to decide the intervention required.

#### B. Non-surgical management

1. **Smoking cessation** should be insisted with the patients as it may markedly influence the course of disease.
2. **Head elevation** at night and **cold compresses** in the morning help in reducing periorbital oedema.
3. **Lubricating artificial tear drops** instilled frequently in the day time and ointment at bed time are useful for relief of foreign body sensation and other symptoms of dry ocular surface.
4. **Eyelid taping** at night prevents complication of exposure.



5. *Guanethidine 5% eye drops* may decrease the lid retraction caused by overaction of Muller's muscle.
6. *Prisms* may be prescribed to alleviate annoying diplopia till the quiescent phase is reached.
7. *Systemic steroids* may be indicated in acutely inflamed orbit with rapidly progressive chemosis and proptosis with or without optic neuropathy.
8. *Radiotherapy*. 2000 rads given over 10 days period may help in reducing orbital oedema in patients where steroids are contraindicated. However, radiotherapy may transiently worsen the disease.
9. *Combined therapy* with low dose steroids, azathioprine and irradiation is reported to be more effective than steroids or radiotherapy alone.

### C. Surgical management

**During active phase**, orbital decompression may be required for an acutely progressive optic neuropathy and/or exposure keratitis, in patients who do not respond to energetic steroid therapy.

**During quiescent burn-out phase**, the surgical management is required to improve function and cosmesis.

**A stepwise surgical approach**, starting with orbital decompression (if required to restore normal globe position) followed by extraocular muscle surgery (for diplopia if still persisting) followed by eyelid surgery is recommended. Alteration of this sequence may lead to unpredictable results.

**1. Orbital decompression** may be carried out by an external or endoscopic approach and may involve 2, 3 or 4 walls:

- *Two-wall decompression*, in which part of the orbital floor and medial wall are removed, allows 3–6 mm of replacement of the globe.
- *Three-wall decompression* involves removal of parts of the floor, medial wall and lateral wall, and allows about 6–10 mm of retroplacement of the globe.
- *Four-wall decompression* involves removal of lateral half of roof and large portion of sphenoid at the apex, in addition to three-wall removal as above. This allows 10–16 mm of retroplacement of the globe and is indicated very rarely in patients with severe proptosis.

**2. Extraocular muscle surgery** should always be carried out after the orbital decompression, since the latter may alter extraocular motility. Extraocular muscle surgery in the form of recession is required to achieve binocular single vision in the primary gaze and

reading position. *Inferior rectus recession* is the most commonly performed surgery.

**3. Eyelid surgery**, when required, should be undertaken last, as the extraocular muscle surgery may affect eyelid retraction. As temporary measures, before the definitive surgical correction, the *botulinum toxin* injection aimed at Muller's muscle and LPS muscle may be used, if so desired by the patient. Eyelid surgery for definitive correction may include:

- *Mullerectomy*, i.e. disinsertion of Muller's muscle is required for mild lid retraction.
- *Levator recession/disinsertion* may be required for moderate to severe upper eyelid retraction.
- *Scleral grafts* with LPS recession may be required in very severe cases.
- *Recession of lower eyelid retractors* may be required to correct more than 2 mm retraction of lower eyelid.
- *Blepharoplasty*. It may be performed by removal of excess fatty tissue and redundant skin from around the eyelids.

## CAROTID-CAVERNOUS FISTULA

Carotid-cavernous fistula is an acquired abnormal communication between the carotid arterial system and the venous cavernous sinus.

### Clinical types

There are two type of carotid-cavernous fistula:

**High-flow fistula:** These are secondary to trauma or iatrogenic and present acutely with pain, proptosis (often pulsatile exophthalmos). Chemosis, congestion, bruit, ophthalmoplegia (III–VI nerve palsies), headache, and objective pulsatile tinnitus. The classical triad of presentation is proptosis, chemosis, and bruit. It presents within days or weeks following trauma.

**Low-flow fistula:** These develop spontaneously in elder women, during pregnancy or in those with hyperplastic tissue. These typically present slowly with less pronounced symptoms.

### Differential diagnosis

Common causes of proptosis after trauma are:

- Carotid-cavernous fistula
- Retro-orbital haematoma
- Superior orbital fissure syndrome
- Orbital apex syndrome.

**Note.** The differentiating feature of CCF from other conditions is the presence of conjunctival congestion and chemosis.



### Investigations

- *Selective carotid angiography* using digital subtraction technique is the investigation of choice and essential if the treatment is contemplated.
- *Magnetic resonance angiography (MRA)* are also used commonly.

### Treatment

A carotid-cavernous fistula requires a definitive treatment, which currently involves *endovascular technique*. The fistula can usually be occluded with a balloon or coil without sacrifice of the carotid artery.

## ORBITAL TUMOURS

Orbital tumours include primary, secondary and metastatic tumours.

**A. Primary tumours.** Those arising from the various orbital structures are as follows:

1. *Developmental tumours:* Dermoid, epidermoid, lipodermoid and teratoma.
2. *Vascular tumours:* Capillary and cavernous haemangioma, haemangiopericytoma and lymphangioma.
3. *Adipose tissue tumours:* Liposarcoma
4. *Fibrous tissue tumours:* Fibroma, fibrosarcoma and fibromatosis.
5. *Osseous and cartilaginous tumours:* Osteoma, chondroma, osteoblastoma, osteogenic sarcoma after irradiation, fibrous dysplasia of bone, and Ewing's sarcoma.
6. *Mesenchymal tumours:* Rhabdomyoma and fibrous histiocytoma.
7. *Neural tumours:* Optic nerve glioma, optic nerve sheath meningioma, neurofibroma, neurofibromatosis and schwannoma.
8. *Tumours of lacrimal gland include:* Epithelial tumours (benign and malignant mixed tumours and adenocarcinoma) and non-epithelial tumours.
9. *Lymphoproliferative disorders include:* Benign reactive lymphoid hyperplasia, malignant orbital lymphomas, Langerhan cell histiocytosis, plasma cell tumours and, xanthogranuloma.

**B. Secondary tumours,** spreading from surrounding structures include squamous cell carcinoma (most common), malignant melanoma, adenocarcinoma, retinoblastoma.

**C. Metastatic tumours,** from distant primary tumours.

### ■ A. PRIMARY ORBITAL TUMOURS

#### I. Developmental tumours

##### 1. Dermoids

These are common developmental tumours which arise from an embryonic displacement of the

epidermis to a subcutaneous location. The cystic component is lined with keratinizing epithelium and may contain one or more dermal adnexal structures such as hair follicles and sebaceous glands. Dermoids are of two types:

**a. Superficial dermoid.** It is seen in infancy. Appears as a firm, round, localised lesion in the upper temporal or upper nasal aspect of the orbit. These do not extend deep into the orbit and are not associated with bony defects. Displacement of globe is also not seen as these are located anterior to the orbital septum (Fig. 17.12).

**b. Deep dermoids.** These present during adolescence with proptosis or a mass lesion having indistinct posterior margins (as they arise from deeper sites). They may be associated with bony defects. *Treatment of dermoids* is surgical excision. Care should be taken not to leave behind the contents of cyst which are potentially irritating.

#### 2. Epidermoid

Epidermoids are composed of epidermis without any epidermal appendages in the wall of the cyst. These are almost always cystic. The cyst wall contains keratin debris. *Treatment* is surgical excision.

#### 3. Lipodermoids

These are solid tumours usually seen beneath the conjunctiva. These are mostly located adjacent to the superior temporal quadrant of the globe (Fig. 17.13). These do not require any surgical intervention unless they enlarge significantly. (Also See page 95).

#### 4. Teratomas

Teratomas (Fig. 17.14) are composed of ectoderm, mesoderm and endoderm. These may be solid, cystic or a mixture of both. The cystic form is more prevalent. Most of these are benign but some solid tumours in newborns are malignant.



Fig. 17.12 Dermoid right orbit





**Fig. 17.13** Lipodermoid



**Fig. 17.14** Congenital teratoma

**Treatment.** Exenteration is usually performed for solid tumours to effect a permanent cure. Cystic tumours may be excised without removing the eyeball.

## II. Vascular tumours

These are the most common primary benign tumours of the orbit. These can be either haemangiomas or lymphangiomas. *Haemangiomas* are further divided into two types—capillary and cavernous.

### 1. Capillary haemangioma

It is commonly seen at birth or during the first month. It appears as periocular swelling in the anterior part of the orbit. It tends to increase in size on straining or crying. This tumour may initially grow in size followed by stabilization and then regression and disappearance.

**Treatment.** These tumours usually do not require any treatment.

■ **Indications for treatment are:** optic nerve compression, exposure keratitis, ocular dysfunction or cosmetic blemish.

■ **Modes of therapy are:**

- Systemic and/or intralesional steroids,
- Low-dose superficial radiations,
- Surgery and cryotherapy.
- *Systemic beta blocker* (propranolol) constitutes a new and very promising treatment modality.

### 2. Cavernous haemangioma

It is the commonest benign orbital tumour among adults with female preponderance (70%). The tumour is usually located in the retrobulbar muscle cone. So, it presents as a slowly progressing unilateral axial proptosis in the second to fourth decade of life. It may occasionally compress the optic nerve without causing proptosis.

**Treatment.** Surgical excision of the tumour is undertaken via lateral orbitotomy approach. Since the tumour is well encapsulated, complete removal is generally possible.

### 3. Lymphangioma

It is an uncommon tumour presenting with slowly progressive proptosis in a young person. It often enlarges suddenly because of spontaneous bleed within the vascular spaces, leading to formation of 'chocolate cysts' which may regress spontaneously.

## III. Mesenchymal tumours

### Rhabdomyosarcoma

It is a highly malignant tumour of the orbit arising from the pluripotent mesenchymal cells which have the potential to differentiate into striated muscles. It is the most common primary orbital tumour among children, usually occurring below the age of 15 years (90%), slightly more common in males.

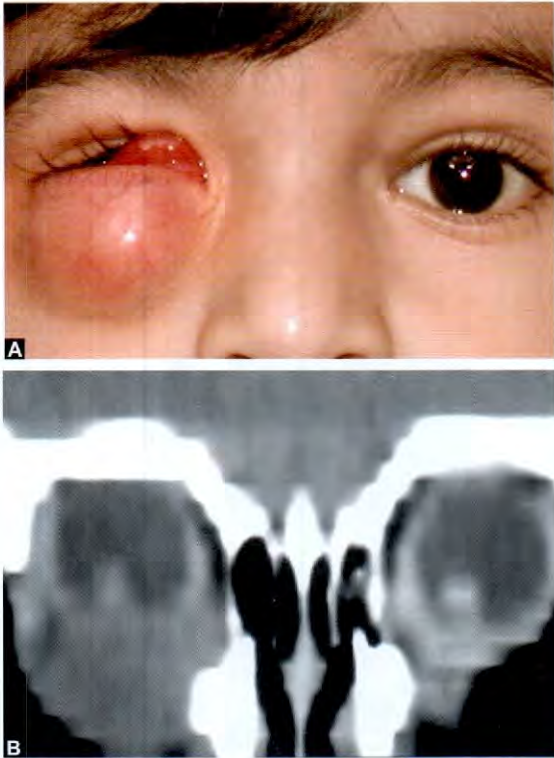
**Histopathologically** rhabdomyosarcoma may be of following types:

- Embryonal sarcoma, commonest (60%), followed by,
- Alveolar sarcoma (31%)
- Botryoid (6%),
- Spindle cells (3%), and
- Anaplastic, previously called as Pleomorphic sarcoma (least common).

**Clinical features.** It classically presents as rapidly progressive proptosis of sudden onset in a child of 7–8 years (Fig. 17.15). The clinical presentation mimics an acute inflammatory process. The tumour commonly involves the superonasal quadrant; but may invade any part of the orbit.

**Diagnosis.** The clinical suspicion is supported by X-rays showing bone destruction and CT/MRI scan demonstrating irregular but well-defined tumour





**Fig. 17.15** Rhabdomyosarcoma in inferior quadrant: A, Clinical photograph; B, CT scan shows inferior orbital mass

with adjacent bone destruction. Diagnosis is confirmed by biopsy.

**Treatment** includes:

- **Surgical excision biopsy** is possible only for a well circumscribed localised tumour.
- **Chemotherapy** regime consists of Vincristine 2 mg/m<sup>2</sup> on day 1 and 5, actinomycin-D 0.015 mg/kg IV once a day for 5 days and cyclophosphamide 10 mg/kg once a day for 3 days; to be repeated every 4 weeks for a period of 2 years. Chemotherapy generally results in a good prognosis in embryonal sarcomas but not in alveolar sarcomas (most malignant).
- **Radiation therapy** in high dose (5000 rads in 5 weeks) combined with systemic chemotherapy is very effective.
- **Exenteration** is required in a few unresponsive patients.

#### IV. Neural tumours

##### 1. Optic nerve glioma

It is a slow growing tumour arising from the astrocytes. It usually occurs in first decade of life. It may present either as a solitary tumour or as a part

of von Recklinghausen's neurofibromatosis (30%). Optic nerve alone is affected in 28% of cases, 72% involve the optic chiasma, often with mid-brain and hypothalamic involvement.

**Clinical features.** It is characterised by gradual visual loss associated with a gradual, painless, unilateral axial proptosis occurring in a child usually between 4 and 8 years of age (Fig. 17.16A). Fundus examination may show optic atrophy (more common) or papilloedema and venous engorgement. Intracranial extension of the glioma through optic canal is not uncommon.

**Diagnosis.** Clinical diagnosis is well supported by X-rays showing uniform regular rounded enlargement of optic foramen in 90% of cases (Fig. 17.16B) and CT scan and ultrasonography depicting a fusiform growth in relation to optic nerve (Figs 17.16C and D).

**Treatment** includes:

- **Observation** is recommended for patients having stationary tumour, with good vision, and non-disfiguring proptosis.
- **Surgical excision** of the tumour mass with preservation of the eyeball, by lateral orbitotomy when the cosmetically unacceptable proptosis is present in a blind eye (due to optic atrophy). Tumours with intracranial extensions are dealt with the neurosurgeons.
- **Radiotherapy** should be given in unoperable cases.

##### 2. Meningiomas

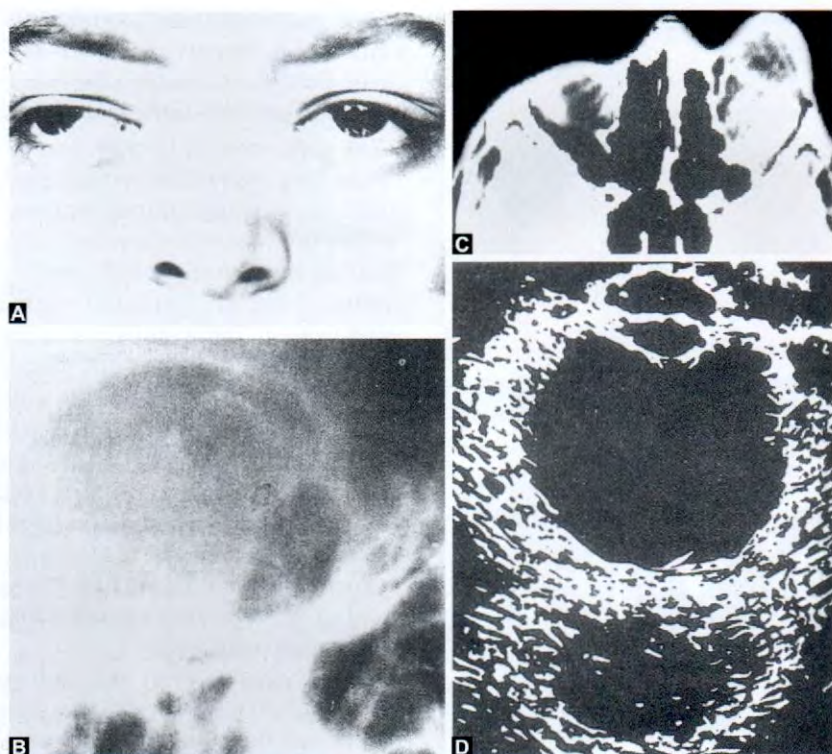
These are invasive tumours arising from the arachnoidal villi. Meningiomas invading the orbit are of two types: primary and secondary.

**(a) Primary intraorbital meningiomas**, also known as '**optic nerve sheath meningiomas**', is a rare benign tumour of meningotheial cells of the meninges that usually occur in mid-age and has slight female preponderance. There is an association with neurofibromatosis-2. This tumour usually presents with early visual loss associated with limitation of ocular movements, optic disc oedema or atrophy, and a slowly progressive unilateral proptosis (Fig. 17.17A). During the intradural stage, it is clinically indistinguishable from optic nerve glioma. However, the presence of opticociliary shunt is pathognomic of an optic nerve sheath meningioma. CT scan (Fig. 17.17B) is diagnostic.

**Treatment** is as below:

- **Observation** is recommended if visual acuity is good.
- **Surgical excision** is recommended for severe proptosis with blind eye, or threat to the chiasma.
- **Prognosis** for life is good.





**Fig. 17.16** Optic nerve glioma: A, Clinical photograph; B, X-rays optic foramina; C, CT scan; D, Ultrasonography B scan.



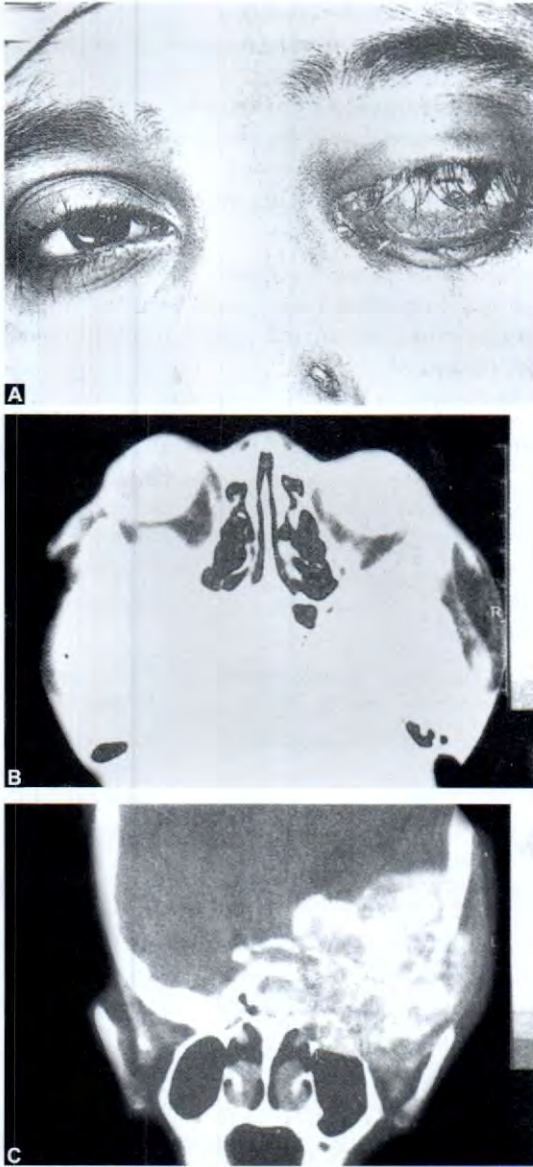
**Fig. 17.17** Optic nerve sheath meningioma: A, Clinical photograph showing axial proptosis; B, CT scan orbit showing typical triple sign

**(b) Secondary orbital meningiomas.** Those intracranial meningiomas which secondarily invade the orbit either arise from the sphenoid bone or involve it enroute to the orbit. Orbital invasion may occur through: floor of anterior cranial fossa, superior orbital fissure and optic canal. Meningioma en plaque, affecting the greater and lesser wings of sphenoid and taking origin in the region of pterion, is the most common variety affecting the orbit secondarily. These tumours typically occur in middle-aged women.

**Clinical features.** These are characterised by greater proptosis and lesser visual impairment than the primary intraorbital meningiomas. Other characteristic features of these tumours are boggy eyelid swelling and an ipsilateral swelling in the temporal region of the face, especially when the intracranial tumour arises from the lateral part of sphenoid ridge (Fig. 17.18A). In such cases, proptosis is due to hyperostosis on the lateral wall and roof of the orbit. CT scan is very useful in assessing the extent of tumour (Figs 17.18B and C).

**Management** of secondary orbital (sphenoid wing) meningiomas is as below:





**Fig. 17.18** Secondary orbital involvement in a patient with sphenoidal ridge meningioma: A, Clinical photograph; B and C, CT scan, coronal and axial section, respectively

- **Observation** is recommended till they produce functional consequences.
- **Subtotal resection** through a combined approach to the intracranial and orbital component, in collaboration with neurosurgeon, is recommended when they produce profound proptosis, compressive optic neuropathy, motility impairment or cerebral oedema.
- **Postoperative radiotherapy** is advocated to reduce the risk of recurrences of the residual tumour.

### V. Lymphoproliferative tumours

World Health Organization (WHO) consensus classification of lymphoproliferative tumours is as below:

- Benign reactive lymphoid hyperplasia
- Malignant orbital lymphomas
- Langerhans cell histiocytosis.

#### **Benign reactive lymphoid hyperplasia (BRLH)**

Benign reactive lymphoid hyperplasia is an uncommon polyclonal proliferation of lymphoid tissue, usually occurring in the anterior part of superolateral orbit with a predilection for lacrimal gland.

**Clinical features** include:

- **Proptosis**, which is painless, progressive with medial displacement of the globe.
- **Firm rubbery mass** is often palpable beneath superolateral orbital rim.
- **Pink subconjunctival infiltrate (salmon patch)** may also be seen.

**Treatment** includes systemic steroids and local radiotherapy. Some patients may require cytotoxic drugs. Progression to systemic lymphomas occurs in about 25% cases by 5 years.

#### **Atypical lymphoid hyperplasia**

Atypical lymphoid hyperplasia (ALH) is an intermediate between BRLH and malignant lymphoma.

**Features** are similar to BRLH except that:

- May involve other systemic organs, and
- Usually does not respond to steroids.

#### **Malignant orbital lymphomas**

Orbit is mainly (90%) involved by malignant non-Hodgkin B-cell lymphomas. Hodgkin's lymphoma seldom involves the orbit. According to 'Revised European American Lymphoma (REAL)' classification, the non-Hodgkin B-cell lymphomas involving orbit are as follows:

##### **1. Mucosa Associated Lymphoid Tissue (MALT) lymphoma**

- Accounts for 40–70% of all orbital lymphomas.
- Usually unilateral, but bilateral involvement may occur in 25% cases.
- Present with gradual proptosis and/or palpable firm rubbery masses.
- Systemic involvement occurs in 50% of cases.

**Treatment** includes radiotherapy or chemotherapy depending upon the grade and spread of tumour.

**2. Chronic lymphocytic lymphoma (CLL).** It also represents a low-grade lesion of small mature appearing lymphocytes.

**3. Follicular center lymphoma.** It represents a low-grade lesion with follicular centers.



4. **High-grade lymphomas** involving orbit include large cell lymphoma, lymphoblastic lymphoma and Burkitt's lymphoma.

#### **Langerhans cell histiocytosis**

Langerhans cell histiocytosis, formerly known as *histiocytosis X*, is a group of diseases characterised by an idiopathic abnormal proliferation of histiocytes with granuloma formation. These diseases primarily affect children with an orbital involvement in 20% of cases. This group includes following three diseases:

1. **Hand-Schuller-Christian disease.** It is a chronic disseminated form of histiocytosis involving both soft tissues and bones in older children of either sex. It is characterised by a triad of proptosis, diabetes insipidus and bony defects in the skull.

2. **Letterer-Siwe disease.** Now termed as 'diffuse soft tissue histiocytosis' is a systemic form of histiocytosis characterised by widespread soft tissue and visceral involvement with or without bony changes. The disease has a slight male preponderance and often occurs in the first three years of life. Orbital involvement is comparatively rare.

3. **Unifocal or multifocal eosinophilic granuloma** is characterised by a solitary or multiple granulomas involving the bones. The disease occurs in elder children and frequently involves the orbital bones.

#### **B. SECONDARY ORBITAL TUMOURS**

These may arise from the following structures:

1. **Tumours of eyeball:** Retinoblastoma (See Fig. 12.36 and 12.37) and malignant melanoma (See Fig. 8.24).
2. **Tumours of the eyelids:** Squamous cell carcinoma and basal cell carcinoma.
3. **Tumours of nose and paranasal sinuses:** These tumours very commonly involve the orbit (50%). These include: carcinomas, sarcomas and osteomas.
4. **Tumours of nasopharynx.** Carcinoma of nasopharynx is the commonest tumour involving the orbit. 38% cases with this tumour show ophthalmoneurological symptoms which include proptosis and involvement of fifth and sixth cranial nerves. Rarely, third, fourth and second cranial nerves are also involved.
5. **Tumours of cranial cavity** invading orbit are glioma and meningioma.

#### **C. METASTATIC ORBITAL TUMOURS**

These involve the orbit by haematogenous spread from a distant primary focus and include the following:

#### **I. Metastatic tumours in children**

1. **Neuroblastoma**—from adrenals and sympathetic chain (most common).
2. **Nephroblastoma**—from kidneys.
3. **Ewing's sarcoma**—from the bones.
4. **Leukaemia infiltration.**
5. **Testicular embryonal sarcoma** and ovarian sarcoma.

#### **II. Metastatic tumours in adults**

1. **Carcinoma**—from lungs (most common in males), breast (most common in females), prostate, thyroid and rectum.
2. **Malignant melanoma**—from skin.

**Note.** Most common orbital tumours are as below:

| Tumour            | Children         | Adult                                                  |
|-------------------|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Primary benign    | Dermoid cyst     | Cavernous haemangioma                                  |
| Primary malignant | Rhabdomyosarcoma | Lymphoma                                               |
| Secondary tumour  | Retinoblastoma   | Squamous cell carcinoma                                |
| Metastatic tumour | Neuroblastoma    | Carcinoma breast (females) and carcinoma lungs (males) |

### **ORBITAL BLOW-OUT FRACTURES**

Blow-out fractures are isolated comminuted fractures which occur when the orbital walls are pressed indirectly. These mainly involve orbital floor and medial wall.

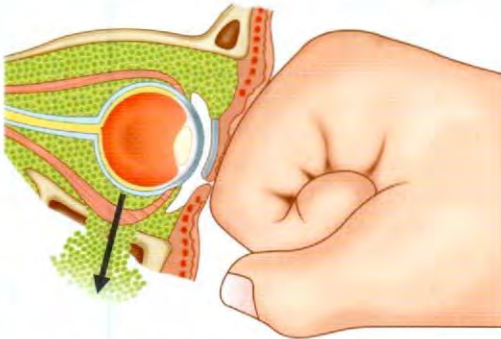
#### **Etiology**

Blow-out orbital fractures generally result from trauma to the orbit by a relatively large, often rounded object, such as tennis ball, cricket ball, human fist (Fig. 17.19) or part of an automobile. The force of the blow causes a backward displacement of the eyeball and an increase in the intraorbital pressure; with a resultant fracture at the weakest point of the orbital wall. Usually, this point is the orbital floor, but this may be the medial wall also.

#### **Classification**

1. **Pure blow-out fractures:** These are not associated with involvement of the orbital rim.
2. **Impure blow-out fractures:** These are associated with other fractures about the middle third of the facial skeleton.





**Fig. 17.19** Mechanism of blow-out fracture of the orbital floor

### Clinical features

**1. Periorbital oedema and blood extravasation** in and around the orbit (such as subconjunctival ecchymosis) occur immediately. This may mask certain signs and symptoms seen later.

**2. Emphysema** of the eyelids occurs more frequently with medial wall than floor fractures. It may be made worse by blowing of the nose.

**3. Paraesthesia and anaesthesia** in the distribution of infraorbital nerve (lower lid, cheek, side of nose, upper lip and upper teeth) are very common.

**4. Ipsilateral epistaxis** as a result of bleeding from maxillary sinus into the nose is frequently noted in early stages.

**5. Proptosis**, of variable degree, may also be present initially because of the associated orbital oedema and haemorrhage.

**6. Enophthalmos and mechanical ptosis.** After about 10 days, as the oedema decreases, the eyeball sinks backward and somewhat inferiorly resulting in enophthalmos and mechanical ptosis (Fig. 17.20). Three factors responsible for producing enophthalmos are:

- Escape of orbital fat into the maxillary sinus;
- Backward traction on the globe by entrapped inferior rectus muscle; and
- Enlargement of the orbital cavity from displacement of fragments.

**7. Diplopia** also becomes evident after the decrease in oedema. It typically occurs in both up and down gaze (double diplopia) due to entrapment of soft tissue structures in the area of the blowout fracture. The presence of muscle restriction can be confirmed by a positive 'forced duction test'.

**8. Severe ocular damage**, associated with blow-out fracture, is rare. This is because a 'blow-out fracture' is nature's way of protecting the globe from injury.



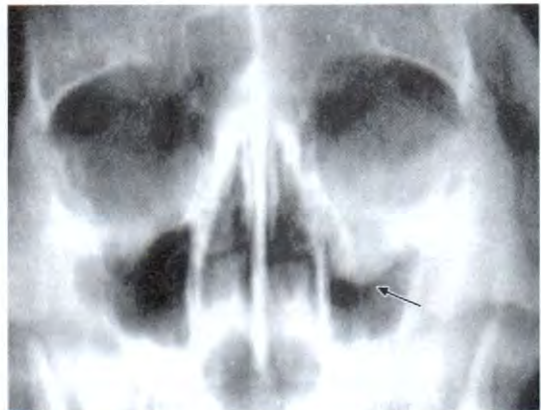
**Fig. 17.20** Enophthalmos and mechanical ptosis in a patient with blow-out fracture of orbit

Nevertheless, the eye should be carefully examined to exclude the possibility of intraocular damage.

### Orbital imaging

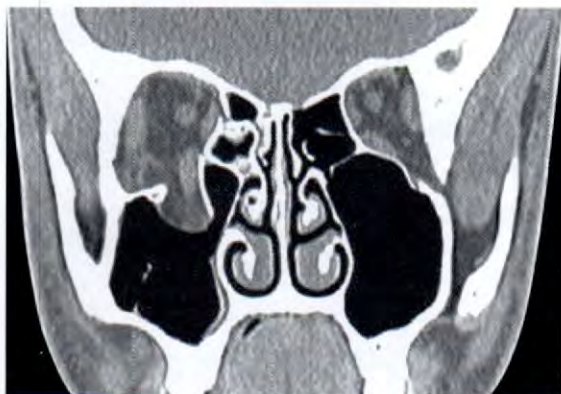
**1. Plain X-rays.** The most useful projection for detecting an orbital floor fracture is a nose-chin (Water's) view. The common Roentgen findings are: fragmentation and irregularity of the orbital floor; depression of bony fragments and 'hanging drop' opacity of the superior maxillary antrum from orbital contents herniating through the floor (Fig. 17.21).

**2. Computerised tomography scanning and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI).** These are of greater value for detailed visualisation of soft tissues. Coronal sections (Fig. 17.22) are particularly useful in evaluating the extent of the fracture and herniation of contents into maxillary antrum (hanging drop or tear drop sign).



**Fig. 17.21** Plain X-ray orbit (AP view) showing herniated orbital contents (arrow) with blow-out fracture of the orbital floor





**Fig. 17.22** CT scan coronal section of orbit showing fracture floor with herniation of orbital contents

## Management

### I. General measures and medical treatment

1. *Avoid nose blowing* should be advised to each patient, as the nose blowing may contribute to surgical emphysema and herniation of soft tissue.
2. *Systemic antibiotics* should be given to prevent secondary infection from the maxillary sinus.
3. *Analgesics and anti-inflammatory drugs* to decrease pain and swelling.
4. *Cold compresses*, immediately following trauma may decrease swelling by causing vasoconstriction.

### II. Surgical management

Surgical repair to restore continuity of the orbital floor may be made with or without implants. It may not be required in many cases. The optimal time for surgery when indicated, is after 10–14 days of injury.

*Indications of surgical intervention* include:

1. Diplopia not resolving significantly in the early days after trauma.
2. A fracture with a large herniation of tissues into the antrum.
3. Incarceration of tissues in the fracture resulting, in globe retraction and increased appplanation tension on attempted upward gaze.
4. Enophthalmos greater than 3 mm.

Any of these factors, alone or combinedly could indicate that early orbital repair is necessary.

## ORBITAL SURGERY

### ■ ORBITOTOMY

Orbitotomy operation refers to surgical approach for an orbital mass lesion. There are four surgical approaches to the orbit:

**1. Anterior orbitotomy.** It is indicated only when the lesion is readily palpable through the eyelids and

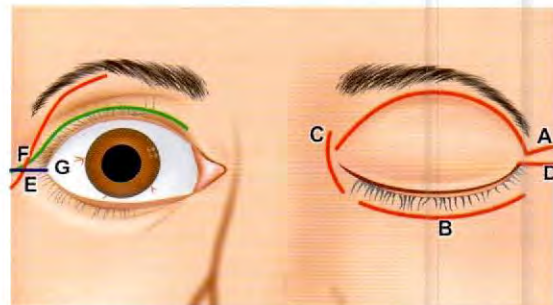
is judged to be mainly in front of the equator of eyeball. Depending upon the location of the lesion the anterior orbitotomy can be performed by any of the following approaches:

- i. *Superior approach* is used for the lesions located in the superoanterior part of the orbit. It can be performed through:
  - Transcutaneous route (Fig. 17.23A) or
  - Transconjunctival route.
- ii. *Inferior approach* is suitable for the lesions located in the inferoanterior part of the orbit. It can be performed through:
  - Transcutaneous route (Fig. 17.23B) or
  - Transconjunctival route.
- iii. *Medial approach* can be performed through:
  - Transcutaneous route (Fig. 17.23C)
  - Transconjunctival route, or
  - Transcaruncular route.
- iv. *Lateral approach* is performed through a lateral canthotomy incision (Fig. 17.23D).

**2. Lateral orbitotomy.** In this approach, lateral half of the supraorbital margin with the quadrilateral piece of bone forming the lateral orbital wall is temporarily removed. This approach provides an adequate exposure to the orbital contents and is particularly valuable for the retrobulbar lesions. The classical technique of lateral orbitotomy using S-shaped brow skin incision (Fig. 17.23E) is called *Kronlein's operation*. This incision allows good exposure but leaves noticeable scar. Therefore, presently the preferred incisions are:

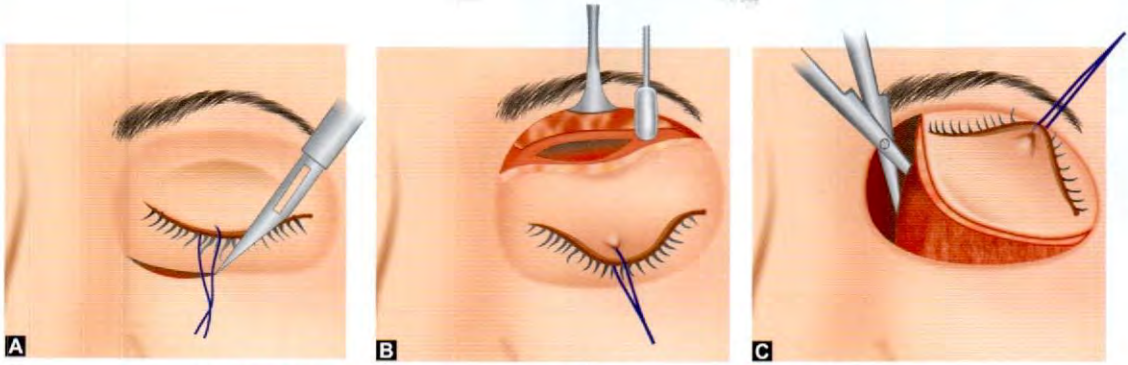
- Upper eyelid crease incision (Fig. 17.23F), or
- Lateral canthotomy incision (Fig. 17.23G).

**3. Transfrontal orbitotomy.** In this technique, orbit is opened through its roof and thus, mainly is the



**Fig. 17.23** Incision site for: Anterior orbitotomy: A, Superior approach, upper eyelid crease incision; B, Inferior approach, subciliary incision; C, Medial, i.e. frontoethmoidal approach; D, Lateral approach by lateral canthotomy and Lateral orbitotomy; E, S-shaped brow skin incision; F, Upper eyelid crease incision, G, Lateral canthotomy incision





**Fig. 17.24** Exenteration of the orbit: A, Skin incision; B, Periosteal reflection; C, Amputation of the orbital contents

domain of neurosurgeons. Transfrontal orbitotomy is used to decompress the roof of the optic canal and to explore and remove when possible tumours of the sphenoidal ridge involving the superior orbital fissure.

**4. Temporofrontal orbitotomy.** This approach provides an access to the orbit (through its roof) and anterior and middle cranial fossa simultaneously.

#### ■ EXENTERATION

It is a mutilating surgery in which all the contents of the orbits along with the periorbital are removed through an incision made along the orbital margins (Fig. 17.24). Exenteration is indicated for malignant tumours arising from the orbital structures or spreading from the eyeball. Nowadays, debulking of the orbit is preferred over exenteration.



**MECHANICAL INJURIES**

- Ocular trauma terminologies
- Extraocular foreign bodies
- Closed-globe injuries
- Open-globe injuries
- Extraocular injuries
- Sympathetic ophthalmitis

**NON-MECHANICAL INJURIES****Chemical Injuries**

- Alkali burns
- Acid burns

**Thermal Injuries****Electrical Injuries****Radiational Injuries**

- Ultraviolet radiations
- Infrared radiations
- Ionizing radiational injuries

**MECHANICAL INJURIES****OCULAR TRAUMA TERMINOLOGIES**

As per the new ocular trauma terminology system proposed by the '*Birmingham Eye Trauma Terminology*' (BETT). The term *eyewall* has been restricted for the outer fibrous coat (cornea and sclera) of the eyeball. The definitions proposed by the BETT and as such adopted by '*American Ocular Trauma Society*' (AOTS) for mechanical ocular injuries are as follows:

**1. Closed-globe injury** is the one in which eyewall (sclera and cornea) does not have a full thickness wound but there is intraocular damage. It includes contusion and lamellar laceration.

- *Contusion* refers to the closed-globe injury resulting from blunt trauma. Damage may occur at the site of impact or at a distant site.
- *Lamellar laceration* is a closed-globe injury characterized by a partial thickness wound of the eyewall caused by a sharp object or blunt trauma.

**2. Open-globe injury** refers to a full-thickness wound of the sclera or cornea or both. It includes rupture and laceration of eyewall.

**i. Rupture** refers to a full-thickness wound of eyewall caused by the impact of blunt trauma. The wound occurs due to markedly raised intraocular pressure by an inside-out injury mechanism.

**ii. Laceration** refers to a full-thickness wound of eyewall caused by a sharp object. The wound occurs at the impact site by an outside-in mechanism. It includes penetrating and perforating injuries.

• *Penetrating injury* refers to a single laceration of eyewall caused by a sharp object which traverses the coats only once.

• *Perforating injury* refers to two full thickness lacerations (one entry and one exit) of the eyewall caused by a sharp object or missile. The two wounds must have been caused by the same agent (earlier known as double perforation).

• *Intraocular foreign body injury* is technically a penetrating injury associated with retained intraocular foreign body. However, it is grouped separately because of different clinical implications.

**Mechanical ocular injuries**, in view of the above, can be discussed under following headings:

- Extraocular foreign bodies,
- Closed globe injuries
- Open globe injuries
- Extraocular injuries, and
- Sympathetic ophthalmitis.

**EXTRAOCULAR FOREIGN BODIES**

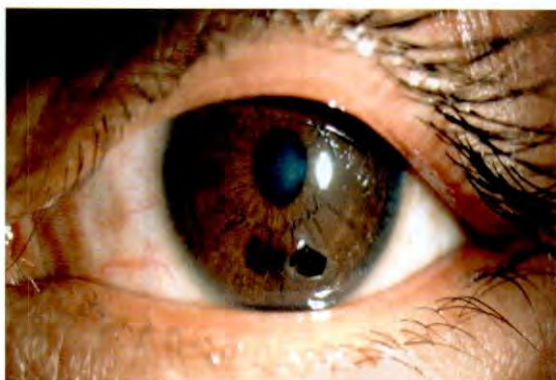
Extraocular foreign bodies are quite common in industrial and agricultural workers. Even in day-to-day life, these are not uncommon.

**Common sites and types**

**Common sites.** A foreign body may be impacted in the conjunctiva or cornea (Fig. 18.1).

- *On the conjunctiva*, it may be lodged in the sulcus sub tarsalis, fornices or bulbar conjunctiva.
- *In the cornea*, it is usually embedded in the epithelium, or superficial stroma and rarely into the deep stroma.





**Fig. 18.1** Foreign body on the cornea

**Common types.** The usual foreign bodies:

- *In industrial workers* are particles of iron (especially in lathe and hammer-chisel workers), emery and coal.
- *In agriculture workers*, these are husk of paddy and wings of insects.
- *Other common foreign bodies* are particles of dust, sand, steel, glass, wood and small insects (mosquitoes).

### Clinical features

**Symptoms.** A foreign body produces immediate:

- *Discomfort, profuse watering and redness* in the eye.
- *Pain and photophobia* are more marked in corneal foreign body than the conjunctival foreign body.
- *Defective vision* occurs when it is lodged in the centre of cornea.

**Signs.** Examination reveals marked blepharospasm and conjunctival congestion. A foreign body can be localized on the conjunctiva or cornea by oblique illumination. Slit-lamp examination after fluorescein staining is the best method to discover corneal foreign body. Double eversion of the upper lid is required to discover a foreign body in the superior fornix.

**Complications** include:

- *Acute bacterial conjunctivitis* may occur from infected foreign bodies or due to rubbing with infected hands.
- *Corneal ulceration* may occur as a complication of corneal foreign body.
- *Pigmentation and/or opacity* may be left behind by an iron or emery particles embedded in the cornea.

### Treatment

Extraocular foreign bodies should be removed as early as possible.

**1. Removal of conjunctival foreign body.** A foreign body lying loose in the lower fornix, sulcus subarsalis or in the canthi may be removed with a swab stick or clean handkerchief even without anaesthesia.

- *Foreign bodies impacted in the bulbar conjunctiva* need to be removed with the help of a hypodermic needle after topical anaesthesia.

**2. Removal of corneal foreign body.** Eye is anaesthetised with topical instillation of 2 to 4% xylocaine and the patient is made to lie supine on an examination table. Lids are separated with universal eye speculum, the patient is asked to look straight upward and light is focused on the cornea. First of all, an attempt is made to remove the foreign body with the help of a wet cotton swap stick. If it fails then foreign body spud or hypodermic needle is used. Extra care is taken while removing a deep corneal foreign body, as it may enter the anterior chamber during manoeuvring. If such a foreign body happens to be magnetic, it is removed with a hand-held magnet. After removal of foreign body, patching with antibiotic eye ointment is applied for 24 to 48 hours. Antibiotic eye drops are instilled 3–4 times a day for about a week.

### Prophylaxis

- *Industrial and agricultural workers* should be advised to use special protective glasses.
- *Cyclists and scooterists* should be advised to use protective plain glasses or tinted goggles.
- *Special guards* should be put on grinding machines and use of tools with overhanging margins should be banned.
- *Eye health care education* should be imparted, especially to the industrial and agricultural workers.

## CLOSED-GLOBE INJURIES

### CAUSES AND PATHOGENESIS OF DAMAGE

#### Modes of trauma

Blunt trauma may occur following:

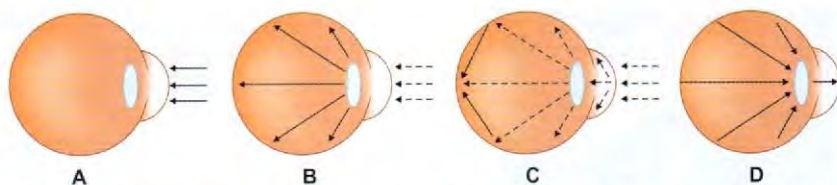
- *Direct blow* to the eyeball by fist, a tennis or cricket or another ball or blunt instruments like sticks, and big stones.
- *Accidental blunt trauma* to eyeball may also occur in roadside accidents, automobile accidents, injuries by agricultural and industrial instruments/machines and fall upon the projecting blunt objects.

#### Mechanics of forces of blunt trauma

Blunt trauma to eyeball produces damage by different forces as described below:

- 1. Direct impact on the globe.** It produces maximum damage at the point where the blow is received (Fig. 18.2A).
- 2. Compression wave force.** It is transmitted through the fluid contents in all the directions and strikes the angle of anterior chamber, pushes the iris-lens





**Fig. 18.2** Mechanics of blunt trauma to eyeball: A, Direct impact; B, Compression wave force; C, Reflected compression wave; D, Rebound compression wave

diaphragm posteriorly, and also strikes the retina and choroid (Fig. 18.2B). This may cause considerable damage. Sometimes, the compression wave may be so explosive, that maximum damage may be produced at a point distant from the actual place of impact. This is called *contrecoup damage*.

**3. Reflected compression wave force.** After striking the outer coats, the compression waves are reflected towards the posterior pole and may cause foveal damage (Fig. 18.2C).

**4. Rebound compression wave force.** After striking the posterior wall of the globe, the compression waves rebound back anteriorly. This force damages the retina and choroid by forward pull and lens-iris diaphragm by forward thrust from the back (Fig. 18.2D).

**5. Indirect force.** Ocular damage may also be caused by the indirect forces from the bony walls and elastic contents of the orbit, when globe suddenly strikes against these structures.

### Mechanisms of damage

The different forces of the blunt trauma described above may cause damage to the structures of the globe by one or more of the following modes:

1. *Mechanical tearing of the tissues* of eyeball.
2. *Damage to the tissue cells* sufficient to cause disruption of their physiological activity.
3. *Vascular damage* leading to ischaemia, oedema and haemorrhages.
4. *Trophic changes* due to disturbances of the nerve supply.
5. *Delayed complications* of blunt trauma such as secondary glaucoma, haemophthalmitis, late rosette cataract and retinal detachment.

**Note.** Traumatic lesions produced by blunt trauma can be grouped as follows:

- Closed-globe injury,
- Globe rupture, and
- Extraocular lesions.

### ■ LESIONS OF CLOSED-GLOBE INJURY

Either there is no corneal or scleral wound at all (contusion) or it is only of partial thickness (lamellar

laceration). Contusional injuries may vary in severity from a simple corneal abrasion to an extensive intraocular damage. Lesions seen in closed-globe injury are briefly enumerated here.

#### I. Cornea

**1. Simple corneal abrasions.** These are very painful and diagnosed by fluorescein staining. These usually heal up within 24 hours with patching applied after instilling antibiotic ointment.

**2. Recurrent corneal erosions** (recurrent keratalgia). These may sometimes follow simple abrasions, especially those caused by finger nail trauma. Patient usually gets recurrent attacks of acute pain and lacrimation on opening the eye in the morning. This occurs due to abnormally loose attachment of epithelium to the underlying Bowman's membrane.

**Treatment.** Loosely attached epithelium should be removed by debridement and 'pad and bandage' applied for 48 hours, so that firm healing is established.

**3. Partial corneal tears** (lamellar corneal laceration). These may also follow a blunt trauma and are treated by topical antibiotics and patching.

**4. Tears in Descemet's membrane** are known to occur in birth trauma. These are usually vertical.

**5. Acute corneal oedema** may occur following traumatic dysfunction of endothelial cells. It may be associated with Descemet's folds and stromal thickening. It, usually, clears up spontaneously; rarely a deep corneal opacity may be the sequelae.

**6. Blood staining of cornea.** It may occur occasionally from the associated hyphaema and raised intraocular pressure. Cornea becomes reddish brown (Fig. 18.3) or greenish in colour and in later stages simulates dislocation of the clear lens into the anterior chamber. It clears very slowly from the periphery towards the centre, the whole process may take even more than two years.

#### II. Sclera

Partial thickness scleral wounds (lamellar scleral lacerations) may occur alone or in association with other lesions of closed-globe injury.



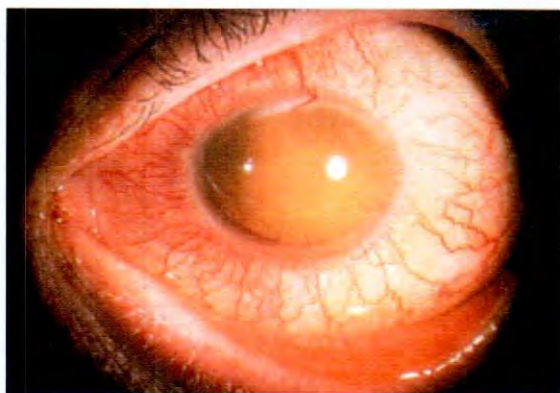


Fig. 18.3 Blood staining of cornea



Fig. 18.4 Photograph of a patient with hyphaema

### III. Anterior chamber

1. **Traumatic hyphaema** (blood in the anterior chamber). It occurs due to injury to the iris or ciliary body vessels (Fig. 18.4).

▪ **Treatment includes:**

- **Conservative treatment** is aimed at prevention of rise in IOP and occurrence of secondary haemorrhage (re-bleed).
- **Surgical treatment.** A small hyphaema usually clears up with conservative treatment. A large non-resolving hyphaema causing raised IOP should be drained to avoid blood staining of the cornea.

2. **Exudates.** These may collect in the anterior chamber following traumatic uveitis.

### IV. Iris, pupil and ciliary body

1. **Traumatic miosis.** It occurs initially due to irritation of ciliary nerves. It may be associated with spasm of accommodation.

2. **Traumatic mydriasis** (Iridoplegia). It is usually permanent and may be associated with traumatic cycloplegia.

3. **Rupture of the pupillary margin** is a common occurrence in closed-globe injury.

4. **Radiating tears in the iris stroma**, sometimes reaching up to ciliary body, may occur occasionally.

5. **Iridodialysis**, i.e. detachment of iris from its root at the ciliary body occurs frequently. It results in a D-shaped pupil and a black biconvex area seen at the periphery (Fig. 18.5).

6. **Antiflexion of the iris.** It refers to rotation of the detached portion of iris, in which its posterior surface faces anteriorly. It occurs following extensive iridodialysis.

7. **Retroflexion of the iris.** This term is used when whole of the iris is doubled back into the ciliary region and becomes invisible.

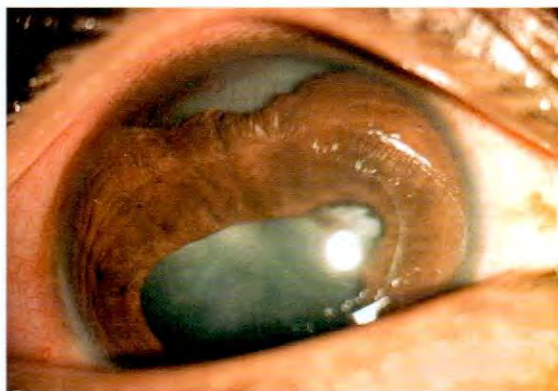


Fig. 18.5 Traumatic cataract and iridodialysis following contusional injury

8. **Traumatic aniridia or iridemia.** In this condition, the completely torn iris (from ciliary body) sinks to the bottom of anterior chamber in the form of a minute ball.

9. **Angle recession** refers to the tear between longitudinal and circular muscle fibres of the ciliary body. It is characterized by deepening of the anterior chamber and widening of the ciliary body band on gonioscopy. Later on, it is complicated by glaucoma.

10. **Inflammatory changes.** These include traumatic iridocyclitis, haemophthalmitis, post-traumatic iris atrophy and pigmentary changes.

▪ **Treatment.** It consists of atropine, antibiotics and steroids. In the presence of ruptures of pupillary margins and subluxation of lens, atropine is contraindicated.

### V. Lens

It may show following changes:

1. **Vossius ring.** It is a circular ring of brown pigment seen on the anterior capsule. It occurs due to striking of the contracted pupillary margin against the crystalline lens. It is always smaller than the size of the pupil.



3m

**2. Concussion cataract.** It occurs mainly due to imbibition of aqueous and partly due to direct mechanical effects of the injury on lens fibres. It may assume any of the following shapes:

- *Discrete subepithelial opacities* are of most common occurrence.
- *Early rosette cataract* (punctate). It is the most typical form of concussion cataract. It appears as feathery lines of opacities along the star-shaped suture lines; usually in the posterior cortex (Fig. 18.6).
- *Late rosette cataract.* It develops in the posterior cortex 1 to 2 years after the injury. Its sutural extensions are shorter and more compact than the early rosette cataract.
- *Traumatic zonular cataract.* It may also occur in some cases, though rarely.
- *Diffuse (total) concussion cataract.* It is of frequent occurrence.
- *Early maturation of senile cataract* may follow blunt trauma.

*Treatment* of traumatic cataract is on general lines (See pages 202-217).

**3. Traumatic absorption of the lens.** It may occur sometimes in young children resulting in aphakia.

**4. Subluxation of the lens** (Figs 9.38 and 9.40A). It may occur due to partial tear of zonules. The subluxated lens is slightly displaced but still present in the pupillary area. On dilatation of the pupil its edge may be seen. Depending upon the site of zonular tear subluxation may be vertical (upward or downward), or lateral (nasal or temporal). Subluxated lens may cause trembling of the iris (iridodonesis) and/or trembling of lens (phacodonesis).

**5. Dislocation of the lens.** It occurs when rupture of the zonules is complete. It may be intraocular (commonly) or extraocular (sometimes). Intraocular dislocation may be anterior (into the anterior chamber, See Fig. 9.40B) or posterior (into the vitreous, See Fig. 9.40C). Extraocular dislocation may

be in the subconjunctival space (phacocoele) or it may fall outside the eye.

■ *For treatment* and detailed features of the subluxated or dislocated lens See page 223.

## VI. Vitreous

**1. Liquefaction and appearance of clouds** of fine pigmentary opacities (a most common change).

**2. Detachment** of the vitreous either anteriorly at the base or posterior (PVD) may occur.

**3. Vitreous haemorrhage.** It is of common occurrence (for details See page 267).

**4. Vitreous herniation** in the anterior chamber may occur with subluxation or dislocation of the lens.

## VII. Choroid

**1. Rupture of the choroid.** The rupture of choroid is concentric to the optic disc and situated temporal to it. Rupture may be single or multiple. On fundus examination, the choroidal rupture looks like a whitish crescent (due to underlying sclera) with fine pigmentation at its margins. Retinal vessels pass over it (Fig. 18.7).

**2. Choroidal haemorrhage** may occur under the retina (subretinal) or may even enter the vitreous if retina is also torn.

**3. Choroidal detachment** is also known to occur following blunt trauma.

**4. Traumatic choroiditis** may be seen on fundus examination as patches of pigmentation and discoloration after the eye becomes silent.

## VIII. Retina

**1. Commotio retinae** (Berlin's oedema). It is of common occurrence following a blow on the eye. It manifests as milky white cloudiness involving



**Fig. 18.6** Rosette-shaped cataract following blunt trauma



**Fig. 18.7** Choroidal rupture following blunt trauma



a considerable area of the posterior pole with a 'cherry-red spot' in the foveal region (Fig. 18.8). It may disappear after some days or may be followed by pigmentary changes.

**2. Retinal haemorrhages.** These are quite common following concussion trauma. Multiple haemorrhages including flame-shaped and pre-retinal D-shaped (subhyaloid) haemorrhage may be associated with traumatic retinopathy.

**3. Retinal tears.** These may follow a contusion, particularly in the peripheral region, especially in eyes already suffering from myopia or senile degenerations.

**4. Traumatic proliferative retinopathy** (Retinitis proliferans). It may occur secondary to vitreous haemorrhage, forming tractional bands.

**5. Retinal detachment.** It may follow retinal tears or vitreo-retinal tractional bands.

**6. Concussion changes at macula.** Traumatic macular oedema is usually followed by *pigmentary degeneration*. Sometimes, a *macular cyst* is formed, which on rupture may be converted into a lamellar or full thickness *macular hole*.

#### IX. Intraocular pressure changes in closed-globe injury

**1. Traumatic glaucoma.** It may occur due to multiple factors, which are described in detail on page 258.

**2. Traumatic hypotony.** It may follow temporary damage to the ciliary body (ciliary shock) or there may occur permanent damage to the ciliary body which may even result in phthisis bulbi.

#### X. Traumatic changes in the refraction

**1. Myopia** may follow ciliary spasm or rupture of zonules or anterior shift of the lens.

**2. Hypermetropia** and loss of accommodation may result from damage to the ciliary body (cycloplegia).



Fig. 18.8 Commotio retinae following blunt trauma

### OPEN-GLOBE INJURIES

Open-globe injury is defined as a full thickness wound of the eyewall (sclera or/and cornea). It includes:

- Globe rupture
- Globe laceration

#### A. GLOBE RUPTURE

Globe rupture is a full-thickness wound of the eyewall (sclera, cornea or both) caused by a blunt object.

##### Mode of trauma

See page 445

##### Types of globe rupture

Globe rupture may occur in two ways:

**1. Direct rupture** may occur, though rarely, at the site of injury.

**2. Indirect rupture** is more common and occurs because of the compression force. The impact results in momentary increase in the intraocular pressure and an inside-out injury at the weakest part of eyewall, i.e. in the vicinity of canal of Schlemm concentric to the limbus. The superonasal limbus is the most common site of globe rupture (contrecoup effect—the lower temporal quadrant being most exposed to trauma).

##### Clinical features

Rupture of the globe may be associated with:

- *Prolapse of uveal tissue, vitreous loss, intraocular haemorrhage and dislocation of the lens.*
- *Intraocular pressure* may be raised initially, but ultimately it is decreased.
- *Accompanying signs* include irregular pupil, hyphaema, commotio retinae, choroidal rupture, and retinal tears.

##### Treatment

- *Repair of tear* in the eyewall should be done meticulously under general anaesthesia to save the eyeball whenever possible.
- *Postoperative treatment* should include antibiotics, steroids and atropine.
- *Enucleation* may be required in a badly damaged eye where salvation is not possible.

#### B. GLOBE LACERATION

Globe laceration refers to full-thickness wound of eyewall caused by sharp objects. It includes:

- Penetrating injury,
- Perforating injury, and
- Intraocular foreign bodies.

#### ■ PENETRATING AND PERFORATING INJURIES

As mentioned earlier, penetrating injury is defined as a single full-thickness wound of the eyewall caused



by a sharp object. While perforating injury refers to two full-thickness wounds (one entry and one exit) of the eyewall caused by a sharp object or missile.

These can cause severe damage to the eye and so should be treated as *serious emergencies*.

### Modes of injury

1. *Trauma by sharp and pointed instruments* like needles, knives, nails, arrows, screw-drivers, pens, pencils, compasses, glass pieces and so on.
2. *Trauma by foreign bodies travelling at very high speed* such as bullet injuries and iron foreign bodies in lathe workers.

### Mechanisms of damage

Damage to the ocular structures may occur by following effects:

1. *Mechanical effects of the trauma* or physical changes. These are discussed later in detail.
2. *Introduction of infection*. Sometimes, pyogenic organisms enter the eye during open globe injuries, multiply there and can cause varying degree of infection depending upon the virulence and host defence mechanism. These include: ring abscess of the cornea, sloughing of the cornea, purulent iridocyclitis, endophthalmitis or panophthalmitis (See pages 176–178). Rarely tetanus and infection by gas-forming organisms (*Clostridium welchii*) may also occur.
3. *Post-traumatic iridocyclitis*. It is of frequent occurrence and if not treated properly can cause devastating damage, a rare but most dangerous complication of a perforating injury. It is described separately (See page 447).

### Traumatic lesions with management

Mechanical effects of penetrating/perforating trauma on the different ocular structures with their management are enumerated here briefly.

**1. Wounds of the conjunctiva.** These are common and usually associated with subconjunctival haemorrhage. A wound of more than 3 mm should be sutured.

**2. Wounds of the cornea.** These can be divided into uncomplicated and complicated wounds.

**i. Uncomplicated corneal wounds.** These are not associated with prolapse of intraocular contents. Margins of such wounds swell up and lead to automatic sealing and restoration of the anterior chamber.

▪ *Treatment.* A small central wound does not need stitching. The only treatment required is pad and bandage with atropine and antibiotic ointments.

A large corneal wound (more than 2 mm) should always be sutured.

**ii. Complicated corneal wounds.** These are associated with prolapse of iris (Fig. 18.9), sometimes lens matter and even vitreous.

▪ *Treatment.* Corneal wounds with iris prolapse should be sutured meticulously after abscising the iris. The prolapsed iris should never be repositioned; since it may cause infection. When associated with lens injury and vitreous loss, lensectomy and anterior vitrectomy may be performed along with repair of the corneal wound.

**3. Wounds of the sclera.** These are usually associated with corneal wounds and should be managed as above. In corneo-scleral tear, first suture should be applied at the limbus.

**4. Wounds of the lens.** Extensive lens ruptures with vitreous loss should be managed as above. Small wounds in the anterior capsule may seal and lead on to traumatic cataract; which may be in the form of a localised stationary cataract, early or late rosette cataract, or complete (total) cataract. These should be treated on general lines (See pages 202–217).

**5. A badly (severely) wounded eye.** It refers to extensive corneo-scleral tears associated with prolapse of the uveal tissue, lens rupture, vitreous loss and injury to the retina and choroid. Usually, there seems to be no chance of getting useful vision in such cases. So, preferably such eyes should be excised.

### ■ INTRAOCULAR FOREIGN BODIES

Penetrating injuries with foreign bodies are not infrequent. Seriousness of such injuries is compounded by the retention of intraocular foreign bodies (IOFB).

*Common foreign bodies* responsible for such injuries include: chips of iron and steel (90%), particles of glass, stone, lead pellets, copper percussion caps, aluminium, plastic and wood. It is important to note that during chopping a stone with an iron chisel, it is



Fig. 18.9 Corneal tear with iris prolapse



commonly a chip of the chisel and not of the stone which enters the eye.

### Modes of Damage and Lesions

A penetrating/perforating injury with retained foreign body may damage the ocular structures by the following modes:

- A. Mechanical effects.
- B. Introduction of infection.
- C. Reaction of foreign bodies.
- D. Post-traumatic iridocyclitis.
- E. Sympathetic ophthalmitis (See page 455).

#### A. Mechanical effects

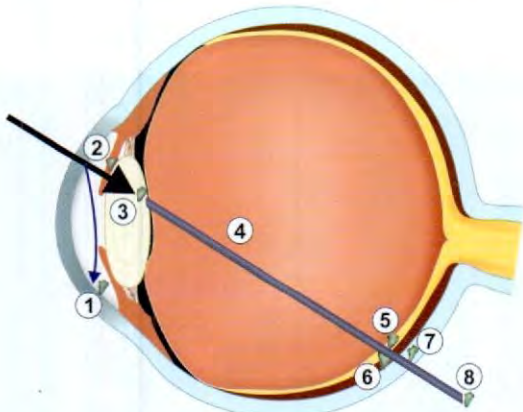
Mechanical effects depend upon the size, velocity and type of the foreign body. Foreign bodies greater than 2 mm in size cause extensive damage. The lesions caused also depend upon the route of entry and the site up to which a foreign body has travelled.

**Traumatic lesions produced by intraocular foreign bodies** include:

- Corneal or/and scleral perforation, hyphaema, iris hole,
- Rupture of the lens and traumatic cataract,
- Vitreous haemorrhage and/or degeneration,
- Choroidal perforation, haemorrhage and inflammation,
- Retinal hole, haemorrhages, oedema and detachment.

**Locations of IOFB.** Having entered the eye through the cornea or sclera a foreign body may be retained at any of the following sites (Fig. 18.10):

1. **Anterior chamber.** In the anterior chamber, the IOFB usually sinks at the bottom. A tiny foreign body may be concealed in the angle of anterior chamber, and visualised only on gonioscopy.

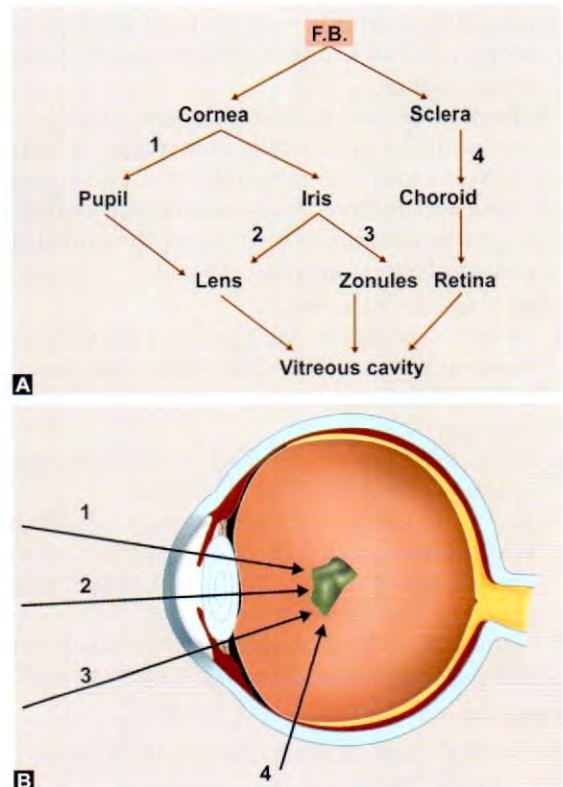


**Fig. 18.10** Common sites for retention of an intraocular foreign body: 1, anterior chamber; 2, iris; 3, lens; 4, vitreous; 5, retina; 6, choroid; 7, sclera; 8, orbital cavity

2. **Iris.** Here the foreign body is usually entangled in the stroma.
3. **Posterior chamber.** Rarely, a foreign body may sink behind the iris after entering through pupil or after making a hole in the iris.
4. **Lens.** Foreign body may be present on the anterior surface or inside the lens. Either an opaque track may be seen in the lens or the lens may become completely cataractous.
5. **Vitreous cavity.** A foreign body may reach here through various routes, which are depicted in Fig. 18.11.
6. **Retina, choroid and sclera.** A foreign body may obtain access to these structures through corneal route or directly from scleral perforation.
7. **Orbital cavity.** A foreign body piercing the eyeball may occasionally cause double perforation and come to rest in the orbital tissues.

#### B. Introduction of Infection

Intraocular infection is the real danger to the eyeball. Fortunately, small flying metallic foreign bodies are



**Fig. 18.11** Logarithmic (A) and diagrammatic (B) depiction of routes of access of a foreign body in the vitreous, through: 1, cornea, iris, lens; 2, cornea, pupil, lens; 3, cornea, iris, zonules; 4, sclera, choroid, retina



usually sterile due to the heat generated on their commission. However, pieces of the wood and stones carry a great chance of infection. Unfortunately, once intraocular infection is established it usually ends in endophthalmitis or even panophthalmitis.

### C. Reactions of the foreign body

#### I. Reactions of Inorganic foreign body

Depending upon its chemical nature following 4 types of reactions are noted in the ocular tissues:

1. *No reaction* is produced by the inert substances which include glass, plastic, porcelain, gold, silver and platinum.
2. *Local irritative reaction* leading to encapsulation of the foreign body occurs with lead and aluminium particles.
3. *Suppurative reaction* is excited by pure copper, zinc, nickel and mercury particles.
4. *Specific reactions* are produced by iron (Siderosis bulbi) and copper alloys (Chalcosis).

#### Siderosis bulbi

It refers to the ocular degenerative changes produced by an iron foreign body. Siderosis bulbi usually occurs after 2 months to 2 years of the injury. However, earliest changes have been reported after 9 days of trauma.

**Mechanism.** The iron particle undergoes electrolytic dissociation by the current of rest and its ions are disseminated throughout the eye. These ions combine with the intracellular proteins and produce degenerative changes. In this process, the epithelial structures of the eye are most affected.

**Clinical manifestations** include:

1. *Anterior epithelium and capsule* of the lens are involved first of all. Here, the rusty deposits are arranged radially in a ring. Eventually, the lens becomes cataractous.
2. *Iris.* It is first stained greenish and later on turns reddish brown (heterochromia iridis).
3. *Retina develops pigmentary degeneration* which resembles retinitis pigmentosa. Electroretinography (ERG) shows progressive attenuation of the b-wave over time.
4. *Secondary open angle glaucoma* may occur due to degenerative changes in the trabecular meshwork.

#### Chalcosis

It refers to the specific changes produced by the alloy of copper in the eye.

**Mechanism of chalcosis.** Copper ions from the alloy are dissociated electrolytically and deposited under the membranous structures of the eye. Unlike iron ions these do not enter into a chemical combination

with the proteins of the cells and thus produce no degenerative changes.

**Clinical features** include:

1. *Kayser-Fleischer ring.* It is a golden brown ring which occurs due to deposition of copper under peripheral parts of the Descemet's membrane of the cornea.
2. *Sunflower cataract.* It is produced by deposition of copper under the posterior capsule of the lens. It is brilliant golden green in colour and arranged like the petals of a sunflower.
3. *Retina.* It may show deposition of golden plaques at the posterior pole which reflect the light with a metallic sheen.

#### II. Reaction of organic foreign bodies

The organic foreign bodies such as wood and other vegetative materials produce a proliferative reaction characterised by the formation of giant cell. Caterpillar hair produces ophthalmia nodosum, which is characterised by a severe granulomatous iridocyclitis with nodule formation.

### Management of Retained Intraocular Foreign Bodies (IOFB)

#### Diagnosis

It is a matter of extreme importance particularly as the patient is often unaware that a particle has entered the eye. To come to a correct diagnosis following steps should be taken:

1. **History.** A careful history about the mode of injury may give a clue about the type of IOFB.
2. **Ocular examination.** A thorough ocular examination with slit-lamp including gonioscopy should be carried out. The signs which may give some indication about IOFB are: subconjunctival haemorrhage, corneal scar, holes in the iris, and opaque track through the lens. With clear media, sometimes IOFB may be seen on ophthalmoscopy in the vitreous (Fig. 18.12) or



Fig. 18.12 Fundus photograph depicting intravitreal foreign body



on the retina. IOFB lodged in the angle of anterior chamber may be visualised by gonioscopy.

**3. Plain X-rays orbit.** Anteroposterior and lateral views are still being recommended for the location of IOFB, as most foreign bodies are radio opaque. However, many workers feel there is no use of plain film radiology (PFR), as CT images are required for suspected IOFB, even if PFR is negative.

**4. Localization of IOFB.** Once IOFB is suspected clinically and later confirmed, on fundus examination and/or X-rays, its exact localization is mandatory to plan the proper removal. Following techniques may be used:

**Radiographic localization.** Before the advent of ultrasonography and CT scan, different specialized radiographic techniques were used to localize IOFBs; which are now obsolete. However, a simple limbal ring method which is still used (most centers have discarded it) is described below:

▪ **Limbal ring method.** It is the most simple but nowadays, sparingly employed technique. A metallic ring of the corneal diameter (Fig. 18.13) is stitched at the limbus and X-rays are taken. One exposure is taken in the anteroposterior view. In the lateral view, three exposures are made one each while the patient is looking straight, upwards and downwards, respectively. The position of the foreign body is estimated from its relationship with the metallic ring in different positions (Fig. 18.14).

**Ultrasonographic localization.** It is being used increasingly these days. It can tell the position of even non-radioopaque foreign bodies.

**CT scan.** With axial and coronal cuts, CT scan is presently the best method of IOFB localization. It provides cross-sectional images with a sensitivity and specificity that are superior to plain radiography and ultrasonography.

**Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)** is not recommended as a general screening tool, since it can cause further damage by producing movement of a magnetic IO foreign body. However, after the CT has excluded the presence of a metallic IO foreign body; MRI has a special role in localizing small plastic or wooden IO foreign bodies.

### Treatment

IOFB should always be removed, except when it is inert and probably sterile or when little damage has been done to the vision and the process of removal may be risky and destroy sight (e.g. minute FB in the retina).

Removal of magnetic IOFB is easier than the removal of non-magnetic FB. Usually a hand-held electromagnet (Fig. 18.15) is used for the removal of



**Fig. 18.13** Limbal ring used for localization of an intraocular foreign body seen in anteroposterior view of X-ray



**Fig. 18.14** Limbal ring method of radiographic localization of IOFB: Lateral view with eyeball in straight position



**Fig. 18.15** Hand-held magnet



magnetic foreign body. Method of removal depends upon the site (location) of the IOFB as follows:

**1. Foreign body in the anterior chamber.** It is removed through a corresponding corneal incision directed straight towards the foreign body. It should be 3 mm internal to the limbus and in the quadrant of the cornea lying over the foreign body (Fig. 18.16).

- **Magnetic** foreign body is removed with a hand-held magnet. It may come out with a gush of aqueous.
- **Non-magnetic** foreign body is picked up with toothless forceps.

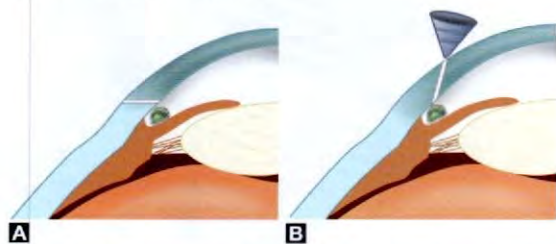
**2. Foreign body entangled in the iris tissue** (magnetic as well as non-magnetic) is removed by performing sector iridectomy of the part containing foreign body.

**3. Foreign body in the lens.** Magnet extraction is usually difficult for intralenticular foreign bodies. Therefore, magnetic foreign body should also be treated as non-magnetic foreign body. An extracapsular cataract extraction (ECCE) with intraocular lens implantation should be performed. The foreign body may be evacuated itself along with the lens matter or may be removed with the help of forceps.

**4. Foreign body in the vitreous and the retina** is removed by the posterior route as follows:

**i. Magnetic removal.** This technique is used to remove a magnetic foreign body that can be well localized and removed safely with a powerful magnet without causing much damage to the intraocular structures.

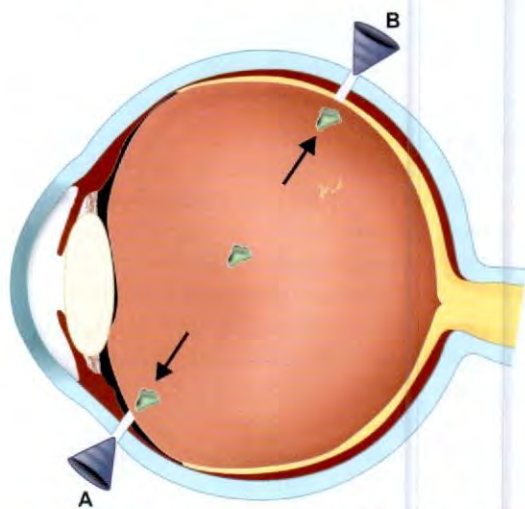
▪ **An intravitreal foreign body** is preferably removed through a pars plana sclerotomy (5 mm from the limbus) (Fig. 18.17 position 'A'). At the site chosen for incision, conjunctiva is reflected and the incision is given in the sclera concentric to the limbus. A preplaced suture is passed and lips of the wound are retracted. A nick is given in the underlying pars plana part of the ciliary body. And the foreign body is removed with the help of a powerful hand-held electromagnet. Preplaced suture is tied to close the scleral wound. Conjunctiva is stitched with one or two interrupted sutures.



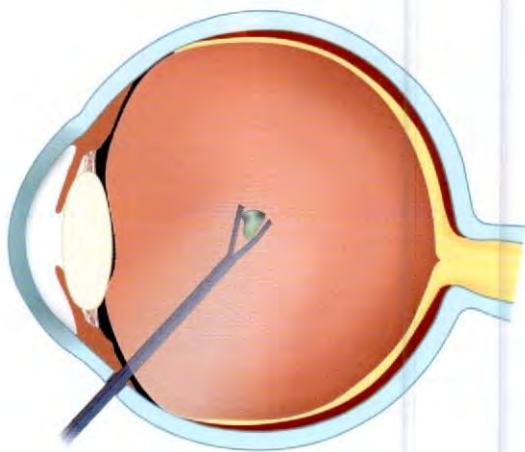
**Fig. 18.16** Removal of a magnetic intraocular foreign body from the anterior chamber: A, The wrong incision; B, Correct incision

▪ **For an intraretinal foreign body**, the site of incision should be as close to the foreign body as possible (Fig. 18.17 position 'B'). A trapdoor scleral flap is created, the choroidal bed is treated with diathermy, choroid is incised and foreign body is removed with either forceps or external magnet.

**ii. Forceps removal with pars plana vitrectomy.** This technique is used to remove all non-magnetic foreign bodies and those magnetic foreign bodies that cannot be safely removed with a magnet. In this technique, the foreign body is removed with vitreous forceps after performing three-pore pars plana vitrectomy under direct visualization using an operating microscope (Fig. 18.18).



**Fig. 18.17** Removal of a magnetic intraocular foreign body from posterior segment



**Fig. 18.18** Removal of a non-magnetic foreign body through pars plana



## EXTRAOCULAR LESIONS

Extraocular or periocular injuries may or may not be associated with ocular injuries. These may be caused by:

- Blunt trauma, and
- Sharp trauma.

### Extraocular lesions caused by blunt trauma

These include:

#### 1. Conjunctival lesions include:

- *Subconjunctival haemorrhage* occurs very commonly. It appears as a bright red spot.
- *Chemosis and lacerating wounds* of conjunctiva (tears) are also not uncommon.

#### 2. Eyelid lesions include:

- *Ecchymosis* of eyelids is of frequent occurrence. Because of loose subcutaneous tissue, blood collects easily into the lids and produces 'black-eye'. Ecchymosis of the eyelids may characteristically appear as bilateral ring haematomas (*panda eye*) in patients with basal skull fracture.
- *Laceration and avulsion* of the lids.
- *Traumatic ptosis* may follow damage to the levator muscle.

#### 3. Lacrimal apparatus lesions include:

- *Dislocation of lacrimal gland*, and
- *Lacerations of lacrimal passages* especially the canaliculi.

**4. Optic nerve injuries.** These are commonly associated with fractures of the base of skull. These may be in the form of traumatic papillitis, lacerations of optic nerve, optic nerve sheath haemorrhage and avulsion of the optic nerve from back of the eye. For details of *traumatic optic neuropathy* See page 335.

**5. Orbital injury.** There may occur fractures of the orbital walls; commonest being the 'blow-out fracture' of the orbital floor (See page 440). *Orbital haemorrhage* may produce sudden proptosis. *Orbital emphysema* may occur following ethmoidal sinus rupture.

## SYMPATHETIC OPHTHALMITIS

Sympathetic ophthalmitis is a serious bilateral granulomatous panuveitis which follows a penetrating ocular trauma. The injured eye is called *exciting eye* and the fellow eye which also develops uveitis is called *sympathizing eye*. Very rarely, sympathetic ophthalmitis can also occur following an intraocular surgery.

### Incidence

Incidence of sympathetic ophthalmitis has markedly decreased in the recent years due to meticulous

repair of the injured eye utilizing microsurgical techniques and use of the potent steroids.

### Etiology

Etiology of sympathetic ophthalmitis is still not known exactly. However, the facts related with its occurrence are as follows:

#### A. Predisposing factors

1. It almost always follows a penetrating injury.
2. Wounds in the ciliary region (the so-called dangerous zone) are more prone to it.
3. Wounds with incarceration of the iris, ciliary body or lens capsule are more vulnerable.
4. It is more common in children than in adults.
5. It does not occur when actual suppuration develops in the injured eye.

#### B. Pathogenesis

Various theories have been put forward. Most accepted one is *allergic theory*, which postulates that the uveal pigment acts as an allergen and excites plastic uveitis in the sound eye.

### Pathology

It is characteristic of granulomatous uveitis, i.e. there is:

- *Nodular aggregation* of lymphocytes, plasma cells, epithelioid cells and giant cells scattered throughout the uveal tract.
- *Dalen-Fuchs' nodules* are formed due to proliferation of the pigment epithelium (of the iris, ciliary body and choroid) associated with invasion by the lymphocytes and epithelioid cells.
- *Sympathetic perivasculitis*. Retina shows perivascular cellular infiltration.

### Clinical features

**I. Exciting (injured) eye.** It shows clinical features of persistent low grade plastic uveitis, which include ciliary congestion, lacrimation and tenderness. Keratic precipitates may be present at the back of cornea (dangerous sign).

**II. Sympathizing (sound) eye.** It is usually involved after 4–8 weeks of injury in the other eye. Earliest reported case is after 9 days of injury. Most of the cases occur within the first year. However, delayed and very late cases are also reported. Sympathetic ophthalmitis, almost always, manifests as acute plastic iridocyclitis. Rarely it may manifest as neuroretinitis or choroiditis. Clinical feature of the iridocyclitis in sympathizing eye can be divided into two stages:

#### 1. Prodromal stage.

• *Symptoms.* Sensitivity to light (photophobia) and transient indistinctness of near objects (due to



weakening of accommodation) are the earliest symptoms.

■ **Signs.** In this stage, the first sign may be presence of retrolental flare and cells or the presence of a few keratic precipitates (KPs) on back of cornea. Other signs includes mild ciliary congestion, slight tenderness of the globe, fine vitreous haze and disc oedema which is seen occasionally.

**2. Fully-developed stage.** It is clinically characterised by typical signs and symptoms consistent with acute plastic iridocyclitis (See page 158).

### Treatment

#### A. Prophylaxis

**1. Early excision of the injured eye.** It is the best prophylaxis when there is no chance of saving useful vision.

**II. When there is hope of saving useful vision,** following steps should be taken:

1. A *meticulous repair* of the wound using microsurgical technique should be carried out, taking great care that uveal tissue is not incarcerated in the wound.
2. *Immediate expectant treatment* with topical as well as systemic steroids and antibiotics along with topical atropine should be started.
3. *When the uveitis is not controlled* after 2 weeks of expectant treatment, i.e. lacrimation, photophobia and ciliary congestion persist and if KPs appear, this injured eye should be excised immediately.

#### B. Treatment when sympathetic ophthalmitis has already supervened

**I. Early excision (enucleation)** should be done when the case is seen shortly after the onset of inflammation (i.e. during prodromal stage) in the sympathizing eye, and the injured eye has no useful vision, this useless eye should be excised at once.

**II. Conservative treatment of sympathetic ophthalmitis** on the lines of iridocyclitis should be started immediately, as follows:

1. *Corticosteroids* should be administered by all routes, i.e. systemic, periocular injections and frequent instillation of topical drops.
2. *Immunosuppressant* drugs should be started in severe cases, without delay.
3. *Atropine* should be instilled three times a day in all cases.

**Note.** The treatment should be continued for a long time.

**Prognosis.** If sympathetic ophthalmitis is diagnosed early (during prodromal stage) and immediate

treatment with steroids is started, a useful vision may be obtained. However, in advanced cases, prognosis is very poor, even after the best treatment.

## NON-MECHANICAL INJURIES

### ■ CHEMICAL INJURIES

Chemical injuries (Fig. 18.19) are by no means uncommon. These vary in severity from a trivial and transient irritation of little significance to complete and sudden loss of vision.

#### Modes of chemical injury

These usually occur due to external contact with chemicals under following circumstances:

1. *Domestic accidents*, e.g. with ammonia, solvents, detergents and cosmetics.
2. *Agricultural accidents*, e.g. due to fertilizers, insecticides, toxins of vegetable and animal origin.
3. *Chemical laboratory accidents*, with acids and alkalies.
4. *Deliberate chemical attacks*, especially with acids to disfigure the face.
5. *Chemical warfare injuries*.
6. *Self-inflicted chemical injuries* are seen in malingerers and psychopaths.

#### Types of chemical injuries

In general, the serious chemical burns mainly comprise alkali and acid burns.

#### A. Alkali burns

Alkali burns are among the most severe chemical injuries known to the ophthalmologists. Common alkalies responsible for burns are: lime, caustic potash or caustic soda and liquid ammonia (most harmful).



**Fig. 18.19** A patient with chemical injury face including eye



**Mechanisms of damage produced by alkalis includes:**

1. Alkalies dissociate and saponify fatty acids of the cell membrane and, therefore, destroy the structure of cell membrane of the tissues.
2. Being hygroscopic, they extract water from the cells, a factor which contributes to the total necrosis.
3. They combine with lipids of cells to form soluble compounds, which produce a condition of softening and gelatinisation.

The above effects result in an increased deep penetration of the alkalies into the tissues. Alkali burns, therefore, spread widely, their action continues for some days and their effects are difficult to circumscribe. Hence, prognosis in such cases must always be guarded.

**B. Acid burns**

Acid burns are less serious than alkali burns. Common acids responsible for burns are: sulphuric acid, hydrochloric acid and nitric acid.

**Chemical effects.** Strong acids cause instant coagulation of all the proteins which then act as a barrier and prevent deeper penetration of the acids into the tissues. Thus, the lesions become sharply demarcated.

**Clinical features**

It can be divided into three stages:

**1. Stage of acute ischaemic necrosis.** In this stage:

**Conjunctiva** shows marked oedema, congestion, widespread necrosis and a copious purulent discharge.

**Cornea** develops widespread sloughing of the epithelium, oedema and opalescence of the stroma.

The extent of damage depends upon the concentration of chemical and the duration of contact and type of chemical alkali burns are most severe than acid burns.

**In mild to moderate degree of corneal burns** end result is corneal opacification of varying degree.

**In severe cases**, the whole cornea may slough out followed by staphyloma formation.

**Iris** becomes violently inflamed and in severe cases both iris and ciliary body are replaced by granulation tissue.

**2. Stage of reparation.** In this stage, conjunctival and corneal epithelium regenerate, there occurs corneal vascularization and inflammation of the iris subsides.

**Phases of ocular recovery** following chemical burns, as proposed by McCulley, are summarised in Table 18.1

**3. Stage of complications.** This is characterised by development of symblepharon, recurrent corneal ulceration and development of complicated cataract and secondary glaucoma.

**Grading of chemical burns**

Depending upon the severity of damage caused to the limbus and cornea, the extent of chemical burns may be graded in Roper-Hall classification as follows (Table 18.2) or Dua's classification (Table 18.3).

**Treatment of chemical burns**

**1. Prevent further damage** by following measures:

- **Immediate and thorough irrigation** with the available *clean water* or saline delivered through an IV tubing. Deliver minimum of 2 L of water in 20–30 minutes or until pH is restored.

**Table 18.1** Phases of ocular recovery following chemical injury as proposed by McCulley

| Phase        | Day          | Recovery                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Initial      | 0            | Clinical findings relate to the severity of injury and can be graded according to degree of limbal, corneal and conjunctival involvement.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| Acute        | 0–7          | Epithelial regrowth begins to occur if there is a sufficient amount undamaged limbal stem cells. Treatment should be directed at encouraging growth while quelling inflammation.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Early Repair | 7–21         | Corneal/conjunctival epithelium and keratocytes proliferate during this stage. Mild injuries show complete re-epithelialization while more severe injuries can have persistent epithelial defects. Activity of collagenases peaks by day 14–21 while collagen synthesis continues. Treatment should attempt to maximize collagen synthesis while minimizing collagenase activity.                                                                                                                           |
| Late Repair  | After day 21 | In mild injuries, where the limbal stem cell population is intact, repair is completed. In grade II injuries, where there is focal stem cell loss, there may be a focal conjunctivalization of the cornea. In more severe injuries, there is delayed re-epithelialization of the cornea, ultimately leading to either repopulation by conjunctival epithelium or stromal ulceration and permanent scarring. In cases of severe limbal damage, despite optimal management, the eye often cannot be salvaged. |



**Table 18.2** *Grades of chemical burns (Roper-Hall classification)*

| Grade | Corneal appearance                    | Limbal ischaemia | Visual prognosis  |
|-------|---------------------------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| I     | Clear cornea                          | Nil              | Excellent         |
| II    | Hazy but iris details visible         | <1/3             | Good              |
| III   | Opaque cornea. Iris details obscured  | 1/3 to 1/2       | Doubtful/ Guarded |
| IV    | Opaque, no view of the iris and pupil | >1/2             | Poor              |

**Note.** Do not waste time on history and examination of the patient; it should be done after the irrigation.

- **Mechanical removal of contaminant.** If any particles are left behind, particularly in the case of lime, these should be removed carefully with a swab stick.
- **Removal of contaminated and necrotic tissue.** Necrosed conjunctiva should be excised. Contaminated and necrosed corneal epithelium should be removed with a cotton swab stick.

**2. Maintenance of favourable conditions for rapid and uncomplicated healing** by following measures:

- **Topical antibiotic drops**, e.g. moxifloxacin 4–6 times a day to prevent infection.
- **Steroid eye drops** to reduce inflammation, neutrophil infiltration, and address anterior uveitis. Cautious use is recommended after 2 weeks, as steroids may interfere with collagen synthesis.
- **Cycloplegics**, e.g. atropine, may improve the comfort.

- **Ascorbic acid**, in the form of 10% sodium ascorbate eye drops (4–5 times), along with systemic use (1–2 gm orally/day) improves wound healing and promotes synthesis of the mature collagen by corneal fibroblasts.
- **Lubricant eye drops** (preservative free) should be used in abundance to promote the healing.
- **Autologous serum**, instilled as eye drops, provides growth factors, collagenase inhibitors, retinoic acid, fibrinogen activator and promotes epithelial healing.
- **Sodium citrate**, used as 10% topical eye drops stabilizes neutrophils and reduces collagenase release.
- **Doxycycline**, 100 mg BD, chelates zinc which is necessary for collagenase.

**3. Prevention of symblepharon** can be done by using a glass shell or sweeping a glass rod in the fornices twice daily.

**4. Treatment of complications**, as below:

- **Secondary glaucoma** should be treated by topical 0.5% timolol, instilled twice a day along with oral acetazolamide 250 mg 3–4 times a day.
- **Poor corneal healing** with limbal stem cell deficiency may be treated by amniotic membrane transplantation with or without limbal stem cell transplantation.
- **Pseudopterygium**, when formed, should be excised together with conjunctival autograft (if adequate host conjunctiva) or amniotic membrane facilitated by antimitotic drugs (e.g. mitomycin C).
- **Symblepharon** needs surgical treatment (See page 392).
- **Corneal opacity** may be treated by keratoplasty if adequate tear film and stem cell population available.

**Table18.3** *Grading of chemical burns: Dua's classification*

| Gr  | Prognosis       | Clinical findings (clock hours of limbal involvement) | Conjunctival involvement          | Analogue scale      |
|-----|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------|
| I   | Very good       | 0 clock hours                                         | 0%                                | 0.0%                |
| II  | Good            | ≤3 clock hours                                        | ≤30%                              | 0.1–3/1–30%         |
| III | Good            | >3–6 clock hours                                      | >30–50%                           | 3.1–6/31–50%        |
| IV  | Good to guarded | >6–9 clock hours                                      | >50–75%                           | 6.1–6/51–755        |
| V   | Good to poor    | >9–<12 clock hours                                    | >75–<100%                         | 9.1–11.9/75.1–99.9% |
| VI  | Very poor       | 12 clock hours involved                               | Total conjunctiva (100%) involved | 12/100%             |

A new classification of ocular surface burns: Harminder S Dua, Anthony J King, Annie Joseph, Br J Ophthalmal 2001; 85: 1379–1383.



- *Keratoprosthesis* remains a surgical option in severely damaged eyes where keratoplasty is not possible.

### ■ THERMAL INJURIES

Thermal injuries are usually caused by fire, or hot fluids. The main brunt of such injuries lies on the lids. Conjunctiva and cornea may be affected in severe cases.

*Treatment* for burns of lids is on general lines. When cornea is affected, it should be treated with atropine, steroids, antibiotics and lubricants.

### ■ ELECTRICAL INJURIES

The passage of strong electric current from the area of eyes may cause following lesions:

1. *Conjunctiva* becomes congested.
2. *Cornea* develops punctate or diffuse interstitial opacities.
3. *Iris and ciliary body* are inflamed.

4. *Lens* may develop 'electric cataract' after 2–4 months of accident.
5. *Retina* may show multiple haemorrhages.
6. *Optic nerve* may develop neuritis.
7. *Extraocular muscles* may develop palsies leading to diplopia or restricted ocular movements.

### ■ RADIATIONAL INJURIES

1. *Ultraviolet radiations*. These may cause (i) photophthalmia (See page 122) and (ii) may be responsible for senile cataract.

2. *Infrared radiations*. These may cause solar macular burns, i.e. solar retinopathy (See page 301).

3. *Ionizing radiational injuries*. These are caused following radiotherapy to the tumours in the vicinity of the eyes. The common ocular lesions include:

- Radiation keratoconjunctivitis,
- Radiation dermatitis of lids,
- Radiation cataract, and
- Radiation retinopathy.







# Section IV

---

## Ocular Therapeutics

### *Section Outline*

---

19. Ocular Pharmacology
20. Lasers and Cryotherapy in Ophthalmology







## Ocular Pharmacology

### MODES OF ADMINISTRATION

- Topical instillation
- Periocular injections
- Intraocular injections
- Systemic administration

### COMMON PHARMACOLOGICAL

### AGENTS USED IN OPHTHALMOLOGY

- Anti-infective agents

- Anti-glaucoma drugs
- Anti-inflammatory and immunosuppressive agent
- Anti-allergic and vasoconstrictor drugs
- Lubricating agent and artificial tear
- Intraocular and irrigating solutions
- Viscoelastic substances
- Anti-VEGFs agents
- Dyes used in ophthalmology

### MODES OF ADMINISTRATION

Ocular pharmacotherapeutics can be delivered by four methods: topical instillation into the conjunctival sac, periocular injections, intraocular injections and systemic administration.

#### 1. Topical instillation into the conjunctival sac

This is the most commonly employed mode of administration for ocular therapeutics. The drugs can be administered topically in the form of eye drops, ointments, gels, ocuserts and with the help of soft contact lenses.

**1. Eye drops (*gutta*).** This is the simplest and most convenient method of topical application, especially for daytime use. Eye drops may be in the form of aqueous solutions (drug totally dissolved) or aqueous suspensions (drug is present as small particles kept suspended in the aqueous medium) or oily solutions. Application in the form of eye drops makes the drug available for immediate action, but it is quickly diluted by tears within about a minute.

**2. Eye ointment (*oculenta* or *ung*).** Topical application in the form of an eye ointment increases the bioavailability of the drug by increasing tissue contact time and by preventing dilution and quick absorption. However, the drug is not available for immediate use and ointments blur the vision. These are best for bedtime application or when ocular bandage is to be applied.

**3. Gels.** These have prolonged contact time like ointments and do not cause much blurring of vision. However, they are costly and difficult to prepare.

**4. Ocuserts.** These form a system of drug delivery through a membrane. These can be placed in the upper or lower fornix up to a week and allow a drug to be released at a relatively constant rate. Pilocarpine ocuserts have been found very useful in patients with primary open-angle glaucoma; by efficiently controlling intraocular pressure with comparatively fewer side-effects.

**5. Soft contact lenses.** These are very good for delivering higher concentrations of drugs in emergency treatment. A pre-soaked soft contact lens in 1% pilocarpine has been found as effective as 4% pilocarpine eye drops in patients with acute angle-closure glaucoma. Soft contact lenses are also used to deliver *antibiotics* and antiviral drugs in patients with corneal ulcers.

#### Intraocular penetration of topically instilled drugs

Topically instilled medications largely penetrate intraocularly through the cornea. The main barrier through cornea is its epithelium, which is lipophilic, and crossed readily by nonpolar drugs. Stroma being hydrophilic allows rapid passage of the drug through endothelium into the anterior chamber. So following features will allow better penetration of drugs through the cornea:

- Drugs which are soluble both in water and fats.
- Prodrug forms are lipophilic and after absorption through epithelium are converted into proper drugs which can easily pass through stroma.
- Agents that reduce surface tension increase corneal wetting and therefore present more drug for absorption. Benzalkonium chloride used as



preservative also acts as a wetting agent and thus increases the drug absorption.

#### **Rate and extent of ocular absorption.**

Many factors have a profound effect on rate and extent of ocular absorption. The most important of these are:

- Precorneal factors such as tear volume (7–30  $\mu$ L)
- Tear turnover time (0.5–2.2  $\mu$ L/min)
- Spontaneous blink rate (15 times/min)
- Corneal thickness and the ratio of conjunctival: corneal surface area (17:1 in humans) also influence ocular absorption.

All of these combine to limit the time, the drug remains in the conjunctival sac to 3–5 minutes on average. This time will be reduced further if the medication is irritative, causing increased tear production and blinking.

#### **II. Periocular injections**

These are not infrequently employed to deliver drugs. These include subconjunctival, sub-Tenon, retrobulbar and peribulbar injections.

**1. Subconjunctival injections.** These are used to achieve higher concentration of drugs. Further, the drugs which cannot penetrate the cornea owing to large-sized molecules can easily pass through the sclera.

**2. Sub-Tenon injections.** These are preferred over subconjunctival injections.

- *Anterior sub-Tenon injections* are used mainly to administer steroids in the treatment of severe or resistant anterior uveitis.
- *Posterior sub-Tenon injections* are indicated in patients with intermediate and posterior uveitis.

**3. Retrobulbar injections.** Nowadays, these are sparingly used to deliver drugs for optic neuritis, papillitis, posterior uveitis and also for administering retrobulbar block anaesthesia.

**4. Peribulbar injections.** These are now frequently used for injecting anaesthetic agents. Peribulbar anaesthesia has almost replaced the retrobulbar and facial block anaesthesia.

#### **III. Intraocular injections and implants**

Such injections are made in desperate cases (e.g. endophthalmitis) to deliver the drugs in maximum concentration at the target tissue. Intraocular injections include:

- *Intracameral injection* (into the anterior chamber), and
- *Intravitreal injection* (into the vitreous cavity).

Examples of intravitreally given drugs include anti-VEGFs, antibiotics and steroids.

**Intravitreal drug implants** are inserted in the vitreous cavity through pars plana for sustained and slow release, e.g.:

- *Steroid implants* of fluocinolone and dexamethasone are available for use in patients with posterior uveitis and diabetic macular oedema.
- *Ganciclovir implants* are available for use in cytomegalovirus (CMV) retinitis.

#### **IV. Systemic administration**

The systemic routes include oral intake, intramuscular and intravenous injections. The intraocular penetration of systemically administered drugs mainly depends upon the blood-aqueous barrier. The passage through blood-aqueous barrier in turn is influenced by the molecular weight and the lipid solubility of the drug.

Only low molecular weight drugs can cross this blood-aqueous barrier. No passage is allowed to large-sized molecules, such as penicillin. Out of the borderline molecular weight drugs, those with high lipid solubility can pass easily, e.g. sulphonamides have the same molecular weight as sucrose but are 16 times more permeable due to their lipid solubility. Similarly, chloramphenicol being lipid soluble also enters the eye easily.

### COMMON PHARMACOLOGICAL AGENTS USED IN OPHTHALMOLOGY

Common pharmacological agents used in ophthalmology include:

1. Anti-infective agents
  - Antibacterial agents
  - Antiviral drugs
  - Antifungal agents
2. Mydriatics and cycloplegics agents (See page 593)
3. Anti-glaucoma drugs
4. Anti-inflammatory and immunosuppressive agents
  - Corticosteroid
  - Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs
  - Immunosuppressive and antimitotic drugs
5. Anti-allergic and vasoconstrictor drug
6. Lubricating agent and artificial tear
7. Intraocular and irrigating solutions
8. Viscoelastic substances
9. Anti-VEGFs agents
10. Dyes used in ophthalmology.

### ANTI-INFECTIVE AGENTS

#### ■ ANTIBACTERIAL AGENTS

Antimicrobial drugs are the greatest contribution to therapeutics. As there are a wide range of



microorganisms, there are also specific antibiotics for almost each organism. Depending on the type of action, these can be either *bacteriostatic* or *bactericidal*. A few common antimicrobials described here are grouped on the basis of their chemical structure.

### Sulphonamides

These are *bacteriostatic* agents that act by competing with PABA (para-aminobenzoic acid) which is essential for the bacterial cell nutrition. Thus, they prevent susceptible microorganisms from synthesizing folic acid.

In ophthalmic practice, these are used topically and systemically in the treatment of chlamydial infections, viz., trachoma and inclusion conjunctivitis. They are also helpful as an adjunct to pyrimethamine in the treatment of toxoplasmosis.

### Beta-lactam antibiotics

These antibiotics have a beta-lactam ring. The two important groups are penicillins, and cephalosporins. All beta-lactam antibiotics act by interfering with the synthesis of bacterial cell wall. They are bactericidal in nature.

**A. Penicillins.** These are produced by growing one of the penicillium moulds in deep tanks. These may be categorised as: natural penicillins and semisynthetic penicillins.

In deep-seated inflammations of the orbit or lids, penicillin is given parenterally. In superficial inflammations of the conjunctiva and cornea it is administered locally as *drops* or *ointments*. In intraocular infections, it is given as subconjunctival injections. Commonly used preparations are as follows:

**1. Benzyl penicillin.** A dose of 500,000 units twice daily is sufficient for sensitive infections and produces high levels in all tissues except CNS and eye.

**2. Procaine penicillin.** This is an intramuscular depot preparation which provides tissue levels up to 24 hours.

**3. Methicillin, cloxacillin and flucloxacillin.** These penicillins are not affected by penicillinase and are, therefore, used for staphylococcal infections which are resistant to other penicillins.

**4. Carbenicillin.** It is resistant to the penicillinase produced by some strains of *Proteus*, *Pseudomonas* and coliform organisms. It is ineffective by mouth.

**5. Ampicillin.** It is a broad-spectrum penicillinase-sensitive penicillin. It is acid resistant and usually administered orally.

Its dosage is 0.25–2 g oral/IM/IV depending upon the severity of infection every 6 hours. Paediatric dose is 25–50 mg/kg/day.

**6. Amoxicillin.** Its spectrum is similar to ampicillin except that it is less effective against *Shigella* and *H. influenzae*. Its oral absorption is better than ampicillin and thus higher and more sustained blood levels are produced. Incidence of diarrhoea is less with it than with ampicillin and is thus better tolerated orally.

**B. Cephalosporins.** These drugs have a similar structure and mode of action as penicillin. All the cephalosporins have a bactericidal action against a wide range of organisms. By convention these have been categorised into three generations of broadly similar antibacterial and pharmacokinetic properties:

**1. First-generation (narrow spectrum) cephalosporins.**

These are very active against Gram-positive cocci and thus have useful antistaphylococcal activity. These include cefazolin, cephadrine, cephalixin and cephadroxil.

**2. Second-generation (intermediate spectrum) cephalosporins.**

These have anti-staphylococcal activity and are also effective against certain Gram-negative organisms. They comprise cefuroxime, cefamandole and cefoxitin.

**3. Third-generation (wide spectrum) cephalosporins.**

These are mainly effective against Gram-negative organisms but not against *Staphylococci*. These include: cefotaxime, cefixime and cefotetan.

**Side-effects.** Cephalosporins have a low frequency of adverse effects in comparison to antimicrobials in general. The most usual are allergic reactions of the penicillin type. If these are continued for more than 2 weeks, thrombocytopenia, neutropenia, interstitial nephritis or abnormal liver function tests may occur. These resolve on stopping the drug.

### Aminoglycosides

These are bactericidal and act primarily against Gram-negative bacilli. These are not absorbed orally, distributed mainly extracellularly and are excreted unchanged in the urine. These are ototoxic and nephrotoxic. Certain aminoglycosides are too toxic for systemic use and hence used only topically. Commonly used preparations are as follows:

**1. Streptomycin.** It is used mainly in tuberculosis.

**2. Gentamicin.** It has a broader spectrum of action and is effective against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa*. It is nephrotoxic, therefore, its dose must be precisely calculated according to body weight and renal function. For an average adult with normal renal function, the dose is 1–1.5 mg/kg intramuscularly, 8 hourly. Topically, it is used as 0.3% eye drops.



3. **Tobramycin.** It is 2–4 times more active against *Pseudomonas aeruginosa* and *Proteus* as compared to gentamicin. Topically, it is used as 1% eye drops.

4. **Amikacin.** It is recommended as a reserve drug for hospital-acquired infections with Gram-negative bacilli, where gentamicin resistance is increasing.

5. **Neomycin.** It is a wide spectrum aminoglycoside, active against most Gram-negative bacilli and some Gram-positive cocci. However, *Pseudomonas* and *Streptococcus pyogenes* are not sensitive to it. It is highly toxic to internal ear and kidney and hence used only topically (0.3–0.5%).

6. **Framycetin.** It is very similar to neomycin. It is also too toxic for systemic use and hence used only topically. It is available as 1% skin cream; 0.5% eye ointment and eye drops.

### Tetracyclines

These are broad-spectrum bacteriostatic agents with a considerable action against both Gram-positive and Gram-negative organisms as well as some fungi, *Rickettsiae* and *Chlamydiae*. They interrupt the cycle of attachment of amino acids to the first binding site during protein synthesis. This group includes tetracycline, chlortetracycline and oxytetracycline.

### Chloramphenicol

It is also a broad-spectrum antibiotic, primarily bacteriostatic, effective against Gram-positive as well as Gram-negative bacteria, *Rickettsiae*, *Chlamydiae* and *Mycoplasma*.

Its molecule is relatively small and lipid soluble. Therefore, on systemic administration, it enters the eye in therapeutic concentration. Topically, it is used as 0.5% eye drops.

### Polypeptides

These are powerful bactericidal agents, but rarely used systemically due to toxicity. Clinically used polypeptides are polymyxin B, bacitracin, colistin and tyrothricin.

1. **Polymyxin B and colistin.** These are active against most Gram-negative bacteria, notably *Pseudomonas*.

2. **Neosporin** (neomycin-polymyxin-bacitracin). It is an effective broad-spectrum antimicrobial but suffers the disadvantage of a high incidence (68%) of sensitivity due to neomycin.

### Fluoroquinolones

Fluoroquinolones are potent synthetic agents having broad spectrum of activity against Gram-positive and Gram-negative organisms.

**Mechanism of action.** Fluoroquinolones are bactericidal drugs. They inhibit the bacterial DNA synthesis.

**Preparations.** Fluoroquinolones by convention have been grouped into four generations (Table 19.1).

### ANTIVIRAL DRUGS

These are more often used locally in the eye. Currently available antiviral agents are virostatic. They are active against DNA viruses; especially herpes simplex virus. Antiviral drugs used in ophthalmology can be grouped as below:

*For herpes simplex virus infection*

- Idoxuridine
- Vidarabine
- Trifluridine
- Acyclovir
- Famciclovir

*For herpes zoster virus infection*

- Acyclovir
- Famciclovir
- Valaciclovir
- Vidarabine
- Sorivudine

*For CMV retinitis*

- Ganciclovir
- Foscarnet
- Zidovudine

**Table 19.1** Commonly used fluoroquinolones

| Generation and drug      | Preparation and doses  |                                                     |
|--------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
|                          | Topical                | Systemic                                            |
| <b>First generation</b>  |                        |                                                     |
| • Ciprofloxacin          | 0.3%<br>1 to 4 hourly  | 500 mg orally 12 hourly<br>200 mg I/V 12 hourly     |
| • Norfloxacin            | 0.3%<br>1 to 4 hourly  | 400 mg orally 12 hourly                             |
| <b>Second generation</b> |                        |                                                     |
| • Ofloxacin              | 0.3%<br>1 to 4 hourly  | 200–400 mg orally 12 hourly<br>200 mg I/V 12 hourly |
| • Lomefloxacin           | 0.3%,<br>1 to 4 hourly | 400 mg orally OD                                    |
| • Pefloxacin             | 0.3%<br>1 to 4 hourly  | 400 mg orally or I/V<br>12 hourly                   |
| <b>Third generation</b>  |                        |                                                     |
| • Sparfloxacin           | 0.3%<br>1 to 4 hourly  | 400 mg orally on day 1<br>followed by 200 mg OD     |
| <b>Fourth generation</b> |                        |                                                     |
| • Gatifloxacin           | 0.3%<br>1 to 4 hourly  | 400 mg OD                                           |
| • Moxifloxacin           | 0.5%<br>1 to 4 hourly  | 400 mg OD                                           |



*Nonselective*

- Interferons
- Immunoglobulins.

Some of the antiviral drugs are described in brief.

**1. Idoxuridine (IDU, 5-iodo-2 deoxyuridine).** It is a halogenated pyrimidine resembling thymidine.

**Mechanism of action.** It inhibits viral metabolism by substituting for thymidine in DNA synthesis and thus prevents replication of virus.

Topically, it is used as 0.1% eye drops.

**Preparations.** It is available as 0.1% eye drops and 0.5% eye ointment.

**Indications and doses:** Since, the intraocular penetration of topically applied IDU is very poor, it is not of much value in the treatment of chronic stromal herpetic keratitis. It is mainly used in acute epithelial herpetic keratitis. IDU drops are used one hourly during day and two hourly during night and has to be continued till microscopic staining disappears.

**Side-effects** include follicular conjunctivitis, lacrimal punctal stenosis and irritation with photophobia.

**Contraindications.** It is known to inhibit corneal stromal healing, hence its use is not advisable during first few weeks after keratoplasty.

**2. Adenine arabinoside (Ara-A, Vidarabine).** It is a purine nucleoside. It has antiviral activity against herpes simplex, cytomegalo, vaccinia and zoster viruses. It is more potent and less toxic than IDU and is also effective in IDU resistant cases. It has no cross allergenicity with IDU or  $TF_3$  and thus can be used with IDU.

**Mechanism of action:** It is metabolized to triphosphate form which inhibits DNA polymerase and thus the growth of viral DNA is arrested.

**Preparations:** It is available as 3% ophthalmic ointment.

**Dose:** It is used 5 times a day till epithelialization occurs and then reduced to once or twice daily for 4–5 days to prevent recurrences.

**Side-effects** are superficial punctate keratitis and irritation on prolonged application.

**3. Cytosine-Arabinoside (Cytarabine).** It is a purine nucleoside.

**Mechanism of action:** It blocks nucleic acid synthesis by preventing conversion of cytosine ribose to cytosine deoxyribose.

**Preparation:** It is not commercially available at present. 5% solution used as drops has been found experimentally effective for treatment of herpes simplex keratitis.

▪ **Side-effects.** It causes profound corneal epithelial toxicity with superficial punctate keratitis and iritis. So, it is not recommended for clinical use.

**4. Trifluorothymidine ( $TF_3$ ).** It is a pyrimidine nucleoside. It has the advantage over IDU of higher solubility, greater potency, lack of toxicity and allergic reactions. It is also effective in IDU-resistant cases.

**Mechanism of action:** It is a DNA inhibitor with same mechanism as IDU.

**Preparation:** It is available as 1% eye drops.

**Dose:** One drop is instilled 4 hourly. If no improvement occurs in 14 days, it is better to change to some other antiviral drug.

**Toxicity:** It is least toxic. It may cause mild superficial punctate keratitis on prolonged use.

**5. Acyclovir (Acycloguanosine).** It has proved to be an extremely safe and effective agent and is effective in most forms of herpes simplex and herpes zoster infections.

**Mechanism of action:** It inhibits viral DNA, preferentially entering the infected cells, with little effect on normal cells. It penetrates into deeper layers and thus is very effective in stromal keratitis.

**Preparation.** It is available as 3% ophthalmic ointment and also as tablet for oral use and injection for intravenous use.

**Indications and doses:** (a) Topical 3% ointment is used 5 times a day for epithelial as well as stromal herpes simplex keratitis. (b) Oral acyclovir four tablets of 200 mg each, 5 times a day for 5–7 days, may be considered in following situations: (i) After penetrating keratoplasty in patients suffering from herpes simplex keratitis. (ii) Recalcitrant stromal or uveal disease caused by HSV. (iii) To reduce ocular complications of keratitis and uveitis in herpes zoster ophthalmicus.

**Side-effects:** A few cases show slight punctate epithelial keratopathy which ceases once the drug is stopped.

**6. Valaciclovir.** It is used for treatment of herpes zoster ophthalmicus in a dose of 500–700 mg tds for 7 days. It is as effective as acyclovir in acute disease and is more effective in reducing late neuralgia.

**7. Famciclovir.** Its use, dose and effectivity is similar to valaciclovir.

**8. Interferons.** These are nontoxic, species-specific proteins possessing broad-spectrum antiviral activity. However, it is still not available for commercial use.

**9. Immunoglobulins.** These preparations may be useful in the treatment or prophylaxis of certain viral diseases especially in patients with immune deficiencies.

**10. Ganciclovir.** It is used for the treatment of CMV retinitis in immunocompromised individuals.



**Dose:** 5 mg/kg body weight every 12 hours for 2–3 weeks, followed by a permanent maintenance dose of 5 mg/kg once daily for 5 out of 7 days.

**11. Foscarnet (Phosphonoformic acid; PFA).** It is as effective as ganciclovir in the treatment of CMV retinitis in AIDS patients.

**12. Zidovudine (Azidothymidine; AZT).** It has been recently recommended for selected AIDS patients with non-vision threatening retinitis who have no evidence of systemic CMV infection.

## ■ ANTIFUNGAL AGENTS

A number of antifungal agents have become available in the recent years. These can be broadly classified on the basis of their chemical structure into polyene antibiotics, imidazole derivatives, pyrimidines and silver compounds.

### I. Polyene antifungals

These have been the mainstay of antifungal therapy. These are isolated from various species of *Streptomyces* and consist of a large, conjugated, double-bond system in a lactose ring linked to an amino acid sugar.

**Mechanism of action.** They work by binding to the sterol groups in fungal cell membranes, rendering them permeable. This occurrence leads to lethal imbalances in cell contents. Polyenes do not penetrate well into the cornea and are not beneficial in deep stromal keratitis.

**Preparations.** This group includes following drugs:

**1. Nystatin.** It is fungistatic and is well tolerated in the eye as 3.5% ointment. It has a medium level of activity in ocular infections caused by *Candida* or *Aspergillus* isolates. Because of its narrow spectrum and poor intraocular penetration its use is restricted.

**2. Amphotericin B (Fungizone).** This antibiotic may act as fungistatic or fungicidal depending upon the concentration of the drug and sensitivity of the fungus. Topically, it is effective in superficial infections of the eye in the concentration of 0.075 to 0.3% drops. Subconjunctival injections are quite painful and more than 300 mg is poorly tolerated.

Amphotericin B may be given intravitreally or/and intravenously for treatment of intraocular infections caused by *Candida*, *Histoplasma*, *Cryptococcus* and some strains of *Aspergillus* and others. For intravenous administration, a solution of 0.1 mg/mL in 5% dextrose with heparin is used.

**3. Natamycin (Pimaricin).** It is a broad-spectrum antifungal drug having activity against *Candida*, *Aspergillus*, *Fusarium* and *Cephalosporium*.

Topical application of 5% pimaricin suspension produces effective concentrations within the corneal stroma but not in intraocular fluid. It is the drug of choice for *Fusarium solani* keratitis. It adheres well to the surface of the ulcer, making the contact time of the antifungal agent with the eye greater. It is not recommended for injection.

### II. Imidazole antifungal drugs

**Mechanism of action.** Azoles alter fungal cell membranes by blocking the biosynthesis of ergosterol, resulting in leakage of cell contents.

**Various imidazole derivatives available for use in ocular fungal infections** include: miconazole, clotrimazole, ketoconazole, econazole and itraconazole.

**1. Miconazole.** It possesses a broad antifungal spectrum and is fungicidal to various species of *Candida*, *Aspergillus*, *Fusarium*, *Cryptococcus*, *Cladosporium*, *Trichophyton* and many others. Topical (1%) and subconjunctival (10 mg) application of miconazole produces high levels of drug in the cornea which is more dramatic in the presence of epithelial defect.

**2. Clotrimazole.** It is fungistatic and is effective against *Candida*, *Aspergillus* and many others. Its 1% suspension is effective topically and is the treatment of choice in *Aspergillus* infections of the eye.

**3. Econazole.** It also has broadspectrum antifungal activity and is used topically as 1% econazole nitrate ointment. Because of its poor intraocular penetration, it is effective only in superficial infections of the eye.

**4. Ketoconazole.** It is effective after oral administration and possesses activity against common fungi. It is given as single oral dose of 200–400 mg daily up to at least one week after the symptoms have disappeared. It is an adjunctive systemic antifungal agent in fungal keratitis complicated by endophthalmitis.

**5. Fluconazole.** It is fungistatic drug active against *Candida*, *Aspergillus* and *Cryptococcus*. It is available for oral use (50–100 mg tablets) and also for topical use (0.2% eye drops).

**6. Itraconazole.** It is prescribed for treatment of fungal infections caused primarily by *Aspergillus*, *Histoplasmosis*, *Blastomycosis*. It has moderate effect against *Candida* and *Fusarium* infections. It is available for oral and topical use. Oral dose is 200 mg twice daily for a week. Topically, it is used as 1% eye drops.

### III. Pyridine

**Flucytosine**, which is a fluorinated salt of pyrimidine, this group belongs to its mechanism of action is



not clear. The drug is very effective against *Candida* species and yeasts. It is used as 1.5% aqueous drops hourly. It can also be given orally or intravenously in doses of 200 mg/kg/day.

#### IV. Silver compounds

Combination of silver with sulphonamides and with other anti-microbial compounds significantly increases the activity against bacterial and fungal infections. In this context, several silver compounds have been synthesized. Most frequently used is *silver sulphadiazine* which is reported to be highly effective against *Aspergillus* and *Fusarium* species.

### ANTI-GLAUCOMA DRUGS

#### ■ CLASSIFICATION

- A. Prostaglandin analogs
- B. Sympathomimetic drugs (Adrenergic agonists)
- C. Beta-blockers
- D. Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors
- E. Parasympathomimetic drugs (Miotics)
- F. Hyperosmotic agents
- G. Calcium channel blockers.

#### ■ A. PROSTAGLANDIN DERIVATIVES

Prostaglandin (PG) derivatives presently form the drug of first choice in the management of POAG. These include:

**1. Latanoprost (0.005%).** It is a synthetic drug which is an ester analogue of prostaglandin  $F_2$ - $\alpha$ . It acts by increasing uveoscleral outflow and by causing reduction in episcleral venous pressure. It is as effective as timolol. It has additive effect with pilocarpine and timolol. Its duration of action is 24 hours and is, thus, administered once daily. Its side effects include conjunctival hyperaemia, foreign body sensation and increased pigmentation of the iris.

**2. Bimatoprost (0.03%).** It is a prostamide which decreases IOP by decreasing ocular outflow resistance. It is used once a day (OD).

**3. Travoprost (0.004%).** It is a synthetic prostaglandin  $F_2$  analogue and decreases IOP by increasing uveoscleral outflow of aqueous.

**4. Unoprostone isopropyl (0.12%).** It is a docosanoid related in structure to prostaglandin  $F_2$ - $\alpha$ . It lowers IOP by increasing uveoscleral outflow of aqueous. It also increases retinal blood flow.

**5. Tafluprost (0.0015%)** is a newer prostaglandin derivative, and was the first available in preservative free form. Its IOP lowering efficacy may be slightly less than other PG agents, but it is well tolerated and causes less disruption of ocular surface.

#### ■ B. ADRENERGIC AGONISTS/ SYMPATHOMIMETIC DRUGS

Sympathomimetics, also known as *adrenergic agonists*, act by stimulation of alpha, beta or both the receptors.

#### Classification

Depending upon the mode of action, these can be classified as follows:

1. Both alpha and beta-receptor stimulators, e.g. epinephrine.
2. Direct alpha-adrenergic stimulators, e.g. norepinephrine and clonidine hydrochloride.
3. Indirect alpha-adrenergic stimulators, e.g. pargyline.
4. Beta-adrenergic stimulator, e.g. isoproterenol.

#### Mechanisms of action

1. Increased aqueous outflow results by virtue of both alpha and beta-receptor stimulation.
2. Decreased aqueous humour production occurs due to stimulation of alpha receptors in the ciliary body.

#### Side-effects

1. *Systemic side-effects* include hypertension, tachycardia, headache, palpitation, tremors, nervousness and anxiety.
2. *Local side-effects* are burning sensation, reactive hyperaemia of conjunctiva, conjunctival pigmentation, allergic blepharoconjunctivitis, mydriasis and cystoid macular oedema (in aphakics).

#### Preparations

##### Non-selective adrenergic agonist

Non-selective adrenergic agonist are not preferred nowadays. These include:

**1. Epinephrine.** This direct-acting sympathomimetic drug stimulates both alpha and beta-adrenergic receptors. *Preparations:* It is available as 0.5%, 1% and 2% eye drops. *Dosage:* The action starts within 1 hour and lasts up to 12–24 hours. Therefore, it is instilled twice daily.

**2. Dipivefrine** (Propine or phenylepinephrine). It is a prodrug which is converted into epinephrine after its absorption into the eye. It is more lipophilic than epinephrine and thus its corneal penetration is increased by 17 times. *Preparations:* It is available as 0.1% eye drops. *Dosage:* Action and efficacy is similar to 1% epinephrine. It is instilled twice daily.

##### Selective alpha 2 agonist

**1. Brimonidine (0.2%).** *Mechanism of action.* It is a selective alpha-2 adrenergic agonist and lowers IOP



by decreasing aqueous production and enhancing uveoscleral outflow. It has an additive effect to beta-blockers. **Dosage:** It has a peak effect of 2 hours and action lasts for 12 hours; so it is administered twice daily.

**2. Apraclonidine (0.5%, 1%).** It is also alpha-2 adrenergic agonist like brimonidine. It is an extremely potent ocular hypotensive drug and is commonly used prophylactically for prevention of IOP elevation following laser trabeculoplasty, YAG laser iridotomy and posterior capsulotomy. It is of limited use for long-term administration because of the high rate of ocular side-effects.

### ■ C. BETA-ADRENERGIC BLOCKERS

These are, presently, the most frequently used antiglaucoma drugs. The commonly used preparations are timolol and betaxolol. Other available preparations include levobunolol, carteolol and metipranolol.

#### Mechanism of action

Timolol and levobunolol are nonselective beta-1 (cardiac) and beta-2 (smooth muscle, pulmonary) receptor blocking agents. Betaxolol has 10 times more affinity for beta-1 than beta-2 receptors.

The drugs timolol and levobunolol lower IOP by blockade of beta-2 receptors in the ciliary processes, resulting in decreased aqueous production. The exact mechanism of action of betaxolol (cardioselective beta-blocker) is unknown.

**Additive effects.** Beta-blockers have very good synergistic effect when combined with miotics; and are thus often used in combination in patients with POAG, unresponsive to the single drug.

#### Indication and contraindication

**Indications.** Beta adrenergic blockers are useful in all types of glaucomas, viz., developmental, primary and secondary; narrow as well as open angle. Unless contraindicated due to systemic diseases, beta-blockers are frequently used as the first choice drug in POAG and all secondary glaucomas.

**Contraindications.** These drugs should be used with caution or not at all, depending on the severity of the systemic disease in patients with bronchial asthma, emphysema, COPD, heart blocks, congestive heart failure or cardiomyopathy. Betaxolol is the beta-blocker, of choice in patients at risk for pulmonary diseases. The other contraindication includes known drug allergies.

#### Side-effects

**1. Ocular side-effects** are not frequent. These include burning and conjunctival hyperaemia, superficial punctate keratopathy and corneal anaesthesia.

**2. Systemic side-effects** are also unusually low. However, these are reported more often than ocular side-effects. These include (i) **Cardiovascular effects** which result from blockade of beta-1 receptors. These are bradycardia, arrhythmias, heart failure and syncope. (ii) **Respiratory reactions:** These include bronchospasm and airway obstruction, especially in asthmatics. These occur due to blockade of beta-2 receptors; and thus are not known with betaxolol. (iii) **Central nervous system effects.** These include depression, anxiety, confusion, drowsiness, disorientation, hallucinations, emotional lability, dysarthria and so on. (iv) **Miscellaneous effects** are nausea, diarrhoea, decreased libido, skin rashes, alopecia and exacerbation of myasthenia gravis.

#### Preparations

**1. Timolol.** It is a nonselective beta-1 and beta-2 blocker. It is available as 0.25% and 0.5% eye drops. The salt used is timolol maleate. Its action starts within 30 minutes, peak reaches in 2 hours and effects last up to 24 hours. Therefore, it is used once or twice daily. The drug is very effective, however, the phenomenon of 'short-term escape' and 'long-term drift' are well known. 'Short-term escape' implies marked initial fall in IOP, followed by a transient rise with continued moderate fall in IOP. The 'long-term drift' implies a slow rise in IOP in patients who were well controlled with many months of therapy.

**2. Betaxolol.** It is a cardioselective beta-blocker and thus can be used safely in patients prone to attack of bronchial asthma; an advantage over timolol. It is available as 0.5% suspension, and 0.25% suspension, and is used twice daily. Its action starts within 30 minutes, reaches peak in 2 hours and lasts for 12 hours. It is slightly less effective than timolol in lowering the IOP.

**3. Levobunolol.** It is available as 0.5% solution and its salient features are almost similar to timolol.

**4. Carteolol.** It is available as 1% and 2% solution and is almost similar to timolol except that it induces comparatively less bradycardia.

**5. Metipranolol.** It is available as 0.1%, 0.3% and 0.6% solution and is almost similar to timolol in all aspects.

### ■ D. CARBONIC ANHYDRASE INHIBITORS (CAIs)

These are potent and most commonly used systemic antiglaucoma drugs. These include acetazolamide (most frequently used), methazolamide, dichlorphenamide and ethoxzolamide. CAIs available for topical are include dorzolamide and brinzolamide.



### Mechanism of action

As the name indicates CAIs inhibit the enzyme carbonic anhydrase which is related to the process of aqueous humour production. Thus, CAIs lower the IOP by reducing the aqueous humour formation.

### Indications

**Orally used** as additive therapy for short-term in the management of all types of acute and chronic glaucomas. Their long-term use is reserved for patients with high risk of visual loss, where all other treatments fail.

**Topical CAIs** are used as second line of drug and also as adjunct therapy.

**Side-effects.** Unfortunately, 40–50% of patients are unable to tolerate oral CAIs for long-term because of various disabling side-effects. These include:

1. **Paraesthesias** of the fingers, toes, hands, feet and around the mouth are experienced by most of the patients. However, these are transient and of no consequence.

2. **Urinary frequency** may also be complained by most of patients due to the diuretic effect.

3. **Serum electrolyte imbalances** may occur with higher doses of CAIs. These may be in the form of (i) *Bicarbonate depletion* leading to metabolic acidosis. This is associated with 'malaise symptom complex' which includes: malaise, fatigue, depression, loss of libido, anorexia and weight loss. Treatment with sodium bicarbonate or sodium acetate may help to minimize this situation in many patients. (ii) *Potassium depletion*. It may occur in some patients, especially those simultaneously getting corticosteroids, aspirin or thiazide diuretics. Potassium supplement is indicated only when significant hypokalaemia is documented. (iii) *Serum sodium and chloride* may be transiently reduced; more commonly with dichlorphenamide.

4. **Gastrointestinal symptom complex.** It is also very common. It is not related to the malaise symptom complex caused by biochemical changes in the serum. Its features include—vague abdominal discomfort, gastric irritation, nausea, peculiar metallic taste and diarrhoea.

5. **Sulfonamide related side-effects of CAIs**, seen rarely, include renal calculi, blood dyscrasias, Stevens-Johnson syndrome, transient myopia, hypertensive nephropathy and teratogenic effects.

### Preparations and doses

#### Systemic preparations

1. **Acetazolamide** (diamox). It is available as tablets, capsules and injection for intravenous use. The acetazolamide 250 mg tablet is used 6 hourly. Its

action starts within 1 hour, peak is reached in 4 hours and the effect lasts for 6–8 hours.

2. **Dichlorphenamide.** It is available as 50 mg tablets. Its recommended dose is 25 to 100 mg three times a day. It causes less metabolic acidosis but has a sustained diuretic effect.

3. **Methazolamide.** It is also available as 50 mg tablets. It has a longer duration of action than acetazolamide. Its dose is 50–100 mg, 2 or 3 times a day.

4. **Ethoxzolamide.** It is given in a dosage of 125 mg every 6 hours and is similar to acetazolamide in all aspects.

#### Topical preparations

1. **Dorzolamide** (2%). It is a topical carbonic anhydrase inhibitor. It is water soluble, stable in solution and has excellent corneal penetration. It decreases IOP by 22% and has got additive effect with timolol. It is administered thrice daily. Its *side-effects* include burning sensation and local allergic reaction.

2. **Brinzolamide** (1%). It is also a topical CAI which decreases IOP by decreasing aqueous production. It is administered twice daily (BD).

3. **Acetazolamide** is also available for topical use.

### ■ E. PARASYMPATHOMIMETIC DRUGS (MIOTICS)

Parasympathomimetics, also called as *cholinergic drugs*, either imitate or potentiate the effects of acetylcholine.

#### Classification

Depending upon the mode of action, these can be classified as follows:

1. **Direct-acting** or agonists, e.g. pilocarpine.

2. **Indirect-acting parasympathomimetics or cholinesterase inhibitors:** As the name indicates these drugs act indirectly by destroying the enzyme cholinesterase; thereby sparing the naturally acting acetylcholine for its actions. These drugs have been divided into two subgroups, designated as *reversible* (e.g. physostigmine) and *irreversible* (e.g. echothiophate iodide, demecarium and diisopropyl-fluorophosphate, DFP<sub>3</sub>) anti-cholinesterases.

3. **Dual-action parasympathomimetics**, i.e. which act as both a muscarinic agonist as well as a weak cholinesterase inhibitor, e.g. carbachol.

#### Mechanism of action

1. **In primary open-angle glaucoma.** The miotics reduce the intraocular pressure (IOP) by enhancing the aqueous outflow facility. This is achieved by changes in the trabecular meshwork produced by a pull exerted on the scleral spur by contraction of the longitudinal fibres of ciliary muscle.



**2. In primary angle-closure glaucoma.** These reduce the IOP due to their miotic effect by opening the angle. The mechanical contraction of the pupil moves the iris away from the trabecular meshwork.

### Side-effects

**1. Systemic side-effects** noted are: bradycardia, increased sweating, diarrhoea, excessive salivation and anxiety. The only serious complication noted with irreversible cholinesterase inhibitors is 'scoline apnoea', i.e. inability of the patient to resume normal respiration after termination of general anaesthesia.

**2. Local side-effects** are encountered more frequently with long acting miotics (i.e. irreversible cholinesterase inhibitors). These include problems due to miosis itself (e.g. reduced visual acuity in the presence of polar cataracts, impairment of night vision and generalized contraction of visual fields), spasm of accommodation which may cause myopia and frontal headache, retinal detachment, lenticular opacities, iris cyst formation, mild iritis, lacrimation and follicular conjunctivitis.

### Preparations

**1. Pilocarpine.** It is a direct-acting parasympathomimetic drug. Earlier, it was the most commonly used and the most extensively studied miotic. However, presently, due to availability of many better drugs, it is not being preferred as the option for treatment in POAG. Even in PNAG, many glaucoma experts are discouraging its use. **Indications:** (i) Primary open-angle glaucoma; (ii) Acute angle-closure glaucoma; (iii) Chronic synechial angle-closure glaucoma. **Contraindications:** inflammatory glaucoma, malignant glaucoma and known allergy. **Available preparations and dosage are:** (a) *Eye drops* are available in 1%, 2% and 4% strengths. Except in very darkly pigmented irides maximum effect is obtained with a 4 percent solution. In POAG, therapy is usually initiated with 1 percent concentration. The onset of action occurs in 20 minutes, peak in 2 hours and duration of effect is 4–6 hours. Therefore, the eye drops are usually prescribed every 6 or 8 hourly. (b) *Ocuserts* are available as pilo-20 and pilo-40. These are changed once in a week. Pilo-20 is generally used in patients controlled with 2% or less concentration of eye drops; and pilo-40 in those requiring higher concentration of eye drops. (c) *Pilocarpine gel* (4%) is a bedtime adjunct to the daytime medication.

**2. Carbachol.** It is a dual-action (agonist as well as weak cholinesterase inhibitor) miotic. **Indications:** It is a very good alternative to pilocarpine in resistant or

intolerant cases. **Preparations:** It is available as 0.75% and 3% eye drops. **Dosage:** The action ensues in 40 minutes and lasts for about 12 hours. Therefore, the drops are instilled 2 or 3 times a day.

**3. Echothiophate iodide (Phospholine iodide).** It is a long-acting cholinesterase inhibitor. **Indications:** It is very effective in POAG. **Preparations:** Available as 0.03, 0.06 and 0.125% eye drops. **Dosage:** The onset of action occurs within 2 hours and lasts up to 24 hours. Therefore, it is instilled once or twice daily.

**4. Demecarium bromide.** It is similar to echothiophate iodide and is used as 0.125% or 0.25% eye drops.

**5. Physostigmine (eserine).** It is a reversible (weak) cholinesterase inhibitor. It is used as 0.5% ointment twice a day.

## ■ F. HYPEROSMOTIC AGENTS

These are the second class of compounds, which are administered systemically to lower the IOP. These include: glycerol, mannitol, isosorbide and urea.

### Mechanism of action

Hyperosmotic agents increase the plasma tonicity. Thus, the osmotic pressure gradient created between the blood and vitreous draws sufficient water out of the eyeball, thereby significantly lowering the IOP.

### Indications

These are used as additive therapy for rapidly lowering the IOP in emergency situations, such as acute angle-closure glaucoma or secondary glaucomas with very high IOP. They are also used as a prophylactic measure prior to intraocular surgery.

### Preparations and doses

**1. Glycerol.** It is a frequently used oral hyperosmotic agent. Its recommended dose is 1–1.5 gm/kg body weight. It is used as a 50% solution. So, glycerol (50 to 80 mL in adults) is mixed with equal amount of lemon juice (preferably) or water before administering orally. Its action starts in 10 minutes, peaks in 30 minutes and lasts for about 5–6 hours. It can be given repeatedly. It is metabolised to glucose in the body. Thus, its repeated use in diabetics is not recommended.

**2. Mannitol.** It is the most widely used intravenous hyperosmotic agent. It is indicated when the oral agents are felt to be insufficient or when they cannot be taken for reasons such as nausea. Its recommended dose is 1–2 gm/kg body weight. It is used as a 20% solution. It should be administered very rapidly over 20–30 minutes. Its action peaks in 30 minutes and lasts for about 6 hours. It does not enter the glucose metabolism and thus is safe



in diabetics. However, it should be used cautiously in hypertensive patients.

**3. Urea.** When administered intravenously it also lowers the IOP. However, because of lower efficacy and more side-effects than mannitol, it is not recommended for routine use.

**4. Isosorbide.** It is an oral hyperosmotic agent, similar to glycerol in action and doses. However, metabolically, it is inert and thus can be used repeatedly in diabetics.

### ■ G. CALCIUM CHANNEL BLOCKERS

Calcium channel blockers such as nifedipine, diltiazem and verapamil are commonly used antihypertensive drugs. Recently, some of these have been used as antiglaucoma drugs.

**Mechanism of action.** The exact mechanism of lowering IOP of topically used calcium channel blockers remains to be elucidated. It might be due to its effects on secretory ciliary epithelium.

**Preparations.** Verapamil has been tried as 0.125% and 0.25% eye drops twice a day.

**Indications.** Though the IOP lowering effect of verapamil is not superior than the standard topical antiglaucoma drugs, it has a place in the management of patients with POAG, where miotics, beta-blockers and sympathomimetics are all contraindicated, e.g. in patients suffering simultaneously from axial cataract, bronchial asthma and raised blood pressure. It can also be used for additive effect with pilocarpine and timolol.

### ■ ANTIGLAUCOMA DRUGS: MECHANISM OF LOWERING IOP AT A GLANCE

#### *Drugs which increase trabecular outflow*

- Miotics (e.g. pilocarpine)
- Epinephrine, Dipivefrine
- Bimatoprost.

#### *Drugs which increase uveoscleral outflow*

- Prostaglandins (latanoprost)
- Epinephrine, Dipivefrine
- Brimonidine
- Apraclonidine.

#### *Drugs which decrease aqueous production*

- Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors (e.g. acetazolamide, dorzolamide).
- Alpha receptor stimulators in ciliary process (e.g. epinephrine, dipivefrine, clonidine, brimonidine, apraclonidine).
- Beta blockers (e.g. timolol, betaxolol, levobunolol).

**Hyperosmotic agents** (e.g. glycerol, mannitol, urea).

## ANTI-INFLAMMATORY AND IMMUNOSUPPRESSIVE AGENTS

### ■ CORTICOSTEROIDS

These are 21-C compounds secreted by the adrenal cortex. They have potent anti-inflammatory, anti-allergic and anti-fibrotic actions. Corticosteroids reduce inflammation by reduction of leukocytic and plasma exudation, maintenance of cellular membrane integrity with inhibition of tissue swelling, inhibition of lysosome release from granulocytes, increased stabilisation of intracellular lysosomal membranes and suppression of circulating lymphocytes.

The corneal penetrance of topical steroids depends on the lipophilicity of the formulation and the integrity of the corneal epithelium.

#### **Classification and relative anti-inflammatory drug potency**

Classification and relative anti-inflammatory drug potency of corticosteroids is summarized in Table 19.2.

#### **Preparations and modes of administration**

Corticosteroids may be administered locally in the form of drops, ointments or injections and systemically in the form of tablets or injections.

**Table 19.2** Corticosteroids: equivalent anti-inflammatory oral dose (mg) and relative anti-inflammatory potency

| Drug                      | Equivalent anti-inflammatory oral dose (mg) | Relative anti-inflammatory potency |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| I. Glucocorticoids        |                                             |                                    |
| 1. Short-acting           |                                             |                                    |
| Hydrocortisone (Cortisol) | 20                                          | 1                                  |
| Cortisone                 | 25                                          | 0.8                                |
| Prednisolone              | 5                                           | 4                                  |
| Prednisone                | 5                                           | 4                                  |
| Methylprednisolone        | 4                                           | 5                                  |
| 2. Intermediate-acting    |                                             |                                    |
| Triamcinolone             | 4                                           | 5                                  |
| Fluprednisolone           | 1.5                                         | 15                                 |
| 3. Long-acting            |                                             |                                    |
| Dexamethasone             | 0.75                                        | 26                                 |
| Betamethasone             | 0.60                                        | 33                                 |
| II. Mineralocorticoids    |                                             |                                    |
| Fludrocortisone           | 2                                           | 10                                 |



**A. Topical ophthalmic preparations** used commonly are as follows:

- Cortisone acetate As 0.5% suspension and 1.5% ointment
- Hydrocortisone As 0.5% suspension acetate and 0.2% ointment
- Dexamethasone As 0.1% solution and sodium phosphate 0.5% ointment
- Betamethasone As 0.1% solution and sodium phosphate 0.1% ointment
- Medrysone 1% suspension
- Fluorometholone 0.1% suspension
- Loteprednol 0.5% suspension

**B. Systemic corticosteroid preparations** used commonly are:

- Prednisolone As 5 mg, 10 mg tab and solution for injection in the strength of 20 mg/mL
- Dexamethasone As 0.5 mg tab and solution for injection in the strength of 4 mg/mL
- Betamethasone 0.5 mg and 1 mg tab

### Ocular indications

1. **Topical preparations** are used in uveitis, scleritis, allergic conjunctivitis (vernal catarrh and phlyctenular conjunctivitis), allergic keratitis, cystoid macular oedema and after intraocular surgery.

2. **Systemic preparations** are indicated in posterior uveitis, sympathetic ophthalmic, Vogt-Koyanagi-Harada syndrome (VKH), papillitis, retrobulbar neuritis, anterior ischaemic optic neuropathy, scleritis, malignant exophthalmos, orbital pseudotumours, orbital lymphangioma and corneal graft rejections.

### Side-effects

**Topical steroids** may cause glaucoma, cataract, activation of infection (if given in herpetic, fungal and bacterial keratitis), dry eye and ptosis.

**Systemic corticosteroids** may cause ocular and systemic side-effects.

Ocular complications include cataract, glaucoma, activation of infection, delayed wound healing, papilloedema, and central retinal vein occlusion.

• **Systemic complications** include peptic ulcer, hypertension, osteoporosis, aggravation of diabetes mellitus, mental changes, cushingoid state and reactivation of tuberculosis and other infections.

## ■ NONSTEROIDAL ANTI-INFLAMMATORY DRUGS

Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), often referred to as 'aspirin-like drugs', are a heterogeneous group of anti-inflammatory, analgesic and antipyretic compounds. These are often chemically unrelated (although most of them are organic acids), but share certain therapeutic actions and side-effects.

### Mechanisms of action

The NSAIDs largely act by irreversibly blocking the enzyme cyclo-oxygenase, thus inhibiting the prostaglandin biosynthesis. They also appear to block other local mediators of the inflammatory response such as polypeptides of the kinin system, lysosomal enzymes, lymphokines and thromboxane A<sub>2</sub>; but not the leukotrienes.

### Preparations

**A. NSAIDs available for systemic use** can be grouped as follows:

1. *Salicylates*, e.g. aspirin.
2. *Pyrazolone derivatives*, e.g. phenylbutazone, oxyphenbutazone, aminopyrine and apazone.
3. *Para-aminophenol derivatives*, e.g. phenacetin and acetaminophen.
4. *Indole derivatives*, e.g. indomethacin and sulindac.
5. *Propionic acid derivatives*, e.g. ibuprofen, naproxen and flurbiprofen.
6. *Anthranilic acid derivatives*, e.g. mefenamic acid and flufenamic acid.
7. *Other newer NSAIDs*, e.g. ketorolac tromethamine, carprofen and diclofenac.

**B. Topical ophthalmic NSAIDs preparations** available include:

1. *Indomethacin* suspension (0.1%)
2. *Flurbiprofen*, 0.3% eye drops
3. *Ketorolac tromethamine*, 0.5% eye drops
4. *Diclofenac sodium*, 0.1% eye drops
5. *Bromfenac*, 0.09% eye drops
6. *Nepafenac*, 0.1% eye drops.

### Ophthalmic indications of NSAIDs

1. **Episcleritis and scleritis.** Recalcitrant cases of episcleritis may be treated with systemic NSAIDs such as oxyphenbutazone 100 mg TDS or indomethacin 25 mg BD.

NSAIDs may also suppress the inflammation in diffuse and nodular varieties of scleritis, but are not likely to control the necrotizing form.



**2. Uveitis.** NSAIDs are usually not used as the primary agents in therapy of uveitis. They are, however, useful in the long-term therapy of recurrent anterior uveitis, initially controlled by steroid therapy. Phenylbutazone is of use in uveitis associated with ankylosing spondylitis.

**3. Cystoid macular oedema (CME).** Topical and/or systemic antiprostaglandin drugs are effective in preventing the postoperative CME occurring after cataract operation. The drug (e.g. 0.03% flurbiprofen eye drops) is started 2 days preoperatively and continued for 6–8 weeks postoperatively.

**4. Preoperatively to maintain dilatation of the pupil.** Flurbiprofen drops used every 5 minutes for 2 hours preoperatively are very effective in maintaining the pupillary dilatation during the operation of extracapsular cataract extraction with or without intraocular lens implantation.

## ■ IMMUNOSUPPRESSIVE AND ANTIMITOTIC DRUGS

Immunosuppressives refers to the agents used to control immune-mediated inflammation or tissue reaction.

### Uses and indications in ophthalmology

#### 1. Uveitis

- *Absolute indications includes* Vogt-Koyanagi-Harada syndrome, sympathetic ophthalmia, Behcet's syndrome and serpiginous choroidopathy.
- *Relative indications include* intermediate uveitis, retinal vasculitis, chronic cyclitis and cases of uveitis refractory to maximum steroid therapy.
- *Questionable indications include* children with intermediate uveitis.
- *Contraindications include* focal chorioretinitis, herpetic uveitis, toxoplasmosis, CMV retinitis, and fungal uveitis.

#### 2. Corneal graft

- Corneal graft rejections, and
- Prevention of corneal graft rejection in prone patients.

#### 3. Immune-mediated corneal ulcer

- Mooren's ulcer.

#### 4. Glaucoma filtration surgery

- Prevention of bleb failure in high-risk cases.
- Treatment of bleb failure.

#### 5. Recurrent pterygium

#### 6. Scleritis

#### 7. Cicatricial pemphigoid

#### 8. Grave's ophthalmopathy

#### 9. Ocular myasthenia gravis.

## Commonly used immunosuppressive drugs in ophthalmology

### I. Immunomodulators

Immunomodulators, e.g. cyclosporine, tacrolimus

**Mechanism of action.** These drugs bind to cytoplasmic receptors termed immunophilins in T-cells, thereby selectively inhibiting T-cell activity.

**Cyclosporine.** It can be used topically as well as systemically.

- *Systemic dose and indications.* Systemically, in a dose of 3–5 mg/kg body weight it is indicated in cases of uveitis, scleritis, Graves ophthalmopathy, cicatricial pemphigoid and myasthenia gravis as given below.
- *Topically,* cyclosporine is used as 0.05% bd in patient with refractory vernal keratoconjunctivitis, and dry eye syndrome.

**Tacrolimus** can also be used systematically and topically in a dose of 0.05 to 0.2 mg/kg/day. Tacrolimus may be used in various conditions as an alternative to cyclosporine.

- *Topically,* tacrolimus 0.03% ointment can be effective in atopic keratoconjunctivitis (AKC) and refractory cases of VKC.

### II. Cytotoxic drugs

a. Antimetabolites these includes:

1. **Azathioprine** is a commonly used antimetabolite

- *Mechanism of action.* It inhibits purine synthesis, which interfere with DNA replication and RNA transcription. It suppresses both T-cells and B-cells, but does not suppress humoral immunity.
- *Side effects* include gastrointestinal intolerance and bone marrow suppressions. It may also cause hepatotoxicity.

2. **Methotrexate** is another commonly used antimetabolite.

- *Mechanism of action.* It suppresses both humoral and cell-mediated immune reactions. In addition to being anti-inflammatory, it also diminishes chemotaxis.

- *Side effects* are similar to azathioprine.

b. Alkylating agents. These include:

1. **Cyclophosphamide.**

- *Mechanism of action.* It destroys proliferating lymphoid cells but also alkylate DNA and the molecule in some resting cells.

- *Indications*—ocular inflammatory disease and ocular cancers.

- *Side effects* are nausea, vomiting, cardiac toxicity, electrolyte imbalance, pancytopenia and hemorrhagic cystitis.



## ANTI-ALLERGIC AND VASOCONSTRICTORS DRUGS

Following categories of drugs are available for use in allergic conjunctivitis.

1. **H<sub>1</sub> receptor antagonists** available include levocabastine and emedastine difumarate.

*Uses.* It is used for isolated, acute allergic attacks.

2. **Mast cell stabilizers** available include cromolyn sodium, lodoxamide, pemirolast, and nedocromil sodium.

*Uses.* Chronic allergies.

3. **Antihistamines with mast cell-stabilizing activity** available include olopatadine, alcaftadine, bepotastine, ketotifen fumarate, azelastine, epinastine and bepotastine.

*Uses.* These medications combine the immediate effect of selective antihistamines with long-term effects of mast cell stabilization.

4. **Topical NSAIDs** available include flurbiprofen, ketarolac, nepafenac and bromfenac.

*Uses.* Reduce itching and inflammation.

5. **Vasoconstrictors** available include naphazoline/pheniramine, naphazoline/antazoline.

*Uses.* Relieves redness by causing decongestion.

6. **Weak corticosteroids** available for topical use include loteprednol, fluorometholone and rime-xolone.

*Uses.* Useful in serious cases of allergic conjunctivitis.

7. **Oral antihistamines** available include fexofenadine, loratadine, cetirizine, ebastine, mizolastine and desloratadine.

*Uses.* Useful in systemic allergic symptoms.

8. **Immunomodulators** available include tacrolimus and cyclosporine.

*Uses.* Refractory cases of allergic conjunctivitis.

## LUBRICATING AGENTS

Lubricating agents, also known as tear substitute or artificial tears are the mainstay for treatment of dry eye (a condition in which naturally-produced tears are insufficient to lubricate the ocular surface).

### Ingredients of commercially available tears substitute

**Base ingredients** include:

**Balanced amount of inorganic electrolytes (salts)** to maintain ocular tonicity (0.9% NaCl equivalent).

**Buffers** like boric acid to adjust pH.

**Viscosity agents** (water soluble polymer system) constitutes the main ingredient which enhance viscosity and promote tear film stability.

**Preservative** to maintain solution sterility include benzalkonium chloride, chlorobutanol, thimerosal and so on.

### Viscosity agents (polymers)

Commonly used viscosity agents, the main constituent of tear substitute, are described briefly:

**I. Cellulose esters**, are the most commonly used agents. These include:

- Methylcellulose (1%)
- Hydroxypropyl methylcellulose (0.5 %, and 1%)
- Hydroxyethyl cellulose (0.5% and 1%)
- Carboxymethyl cellulose (0.5%).

**II. Polyvinyl alcohol base solutions** are the other commonly used agents. These include:

- Polyvinyl alcohol (1% and 3%)
- Polyvinyl alcohol 1.4% along with povidone 0.6% makes the better solutions.
- Polyvinyl pyrrolidone polymer base tears solution.

**III. Increased viscosity agents or longer acting mucoadhesive**, which have better duration of actions includes:

- Polycarboxophil and dextran,
- Hyaluronidase.

**IV. Combination of cellulose ester and polyvinyl pyrrolidone and/or other polymers** are now becoming the ingredients of commonly available commercial preparations.

**V. White petrolatum and lanolin**, as mentioned above are available as lubricating ointment (e.g. Lacri-lube, lacrigel, etc. are commercially available ointment).

**Additional ingredients available in some commercially available tears substitute** include:

- **Vitamins A topical preparations**, and
- **Certain lipids.**

### Topical preparations of tear substitute

Tear substitute are available in following forms for topical use:

1. **Eye drops (solutions).** Most commonly used in form of tear substitute in eye drops with above described ingredients.

• **Preservative free solutions** are also available in the form of unims.

2. **Lubricating gel solutions** contain higher strength of the viscosity agents. Examples of commercial preparations are Refresh liquid gel, Genteal gel, Misty gel, etc.

3. **Lubricating ointment** is the second most common method of ocular lubrication. Most such ointment contain white petrolatum, mineral oil and lanoline.

• **Indications.** Generally preferred for bed time use, can be used during the day in severe cases.



**4. Slow release ocular insert (solid devices)** are available as preservative free water soluble polymer insert (e.g. Lacriset). The cylindrical rod which contain 5 mg hydroxyl propyl methyl cellulose is placed in the lower cul-de-sac. It releases polymer to the ocular surface for 12–24 hours.

- **Indications.** Severe drug eye syndrome. Cost is a deterrent to use.

## INTRAOCULAR IRRIGATING SOLUTIONS

### Functions

Intraocular irrigating solutions are the most essential tools for the modern cataract surgery and other intraocular surgeries. These are aqueous solutions which sub-serve the following functions:

- *Clear and maintain moisture* of the ocular tissues.
- *Maintain physiological and anatomical integrity* of the intraocular tissues and chamber.
- *Provide cellular nutrients* required for intercellular and intracellular functions during prolonged intraocular surgery.
- *Maintain corneal transparency* during intraocular surgery by maintaining endothelial cell metabolism and then avoiding corneal clouding.
- *Maintain intraocular pressure* during the surgery.

### Indications/Uses

- **Cataract surgery.** Irrigating solutions are essential for each and every step of modern cataract surgery with IOL implantation.
- **Glaucoma surgery.** In trabeculectomy and other invasive filtration surgery, irrigation solution helps to maintain the chamber, wash delirious substances and maintain tissues moisture.
- **Corneal surgery** and anterior segment reconstruction.
- **Vitreotomy and posterior segment surgery.**

### Commercially available intraocular irrigating solutions

Commercially available irrigating solutions suitable for intraocular use include:

- Lactated Ringers solution
- Balanced salt solution (BSS)
- Balanced salt solution plus (BSS-Plus).

### Salient features of commercially available irrigating solutions:

#### 1. Lactated Ringers solution

**Composition** in mMoles/liter is: NaCl (102), KCl (4),  $\text{CaCl}_2$  (3), and sodium lactate (28).

**pH** of lactate Ringers solution is 7.2.

**Osmolality** is 279.

**Advantages:** Maintains the integrity of intraocular tissues.

**Disadvantages:** Since, it contains sodium lactate in much higher concentration than aqueous humour, so prolonged perfusion causes endothelial cell break down and corneal swelling.

#### 2. Balanced salt solution (BSS)

**Composition** in mmol/liter is: NaCl (110), KCl (10),  $\text{CaCl}_2$  (3),  $\text{MgCl}_2$  (1.5), sodium citrate (8) and sodium acetate (29).

**pH** of BSS is 7.4.

**Osmolality** is 305.

**Advantages:** It is better tolerated irrigant which helps to maintain the integrity of intraocular tissues.

**Disadvantages:** BSS is less protective to corneal endothelial cells as compared to BSS plus as it lacks the bicarbonate, glucose and glutathione. After prolonged exposure it may result in:

- *Polymegathism*, i.e. a significant increase in the coefficient of variation of cell area;
- *Pleomorphism*, i.e. a significant decrease in the percentage of hexagonal cells; and
- *Stressed endothelial monolayer*, which may be more susceptible to additional surgical trauma.

#### 3. Balanced salt solution (BSS) plus

**Composition:** The concentration of constituents of BSS Plus, also known as GBR (glutathione, bicarbonate, Ringers) in mmol/L is NaCl (122.2), KCl (5.08),  $\text{MgCl}_2$  (0.98), disodium phosphate (2.5), dextrose (5.11), oxidized glutathione (0.30), and sodium bicarbonate (25).

**pH** of BSS plus is 7.4,

**Osmolality** (mosm) is 305.

**Advantages** of BSS plus are as below:

- *Iso-osmotic* with intraocular tissues.
- *Corneal endothelium functioning is maintained* even on prolonged irrigation and thus minimal changes occur in endothelial morphologic characteristics.
- *Lens clarity is maintained* in posterior segment surgery.
- *Blood aqueous barrier is maintained* by glutathione which protects the cells against oxidative stress and thus inflammation is minimized.

## VISCOELASTIC SUBSTANCES

Use of viscous or viscoelastic substances has become almost mandatory in the modern microphthalmic surgery, especially intraocular lens implantation, which involves a risk of involuntary tissue damage due to intraocular manipulations.

### Properties of viscoelastic substances

An ideal viscoelastic substance should have the following properties:



1. *Chemically*, the material should be inert, iso-osmotic, free from particulate matter, non-pyrogenic, non-antigenic, non-toxic and sterile.
2. *Optically* clear.
3. *Viscosity* of the substances should be enough to provide sufficient space for manipulation within the eye.
4. *Hydrophilic* and dilutable properties are necessary to irrigate the material out of the eye after the operation.
5. *Protectability and maintenance of space*. It should protect the endothelium, separate the tissues, maintain the space and act as a lubricant.

### Preparations

1. *Methylcellulose*. It is the most commonly used substance. It is only a viscous and not a viscoelastic substance. Its active ingredient is highly purified 2% hydroxypropyl methylcellulose.
2. *Sodium hyaluronate (1%) (Healon)*. Being extremely viscoelastic and non-inflammatory, it is the best available viscoelastic substance. However, being expensive, it is less popular than methylcellulose.
3. *Hypromellose (2%)*. It is a viscous substance similar to methylcellulose.
4. *Chondroitin sulfate (20% and 50%)*. It is a viscoelastic substance similar to sodium hyaluronate. It is also available as 1:3 mixture of 4% chondroitin sulfate and 3% sodium hyaluronate (Viscoat) and in combination with methylcellulose (Ocugel).

### Alternatives to viscoelastic substances

Substances used as alternative to viscoelastics for maintenance of anterior chamber are air, serum and other blood products and balanced salt solution. However, none of these match the properties of viscoelastic substances.

### Clinical uses

1. *Cataract surgery with or without IOL implantation*. It is the most important indication. Here the viscoelastic substance is used for:
  - i. Maintenance of anterior chamber;
  - ii. Protection of corneal endothelium;
  - iii. Coating the IOL and
  - iv. Preventing the entry of blood and fluid in the anterior chamber.
2. *Other uses*. Viscoelastic substances are also useful in glaucoma surgery, keratoplasty, retinal detachment surgery and repair of the globe in perforating injuries.

### Side-effects

Postoperative rise in intraocular pressure may occur if a considerable amount of viscoelastic substance is

left inside the anterior chamber; so it must be washed off after surgery.

## ANTI-VASCULAR ENDOTHELIAL GROWTH FACTOR AGENTS (Anti-VEGF)

The vascular endothelial growth factors (VEGF-A) are the key factors blamed for producing neovascularization disorders, e.g. choroidal neovascularization (wet ARMD), retinal neovascularization (diabetic retinopathy, sickle cell retinopathy, neovascular glaucoma in CRVO, etc.). There are 9 isoforms of VEGF-A of which VEGF-165 is the most abundantly expressed but all isoforms are thought to contribute to ocular angiogenesis.

### Preparations of anti-VEGF

Antivascular endothelial growth factor (anti-VEGF) agents, which have revolutionized the treatment of ocular diseases associated with neovascularization include:

- Ranibizumab (Lucentis),
- Pegaptanib (Macugen), and
- Bevacizumab (Avastin).

### Ranibizumab

Ranibizumab (marketed as Lucentis by Genentech, USA) is a humanized monoclonal antibody fragment (fab). Its production is by an *E. coli* expression system in a nutrient medium. Its molecular weight is 48 KD and it has a short half-life of 2 hours.

**Mechanism of action.** Ranibizumab binds to all isoforms of VEGF-A and inhibits their biological activity.

**Dose.** It is the only FDA approved non-selective anti-VEGF agent for the treatment of choroidal neovascularization or as multiple intravitreal injection (every 8 weeks) in the dose of 0.5 mg/0.05 mL. Available as 0.23 mL vial containing 10 mg/mL of the drug.

### Pegaptanib

Pegaptanib (marketed as Macugen by Eyetech Pharmaceuticals, USA) is a pegylated aptamer (i.e. an oligonucleotide with polyethylene glycol covalently attached). Its molecular weight is 50 KD.

**Mechanism of action.** It binds with high affinity to VEGF-165 isoform of VEGF-A and inhibits its activity thereby inhibiting angiogenesis.

**Intravitreal dose** is 0.3 mg in 90 µL (multiple injections every 6 weeks).

### Bevacizumab

Bevacizumab (marketed as Avastin by Genentech, USA) is a full length recombinant humanized monoclonal antibody (IgG1) against VEGF-A. Its molecular



weight is 149 KD. In contrast to ranibizumab, bevacizumab is a complete antibody originally developed to target the blood vessel growth in metastatic cancer deposits. It is currently approved for colorectal cancers as an intravenous injection. Its off-label use in ocular neovascular disorders, e.g. wet ARMD have shown its effectivity.

**Mechanism of action.** It binds to all isoforms of VEGF-A and inhibits their activity.

**Intravitreal dose.** It is available as 4 mL vial containing 100 mg of the drug. Its intravitreal dose is 1.25 mg (0.05 mL).

### Uses of anti-VEGF agents

Uses of anti-VEGF agents include neovascular age-related macular degeneration (common indication), diabetic retinopathy, retinal veinocclusion, neovascular glaucoma, myopic CNV, inflammatory CNV, choroidal osteoma, juxtafoveal telangiectasia, ROP, idiopathic polypoidal choroidopathy, pseudophakic cystoid oedema and central serous retinopathy.

### Complications of anti-VEGFs

Complications of anti-VEGFs intravitreal injections include cataract, glaucoma, vitreous haemorrhage, endophthalmitis, retinal detachment, etc.

## DYES USED IN OPHTHALMOLOGY

Ophthalmic dyes commonly used as a helping tool in the diagnosis and management of ocular disease include:

- Fluorescein sodium
- Fluorexone
- Indocyanine green
- Rose Bengal
- Lissamine green
- Trypan blue
- Verteporfin, and
- Methylene blue.

### ■ FLUORESCIN SODIUM

Fluorescein sodium, a water soluble dibasic acid dye, is the most essential and commonly use in ophthalmology. It is orange red in powder form and yellow in solution.

#### Uses and preparations

**Topical formulations** include 2% aqueous solution and fluorescein impregnated strips. Presently, use of strips is preferred as the solution may harbor *Pseudomonas pyocyanea* bacteria.

**Uses** include:

- **Corneal staining to detect abrasion and ulcers.** Epithelial defect of cornea stain bright green in

white light and opaque green with cobalt blue light and thus are easily visualized (also See page 524).

- **Applanation tonometry** is the most frequent procedure in which tear film is stained.
- **Lacrima tests** includes tear film break up time (TBUT) for any eye and Jane's test for watering eye.
- **Seidel's test.** Tear film is stained to detect leakage of aqueous from the anterior chamber in postoperative shallow anterior chamber, perforating trauma and perforation of corneal ulcer.
- **Rigid contact lens fitting** is best judged with fluorescein pattern of tear film.

**Intravenous fluorescein** (10% and 25%) is used for:

- **Fundus fluorescein angiography** (See page 538)
- **Iris angiography** for evaluation of vasculature
- **Vitreous fluorophotometry.**

### ■ FLUOREXONE

It is a high molecular weight fluorescent solution (N-bis-aminomethyl fluorescein tetrasodium).

#### Uses

Fluorexone does not stain most of the soft contact lenses and is thus used in eyes when fluorescein is contraindicated to avoid staining of soft contact lenses:

- Evaluation of corneal integrity of patients wearing hydrogel contact lenses
- Tear film BUT test
- Applanation tonometry without removing soft contact lens
- For detecting lathe-cut index marking of toric soft contact lenses.

### ■ INDOCYANINE GREEN

Indocyanine green (ICG) has a high protein binding capacity, near infrared fluorescence and peak spectral absorption of 800–810 nm in blood.

#### Uses

- **ICG fundus angiography** (dose 25 mg in 2 mL) is particularly useful for disorders involving choroidal vasculature, e.g. neovascularization (age-related macular degeneration), idiopathic polypoidal choroidal vasculopathy (PCV), pigmented choroidal melanomas, choroidal haemangioma, central serous chorioretinopathy, and various types of choroiditis.
- **ICG-enhanced anterior capsulorhexis** using 0.5% solution is useful in childhood cataracts and adulthood cataract with no fundus glow.
- **ICG-enhanced posterior capsulorhexis** using 0.5% solution is useful in childhood cataracts.

### ■ ROSE BENGAL AND LISSAMINE GREEN

Rose Bengal and Lissamine green, both dyes are available as 1% solution as well as impregnated paper strips.



**Uses.** These dyes stain the devitalized, (degenerated and dead cells of conjunctiva and cornea and also the mucous fibrils. These are particularly useful in ocular surface disorders particularly dry eyes, i.e. keratoconjunctivitis sicca (KCS).

#### ■ TRYPAN BLUE

Trypan blue is a commonly used dye to enhance the visualization of the *anterior lens capsule* before performing anterior capsulotomy/capsulorrhexis during cataract surgery. Special feature of trypan blue is that it stain the anterior lens capsule without affecting the corneal endothelium.

**Administration and doses.** It is available as 1 mL ampule and 2 mL vial. Each mL of solution contain 0.6 mg trypan blue. It is used in diluted form in a concentration range of 0.01 to 0%.

**Indications.** It is specially indicated in mature and hypermature cataracts when red reflex is not visible. However, some surgeons use it routinely.

**Precaution.** By and large trypan blue is very safe without side effect. However, some cases of post-inflammatory reactions and some cases of bullous keratopathy have

been reported. Therefore, it should be used cautiously, when needed and effects should be made to avoid contact with endothelium by using air bubble. Further, it should be washed off immediately with viscoelastic and balanced salt solution.

#### ■ VERTEPORFIN

Verteporfin (commercially available as Visudyne) is a photosensitive second generation porphyrin derivative.

**Uses.** It is used in photodynamic therapy (PDT) for wet age-related macular degeneration in patients with classic subfoveal choroidal neovascularization (CNVM).

**Dosage and mechanism of action.** Verteporfin is injected as intravenous infusion in a dose of 6 mg/m<sup>2</sup> body surface area in a total infusion volume of 30 mL. After 5 minutes, the area of CNVM is exposed to light from a diode laser source at a wavelength (689 nm) that corresponds to absorption peak of the dye. The light-activated dye then causes disruption of cellular structures an occlusion of CNVM with minimum damage to the adjacent RPE, photoreceptors and capillaries.



# Lasers and Cryotherapy in Ophthalmology

## LASERS IN OPHTHALMOLOGY

- Properties of laser light
- Production of laser beam
- Types of lasers
- Mechanisms of laser effects and their therapeutic applications

## CRYOTHERAPY IN OPHTHALMOLOGY

- Principle
- Cryo unit
- Modes of action

## LASERS IN OPHTHALMOLOGY

### ■ PROPERTIES OF LASER LIGHT

The word LASER is an acronym for 'Light Amplification by Stimulated Emission of Radiation.'

#### Properties of laser light

- **Monochromatic**, i.e. it consist of a narrow beam of a single wavelength and thus, is always colored and can never be white.
- **Coherence**, i.e. its each wave is in phase with the other near it.
- **Collimation**, i.e. all the rays are exactly parallel.
- **Polarized in one plane**, i.e. easy to pass through media.

### ■ PRODUCTION OF LASER BEAM

In the laser system (Fig. 20.1) atomic environments (gain medium) of various types are stimulated to produce laser light. The 'gain' medium consists of a transparent crystal rod or a gas or liquid dye. The gain medium is housed in a resonator cavity constructed with a fully reflective mirror at one end and a partially reflective mirror at the other. Surrounding the rod or cavity is an optical or electrical source of energy that will raise the energy level of the atoms within

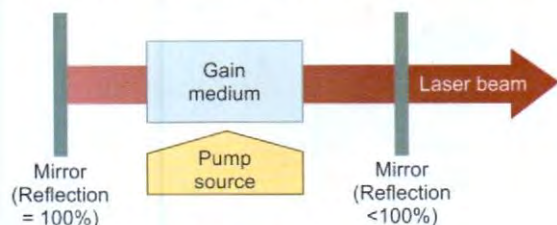


Fig. 20.1 Laser system components

the cavity or rod to a high and unstable level. This phenomenon is called *population inversion*. From this level, the atoms spontaneously decay back to a lower energy level, releasing the excess energy in the form of light which is amplified to an appropriate wavelength. Thus, laser is created mainly by two means: population inversion in active medium and amplification of appropriate wavelength of light.

**Continuous versus pulsed laser.** Laser energy can be emitted continuously or in pulses, which usually have pulse durations of nanoseconds ( $1 \text{ ns} = 10^{-9} \text{ s}$ ) or less.

### ■ TYPES OF LASERS

There are various types of lasers depending upon the type of atomic environment stimulated to produce the laser beam. Common types of lasers used in ophthalmology are depicted in Table 20.1.

### ■ MECHANISMS OF LASER EFFECTS AND THEIR THERAPEUTIC APPLICATIONS

Depending on the intensity and duration of interaction the anion mechanism by which laser light interacts with body tissue can be grouped as below (Fig. 20.2):

- Photoradiation (Photochemical effect)
- Photothermal effect
  - Photovaporisation
  - Photocoagulation
- Photoablation
- Photodisruption (plasma-mediated ablation/photomechanical effect)

#### I. Photochemical effect

Photochemical effect is produced following exposure of ocular tissues to the visible or near ultraviolet (UV)



Table 20.1 Lasers used in ophthalmology

| Type of laser                                        | Wavelength (nm)           | Atomic environment used                                                                       | Effects produced                                         |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Argon                                             | 488 (Blue)<br>514 (Green) | Argon gas                                                                                     | Photocoagulation                                         |
| 2. Krypton                                           | 647                       | Krypton gas                                                                                   | Photocoagulation                                         |
| 3. Diode                                             | 810                       | Diode crystal                                                                                 | Photocoagulation                                         |
| 4. Diode<br>Frequency doubled<br>neodymium<br>FD-YAG | 577 (green)               | Diode and<br>Nd:YAG<br>crystals                                                               | Photocoagulation                                         |
| 5. Nd:YAG                                            | 1064 (near<br>infrared)   | A liquid dry<br>or a solid<br>compound<br>of yttrium-<br>aluminium<br>garnet and<br>neodymium | Photodisruption                                          |
| 6. Excimer                                           | 193<br>(ultraviolet)      | Helium and<br>flourine gas                                                                    | Photoablation                                            |
| 7. Femtosecond                                       | 1053 (near<br>infrared)   | Neodymium-<br>glass                                                                           | Photodisruption                                          |
| 8. Helium neon                                       | 633 (red)                 |                                                                                               | Used as low<br>power aiming<br>beam for other<br>lasers. |

light for a duration of 10 seconds or more. This effect occurs due to cessation of oxygen free radicals, which are cytotoxic. Toxicity is particularly increased after administration of exogenous (topical or systemic) photosensitising agents, which accumulate in the target tissue and produce free radicals when excited by the laser.

**Theraupetic applications** based on photochemical effect include:

- *Photodynamic therapy (PDT)*, in which photosensitising agent *vertiforin* is injected systemically before exposure with light from diode laser source (689 nm).
- *Corneal collagen linking with riboflavin (C3R or)*. In this photosensitizing agent riboflavin is instilled topically on the cornea before exposure to ultraviolet (UVA) light.

II. Photothermal effect

The principal lasers used in ophthalmic therapy are the thermal lasers, which depend upon absorption of the laser light by tissue pigments:

- *Melanin*, present in the pigmentary epithelium, absorbs across the spectrum including infrared light.
- *Hemoglobin* absorbs blue, green, yellow and weakly absorbs red and infrared light.
- *Oxyhemoglobin* absorbs blue, green and particularly yellow light.
- *Macular pigments, xanthophyll*, particularly absorbs blue light.

The absorbed light is converted into heat, thus raising the temperature of the target tissue and producing either photocoagulation or vaporization affect.

**1. Photocoagulation** is produced when temperature is raised by 10–20°C, i.e. in high enough to coagulate and denature cellular elements. Argon, diode, krypton and frequency doubled Nd:YAG lasers are based on this mechanism.

**Modes of action.** Photocoagulation is effective intreating ocular diseases by production of a scar, occlusion of vessels, tissue atrophy, and tissue contraction.

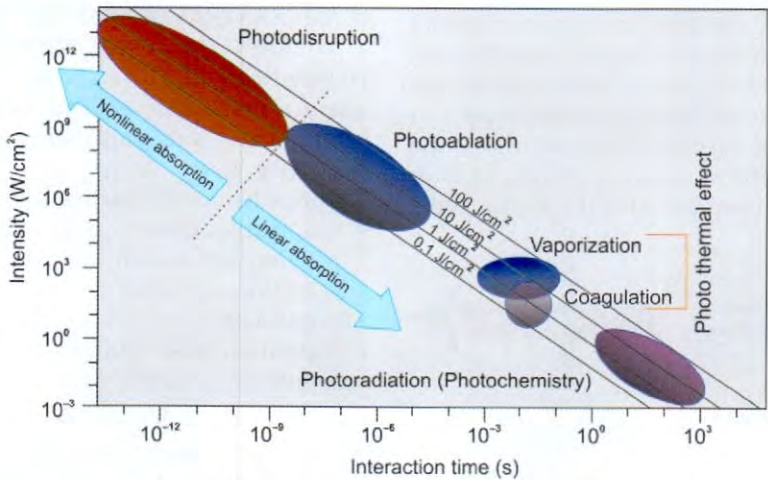


Fig. 20.2 Categories of laser tissue interaction.



**Therapeutic applications** based on photocoagulation are as follows:

i. **Eyelid lesions** such as haemangioma.

ii. **Corneal conditions**, e.g. reduction of postoperative astigmatism from cataract sutures—by Argon laser suturotomy and treatment of corneal neovascularisation.

iii. **Laser for glaucoma**. Procedures employed include

- Laser iridotomy for narrow-angle glaucoma,
- Argon laser trabeculoplasty (ALT) for open-angle glaucoma,
- Laser goniotomy for developmental glaucoma,
- Prophylactic pan-retinal photocoagulation to prevent neovascular glaucoma in patients with retinal hypoxic states (e.g. central retinal vein occlusion) and
- Cyclophotocoagulation for absolute or near absolute glaucoma.
- Laser sustained in trabeculectomy for enhanced aqueous drainage.

iv. **Lesions of iris**. These include:

- Laser coreoplasty for updrawn pupil,
- Photomydriasis for pathologic miotic pupil,
- Laser sphincterotomy and
- Laser shrinkage of iris cyst.

v. **Lesions of retina and choroid**. These form the most important indications. Common conditions are:

- **Diabetic retinopathy** in which panretinal photocoagulation (PRP) is carried out for proliferative retinopathy and focal or grid-photocoagulation for exudative maculopathy.
- **Peripheral retinal vascular abnormalities** such as Eales' disease, proliferative sickle cell disease, Coats' disease and retinopathy of prematurity.
- **Intraocular tumours** such as retinoblastoma, malignant melanoma and choroidal haemangioma.
- **Macular diseases**, such as central serous retinopathy, and age-related macular degeneration (ARMD).
- **For sealing of holes** in retinal detachment.

**Complications of laser photocoagulation**. These include: accidental foveal burns, macular oedema and macular pucker, preretinal fibrosis, haemorrhage from retina and choroid, retinal hole formation, ischaemic papillitis, localised opacification of lens and accidental corneal burns.

**2. Photovaporisation effect**: If the temperature reaches 100°C, water in the tissues vaporises, causing localised tissue disruption.

### III. Photomechanical effect/plasma mediated ablation/photodisruption

Laser based on this mechanism ionize the electrons of the target tissue producing a physical state called *plasma*. This plasma expands with

momentary pressures as high as 10 kilobars, exerting a cutting/incising effect upon the tissues. Nd:YAG laser and femtosecond laser are based on this mechanism.

**1. Nd:YAG laser and therapeutic applications** include:

- **Capsulotomy** for thickened posterior capsule and
- **Membranectomy** for pupillary membranes.
- **Vitreolysis**, i.e. cutting of vitreous bands present in the anterior chamber. Such vitreous bands usually follow incomplete clearance of the vitreous from the anterior chamber during management of vitreous loss secondary to trauma or cataract surgery.
- **Phacolysis** (laser phaco surgery) in phacoemulsification technique of cataract extraction, has also been tried.

**2. Femtosecond laser and its uses**. The femtosecond laser uses an infrared beam of light to precisely separate the tissues through photodisruption by generating pulses as short as one-quadrillionth of a second ( $10^{-15}$  femtosecond). It has a wavelength of 1053 nm.

**Uses of femtosecond laser include:**

- Creation of corneal flap for LASIK,
- Creation of tunnel for intracorneal rings,
- Arcuate incisions to correct corneal astigmatism,
- Keratoplasty incisions,
- Small incision lenticule extraction (SMILE) for correction of myopia
- Femtosecond laser assisted cataract surgery (FLACS).

### IV. Photoablation

Lasers based on this mechanism such as the 193-nm argon-fluoride laser, produce UV light of very short wavelength which breaks molecular bonds of biologic materials, converting them into small molecules that diffuse away. These lasers are collectively called *excimer* (excited dimer) *lasers*. These act by tissue modelling.

**Therapeutic applications of excimer lasers** are:

- **Photorefractive keratectomy (PRK)**,
- **Laser assisted in situ keratomileusis (LASIK)** for correction of refractive errors and
- **Phototherapeutic keratectomy (PTK)** for corneal diseases such as bandshaped keratopathy.

### ■ LASER SAFETY

**International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC) Laser classification system** have classified lasers into four classes according to their risks, with class-1 being safe and class-4 most hazardous. (Table 20.2).

**Ophthalmic lasers and safety**. Essential points are:

- **Almost all ophthalmic lasers** are class 4 indicating high risk.



**Table 20.2** International safety classification of lasers

| Class | Output (Mw)                    | Safety                                                   |
|-------|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1     | $\leq 0.0004$<br>blue or green | Eye safe                                                 |
|       | $\leq 0.024$ red               | Eye safe                                                 |
| 2     | $< 1$ visible<br>wavelength    | Eye safe, brightness causes<br>blink and aversion        |
| 3a    | 1–5 visible<br>wavelength      | Eye safe brightness causes blink<br>and aversion         |
| 3b    | 5–500                          | Significant eye damage, e.g.<br>retinal photocoagulation |
| 4     | $\geq 500$                     | Serious irreversible damage                              |

- *Slit lamp laser delivery systems* have inbuilt filters within the microscope to prevent the surgeon from being harmed by reflected laser light.
- *Surgeons using hand-held lasers of all types laser treatment* must wear safety goggles filtering the wavelength in use.

### CRYOTHERAPY IN OPHTHALMOLOGY

Cryopexy means to produce tissue injury by application of intense cold ( $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $-100^{\circ}\text{C}$ ). This is achieved by a cryoprobe from a cryo unit.

#### Principle

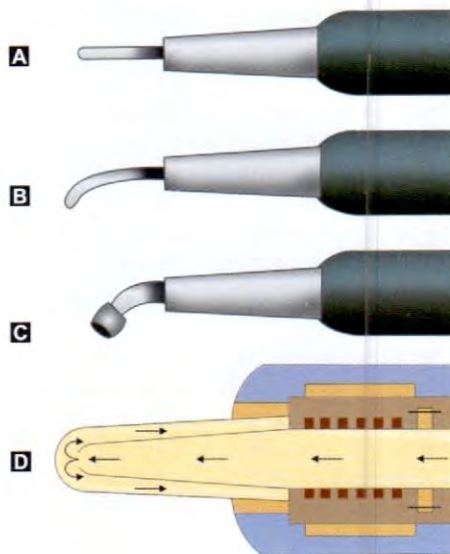
Working of cryoprobes is based on the Joule Thompson principle of cooling.

#### Cryo unit

**Cryo unit** (Fig. 20.3) uses freon, nitrous oxide or carbon dioxide gas as cooling agent.

**Cryoprobes** are available in different sizes such as 1 mm for intravitreal use, 1.5 mm straight or curved probe for cataract extraction, 2.5 mm for retina and 4 mm for cyclocryopexy (Fig. 20.4).

**Temperature produced** depends upon the size of the cryoprobe tip, duration of freezing process and the gas used.

**Fig. 20.3** Ophthalmic cryo unit**Fig. 20.4** Cryoprobes: A and B, For cataract extraction straight and curved, respectively; C, For cyclocryopexy; D, Internal structure

#### Modes of action

Cryopexy produces the required therapeutic effect by different modes which include *tissue necrosis* (as in cyclocryopexy and cryopexy for tumours), production of adhesions between tissues (e.g. between retina, pigment epithelium and choroid in retinal detachment), vascular occlusions (as in Coats' disease) and adherence of the cryoprobe to the iceball in the tissue (as in cataract extraction).

#### Uses

1. **Lids.** Cryosurgery may be used for following lesions: (i) Cryolysis for trichiasis, (ii) Cryotherapy for warts and *Molluscum contagiosum*, (iii) Cryotherapy for basal cell carcinoma and haemangioma.
2. **Conjunctiva.** Cryotherapy is used for hypertrophied papillae of vernal catarrh and ocular surface squamous neoplasia (OSSN).
3. **Cornea.** Herpes simplex keratitis may be treated by cryotherapy.
4. **Lens.** Cryoextraction of the lens used to be the best intracapsular technique. However, nowadays intracapsular cataract extraction (ICCE) is no more performed.
5. **Ciliary body.** Cyclocryopexy for absolute glaucoma and neovascular glaucoma.
6. **Retina.** (i) Cryopexy can be used for sealing retinal holes in retinal detachment. (ii) Prophylactic cryopexy to prevent retinal detachment in certain predisposed cases. (iii) Anterior retinal cryopexy (ARC) in retinal ischaemic disease, e.g. retinopathy of prematurity to prevent neovascularization. (iv) Cryo treatment of retinoblastoma and angioma.



# Section V

---

## Systemic and Community Ophthalmology

### *Section Outline*

---

- 21. Systemic Ophthalmology
- 22. Community Ophthalmology



# Section 1

Community  
Psychology

Article 12

Journal of Community Psychology

Volume 12, Number 1  
January 1983



**OCULAR MANIFESTATIONS OF SYSTEMIC DISEASES**

- Introduction
- Ocular manifestations of nutritional deficiencies
- Ocular manifestations of systemic infections
- Ocular manifestations of common endocrinal and metabolic disorders

- Ocular manifestations of common disorders of skin and mucous membranes
- Ocular manifestations of haematological diseases

**OCULAR ABNORMALITIES IN TRISOMIES****ADVERSE OCULAR EFFECTS OF COMMON SYSTEMIC DRUGS****OCULAR MANIFESTATIONS OF SYSTEMIC DISEASES****INTRODUCTION**

Ocular involvement in systemic disorders is quite frequent. It is imperative for the ophthalmologists as well as physicians to be well conversant with these. Many a time, the ocular manifestations may be the presenting signs and the ophthalmologist will refer the patient to the concerned specialist for diagnosis and/or management of the systemic disease. While, in other cases the opinion for ocular involvement may be sought for by the physician who knows to look for it.

Ocular lesions of the common systemic disorders are enumerated and a few important ones are described here.

**OCULAR MANIFESTATIONS OF NUTRITIONAL DEFICIENCIES**

1. *Deficiency of vitamin A*. Ocular manifestations of vitamin A deficiency are referred to as xerophthalmia.
2. *Deficiency of vitamin B<sub>1</sub> (thiamine)*. It can cause corneal anaesthesia, conjunctival and corneal dystrophy and acute retrobulbar neuritis.
3. *Deficiency of vitamin B<sub>2</sub> (riboflavin)*. It can produce photophobia and burning sensation in the eyes due to conjunctival irritation and vascularisation of the cornea.
4. *Deficiency of vitamin C*. It may be associated with haemorrhages in the conjunctiva, lids, anterior

chamber, retina and orbit. It also delays wound healing.

5. *Deficiency of vitamin D*. It may be associated with zonular cataract, papilloedema and increased lacrimation.

**XEROPHTHALMIA**

The term xerophthalmia is reserved (by a joint WHO and USAID Committee, 1976) to cover all the ocular manifestations of vitamin A deficiency, including not only the structural changes affecting the conjunctiva, cornea and occasionally retina, but also the biophysical disorders of retinal rods and cones functions.

**Etiology**

It occurs either due to *dietary deficiency* of vitamin A or its *defective absorption* from the gut. It has long been recognised that vitamin A deficiency does not occur as an isolated problem but is almost invariably accompanied by protein-energy malnutrition (PEM) and infections.

**WHO classification (1982)**

The new xerophthalmia classification (modification of original 1976 classification) is as follows:

- XN Night blindness
- X1A Conjunctival xerosis
- X1B Bitot's spots
- X2 Corneal xerosis
- X3A Corneal ulceration/keratomalacia affecting less than one-third corneal surface
- X3B Corneal ulceration/keratomalacia affecting more than one-third corneal surface



XS Corneal scar due to xerophthalmia

XF Xerophthalmic fundus.

### Clinical features

1. **XN (Night blindness).** It is the earliest symptom of xerophthalmia in children. It has to be elicited by taking detailed history from the guardian or relative.

2. **X1A (Conjunctival xerosis).** It consists of one or more patches of dry, lustreless, nonwetttable conjunctiva (Fig. 21.1), which has been well described as 'emerging like sand banks at receding tide' when the child ceases to cry. These patches almost always involve the interpalpebral area of the temporal quadrants and often the nasal quadrants as well. In more advanced cases, the entire bulbar conjunctiva may be affected. Typical xerosis may be associated with conjunctival thickening, wrinkling and pigmentation.

3. **X1B (Bitot's spots).** It is an extension of the xerotic process seen in stage X1A. The Bitot's spot is a raised, silvery white, foamy, triangular patch of keratinised epithelium, situated on the bulbar conjunctiva in the interpalpebral area (Fig. 21.2). It is usually bilateral and temporal, and less frequently nasal.

4. **X2 (Corneal xerosis).** The earliest change in the cornea is punctate keratopathy which begins in the lower nasal quadrant, followed by haziness and/or granular pebbly dryness (Fig. 21.3). Involved cornea lacks lustre.

5. **X3A and X3B (Corneal ulceration/keratomalacia).** Stromal defects occur in the late stage due to colliquative necrosis and take several forms. Small ulcers (1–3 mm) occur peripherally; they are characteristically circular, with steep margins and are sharply demarcated (Fig. 21.4). Large ulcers and areas of necrosis may extend centrally or involve the entire cornea. If appropriate therapy is instituted immediately, stromal defects involving less than one-third of corneal surface (X3A) usually heal, leaving some useful vision. However, larger stromal defects (X3B) (Fig. 21.5) commonly result in blindness.

6. **XS (Corneal scars).** Healing of stromal defects results in corneal scars of different densities and sizes which may or may not cover the pupillary area (Fig. 21.6). A detailed history is required to ascertain the cause of corneal opacity.



Fig. 21.1 Xerophthalmia, stage X1A: Conjunctival xerosis



Fig. 21.3 Xerophthalmia, stage X2: Corneal xerosis



Fig. 21.2 Xerophthalmia, stage X1B: Bitot's spots

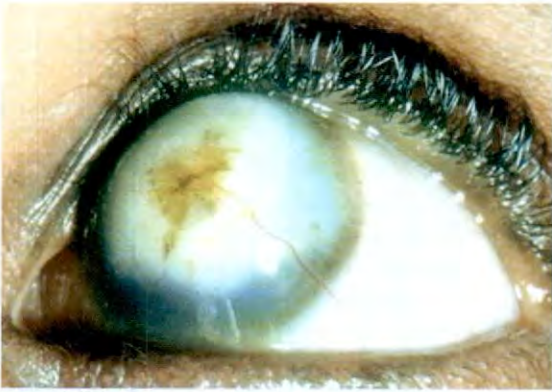


Fig. 21.4 Xerophthalmia, stage X3A: Keratomalacia involving less than one-third of corneal surface

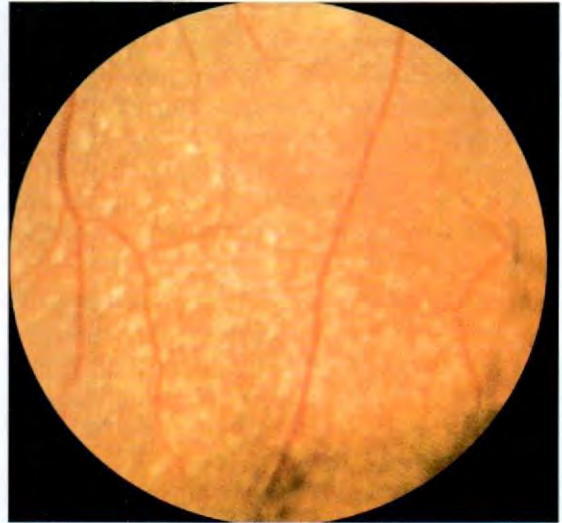




**Fig. 21.5** Xerophthalmia, stage X3B: Keratomalacia involving more than one-third of corneal surface



**Fig. 21.6** Xerophthalmia, stage XS: Corneal scars



**Fig. 21.7** Xerophthalmia stage XF: Xerophthalmic fundus

**7. XFC (Xerophthalmic fundus).** It is characterized by typical seed-like, raised, whitish lesions scattered uniformly over the part of the fundus at the level of optic disc (Fig. 21.7).

### Treatment

It includes local ocular therapy, vitamin A therapy and treatment of underlying general disease.

**1. Local ocular therapy.** For conjunctival xerosis, artificial tears (0.7% hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose or 0.3% hypromellose) should be instilled every 3–4 hours. In the stage of keratomalacia, full-fledged treatment of bacterial corneal ulcer should be instituted (See pages 107–108).

**2. Vitamin A therapy.** Treatment schedules apply to all stages of active xerophthalmia viz. XN, X1A, X1B, X2, X3A and X3B. Oral administration is the recommended method of treatment. However, in the presence of repeated vomiting and severe diarrhoea, intramuscular injections of water-miscible preparation should be preferred. The WHO recommended schedule is as given below:

- i. All patients above the age of 1 year (except women of reproductive age): 200,000 IU of vitamin A orally or 100,000 IU by intramuscular injection should be given immediately on diagnosis and repeated the following day and 4 weeks later.
  - ii. Children under the age of 1 year and children of any age who weigh less than 8 kg should be treated with half the doses for patients of more than 1 year of age.
  - iii. Women of reproductive age, pregnant or not: (a) Those having night blindness (XN), conjunctival xerosis (X1A) and Bitot's spots (X1B) should be treated with a daily dose of 10,000 IU of vitamin A orally (1 sugar coated tablet) for 2 weeks. (b) For corneal xerophthalmia, administration of full dosage schedule (described for patients above 1 year of age) is recommended.
- 3. Treatment of underlying conditions** such as PEM and other nutritional disorders, diarrhoea, dehydration and electrolyte imbalance, infections and parasitic conditions should be considered simultaneously.

### Prophylaxis against xerophthalmia

The three major known intervention strategies for the prevention and control of vitamin A deficiency are:

- 1. Short-term approach.** It comprises periodic administration of vitamin A supplements. WHO recommended, universal distribution schedule of vitamin A for prevention is as follows:
  - i. Infants 6–12 months old and any older children who weigh less than 8 kg. 100,000 IU orally every 3–6 months.



- ii. Children over 1 year and under 6 years of age 200,000 IU orally every 6 months.
- iii. Lactating mothers 20,000 IU orally once at delivery or during the next 2 months. This will raise the concentration of vitamin A in the breast milk and therefore, help to protect the breastfed infant.
- iv. Infants less than 6 months old, not being breastfed. 50,000 IU orally should be given before they attain the age of 6 months.

A revised schedule of vitamin A supplements being followed in India since August 1992, under the programme named as 'Child Survival and Safe Motherhood (CSSM)' is as follows:

- **First dose** (1 lakh IU)—at 9 months of age along with measles vaccine.
- **Second dose** (2 lakh IU)—at 18 months of age along with booster dose of DPT/OPV.
- **Third dose** (2 lakh IU)—at 2 years of age.

**2. Medium-term approach.** It includes food fortification with vitamin A.

**3. Long-term approach.** It should be the ultimate aim. It implies promotion of adequate intake of vitamin A rich foods such as green leafy vegetables, papaya and drumsticks (Fig. 21.8). Nutritional health education should be included in the curriculum of school children.

**Note.** The short-term approach has been mostly in vogue especially in Asia. The best option perhaps is a combination of all the three methods with a gradual weaning away of the short-term approach.

## OCULAR MANIFESTATIONS OF SYSTEMIC INFECTIONS

### A. VIRAL INFECTIONS

**Measles.** Ocular lesions are: catarrhal conjunctivitis, Koplik's spots on conjunctiva, corneal ulceration, optic neuritis and retinitis.



Fig. 21.8 Rich sources of vitamin A

**Mumps.** Ocular involvement may occur as conjunctivitis, keratitis, acute dacryoadenitis and uveitis.

**Rubella.** Ocular lesions seen in rubella (German measles) are congenital microphthalmos, cataract, glaucoma, chorioretinitis and optic atrophy.

**Whooping cough.** There may occur subconjunctival haemorrhages and rarely orbital haemorrhage leading to proptosis.

### Ocular involvement in AIDS

AIDS (Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome) is caused by Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) which is an RNA retrovirus.

**Modes of spread** include:

- Sexual intercourse with an infected person,
- Use of infected hypodermic needles,
- Transfusion of infected blood, and
- Transplacental spread to foetus from the infected mothers.

**Pathogenesis of AIDS.** The HIV infects T-cells, T-helper cells, macrophages and B-cells and thus interferes with the mechanism of production of immune bodies thereby causing immunodeficiency.

**Immunodeficiency** renders the individuals prone to various infections and tumours, which involve multiple systems and finally cause death.

**Ocular manifestations.** These occur in about 75% of patients and sometimes may be the presenting features of AIDS in an otherwise healthy person or the patient may be a known case of AIDS when his eye problems occur. Ocular lesions of AIDS may be classified as follows:

**1. Retinal microvasculopathy.** It develops from vasoocclusive process which may be either due to direct toxic effects of virus on the vascular endothelium or immune complex deposits in the precapillary arterioles. It is characterised by nonspecific lesions (Fig. 21.9):

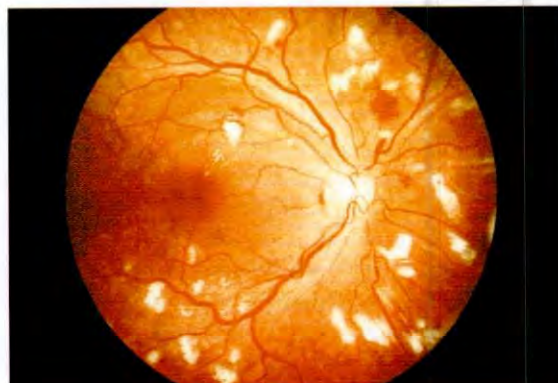


Fig. 21.9 Retinopathy in AIDS



- Multiple 'cotton wool spots' occur in 50% cases,
- Superficial and deep retinal haemorrhages occur in 15–40% cases, and
- Microaneurysms and telangiectasia may also be seen rarely.

2. **Usual ocular infections.** These are also seen in healthy people, but occur with greater frequency and produce more severe infections in patients with AIDS. These include:

- Herpes zoster ophthalmicus,
- Herpes simplex infections,
- Toxoplasmosis (chorioretinitis), and
- Ocular tuberculosis, syphilis and fungal corneal ulcers.

3. **Opportunistic infections of the eye.** These are caused by micro-organisms which do not affect normal patients. They can infect someone whose cellular immunity is suppressed by HIV infection or by other causes such as leukaemia. These include:

- Cytomegalovirus (CMV) retinitis (See page 275 Fig. 12.5),
- Candida endophthalmitis,
- Cryptococcal infections,
- Pneumocystis carinii, and
- Choroiditis.

4. **Unusual neoplasms** includes:

- Kaposi's sarcoma is a malignant vascular tumour which may appear on the eyelid or conjunctiva as multiple nodules. It is seen in about 3% cases of AIDS.
- Burkitt's lymphoma of the orbit is also seen in a few patients.

5. **Neuro-ophthalmic lesions.** These are thought to be due to CMV or other infections of the brain. These include:

- Cranial nerve palsies isolated or multiple resulting in paralysis of eyelids, extraocular muscles,
- Loss of sensory supply to the eye,
- Optic nerve involvement causing loss of vision.

**Management.** It consists of the measures directed against the associated infection/lesions. For example:

- CMV infections can be treated by zidovudine, ganciclovir and foscarnet (See page 467).
- Kaposi's sarcoma responds to radiotherapy.
- Herpes zoster ophthalmicus is treated by acyclovir.

## B. BACTERIAL INFECTIONS

1. **Septicaemia.** Ocular involvement may occur in the form of metastatic retinitis, uveitis or endophthalmitis.
2. **Diphtheria.** There may occur: membranous conjunctivitis, corneal ulceration, paralysis of accommodation and paralysis of extraocular muscles.

3. **Brucellosis.** It may involve the eye in the form of iritis, choroiditis and optic neuritis.
4. **Gonococcal ocular lesions** are: ophthalmia neonatorum, acute purulent conjunctivitis in adults and corneal ulceration.
5. **Meningococcal infection** may be associated with: metastatic conjunctivitis, corneal ulceration, paresis of extraocular muscles, optic neuritis and metastatic endophthalmitis or panophthalmitis.
6. **Typhoid fever.** It may be complicated by optic neuritis and corneal ulceration due to lagophthalmos.
7. **Tuberculosis.** Ocular lesions seen are granulomatous conjunctivitis, phlyctenular keratoconjunctivitis, interstitial keratitis, nongranulomatous and granulomatous uveitis, Eales' disease, optic atrophy (following chiasmal arachnoiditis secondary to meningitis), and papilloedema (due to raised intracranial pressure following intracranial tuberculoma).
8. **Syphilitic lesions** (acquired) seen in *primary stage* are conjunctivitis and chancre of conjunctiva. In *secondary stage*, there may occur iridocyclitis. *Tertiary stage* lesions include chorioretinitis and gummata in the orbit. *Neurosyphilis* is associated with optic atrophy and pupillary abnormalities. Ocular lesions of *congenital syphilis* are: interstitial keratitis, iridocyclitis and chorioretinitis.
9. **Leprosy.** Ocular lesions of leprosy include cutaneous nodules on the eyelids, madarosis, interstitial keratitis, exposure keratitis, granulomatous uveitis and dacryocystitis.

## C. PARASITIC INFECTIONS

1. **Toxoplasmosis** is known to produce necrotising chorioretinitis (See page 170).
2. **Taenia echinococcus** infestation may manifest as hydatid cyst of the orbit, vitreous and retina.
3. **Taenia solium** infestation. Cysticercus cysts are known to involve conjunctiva, vitreous, retina, orbit and extraocular muscles.
4. **Toxocara** infestation may be associated with endophthalmitis (See page 170).
5. **Onchocerciasis** is a common cause of blindness in African countries. Its ocular features include sclerosing keratitis, uveitis, chorioretinitis and optic neuritis invariably ending in optic atrophy.

## D. FUNGAL INFECTIONS

Systemic fungal infections may be associated with:

- Mycotic corneal ulceration,
- Fungal endophthalmitis, and
- Fungal infections of orbit.



## OCULAR MANIFESTATIONS OF COMMON ENDOCRINAL AND METABOLIC DISORDERS

### Gout

Ocular lesions of gout include:

- Episcleritis,
- Scleritis, and
- Uveitis.

### Diabetes mellitus

Ocular involvement in diabetes is very common. Structure-wise ocular lesions are as follows:

1. *Lids*. Xanthelasma and recurrent sty or internal hordeolum.
2. *Conjunctiva*. Telangiectasia, sludging of the blood in conjunctival vessels and subconjunctival haemorrhage.
3. *Cornea*. Pigment dispersal at back of cornea, decreased corneal sensations (due to trigeminal neuropathy), punctate keratopathy, Descemet's folds, higher incidence of infective corneal ulcers and delayed epithelial healing due to abnormality in epithelial basement membrane.
4. *Iris*. Rubeosis iridis (neovascularization).
5. *Lens*. Snow-storm cataract in patients with IDDM, posterior subcapsular cataract, early onset and early maturation of senile cataract.
6. *Vitreous*. Vitreous haemorrhage and fibrovascular proliferation secondary to diabetic retinopathy.
7. *Retina*. Diabetic retinopathy and lipaemia retinalis (See page 285).
8. *Intraocular pressure*. Increased incidence of POAG, neovascular glaucoma and hypotony in diabetic ketoacidosis (due to increased plasma bicarbonate levels).
9. *Optic nerve*. Optic neuritis.
10. *Extraocular muscles*. Ophthalmoplegia due to diabetic neuropathy.
11. *Changes in refraction*. Hypermetropic shift in hypoglycemia, myopic shift in hyperglycemia and decreased accommodation.

### Galactosemia

It is usually associated with congenital cataract (See page 200).

### Homocystinuria

It is associated with bilateral subluxation of lens (See page 222).

### Mucopolysaccharidosis

Ocular lesions include:

- Corneal opacification,
- Pigmentary retinopathy,

- Glaucoma, and
- Optic atrophy.

### Hyperthyroidism

Ocular lesions include:

- Thyroid ophthalmopathy (See page 431),
- Superior limbic keratoconjunctivitis (See page 123), and
- Optic disc oedema.

### Hypoparathyroidism

Ocular lesions include:

- Fasciculation,
- Cataract, and
- Optic disc oedema.

### Wilson disease

Ocular lesions include:

- Kayser-Fleischer ring
- Sunflower cataract.

## OCULAR MANIFESTATIONS OF COMMON DISORDERS OF SKIN AND MUCOUS MEMBRANES

1. *Atopic dermatitis*. It may be associated with conjunctivitis, keratoconus and cataract.
2. *Rosacea*. Its ocular lesions include blepharitis, conjunctivitis, keratitis, rosacea pannus, and recurrent chalazia.
3. *Dermatitis herpetiformis*. Its ocular complications include recurrent bullae, ulceration and cicatrization.
4. *Epidermolysis bullosa*. Ocular complications, when they occur, take the form of cicatrizing conjunctivitis and keratitis.
5. *Stevens-Johnson syndrome*. Stevens-Johnson syndrome is an acute illness often caused by hypersensitivity to drugs, particularly sulphonamides. It is characterized by acute ulceration of the conjunctiva and other mucous membranes like that of mouth and vagina. Conjunctival ulceration is followed by cicatrizing conjunctivitis. The clinical feature at this stage is the same as in ocular pemphigoid.

## OCULAR MANIFESTATIONS OF HAEMATOLOGICAL DISEASES

1. *Anaemias*. Anaemic retinopathy may occur in severe anaemia of any etiology (See page 291).
2. *Leukaemias*. Ocular involvement in leukaemias may occur in the form of:
  - *Proptosis* due to leukaemic deposits in the orbital tissue.



- *Leukaemic retinopathy* is of common occurrence in lymphocytic as well as myeloid leukaemias (See page 291).
3. *Sickle cell disease*. Ocular involvement may occur as: Dilated conjunctival vessels and Sickle cell retinopathy (See page 291).
4. *Lymphomas* may cause following ocular lesions:
- Lid and/or orbital deposits, and uveitis.

## OCULAR ABNORMALITIES IN TRISOMIES

### Trisomy 13 (D Trisomy or Patau Syndrome)

- Microphthalmos
- Colobomas (almost 100%)
- Retinal dysplasia
- Cataract
- Corneal opacities
- Optic nerve hypoplasia
- Cyclopia
- Intraocular cartilage.

### Trisomy 18 (E trisomy or Edwards syndrome)

- Blepharophimosis
- Ptosis
- Epicanthal fold
- Hypertelorism
- Microphthalmos
- *Uveal coloboma*
- Congenital glaucoma
- Corneal opacities.

### Trisomy 21 (G Trisomy or Down's syndrome)

- Upward slanting palpebral fissure (Mongoloid slant)
- Almond-shaped palpebral fissure
- Epicanthus
- Telecanthus
- Narrowed interpupillary distance
- Esotropia (35% cases)
- High refractive errors
- Cataract
- Iris hypoplasia
- Keratoconus.

### Ocular abnormalities in chromosomal deletion syndromes

#### *Cri-du-Chat syndrome (5p.)*

- Hypertelorism
- Epicanthus
- Antimongoloid slant
- Strabismus.

#### *Cri-du-Chat syndrome (11p.)*

- Aniridia
- Glaucoma

- Foveal hypoplasia
- Nystagmus
- Ptosis.

#### *Cri-du-Chat syndrome (13q.)*

- Retinoblastoma
- Hypertelorism
- Microphthalmos
- Epicanthus
- Ptosis
- Coloboma
- Cataract.

#### *De Grouchy syndrome (18q.)*

- Hypertelorism
- Epicanthus
- Ptosis
- Strabismus
- Myopia
- Glaucoma
- Microphthalmos (with or without cyst)
- Coloboma
- Optic atrophy
- Corneal opacity.

#### *Turner syndrome (XO)*

- Antimongoloid slant
- Epicanthus
- Ptosis
- Strabismus
- Blue sclera
- Eccentric pupils
- Cataract
- Colour blindness
- Pigmentary disturbances of fundus.

## ADVERSE OCULAR EFFECTS OF COMMON SYSTEMIC DRUGS

### CVS drugs

- *Digitalis*: Disturbance of colour vision, scotomas
- *Quinidine*: Optic neuritis (rare)
- *Thiazides*: Xanthopsia (yellow vision), Myopia
- *Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors*: Ocular hypotony, Transient myopia
- *Amiodarone*: Corneal deposits
- *Oxprenolol*: Photophobia, Ocular irritation.

### GIT drugs

- *Anticholinergic agents*: Risk of angle-closure glaucoma due to mydriasis, Blurring of vision due to cycloplegia (Occasional).

### CNS drugs

- *Barbiturates*: Extraocular muscle palsies with diplopia, Ptosis, Cortical blindness
- *Chloral hydrate*: Diplopia, Ptosis, Miosis



- *Phenothiazines*: Deposits of pigment in conjunctiva, cornea, lens and retina, oculogyric crisis
- *Amphetamines*: Widening of palpebral fissure, dilatation of pupil, paralysis of ciliary muscle with loss of accommodation
- *Monoamine oxidase inhibitors*: Nystagmus, extraocular muscle palsies, optic atrophy
- *Tricyclic agents*: Pupillary dilatation (glaucoma risk), Cycloplegia
- *Phenytoin*: Nystagmus, Diplopia, Ptosis, Slight blurring of vision (rare)
- *Neostigmine*: Nystagmus, Miosis
- *Morphine*: Miosis
- *Haloperidol*: Capsular cataract
- *Lithium carbonate*: Exophthalmos, oculogyric crisis
- *Diazepam*: Nystagmus.

### Hormones

#### Female sex hormones

- Retinal artery thrombosis
- Retinal vein thrombosis
- Papilloedema
- Ocular palsies with diplopia
- Nystagmus
- Optic neuritis and atrophy
- Retinal vasculitis
- Scotomas
- Migraine
- Mydriasis
- Cycloplegia
- Macular oedema.

#### Corticosteroids

- Cataract (posterior subcapsular)
- Local immune suppression causing susceptibility to viral (herpes simplex), bacterial and fungal infections
- Steroid-induced glaucoma.

### Antibiotics

#### Chloramphenicol

- Optic neuritis and optic atrophy
- *Streptomycin*: Optic neuritis
- *Tetracycline*: Pseudotumour cerebri, Transient myopia.

### Antimalarial

#### Chloroquine

- Macular changes (Bull's eye maculopathy)
- Central scotomas
- Pigmentary degeneration of the retina
- Chloroquine keratopathy
- Ocular palsies
- Ptosis
- Electroretinographic depression.

### Amoebicides

- *Diiodohydroxyquinoline*: Subacute myelo-optic neuropathy (SMON), optic atrophy.

### Chemotherapeutic agents

- *Sulfonamides*: Stevens-Johnson syndrome
- *Ethambutol*: Optic neuritis and atrophy
- *Isoniazid*: Optic neuritis and optic atrophy

### Heavy metals

- *Gold salts*: Deposits in the cornea and conjunctiva
- *Lead*: Optic atrophy, Papilloedema, Ocular palsies.

### Chelating agents

- *Penicillamine*: Ocular pemphigoid, Ocular neuritis, Ocular myasthenia.

### Oral hypoglycemic agents

- *Chlorpropamide*: Transient change in refractive error, Diplopia, Stevens-Johnson syndrome

### Vitamins

#### Vitamin A

- Papilloedema
- Retinal haemorrhages
- Loss of eyebrows and eyelashes
- Nystagmus
- Diplopia and blurring of vision.

#### Vitamin D

- Band-shaped keratopathy.

### Antirheumatic agents

- *Salicylates*: Nystagmus, Retinal haemorrhages, Cortical blindness (rare)
- *Indomethacin*: Corneal deposits
- *Phenylbutazone*: Retinal haemorrhages.



**INTRODUCTION****BLINDNESS AND VISION IMPAIRMENT**

- Blindness
- Vision impairment
- Visual disability

**Magnitude of vision impairment and blindness**

- Global vision impairment and blindness
- Vision impairment and blindness in India

**Causes of vision impairment and blindness**

- Causes of Global vision impairment and blindness
- Causes of Vision impairment and blindness in India
- Developed versus developing countries

**GLOBAL INITIATIVES FOR PREVENTION OF BLINDNESS**

- WHO: Prevention of blindness programme

- Vision 2020: The Right to Sight
- Universal Eye Health: Global action plan
- Vision for the future (VFTF)

**NATIONAL PROGRAMME FOR CONTROL OF BLINDNESS IN INDIA**

- Inception and present status
- Objectives
- Programme organization and implementation
- Plan of action and activities
- Strategic plan for vision 2020: Right to sight in India

**Role of eye camps in prevention of blindness****Eye banking****Rehabilitation of the blind****INTRODUCTION**

Community ophthalmology, over the years, has developed as an important discipline in medicine promoting eye health and blindness prevention through programmes utilizing methodologies of public health, community medicine and ophthalmology. Its activities emphasize the prevention of ocular diseases and visual impairment; reduction of ocular disability; and promotion of ocular health, quality of life and efficiency of a group of people at the community level. Thus, it can be defined as a system which utilises the full scope of ophthalmic knowledge and skill, methodology of public health and services of other medical and nonmedical agencies to promote ocular health and prevent blindness at the community level with an active, recognised and crucial role of community participation.

**BLINDNESS AND VISION IMPAIRMENT****BLINDNESS**

Different definitions and terms for blindness such as total blindness, economic blindness, legal blindness and social blindness are in vogue in different countries so much so that 65 definitions of

blindness are listed in a WHO publication (1966).<sup>1</sup> In ophthalmology, the term blindness strictly refers to the inability to perceive light (PL absent).

**WHO definition of blindness.** In order to have comparable national and international statistics, the WHO in 1972 proposed a uniform criterion and defined blindness as, "*Visual acuity of less than 3/60 (Snellen) or its equivalent*".<sup>2</sup> In order to facilitate, the screening of visual acuity by nonspecialised persons, in the absence of appropriate vision charts, WHO in 1979 added the "*Inability to count fingers in daylight at a distance of 3 metres*" to indicate vision less than 3/60 or its equivalent.<sup>3</sup>

Visual field less than 10°, irrespective of the level of visual acuity is also labelled as blindness (WHO, 1977).<sup>4</sup>

**NPCB definition of blindness in India.** Since the inception of National Programme for Control of Blindness (NPCB) in India, blindness was defined as presenting distance visual acuity of <6/60 or central visual fields <20° in the better eye. However, in 2017 almost after four decades, the India under NPCB has changed its definition of blindness and adopted the WHO definition.<sup>5</sup> Thus, now in India blindness refers to presenting distance visual acuity less than 3/60 (Snellens')/counting finger at a distance of 3 meters or central visual field less than 10°.



Other definitions of blindness in vogue are:

- *Economic blindness*: Vision in better eye <6/60 to 3/60
- *Social blindness*: Vision in better eye <3/60 to 1/60
- *Legal blindness*: Vision in better eye <1/60 to perception light
- *Total blindness*: No light perception (PL-ve).

**Avoidable blindness**

The concept of avoidable blindness includes both preventable blindness and curable blindness.

*Preventable blindness* is that which can be easily prevented by attacking the causative factor at an appropriate time. For example, corneal blindness due to vitamin A deficiency and trachoma can be prevented by timely measures.

*Curable blindness* is that in which vision can be restored by timely intervention, e.g. cataract blindness can be cured by surgical treatment.

**VISION IMPAIRMENT**

*Categories as per WHO, Tenth Revision of International classification of Diseases (ICD)* (updated 2006), the vision impairment (maximum presenting distance vision less than 6/18 snellen in the better eye ) has been divided into four categories (Table 22.1).<sup>6</sup>

**Note.** The term 'low vision,' included in the Ninth Revision (1977) of the International Classification of Diseases (ICD), for combined category 1 and 2,

**Table 22.1** Categories of vision impairment (WHO, 2006)<sup>6</sup>

| Category of visual impairment | Level of visual acuity (Snellen)                |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| Normal vision: 0              | 6/6 to 6/18                                     |
| Moderate vision impairment: 1 | Less than 6/18 to 6/60                          |
| Severe vision impairment: 2   | Less than 6/60 to 3/60                          |
| Blindness: 3                  | Less than 3/60 (FC at 3 m) or visual field <10° |

has been removed to avoid confusion with those requiring low vision care/low vision aids.

**VISUAL DISABILITY**

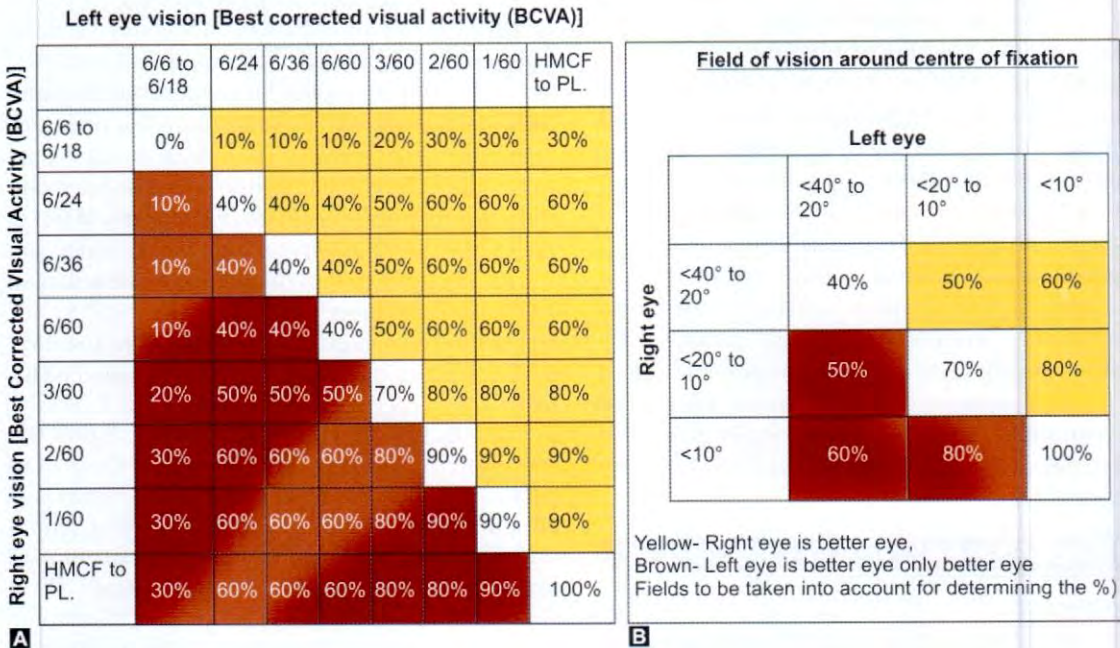
**Categories and percentage of visual disability**

As per National Programme for Control of Blindness and Visual Impairment (NPCB & VI) of India – a new criteria of visual disability categories and percentage has been evolved in 2017 (Fig. 22.1 and Table 22.2).

**MAGNITUDE OF VISION IMPAIRMENT AND BLINDNESS**

**MAGNITUDE OF GLOBAL VISION IMPAIRMENT AND BLINDNESS: SOME FACTS**

The number of blinds across the globe is not within the exact realms of counts. However, from time to



**Fig. 22.1** Categories and percentage of visual disability: A, Based on best corrected visual acuity (BCVA); B, Based on extent of visual field



**Table 22.2** Categories and percentage of visual disability

| Better eye best corrected                                                                                              | Worse eye best corrected                                   | Percent impairment | Disability category  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 6/6 to 6/18                                                                                                            | 6/6 to 6/18                                                | 0%                 | 0                    |
|                                                                                                                        | 6/24 to 6/60                                               | 10%                | 0                    |
|                                                                                                                        | Less than 6/60 to 3/60                                     | 20%                | I                    |
|                                                                                                                        | Less than 3/60 no light perception                         | 30%                | II (one eyed person) |
| 6/24 to 6/60<br>Or Visual field less than 40 up to 20 degrees around centre of fixation or hemianopia involving macula | 6/24 to 6/60                                               | 40%                | III a (low vision)   |
|                                                                                                                        | Less than 6/60 to 3/60                                     | 50%                | III b (low vision)   |
|                                                                                                                        | Less than 3/60 to no light perception                      | 60%                | III c (low vision)   |
| Less than 6/60 to 3/60<br>Or<br>Visual field less than 20 up to 10 degrees around centre of fixation                   | Less than 6/60 to 3/60                                     | 70%                | III d (low vision)   |
|                                                                                                                        | Less than 3/60 to no light perception                      | 80%                | III e (low vision)   |
| Less than 3/60 to 1/60<br>Or<br>Visual field less than 10 degrees around centre of fixation                            | Less than 3/60 to no light perception                      | 90%                | IV a (blindness)     |
| Only HMCf<br>Only light perception,<br>No light perception                                                             | Only HMCf<br>Only light perception,<br>No light perception | 100%               | IV b (blindness)     |

**Note.** Vision assessment should be done after best possible correction (medical, surgical or usual/conventional spectacles).

time, the World Health Organization (WHO) provides the estimates:<sup>7</sup>

**Statistics of global blindness.** According to WHO estimates<sup>5</sup> is as below:

- Number of blinds world over: 36 million
- Number of people with moderate to severe distance vision impairment(MSVI): 217 million
- Total number of people with vision impairment (blinds plus MSVI): 253 million
- Of the total 253 million with visual impairment (blinds plus MSVI): 124 million have uncorrected refractive errors and 65 million have cataract.
- Over 80% of all vision impairment (blindness plus and MSVI) is avoidable.
- Number of people with near-vision impairment: 1 Billion
- About 90% of vision impaired people live in low and middle-income countries
- About 55% of moderate or severely vision impaired people are women

- About 80% of people who are blind or have moderate or severe vision impairment are aged 50 years and above.

#### **Global visual impairment and blindness: changes over the last twenty years**

*Overall, the prevalence of vision impairment worldwide has decreased* since early estimates in the 1990s. Prevalence of blindness and vision impairment combined has dropped from 4.58% in 1990 to 3.37% in 2015. This decrease is associated with:<sup>7</sup>

- Overall socioeconomic development,
- Concerted public health action,
- Increased availability of eye care services,
- Awareness of the general population about solutions to the problems related to vision impairment (surgery, refraction devices, etc.).

*Prevalence of infectious eye diseases*, such as trachoma and onchocerciasis, has reduced significantly over the last 25 years.



However, it is estimated that the number of people with vision impairment could triple due to population growth and ageing. It is being projected that, by 2050 there could be 115 million people who are blind, up from 38.5 million in 2020.<sup>8</sup>

**Geographical distribution of global blindness**

About 90% of the world's blinds live in developing countries and around 60% of them reside in sub-Saharan Africa, China and India. There is a significant difference in the level of blindness in the developing countries as compared to the developed countries of the world, as there are:

- 3 blind people/1000 population in developed countries of Europe, America and Japan,
- 9 blind people/1000 population in Asia, and
- 12 blind people/1000 population in Africa.

**Regional burden of blindness**

For having an easy means of comparison among different regions of the world, a ratio referred to as the Regional Burden of Blindness (RBB) was evolved. This means the ratio of the proportion of the number of blind in a particular region to the global number of blind and the proportion of the regional population to the world population. The subSaharan Africa, India and other Asia and Islands have RBB ratio greater than unity.<sup>8</sup> This indicates that in these regions, the burden of blindness is to be taken into special consideration in terms of fixing priorities on a global scale.

**MAGNITUDE OF VISION IMPAIRMENT AND BLINDNESS IN INDIA**

While the problem of blindness is global, its magnitude is much higher in India. Of the estimated 36 million blinds world over, India alone has 12 million blind people, as per old definition of blindness. However, after change in definition of blindness in India (2017), this figure has come down to 8 million.

*Prevalence of blindness in India*, as determined by the latest survey conducted by NPCB in 2001-2002 and a Rapid Assessment of Avoidable Blindness (RAAB) in India 2007 (as per old definition of blindness) is as below:

| Prevalence | Source                         |
|------------|--------------------------------|
| 1.1%       | NPCB (2001–2002) <sup>9</sup>  |
| 1%         | RAAB (2006–2007) <sup>10</sup> |

**Note.** Current survey (2015–18) is in progress. The projected rate of prevalence of blindness is 0.45%.

**Constraints in controlling blindness in India**

The working group identified following major-constraints in controlling blindness in India:

- Inequitable distribution of eye surgeons
- Suboptimal utilization of human resources
- Inadequate number of paramedical eye care personnel
- Variation in quality
- Suboptimal coverage
- Overemphasis on cataract
- Lack of public awareness
- Prevalence of infections
- Man-made blindness due to quack practice and home remedies.

**CAUSES OF VISUAL IMPAIRMENT AND BLINDNESS**

**Causes of global visual impairment and blindness**

*Major causes of moderate to severe visual impairment*, as per latest data, world over are:<sup>11</sup>

- Un-corrected refractive errors (53%)
- Un-operated cataract (25%)
- Age-related macular degeneration (4%)
- Glaucoma (2%)
- Diabetic retinopathy (1%)
- Others (15%).

*Major causes of global blindness* include:<sup>11</sup>

- Unoperated cataracts (35%)
- Uncorrected refractive errors (21%)
- Glaucoma (8%)
- Others (36%).

**Note.** There is lot of regional variation in the causes of blindness and visual impairment.

**Causes of visual impairment and blindness in India**

The problem of visual impairment and blindness in India is not only of its gigantic size, but also of its causes, which are largely preventable or curable with the present available knowledge and skill. Three major population-based survey and one rapid assessment of avoidable blindness (RAAB) survey have been carried out in India to estimate the magnitude and causes of blindness. These surveys have shown that trends in blindness continue to change, though the major causes of blindness still continue to be the same (Table 22.3).<sup>9, 10</sup>

**Developed versus developing countries**

The main causes of blindness in developed countries are different from those of developing countries.

- *In developed countries*, 50% of all blindness is because of age-related macular degeneration (ARMD), while another 10–20% each is because of glaucoma, diabetic retinopathy and cataract.
- *In developing countries*, the frequent causes are cataract, infectious diseases, xerophthalmia, injuries, glaucoma, and onchocerciasis.



**Table 22.3** Major causes of blindness in India

| RAAB Survey (2006-07) <sup>10</sup>                              |                   | NPCB Survey (2001-02) <sup>9</sup> |                   | WHO-NPCB Survey (1986-89) <sup>8</sup> |                   | ICMR Survey (1971-74) <sup>7</sup> |                   |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Disease condition                                                | Percent blindness | Disease condition                  | Percent blindness | Disease condition                      | Percent blindness | Disease condition                  | Percent blindness |
| Cataract                                                         | 72.2              | Cataract                           | 62.6              | Cataract                               | 80.10             | Cataract                           | 55.0              |
| Refractive errors (0.7%) + aphakia (5.6%)                        | 6.3               | Refractive errors                  | 19.7              | Refractive errors                      | 7.35              | Malnutrition                       | 2.0               |
| Glaucoma                                                         | 4.4               | Glaucoma                           | 5.8               | Glaucoma                               | 1.70              | Glaucoma                           | 0.5               |
| Complications of cataract surgery                                | 3.0               | Posterior segment disorders        | 4.7               | Trachoma                               | 0.39              | Trachoma and associated infections | 20.0              |
| Corneal opacity including trachoma                               | 6.5               | Surgical complications             | 1.2               | Aphakic blindness                      | 4.67              | Injuries                           | 1.2               |
| Posterior segment disorders (DR, 0.1% + ARMD 0.7% + others 2.2%) | 3.0               | Corneal blindness                  | 0.9               | Corneal opacity                        | 1.52              | Small pox seaquele                 | 3.0               |
|                                                                  |                   | Others                             | 5.0               | Others                                 | 4.25              | Others                             | 18.0              |

### GLOBAL INITIATIVES FOR PREVENTION OF BLINDNESS

The concept of avoidable blindness (i.e. preventable or curable) has gained increasing recognition during the last three decades. International Agency for the Prevention of Blindness (IAPB) formed in 1975, is an international nongovernmental agency which has a close and complementary relationship with WHO (an international intergovernmental agency in the field of prevention of blindness).

**Major global initiatives** taken for prevention of blindness are:

- WHO: Prevention of Blindness Programme (PBP) (1978)
- Vision 2020: The Right to Sight (1999),
- Vision For the Future (VFTF) (2001), and
- Universal Eye Health: Global Action Plan.

#### WHO: PREVENTION OF BLINDNESS PROGRAMME

The WHO launched the 'Prevention of Blindness Programme (WHO: PBL)' in 1978. In accordance with which many countries have already come up with a 'National Blindness Control Programme'.

**Control strategies suggested by WHO** include:

- Assessment of common blinding disorders at local, regional and national levels.
- Establishment of national level programmes for control of blindness suited to the national and local needs.
- Training of eye care providers.
- Operational research to improve and apply appropriate technology.

WHO coordinates a number of regional workshops to enable 'Member countries' to share lessons learned and monitor the progress against the action plan.

WHO supports 'Member countries' to undertake assessments and develop policies and plans to improve access to quality comprehensive eye care services. A number of tools have been developed to assist with this work:

- Eye care service assessment tool,
- Tool for assessment of rehabilitation services and systems, and
- Tool for the assessment of diabetes and diabetic retinopathy.

WHO also works with Collaborating Centers and Non-State Actors in official relations to help deliver the technical support to Member States.

#### VISION 2020: THE RIGHT TO SIGHT

'Vision 2020: The Right to Sight',<sup>12</sup> is a global initiative launched by WHO in Geneva on Feb. 18, 1999 in a broad coalition with a 'Task Force of International Non-Governmental Organisations (NGOs)' to combat the gigantic problem of blindness in the world.

#### Partners, Objective and Implementation

##### Partners of Vision 2020: Right to Sight

- World Health Organization (WHO),
- Task Force of International NGOs, which has following members:
  - International Agency for Prevention of Blindness (IAPB)
  - Christopher Blindness Mission (CBM)



- Helen Keller International
- ORBIS International
- Sight Savers International
- Al Noor Foundation
- International Federation of Ophthalmological Societies
- Lions Clubs International Foundation
- Operation Eye Sight Universal
- The Carter Centre.

### Objective of vision 2020

Objective of this new global initiative is to eliminate avoidable blindness by the year 2020 and to reduce the global burden of blindness which currently affects an estimated 45 million people worldwide.

### Implementation of vision 2020

Vision 2020 is being implemented through four phases of five year plans, the first one started in 2000, second in 2005 and third in 2010. The last phase of implementation has commenced from 2015.

### Strategic Approaches: Global Perspective

Strategic approaches of Vision 2020: Right to Sight (Global perspective) are:

- Disease prevention and control,
- Training of eye health personnel,
- Strengthening of existing eye care infrastructure,
- Use of appropriate and affordable technology, and
- Mobilization of resources.

#### A. Disease prevention and control

Globally, WHO has identified five major blinding eye conditions, for immediate attention to achieve the goals of Vision 2020, which are:

- Cataract,
- Childhood blindness,
- Trachoma,
- Refractive errors and low vision, and
- Onchocerciasis.

These conditions have been chosen on the basis of their contribution to the burden of blindness, feasibility and affordability of interventions to control them. Each country will decide on its priorities based on the magnitude of specific blinding conditions in that country.

#### 1. Cataract

Cataract remains the single largest cause of blindness. There is an estimated figure of 35% cases of blindness worldwide are because of curable cataract.<sup>11</sup>

**Aim** under 'Vision 2020' is to eliminate avoidable blindness due to cataract by the year 2020 by

performing cataract extraction with intraocular lens (IOL) implantation.

**Strategy** to achieve the aim to measure the increase in the cataract surgery rate (CSR), i.e. number of cataract surgeries per million population per year as below:

| Year | Global cataract surgical rate targets | Global number of cataract operation targets (million) |
|------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| 2000 | 2000                                  | 12                                                    |
| 2010 | 3000                                  | 20                                                    |
| 2020 | 4000                                  | 32                                                    |

**Emphasis** is to be placed on achieving:

- High success rates in terms of restored vision and quality of life outcome
- Affordable and accessible services
- Measures to overcome barriers and increased use of services.

#### 2. Childhood blindness

Childhood blindness is considered a priority area due to the number of years of blindness that ensues. As per latest global data, childhood blindness accounts for 4% of the cases.<sup>11</sup>

**Prevalence** is 0.5–1 per 1000 children, aged 0–15 years. There are 1.4 million blind children estimated in the world of whom 1 million live in Asia and 3 lakhs in Africa. There are 5 lakh children going blind each year (one per minute) also.

**Causes** of childhood blindness vary from place to place and change over time. The main causes include: Vitamin A deficiency, measles, conjunctivitis, ophthalmia neonatorum, congenital cataract and retinopathy of prematurity (ROP).

**Aim** is to eliminate avoidable causes of childhood blindness by the year 2020.

**Strategies.** Vision 2020 envisages following strategies:

- *Strengthening primary eye care programmes* within primary healthcare to eliminate preventable causes.
- *Developing therapeutic and surgical support services* to deal effectively with curable eye problem.
- *Establishing optical and low vision services.*

**Activities,** under the global initiative vision 2020 include:

I. *Elimination of preventable blindness* by:

- Measles immunisation,
- Vitamin A supplementation (See page 489),
- Monitoring use of oxygen in the premature newborn,



- Avoidance of harmful traditional practices,
- Promoting school screening programmes for diagnosis and management of common conditions like refractive errors and trachoma in endemic areas, and

- Promoting eye health education in schools.

II. *Management of surgically avoidable causes of childhood blindness* such as cataract, glaucoma, and retinopathy of prematurity (ROP).

### 3. Trachoma blindness 5m

Trachoma is a cause of preventable blindness worldwide with an estimated 5.9 million persons blind or at immediate risk because of trichiasis.<sup>12</sup> The disease accounts for nearly 3% cases of the global blindness. In India, blindness due to trachoma (0.39%, WHO-NPCB 1986-89) is on the decline when compared with previous figures (20%, ICMR 1975). The RAAB survey (2006-07) have reported trachoma blindness to be 0.6%.

**Effective interventions have been demonstrated** in developing nations using the **SAFE** strategy:

- Surgery to correct lid deformity and prevent blindness,
- Antibiotics for acute infections and community control,
- Facial hygiene, and
- Environmental change including improved access to water and sanitation and health education.

**Elimination of blindness due to trachoma is considered feasible, eradication of trachoma is not.** Trachoma has disappeared from North America and Europe because of improved socioeconomic conditions and hygiene. Research needs include validation of rapid community assessment techniques, identification of barriers to the acceptance of preventive surgical procedure, studying effectiveness of annual treatment cycles and cost-effective studies. W.H.O. has organized an **Alliance for Global Elimination of Trachoma by the year 2020 (GET 2020)**.

### 4. Refractive errors and low vision

**Aim** is to eliminate visual impairment (visual acuity less than 6/18) and blindness due to refractive errors or other causes of low vision. It is estimated that refractive errors account for 53% cases of global visual impairment and 21% cases of global blindness. **Strategies** recommended under 'Vision 2020' initiative include:

- Create awareness for refractive errors and demand for refractive services.
- Screening to identify individuals with poor vision which can be improved by spectacles or other optical devices.

- *Refraction services* to be made available to individuals identified with significant refractive errors.
- *Ensure optical services* to provide affordable spectacles for individuals with significant refractive errors.
- *Low vision services and low vision aids* to be provided for all those in need.

### 5. Onchocerciasis

Onchocerciasis (river blindness) is known to be endemic in 37 countries. An estimated 17 million people are infected with onchocerciasis. Approximately 0.3 million (0.7%) people are blind from the disease worldwide.<sup>13</sup> About 95% of infected persons reside in Africa, where the disease is most severe along the major rivers in 30 countries. Outside Africa, the disease occurs in Mexico, Guatemala, Ecuador, Columbia, Venezuela and Brazil in the America, and in Yemen in Asia.

**Aim** is to eliminate blindness due to onchocerciasis by the year 2020.

**Target** is to develop 'National Onchocerciasis Control Programme' with satisfactory coverage in all the 37 countries where disease is endemic.

**Strategy** is to introduce community directed treatment with annual doses of Mectizan (ivermectin). The disease in expected to be brought under control by the year 2010, if present efforts in endemic countries are successfully implemented.

### Strategic Plan for 'Vision 2020': The Right to Sight in India

It is described under National Programme for Control of Blindness in India (See page 505).

### ■ UNIVERSAL EYE HEALTH: A GLOBAL ACTION PLAN (GAP) 2014-2019

Universal Eye Health: A Global Action Plan (GAP) 2014-2019 is a resolution of World Health Assembly (WHA). It builds upon *VISION 2020: The Right to Sight*, the Global Initiative for the elimination of avoidable blindness, a joint programme of the World Health Organization (WHO) and the International Agency for the Prevention of Blindness (IAPB).<sup>14</sup>

**Global target.** GAP has the global target of the reduction in prevalence of avoidable blindness and visual impairment by 25% by 2019 from the baseline of 2010.

**Monitoring of progress.** To monitor progress a small number of key indicators are to be monitored:

- Prevalence and causes of visual impairment,
- Numbers of ophthalmologists, optometrists and allied ophthalmic personnel, and



- Cataract surgical rate (CSR) and cataract surgical coverage (CSC).

**Areas of focus/ Objectives of GAP include:**

- *Generating evidence* on the magnitude and causes of visual impairment and use it to advocate increased commitment from countries — both political and financial.
- *Enhance universal eye health* by integrating the national eye health policies, plans and programmes.
- *Multisectoral engagement* and effective partnerships to strengthen eye health.

These areas of focus (or “objectives” as GAP calls them) also reflect IAPB and its Members current strategies for eye health, vision impairment and rehabilitation and efforts to establish the services required to bring eye health to the most marginalised and poorest groups in society. Important though the new ‘Global Action Plan’ is, it will only add value if it is now taken up at country level and national governments take responsibility for implementing the GAP in their country.

### ■ VISION FOR THE FUTURE (VFTF)

Vision for the future (VFTF): International Ophthalmology Strategic Plan to Preserve and Restore Vision,<sup>15</sup> launched in Feb 2001, is another global initiative (in addition to Vision 2020) for prevention of blindness.

**Implementation** of this programme is being done by International Council of Ophthalmology (ICO) by working closely with other international, supranational and national organizations. It is parallel to and complementary of ‘Vision 2020’. Care is being taken to avoid duplication.

**Top priorities for action** of this programme are:

- Enhancement of ophthalmology residency training around the world, particularly through definition of principles, guidelines and curricula.
- Development of model guidelines and recommendations for ophthalmic clinical care in critical disease areas.
- Dissemination of sample curricula for training of medical students and allied health personnel.
- Advocacy and support for ‘Vision 2020: Right to Sight’, particularly by encouraging national ophthalmologic societies to support the initiative and become involved.
- Helping national ophthalmologic societies develop more effective organizations.

## NATIONAL PROGRAMME FOR CONTROL OF BLINDNESS AND VISUAL IMPAIRMENT (NPCB & VI) IN INDIA

### INCEPTION AND PRESENT STATUS

#### Inception of NPCB

India was the first country in the world to launch the ‘National Programme for Control of Blindness (NPCB)’ in year 1976 as 100% centrally sponsored programme with the following **goals**:

- To provide comprehensive eye care facilities for primary, secondary and tertiary levels of eye healthcare, and
- To reduce the prevalence of blindness in population from 1.38% (ICMR 1971–174) to 0.31 by 2000 AD.

#### Major flips in NPCB

- *Inclusion in ‘Prime Minister’s-20 point programme’* in 1982, was the first major flip for NPCB.
- *Launching of ‘Cataract Blindness Control Project’* assisted by World Bank from 1994–2001 was another major flip for NPCB. This project was launched to reduce the cataract back-log in 7 States which were identified to have the highest prevalence of cataract blindness by WHO-NPCB survey (1986–89). These, in descending order, are: Uttar Pradesh, Tamil Nadu, Madhya Pradesh, Maharashtra, Andhra Pradesh, Rajasthan and Orissa.
- *Adoption of vision 2020: Right to Sight* in 2001 is the most prestigious major flip for NPCB.

#### New initiatives in the 12th five year plan (FYP)

The NPCB has been made part of ‘Noncommunicable diseases (NCD)’ flexipool under the larger umbrella of ‘National Health Mission (NHM)’, during 12th FYP, which began in 2012. Some new initiatives added include:

- *Distribution of free spectacles* for near work to old persons suffering from presbyopia
- *Development of Multipurpose District Mobile Ophthalmic Units (MDMOU)* has been introduced with an objective to further expand eye-care coverage in remote and underserved areas. Four hundred Multipurpose District Mobile Ophthalmic Units have been approved for District Hospitals in a phased manner. Preference will be given to remote/hilly areas including NE states and underprivileged regions to expand eye-care services.
- *Tele-Ophthalmology Network units* with linkage to ophthalmic consultation units in the Medical Colleges and RIOs are to be set up. The linkage and exchange of data is provided by internet.



### Change in the name of NPCB

Recently (2017) India has changed the name for the program to 'National Program for Control of Blindness and Visual Impairment (NPCB & VI)'. This is to lay importance to the fact that under the national program not only blindness but visual impairment (short of blindness) is also being taken care of.<sup>5</sup>

## OBJECTIVES

Vision 2020 has been adopted in NPCB with the objective to eliminate avoidable blindness by the year 2020.

Present objectives of the NPCB include:

- *Reduction in the backlog of blindness* through identification and treatment of blinds.
- *Development and strengthening of comprehensive eye-care facilities* in every district.
- *Development of human resources* for providing eye care services.
- *Improvement in quality of service delivery.*
- *Securing participation* of voluntary organizations and private practitioners in eye care.
- *Enhancement in community awareness* on eye care.
- *Setting up of mechanism* for referral, coordination and feedback between organizations dedicated to prevention, treatment and rehabilitation.

## PROGRAMME ORGANIZATION AND IMPLEMENTATION

Since 2001, NPCB is being implemented as per guidelines of the initiative 'Vision 2020' (described later). During 12th five year plan (2012-2017), from the financial year 2013-14, it has been decided to continue the NPCB under the *NCD flexipool* within the overarching umbrella of the '*National Health Mission*'. The contribution of the central government will be 75% and that of state/UT government will be 25% of the total fund requirement for NPCB.

Various programme activities implemented at central, state and district levels are as follows:<sup>16</sup>

### 1. CENTRAL LEVEL

At the central level, programme organization is the responsibility of the '*National Programme Management Cell*' located in the office of Director General Health Services (DGHS), Department of Health, Government of India (GOI). To oversee the implementation of the programme three national bodies have been constituted as below:

- *National Blindness Control Board*, chaired by Secretary Health to GOI.

- *National Programme Coordination Committee*, chaired by Additional Secretary to GOI.
- *National Technical Advisor Committee*, headed by Director General Health Services, GOI.

*Central level activities* include:

- Procurement of goods (major equipments, bulk consumables, vehicles, etc.)
- Nonrecurring grant-in-aid to NGOs.
- Organizing central level training courses.
- Information, education and communication (IEC) activities (prototype development and mass media).
- Development of MIS, monitoring and evaluation.
- Procurement of services and consultancy.
- Salaries of additional staff at the central level.

### 2. STATE LEVEL

The NPCB is implemented through the State Government Via '*State Ophthalmic Cell*'. All the work related to blindness control shall be routed through *State Programme Officer/Joint Director (ophthalmology)* in charge of NPCB. The Joint Director shall submit it to Director Health Services for final approval in accordance with the latest norms and parameters laid down for the 12th five year plan.

*State ophthalmic cell activities* include:

- Execution of civil works for new units.
- Repairs and renovation of existing units/equipments.
- State level training and IEC activities.
- Management of State Project Cell.
- Salaries for additional staff.

'*State Blindness Control Society*' (SBCS) has been merged with State Health Society after launch of National Health Mission (NHM) for implementing the programme at the state level.

### 3. DISTRICT LEVEL

To organize the programme at district level, 'District Blindness Control Societies' were established. Under '*National Health Mission*' the programme activities are to be implemented through '*District Health Societies*'.

#### District blindness control society

The concept of 'District Blindness Control Society (DBCS)' has been introduced, with the primary purpose to plan, implement and monitor the blindness control activities comprehensively at the district level under overall control and guidance of the 'National Programme for Control of Blindness'. This concept has been implemented after pioneering work by DANIDA in five pilot districts in India.



**Objective of DBCS** establishment is to achieve the maximum reduction in avoidable blindness in the district through optimal utilisation of available resources in the district.

**Need for establishment of DBCS** was considered because of the following factors:

- To make control of blindness a part of the Government's policy of designating the district as the unit for implementing various development programmes.
- To simplify administrative and financial procedures.
- To enhance participation of the community and the private sector.

**Composition of DBCS.** Each DBCS will have a maximum of 20 members, consisting of 10 ex-officio and 10 other members with following structure:

- **Chairman:** Deputy Commissioner/District Magistrate.
- **Vice Chairman:** Civil Surgeon/District Health Officer.
- **Member Secretary:** District Programme Manager (DPM) or District Blindness Control Coordinator (DBCC), who is appointed by the Chairman. DPM will coordinate the activities of the programme between the government and nongovernment organizations (NGOs).
- **Members** will include District Eye Surgeon, District Education Officer, President local IMA branch, President Rotary Club, representatives of various NGOs and local voluntary action groups. The ex-officio members will be the members of the society as long as they hold the post. The term of other members is notified by the Chairman.
- **Advisor of the society** is the State Programme Manager.

- **Technical guidance** is provided by the Chief Ophthalmic Surgeon/Head of the Ophthalmology Department of Medical College.

**Revised strategies adopted for implementation of programme at district level** are:

- Annual district action plan is to be submitted by DBCS. Funding will be in two instalments through GOI/State Health Society.
- NGO participation made accountable; allotted area of operation.
- Revised guidelines for DBCS—capping of expenditure; phasing out contract managers.
- Emphasis on utilization of existing government facilities.
- Gradual shift from camp surgery to institutional surgery.
- Development of infrastructure and manpower for IOL surgery.

PLAN OF ACTION AND ACTIVITIES

The basic plan of action and activities of NPCB, since its inception in 1976, includes the following:<sup>16</sup>

I. Extension of eye care services

Through eye camps and mobile eye units.

II. Establishment of permanent infrastructure

**Primary Eye Care**, at peripheral level (PHCs and subcentres) is being strengthened by:

- Providing necessary equipment,
- Posting a paramedical ophthalmic assistant, and
- Organising refresher courses for doctors and other staff of PHC on prevention of blindness.

**Community ophthalmic practice at primary care level** is summarized in Table 22.4. Currently, the programme implementation is subsumed under 'National Rural Health Mission' (NRHM).

Table 22.4 Community ophthalmology practice at primary level

| Promotive                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Preventive                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | Curative                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Rehabilitative                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Nutrition education</li><li>• Improved maternal and child nutrition</li><li>• Health education</li><li>• Face washing</li><li>• Good antenatal care</li><li>• Safe water</li><li>• Improved environmental sanitation</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Ocular prophylaxis at birth</li><li>• Vitamin A doses</li><li>• Measles vaccine</li><li>• Perinatal care</li><li>• Avoid medication in pregnancy</li><li>• Avoid hypoxia at birth</li><li>• Examine neonate's eyes</li><li>• Nutrition supplementation</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Vision screening</li><li>• Treatment for vitamin A deficiency</li><li>• Referral for surgery</li><li>• Emergency management</li><li>• Treatment for trachoma</li><li>• Treatment for other common eye diseases</li></ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Provision of low vision services</li><li>• Community-based rehabilitation</li><li>• Counselling of the incurable blind</li><li>• Certification of blind by eye surgeon</li><li>• Sensitise about concessions</li></ul> |



*Secondary Eye Care*, at intermediate level, *Tertiary Eye Care*, at central level, and *Center of Excellence*, at apex level for high quality tertiary eye care, and to provide guidance and leadership for technical matters.

### III. Intensification of eye health education.

**Note.** For the above activities, Government of India has adopted 'Vision 2020: Right to Sight' under 'National Programme for Control of Blindness' at a meeting held in Goa on October 10–13, 2001 and constituted a working group to plan the action and activities.

## STRATEGIC PLAN FOR VISION 2020: THE RIGHT TO SIGHT IN INDIA

The draft plan of action submitted by the 'Working Group' to the Ministry of Health and Family Welfare Government of India in August, 2002 includes following strategies:<sup>17</sup>

- A. Strengthening advocacy
- B. Reduction of disease burden
- C. Human resource development, and
- D. Eye care infrastructure development.

### A. STRENGTHENING ADVOCACY

To strengthen advocacy and generate public awareness various activities are proposed at national, state, and district level under Vision 2020 initiative in India.

#### National and state level

- *Public awareness and information about eye care and prevention of blindness by:*
  - Frequent press releases and articles in leading newspapers of the country,
  - Increased frequency of broadcast and telecast of messages on eye care, and
  - Introduction of topics on eye care in school curricula.
- *Involvement of professional organizations* such as All India Ophthalmological Society (AIOS), Eye Bank Association of India (EBAI) and Indian Medical Association (IMA) in the National Programme for Control of Blindness.
- *Publishing quarterly newsletters*, articles in scientific journals and developments of prototype print materials.

#### District level

- To strengthen the functioning of District Blindness Control Society (DBCS).
- To enhance involvement of NGOs, local community societies and community leaders.

- To strengthen hospital retrieval programmes for eye donation through effective grief counselling by involving volunteers, Forensic Department, Police, etc.
- Public awareness activities based on local needs through effective media.
- Strong interpersonnel communication through village-based link workers, aphakic motivators and community leaders.
- Multisectoral approach particularly involving departments of education, social welfare, media, etc.

### B. REDUCTION OF DISEASE BURDEN (DISEASE-SPECIFIC APPROACH)

Target diseases identified for intervention under 'Vision 2020' initiative in India include:

- Cataract,
- Childhood blindness,
- Refractive errors and low vision,
- Corneal blindness,
- Diabetic retinopathy,
- Glaucoma, and
- Trachoma (focal).

#### 1. Cataract

Cataract continues to be the single largest cause of blindness. According to latest National Survey in India (1999–2001), 62.6% of blindness in 50+ population of India was found to be cataract related. During 'Rapid Assessment of Avoidable Blindness (RAAB)' conducted in 2006–07, the cataract is reported to be responsible for 72.2% of blindness in 50+ population.

**Objective.** To improve the quantity and quality of cataract surgery.

**Targets** as per Vision 2020 include:

- *Targets for Cataract Surgery Rate (CSR)* fixed in the vision 2020 strategy were 4500 per match the year by 2005, 5000 by 2010, 5500 by 2015 and 6000 by 2020.
- *To improve the visual outcome of surgery* to match the standards set by WHO (i.e. 80% to have visual outcome 6/18 or >6/18 after surgery).
- *IOL surgery for >80% by the year 2005 and for all by the year 2010.*
- *YAG capsulotomy services* at all district hospitals by 2010.

**Strategic activities** to clear backlog of cataract include:

- *Primary screening* by community health worker to identify persons with visual impairment (finger counting <6 m in any eye).
- *Case selections* by eye surgeons at screening camps and at base level (district hospital).



- **Cataract extraction with IOL implantation** to be done free of cost for bilateral cases and underserved poor people, especially women.
- **Reduction in disparities** based on geographical, socioeconomic and gender based.

**Grant-in aid** for cataract surgery may continue to be released through DBCS.

Target for 12th plan (2012–2017) is to perform 3.3 crore cataract operations with above 95% being IOL implantations.

## 2. Childhood blindness

Childhood blindness is an important public health problem in developing countries due to its social and economic implications. Though prevalence of childhood blindness is low as compared to blindness in the aged, it assumes significance due to large number of disability years of every child remaining blind.

**Extent and causes of problem.** Prevalence of childhood blindness in India has been projected to be 0.8/1000 children by using the correlation between under five mortality rate and prevalence. Currently, there are about 270,000 blind children in India.

**Common causes of childhood blindness** are vitamin A deficiency, measles, conjunctivitis, ophthalmia neonatorum, injuries, congenital cataract, retinopathy of prematurity (ROP), and childhood glaucoma.

Refractive errors are the commonest cause of visual impairment in children.

**Aim** is to eliminate avoidable causes of childhood blindness by the year 2020.

**Strategies and activities** under Vision 2020: Right to Sight initiative in India include:

1. **Detection of eye disorders.** Following schedule of ophthalmic examination of children is recommended to identify early childhood disorders, refractive errors, squint, amblyopia and corneal diseases:

- At the time of primary immunization,
- At school entry, and
- Periodic check up every 3 years for normal and every year for those with defects.

2. **Preventable childhood blindness** to be taken care of through cost effective measures:

- **Prevention of xerophthalmia** is of utmost value in preventing childhood blindness (See page 489).
- **Prevention and early treatment of trachoma** by active intervention (See page 73 and 501).
- **Refractive errors** to be corrected at primary eye care centres.
- **Childhood glaucomas** to be treated promptly.
- **Harmful traditional/practices** need to be avoided.
- **Prevention of ROP** by proper screening and monitoring use of oxygen in premature newborns.

3. **Curable childhood blindness** due to cataract, ROP, corneal opacity and other causes to be taken care of by the experts at secondary and tertiary level eye care services.

**Targets** include:

- **Establishment of Paediatric Ophthalmology units.** In India, 50 Pediatric Ophthalmology were to be established by 2010 for effective management of childhood diseases.
- **Establishment of refraction services and low vision centers** (See below).

## 3. Refractive errors and low vision

According to 'Rapid Assessment of Avoidable Blindness (RAAB)' conducted in 2006–2007, refractive errors including uncorrected aphakia were responsible for 6.3% of blindness and 35.6 (32.9 + 2.7)% moderate to severe vision impairment.

**Aim and strategies** are same as described for 'Vision 2020' Global initiative (See page 501).

**Targets.** To combat refractive error and low vision following targets have been set in India:

- **Refraction services** to be available in all primary health centres by 2010. Availability of low-cost, good quality spectacles for children to be insured.
- **Low vision service centres** are to be established at 150 tertiary level eye care institutions. 50 such centres are to be developed by 2010, another 50 by 2015 and the final 50 by 2020.

## 4. Glaucoma

As per the 'National Survey on Blindness' (1999–2001, Government of India Report 2002) glaucoma is responsible for 5.8% cases of blindness in 50+ population and as per RAAB (2006–07) the corresponding figure is 4.4%.<sup>10</sup> Effective intervention for prevention of glaucoma resultant blindness is quite difficult. Failure of early detection of the disease poses a management problem towards controlling glaucomatous blindness. Population based screening of glaucoma is not recommended as a strategy in developing countries.

**Opportunistic glaucoma screening** (case detection) by tonometry and fundus examination recommended is as below:

- **Opportunistic screening at eye care institutions** should be done in all persons above the age of 35 years, those with diabetes mellitus, and those with family history of glaucoma.
- **Community-based referral** by multi-purpose workers of all persons with diminution of vision, coloured haloes, rapid change of glasses, ocular pain and family history of glaucoma.
- **Opportunistic screening at eye camps** in all patients above the age of 35 years.



### 5. Diabetic retinopathy

Diabetic retinopathy (DR) is emerging as an important cause out of 4.7% cases of blindness due to posterior segment disorders in 50+ population (National Survey 1999–2001).<sup>9</sup> To prevent visual loss occurring from diabetic retinopathy a periodic follow-up (See page 289) is very important for timely intervention. Following recommendations are made:

- Awareness generation by health workers.
- All known diabetics to be examined and referred to Eye Surgeon by the Ophthalmic Assistant.
- Confirmation by fundus fluorescein angiography (FFA) and treatment of diabetic retinopathy at tertiary level including laser treatment.
- The strategy must be to bring down the medical management of DR at the secondary level.

### 6. Corneal blindness

**Background.** A significant number of cases of visual impairment and gross degree of loss of vision occur due to diseases of the cornea. According to NPCB survey (2001–02),<sup>9</sup> corneal blindness accounts for 0.9% of total blindness while according to RAAB (2006–07) corneal opacities including trachoma account for 6.5% cases of blindness. It is reported that there are around 1,20,000 corneal blinds and there occurs an addition of 25,000 to 30,000 corneal blindness cases every year in the country. Majority of these persons are affected in the first and second decade of life.

**Major causes of corneal blindness** are corneal ulcers due to infections, trachoma, ocular injuries, keratomalacia caused by nutritional deficiencies and postoperative bullous keratopathy. Thus, corneal blindness is one of the outstanding problems in the field of preventive and community ophthalmology and is a great challenge to the medical profession in general and ophthalmologists in particular. This challenge can be faced boldly by the combined efforts of the public and the government; especially the education department, school teachers, general medical practitioners and ophthalmologists.

**Objective** regarding corneal blindness under 'Vision 2020' in India is:

- To reduce prevalence of preventable and curable corneal blindness.

**Strategies for control of corneal blindness** are:

#### I. General strategies include:

- **Identification of infants** at risk in cooperation with RCH programme to take appropriate measures.
- **Identification of pre-school children** at risk by door to door survey.

- **Identification of school children** through school health services.

- **Identification of senior citizens** with post cataract surgery bullous keratopathy.

- **To ensure supply of essential drugs** required for primary care such as: Tetracycline eye ointment, antibiotic eye drops, and vitamin A supplements.

#### II. Disease-specific strategies are as below:

1. **Eye infections** including *ophthalmia neonatorum*. Ocular prophylaxis at birth with broad-spectrum antibiotics is very important. Health education and improvement in personal hygiene will reduce the incidence of conjunctivitis, corneal ulcer and other eye infections. Early treatment of eye infections will prevent corneal blindness.
2. **Eye injuries.** Education of people regarding avoidance of ocular trauma like cracker blast, industrial accidents, road accidents and other trauma, thereby reducing irreversible corneal blindness. Ocular trauma cases should be immediately referred to specialists for effective management. Facilities for administering general anaesthesia for ocular trauma patients at secondary eye care level.
3. **Trachoma blindness.** In India, the corneal blindness due to trachoma (0.39% WHO-NPCB, 1986–88) is on the decline when compared with previous figures (20% ICMR 1975). RAAB (2006–07) reports 0.6% incidence of trachoma blindness. However, in isolated pockets (focal) blindness related to trachoma continues to be important. (For prevention of trachoma blindness See page 73 and 501).
4. **Prevention of xerophthalmia** will make a strong dent in the number of corneal blinds. The three major known intervention strategies for the prevention and control of vitamin A deficiency are described on page 489.
5. **A total ban should be placed on the ophthalmic practice by quacks** and sale of harmful eye medicines especially various 'surmas'.
6. **Protective measures** for the eyes of industrial workers and agriculturists should include use of goggles and eye shades.

**III. Keratoplasty and eye banking.** There is a need of around 2 lakh corneas per year for transplantation to clear the backlog of corneal blindness. Currently we are collecting around 60,000 eyes per year. As keratoplasty operation can restore vision in a significant number of corneal blinds, an intensive publicity and cooperation of government and



nongovernment agencies is needed to enhance the voluntary eye donations. Under NPCB, *eye donation fortnight* is organized from 25th August to 8th Sept. every year to promote eye donation. More eye banks should be established and more ophthalmic surgeons should be trained for corneal grafting. *Under Vision 2020: Indian initiative* emphasis is on hospital retrieval system to get better donor material. Death certificates should bear one line on eye donations.

### C. HUMAN RESOURCE DEVELOPMENT

For 'Vision 2020' initiative in India, the human resource needs identified to combat blindness by 2020 are depicted in Table 22.5.

**Mid-Level Ophthalmic Personnel (MLOP).** The term MLOP has been introduced to include all categories of paramedics who work full time in eye care. Broadly two streams of such personnels are envisaged:

1. **Hospital-based MLOP.** These include ophthalmic nurses, ophthalmic technicians, optometrists, and orthoptists, etc.
2. **Community-based MLOP** include those with outreach/field functions such as primary eye care workers and ophthalmic assistants.

### D. EYE CARE INFRASTRUCTURE DEVELOPMENT

Based on the recommendations of WHO, there is a need to develop the infrastructure pyramid which includes (Fig. 22.2):

1. **Primary Level: Vision Centres.** There is a need to develop 20,000 vision centres, each with one Ophthalmic Assistant or equivalent (Community-based MLOP) covering a population of 50,000.
2. **Service Centres.** There is a need to develop 2,000 service centres at secondary level—each with two ophthalmologists and 8 paramedics (Hospital-based MLOP), covering a population of 5,00,000. One eye care manager will be required at each service centre.
3. **Training Centres.** There is a need to develop 200 'Training Centres' for the training of Ophthalmologists. Each tertiary level training centre will cater to a population of 5 million.

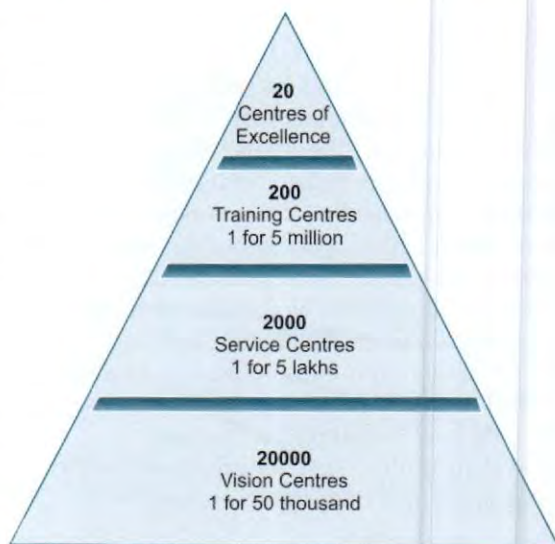


Fig. 22.2 The infrastructure pyramid, based on the recommendations of WHO

4. **Centre of Excellence (COE).** There is need to develop 20 COE with well-developed all sub-specialities of Ophthalmology. Each advanced tertiary level centre of excellence will cater to a population of 50 millions.

### ROLE OF EYE CAMPS IN PREVENTION OF BLINDNESS

#### Objectives

Eye camp approach for prevention of blindness still plays a vital role in the developing countries where infrastructure is not fully established. It is particularly more relevant keeping in view the fact that still 62.6% of blindness in India is due to cataract which can be very well cured in eye camps.

#### Organization of an eye camp

Two types of eye camps are:

- **Comprehensive eye care camps** with 'Reach-out Approach,' and
- **Screening eye camps** (Reach-in-Approach with comprehensive eye care).

**Note.** As mentioned earlier the recent emphasis is on the 'Reach-in-Approach'.

Table 22.5 Human resource needs for the country to combat blindness by 2020

| Sl. No. | Category                          | 2001 numbers | Required by the year |       |       |       |
|---------|-----------------------------------|--------------|----------------------|-------|-------|-------|
|         |                                   |              | 2005                 | 2010  | 2015  | 2020  |
| 1.      | Ophthalmic surgeons               | 12000        | 15000                | 18000 | 21000 | 25000 |
| 2.      | Ophthalmic assistants (community) | 6000         | 10000                | 15000 | 20000 | 25000 |
| 3.      | Ophthalmic paramedics (hospital)  | 18000        | 30000                | 36000 | 42000 | 48000 |
| 4.      | Eye-care managers                 | 200          | 500                  | 1000  | 1500  | 2000  |
| 5.      | Community eye health specialists  | 20           | 50                   | 100   | 150   | 200   |



### Screening eye camps (Reach-in-Approach)

According to revised strategies, emphasis is to shift from 'Reach-out' to the 'Reach-in-Approach'. In 'Reach-in-Approach', the 'screening camps' are held in rural and remote areas where eye-care facilities are not available. Patients are provided comprehensive eye care services including refraction. Patients in need of cataract surgery are then transported to the nearest well-equipped hospitals (*Base hospital approach*). For performing ophthalmic surgery, following *guidelines laid down by Govt. of India* should be adhered to:

- At least one anaesthetist with arrangements to meet common emergencies should be available.
- At least one, preferably two, operating surgeons should be there and each surgeon should not perform more than 30 operations in a day.
- Presently extracapsular cataract extraction by any technique preferably manual small incision cataract surgery (SICS) or phacoemulsification with posterior chamber intraocular lens implantation is the recommended method.
- Ideally the number of operations performed per day should not exceed 50.
- Both eyes should never be operated at one go.
- Cases with poor surgical risk such as severe diabetics, severe hypertensives and those having cardiac problems should not be operated in camps. The cases associated with problems like these should be referred to the base hospitals.

### Documentation, monitoring and evaluation

A complete and meticulous record of the patients treated in the eye camp along with the postoperative complications noted and managed should be kept. Each eye camp should be monitored by the competent authorities and evaluated in terms of various activities assigned to such camps and the results obtained.

## EYE BANKING 5m

Eye bank is an organization which deals with the collection, storage and distribution of cornea for the purpose of corneal grafting, research and supply of the eye tissue for other ophthalmic purposes.

### Functions of an eye bank

1. *Promotion of eye donation* by increasing awareness about eye donation to the general public.
2. *Registration* of the pledger for eye donation.
3. *Collection* of the donated eyes from the deceased.
4. *Receiving and processing* the donor eyes.
5. *Preservation* of the tissue for short, intermediate, long or very long term.

6. *Distribution* of the donor tissues to the corneal surgeons.
7. *Research activities* for improvement of the preservation methodology, corneal substitute and utilisation of the other components of eye.

### Eye bank personnel

1. **Eye bank in-charge.** He should be a qualified ophthalmologist to evaluate, process and distribute the donor tissue.

2. **Eye bank technician.** The duties of a trained eye bank technician are:

- To keep the eye collection kits ready.
- To assist in enucleation of donor eyes.
- To record data pertaining to donor material and waiting list of patients.
- To process and treat the donor eyes with antibiotics.
- To assist in corneal preservation and storage.
- To maintain asepsis in the eye bank.

3. **Clerk-cum-storekeeper.** The duties are:

- To maintain meticulous records.
- To coordinate with other eye banks.
- To deal with other eye banks and exert with efficiency regarding donor's correspondence.
- To distribute cornea to eye surgeons/eye banks.

4. **Medical social worker or public relation officer** is required:

- To supply publicity material to common public.
- To promote voluntary eye donation.

He may be a voluntary or paid worker.

5. **Driver-cum-projectionist** is required:

- To maintain vehicle of the eye bank.
- To screen films of eye donation promotion in the community.

### Eye collection centres

Eye collection centres are the peripheral satellites of an eye bank for better functioning. One collection centre is viably located at an urban area with a population of more than 200,000. About 4-5 collection centres are attached with each eye bank.

**Functions of eye collection centre** are:

- Local publicity for eye donation.
- Registration of voluntary donors.
- Arrangement for collection of eyes after death.
- Initial processing, packing and transportation of collected eyes to the attached eye bank.

**Personnel** needed for eye collection centre are:

- **Ophthalmic technician** trained in eye bank.
- **Local honorary workers/voluntary agencies** like Lions Club, Rotary Club, etc. to boost the eye donation campaign.
- **Services of honorary ophthalmic surgeon or medical officer** trained in enucleation available on call.



**Legal aspect**

The collection and use of donated eyes come under the preview of 'The Transplantation of Human Organs Act, 1994'.

**Facts about eye donation**

- Almost anyone at any age can pledge to donate eyes after death; all that is needed is a clear healthy cornea.
- The eyes have to be removed within six hours of death.
- Eye donation gives sight to two blind persons as one eye is transplanted to one blind person.
- The eyes can be pledged to an eye bank and can be actually donated to any nearest eye bank at the time of death.
- The donated eyes are never bought or sold. Eye donation is never refused.
- The eyes cannot be removed from a living human being in spite of his/her consent and wish.

**REHABILITATION OF THE BLIND**

Rehabilitation of the blind is as important as the prevention and control of blindness; spiritually speaking even more. A blind person needs following types of rehabilitation:

**1. Medical rehabilitation.** With low vision aids (LVA) many visually handicapped can have a useful vision.

**2. Training and psychosocial rehabilitation.** It is the most important aspect. First of all the blinds should be assured and made to feel that they are equally useful and not inferior to the sighted persons. Their training should include:

- Mobility training with the help of a stick.
- Training in daily living skills such as bathing, washing, putting on clothes, shaving, cooking and other household work.

**3. Educational rehabilitation.** It includes education avenues in 'Blind Schools' with the facility of Braille system of education.

**4. Vocational rehabilitation.** It will help them to earn their livelihood and live as useful citizens. Blinds can be trained in making handicrafts, canning, book binding, candle and chalk making, cottage industries and as telephone operators.

**To conclude,** it should never be forgotten that, one of the basic human rights is the right to see. The strategicians MUST ensure that:

- No citizen goes blind needlessly due to preventable causes.
- All avenues are exhausted to restore the best possible vision to curable blinds.
- Blinds not amenable to curable measures receive comprehensive rehabilitation.

**REFERENCES**

1. WHO (1966). Epi and Vital Statis. Rep., 19:437.
2. The Prevention of Blindness. Report of a WHO Study Group. Geneva, World Health Organization, 1973 (WHO Technical Report Series, No. 518).
3. WHO (1979). WHO Chronicle 33: 275.
4. WHO (1977). International Classification of Diseases. Vol. 1, p. 242.
5. Vashist P, Senjam SS, Gupta V, Gupta N, Kumar A. Definition of blindness under National Programme for Control of Blindness: Do we need to revise it?. Indian J Ophthalmol. 2017;65:92-6.
6. World Health Organization. List of Official ICD-10 Updates Ratified October 2006. Geneva: WHO; 2006. [Last cited on 2016 Apr 07]. Available from: <http://www.who.int/classifications/icd/2006Updates.pdf>.
7. WHO: Vision impairment and blindness, Fact Sheet Updated October, 2017 (<http://www.who.int/mediacentre/factsheets/fs282/en/>).
8. Thylefors B et al. Global Data on Blindness. Bull. WHO 1995; 73: (1) 115-121.
9. Government of India, National Survey on Blindness: 1999-2001, Report 2002.
10. Rapid Assessment of Avoidable Blindness (RAAB) in India (2006-07); PLoS One. 2008; 3(8): e2867.
11. Flaxman et al, on behalf of the Vision Loss Expert Group of the Global Burden of Disease Study; Global causes of blindness and distance vision impairment 1990-2020: a systematic review and meta-analysis. [www.thelancet.com/lancetgh](http://www.thelancet.com/lancetgh) Vol 5 December 2017.
12. Strategic plan for Vision 2020: The Right to Sight WHO Report. SEA-Ophthal 177, 2000.
13. Bourne RRA, Flaxman SR, Braithwaite T, Cicinelli MV, Das A, Jonas JB, et al. 2017.
14. WHO (2013), Universal Eye Health: A Global Action Plan 2014-2019 (Resolution WHA 66.4).
15. Vision for the Future, International ophthalmology strategic plan to Preserve and Restore Vision, 2001.
16. Government of India (1992), Present Status of National Programme for Control of Blindness, Ophthalmology Section, DGHS, New Delhi, 1992.
17. Strategic plan for Vision 2020: The Right to sight initiative in India, National Programme for control of blindness, Director General of Health Services, Ministry of Health and Family Welfare Government of India.



# Section VI

---

## Practical Ophthalmology

### *Section Outline*

- 23. Clinical Methods in Ophthalmology
- 24. Clinical Ophthalmic Cases
- 25. Darkroom Procedures
- 26. Ophthalmic Instruments and Operative Ophthalmology



# INTRODUCTION TO PRACTICAL OPHTHALMOLOGY

Medical graduates have to apply the knowledge gained during their five and a half years of exhaustive study course, for the management and care of a patient in one or the other way. Therefore, it is imperative for them to learn and practise the art of medicine. Consequently, the practical examinations have been given equal importance to that of theory examinations during the entire study course. Practical training is thus supplementary and complementary to the lecture course.

Practical examinations in ophthalmology are conducted with the main aims to evaluate a student for his or her capability to identify and diagnose common eye diseases to provide primary eye care and to timely refer the patients needing secondary and tertiary level services to the eye hospitals as per the indications.

To assess the students for the above-mentioned capabilities, the practical examinations are conducted under the following heads:

## 1. CLINICAL CASE PRESENTATION

Under this section, students are assessed for their knowledge and art of a meticulous history taking, methods of examination, diagnostic skills and plan of management of an ophthalmic patient. For this purpose, the students are supposed to work up a long case and/or 2 to 3 short cases with common eye disorders. The approach to clinical work up of an ophthalmic patient is given in Chapter 23. The clinical case presentation along with the related viva questions have been described in Chapter 24.

## 2. DARK ROOM PROCEDURES

Students are evaluated for their knowledge of basic principles, clinical applications, procedures and the equipment required for the commonly performed dark room procedures (DRPs). These procedures along with relevant viva questions have been described in Chapter 25.

## 3. OPHTHALMIC INSTRUMENTS AND OPERATIVE OPHTHALMOLOGY

The aim of this part of practical examination is to assess the students for their exposure and acquaintance with functioning of the ophthalmic operation theatre. Students should be able to identify and tell the utility of common eye instruments. They should be able to describe the techniques of local ocular anaesthesia and to enumerate the main steps of a few common eye operations. Students are also supposed to be familiar with the commonly used ophthalmic equipment including use of cryo and lasers in ophthalmology. Subject matter relevant to this part of practical examinations is described in Chapter 26.

## 4. SPOTTING

In some centres, spotting also forms a part of practical examinations. This allows an overall objective evaluation of the candidate, so also called as, 'objectively structured clinical examination (OSCE)'. Commonly employed spots in ophthalmology practical examinations include: a typical photograph of any common eye disorder, an instrument, photograph of any ophthalmic equipment, a darkroom appliance, a fundus photograph or a visual field chart.

## 5. VIVA QUESTIONS

Viva questions form an integral and important part of each section of the practical examination, viz. clinical case presentation, darkroom examination and description of ophthalmic instruments. Therefore, relevant questions have been described in the concerned sections.

The main aim of the examiner during the session of viva questions is to assess the student's overall familiarity with common disorders of the eye, their management and important recent developments in the field of ophthalmic practice.



# Clinical Methods in Ophthalmology

## HISTORY AND EXAMINATION

### History

#### General physical and systemic examination

#### Ocular examination

- Testing of visual acuity
- External ocular examination
- Fundus examination
- Visual field examination

#### Record of ophthalmic case

#### Techniques of ocular examination and diagnostic tests

- Oblique illumination
- Tonometry
- Techniques of fundus examination
- Perimetry
- Fundus fluorescein angiography

- Electroretinography and electrooculography

- Visually evoked response (VER)

- Ocular ultrasonography

- Optical coherence tomography

#### SPECIAL EVALUATION SCHEMES\*

- Evaluation of a case of glaucoma

- Examination of a case of squint

- Evaluation of a case of epiphora

- Evaluation of a case of dry eye

- Evaluation of a case of proptosis

- Determination of refractive errors

#### LABORATORY INVESTIGATIONS\*

#### IMAGING TECHNIQUES\*

#### PATHOLOGICAL STUDIES\*

\*Discussed in the related chapters

#### RELATED QUESTIONS

## HISTORY AND EXAMINATION

### HISTORY

The importance of painstaking meticulous history cannot be overemphasized. The complete history taking should be structured as:

- Demographic data
- Chief presenting complaints
- History of present illness
- History of past illness
- Family history.

#### ■ DEMOGRAPHIC DATA

Demographic data should include patient's name, age, sex, occupation and religion.

**Name and address.** Name and address are primarily required for patient's identification. It also proves useful for demographic research.

**Age and sex.** In addition to the utility in patient's identification, knowledge of age and sex of the patient is also useful for noting down and ruling out the particular diseases pertaining to different age groups and a particular sex.

**Occupation.** An information about patient's occupation is helpful since ophthalmic manifestations due to occupational hazards are well known, e.g.:

- **Ocular injuries and trauma** due to foreign bodies have typical pattern in factory workers, lathe workers, farmers and sport persons.
- **Computer vision syndrome** is emerging as a significant ocular health problem in computer professionals.
- **Heat cataract** is known in glass factory workers.
- **Photo-ophthalmitis** is known in welders not taking adequate protective measures.

In addition, information about the patient's occupation is useful in providing ocular health education and patient's visual rehabilitation.

**Religion.** Recording the religion of the patient may be helpful in ascertaining the diseases which are more common in a particular community. It also helps in knowing the aptitude and practices prevalent in different communities for various common eye problems.

#### ■ CHIEF PRESENTING COMPLAINTS

Chief presenting complaints of the patients should always be recorded in a chronological order with their duration. **Common presenting ocular complaints** are:

- Defective vision
- Watering and/or discharge from the eyes
- Redness



- Asthenopic symptoms
- Photophobia
- Burning/itching/foreign body sensation
- Pain (eyeache and/or headache)
- Deviation of the eye
- Diplopia
- Black spots in front of eyes
- Coloured halos
- Distorted vision.

### HISTORY OF PRESENT ILLNESS

The patients should be encouraged to narrate their complaints in detail and the examiner should be a patient listener. While taking history, the examiner should try to make a note of the following points about each complaint:

- Mode of onset with duration
- Severity
- Progression
- Accompaniment of each symptom.

• Chronological order:  
 started with → progressed with  
 • In pt's own words  
 - picking up details, some more  
 - progress history

### HISTORY OF PAST ILLNESS

A probe into history of past illness should be made to know:

- History of similar ocular complaint in the past. It is especially important in recurrent conditions such as herpes simplex keratitis, uveitis and recurrent corneal erosions.
- History of similar complaints in other eye is important in bilateral conditions such as uveitis, senile cataract and retinal detachment.
- History of trauma to eye in the past may explain occurrence of lesions such as delayed rosette cataract and retinal detachment.
- It is important to know about history of any ocular surgery in the past.
- History of any systemic disease in the past such as tuberculosis, syphilis, leprosy may sometimes explain the occurrence of present ocular disease.
- History of drug intake and allergies is also important.

### FAMILY HISTORY

Efforts should be made to establish familial predisposition of inheritable ocular disorders like congenital cataract, ptosis, squint, corneal dystrophies, glaucoma and refractive error.

### COMMON OCULAR SYMPTOMS AND THEIR CAUSES

1. Defective vision. It is the commonest ocular symptom. Enquiry should reveal its onset (sudden or gradual), duration, whether it is painless or painful, whether it is more during the day, night or constant, and so on. Important causes of defective vision can be grouped as under:

#### Sudden painless loss of vision

- Central retinal artery occlusion (CRAO)
- Massive vitreous haemorrhage
- Retinal detachment involving macular area (RD)
- Ischaemic central retinal vein occlusion.

#### Sudden painless onset of defective vision

- Central serous chorioretinopathy
- Optic neuritis
- Methyl alcohol amblyopia
- Nonischaemic central retinal vein occlusion.

#### Sudden painful loss of vision

- Acute congestive glaucomas (primary or secondary)
- Acute iridocyclitis
- Chemical injuries to the eyeball
- Mechanical injuries to the eyeball.

#### Gradual painless defective vision

- Progressive pterygium involving pupillary area
- Corneal degenerations
- Corneal dystrophies
- Developmental cataract
- Senile cataract
- Optic atrophy
- Chorioretinal degenerations
- Age-related macular degeneration
- Diabetic retinopathy
- Refractive errors.

#### Gradual painful defective vision

- Chronic iridocyclitis
- Corneal ulceration.

#### Transient loss of vision ( Amaurosis fugax )

- Carotid artery disease
- Papilloedema
- Giant cell arteritis
- Migraine
- Raynaud's disease
- Severe hypertension
- Prodromal symptom of CRAO.

Any obstruct. of A  
 Eg: HTN, Raynaud's  
 Carotid a disease  
 CRAO

#### Night blindness (Nyctalopia)

- Vitamin A deficiency
- Retinitis pigmentosa and other tapetoretinal degenerations
- Congenital night blindness
- Pathological myopia
- Peripheral cortical cataract.

corneal  
 central cataracts: Day blindness  
 cortical cataract: night blindness  
 peripheral

#### Day blindness (Hameralopia)

- Central nuclear or polar cataracts
- Central corneal opacity
- Central vitreous opacity
- Congenital deficiency of cones (rarely).



*Diminution of vision for near only*

- Presbyopia
- Cycloplegia
- Internal or total ophthalmoplegia
- Insufficiency of accommodation.

**2. Other visual symptoms.** Visual symptoms other than the defective vision are as follows:

▪ **Black spots or floaters in front of the eyes** may appear singly or in clusters. They move with the movement of the eyes and become more apparent when viewed against a clear surface, e.g. the sky. Common causes of black floaters are:

- Vitreous haemorrhage
- Vitreous degeneration, e.g.
  - senile vitreous degeneration
  - vitreous degeneration in pathological myopia
- Exudates in vitreous
- Lenticular opacity.

**Flashes of light in front of the eyes (photopsia).** Occur due to traction on retina in following conditions:

- Posterior vitreous detachment
- Prodromal symptom of retinal detachment
- Vitreous traction bands
- Sudden appearance of flashes with floaters is a sign of a retinal tear
- Retinitis
- Migraine with aura.

*Distortion of vision*

- Central chorioretinitis
- Central serous chorioretinopathy
- ARMD
- CNVM
- Keratoconus
- Corneal irregularity.

*Glare*

- Early cataract
- Corneal oedema
- Status postrefractive surgery.

*Photophobia*

- Corneal abrasion
- Acute conjunctivitis
- Keratitis
- Anterior uveitis
- Dilated pupil.

**Coloured halos.** Patient may perceive coloured halos around the light. It is a feature of:

- Acute congestive glaucoma
- Corneal edema, e.g. bullous keratopathy
- Early stages of cataract
- Mucopurulent conjunctivitis.

**Diplopia,** i.e. perceiving double images of an object is a very annoying symptom. It should be ascertained

whether it occurs even when the normal eye is closed (**uniocular diplopia**) or only when both eyes are open (**binocular diplopia**). Common causes of diplopia are:

*Uniocular diplopia*

- Subluxated lens
- Double pupil
- Incipient cataract
- Keratoconus
- Eccentric IOL.

*Binocular diplopia*

- Paralytic squint
- Myasthenia gravis
- Diabetes mellitus
- Thyroid disorders
- Blow-out fracture of floor of the orbit
- Anisometropic glasses (e.g. uniocular aphakic glasses)
- After squint correction in the presence of abnormal retinal correspondence (**paradoxical diplopia**).

**3. Watering from the eyes.** Watering from the eyes is another common ocular symptom. Its causes can be grouped as follows:

**Excessive lacrimation,** i.e. excessive formation of tears occurs in multiple conditions (See page 408).

**Epiphora,** i.e. watering from the eyes due to blockage in the flow of normally formed tears somewhere in the lacrimal drainage system (See page 408).

**4. Discharge from the eyes.** When a patient complains of a discharge from the eyes, it should be ascertained whether it is mucoid, mucopurulent, purulent, serosanguinous or ropy. Discharge from the eyes is a feature of conjunctivitis, corneal ulcer, sty, burst orbital abscess, and dacryocystitis.

**5. Itching, burning and foreign body sensation in the eyes.** These are very common ocular symptoms. Their causes are:

- Conjunctivitis (e.g. allergic, chronic simple, and GPC)
- Blepharitis
- Dry eye
- Trachoma and other conjunctival inflammations
- Trichiasis and entropion.

**6. Redness of the eyes.** It is a common presenting symptom in many conditions such as conjunctivitis, keratitis, iridocyclitis, acute glaucomas, conjunctival or corneal foreign body, trichiasis, episcleritis, scleritis, sub-conjunctival haemorrhage, endophthalmitis.

**7. Ocular pain.** Pain in and around the eyes should be probed for its onset, severity, type and associated symptoms. It is a feature of ocular inflammations and acute glaucoma. Ocular pain may also occur as



referred pain from the inflammation of surrounding structures such as sinusitis, dental caries and abscess.

**8. Asthenopic symptoms.** Asthenopia refers to mild eyeache, headache and tiredness of the eyes which are aggravated by near work. Asthenopia is a feature of extraocular muscle imbalance and uncorrected mild refractive errors especially astigmatism.

**9. Other ocular symptoms** include:

- Deviation of the eyeball (squint)
- Protrusion of the eyeball (proptosis)
- Drooping of the upper lid (ptosis)
- Retraction of the upper lid
- Sagging down of the lower lids (ectropion)
- Swelling on the lids (e.g. chalazion and tumours)

(These specific symptoms have been discussed in the concerned chapters).

## GENERAL PHYSICAL AND SYSTEMIC EXAMINATION

General physical and systemic examination should be carried out in each case. Sometimes it may help in establishing the aetiological diagnosis, e.g. ankylosing spondylitis may be associated with uveitis. Further, it is essential to treat associated diseases like bronchial asthma, hypertension, diabetes and urinary tract problems before taking up the patient for cataract surgery.

## OCULAR EXAMINATION

- Testing of visual acuity
- External ocular examination
- Fundus examination
- Visual field examination

### I. TESTING OF VISUAL ACUITY

Visual acuity should be tested in all cases, as it may be affected in numerous ocular disorders. In real sense acuity of vision is a retinal function (to be more precise of the macular area) concerned with the appreciation of form sense.

Distant and near visual acuity should be tested separately.

#### Distant visual acuity

**Snellen's test types.** The distant central visual acuity is usually tested by Snellen's test types. The fact that two distant points can be visible as separate only when they subtend an angle of 1 minute at the nodal point of the eye, forms the basis of Snellen's test-types. It consists of a series of black capital letters on a white board, arranged in lines, each progressively diminishing in size. The lines comprising the letters have such a breadth that they will subtend an angle

of 1 min at the nodal point. Each letter of the chart is so designed that it fits in a square, the sides of which are five times the breadth of the constituent lines. Thus, at the given distance, each letter subtends an angle of 5 min at the nodal point of the eye (Fig. 23.1). The letters of the top line of Snellen's chart (Fig. 23.2A) should be read clearly at a distance of 60 m. Similarly, the letters in the subsequent lines should be read from a distance of 36, 24, 18, 12, 9, 6 and 5 m, respectively, by a person with normal vision.

**Procedure of testing.** For testing distant visual acuity, the patient is seated at a distance of 6 m from the Snellen's chart, so that the rays of light are practically parallel and the patient exerts minimal accommodation. The chart should be properly illuminated (not less than 20 ft candles). The patient is asked to read the chart with each eye separately and the visual acuity is recorded as a fraction, the numerator being the distance of the patient from the letters, and the denominator being the smallest letters accurately read.

When the patient is able to read up to 6 m line, the visual acuity is recorded as 6/6, which is normal.

Similarly, depending upon the smallest line which the patient can read from the distance of 6 m, his vision is recorded as 6/9, 6/12, 6/18, 6/24, 6/36 and 6/60, respectively. If he cannot see the top line from 6 m, he is asked to slowly walk towards the chart till he can read the top line. Depending upon the distance at which he can read the top line, his vision is recorded as 5/60, 4/60, 3/60, 2/60 and 1/60, respectively.

If the patient is unable to read the top line even from 1 m, he is asked to count fingers (CF) of the examiner. His vision is recorded as CF-3; CF-2; CF-1' or CF close to face, depending upon the distance at which the patient is able to count fingers. When the patient fails to count fingers, the examiner moves his hand close to the patient's face. If he can appreciate the hand movements (HM), visual acuity is recorded as HM +ve. When the patient cannot distinguish the hand movements, the examiner notes whether the patient can perceive light (PL) or not. If yes, vision is recorded as PL +ve and if not it is recorded as PL -ve.

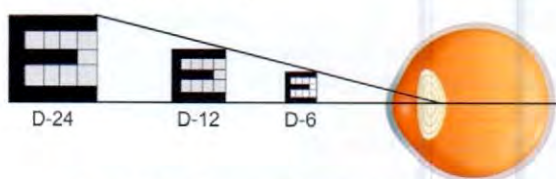


Fig. 23.1 Principle of Snellen's test types



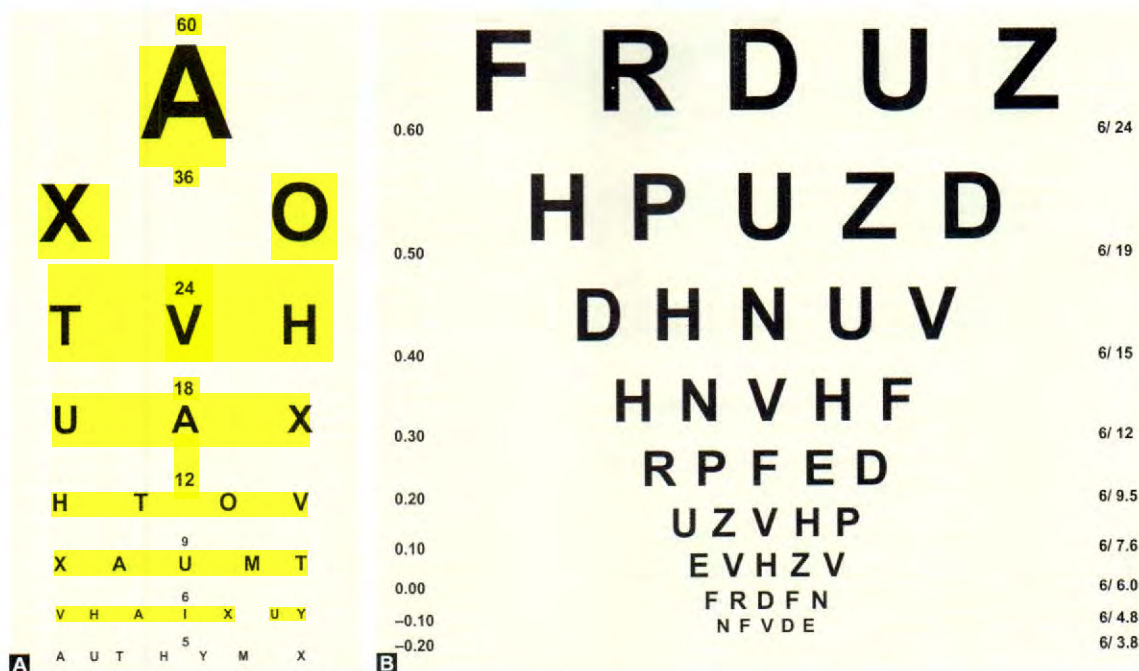


Fig. 23.2 A, Snellen's test types; B, LogMAR visual acuity chart

**Other tests** which are based on the same principle as Snellen's test types are as follows:

- **Simple picture chart:** used for children >2 years
- **Landolt's C-chart:** used for illiterate patients
- **E-chart:** used for illiterate patients.

### LogMAR visual acuity charts

LogMAR stands for **Logarithm of the Minimum Angle of Resolution**. A LogMAR chart comprises **rows of letters and has equal number of letters in each line** (Fig. 23.2B). It is used at a **distance of 4 meters**. It is designed to enable a **more accurate estimate of acuity** as compared to other charts (e.g. the Snellen chart), for this reason, it is recommended in research settings.

An observer who can resolve details as small as 1 minute of visual angle scores LogMAR 0, since the base-10 logarithm of 1 is 0; an observer who can resolve details as small as 2 minutes of visual angle (i.e. reduced acuity) scores LogMAR 0.3, since the base-10 logarithm of 2 is 0.3; and so on.  $\log_{10} 2 = 0.3$  (resolving power in degrees minutes)

### Visual acuity equivalents

Visual acuity equivalents in some common notations are depicted in Table 23.1.

### Visual acuity for near

Near vision is tested by asking the patient to read the near vision chart (Fig. 23.3), kept at a distance of

Table 23.1 Visual acuity equivalents in some common notations

| Decimal resolution system | Snellen 6-m table | Snellen 20-foot table | Angle table | Log MAR acuity |
|---------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1.0                       | 6/6               | 20/20                 | 1.0         | 0              |
| 0.7                       | 6/9               | 20/30                 | 1.4         | -0.18          |
| 0.5                       | 6/12              | 20/40                 | 2.0         | -0.3           |
| 0.3                       | 6/18              | 20/60                 | 3.3         | -0.5           |
| 0.25                      | 6/24              | 20/80                 | —           | -0.6           |
| 0.17                      | 6/36              | 20/120                | —           | -0.78          |
| 0.1                       | 6/60              | 20/200                | 10.0        | -1             |

**35 cm in good illumination, with each eye separately.** Inner vision charts, a series of different sizes of printer type are arranged in increasing order and marked accordingly. Commonly used near vision charts are as follows:

1. **Jaeger's chart.** In this chart, prints are **marked from 1 to 7** and accordingly patient's acuity is labelled as **J1 to J7** depending upon the print he can read (Fig. 23.3A).
2. **Roman test types.** According to this chart, the near vision is recorded as N5, N8, N10, N12 and N18 (**Printer's point system**) (Fig. 23.3B).
3. **Snellen's near vision test types,** prepared by **reducing, thickness of Snellen's distance vision chart.**



|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |         |                                     |                                                                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <p><b>J. 1 (Sn. 0.5) N5.</b><br/>As she shook Moses came slowly, on foot, and sweating under the deal box which he had strapped round his shoulders like a pedlar "Welcome, welcome, Moses! well, myboy, what have you brought us from the fair? Mi have brought</p> | N<br>36 | <b>tiger</b>                        | <p>* Elevation of eyelids<br/>→ LPE - CN<br/>→ Muller's - symphath pressure.</p> |
| <p><b>J. 2 (Sn. 0.6) N6</b><br/>Five shillings and twopence is no bad day's work, come, let us have it then."—"I have brought back no money," cried Moses again. "I have laidit all out in a bargain and here it is, "pulling out a bundle from his</p>              | N<br>18 | <b>decade<br/>employ</b>            |                                                                                  |
| <p><b>J. 4 (Sn. 0.8) N9</b><br/>mother," cried the boy, "why won't you listen to reason. I had them a dead bargain, or I should not have brought them. The silver rims alone will sell for double the money"—"A fig for</p>                                          | N<br>12 | <b>heater<br/>endear<br/>abide</b>  | <b>theft<br/>defect</b>                                                          |
| <p><b>J.6 (Sn. 1) N12</b><br/>The rims, for they are not worth sixpence; for I perceiveth they are only copper varnished over. "—"What! Criedmy wife," not silver! the rims not silver?"—"No,"</p>                                                                   | N<br>10 | <b>heaven<br/>prank<br/>carrier</b> | <b>mirror<br/>party<br/>switch</b>                                               |
| <p><b>J.8 (Sn. 1.25) N18</b><br/>with copper rims and shagreen cases? A murrain take such trumpety! The blockhead has been imposed upon, and should have know his</p>                                                                                                | N<br>8  | <b>noble<br/>vision<br/>chief</b>   | <b>receive<br/>hinder<br/>elusive</b>                                            |
| <p><b>J.10 (Sn. 1.5) N24</b><br/>The idiot!" returned she, "to bring me such stuff: if I had them I would throw them in the fire. "—"There again you are wrong, my</p>                                                                                               | N<br>6  | <b>throw<br/>supreme<br/>worthy</b> | <b>porter<br/>table<br/>symbol</b>                                               |
| <p><b>J. 12 (SN. 1.75) N36</b><br/>By this time the unfortunate Moseswas undeceived. He now saw that</p> <p><b>J.14 (Sn. 2.25) N48</b><br/>asked the circumstances ofhis deception. He sold the</p>                                                                  |         |                                     |                                                                                  |

A

B

Fig. 23.3 Near vision chart: A, Jaeger's chart; B, Roman test types

## II. EXTERNAL OCULAR EXAMINATION

External ocular examination should be carried out as follows:

**A. Inspection in diffuse light** should be performed first of all for a preliminary examination of the eyeballs and related structures viz. lids, lacrima structures eyebrows, face and head.

**B. Focal (oblique) illumination examination** should be carried out for an detailed examination under magnification. It can be accomplished using a magnifying loupe (unioocular or binocular) and a focussing torch light or preferably a slit-lamp.

**C. Special examination** is required for measuring intraocular pressure (tonometry) and for examining angle of the anterior chamber (gonioscopy).

### Scheme of External Ocular Examination

Scheme of external ocular examination is described here (For details of the examination techniques See pages 530–543). Scheme of examination includes the structures to be examined and the signs to be

looked for. Further, the important causes of the common signs are also listed to fulfill the prerequisite that 'the eyes see what the mind knows'. Both eyes should be examined in each case.

The external ocular examination should proceed in the following order:

#### 1. Examination for the head posture

Position of the head and chin should be noted first of all. Head posture may be abnormal in a patient with paralytic squint (head is turned in the direction of the action of paralysed muscle to avoid diplopia) and incomplete ptosis (chin is elevated to uncover the pupillary area in a bid to see clearly).

#### 2. Examination of forehead and facial symmetry

- Forehead may show increased wrinkling (due to overaction of frontalis muscle) in patient with ptosis.
- Complete loss of wrinkling in one-half of the forehead is observed in patients with lower motor neuron facial palsy.
- Facial asymmetry may be noted in patient with Bell's palsy and facial hemiatrophy.



### 3. Examination of eyebrows

- **Level of the two eyebrows** may be changed in a patient with **ptosis** (due to overaction of frontalis).
- **Cilia of lateral one-third** of the eyebrows may be absent (madarosis) in patients with leprosy or myxoedema.

### 4. Examination of the eyelids

All the four eyelids should be examined for their position, movements, condition of skin and lid margins.

i. **Position.** Normally the lower lid just touches the limbus while the upper lid covers about 1/6th (2 mm) of cornea.

• In **ptosis**, upper lid covers more than 1/6th of cornea.

• **Upper limbus is visible due to lid retraction** as in thyrotoxicosis and sympathetic overactivity.

ii. **Movements of lids.** Normally the upper lid follows the eyeball in downward movement but it lags behind in cases of thyroid ophthalmopathy.

• **Blinking** is involuntary movement of eyelids. Normal rate is 12–16 blinks per minute. It is increased in local irritation. Blinks are decreased in trigeminal anaesthesia and absent in those with 7th nerve palsy.

• **Lagophthalmos** is a condition in which the patient is not able to close his eyelids. Causes of lagophthalmos are:

- Facial nerve palsy
- Extreme degree of proptosis
- Symblepharon.

iii. **Lid margin.** Note presence of any of the following:

• **Entropion** (inward turning of lid margin).

• **Ectropion** (outward turning of lid margin).

• **Eyelash abnormalities** such as:

• **Trichiasis**, i.e. misdirected cilia rubbing the cornea and ocular surface. Common causes are trachoma, blepharitis, sty and lid trauma.

• **Distichiasis**, i.e. an abnormal extra row of cilia taking place of meibomian glands.

• **Madarosis**, i.e. absence of cilia may be seen in patients with chronic blepharitis, leprosy and myxoedema.

• **Poliosis**, i.e. greying of cilia is seen in old age and also in patients with Vogt-Koyanagi-Harada's disease.

• **Scales** at lid margins are seen in blepharitis.

• **Swelling** at lid margin may be sty, papilloma or marginal chalazion.

iv. **Abnormalities of skin.** Common lesions are herpetic blisters, molluscum contagiosum lesions, warts, epidermoid cysts, ulcers, traumatic scar, etc.

v. **Palpebral aperture.** The exposed space between the two lid margins is called **palpebral fissure** which measures 28–30 mm horizontally and 8–10 mm vertically (in the centre). Following abnormalities may be observed:

• **Ankyloblepharon** is usually seen following adhesions of the two lids at angles, e.g. after ulcerative blepharitis and burns. It results in horizontally narrow palpebral fissure.

• **Blepharophimosis** (all around narrow palpebral fissure) is usually a congenital anomaly.

• **Vertically narrow palpebral fissure** is seen in:

- Inflammatory conditions of conjunctiva, cornea and uvea due to blepharospasm
- Ptosis (drooping) of upper eyelid
- Enophthalmos (sunken eyeball)
- Anophthalmos (absent eyeball)
- Microphthalmos (congenital small eyeball)
- Phthisis bulbi
- Atrophic bulbi

• **Vertically wide palpebral fissure** may be noted in patients with:

- Proptosis
- Large-sized eyeball (e.g. buphthalmos)
- Retraction of upper lid
- Facial nerve palsy.

### 5. Examination of lacrimal apparatus

A thorough examination of lacrimal apparatus is indicated in patients with epiphora, corneal ulcer and in all patients before intraocular surgery. The examination should include:

• **Inspection of lacrimal sac area** for color changes in skin redness, swelling or fistula.

• **Inspection of the lacrimal puncta**, for any defect such as eversion, stenosis, absence or discharge.

• **Regurgitation test.** It is performed by pressing over the lacrimal sac area just medial to the medial canthus and observing regurgitation of any discharge from the puncta. Normally, it is negative.

A positive regurgitation test indicates dacryocystitis.

A false negative regurgitation test may be observed in internal fistula, wrong method of performing regurgitation test, patient might have emptied the sac just before coming to the examiner's chamber, encysted mucocele.

• **Lacrimal syringing.** It is done to locate the probable site of blockage in patients with epiphora (See page 409).

• **Other tests** such as **Jone's dye test I and II**, **dacryocystography**, etc. can be performed when indicated (See page 409).



## 6. Examination of eyeball as a whole

Observe the following points:

i. **Position of eyeballs.** Normally, the two eyeballs are symmetrically placed in the orbits in such a way that a line joining the central points of superior and inferior orbital margins just touches the cornea.

**Abnormalities of the position of eyeball** can be:

a. **Proptosis/exophthalmos**, i.e. bulging of eyeballs; note whether proptosis is:

- axial or eccentric
- reducible or nonreducible
- pulsatile or nonpulsatile

b. **Enophthalmos** (sunken eyeball).

ii. **Visual axes of eyeballs.** Normally, the visual axes of the two eyes are simultaneously directed at the same object which is maintained in all the directions of gaze. Deviation in the visual axis of one eye is called **squint** (complete evaluation of a case of squint is a specialised examination) (See pages 364, 369).

iii. **Size of eyeball.** Obvious abnormalities in the size of eyeball can be detected clinically. However, **precise measurement** of size can only be made by **ultrasonography (A-scan)**. The size of eyeball is **increased** in conditions like buphthalmos and unilateral high myopia. The **causes of small-sized eyeball** are: **congenital microphthalmos**, **phthisis bulbi**, and **atrophic bulbi**.

iv. **Movements of eyeball** should be tested unilaterally (**ductions**) as well as **binocularly (versions)** in all the six cardinal directions of gaze (See pages 350–353).

## 7. Examination of conjunctiva

i. **Bulbar conjunctiva** can be examined by simply retracting the upper lid with index finger and lower lid with thumb of the left hand.

ii. **Lower palpebral conjunctiva and lower fornix** can be examined by just pulling down the lower lid and instructing the patient to look up (Fig. 23.4).

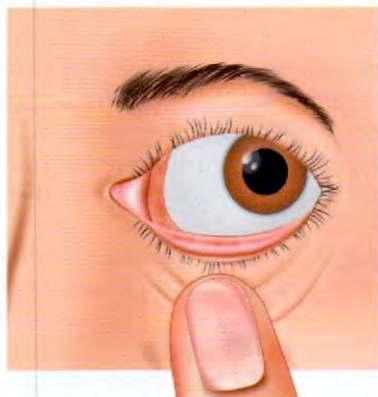


Fig. 23.4 Examination of the lower fornix and lower palpebral conjunctiva

iii. **Upper palpebral conjunctiva** can be examined only after **everting the upper eyelid**. Eversion of upper lid can be carried out by one-hand or two-hand technique.

• **One-hand technique.** In it, patient looks down and the examiner grasps the lid margin along with lashes with left index finger and thumb. Then swiftly everts the upper lid by making index finger a fulcrum. This, however, requires some practice.

• **Two-hand technique.** It is comparatively easier. Procedure is same as above, except that here the lid is rotated around a fixed probe which is held above the level of tarsal plate with right hand (Fig. 23.5). In slight modification of two-hand technique, index finger of right hand can be used instead of probe.

iv. **Examination of superior fornix** requires **double eversion of upper lid** using **Desmarre's lid retractor**.

## Conjunctival signs

**Normal conjunctiva** is a **thin semi-transparent** structure. A **fine network of vessels** is distinctly seen in it. Following signs may be observed:

▪ **Discoloration** of conjunctiva may be brownish in **melanosis** and **argyrosis** (silver nitrate deposits), **greyish** due to **surma** deposits, **pale** in **anaemia**, **bluish** in **cyanosis** and **bright red** due to **subconjunctival haemorrhage**.

▪ **Congestion of vessels.** Congestion may be **superficial** (in conjunctivitis) or **ciliary/circumcorneal/deep** (in iridocyclitis, and keratitis) or **mixed** (in acute congestive glaucoma). Differences between conjunctival and ciliary congestion are depicted in Table 23.2.

▪ **Conjunctival chemosis (oedema)** may be observed in **allergic** and **infective inflammatory** conditions.

▪ **Follicles.** These are seen as **greyish white raised** areas (**mimicking boiled sago-grains**) on fornices

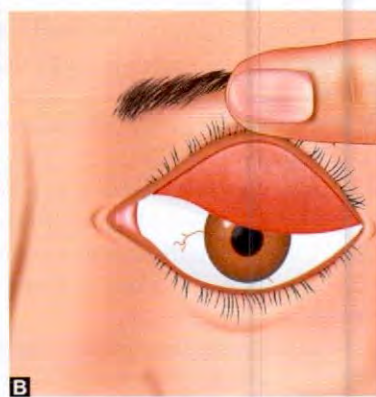


Fig. 23.5 Two-hand technique of upper lid eversion



**Table 23.2** Differences between conjunctival and ciliary congestion

| Sl. no. | Feature                                                   | Conjunctival congestion                        | Ciliary congestion                                |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| 1.      | Site                                                      | More marked in the fornices                    | More marked around the limbus                     |
| 2.      | Colour                                                    | Bright red                                     | Purple or dull red                                |
| 3.      | Arrangement of vessels                                    | Superficial and branching                      | Deep and radiating from limbus                    |
| 4.      | On moving conjunctiva                                     | Congested vessels also move                    | Congested vessels do not move                     |
| 5.      | On mechanically squeezing out the blood vessels           | Vessels fill slowly from fornix towards limbus | Vessels fill rapidly from limbus towards fornices |
| 6.      | Blanching, i.e. putting one drop of 1 in 10000 adrenaline | Vessels immediately blanch                     | Do not blanch                                     |
| 7.      | Common causes                                             | Acute conjunctivitis                           | Acute iridocyclitis, keratitis (corneal ulcer)    |

and palpebral conjunctiva. Follicles represent areas of aggregation of lymphocytes. Follicles may be seen in following conditions:

- Trachoma
- Acute follicular conjunctivitis
- Chronic follicular conjunctivitis
- Benign (School) folliculosis.

■ **Papillae** are seen as reddish raised areas with flat tops and velvety appearance. These represent areas of vascular and epithelial hyperplasia. Papillae are seen in the following conditions:

- Trachoma
- Spring catarrh
- Allergic conjunctivitis
- Giant papillary conjunctivitis.

■ **Concretions** are seen as yellowish-white hard looking raised areas, varying in size from pin-point to pin-head. They represent inspissated mucous and dead epithelial cells in glands of Henle. Common causes of concretions are trachoma, conjunctival degeneration and idiopathic.

■ **Foreign bodies** are commonly lodged in fornices and sulcus subtarsalis on palpebral conjunctiva.

■ **Scarring on the conjunctiva** may be in the form of a single line in the area of sulcus subtarsalis (**Arlt's line**), irregular, or star-shaped. Common causes of scarring are:

- Trachoma
- Healed membranous or pseudomembranous conjunctivitis
- Healed traumatic wounds
- Surgical scars.

■ **Pinguecula** is a degenerative condition of conjunctiva observed in many adult patients. It is seen on the bulbar conjunctiva, near the limbus, in the form of a yellowish triangular nodule resembling a fat drop.

■ **Pterygium** is a degenerative conjunctival fold which encroaches on the cornea in the palpebral area. It must be differentiated from pseudopterygium (an inflammatory fold of conjunctiva encroaching the cornea).

■ **Conjunctival cysts** which may be observed are:

- Retention cyst
- Implantation cyst
- Lymphatic cyst
- Cysticercosis.

■ **Conjunctival tumours**. A few common tumours are dermoids, papillomas and squamous cell carcinoma.

## 8. Examination of sclera

Normally anterior part of sclera covered by bulbar conjunctiva can be examined under diffuse illumination. Following abnormalities may be seen:

i. **Discolouration**. Normally, sclera is white in colour. It becomes yellow in jaundice. Bluish discolouration may be seen as an isolated anomaly or in association with osteitis deformans, Marfan's syndrome, pseudoxanthoma elasticum. Pigmentation of sclera is also seen in naevus of Ota and melanosis bulbi.

ii. **Inflammation**. A superficial localised pink or purple circumscribed flat nodule is seen in episcleritis. While a deep, dusky patch associated with marked inflammation and ciliary congestion is suggestive of scleritis.

iii. **Staphyloma** is a thinned out bulging area of sclera which is lined by the uveal tissue. Depending upon its location, scleral staphylomas may be intercalary, ciliary, equatorial and posterior.

iv. **Traumatic perforations** in blunt trauma are usually seen in the region of limbus or at the equator.



### 9. Examination of cornea

Loupe and lens examination or preferably slit-lamp biomicroscopy is a must to delineate corneal lesions. While examining the cornea, a note of following points should be made:

i. **Size.** The **anterior surface of normal cornea** is elliptical with an average horizontal diameter of 11.7 mm and vertical diameter of 11 mm. **Abnormalities of corneal size** can be:

- **Microcornea**, when the anterior horizontal diameter is less than 10 mm. It may occur isolated or as a part of microphthalmos.
- **Corneal size** also decreases in patients with phthisis bulbi.
- **Megalocornea** is labelled when the **horizontal diameter** is more than 13 mm. Common causes are congenital megalocornea and buphthalmos.

ii. **Shape (curvature).** Normal cornea is like a watch glass with a uniform posterior curve in its central area. In addition to biomicroscopy, keratometry and corneal topography is required to confirm changes in corneal curvature. Abnormalities of corneal shape (curvature) are:

- **Keratoglobus.** It is an ectatic condition in which cornea becomes thin and bulges out like a globe.
- **Keratoconus.** It is an ectatic condition in which cornea becomes cone shaped.
- **Cornea plana**, i.e. flat curvature of cornea which may occur in patients with severe hypotony and phthisis bulbi and rarely as a congenital anomaly.

iii. **Surface.** Smoothness of corneal surface is disturbed due to abrasions, ulceration, ectatic scars and facets. Changes in smoothness of surface can be detected by slit-lamp biomicroscopy, window reflex test and Placido's disc examination.

**Placido's keratoscopic disc.** It is a disc painted with alternating black and white circles (Fig. 23.6). It may

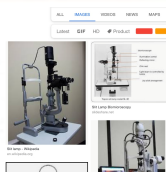


Fig. 23.6 Placido's disc

be used to assess the smoothness and curvature of corneal surface. Normally, on looking through the hole in the centre of disc a uniform sharp image of the circles is seen on the cornea (Fig. 23.7A). Irregularities in the corneal surface cause distortion of the circles (Fig. 23.7B).

**Window Reflex Test.** In this test, patient is asked to sit in front of the window and the minified image of the window formed by the cornea (acting as a convex lens) is seen. In a patient with normal cornea the image formed is uniform and regular while it is distorted in cases of diseases of corneal curvature (e.g. keratoconus) and corneal surface (e.g. corneal ulcer).

iv. **Sheen.** Normal cornea is a bright shining structure. Sheen of corneal surface is lost in 'dry eye' conditions. A loss of the normal polish of the corneal surface

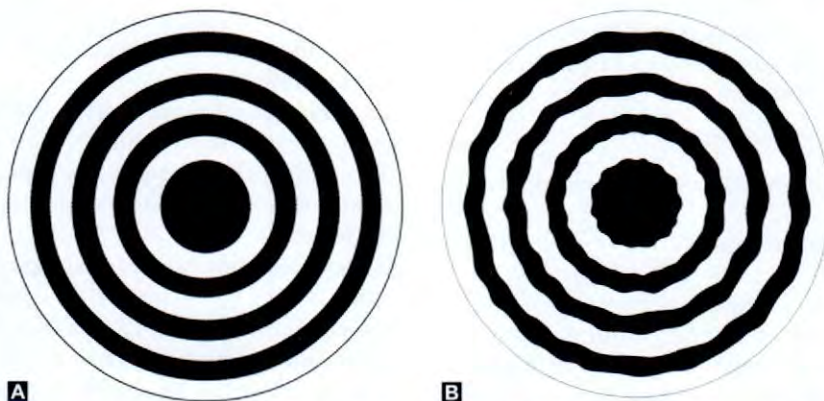


Fig. 23.7 Placido's disc reflex from: A, Normal cornea; B, From irregular corneal surface



causes loss in the sharpness of the outline of the image of circles on *Placido's disc test*.

**v. Transparency** of cornea is **lost** in **corneal oedema**, **opacity**, **ulceration**, **dystrophies**, **degenerations**, **vascularization** and due to **deposits** in the cornea.

**Examination for corneal ulcer.** Once corneal ulcer is suspected, a thorough biomicroscopic examination before and after fluorescein staining should be performed to note the site, size, shape, depth, floor and edges of the corneal ulcer.

**Examination for corneal opacity** is best done with the help of a **slit-lamp**. Note the number, site, size, shape, density (nebular, macular or leucomatous) and surface of the opacity.

**vi. Corneal vascularization.** The cornea is an avascular structure but its **vascularization may occur in many diseases**. When vessels are present, an exact note of their position, whether superficial or deep and their distribution whether localised, general, or peripheral should be made.

Differences between superficial and deep vascularization of cornea are shown in Table 23.3.

**vii. Corneal sensations.** Cornea is a very sensitive structure, being **richly supplied by the nerves**. The **sensitivity of cornea is diminished** in many affections of the cornea, viz., **herpetic keratitis**, **neuroparalytic keratitis**, **leprosy**, **diabetes mellitus**, **trigeminal block** for postherpetic neuralgia and **absolute glaucoma**.

**Testing corneal sensations.** Patient is asked to look ahead; the examiner touches the corneal surface with a **fine twisted cotton wick** (which is brought from the side to avoid menace reflex) and observes the blinking response. Normally, there is a brisk reflex closure of lids. Always compare the effect with that on the opposite side. The **exact qualitative measurement** of corneal sensations is made with the help of an **aesthesiometer**.

Alterations in corneal sensitivity occur normally with variations in physiological and environmental factors. Corneal sensitivity decreases steadily with age. In addition, the **corneas of brown eyed**

**individuals are generally less sensitive** than those in blue eyed individuals.

**Important causes of reduced corneal sensitivity** are:

#### **I. Congenital conditions and syndromes**

- **Congenital trigeminal anaesthesia**
- **Congenital dystrophies**, e.g. Lattice dystrophy
- **Syndromes**, **Goldenhar's syndrome**, **abetalipoproteinemia**, **Refsum's syndrome**, **Pierre-Romberg syndrome** and **neuropathic cystinosis**, **Familial dysautonomia (Riley-Day syndrome)**.

#### **II. Iatrogenic causes**

- **Topical drugs**: **Cocaine**, **proparacaine**, **NSAIDs** (**diclofenac**, **ketorolac**), **beta blockers** (**timolol**, **betaxolol**), **atropine** (decreases sensations after 10 minutes, due to decreased acetylcholine).
- **Surgery**: **Corneal and limbal incisions** in cataract operations, **corneal grafts**, **refractive corneal surgeries** (e.g. **LASIK**).
- **Contact lens use** due to decreased oxygen pressure at epithelial level.

#### **III. Acquired eye diseases and neuropathies**

- **Infections**. **Herpes simplex keratitis** (dendritic ulcer), **Leprosy**, **Herpes zoster**, **Syphilitic (leptic neuropathy)**.
- **Scleritis**
- **Acute angle closure glaucoma**, primary as well as secondary.
- **Cerebellopontine angle tumor** — acoustic neuroma.
- **Sensory neuropathies**: **Diabetes**, **leprosy**, **Amyloidosis**, **Vitamin A deficiency**.
- **Myasthenia gravis**
- **Toxic corneal hypoesthesia**: **Carbon disulphide** and **hydrogen sulphide**, used as pesticides.

#### **IV. Physiological and hormonal causes**

- **Iris colour**. **Lighter the iris colour, more the sensitivity**.
- **Gender**. **More sensitive in males than females**.
- **Eyelid closure**, due to depressed acetylcholine levels. This explains new corneal sensitivity in the morning after night sleep.
- **Hormonal**. **Decreased sensitivity pre-ovulatory** and during pregnancy.

**Table 23.3** Differences between superficial and deep corneal vascularization

| <b>Superficial corneal vascularization</b>                                                | <b>Deep corneal vascularization</b>                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Corneal vessels can be <b>traced over the limbus</b> into the conjunctiva              | Corneal vessels <b>abruptly end</b> at the limbus                  |
| 2. Vessels are <b>bright red</b> and <b>well-defined</b>                                  | Vessels are ill-defined and cause only a diffuse reddish blush     |
| 3. Superficial vessels branch in an <b>arborescent</b> manner                             | Deep vessels <b>run parallel</b> to each other in a radial fashion |
| 4. Superficial vessels <b>raise the epithelium</b> and make the corneal surface irregular | Deep vessels do not disturb the corneal surface                    |



viii. **Back of cornea** should be examined for **keratic precipitates (KPs)** which are cellular deposits and a sign of anterior uveitis.

KPs can be of different types such as **fine, pigmented or mutton fat** (See page 159).

ix. **Corneal endothelium.** It is examined with specular microscope which allows a clear **morphological study of endothelial cells** including photographic documentation. The cell density of endothelium is around 3000 cells/mm<sup>2</sup> in young adults, which decreases with advancing age.

#### **Biomicroscopic examination after staining of cornea with vital stains**

1. **Fluorescein staining** of cornea is carried out with a disposable autoclaved filter paper strip impregnated with the dye. The area denuded of epithelium due to abrasions or corneal ulcer when stained with fluorescein appear brilliant green. When examined using cobalt blue light, the stained area appears opaque green.

2. **Bengal rose** (1%) stains the diseased and devitalized cells red, e.g. as in superficial punctate keratitis and filamentary keratitis. **Bengal rose dye** is very irritating. Therefore, a drop of 2% xylocaine should be instilled before using this dye and dye should be thoroughly washed thereafter to avoid phytotoxicity.

3. **Alcian blue** dye stains the excess mucus selectively, e.g. as in keratoconjunctivitis sicca.

#### **10. Examination of anterior chamber**

It is best done with the help of a slit-lamp.

i. **Depth of anterior chamber.** Normal depth of anterior chamber is about **2.5 mm in the centre** (slightly shallow in childhood and in old age). On slit-lamp biomicroscopy, an **estimate of depth is made from the position of iris**. Anterior chamber may be normal, shallow, deep or irregular in depth.

##### **Causes of shallow anterior chamber**

- **Primary narrow angle glaucoma**
- **Hypermetropia**
- **Postoperative shallow anterior chamber** (after intraocular surgery due to wound leak or ciliochoroidal detachment)
- **Malignant glaucoma**
- **Anterior perforations** (perforating injuries or perforation of corneal ulcer)
- **Anterior subluxation of lens**
- **Intumescent (swollen) lens.**

##### **Causes of deep anterior chamber**

- **Aphakia/Pseudophakia**
- **Total posterior synechiae**
- **Myopia**

- **Keratoglobus**
- **Buphthalmos**
- **Keratoconus**
- **Anterior dislocation of lens into the anterior chamber**
- **Posterior perforation of the globe.**

##### **Causes of irregular anterior chamber**

- **Adherent leucoma**
- **Iris bombe** formation due to annular synechiae
- **Tilting of lens in subluxation.**
- **Iris cyst.**

ii. **Contents of anterior chamber:** Anterior chamber contains transparent watery fluid—the aqueous humour. Any of the following abnormal contents may be detected on examination:

- **Aqueous flare** in anterior chamber occurs due to collection of **inflammatory cells and protein particles in patients with iridocyclitis**. Aqueous flare is demonstrated in fine beam of slit-lamp light as fine moving (Brownian movements) suspended particles. It is based on the Tyndall phenomenon (See page 160).
- **Hypopyon**, i.e. **Pus in the anterior chamber** may be seen in cases of infectious corneal ulcer, iridocyclitis, toxic anterior segment syndrome (TASS), endophthalmitis and panophthalmitis.
- **Pseudohypopyon** due to collection of **tumour cells** in anterior chamber and seen in patients with retinoblastoma.
- **Foreign bodies**—wooden, iron, glass particles, stone particles, cilia, etc., may enter the anterior chamber after perforating trauma.
- **Crystalline lens** may be observed in anterior chamber after anterior dislocation of lens.
- **Lens particles** in anterior chamber after trauma, planned extracapsular cataract extraction (ECCE) is a frequent observation.
- **Blood** in the anterior chamber is called **hyphaema** and may be seen after **ocular trauma, surgery, herpes zoster** and gonococcal iridocyclitis, blood dyscrasias, clotting disorder and intraocular tumours (e.g. retinoblastoma, angioma).
- **Parasitic cyst**, e.g. **cysticercus cellulosae** has been demonstrated in anterior chamber.
- **Artificial lens.** Anterior chamber intraocular lens may be observed in patients with pseudophakia.

iii. **Examination of angle of anterior chamber** is performed with the help of a gonioscope and slit-lamp. Gonioscopy is a specialized examination required in patients with glaucoma (See page 589).

**Iris bombe** is a condition in which there is apposition of the iris to the lens or anterior vitreous, preventing aqueous from flowing from the posterior to the a



## 11. Examination of the iris

It should be performed with reference to following points:

**i. Colour of the iris.** It varies in different races; it is **light blue or green in caucasians** and **dark brown in orientals**. **Heterochromia iridum** (different colour of two iris) and **heterochromia iridis** (different colour of sectors of the same iris) may be present in some individuals. Heterochromia may be either due to involved iris being lighter or darker than the normal.

• **Causes of iris lighter than normal** are: **congenital heterochromia**, **congenital Horner's syndrome**, **Fuchs heterochromic iridocyclitis**, **atrophic patches** in chronic uveitis, **juvenile xanthogranuloma**, **metastatic carcinoma** and **Wardenburg syndrome**.

• **Causes of darker iris** include, **iris naevi**, **ocular melanocytosis** or **oculodermal melanocytosis**, **haemosiderosis**, **siderosis bulbi**, **retained iris foreign body**, **malignant melanoma of iris** and **lymphoma**.

• **Darkly pigmented spots (naevi)** are common freckles on the iris.

**ii. Pattern of normal iris** is peculiar due to presence of **collarette**, **crypts** and **radial striations** on its anterior surface. This pattern is **disturbed due to 'muddy iris' in acute iridocyclitis** and due to atrophy of iris in healed iridocyclitis.

**iii. Persistent pupillary membrane (PPM)** is seen sometimes as **abnormal congenital tags** of iris tissue adherent to the collarette area.

**iv. Synechiae**, i.e. **adhesions of iris** to other intraocular structures may be seen. Synechiae may be **anterior** (in adherent leucoma) or **posterior** (in iridocyclitis). Posterior synechiae may be total, annular (ring), or segmental.

**v. Iridodonesis** (tremulousness of the iris). It is observed when its **posterior support is lost** as in **aphakia** and **subluxation of lens**.

**vi. Nodules on the iris surface.** These are observed in **granulomatous uveitis** (**Koepp's** and **Busacca's nodules**), **melanoma**, **tuberculoma** and **gumma** of the iris.

**vii. Rubeosis iridis** (new vessel formation on the iris). It may occur in patients with **diabetic retinopathy**, **central retinal vein occlusion (CRVO)**, **branch retinal vein occlusion (BRVO)**, **ocular ischaemic syndrome**, **chronic uveitis**, **chronic retinal detachment**, **intraocular tumours**, e.g. **retinoblastoma**.

**viii. A gap or hole in the iris.** It may be congenital **coloboma** or due to **iridectomy** (surgical **coloboma**). Separation of iris from ciliary body is called **iridodialysis**.

**ix. Aniridia or irideremia** (complete absence of iris). It is a rare congenital condition.

**x. Iris cyst.** It may be seen near the **pupillary margin** in patients using strong miotic drops.

## 12. Examination of pupil

Note the following points:

**i. Number.** Normally, there is only one pupil. Rarely, there may be **more than one pupil**. This congenital anomaly is called **polycoria**.

**ii. Location.** Normally, pupil is placed almost in the centre (slightly nasal) of the iris. Rarely, it may be congenitally **eccentric** (corectopia).

**iii. Size.** Normal pupil size varies from **3 to 4 mm** depending upon the illumination. But it may be abnormally small (**miosis**) or large (**mydriasis**).

### Causes of miosis

- Effect of local miotic drugs (**parasympathomimetic drugs**).
- Effect of systemic **morphine**.
- **Iridocyclitis** (narrow, irregular, nonreacting pupil).
- **Horner's syndrome**.
- **Head injury** (Pontine haemorrhage).
- **Senile rigid miotic pupil**.
- Due to effect of strong light.
- During sleep pupil is pinpoint.

### Causes of mydriasis

- Effect of **topical sympathomimetic drugs** (e.g. **adrenaline** and **phenylephrine**).
- Effect of **topical parasympatholytic drugs** (e.g. **atropine**, **homatropine**, **tropicamide** and **cyclopentolate**).
- **Acute congestive glaucoma** (vertically oval large immobile pupil).
- **Absolute glaucoma**.
- **Optic atrophy**.
- **Retinal detachment**.
- **Internal ophthalmoplegia**.
- **3rd nerve paralysis**.
- **Belladonna poisoning**.

### Evaluation of anisocoria (See page 329).

**iv. Shape.** Normal pupil is circular in shape.

• **Irregular narrow pupil** is seen in **iridocyclitis**.

• **Festooned pupil** is the name given to irregular pupil obtained after patchy dilatation (effect of mydriatics) in the presence of segmental posterior synechiae).

• **Vertically oval pupil** (pear-shaped pupil or **updrawn pupil**) may occur postoperatively due to incarceration of iris or vitreous in the wound at 12 O'clock position.

**v. Colour.** Of course, pupil is a hole in the iris, but the pupillary area does exhibit colour depending upon



the condition of the structures located behind it. Pupil looks:

- **Greyish black** normally,
- **Jet black** in aphakia;
- **Greyish white** in immature senile cortical cataract;
- **Pearly white** in mature cortical cataract;
- **Milky white** in hypermature cataract;
- **Brown** in cataracta brunescens, and
- **Brownish black** in cataracta nigra.
- **Leucocoria** (white reflex in pupil) in children is seen in congenital cataract, retinoblastoma, retrolental fibroplasia (retinopathy of prematurity), persistent primary hyperplastic vitreous and toxocara endophthalmitis. The yellowish white, semidilated, non-reacting pupil seen in retinoblastoma and pseudogliomas is also called as **amaurotic cat's eye reflex**.
- **Greenish hue** is observed in pupillary area in some patients with glaucoma.
- **Dirty white exudates** may occlude the pupil (*occlusio pupillae*) in patients with iridocyclitis.

vi. **Pupillary reactions.** Note as follows:

**Direct light reflex.** To elicit this reflex the patient is seated in a dimly lit room. With the help of a palm one eye is closed and a narrow beam of light is shown to other pupil and its response is noted. The procedure is repeated for the second eye. A normal pupil reacts briskly and its constriction to light is well maintained.

**Consensual light reflex.** To determine consensual reaction to light, patient is seated in a dimly lit room and the two eyes are separated from each other by an opaque curtain kept at the level of nose (either hand of examiner or a piece of cardboard). Then one eye is exposed to a beam of light and pupillary response is observed in the other eye. The same procedure is repeated for the second eye. Normally, the contralateral pupil should also constrict when light is thrown on to one pupil.

**Swinging flash light test.** It is performed when relative afferent pathway defect is suspected in one eye (unilateral optic nerve lesion with good vision). To perform this test, a bright flash light is shone on to one pupil and constriction is noted. Then the flash light is quickly moved to the contralateral pupil and response is noted. This swinging to-and-fro of flash light is repeated several times while observing the pupillary response. Normally, both pupils constrict equally and the pupil to which light is transferred remains tightly constricted. In the presence of relative afferent pathway defect in one eye, the affected pupil will dilate when the flash light is

moved from the normal eye to the abnormal eye. This response is called '**Marcus Gunn pupil**' or a **relative afferent pupillary defect (RAPD)**. It is the earliest indication of optic nerve disease even in the presence of normal visual acuity.

**Near reflex.** In it, pupil constricts while looking at a near object. This reflex is largely determined by the reaction to convergence but accommodation also plays a part.

To determine the near reflex, patient is asked to focus on a far object and then instructed suddenly to focus at an object (pencil or tip of index finger) held about 15 cm from patient's eye. While the patient's eye converges and focuses the near object, observe the constriction of pupil.

**Abnormal pupillary reactions** include (i) amaurotic pupil, (ii) efferent pathway defect, (iii) Wernicke's hemianopic pupil, (iv) Marcus Gunn pupil, (v) Argyll Robertson pupil, and (vi) the tonic pupil (for details See page 328).

### 13. Examination of the lens

A thorough examination of the lens can be accomplished with the help of oblique illumination, slit-lamp biomicroscopy and distant direct ophthalmoscopy with fully-dilated pupils. Following points should be noted:

**i. Position.** A normal lens is positioned in the **patellar fossa** (space between the vitreous and back of iris) by the zonules. Abnormalities of position may be:

**Dislocation of lens**, i.e. lens is not present in its normal position (i.e. patellar fossa) and all its supporting zonules are broken. In **anterior dislocation** the intact lens (clear or cataractous) is present in the anterior chamber. While in **posterior dislocation** the lens is present in vitreous cavity where it might be floating (*lensa nutans*) or fixed to the retina (*lensa fixata*).

**Subluxation of lens**, i.e. lens is partially displaced from its position. Here zonules are intact in some quadrant and lens is shifted on that side. **With dilated pupil**, edge of the subluxated lens is seen as **shining golden crescent** on focal illumination and as a **dark line** (due to total internal reflection) on distant direct ophthalmoscopy. In the presence of substantial degree of subluxation, half pupil may be phakic and half aphakic (and patient may experience unilateral diplopia). **Common causes** of subluxation of lens are **trauma**, **Marfan's syndrome**, **homocystinuria**, **Weill-Marchesani syndrome**.

**Aphakia** (absence of lens) is diagnosed by jet black pupil, iridodonesis deep anterior chamber, empty patellar fossa on slit lamp biomicroscopy,



hypermetropic eye on ophthalmoscopy, retinoscopy and absence of 3rd and 4th Purkinje images.

**Pseudophakia.** When posterior chamber IOL is present it is diagnosed by a black pupil, deep anterior chamber, shining reflexes from the anterior surface of IOL and presence of all the four Purkinje's images. Examination after dilatation of pupil confirms pseudophakia.

**ii. Shape of lens.** Normal lens is a biconvex structure, which is nicely demonstrated in an optical section of the lens on slit-lamp examination (Fig. 23.9). The optical section of the lens shows from within outward embryonic, foetal, infantile and adult nuclei, cortex and capsule. An anterior Y-shaped and posterior inverted Y-shaped sutures may also be seen.

**Abnormalities of the lens shape** include:

- **Spherophakia**, i.e. spherical lens.
- **Lenticulus anterior**, i.e. an anterior cone-shaped bulge in the lens as seen in Alport syndrome (See page 224).
- **Lenticulus posterior**, i.e. a cone-shaped bulge in the posterior aspect of lens (See page 224).
- **Coloboma of lens**, i.e. a notch in the lens (See page 224).

**iii. Colour.** On focal illumination the normal lens in young age appears almost clear or gives a faint blue hue.

- **In old age** even the clear lens gives greyish white, hue due to marked scattering of light as a result of increased refractive index of the lens with advancing age. It is usually mistaken for cataract.

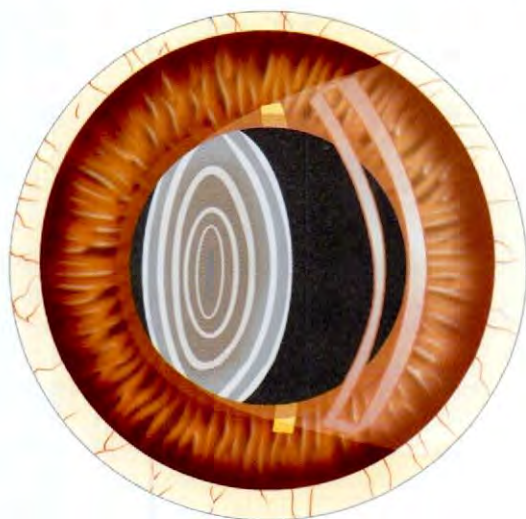


Fig. 23.9 Optical section of the cornea and adult lens as seen on slit-lamp examination

- In **cortical cataract** lens may be greyish white, pearly white or milky white in colour in immature, mature and hypermature cataracts, respectively.

- In **nuclear cataract** lens may look amber, brown or black in colour.

- A **rusty (orange) discoloration** is seen in cataractous lens with siderosis bulbi (due to retained intraocular iron foreign body).

**iv. Transparency.** Normal lens is a transparent structure. Any opacity in the lens is called **cataract**, which looks greyish or yellowish white on focal illumination. On **distant direct ophthalmoscopy**, the **lenticular opacities** appear black against a red fundal reflex. On slit lamp biomicroscopy, the **morphology of cataract** can be studied in detail:

- **Complicated cataract** in the early stages exhibits **polychromatic lustre** and gives **breadcrumb** appearance.

- **True diabetic cataract** presents 'snowflake' opacities.

- **Sunflower cataract** is typically seen in disorder of copper metabolism (**Wilson's disease**).

- **Rosette-shaped cataract**, early as well as late, is typical of **concussion injury of lens**.

- **Christmas tree shaped cataract** in **myotonic dystrophy**.

**v. Deposits on the anterior surface of lens** may be:

- **Vossius ring.** It is a **small ring-shaped pigment** dispersal seen on the anterior surface of lens **after blunt trauma**. It corresponds in shape and size to the miosed pupil, i.e. smaller than the pupil.

- **Pigmented clumps** may be deposited on the anterior surface of lens in patients with iridocyclitis.

- **Dirty white exudates** may be present on the anterior surface of lens in patients with **uveitis and endophthalmitis**.

- **Rusty deposits**, i.e. deposition of ferrous ions just below the anterior capsule is seen in **siderosis bulbi**.

- **Greenish deposits**, i.e. deposition of copper ions is seen in **chalcosis**.

**vi. Purkinje images test.** This test does not have much significance and thus is not frequently employed in clinical practice. However, it is described as a tribute to the original worker who used this test **to diagnose mature cataract and aphakia**. Normally, when a strong beam of light is shown to the eye, four images (Purkinje images) are formed from the four different reflecting surfaces, viz. anterior and posterior surfaces of cornea and anterior and posterior surfaces of lens (Fig. 23.10). **In patients with mature cataract**, **fourth image** (formed by posterior surface of the lens) is absent, i.e. three Purkinje images are formed. **In aphakia**, **third and fourth** Purkinje images (formed by anterior and posterior surface of lens) are absent, i.e. only two images are formed.



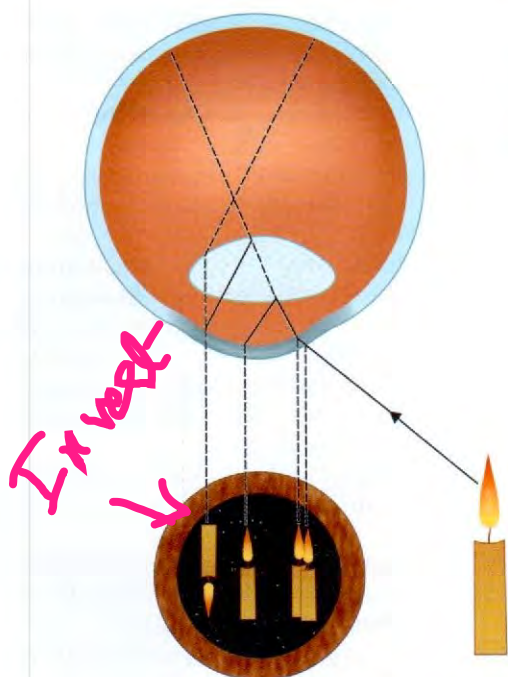


Fig. 23.10 Purkinje images

#### 14. The intraocular pressure (IOP)

The measurement of IOP (ocular tension) should be made in all suspected cases of glaucoma and in routine after the age of 40 years. A rough estimate of IOP can be made by digital tonometry. For this procedure patient is asked to look down and the eyeball is palpated by index fingers of both the hands, through the upper lid, beyond the tarsal plate. One finger is kept stationary which feels the fluctuation produced by indentation of globe by the other finger (Fig. 23.11). It is a subjective method and needs experience. When IOP is raised, fluctuation produced is feeble or absent and the eyeball feels firm to hard. When IOP is very low eye feels soft like a partially filled water bag.

The exact measurement of IOP is done by an instrument called tonometer. Indentation (Schiotz tonometer) and applanation (e.g. Goldmann's tonometer) tonometers are frequently used (for detailed techniques See pages 530–532).

- Normal IOP range is 10–21 mm of Hg with an average tension of  $16 \pm 5.0$  mm of Hg.
- Hypotony is labelled when IOP is less than 10 mm Hg. Causes of hypotony include ruptured globe, phthisis bulbi, retinal/choroidal detachment, iridocyclitis, ocular ischaemia, postoperative wound leak and traumatic ciliary body shut down.
- Glaucoma should be suspected when IOP is more than 21 mm of Hg and such patients should be thoroughly investigated.



Fig. 23.11 Technique of digital tonometry

### III. FUNDUS EXAMINATION

This is essential to diagnose the diseases of the vitreous, optic nerve head, retina and choroid. For thorough examination of the fundus pupils should be dilated with 5% phenylephrine and/or 1% tropicamide eye drops. The fundus examination can be accomplished by ophthalmoscopy (See page 606) and slit-lamp biomicroscopic examination (See page 609).

#### Observations during fundus examination

During fundus examination following observations should be made:

**1. Media.** Normally, the ocular media is transparent. Opacities in the media are best diagnosed by distant direct ophthalmoscopy, where the opacities look black against the red glow.

Causes of opacities in media are: corneal opacity, lenticular opacity, vitreous opacities (may be exudates, haemorrhage, degeneration, foreign bodies and vitreous membranes).

#### 2. Optic disc

- Size (diameter) of the optic disc is 1.5 mm which looks roughly 15 times magnified during direct ophthalmoscopy. Disc is slightly smaller in hypermetropes and larger in myopes.
- Shape of the normal disc is circular. In very high astigmatism, disc looks oblong.
- Margins of the disc are well defined in normal cases. Blurring of the margins may be seen in papilloedema, papillitis, postneuritic optic atrophy and in the presence of opaque nerve fibres.
- Colour. Normal disc is pinkish with central pallor area. (i) Hyperaemia of disc is seen in papilloedema



and papillitis, (ii) **Pale disc** is a sign of partial optic atrophy, (iii) **Chalky-white disc** is seen in primary optic atrophy, (iv) **Yellow-waxy disc** is typical of consecutive optic atrophy.

- **Cup-disc ratio.** Normal cup disc ratio is 0.3. (i) **Large cup** may be physiological or glaucomatous. (ii) **Cup becomes full** in papilloedema and papillitis.
- **Splinter haemorrhages** on the disc may be seen in primary open angle glaucoma, normal tension glaucoma and papilloedema.
- **Neovascularization** of the disc may occur in diabetic retinopathy, CRVO and sickle-cell retinopathy.
- **Opticociliary shunt** is a sign of orbital meningioma.
- **Peripapillary crescent** is seen in myopia.
- **Kesten-Baum index** refers to ratio of large blood vessels versus small blood vessels on the disc. Normal ratio is 4:16. This ratio is **decreased** in patients with optic atrophy and **increased** in papilloedema.

**3. Macula.** The macula is situated at the posterior pole with its centre (foveola) being about 2 disc diameters lateral to temporal margin of disc. Normal macula is slightly darker than the surrounding retina. Its centre imparts a bright reflex (foveal reflex). Following abnormalities may be seen on the macula:

- **Macular hole.** It looks red in colour with punched-out margins.
- **Macular haemorrhage** is red and round.
- **Cherry red spot** is seen in central retinal artery occlusion, Tay-Sachs disease, Niemann-Pick's disease, Gaucher's disease and Berlin's oedema.
- **Macular oedema** may occur due to trauma, intraocular operations, uveitis and diabetic maculopathy.
- **Pigmentary disturbances** may be seen after trauma, solar burn, age-related macular degeneration (ARMD), central chorioretinitis and chloroquine toxicity.
- **Bull's eye macular lesions** are seen in ARMD, Stargardt disease, chloroquine retinopathy and cone dystrophy.
- **Hard exudates.** These may be seen in hypertensive retinopathy, exudative diabetic maculopathy, Coat's disease, CNVM.
- **Macular scarring.** It may occur following trauma and disciform macular degeneration.
- **Elevated macular region** occurs in central serous chorioretinopathy (CSCR).

**4. Retinal blood vessels.** Normal arterioles are bright red in colour and veins are purplish with a caliber ratio of 2:3. Following abnormalities may be detected:

- **Narrowing of arterioles** is seen in hypertensive retinopathy, arteriosclerosis, and central retinal artery occlusion.

- **Tortuosity of veins** occurs in diabetes mellitus, central retinal vein occlusion and blood dyscrasias.
- **Sheathing of vessels** may be seen in periphlebitis retinae (Eale's disease, sarcoidosis, syphilis, tuberculosis, Behcet's disease, AIDS) and hypertensive retinopathy.

• **Vascular pulsations.** Venous pulsations may be seen at or near the optic disc in 10–20% of normal people and can be made manifest by increasing the intraocular pressure by slight pressure with the finger on the eyeball. Venous pulsations are conspicuously absent in papilloedema. Arterial pulsations are never seen normally and are always pathological. The **true arterial pulsations** may be noticed in patients with aortic regurgitation, aortic aneurysm and exophthalmic goitre. True arterial pulsations are not limited to disc. While a pressure arterial pulse which is seen in patients with very high IOP or very low blood pressure is limited to the optic disc.

**5. General background.** Normally, the general background of fundus is pinkish red in colour.

- **Physiological variations** include dark red background in black races and tessellated or tigroid fundus due to excessive pigment in the choroid.

• Following abnormal findings may be seen in various pathological states:

- **Superficial retinal haemorrhage** may be found in hypertension, diabetes, trauma, venous occlusions, and blood dyscrasias.

• **Deep retinal haemorrhages** are typically seen in diabetic retinopathy.

• **Cotton wool spots (old name soft exudates)** appear as whitish fluffy spots with indistinct margins. These may occur in hypertensive retinopathy, toxæmic retinopathy of pregnancy, diabetic retinopathy, anaemias and collagen disorders like DLE, PAN and scleroderma.

• **Hard exudates** are small, discrete yellowish, waxy areas with crenated margins. Common causes are diabetic retinopathy, hypertensive retinopathy, Coat's disease and circinate retinopathy.

• **Colloid bodies also called drusen** occur as numerous minute, whitish, refractile, mainly involving the posterior pole. They are seen in senile macular degeneration and Doyme's honeycomb dystrophy.

• **Pigmentary disturbance** may be seen in tapetoretinal dystrophies, e.g. retinitis pigmentosa and healed chorioretinitis.

• **Microaneurysms** are seen as multiple tiny dot-like dilatations along the venous end of capillaries. They are commonly found in diabetic retinopathy. Other causes include hypertensive retinopathy,



retinal vein occlusions, Eales' disease and sickle cell disease.

- **Neovascularization of retina** occurs in hypoxic states like **diabetic retinopathy**, Eales' disease, **sickle-cell retinopathy**, and following central retinal vein occlusion.
- **Tumours of fundus** include **retinoblastoma**, **astrocytoma** and **melanomas**.
- **Peripheral retinal degenerations** include lattice degeneration, paving stone degeneration, white areas with and without pressure.
- **Retinal holes** are seen as punched out red areas with or without operculum. These may be round or horse-shoe in shape or **giant tears**.
- **Proliferative retinopathy** is seen as **disorganized mass of fibrovascular tissue** in patients with proliferative diabetic retinopathy, sickle cell retinopathy, following trauma, in Eales' disease and retinopathy of prematurity.
- **Retinal detachment**: Retina looks **grey, raised and folded**.

#### IV. VISUAL FIELD EXAMINATION

Examination of visual fields is important in many eye diseases. Technique of visual field examination is described on Page 532. Common types of field defects and their causes are mentioned below:

- **Altitudinal field defects**: Ischaemic optic neuropathy, optic disc disease, high myopia and optic neuritis.
- **Enlargement of blind spot**: Glaucoma, papilloedema, optic disc drusen, coloboma of optic disc, medullated nerve fibers, and myopic disc with a crescent.
- **Central scotoma**: Macular disease, optic neuritis, toxic amblyopia, tumours compressing the nerve.
- **Constriction of peripheral fields**: Glaucoma, retinitis pigmentosa, after panretinal photocoagulation, central retinal artery occlusion with cilioretinal artery sparing, and chronic papilloedema.
- **Homonymous hemianopia**: Lesion of the optic tract, lateral geniculate body, optic radiations in temporal, parietal or occipital lobe lesions of the brain such as stroke, tumours, aneurysm and trauma.
- **Bitemporal hemianopia**: Lesions involving optic chiasma, such as pituitary adenoma, meningioma, craniopharyngioma and glioma.
- **Binasal field defects**: Tumours or aneurysm compressing both optic nerves, or chiasma, chiasmatic arachnoiditis, bilateral occipital disease, bitemporal retinal disease (e.g. retinitis pigmentosa) and glaucoma.
- **Arcuate scotoma**: Glaucoma, optic disc drusen, high myopia, ischaemic optic neuropathy and optic neuritis.

#### RECORD OF OPHTHALMIC CASE

Both right and left eye should be examined and findings should be recorded in ophthalmic clinical case sheet (Appendix I, page 547).

### TECHNIQUES OF OCULAR EXAMINATION AND DIAGNOSTIC TESTS

#### OBLIQUE ILLUMINATION

See page 587.

#### TONOMETRY

The intraocular pressure (IOP) is measured with the help of an instrument called *tonometer*. Two basic types of tonometers available are: **indentation** and **applanation**.

##### Indentation tonometry

Indentation (impression) tonometry is based on the fundamental fact that a **plunger will indent a soft eye more than a hard eye**. The indentation tonometer in current use is that of Schiotz, who devised it in 1905 and continued to refine it through 1927. Because of its simplicity, reliability, low price and relative accuracy, it is the **most widely used tonometer** in the world.

**Schiotz tonometer**. It consists of (Fig. 23.12):

- **Handle** for holding the instrument in vertical position on the cornea;
- **Footplate** which rests on the cornea;

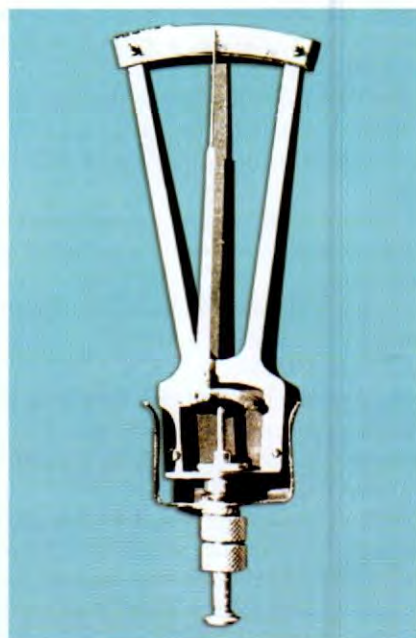


Fig. 23.12 Schiotz tonometer



- **Plunger** which moves freely within a shaft in the footplate;
- **Bent lever** whose short arm rests on the upper end of the plunger and a long arm which acts as a pointer needle. The degree to which the plunger indents the cornea is indicated by the movement of this needle on a scale; and

- **Weights:** a 5.5 gm weight is permanently fixed to the plunger, which can be increased to 7.5 and 10 gm

**Technique of Schiotz tonometry.** Before tonometry, the footplate and lower end of plunger should be sterilized. For repeated use in multiple patients it can be sterilized by dipping the footplate in ether, absolute alcohol, acetone or by heating the footplate in the flame of spirit.

After anaesthetising the cornea with paracaine or 2–4 per cent topical xylocaine, patient is made to lie supine on a couch and instructed to fix at a target on the ceiling. Then the examiner separates the lids with left hand and gently rests the footplate of the tonometer vertically on the centre of cornea. The reading on scale is recorded as soon as the needle becomes steady (Fig. 23.13).

It is customary to start with 5.5 gm weight. However, if the scale reading is less than 3, additional weight should be added to the plunger to make it 7.5 gm or 10 gm, as indicated; since with Schiotz tonometer the greatest accuracy is attained if the deflection of lever is between 3 and 4. In the end, tonometer is lifted and a drop of antibiotic is instilled.

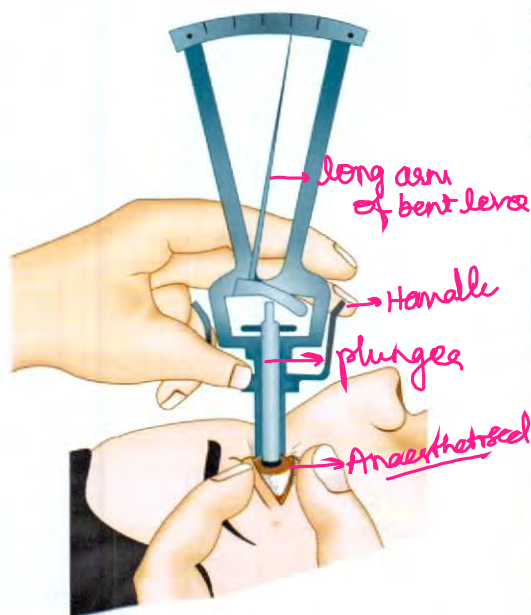


Fig. 23.13 Technique of Schiotz tonometry

A conversion table is then used to derive the intraocular pressure in mm of mercury (mm Hg) from the scale reading and the plunger weight.

The **main advantages** of Schiotz tonometer are that it is cheap, handy and easy to use. Its **main disadvantage** is that it gives a false reading when used in eyes with abnormal scleral rigidity. False low levels of IOP are obtained in eyes with low scleral rigidity as seen in high myopes and following ocular surgery.

### Applanation tonometry

The concept of applanation tonometry was introduced by Goldmann in 1954. It is based on **Imbert-Fick law** which states that the pressure inside a sphere (P) is equal to the force (W) required to flatten its surface divided by the area of flattening (A); i.e.  $P = W/A$ .

The commonly used applanation tonometers are:  
**1. Goldmann tonometer.** Currently, it is the most popular and accurate tonometer. It consists of a double prism mounted on a standard slit-lamp. The prism *applanates* the cornea in an area of 3.06 mm diameter.

**Technique** (Fig. 23.14). After anaesthetising the cornea with a drop of 2% xylocaine and staining the tear film with fluorescein patient is made to sit in front of slit-lamp. The cornea and biprisms are illuminated with cobalt blue light from the slit-lamp. Biprism is then advanced until it just touches the apex of cornea. At this point, two fluorescent semicircles are viewed through the prism. Then, the applanation force against cornea is adjusted until the inner edges of the two semicircles just touch (Fig. 23.15). This is the end point. The intraocular pressure is determined by multiplying the dial reading with ten.



Fig. 23.14 Technique of applanation tonometry



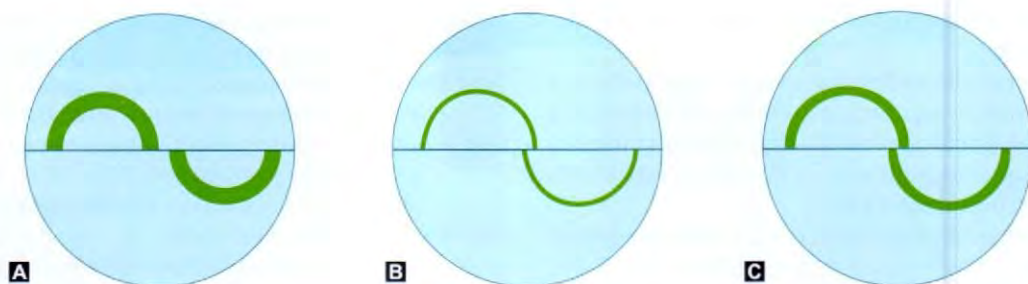


Fig. 23.15 End point of applanation tonometry; A, Too small; B, Too large; C, End point

**2. Perkin's applanation tonometer** (Fig. 23.16). This is a hand-held tonometer utilizing the same biprism as in the Goldmann applanation tonometer. It is small, easy to carry and does not require slit-lamp. However, it requires considerable practice before, reliable readings can be obtained.

**3. Pneumatic tonometer.** In this, the cornea is applanated by touching its apex by a silastic diaphragm covering the sensing nozzle (which is connected to a central chamber containing pressurised air). In this tonometer, there is a pneumatic-to-electronic transducer, which converts the air pressure to a recording on a paperstrip, from where IOP is read.

**4. Pulse air tonometer** is a handheld, noncontact tonometer that can be used with the patient in any position.

**5. Tono-Pen** is a computerised pocket tonometer. It employs a microscopic transducer which applanates the cornea and converts IOP into electric waves.

### Tonography

Tonography is a non-invasive technique for determining the facility of aqueous outflow (C-value). The C-value is expressed as aqueous outflow in microlitres per minute per millimetre of mercury. It is estimated by placing Schiotz tonometer on the eye for 4 minutes. For a graphic record the electronic Schiotz tonometer is used. C-value is calculated from special tonographic tables taking into consideration

the initial IOP ( $P_0$ ) and the change in scale reading over the 4 minutes.

Clinically, C-value does not play much role in the management of a glaucoma patient. Although, in general, C-values more than 0.20 are considered normal, between 0.2 and 0.11 border line, and those below 0.11 abnormal.

### TECHNIQUES OF FUNDUS EXAMINATION

- A. **Ophthalmoscopy**, and
- B. **Slit-lamp biomicroscopic examination** of the fundus by:
  - **Indirect slit-lamp biomicroscopy**,
  - **Hruby lens biomicroscopy**,
  - **Contact lens biomicroscopy**
 (For details See page 606).

### PERIMETRY

**Visual field** is a three-dimensional area of a subject's surroundings that can be seen at any one time around an object of fixation. Traquair described it as an "island of vision surrounded by a sea of darkness". The extent of normal visual field with a 5 mm white colour object is superiorly 50°, nasally 60°, inferiorly 70° and temporally 90° (Fig. 23.17). The field for blue and yellow is roughly 10° less and that for red and green colour is about 20° less than that for white. Perimetry with a red colour object is particularly useful in the diagnosis of bitemporal hemianopia due to chiasmal compression and in the central scotoma of retrobulbar neuritis.

The visual field can be divided into central and peripheral field (Fig. 23.17):

**Central, field** includes an area from the fixation point to a circle 30° away. The central zone contains physiologic blind spot on the temporal side.

**Peripheral field of vision** refers to the rest of the area beyond 30° to outer extent of the field of vision.

**Isopter.** Visual field, i.e. the three dimensional hill of vision can be divided into many isopters depending upon the perception sensitivity. Thus each isopter



Fig. 23.16 Perkin's hand-held applanation tonometer



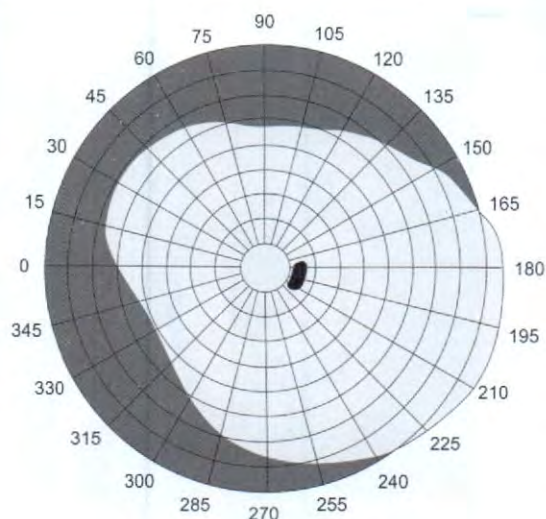


Fig. 23.17 Extent of normal visual field

can be defined as a threshold line forming points of equal sensitivity on a visual field chart.

**Scotoma** refers to an area of loss of vision totally (absolute scotoma) or partially (relative scotoma) in the visual field.

### Methods of estimating the visual fields

**Perimetry.** It is the procedure for estimating extent of the visual fields. It can be classified as below:

#### Kinetic versus static perimetry

**Kinetic perimetry.** In this, the stimulus of known luminance is moved from a peripheral non-seeing point towards the centre till it is perceived to establish the **isopters**. Various methods of kinetic perimetry are: confrontation method, Lister's perimetry, tangent screen scotometry and Goldmann's perimetry.

**Static perimetry.** This involves presenting a stimulus at a predetermined position for a preset duration with varying luminance in the field of vision. Various methods of static perimetry adopted are Goldmann perimetry, Friedmann perimetry, automated perimetry.

#### Peripheral versus central field charting

##### Peripheral field charting

- Confrontation method
- Perimetry: Lister's, Goldmann's and automated

##### Central field charting

- Campimetry or scotometry
- Goldmann's perimetry
- Automated field analysis.

### Manual versus automated perimetry

- Manual perimetry
- Automated perimetry.

#### A. MANUAL PERIMETRY

Most of the kinetic methods of field testing are done manually as described below:

**1. Confrontation method.** This is a rough but rapid and extremely simple method of estimating the peripheral visual field. Assuming the examiner's fields to be within the normal range, they are compared with patient's visual fields.

The patient is seated facing the examiner at a distance of 1 metre. While testing the left eye, the patient covers his right eye and looks into the examiner's right eye. The examiner occludes his left eye and moves his hands in from the periphery keeping it midway between the patient and himself. The patient and the examiner ought to see the hand simultaneously, for the patient's field to be considered normal. The hand is moved similarly from above, below and from right and left.

**2. Lister's perimetry** (Fig. 23.18). It has a metallic semicircular arc, graded in degrees, with a white dot for fixation in the centre. The arc can be rotated in different meridians. Though not in much use now-a-days, the Lister's perimetry is useful for peripheral field charting.

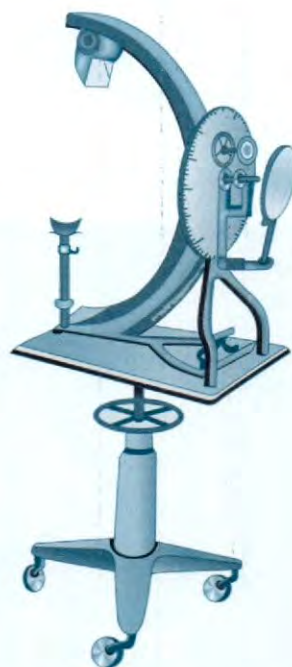


Fig. 23.18 Lister's perimetry



The patient is seated facing the arc with his chin firmly in the chin-rest. With one eye occluded, he fixates the white dot in the centre. A test object (usually white and of size 3 to 5 mm) is moved along the arc from extreme periphery towards the centre, and the point at which the patient first sees the object is registered on a chart. The arc is moved through  $30^\circ$  each time and 12 such readings are taken. The details of the object regarding its colour and size are noted.

**3. Campimetry** (scotometry), though not used now-a-days, it is useful to evaluate the central and paracentral area ( $30^\circ$ ) of the visual field. For it, the Bjerrum's screen of either 1 metre or 2 metres square is used (Fig. 23.19). Accordingly, the patient is seated at a distance of 1 metre or 2 metres, respectively. The screen has a white object for fixation in its centre, around which are marked concentric circles from  $5^\circ$  to  $30^\circ$ . The patient fixates at the central dot with one eye, the other being occluded. A white target (1–10 mm diameter) is brought in from the periphery towards the centre in various meridians. Initially the physiologic blind spot is charted, which corresponds to the optic nerve head and is normally located about  $1-5^\circ$  temporal to the fixation point. Dimensions of blind spots are horizontally  $7-8^\circ$  and vertically  $10-11^\circ$ .

▪ *Central/paracentral scotomas* can be found in optic neuritis and open angle glaucoma.

**4. Goldmann's perimeter** (Fig. 23.20). It consists of a hemispherical dome. Its main advantage over the tangent screen is that the test conditions and the intensity of the target are always the same. It permits greater reproducibility.

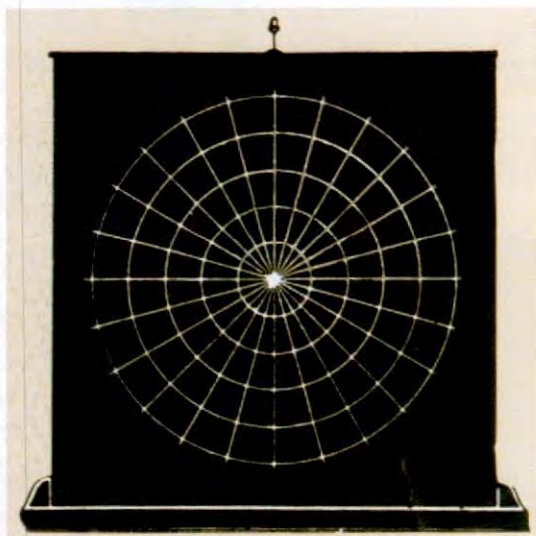


Fig. 23.19 Bjerrum's screen



Fig. 23.20 Goldmann's perimeter

**Note.** Presently, the Goldmann perimeter is not in much use.

## B. AUTOMATED PERIMETRY

*Automated perimeters* are computer assisted and test visual fields by a static method. The automated perimeters automatically test suprathreshold and threshold stimuli and quantify depth of field defect. Commonly used automated perimeters are: Octopus, Field Master and Humphrey field analyser (Fig. 23.21).

### Advantages of automated perimetry over manual perimetry

Presently, automated perimetry has almost completely replaced the manual perimetry because of the following advantages:

- Automated computerized perimetry offers an unprecedented flexibility, a level of precision and consistency of test method that are not generally possible with manual perimetry.



Fig. 23.21: Humphrey field analyser (automated perimeter)



- Other important advantages of automated perimeters are data storage capability, ease of operation, well controlled fixation, menu driven software and on line assistance making them easy to learn and use and monitor progression of disease.
- Automated perimetry also provides facility to compare results statistically with normal individuals of the same age group and with previous tests of the same individual.

### Interpretation of automated perimetry print out field charts

Before embarking on the interpretation of automated perimetry printout field charts, it will be worthwhile to have a knowledge about:

- Automated perimeter variables and
- Testing strategies and programmes.

The following description is mainly based on Humphrey's Field Analyzer (HFA).

### Automated perimeter variables

**1. Background illumination.** HFA uses 31.5 apostilb (asb) background illumination. Apostilb (asb) is a unit of brightness per unit area (and is defined as  $35^{-1}$  candela/m<sup>2</sup>).

**2. Stimulus intensity.** HFA uses projected stimuli which can be varied in *intensity* over a range of more than 5% log units (51 decibels) between 0.08 and 10,000 asb. In decibel notation (db), the value refers to retinal sensitivity rather than to stimulus intensity. Therefore, 0 db corresponds to 10,000 asb and 51 db to 0.08 asb (Fig. 23.22). In contrast to kinetic perimetry, the higher numbers indicate a logarithmic reduction in test object brightness, and hence greater sensitivity of vision (Fig. 23.22).

**3. Stimulus size.** HFA usually offers five sizes of stimuli corresponding to the Goldmann perimeter

stimuli I through V. Unless otherwise instructed, the standard target size for automated perimetry is equivalent to Goldmann size III (4 mm<sup>2</sup>) white target.

**4. Stimulus duration.** Stimulus duration should be shorter than the latency time for voluntary eye movements (about 0.25 sec.). HFA uses a stimulus duration of 0.2 sec. while octopus has 0.1 sec.

### Testing strategies and programmes

The visual threshold is the physiologic ability to detect a stimulus under defined testing conditions. The normal threshold is defined as the mean threshold in normal people in a given age group at a given location in the visual field. It is against these values that the machine compares the patient's sensitivity. Thresholds are reported in decibels in a range of 0–50. Fifty decibels (db) is the dimmest target the perimeter can project. 0 db is the brightest illumination the perimeter can project. The lower the decibel value the lower the sensitivity; the higher the decibel value, the higher is the sensitivity.

Two basic testing strategies are used in automated static perimetry:

**A. Suprathreshold testing.** It uses targets that are well above the brightness that the patient should be able to see (suprathreshold). It is simply a screening procedure to detect gross defects. It should not be used to monitor glaucoma. Strategies for suprathreshold testing include:

- Screening central >6 points.
- Full field 120 points.

**B. Threshold testing.** Threshold is the dimmest target that the patient can see at a test location. Threshold testing provides more precise results than suprathreshold testing and is thus preferred by most clinicians, although it takes more time and the equipment often costs more. Strategies used for threshold testing are:

**1. Full threshold testing.** A full threshold test determines the threshold value at each point by the bracketing technique (4-2 on the Humphrey and 4-2-1 on the Octopus perimeter). In it, a stimulus is presented at a test point for 0.2 seconds and the machine waits for Yes/No response. If the stimulus is not seen, the intensity of the stimulus is increased in 4 db steps till it is seen. Once the threshold is crossed, the stimulus intensity is decreased in 2 db steps till the stimulus is not seen. A full threshold test is appropriate for a patient's first test, because it crosses the threshold twice (first with a 4 db increment). Accurately determined threshold values make subsequent tests easier because it allows the perimeter to begin with

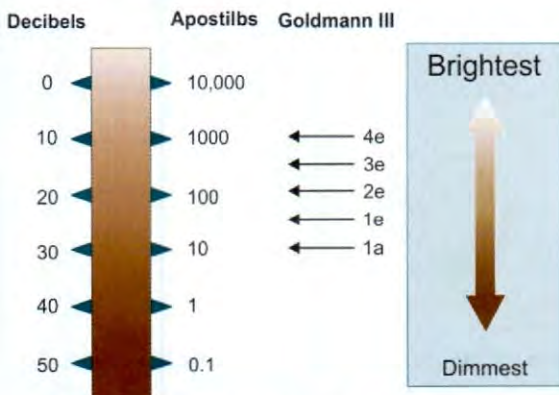


Fig. 23.22 Stimulus intensity scales compared



the previous threshold values for determining future data points. Full threshold test is, however, a time consuming process.

**2. Fast Pac.** It is a more rapid testing strategy where the threshold is only crossed once (in 3 dB increments), but this strategy is often not appropriate.

**3. SITA (Swedish Interactive Threshold Algorithm).** It is a strategy of threshold testing which dramatically reduced test time. It is available as SITA-standard and SITA-fast.

### Test programmes

The standard test programmes used with static threshold strategy on the *Humphrey's Field Analyser (HFA)* can be grouped as below:

#### A. Central field tests

- Central 30-2 test,
- Central 24-2 test,
- Central 10-2 test, and
- Macular test.

#### B. Peripheral field tests

- Peripheral 30/60-1,
- Peripheral 30/60-2,
- Nasal step, and
- Temporal crescent.

#### C. Speciality tests

- Neurological-20,
- Neurological-50,
- Central 10-12, and
- Macular test.

#### D. Custom tests

**Central field tests** are more commonly required. These include:

**1. Central 30-2 test** It offers the most comprehensive form of visual field assessment of the central 30 degrees. It consists of 76 points 6 degrees apart on either side of the vertical and horizontal axes, such that the inner most points are three degrees from the fixation point.

**2. Central 24-2 test.** In it, 54 points are examined. It is near similar to the 30-2 test except that the two peripheral nasal points at 30 degrees on either side of the horizontal axis are not included while testing the central 24 degrees.

**3. Central 10-2 test.** When most points in the *arcuate region* between 10 and 30 degrees show marked depression then this test helps to assess and follow-up 68 points 2 degrees apart in the central 10 degree are examined.

**4. Macular grid test** is used when the field is limited to central 5 degrees. This test examines 10 points spaced on a 29 degree square grid centred on the point of fixation.

### Evaluation of Humphrey single-field printout

The standard HFA single field printout is obtained using a software called *Statpac printout*. For the purpose of evaluation, the Humphrey single-field printout (Statpac printout) with central 30-2 test can be studied by arbitrarily dividing it in eight parts or zones I to VIII as described below (Fig. 23.23):

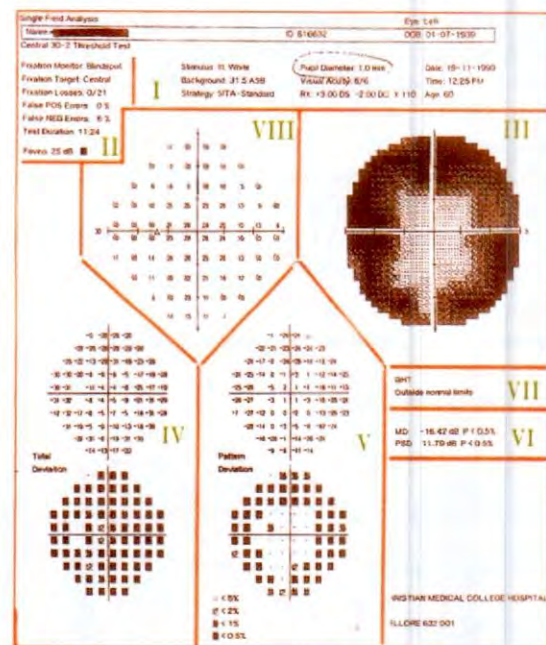
**I. Patient data and test parameters.** At the top of printout page ( Fig. 23.23 part I ) are printed:

- *Patients data* (name, date of birth, eye (right/left) pupil size, visual acuity).
- *Test parameters* (test name, strategy, stimulus used, background).

**II. Reliability indices.** The part II of the printout shows the reliability indices and test duration (Fig. 23.23). The visual field examination is considered unreliable if three or more of the following reliability indices have below mentioned values:

- Fixation losses >20%,
- False positive error >33%,
- False negative error  $\geq 33\%$ ,
- Short-term fluctuations  $\geq 4.0$  dB,
- Total questions  $\geq 400$ .

**III. Greyscale simulation** of the test data is depicted in Zone III or part III of the printout (Fig. 23.23). The darker the printout, the worse is the field. The gray scale provides the field defects at a glance.



**Fig. 23.23** Arbitrary division of humphrey single field printout (Statpac printout) with central 30-2 test in parts for the purpose of description and understanding



However, in general we do not make a diagnosis based on the greyscale. The main emphasis on statistical help shows in part IV to VIII of the printout in Fig. 23.23 (threshold values).

**IV. Total deviation plots** provide the deviation of patient's threshold values from that of age corrected normal data. The two total deviation plots are numeric value plot and the probability plot (greyscale symbol plot).

- **Numeric value plot** represents the differences in decibels.
- **Zero value** means that the patient has the expected threshold for that age.
- **Positive numbers** reflect points that are more sensitive than average for that age; whereas
- **Negative numbers** reflect points that are depressed compared with the average.
- **Probability plot** (greyscale symbol plot). In the lower half of part of zone IV of the printout, the total deviation plot is represented graphically. The darker the graphic representation the more significant it is.

**Note.** In general, the total deviation plot is an indicator of the general depression and is not capable of revealing the hidden scotomas that may be present in the overall depressed field.

**V. Pattern deviation plots.** The two pattern deviation plots (*numeric pattern deviation plot and probability pattern deviation plot*) shown in part V of the printout are similar to the total deviation plots except that here Statpac software has corrected the results for the changes caused by cataract, small pupil, refractive error, etc.

**VI. Global indices** are depicted in part VI of the printout. Global indices refer to some calculations made by Statpac to provide overall guidelines to help the practitioner assess the field results as a whole rather than on point-to-point basis as shown in the total deviation and pattern deviation plots.

Below mentioned four global indices are provided with the full threshold program which summarize the status of the visual field at a glance. Principally, the global indices are used to monitor progression of glaucomatous damage rather than for initial diagnosis.

1. **Mean deviation (MD).** This is the mean difference (in decibel value) between the normative data for that age compared with that of collected data. It is more an indicator of the general depression of the field. Worse than normal value is indicated by a negative value.

2. **Pattern standard deviation (PSD).** It is a measure of variability within the field, i.e. it measures the difference between a given point and adjacent points. It actually points out towards localized field loss and is most useful in identifying early defects. 'P' values are assigned to if PSD exceeds that found in 90% of the normals. It loses its advantage in marked depression.
3. **Short-term fluctuation (SF).** It is a measure of the variability between two different evaluations of the same 10 points in the field. A high SF means either decreased reliability or an early finding indicative of glaucoma. It is not available with SITA strategy in order to shorten the test time
4. **Corrected pattern standard deviation (CPSD).** It is the PSD corrected for SF. It indicates the variability between adjacent points that may be due to disease rather than due to intra-test variability. Thus, the CPSD is useful in identifying a local scotoma

**VII. Glaucoma hemifield test (GHT)** compares the five clusters of points in the upper field (above the horizontal midline) with the five mirror images in the lower field. These clusters of points have been developed based on the anatomical distribution of the nerve fibres and are specific to the detection of glaucoma. Depending upon the differences between the upper and lower clusters of points the following five messages may be displayed:

- **Outside normal limits.** The GHT outside normal limits denotes that either the values between upper and lower clusters differ to an extent found in less than 1% of the population or any one pair of clusters is depressed to the extent that would be expected in less than 0.5% of the population.
- **Border line.** The GHT is considered border line when the difference between any one of the upper and lower mirror clusters is what might be expected in less than 3% of population.
- **General reduction in sensitivity.** The GHT is considered to have general reduction in sensitivity if the best part of visual field is depressed to an extent expected in less than 0.5% of the population.
- **Abnormally high sensitivity** is labelled when the best part of the visual field is such as would be found in less than 0.5% of the population.
- **Within normal limits** GHT is considered within normal limits when none of the above criteria is met.

**VIII. Actual threshold values** shown in part VIII of the printout (See Fig. 23.23) may be inspected for



any pattern or scotoma when clinical features are suspicious and even if all the seven other parts of the printout are normal.

▪ **Scotoma** by definition is the depressed part of the field as compared to the surrounding and not as compared to normals.

**Note.** When the actual test threshold values are below 15 dB, the sensitivity of the test is lost.

#### Anderson's criteria for abnormality in hemifield area

- **Localized defect** should be a cluster of at least 3 or more non-edge points which have sensitivities occurring in less than 5% of the population and one of which has sensitivity occurring in less than 1% of the population.
- **CPSD or PSD** has a value that occurs in less than 5 % of the population.
- **Glaucoma hemifield test** is abnormal.

#### Diagnosis of glaucoma field defects on HFA single field printout

See page 241.

### FUNDUS FLUORESCEIN ANGIOGRAPHY

Fundus fluorescein angiography (FFA) is a valuable tool in the diagnosis and management of a large number of fundus disorders.

Basically, FFA gives information by allowing the examiner to study the changes, produced by various fundus disorders, in the flow of fluorescein dye along the vasculature of the retina and choroid.

**Indications.** It is indicated in many disorders of ocular fundus, viz., (1) Diabetic retinopathy (2) Vascular occlusions; (3) Eales' disease. (4) Central serous retinopathy, (5) Cystoid macular oedema.

**Contraindications** include renal impairment and known allergy to fluorescein.

**Technique.** The technique of FFA comprises rapidly injecting 5 mL of 10% solution of sterile sodium fluorescein dye in the antecubital vein and taking serial photographs (with fundus camera) of the fundus of the patient who is seated with pupils fully dilated. The fundus camera has a mechanism to use blue light (420–490 nm wavelength) for exciting the fluorescein present in blood vessels and to use yellow-green filter for receiving the fluorescent light (510–530 nm wavelength) back for photography.

The first photograph is taken after 5 seconds, then every second for next 20 seconds and every 3–5 seconds for next one minute. The last pictures are taken after 10 minutes.

**Complications.** FFA is a comparatively safe procedure. Minor side effects include: discoloration of skin and

urine, mild nausea and rarely vomiting. Anaphylaxis or cardiorespiratory problems are extremely rare. However, a syringe filled with dexamethasone and antihistaminic drug alongwith other measures should be kept ready to deal with such catastrophe.

**Phases of angiogram.** Normal angiogram consists of following overlapping phases:

1. **Pre-arterial phase.** Since the dye reaches the choroidal circulation 1 second earlier than the retinal arteries, therefore in this stage choroidal circulation is filling, without any dye in retinal arteries (Fig. 23.24A) known as choroidal blush.
2. **Arterial phase.** It starts 1 second after prearterial phase and lasts until the retinal arterioles are completely filled (Fig. 23.24B).
3. **Arteriovenous phase.** This is a transit phase and involves the complete filling of retinal arterioles and capillaries with a laminar flow along the retinal veins (Fig. 23.24C).
4. **Venous phase.** In this phase, veins are filling and arterioles are emptying. This phase can be subdivided into early, mid, and late venous phase (Fig. 23.24D).

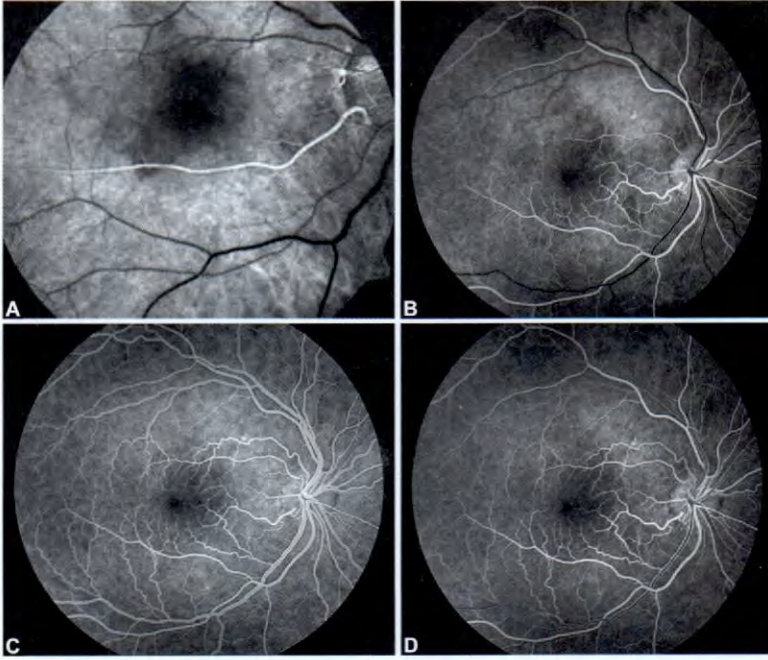
**Abnormalities detected by FFA.** In the blood, fluorescein is readily bound to the albumin. Normally, the dye remains confined to the intravascular space due to the barriers formed by the tight junctions between the endothelial cells of retinal capillaries (inner blood-retinal barrier) and that between the pigment epithelial cells (outer blood-retinal barrier).

In diseased states abnormalities in the form of hyperfluorescence and hypofluorescence may be detected on FFA.

**1. Hyperfluorescence.** The causes are:

- **Window defect** in RPE due to atrophy shows background choroidal fluorescence.
- **Pooling of dye** under detached RPE, e.g. ARMD.
- **Pooling of dye** under sensory retina after breakdown of the outer blood-retinal barrier as occur in central serous retinopathy (CSR).
- **Leakage of dye** into the neurosensory retina due to the breakdown in inner blood-retinal barrier, e.g. as seen in cystoid macular edema (CME).
- **Leakage of dye** from the choroidal or retinal neovascularization, e.g. as seen in cases of proliferative diabetic retinopathy, and subretinal neovascular membrane in age-related macular degeneration.
- **Staining**, i.e. long retention of dye by some tissues, e.g. as seen in the presence of drusen and normal optic disc.





**Fig. 23.24** Normal fluorescein angiogram: A, Pre-arterial phase; B, Arterial phase; C, Arteriovenous phase; D, Late venous phase

- *Leakage of dye* from optic nerve head as seen in papilloedema.

**2. Hypofluorescence.** The causes are:

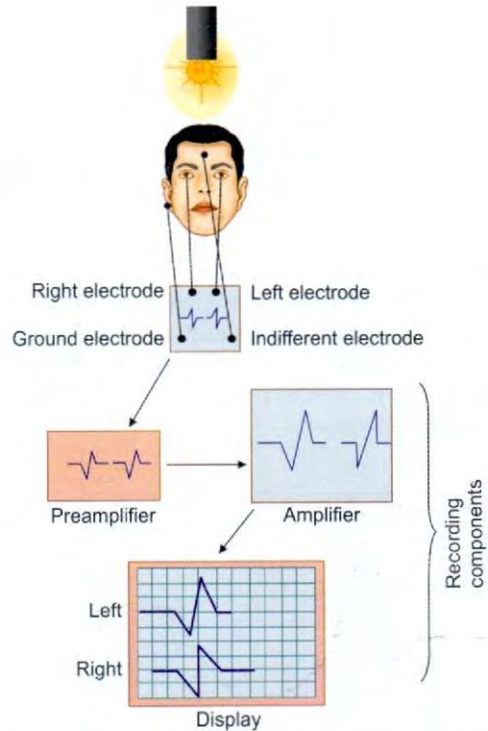
- *Blockage of background fluorescence* due to abnormal deposits on retina, e.g. as seen due to the presence of retinal haemorrhage, hard exudates and pigmented clumps.
- *Occlusion of retinal or choroidal vasculature*, e.g. as seen in central retinal artery occlusion and occlusion of capillaries in diabetic retinopathy.
- *Loss of vasculature* as occurs in patients with choroideremia and myopic degeneration.

### ELECTRORETINOGRAPHY AND ELECTRO-OCULOGRAPHY

The electrophysiological tests allow objective evaluation of the retinal functions. These include: electroretinography (ERG), electro-oculography (EOG), and visually evoked response (VER).

#### Electroretinography (ERG)

Electroretinography (ERG) is the record of changes in the resting potential of the eye induced by a flash of light. It is measured in dark adapted eye with the active electrode (fitted on contact lens) placed on the cornea and the reference electrode attached on the forehead (Fig. 23.25).



**Fig. 23.25** Technique of electroretinogram (ERG) recording



**Normal record of ERG** consists of the following waves (Fig. 23.26):

- **a-wave.** It is a negative wave possibly arising from the rods and cones (photoreceptors).
- **b-wave.** It is a large positive wave which is generated by Muller cells, but represents the activity of the bipolar cells.
- **c-wave.** It is also a positive wave representing metabolic activity of pigment epithelium (seen only in dark adapted eye).

Both scotopic and photopic responses can be elicited in ERG. Foveal ERG can provide information about the macula.

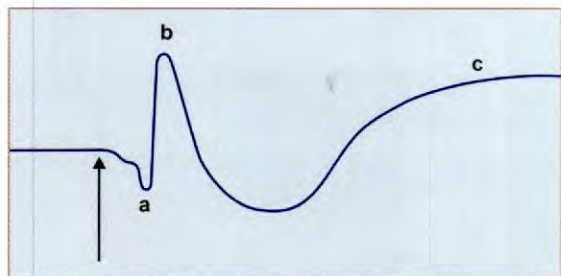
**Uses.** ERG is very useful in detecting functional abnormalities of the outer retina (up to bipolar cell layer), much before the ophthalmoscopic signs appear. However, ERG is normal in diseases involving ganglion cells and the higher visual pathway, such as optic atrophy.

**Clinical applications of ERG** include:

1. **Diagnosis and prognosis of retinal disorders** such as retinitis pigmentosa, Leber's congenital amaurosis, retinal ischaemia and other chorio-retinal degenerations.
2. **To assess retinal function when fundus examination is not possible**, e.g. in the presence of dense cataract and corneal opacity.
3. **To assess the retinal function of the babies** where possibilities of impaired vision is considered.

**Abnormal ERG response.** It is graded as follows:

1. **Subnormal response.** b-wave response is subnormal in early cases of retinitis pigmentosa even before the appearance of ophthalmoscopic signs. A subnormal ERG indicates that a large area of retina is not functioning.
2. **Extinguished response** is seen when there is complete failure of rods and cones function, e.g. advanced retinitis pigmentosa, complete retinal detachment, central retinal artery occlusion and advanced siderosis.



**Fig. 23.26** Components of normal electroretinogram (ERG)

3. A **negative response** indicates gross disturbances of the retinal circulation.

### Electro-oculography (EOG)

Electro-oculography is based on the measurement of resting potential of the eye which exists between the cornea (+ve) and back of the eye (-ve).

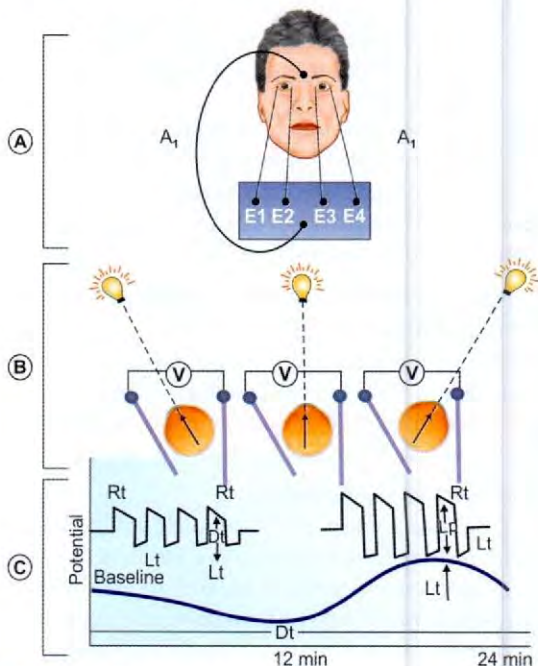
**Technique** (Fig. 23.27). Electrodes are placed over the orbital margin near the medial and lateral canthi. The patient is asked to move the eye sideways (medially and laterally) and keep there for few seconds, during which recording is done. In this procedure, the electrode near the cornea (e.g. electrode placed near lateral canthus, when the eye is rotated laterally) becomes positive. The recording is done every minute for 12 minutes. This procedure is performed first in the dark adapted stage and then repeated for light adapted stage.

Normally, the resting potential of the eye decreases during dark adaptation and reaches its peak in light adaptation.

**Interpretation of results.** Results of EOG are interpreted by finding out the Arden ratio as follows:

$$\text{Arden ratio} = \frac{\text{Maximum height of light peak}}{\text{Minimum height of dark trough}} \times 100$$

- Normal curve values are 185 or above.
- Subnormal curve values are less than 150.
- Flat curve values are less than 125.



**Fig. 23.27** Technique of electro-oculography (EOG) and normal records of electro-oculogram



**Uses.** Since, the EOG reflects the presynaptic function of the retina, any disease that interferes with the functional interplay between the retinal pigment epithelium (RPE) and the photoreceptors will produce an abnormal or absent light rise in the EOG. Thus, EOG is affected in diseases such as retinitis pigmentosa, vitamin A deficiency, retinal detachment and toxic retinopathies. Hence, EOG serves as a test that is supplementary and complementary to ERG and in certain states is more sensitive than the ERG, e.g. in diagnosis of Best's disease.

### VISUALLY EVOKED RESPONSE (VER)

As we know when light falls on the retina, a series of nerve impulses are generated and passed on to the visual cortex via the visual pathway. The changes produced in the visual cortex by these impulses can be recorded by electroencephalography (EEG) (Fig. 23.28). Thus, visually-evoked response (VER) is nothing but the EEG recorded at the occipital lobe. VER is the *only clinically objective technique available to assess the functional state of the visual system beyond the retinal ganglion cells*. Since there is disproportionately large projection of the macular area in the occipital cortex, the VER represents the macula-dominated response.

#### Techniques of VER

VER is of two types depending upon the techniques used:

**1. Flash VER.** It is recorded by using an intense flash stimulation. It merely indicates that light has been perceived by the visual cortex. It is not affected by the opacities in the lens and cornea.

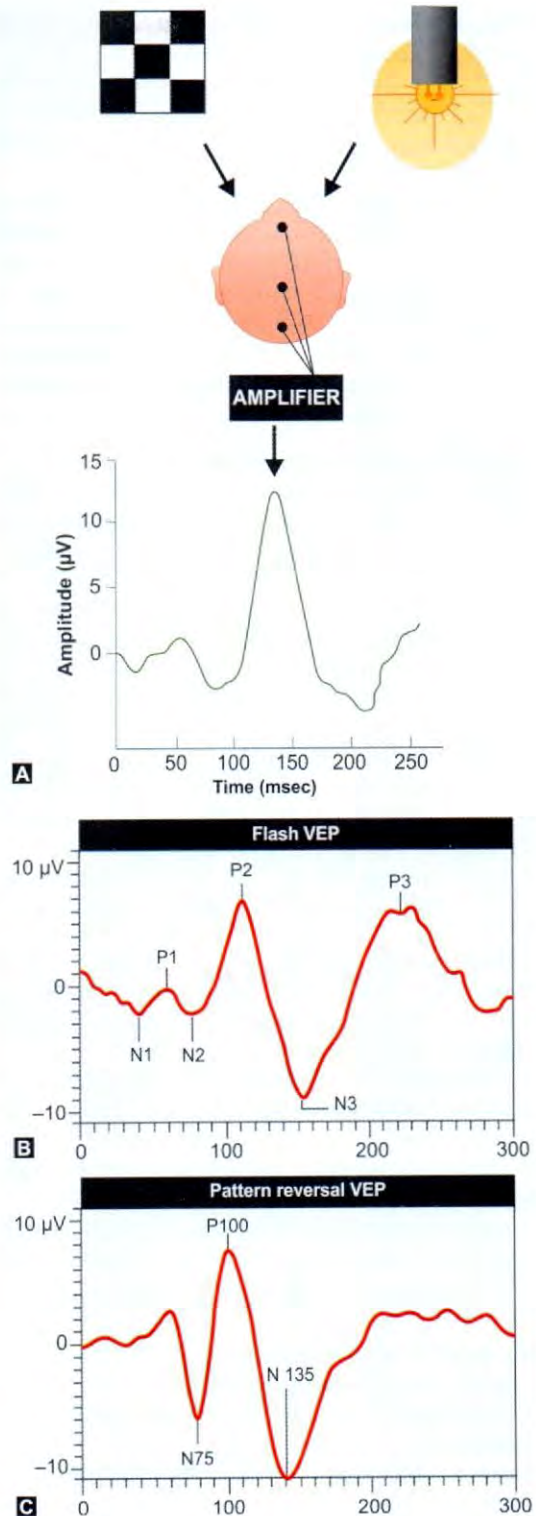
*Clinical uses include:*

- To assess the integrity of macula and visual pathway in infants, mentally retarded and aphasic patients.
- To distinguish between cases of organic and psychological blindness (e.g. malingering and hysterical blindness).
- To detect visual potentials in eyes with opaque media.

**2. Pattern reversal VER.** It is recorded using some patterned stimulus, as in the checker board. In it the pattern of the stimulus is changed (e.g. black squares go white and white become black) but the overall illumination remains same. The pattern reversal VER depends on form sense and thus may give a rough estimate of the visual acuity.

#### Normal versus abnormal record of VER

**Flash VEP** consists of series of negative and positive peaks designated in numerical sequence as  $N_1, P_1, N_2, P_2, N_3$  and  $P_3$  (Fig. 23.28B). The significant component includes  $N_2$  and  $P_2$  recorded at 90 and 120 m sec, respectively.



**Fig. 23.28** Technique of recording visually evoked response (A) and normal records of flash VEP (B) and pattern-reversal VEP (C)



**Pattern-reversal VEP** consists mainly of a positive wave ( $P_{100}$ ) and two negative waves ( $N_{75}$  and  $N_{135}$ ) (Fig. 23.28C). The commonest wave used for clinical cases is  $P_{100}$ , since it is a very robust measure with minimal interocular and intra-subject measurement variation.

**In the lesions affecting the conduction of the nerve impulse** by visual pathway (e.g. retrobulbar neuritis) the amplitude is reduced and there is delay in the transmission time. The timing of the response is more reliable than the amplitude. Increased latency is also common in macular dysfunction; therefore, a delayed VEP should not be considered pathognomic of optic nerve disease.

### ■ OCULAR ULTRASONOGRAPHY

Ultrasonography has become a very useful diagnostic tool in ophthalmology. The diagnostic ophthalmic ultrasound is based upon 'pulse-echo' technique. Ultrasonic frequencies in the range of 10 MHz are used for ophthalmic diagnosis. Rapidly repeating short bursts of ultrasonic energy are beamed into the ocular and orbital structures. A portion of this signal is returned back to the examining probe (transducer) from areas of reflectivity. The echoes detected by the transducer are amplified and converted into display form. The processed signal is displayed on cathode ray tubes in one of the two modes: A-scan or B-scan (Fig. 23.29).

**A-scan (Time amplitude).** The A-scan produces a unidimensional image and echoes are plotted as spikes.

**Interpretation of A-scan.** (i) Distance between the two echo spikes provides an indirect measurement of tissue such as eyeball length or anterior chamber depth and lens thickness.

(ii) The height of the spike indicates the strength of the tissue sending back the echo. The cornea, lens and sclera produce very high amplitude spikes, while the vitreous membrane and vitreous haemorrhage produce lower spikes.

**B-scan (intensity modulation).** B-scan produces two dimensional dotted section of the eyeball. The location, size and configuration of the structures is easy to interpret.

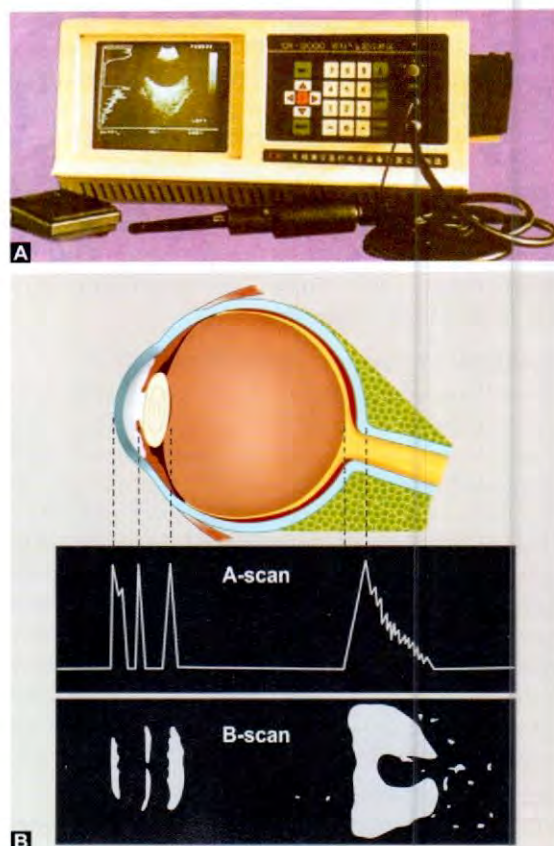
#### **Clinical uses of ocular ultrasound**

**A-scan is used for measurement of:**

- Axial length, mainly for IOL power calculation (biometry),
- Anterior chamber depth and other intraocular distances, and
- Thickness of the intraocular mass.

**B-scan is used for:**

- Assessment of posterior segment in the presence of opaque media,



**Fig. 23.29** Ophthalmic ultrasonic A and B scan machine (A) and diagrammatic depiction of echoes produced by normal ocular structures with 'A' and 'B' scan ultrasonography (B)

- Study of intraocular tumours, orbital tumours, and other mass lesions, and
- Localization of intraocular and intraorbital foreign bodies.

### ■ OPTICAL COHERENCE TOMOGRAPHY

Optical Coherence Tomography (OCT) is a diagnostic tool that can perform cross-sectional or tomographic images of biological tissues within less than 10  $\mu\text{m}$  axial resolution using light waves. The operation of OCT is analogous to USG B-mode imaging or radar except that light is used rather than acoustic or radiowaves. OCT is especially suited for diagnostic applications in ophthalmology because of the ease of optical access to the anterior and posterior segment of the eye. The information provided by OCT is akin to *in-vivo* histopathology of the structure.

**Principle.** OCT utilizes the interferometry and low coherence light in near infrared range.

**OCT machine** (Fig. 23.30) comprises: fundus viewing unit, Interferometric unit, computer display, control panel and colour inkjet printer.





Fig. 23.30 Examination on OCT machine

OCT machine is available as:

- Anterior segment OCT machine,
- Posterior segment OCT machine, and
- Combined anterior segment and posterior segment OCT machine.

**Types of OCT machines** are:

- Time domain OCT (TD-OCT).
- Frequency domain OCT (FD-OCT).
- Especially encoded frequency domain OCT (SEFD-OCT).
- Time encoded frequency domain OCT (TEFD-OCT).

**Normal OCT scan of retina** shows cross-sectional study of macula (Fig. 23.31A), and optic nerve head (ONH) region including retinal nerve fiber layer (RNFL) of the peripapillary region (Fig. 23.31B).

**Clinical applications of OCT**

#### I. Applications of anterior segment OCT

- Imaging of the anterior chamber angle,
- Pachymetry,

- Imaging of trabeculotomy blebs,
- Assessment of tumours and cysts of iris and ciliary body.

#### II. Applications of posterior segment OCT

1. **Macular disorders.** OCT is very useful in confirming macular pathologies such as macular hole (See Fig. 12.27), cystoid macular oedema (Fig. 12.25B), age-related macular degeneration (ARMD) (Fig. 12.26D), central serous retinopathy (CSR) (Fig. 12.23C) and epiretinal membrane (ERM), etc.
2. **Glaucoma diagnosis.** Optic disc scan (See Fig. 10.10C) is very useful in diagnosing and monitoring the glaucomatous changes. It is also useful in evaluating the RNFL for early (pre-perimetric) glaucoma detection.

### RELATED QUESTIONS

**Enumerate the causes of sudden painless loss of vision.**

See page 514

**Enumerate the causes of sudden painful loss of vision.**

See page 514

**Enumerate causes of gradual painless loss of vision.**

See page 514

**Enumerate the causes of gradual painful loss of vision.**

See page 514

**What are the causes of transient loss of vision (amaurosis fugax)?**

See page 514

**Enumerate the causes of night blindness (nyctalopia).**

See page 514

**Enumerate the causes of day blindness (hemeralopia).**

See page 514

**What are the causes of defective vision for near only?**

See page 515

**Name the common causes of black spots in front of the eyes.**

See page 515

**What are the causes of flashes of light in front of the eyes (photopsia)?**

See page 515

**What is the most common cause of micropsia (small size of objects), macropsia (large size of objects) and metamorphopsia (distorted shape of objects)?**

- Central chorioretinitis.

**Enumerate the causes of coloured halos.**

See page 515

**Enumerate the causes of diplopia.**

See page 515

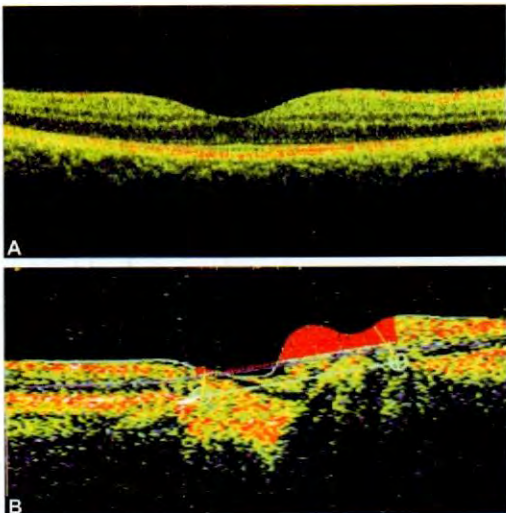


Fig. 23.31 Normal OCT scan of retina: (A) Macular region; (B) Optic disc region



**What are the causes of watering from the eyes?**

See page 408

**Enumerate the common causes of redness of eyes.**

- Conjunctivitis
- Keratitis
- Iridocyclitis
- Acute glaucomas
- Subconjunctival haemorrhage
- Endophthalmitis
- Panophthalmitis
- Ocular injuries.

**What are the common causes of pain in eyes?**

- Inflammatory conditions of lids, conjunctiva, cornea, uvea, sclera, endophthalmitis, panophthalmitis
- Acute glaucomas
- Refractive errors
- Ocular injuries
- Asthenopia.

**Enumerate the causes of the foreign body sensation.**

- Conjunctival or corneal foreign bodies
- Trichiasis
- Corneal abrasion.

**Itching in the eyes is a feature of which disease?**

- Allergic conjunctivitis (marked itching is pathognomonic of spring catarrh).

**COMMON OCULAR SIGNS****What are the causes of abnormal head posture?**

- Paralytic squint
- Severe ptosis.

**Enumerate the causes of madarosis of eyebrows.**

- Leprosy
- Myxoedema.

**Enumerate the causes of ankyloblepharon.**

- Ulcerative blepharitis
- Burns of lid margins.

**Enumerate the causes of narrow palpebral fissure.**

- Oedema of lids
- Ptosis
- Enophthalmos
- Anophthalmos
- Microphthalmos
- Phthisis bulbi
- Atrophic bulbi.

**Enumerate the causes of wide palpebral aperture.**

- Proptosis
- Buphthalmos
- Congenital cystic eyeball
- Upper lid retraction
- Facial nerve palsy.

**Enumerate the causes of lagophthalmos.**

- Facial nerve palsy
- Leprosy
- Myxoedema.

**Enumerate the causes of poliosis (greying of eyelashes).**

- Vogt-Koyanagi-Harada's disease
- Old age
- Vitiligo
- Albinism.

**Enumerate the causes of circumcorneal congestion.**

- Acute glaucomas
- Keratitis and corneal ulcer
- Acute iridocyclitis.

**Enumerate the causes of conjunctival follicles.**

- Trachoma
- Acute follicular conjunctivitis
- Chronic follicular conjunctivitis
- Benign folliculosis.

**Enumerate the causes of conjunctival papillae.**

- Trachoma
- Spring catarrh
- Allergic conjunctivitis
- Giant papillary conjunctivitis.

**Enumerate the causes of concretions.**

- Trachoma
- Degenerative conditions
- Idiopathic.

**Enumerate the causes of decreased corneal sensations.**

- Herpes simplex keratitis
- Neuroparalytic keratitis
- Leprosy
- Herpes zoster ophthalmicus
- Absolute glaucoma
- Acoustic neuroma.

**Enumerate the causes of superficial corneal vascularization.**

- Trachoma
- Phlyctenular keratoconjunctivitis
- Rosacea keratitis
- Superficial corneal ulcer.

**Enumerate the causes of deep corneal vascularization.**

- Interstitial keratitis
- Deep corneal ulcers
- Chemical burns
- Sclerosing keratitis
- After keratoplasty.

**Enumerate the causes of increased corneal thickness.**

- Corneal oedema.

**Enumerate the causes of abnormal corneal surface.**

- Corneal abrasion
- Corneal ulcer
- Keratoconus.

**Enumerate the causes of shallow anterior chamber.**

- Primary angle-closure glaucoma
- Hypermetropia
- Malignant glaucoma



- Postoperative shallow anterior chamber due to
  - Leaking wound
  - Ciliochoroidal detachment
- Corneal perforation
- Intumescent (swollen cataractous) lens
- Iris bombe formation
- Adherent leucoma.

#### **Enumerate the causes of deep anterior chamber.**

- Aphakia
- Total posterior synechiae
- Myopia
- Keratoglobus
- Keratoconus
- Anterior dislocation of lens in the anterior chamber
- Posterior perforation of the globe
- Buphthalmos.

#### **Enumerate the causes of nodules on the iris surface.**

- Granulomatous uveitis (Koeppe's and Busacca's nodules)
- Melanoma of the iris
- Tuberculoma
- Gumma.

#### **Enumerate the causes of rubeosis iridis (neovascularization of iris).**

- Diabetes mellitus
- Central retinal vein occlusion
- Chronic iridocyclitis
- Sick cell retinopathy
- Retinoblastoma.

#### **Enumerate the causes of iridodonesis.**

- Dislocation of lens
- Aphakia
- Hypermature shrunken cataract
- Buphthalmos.

#### **Enumerate the causes of hyphaema.**

- Ocular injuries
- Postoperative
- Herpes zoster iritis
- Gonococcal iritis
- Intraocular tumour
- Spontaneous (from rubeosis iridis).

#### **Enumerate the causes of hypopyon.**

- Corneal ulcer
- Iridocyclitis
- Retinoblastoma (pseudohypopyon)
- Endophthalmitis
- Panophthalmitis.

#### **What is diameter of normal pupil?**

- Diameter 3 to 4 mm
- In infancy pupil is smaller than at birth
- Myopes have larger pupil than hypermetropes.

#### **Enumerate the causes of miosis.**

- Effect of miotic drugs (parasympathomimetic drugs, e.g. pilocarpine)

- Effect of systemic morphine
- Iridocyclitis (narrow, irregular non-reacting pupil)
- Horner's syndrome
- Head injury (pontine haemorrhage)
- Senile rigid miotic pupil
- During sleep
- Argyll Robertson pupil
- Poisonings
  - Alcohol
  - Barbiturates
  - Organophosphorus compounds
  - Morphine
  - Carbolic acid
- Hyperpyrexia.

#### **Enumerate the causes of mydriasis.**

- Topical sympathomimetic drugs such as adrenaline and phenylephrine
- Topical parasympatholytic drugs such as atropine, homatropine, cyclopentolate, tropicamide
- Acute congestive glaucoma (vertically oval, large, immobile pupil)
- Absolute glaucoma
- Optic atrophy
- Retinal detachment
- Internal ophthalmoplegia
- Third nerve paralysis
- Belladonna poisoning
- Coma
- Sympathetic stimulation
  - Aortic aneurysm
  - Cervical rib
  - Mediastinal sarcoma, lymphosarcoma, Hodgkin's disease and pulmonary carcinoma
  - Emotional excitement
- Severe anaemia
- Adie's tonic pupil is larger than its fellow.

#### **Enumerate the causes of leukocoria (white reflex in pupillary area).**

- Congenital cataract
- Retinoblastoma
- Persistent hyperplastic primary vitreous
- Retrolental fibroplasia
- Toxocara endophthalmitis
- Coat's disease.

#### **Enumerate the causes of Marcus Gunn pupil.**

(In swinging, flashlight test, the pupil on the diseased side dilates on transferring light to it)

- Optic neuritis
- Optic atrophy
- Retinal detachment
- Central retinal artery occlusion
- Central retinal vein occlusion.

#### **Enumerate the causes of subluxation of lens.**

- Trauma
- Marfan's syndrome



- Homocystinuria
- Weill-Marchesani syndrome.

#### **Enumerate the causes of deposits on anterior surface of lens.**

- Vossius ring—pigmented ring seen after blunt trauma
- Pigment clumps in iridocyclitis
- Rusty (orange) deposits in siderosis bulbi.

#### **Enumerate the causes of cherry red spot.**

- Central retinal artery occlusion
- Commotio retinae (Berlin's oedema)
- Tay-Sachs' disease
- Niemann-Pick's disease
- Gaucher's disease.

#### **Enumerate the causes of macular oedema.**

- Trauma
- Intraocular operations
- Uveitis
- Diabetic maculopathy.

#### **Enumerate the causes of superficial retinal haemorrhages.**

- Hypertensive retinopathy
- Diabetic retinopathy
- Central retinal vein occlusion
- Anaemic retinopathy
- Leukaemic retinopathy
- Retinopathy of AIDS.

#### **Enumerate the causes of soft exudates on the retina.**

- Hypertensive retinopathy
- Retinopathy of toxæmia of pregnancy
- Diabetic retinopathy
- Anaemic retinopathy
- LE, PAN and scleroderma
- Leukaemic retinopathy
- Retinopathy of AIDS.

#### **Enumerate the causes of hard exudates on the retina.**

- Diabetic retinopathy
- Hypertensive retinopathy
- Coats' disease
- Circinate retinopathy.

#### **Enumerate the causes of neovascularization of retina.**

- Diabetic retinopathy
- Eales' disease
- Sick cell retinopathy
- Central retinal vein occlusion.

#### **Enumerate the causes of proliferative retinopathy.**

- Proliferative diabetic retinopathy
- Sick cell retinopathy
- Eales' disease
- Ocular trauma.

#### **Differential diagnosis of salt and pepper appearance of fundus.**

- Prenatal rubella
- Prenatal influenza
- Varicella
- Mumps
- Congenital syphilis.

#### **Enumerate the causes of arterial pulsations at the disc.**

- Visible arterial pulsations are always pathological
- True pulse waves are seen in:
  - Aortic regurgitation
  - Aneurysm
  - Exophthalmic goitre
- Pressure pulse is seen in:
  - Glaucoma
  - Orbital tumours.

#### **What is the significance of venous pulsations at the disc?**

- Are visible in 10 to 20% of normal people
- Are absent in papilloedema.

#### **In which condition capillary pulsations of the optic disc are seen?**

- Are seen in aortic regurgitation as a systolic reddening and diastolic paling of the disc.

#### **Enumerate the causes of enlargement of blind spot.**

- Primary open-angle glaucoma
- Papilloedema
- Medullated nerve fibres
- Drusen of the optic nerve
- Juxtapapillary choroiditis.

#### **Enumerate the causes of tubular vision.**

- Terminal stage of advanced glaucomatous field defect
- Advanced stage of retinitis pigmentosa.

#### **Enumerate the causes of ring scotoma.**

- Glaucoma
- Retinitis pigmentosa.

#### **Enumerate the causes of central scotoma.**

- Optic neuritis
- Tobacco amblyopia
- Macular hole, cyst, degeneration.

#### **Enumerate the causes of bitemporal hemianopia.**

Central lesions of chiasma:

- Pituitary tumours (common)
- Suprasellar aneurysms
- Craniopharyngioma
- Glioma of third ventricle
- Meningiomas at tuberculum sellae.

#### **Enumerate the causes of homonymous hemianopia.**

- Optic tract lesions.



# Appendix I

## Ophthalmic Clinical Case Sheet

NAME AND ADDRESS  
 AGE AND SEX  
 OCCUPATION  
 RELIGION  
 CHIEF PRESENTING COMPLAINTS  
 HISTORY OF PRESENT ILLNESS  
 PAST HISTORY  
 PERSONAL HISTORY  
 FAMILY HISTORY  
 GENERAL PHYSICAL AND SYSTEMIC EXAMINATION  
 FACIAL SYMMETRY  
 HEAD POSTURE  
 FOREHEAD  
 OCULAR EXAMINATION

RIGHT EYE

LEFT EYE

### VISUAL ACUITY

- DISTANCE (WITH AND WITHOUT GLASSES)
- NEAR

### EYEBROWS

- LEVEL
- CILIA

### ORBIT

- INSPECTION
- PALPATION

### EYEBALLS

- POSITION
- SIZE
- ALIGNMENT
- MOVEMENTS
- UNIOCLAR
- BIOCLAR

### EYELIDS

- POSITION
- MOVEMENTS
- LID MARGIN
- EYELASHES
- SKIN OF LIDS

### PALPEBRAL APERTURE

- WIDTH
- HEIGHT
- SHAPE

### LACRIMAL APPARATUS

- PUNCTA
- LACRIMAL SAC AREA
- REGURGITATION TEST
- LACRIMAL SYRINGING

### CONJUNCTIVA

- BULBAR CONJUNCTIVA
- PALPEBRAL CONJUNCTIVA
- FORNICES

### LIMBUS

### SCLERA

- DISCOLORATION
- NODULE
- ECTASIA
- ANY OTHER ABNORMALITY

### CORNEA

- SIZE
- SHAPE



RIGHT EYE

LEFT EYE

- SURFACE
- TRANSPARENCY
- ULCER
- OPACITY
- SENSATIONS
- VASCULARIZATION
- BACK OF THE CORNEA
  - KPs
  - PIGMENTATION
  - ENDOTHELIUM

**ANTERIOR CHAMBER**

- DEPTH
- CONTENTS

**IRIS**

- COLOUR
- PATTERN
- SYNECHIAE
- IRIDODONESIS
- NODULES
- NEOVASCULARIZATION
- GAP OR HOLE
- ANIRIDIA
- IRIS CYST
- ANY OTHER ABNORMALITY

**PUPIL**

- NUMBER
- SIZE
- SHAPE
- POSITION
- COLOUR
- PUPILLARY MARGIN
- PUPILLARY REACTIONS
  - DIRECT LIGHT REFLEX
  - CONSensual LIGHT REFLEX
  - SWINGING FLASHLIGHT TEST
  - NEAR REFLEX

**LENS**

- POSITION
  - APHAKIA
  - PSEUDOPHAKIA
  - SUBLUXATION
  - DISLOCATION
- SHAPE
- TRANSPARENCY
- COLOUR
- DEPOSITS ON THE ANTERIOR SURFACE
- PURKINJE-SAMSON IMAGES

**INTRAOCULAR PRESSURE**

- DIGITAL
- SCHIOTZ TONOMETER
- APPLANATION TONOMETER

**FUNDUS EXAMINATION**

- MEDIA
- DISC
- BLOOD VESSELS
- MACULAR AREA
- GENERAL BACKGROUND

**PROVISIONAL DIAGNOSIS:**

**OCULAR DIAGNOSTIC TESTS AND INVESTIGATIONS:**

**FINAL DIAGNOSIS:**

**TREATMENT:**



## Clinical Ophthalmic Cases

### INTRODUCTION

#### DISEASES OF CONJUNCTIVA

- A case of pterygium

#### DISEASES OF CORNEA AND SCLERA

- A case of corneal ulcer
- A case of corneal opacity
- A case of anterior staphyloma

#### DISEASES OF UVEAL TRACT

- A case of acute iridocyclitis
- A case of chronic iridocyclitis

#### DISEASES OF LENS

- A case of senile cataract
- A case of congenital/developmental cataract
- A case of aphakia
- A case of pseudophakia

#### GLAUCOMA

- A case of primary angle-closure glaucoma

- A case of primary open-angle glaucoma
- A case of phacomorphic glaucoma
- A case of phacolytic glaucoma

#### DISEASES OF EYELIDS

- A case of blepharitis
- A case of chalazion (Meibomian cyst)
- A case of styne
- A case of trichiasis and entropion
- A case of ectropion
- A case of ptosis

#### DISEASES OF LACRIMAL APPARATUS

- A case of chronic dacryocystitis

#### DISEASES OF ORBIT

- A case of proptosis

#### DISORDERS OF OCULAR MOTILITY

- A case of squint

#### OCULAR INJURIES

- A case of blunt ocular trauma

### INTRODUCTION

Clinical case discussion is the most important method of assessing the students' clinical acumen. In ophthalmology practical examinations, usually the students are supposed to workup a long case and 2 short cases with common eye disorders.

#### Presentation of a long case

Students are supposed to evaluate a long case under following headings:

1. Demographic data: Name, age, sex, occupation and address of the patient
2. Chief complaints
3. History
  - History of present illness
  - History of past illness
  - Personal and professional history
  - Family history
4. General physical examination and relevant systemic examination
5. Ocular examination
6. Provisional diagnosis
7. Differential diagnosis, if any

8. List of diagnostic tests required
9. Line of management.

**List of long cases.** During the 8 weeks, clinical posting in ophthalmology department, students should evaluate and write in their clinical case registers, the common long cases. These include a case of—cataract, aphakia, pseudophakia, glaucoma, iridocyclitis, corneal ulcer (bacterial, viral or fungal), corneal opacity, leukocoria, red eye, chronic dacryocystitis or epiphora and anterior staphyloma.

#### Presentation of a short case

Students are required to evaluate a short case under following headings:

1. Demographic data: Name, age, sex, occupation and address of the patient
2. Chief complaints with only one or two relevant questions of history.
3. Ocular examination
4. Diagnosis and differential diagnosis if any
5. List of important diagnostic tests
6. Line of management.



**List of short cases.** During clinical posting in the outdoor (OPD), students should see and evaluate the common short cases. These include a case of chalazion, sty, trichiasis, entropion, ectropion, ptosis, blepharitis, symblepharon, pterygium, pinguecula, phlyctenular conjunctivitis, spring catarrh, trachoma, Bitot's spots, xerosis, red eye, corneal ulcer, corneal opacity, arcus senilis, band-shaped keratopathy, anterior staphyloma, proptosis, phthisis bulbi, senile cataract (immature, mature, hypermature, nuclear), congenital cataract, traumatic cataract, aphakia, pseudophakia, iridocyclitis, absolute glaucoma, fixed dilated pupil, miosed pupil, amaurotic cat's eye reflex, etc.

### Description of clinical cases and viva questions

Description of common clinical cases and related viva questions and other miscellaneous viva questions are described chapterwise.

## DISEASES OF CONJUNCTIVA

### A CASE OF PTERYGIUM

#### Case Description

**Age and sex.** More common in males than females (2:1) and usually occurs past-middle age.

**Presenting symptoms.** Patients usually present with:

- A cosmetically unacceptable dirty white growth on the cornea. Usually, there are no other symptoms in early stages.
- Patient may experience slight irritation or foreign body sensation.
- Diminution of vision may occur due to astigmatism produced by traction on the cornea. Gross diminution of vision occurs when it encroaches upon the pupillary area.
- Occasionally, diplopia may occur due to limitation of ocular movements.
- Usually, there is history of prolonged exposure to sunny, hot, dusty atmosphere.

**Signs on examination.** A wing-shaped fold of conjunctiva encroaching upon the cornea in the area of palpebral aperture is seen (See Fig. 5.32), more commonly on the nasal than the temporal side.

- A fully-developed pterygium consists of three parts: Head (optical part present on the cornea), neck (limbal part) and body (scleral part extending between limbus and the canthus).
- Pterygium may be progressive or regressive.
- Progressive pterygium is thick, fleshy and vascular with a few infiltrates in the cornea in front of the head (called cap of pterygium).

- Regressive pterygium is thin, atrophic, attenuated with very little vascularity. There is no cap. Ultimately, it becomes membranous (pterygium siccus) but never disappears.

**Differential diagnosis:** Pterygium must be differentiated from pseudopterygium.

### Related Questions

#### What is a pterygium?

Pterygium is degenerative condition of the subconjunctival tissue which proliferates as vascularized granulation tissue and is characterized by formation of a triangular fold of conjunctiva encroaching on the cornea.

#### What is a pseudopterygium; how does it differ from the pterygium?

Pseudopterygium is a fold of bulbar conjunctiva attached to the cornea. It is formed due to adhesions of chemosed bulbar conjunctiva to the marginal corneal ulcer. It usually occurs following chemical burns of the eye.

Differences between the pterygium and pseudopterygium are depicted in Table 24.1.

#### What complications can occur in an untreated case of pterygium?

- Cystic degeneration
- Neoplastic change (rarely) to—epithelioma, fibrosarcoma or malignant melanoma.

#### How can we prevent the recurrence after surgical excision of the pterygium?

Recurrence of the pterygium after surgical excision is the main problem (30–50%). It can be reduced by any of the following measures:

**Table 24.1** Differences between pterygium and pseudopterygium

| Features   | Pterygium                                    | Pseudopterygium                             |
|------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| Etiology   | A degenerative process                       | Inflammatory process                        |
| Age        | Usually occurs in elderly persons            | Can occur at any age                        |
| Site       | Always situated in the palpebral aperture    | Can occur at any site                       |
| Stages     | Either progressive, regressive or stationary | Always stationary                           |
| Probe test | Probe cannot be passed underneath            | A probe can be easily passed under its neck |



- Preoperative use of mitomycin-C
- Postoperative use of antimitotic drops such as mitomycin-C or thiotepea
- Surgical excision with bare sclera (not followed now)
- Surgical excision with mucous membrane grafts
- *Best method* is surgical excision followed by auto-limbal conjunctival graft.

### What is a pinguecula?

Pinguecula is a degenerative condition of the conjunctiva characterised by formation of a yellowish white triangular patch near the limbus.

### What are the causes of conjunctival xerosis?

Depending upon the etiology, conjunctival xerosis can be divided into two groups:

- Parenchymatous xerosis*: It occurs due to cicatricial disorganisation of the conjunctiva as seen in following conditions:
  - Trachoma
  - Membranous conjunctivitis
  - Stevens-Johnson syndrome
  - Pemphigus
  - Pemphigoid
  - Conjunctival burns (thermal, chemical or radiational)
  - Prolonged exposure of conjunctiva as in lagophthalmos.
- Epithelial xerosis*: It occurs due to hypovitaminosis A.

### What is pannus?

Pannus is infiltration of the cornea associated with vascularization. In progressive pannus, the infiltration is seen ahead of the parallel blood vessels, while in regressive pannus it stops short and the blood vessels extend beyond the corneal haze.

## DISEASES OF CORNEA AND SCLERA

### A CASE OF CORNEAL ULCER

#### Case Description

**Age and sex.** May occur at any age in both the sexes. Comparatively males are more commonly affected due to higher chances of injury to the eyes and exposure to infection because of outdoor activity.

**Presenting symptoms.** A case of corneal ulcer presents with pain, photophobia, lacrimation, discharge, redness, swelling of eyelids and defective vision.

**Predisposing factors.** A meticulous history taking may reveal presence of any of the following predisposing factors:

- Injury to the eye by vegetative matter, nail, foreign body, etc.

- Chronic dacryocystitis
- Acute or chronic conjunctivitis
- Chronic foreign body sensation in the eye as in trichiasis and concretions
- Contact lens wear
- Use of topical steroids
- Diabetes mellitus.

**General physical and systemic examination** should be performed with specific aim to rule out presence of vitamin A deficiency, malnutrition, diabetes mellitus, source of infection in the body including nasal cavity, paranasal sinuses and teeth and gums.

**Signs on ocular examination** (See Figs 6.5 and 6.6):

- **Visual acuity** is diminished.
  - **Lids** show oedema, blepharospasm, lashes may be matted and trichiasis may be present sometimes.
  - **Lacrimal sac.** Regurgitation test is positive when there is associated chronic dacryocystitis.
  - **Conjunctiva** reveals conjunctival as well as circumcorneal congestion and chemosis. Concretions may be seen on tarsal conjunctiva due to old trachoma.
  - **Cornea** on meticulous examination may reveal:
    - Loss of normal corneal transparency.
    - **Corneal ulcer** (better seen after staining with 2% fluorescein dye) should be described with reference to its site, size, shape, depth, margins and floor. Typical features of the bacterial, fungal or viral ulcer may be seen.
    - Window reflex and Placido's disc reflex are distorted.
    - Corneal sensations may be diminished or absent.
    - Superficial peripheral corneal vascularization may be seen.
    - A descemetocoele may sometimes be seen in a deep ulcer.
  - **Anterior chamber** may or may not show pus (hypopyon). It is a feature of bacterial as well as fungal corneal ulcers.
  - **Iris** may be slightly muddy in colour.
  - **Pupil** may be small due to associated toxin-induced iritis.
  - **Intraocular pressure** is usually normal. IOP may be raised if hypopyon or associated uveitis is present. (Note: To record IOP, Schiottz tonometer is never used in corneal ulcer. Always noncontact tonometer is used).
- Differential diagnosis.** Efforts should be made to describe the type of corneal ulcer whether bacterial, fungal, viral, degenerative or nutritional.

### Related Questions

#### Define keratitis

Keratitis refers to inflammation of the cornea. It is characterized by corneal oedema, cellular infiltration



and conjunctival reaction. Keratitis may be either ulcerative or nonulcerative.

### Define corneal ulcer

Corneal ulcer may be defined as discontinuation in the normal epithelial surface of the cornea associated with necrosis of the surrounding corneal tissue. Pathologically, it is characterized by oedema and cellular infiltration.

### Classify keratitis

Keratitis can be classified in two ways: topographically and etiologically.

#### Topographical (morphological) classification

**A. Ulcerative keratitis** (corneal ulcer): It can be further classified variously as follows:

1. *Depending on location:*
  - a. Central corneal ulcer
  - b. Peripheral corneal ulcer.
2. *Depending on purulence:*
  - a. Purulent corneal ulcer or suppurative corneal ulcer (mostly bacterial and fungal corneal ulcers are purulent).
  - b. Nonpurulent corneal ulcer (most of the viral, chlamydial, allergic and other noninfective corneal ulcers are nonsuppurative).
3. *Depending upon association of hypopyon:*
  - a. Simple corneal ulcer (without hypopyon)
  - b. Hypopyon corneal ulcer.
4. *Depending upon depth:*
  - a. Superficial corneal ulcer
  - b. Deep corneal ulcer
  - c. Corneal ulcer with impending perforation
  - d. Perforated corneal ulcer.
5. *Depending upon slough formation:*
  - a. Nonsloughing corneal ulcer
  - b. Sloughing corneal ulcer.

#### B. Nonulcerative keratitis

1. *Superficial keratitis*
  - a. Superficial punctate keratitis
  - b. Diffuse superficial keratitis.
2. *Deep keratitis*
  - a. Nonsuppurative
    - Interstitial keratitis
    - Disciform keratitis
    - Keratitis profunda
    - Sclerosing keratitis
  - b. Suppurative deep keratitis
    - Central corneal abscess
    - Posterior corneal abscess.

#### Etiological classification

1. *Infective keratitis*
  - a. Bacterial
  - b. Viral

- c. Fungal
- d. Chlamydial
- e. Protozoal
- f. Spirochaetal.
2. *Allergic keratitis*
  - a. Phlyctenular keratitis
  - b. Vernal keratitis
  - c. Atopic keratitis.
3. *Trophic keratitis*
  - a. Exposure keratitis
  - b. Neuroparalytic keratitis.
4. *Keratitis associated with diseases of the skin and mucous membranes.*
5. *Keratitis associated with systemic collagen vascular disorders.*
6. *Traumatic keratitis, which may be due to mechanical trauma, chemical burns, radiational burns or thermal burns.*
7. *Idiopathic keratitis, e.g.*
  - a. Mooren's ulcer
  - b. Superior limbic keratoconjunctivitis
  - c. Superficial punctate keratitis of Thygeson.

### Name the common bacteria responsible for corneal ulceration.

Common bacteria associated with corneal ulceration are: *Pseudomonas pyocyanea*, *streptococcus pneumoniae*, *E. coli*, *Proteus*, *Klebsiella*, *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, *Neisseria meningitidis* and *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*.

### What is the prerequisite for most of the infecting agents to produce corneal ulceration?

Damage to the corneal epithelium is a prerequisite for most of the infecting organisms to produce corneal ulceration. Damage to corneal epithelium may occur in following forms:

- *Corneal abrasion* due to small foreign body, misdirected cilia, trivial trauma, etc.
- *Necrosis of epithelium* as in keratomalacia.
- *Epithelial damage* due to trophic changes as in neuroparalytic keratitis.
- *Desquamation of epithelial cells* as a result of corneal oedema, corneal xerosis and exposure keratitis.

### Name the bacteria which can invade the intact corneal epithelium and produce ulceration.

- *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*
- *Neisseria meningitidis*
- *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*.

### Name the layers of cornea.

1. Epithelium
2. Bowman's membrane
3. Corneal stroma



4. Descemet's membrane
5. Endothelium.

#### What are the pathological stages of corneal ulceration?

1. Stage of progressive infiltration
2. Stage of active ulceration
3. Stage of regression
4. Stage of cicatrization.

#### What are the characteristic features of bacterial corneal ulcer?

A clinical diagnosis of bacterial corneal ulcer is made in patients with a greyish white central or marginal ulcer associated with marked pain, photophobia, blepharospasm, lacrimation, circumcorneal congestion, purulent/mucopurulent discharge, presence or absence of hypopyon with or without vascularization.

#### What do you mean by hypopyon corneal ulcer?

A purulent corneal ulcer associated with collection of pus in the anterior chamber caused by *Pneumococcus* is called *hypopyon corneal ulcer*:

#### Name the common organisms responsible for hypopyon corneal ulceration.

1. Most fungal ulcers are associated with hypopyon.
2. Common bacteria producing hypopyon ulcer are: *Pneumococcus*, *Pseudomonas*, *Gonococcus* and *Staphylococcus*.

#### What is *ulcus serpens*?

The characteristic hypopyon ulcer caused by *Pneumococcus* is called *ulcus serpens*.

#### Name the complications of corneal ulcer.

1. Toxic iridocyclitis
2. Secondary glaucoma
3. Descemetocoele
4. Corneal perforation, which may be complicated by:
  - Iris prolapse
  - Subluxation or dislocation of the lens
  - Anterior capsular cataract
  - Purulent iridocyclitis often leading to endophthalmitis or even panophthalmitis
  - Intraocular haemorrhage in the form of a vitreous haemorrhage or expulsive choroidal haemorrhage.
5. After healing of corneal ulcer following complications may be left as sequelae:
  - Keractasia
  - Corneal opacity which may be nebular, macular, leucomatous or adherent leucoma

- Anterior staphyloma which usually follows a sloughing corneal ulceration.

#### What is a descemetocoele?

When a corneal ulcer extends up to Descemet's membrane, it herniates (bulges out) as a transparent vesicle called the descemetocoele or keratocoele.

#### What are the signs of an impending corneal perforation?

Descemetocoele formation associated with excessive corneal oedema are the signs of an impending corneal perforation.

#### What are the clinical features of perforation of corneal ulcer?

Following perforation of a corneal ulcer, immediately pain decreases and patient feels some hot fluid (aqueous) coming out of the eyes. Anterior chamber becomes shallow and iris prolapse may occur.

#### How will you manage a case of corneal ulcer?

Management of a case of corneal ulcer is as follows:

##### Clinical evaluation

1. *Meticulous history* should be taken and a thorough ocular examination including slit-lamp biomicroscopy should be carried out to reach the clinical diagnosis for the type of corneal ulcer.
2. *Regurgitation test* and syringing of lacrimal sac should be carried out to rule out associated dacryocystitis.
3. *General physical and systemic examination* should be carried out to elucidate the associated malnutrition, diabetes mellitus and any other chronic debilitating disease.

##### Laboratory investigations

1. *Routine laboratory investigations* such as haemoglobin, TLC, DLC, ESR, blood sugar and complete urine examination should be carried out in each case.
2. *Microbiological investigations*: Material is obtained by scraping the base and margins of the corneal ulcer (under topical anaesthesia) and is used for following investigations:
  - Gram and Giemsa-stained smear for possible identification of infecting organisms
  - About 10% KOH wet preparation is made for, identification of fungal hyphae
  - Culture on blood agar medium for aerobic organisms
  - Culture on Sabouraud's dextrose agar medium for fungi.



**Treatment of uncomplicated corneal ulcer**

I. *Specific treatment for the cause:* Bacterial corneal ulcer is treated by topical and systemic antibiotics.

1. It is preferable to start concentrated amikacin (40–100 mg/mL) eye drops along with fortified cephazolin (33 mg/mL) eye drops every one hourly for first 5 days and then reduced to 2 hourly, 3 hourly, 4 hourly and 6 hourly.
2. Antibiotic eye ointment should be applied at night.
3. Subconjunctival injection of gentamicin 40 mg and cephazolin 125 mg once a day for 5 days should be given in sloughing corneal ulcer.

II. *Non-specific treatment* includes:

1. Cycloplegic drugs, e.g. 1% atropine, 0.5% homatropine or cyclopentolate.
2. Systemic analgesics and anti-inflammatory drugs to relieve the pain and oedema.
3. Vitamins (A, B-complex and C) help in early healing of the ulcer.

III. *Physical and general measures:*

1. Hot fomentation gives comfort, reduces pain and causes vasodilatation.
2. Rest and good diet are useful for smooth convalescence.

**What do you mean by a nonhealing corneal ulcer? Enumerate its common causes.**

When a corneal ulcer does not start healing despite the best therapy for about 7 to 10 days it is labeled as a nonhealing corneal ulcer. Common causes of non-healing corneal ulcers are as follows:

**Local causes**

- Associated raised intraocular pressure
- Multiple large concretions
- Misdirected cilia
- An impacted foreign body
- Dacryocystitis
- Wrong diagnosis, e.g. fungal ulcer being treated as a bacterial ulcer
- Lagophthalmos
- Excessive vascularization of the ulcer area.

**Systemic causes**

- Diabetes mellitus
- Severe anaemia
- Malnutrition
- Chronic debilitating diseases
- Immuno-compromised patients
- Patients on systemic steroids.

**How will you treat a case of nonhealing corneal ulcer?**

1. *Removal of any known cause* of nonhealing: A thorough search should be made to find out any

already missed cause of nonhealing and when found it should be removed.

2. *Mechanical debridement* of the ulcer to remove necrosed material may hasten the healing.
3. *Chemical cauterization* with pure carbolic acid or 10 to 20% trichloroacetic acid may be considered in indolent cases.
4. *Peritomy*, i.e. severing of perilimbal conjunctival vessels may be useful in the presence of excessive corneal vascularization.

**What extra measures will you take for the treatment of impending perforation?**

1. Patient should be advised to avoid strain during sneezing, coughing, passing stool, etc.
2. Pressure bandage should be applied to give some external support.
3. Lowering of intraocular pressure by simultaneous use of acetazolamide 250 mg qid orally, 0.5% timolol eye drops twice a day and intravenous mannitol (20%) drip stat. Even paracentesis with slow evacuation of the aqueous from the anterior chamber may be done, if required.
4. Tissue adhesive glue such as cyanoacrylate is helpful in preventing perforation.
5. Conjunctival flap may be used to cover and support the weak tissue.
6. Bandage soft contact lenses are also useful.
7. Therapeutic keratoplasty, when available, is considered the best mode of treatment.

**How will you treat a case of perforated corneal ulcer?**

The best treatment is an immediate therapeutic keratoplasty. However, short of it, depending upon the size and location of the perforation measures like, use of a tissue glue (cyanoacrylate), bandage soft contact lens or conjunctival flap may be used over and above the conservative management with pressure bandage.

**What is a marginal catarrhal ulcer?**

Marginal catarrhal ulcer is a superficial ulcer situated near the limbus, usually seen in association with chronic staphylococcal blepharoconjunctivitis. It is thought to be caused by hypersensitivity reaction to staphylococcal toxins.

**Name the common fungi associated with mycotic corneal ulceration.**

The fungi most commonly responsible for mycotic corneal ulceration are: *Aspergillus*, *Candida* and *Fusarium*.



**What are the predisposing factors for a mycotic corneal ulcer?**

1. Injury by vegetative material.
2. Immunosuppressed patients are prone to secondary fungal ulcers.
3. Excessive use of topical antibiotics and steroids predispose the cornea for fungal infections.

**What are the characteristic features of a fungal corneal ulcer?**

1. A typical fungal corneal ulcer is dry looking, greyish white with elevated rolled out margins and delicate feathery finger-like extensions into the surrounding stroma under the intact epithelium.
2. A sterile immune ring (yellow line of demarcation) may be present where fungal antigen and host antibodies meet.
3. Multiple, small satellite lesions may be around the ulcer.
4. Usually, a massive and thick hypopyon is present even if the ulcer is very small.
5. A history of trauma (especially by vegetative material) and clinical signs out of proportion to the symptoms, i.e. less marked photophobia and lacrimation with intense ciliary and conjunctival congestion support a fungal origin.

**How will you confirm the diagnosis of a fungal corneal ulcer?**

Confirmation is made by laboratory investigations, which include examination of a wet KOH, Gram's and Giemsa-stained films for fungal hyphae and culture on Sabouraud's dextrose agar medium.

**Name the ocular antifungal drugs.**

- Polyene antifungals*, e.g.
  1. Nystatin 3.5% eye ointment
  2. Amphotericin-B (0.75 to 3% eye drops)
  3. Natamycin 5% suspension.
- Imidazole antifungal drugs*, e.g. ketoconazole, fluconazole, miconazole, clotrimazole and econazole.
- Pyrimidine*, e.g. flucytosine.
- Silver compounds*, e.g. silver sulphadiazine eye drops.

**Enumerate the ocular lesions of herpes simplex.**

Ocular involvement by herpes simplex virus (HSV) occurs in two forms:

- Primary herpes*: It is characterized by:
  1. Vesicular lesions involving the skin of lids
  2. Acute follicular conjunctivitis
  3. Fine or coarse epithelial punctate keratitis

II. *Recurrent herpes*: Its lesions are as follows:

1. Punctate epithelial keratitis
2. Dendritic ulcer
3. Geographical or amoeboid ulcer
4. Disciform keratitis.

**Describe the characteristic features of recurrent herpetic keratitis.**

Dendritic ulcer is a typical epithelial lesion of the recurrent herpetic keratitis. The ulcer is of an irregular zigzag linear branching shape (See Fig. 6.9). The branches are generally knobbed at the ends. Floor of the ulcer stains with fluorescein and the virus laden cells at the margin take up rose bengal stain. There is an associated marked diminution of the corneal sensations.

Sometimes, the branches of the dendritic ulcer enlarge and coalesce to form a large epithelial typically known as *geographical* or *amoeboid ulcer*.

**What are the features of herpes simplex virus (HSV)?**

Herpes simplex virus is an epitheliotropic, DNA virus. It is of two types: HSV type-1 which typically causes infection above the waist (herpes labialis) and HSV type-II which causes infection below the waist (herpes genitalis).

**Name the predisposing/precipitating stress stimuli which trigger an attack of herpetic keratitis.**

- Fever, especially malaria
- General ill health
- Exposure to ultraviolet rays
- Mild trauma
- Use of topical and systemic steroids
- Immunosuppression.

**What is disciform keratitis?**

Disciform keratitis is stromal keratitis which occurs due to delayed hypersensitivity reaction to the HSV antigen. It is characterized by a focal disc-shaped patch of stromal oedema without necrosis. Associated diminished corneal sensations and fine keratic precipitates differentiate it from other causes of stromal oedema.

**Name the antiviral drugs.**

Idoxuridine (IDU), trifluorothymidine (TFT), adenine arabinoside (vidarabine) and acyclovir.

**Which antiviral drug is effective for stromal viral keratitis?**

- Acyclovir.

**Enumerate the causes of decreased corneal sensations.**

- Viral keratitis, neuroparalytic keratitis, diabetic neuropathy and leprosy.



**What is herpes zoster ophthalmicus?**

Herpes zoster ophthalmicus is an acute infection of the gasserian ganglion of the fifth cranial nerve by varicella zoster virus. In it, frontal nerve is more frequently affected than the lacrimal and nasociliary nerve. About 50% cases of herpes zoster ophthalmicus develop ocular complications.

**Ocular involvement in herpes zoster ophthalmicus is associated with involvement of which nerve?**

- Nasociliary nerve.

**What are the characteristic features of herpes zoster?**

1. Fever and malaise occur at the onset.
2. The vesicular eruptions are preceded by severe neuralgic pain along the course of the involved nerves.
3. The lesions are strictly limited to one side of the midline of head (pathognomic feature).

**Enumerate the ocular lesions of herpes zoster ophthalmicus.**

Conjunctivitis, keratitis, episcleritis, scleritis, iridocyclitis and secondary glaucoma.

**What is Mooren's ulcer?**

Mooren's ulcer (chronic serpiginous or rodent ulcer) is a peripheral degenerative ulcerative keratitis of unknown etiology. It is characterized by a shallow furrow-shaped ulcer having whitish overhanging margin at the advancing edge (See Fig. 6.14).

**What are the features of neuroparalytic keratitis?**

1. No pain, no lacrimation and complete loss of corneal sensations.
2. Marked ciliary congestion.
3. Corneal sheen is dull.
4. Corneal ulcer is usually superficial and involves the interpalpebral area.

**What are the causes of exposure keratitis?**

1. Extreme proptosis
2. Bell's palsy
3. Symblepharon
4. Patients in deep coma.

**What is superficial punctate keratitis? Name a few of its causes.**

Superficial punctate keratitis (SPK) refers to occurrence of multiple, spotty lesions in superficial layer of cornea. Its common causes are:

1. Viral infections, e.g. adenovirus infection, epidemic keratoconjunctivitis, herpes zoster keratitis, herpes simplex keratitis, and pharyngoconjunctival fever.
2. Chlamydial infections, e.g. trachoma.

3. Toxic, e.g. in association with blepharoconjunctivitis.
4. Trophic lesions, e.g. exposure keratitis and neuroparalytic keratitis.
5. Allergic lesions, e.g. vernal keratitis.
6. Keratoconjunctivitis sicca.
7. Specific type of idiopathic SPK, e.g. Thygeson's SPK and superior limbic keratoconjunctivitis.
8. Photo-ophthalmitis.

**What is photophthalmia?**

Photophthalmia refers to occurrence of multiple epithelial erosions due to exposure to ultraviolet rays having a wavelength of 290–311  $\mu\text{m}$ . It occurs in the following conditions:

1. Exposure to naked arc light as in industrial welding.
2. Exposure to bright light of a short circuit.
3. Snow blindness due to reflected ultraviolet rays from the snow surface.

**What is filamentary keratitis/keratopathy? Name its few important causes.**

Filamentary keratitis is a type of superficial punctate keratitis associated with formation of corneal epithelial filaments. Its common causes are:

1. Keratoconjunctivitis sicca (KCS)
2. Recurrent corneal erosion syndrome
3. Herpes simplex keratitis
4. Thygeson's superficial punctate keratitis
5. Prolonged patching of the eye particularly following ocular surgery like cataract
6. Trachoma.

**What is interstitial keratitis? What are its common causes?**

Interstitial keratitis is inflammation of the corneal stroma without primary involvement of the epithelium or endothelium. Its common causes are: congenital syphilis, tuberculosis, acquired syphilis, Cogan's syndrome (interstitial keratitis with acute tinnitus, vertigo and deafness).

**What are corneal dystrophies?**

Corneal dystrophies are inherited disorders characterized by development of corneal haze in otherwise normal eyes that are free of inflammation or vascularization. These are classified as follows:

1. *Anterior dystrophies* which primarily affect epithelium and Bowman's membrane, e.g. recurrent corneal erosion syndrome.
2. *Stromal dystrophies*: These include—granular dystrophy, macular dystrophy and lattice dystrophy.
3. *Posterior dystrophies* which primarily affect the corneal endothelium and Descemet's membrane, e.g. cornea guttata, Fuchs' dystrophy.
4. *Ectatic dystrophies*, e.g. keratoconus, keratoglobus.



**What is Fuchs' dystrophy?**

Also called as *epithelial endothelial dystrophy*, affects females more than the males between 5th and 7th decade of life. It is a slowly progressive bilateral condition. Its clinical features can be divided into following four stages:

- Stage of corneal guttata
- Oedematous stage or stage of endothelial decompensation
- Stage of bullous keratopathy
- Stage of scarring.

**Define keratoconus and describe its treatment.**

Keratoconus is a noninflammatory ectatic condition of the cornea. It is usually bilateral and manifests at puberty with gradual loss of vision.

The high myopic irregular astigmatic refractive error seen in keratoconus may be treated by hard contact lens in early stages. Ultimately penetrating keratoplasty is required.

**A CASE OF CORNEAL OPACITY****Case Summary**

**Presenting symptoms.** A patient with corneal opacity usually presents with a whitish scar, causing defective vision as well as cosmetic blemish.

**History** may reveal a history of trauma to the eye or symptoms suggestive of healed corneal ulceration.

**Examination** reveals an opacity on the cornea (See Fig. 6.32) which may be nebular, macular or leucomatous. The location, size, shape and density of the opacity must be described.

**Related Questions****What is a corneal opacity?**

The term corneal opacity is used for the loss of corneal transparency due to scarring.

**What are common causes of corneal opacity?**

1. Congenital opacities
2. Healed corneal wounds
3. Healed corneal ulcers.

**What are the types of corneal opacity?**

1. **Nebular corneal opacity.** It is a faint opacity which results due to scars involving up to a few superficial lamellae of corneal stroma.
2. **Macular opacity.** It is a dense opacity produced by scars involving up to about half the thickness of the stroma.
3. **Leucomatous corneal opacity (leucoma simplex).** It is a very dense, white opacity, which results due to scarring of more than half thickness of corneal stroma.

4. **Adherent leucoma.** It results when healing occurs after perforation of cornea with incarceration of the iris.

**Name the secondary changes which can occur in a long standing case of corneal opacity.**

1. Hyaline degeneration
2. Calcareous degeneration
3. Pigmentation
4. Atheromatous ulceration.

**How will you treat a case with corneal opacity?**

1. **Optical iridectomy.** It may be performed in cases with central macular or leucomatous corneal opacities; provided vision improves with pupillary dilatation.
2. **Keratoplasty.** It provides good visual results in uncomplicated cases with corneal opacities; where optical iridectomy is not of much use.
3. **Tattooing of scar.** It used to be performed for cosmetic purposes. It is suitable only for firm scars in a quite eye without useful vision. Presently, it is sparingly done.

**How do you perform tattooing?**

First of all, the epithelium covering the opacity removed under topical anaesthesia. Then a piece of blotting paper of the same size and shape soaked in 4% gold chloride (for brown eyes) or 2% platinum chloride (for dark colour) is applied over it. After 2 to 3 minutes, the piece of blotting paper is removed and a few drops of freshly prepared hydrazine hydrate (2%) solution are poured over it. Lastly, eye is irrigated with normal saline and patched after instilling antibiotic and atropine eye ointment. Epithelium grows over the pigmented area.

**What are the causes of corneal vascularization?**

Normal cornea is avascular. In pathological states, superficial or deep corneal vascularization may occur (See Fig. 6.34).

1. **Superficial corneal vascularization.** In it, vessels are arranged in an arborizing pattern, present below the epithelium and their continuity can be traced with the conjunctival vessels. Its common causes are:

- Trachoma
- Phlyctenular keratoconjunctivitis
- Superficial corneal ulcers
- Rosacea keratitis.

2. **Deep corneal vascularization.** In it, the vessels are generally derived from the anterior ciliary arteries and lie in the corneal stroma. These vessels are usually straight, not anastomosing and their continuity cannot be traced beyond the limbus. Its common causes are:



- Interstitial keratitis
- Disciform keratitis
- Deep corneal ulcers
- Chemical burns
- Sclerosing keratitis
- Corneal graft vascularization.

### What is keratoplasty?

Keratoplasty is an operation in which the patient's diseased cornea is replaced by the donor's healthy clear cornea. It is of two types:

1. *Lamellar keratoplasty* (partial thickness).
  - Anterior lamellar keratoplasty (ALK), and
  - Deep lamellar keratoplasty (DLK)
2. *Penetrating keratoplasty* (full thickness).

### Name the indications for keratoplasty.

#### Anterior Lamellar keratoplasty

Indolent corneal ulcer, superficial corneal opacity and lattice dystrophy.

#### Penetrating keratoplasty

1. *Optical*, i.e. to improve vision in patient with corneal opacity, bullous keratopathy, corneal dystrophies and advanced keratoconus.
2. *Therapeutic*, i.e. to replace inflamed cornea not responding to treatment (indolent deep ulcer).
3. *Tectonic grafts*, i.e. to restore the integrity of eyeball in corneal perforation and marked corneal thinning.
4. *Cosmetic*, i.e. to improve appearance of the eye in deep leucomas with no vision in the eye.

### What is the optimum time for the removal of donor eyes from the body of a deceased?

The donor eyes should be removed as early as possible (within 6 hours of death) and should be stored under sterile conditions.

### What are the methods of corneal preservation?

1. *Short-term storage* (up to 48 hours): The whole globe is preserved at 4°C in a moist chamber.
2. *Intermediate storage* (up to 2 weeks): The donor corneal button is prepared and stored in McCareyKaufman (MK) medium and various chondroitin sulphate-enriched media such as optisol.
3. *Long-term storage* (up to 35 days): It is done by organ culture method or cryopreservation.

### Enumerate the complications of keratoplasty operation.

- Early complications* are: Flat anterior chamber, iris prolapse, infection, secondary glaucoma, epithelial defects, primary graft failure.
- Late complications* are: Graft rejection, recurrence of disease, marked astigmatism and cystoid macular oedema.

### From which sources cornea derives its nutrition?

- Perilimbal capillaries
- Aqueous humour
- Oxygen from atmosphere.

### What is the nerve supply of cornea?

Cornea is supplied by the nasociliary branch of ophthalmic division of the trigeminal nerve.

### What is a corneal facet?

A corneal facet is a transparent depressed scar. On slit-lamp examination light beam appears to dip in the area of a facet.

### What is keratomalacia?

Keratomalacia refers to corneal necrosis due to vitamin A deficiency. In this condition, there is no inflammatory reaction.

### What is arcus senilis?

Arcus senilis is a degenerative condition of cornea characterized by an annular lipid infiltration concentric to the limbus. The ring of opacity is about 1 mm wide and is separated from the limbus by a clear zone (lucid interval of Vogt).

## ■ A CASE OF ANTERIOR STAPHYLOMA

### Case Summary

**Presenting symptoms.** Patient presents with loss of vision, bluish discoloration and bulging of anterior part of the eyeball.

**History** is suggestive of symptoms of corneal ulceration (pain, redness, photophobia, watering, loss of vision and whitish discoloration) followed by bluish discoloration and bulging of anterior part of the eye.

**Examination** reveals that cornea is replaced by a lobulated ectatic scar tissue which is blackened due to the iris plastered behind it (See Fig. 6.33).

### Related Questions

#### What is a staphyloma?

Staphyloma refers to the localized bulging of weak and thin outer tunic of the eyeball (cornea or sclera) lined by uveal tissue which shines through the thinned-out fibrous coat.

#### What are the types of staphyloma?

1. Anterior staphyloma
2. Ciliary staphyloma
3. Intercalary staphyloma
4. Equatorial staphyloma
5. Posterior staphyloma.

#### How is an anterior staphyloma formed?

In a patient with sloughing corneal ulcer when the whole cornea sloughs out, the inflamed iris is covered



with exudates. Ultimately, these exudates organize and form a fibrous layer over which the conjunctival or corneal epithelium rapidly grows and thus a pseudocornea is formed. Since the pseudocornea is thin and cannot withstand the intraocular pressure, it usually bulges forward along with the plastered iris tissue. This ectatic cicatrix is called anterior staphyloma.

#### What is the treatment of anterior staphyloma?

1. Most of the times there is no chance of getting useful vision in such eyes. Therefore, treatment is carried out to improve the cosmetic appearance. *Localized staphylectomy* under heavy doses of steroids may be carried out. After healing, cosmetic artificial shell may be advised.
2. In patients where there is a chance of getting useful vision, *keratoplasty* (wherever possible) or *keratoprosthesis* may be performed.

#### What are the causes of posterior staphyloma?

- Pathological myopia
- Posterior scleritis
- Perforating injuries.

#### What is episcleritis? Describe features of a nodule of episcleritis.

Episcleritis is a benign recurrent inflammation of episclera, involving the overlying Tenon's capsule but not the underlying sclera.

A typical nodule of episcleritis is flat, pink or purple, surrounded by injection and is usually situated 2 to 3 mm away from the limbus.

#### What is the differential diagnosis of nodular episcleritis?

- Inflamed pinguecula
- Foreign body embedded in the bulbar conjunctiva
- Scleritis.

## DISEASES OF UVEAL TRACT

### ■ A CASE OF ACUTE IRIDOCYCLITIS

#### Case Description

**Presenting symptoms.** A patient with acute iridocyclitis (anterior uveitis) presents with moderate to severe pain which radiates all over the distribution of trigeminal nerve, photophobia, watering, redness and some diminution of vision of sudden onset.

**History of present illness.** In addition to the details about the presenting symptoms, the history of present illness should also explore the following associations:

- History of allergic conditions like bronchial asthma, hay fever, allergic rhinitis, allergic skin conditions.
- History of joint pains to rule out rheumatoid disease

- History suggestive of urethritis
- History of any dental problem
- History of chronic rhinitis and/or sinusitis
- History of trauma to eye.

**Past history** should include enquiries about:

- History of *similar attacks* in the past.
- History of chronic *systemic infections* such as tuberculosis, syphilis, leprosy, measles, mumps and any other infection.
- History of *noninfectious systemic disorders* such as diabetes, gout, rheumatoid arthritis and collagen disorder.
- History of allergic and autoimmune disorders.

**General physical and systemic examination** should be conducted to rule out systemic diseases enumerated in the history. Special care should be given to dental, ENT, lymph nodes and joint examinations.

**Ocular examination** may reveal following signs (See Fig. 8.8B):

- *Visual acuity* is diminished.
- *Lids* may show slight oedema.
- *Circumcorneal congestion* is marked.
- *Cornea* may be slightly hazy due to oedema and KPs at the back of cornea which are seen on slit-lamp examination.
- *Anterior chamber* shows aqueous cells and aqueous flare, hypopyon may also be present.
- *Iris* may show loss of normal pattern, muddy colour, posterior synechiae, iris nodules and patches of atrophy.
- *Pupil* is narrow, irregular and sluggishly reacting. Exudates may be present in pupillary area, occlusio pupillae and seclusio pupillae may be seen in some cases.
- *Lens.* Pigment dispersal, exudates and iris adhesion may be seen on anterior capsule. Complicated cataract may also occur.
- IOP may be normal, low or raised. It is raised firstly in hypertensive uveitis and secondly in pupillary block secondary glaucoma.

### ■ A CASE OF CHRONIC IRIDOCYCLITIS

#### Case Description

**Presenting symptoms** are mild to moderate dull ache in the eye, mild photophobia and diminution of vision.

**History of present illness and past history** should explore the diseases mentioned in a case of acute iridocyclitis.

**Ocular examination** may reveal mild circumcorneal flush, keratic precipitates, aqueous flare, aqueous cells, iris atrophic patches, iris nodules, posterior synechial neovascularization and irregular pupil.



## Related Questions

### Define uveitis

Uveitis refers to inflammation of any part or whole of the uveal tract. Uveal tract includes iris, ciliary body and choroid.

### How do you classify uveitis?

- I. *Anatomical classification*
  1. Anterior uveitis (iritis)
  2. Intermediate uveitis (pars planitis)
  3. Posterior uveitis (choroiditis)
  4. Panuveitis.
- II. *Clinical classification*
  1. Acute uveitis
  2. Chronic uveitis.
- III. *Pathological classification*
  1. Suppurative or purulent uveitis
  2. Non-suppurative uveitis, which may be:
    - i. Non-granulomatous uveitis
    - ii. Granulomatous uveitis.
- IV. *Etiological classification (Duke-Elder's)*
  1. Infective uveitis
  2. Allergic uveitis
  3. Toxic uveitis
  4. Traumatic uveitis
  5. Uveitis associated with non-infective systemic diseases
  6. Idiopathic uveitis.

### What is the differential diagnosis of acute iridocyclitis?

Acute iridocyclitis must be differentiated from other causes of acute red eye; especially acute congestive glaucoma and acute conjunctivitis. The differentiating features are shown in Table 8.1.

### What are the differences between granulomatous and non-granulomatous uveitis?

These are shown in Table 8.2.

### What are the common causes of acute anterior uveitis?

1. Microbial allergy, e.g. allergy to tubercular proteins, streptococcal proteins, spirochaetal proteins, etc.
2. Atopic uveitis
3. HLA associated uveitis, e.g. HLA-B27: Anterior uveitis is associated with ankylosing spondylitis and Reiter's syndrome.
4. Idiopathic.

### What are the causes of granulomatous uveitis?

- Tuberculosis
- Syphilis
- Sarcoidosis
- Leprosy

- Vogt-Koyanagi-Harada's disease
- Sympathetic ophthalmia.

### What are the common causes of unilateral iridocyclitis?

- Traumatic uveitis
- Herpes zoster uveitis
- Fuchs' heterochromic cyclitis
- Retinal detachment
- Haemophthalmitis
- Iridocyclitis secondary to intraocular tumours.

### What are the keratic precipitates; what are their types and significance?

Keratic precipitates are proteinaceous cellular deposits occurring at the back of cornea (See Fig. 8.9). These are of the following types:

1. *Fine KPs* are characteristic of Fuchs' cyclitis and herpes zoster uveitis.
2. *Small and medium size KPs* are seen in acute and chronic non-granulomatous uveitis. These are composed of lymphocytes and may number in hundreds (usually 40–60).
3. *Mutton fat KPs*. These typically occur in granulomatous iridocyclitis and are composed of epithelioid cells and macrophages. They are large, thick, fluffy, lardaceous KPs, having a greasy or waxy appearance. They are usually few (10–15) in number.

### What are iris nodules?

Iris nodules typically occur in granulomatous uveitis. Nodules situated at pupillary border are known as Koeppe's nodules, while those seen near the collarette are called Busacca's nodules (See Fig. 8.12).

### What are synechiae? Describe their types.

Synechiae are adhesions of the iris with other intraocular structures. These can be divided into following types:

1. *Anterior synechiae*: These include anterior peripheral synechiae seen in the angle of anterior chamber and anterior central synechiae seen in adherent leucoma.
2. *Posterior synechiae*: These refer to adhesions of posterior surface of iris to the anterior surface of crystalline lens or intraocular lens implant or posterior capsule or anterior phase of the vitreous. These are of the following types:
  - Posterior segmental synechiae (See Figs 8.9 and 8.15)
  - Annular synechiae (See Fig. 8.13), and
  - Total posterior synechiae (See Fig. 8.14).

### What is seclusio pupillae and iris bombe?

Annular or ring synechiae are 360° adhesions of pupillary margin to anterior capsule of the lens.



These prevent the circulation of aqueous humour from posterior to anterior chamber (seclusio pupillae). Thus, the aqueous collects behind the iris and pushes it anteriorly (leading to iris bombe formation).

### What is occlusio pupillae?

Occlusio pupillae refers to occlusion of pupil by the exudates.

### What is festooned pupil?

When atropine is instilled in the presence of segmental posterior synechiae, the pupil does not dilate in the areas of synechiae, but dilates in the areas without synechiae. This results in an irregular and dilated pupil known as festooned pupil.

### Name the various types of HLA associated uveitis.

- HLA-B27: Anterior uveitis seen with ankylosing spondylitis and Reiter's syndrome  
 HLA-B5: Behcet's disease  
 HLA-BW54: Glaucomatocyclitic crisis  
 HLA-BW22: Vogt-Koyanagi-Harada's syndrome.

### What are the causes of diminution of vision in a patient with iridocyclitis?

One or more of the following factors cause diminution of vision:

- Corneal oedema
- Aqueous haze
- Exudates in the pupillary area
- Complicated cataract
- Cyclitic membrane
- Vitreous haze
- Papillitis
- Macular oedema.

### What are the complications of iridocyclitis?

- Complicated cataract (See Fig. 8.15)
- Secondary glaucoma
- Cyclitic membrane
- Cystoid macular oedema
- Secondary periphlebitis retinae
- Band-shaped keratopathy
- Phthisis bulbi.

### What is the treatment of iridocyclitis?

#### I. Nonspecific treatment

##### a. Local therapy

1. Mydriatic cycloplegic drugs, e.g. 1% atropine, eye drops or ointment; or 2% homatropine eye drops.
2. Corticosteroid eye drops such as dexamethasone eye drops 4 times a day.

##### b. Systemic therapy

1. Corticosteroids are quite useful in severe cases.
2. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) such as aspirin and phenylbutazone are used when steroids are contraindicated.
3. Immunosuppressive drugs are used in desperate and extremely serious cases.
4. Adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH) may be required in recalcitrant cases.

##### c. Physical measures

1. Hot fomentation. It is very soothing, diminishes pain and increases circulation.
2. Dark goggles give feeling of comfort by reducing photophobia.

### II. Specific treatment

It consists of treatment of the cause when discovered, e.g. antitubercular drugs for the underlying Koch's disease, adequate treatment of associated syphilis, toxoplasmosis, etc.

### What are the features of Fuchs' uveitis?

Fuchs' uveitis is a chronic non-granulomatous type of low-grade anterior uveitis. It is unilateral and affects middle-aged persons. The disease is characterized by:

- Heterochromia of iris
- Fine KPs at the back of cornea
- Faint aqueous flare
- Absence of posterior synechiae
- A fairly common rubeosis iridis
- Comparatively early development of complicated cataract and secondary glaucoma.

### What are the features of glaucomatocyclitic crisis (Posner Schlossman syndrome)?

It typically affects young adults and is characterized by:

- Recurrent attacks of acute rise of IOP (40–50 mm of Hg) without shallowing of anterior chamber
- Fine KPs at the back of cornea without any posterior synechiae
- Epithelial corneal oedema
- A dilated pupil
- A white eye (no congestion).

### What is sympathetic ophthalmitis?

Sympathetic ophthalmitis is rare bilateral granulomatous panuveitis which occurs following penetrating ocular trauma usually associated with incarceration of uveal tissue in the wound. The injured eye is called *exciting eye* and the fellow eye which also develops uveitis is called *sympathizing eye*.



**What are Dalen-Fuchs' nodules?**

Dalen-Fuchs' nodules are proliferation of the pigment epithelium of iris and ciliary body to form nodular aggregations in sympathetic ophthalmitis.

**What is Behcet's disease?**

Behcet's disease is an idiopathic multisystem disease associated with HLA-B5. It is characterized by:

- Recurrent acute iridocyclitis associated with, hypopyon
- Aphthous ulceration
- Genital ulceration
- Erythema multiforme.

**What are ocular lesions of sarcoidosis?**

1. Sarcoid plaque on the skin of the eyelids
2. Granulomatous infiltration of the lacrimal gland with xerosis
3. Conjunctival sarcoid nodules
4. Episcleritis
5. Iridocyclitis may occur as:
  - Acute iridocyclitis
  - Chronic granulomatous iridocyclitis (more common) with Koeppe's and Busacca's nodules on the iris and mutton fat KPs
  - Uveoparotid fever (Heerfordt's syndrome).
6. Vitritis with snowball opacities
7. Choroidal and retinal granulomas
8. Secondary periphlebitis retinae with candle wax droppings.

**What is VKH syndrome?**

Vogt-Koyanagi-Harada's (VKH) syndrome is an idiopathic multisystem disorder associated with HLA-BW22. It is characterized by:

- *Cutaneous lesions* such as: alopecia, poliosis and vitiligo
- *Neurological lesions* include meningism, encephalopathy, tinnitus, vertigo and deafness
- *Ocular features* are: chronic granulomatous anterior uveitis, posterior uveitis and exudative retinal detachment.

**What is endophthalmitis? Enumerate common causes of purulent endophthalmitis.**

Endophthalmitis is inflammation of the inner structures of the eyeball which include uveal tissue, retina and vitreous. Purulent endophthalmitis is a dreaded complication. Its common causes are:

1. *Exogenous infections* following:
  - Perforating injuries
  - Perforation of corneal ulcer
  - Intraocular operations such as cataract surgery and glaucoma surgery.
2. *Endogenous or metastatic endophthalmitis* may occur rarely through blood stream from some

septic focus in the body such as caries teeth, puerperal sepsis and generalized septicaemia.

**What is panophthalmitis? Describe its treatment.**

Panophthalmitis is an intense purulent inflammation of the whole eyeball including the Tenon's capsule.

Since, there is little hope of saving such an eye, evisceration operation should be performed to remove the pus and infected intraocular contents leaving behind the sclera.

**Which is the most common presenting symptom in a patient with choroiditis?**

Floater, i.e. moving small black spots in front of the eyes is the most common presenting symptom in a patient with choroiditis. Floaters occur due to pouring of exudates in the vitreous.

**What are the symptoms of central choroiditis?**

- Defective vision
- Floaters
- Micropsia (patient complains of seeing the objects smaller than normal due to separation of cones of macula due to oedema)
- Metamorphopsia (patient perceives distorted images of the objects) results due to alteration in the retinal contour caused by a raised patch of choroiditis
- *Macropsia*, i.e. perception of the objects larger than they are, may occur due to crowding together of cones
- *Photopsia*, i.e. a subjective sensation of flashes of light may result due to irritation of cones by inflammatory oedema.

**What is the most common cause of central choroiditis?**

- Toxoplasmosis.

**What is pathognomic feature of fungal endophthalmitis?**

Fluffy ball opacities in the vitreous are pathognomic of fungal endophthalmitis.

**At what stage vitrectomy operation should be performed in a patient with endophthalmitis?**

Vitrectomy is the treatment of choice for fungal endophthalmitis. In bacterial endophthalmitis, it should be performed when the condition does not improve with intensive conservative therapy for 48 hours.

**What is Reiter's syndrome?**

Reiter's syndrome is characterized by a triad of urethritis, arthritis and conjunctivitis. In 20 to 30% cases, acute non-granulomatous uveitis is also associated.

**What are the causes of a patch of iris atrophy?**

- Senile
- Post-inflammatory



- Glaucomatous
- Neurogenic, in lesions of ciliary ganglion
- Essential iris atrophy.

## DISEASES OF LENS

### A CASE OF SENILE CATARACT

#### Case Description

**Age and sex.** It is seen equally in persons of either sex, usually above the age of 45 years (average 50–60 years).

**Presenting symptoms.** Patient usually presents with a gradual, painless and progressive loss of vision. In the early stages, there may or may not be associated history of coloured haloes, uniocular polyopia, glare and misty vision.

**History of present illness.** In addition to the details about the presenting symptoms, the history of present illness should be taken:

- *To rule out other cause of acquired cataract*, e.g. history of exposure to radiations (radiation cataract) excessive heat in industrial workers especially in glass workers and iron workers (heat cataract), history of injury to the affected eye (traumatic cataract), history of diabetes mellitus (diabetic cataract), history of atopic diseases (atopic cataract), history of steroid intake (steroid cataract), history suggestive of anterior uveitis (complicated cataract), etc.
- *To rule out diseases affecting surgical treatment* such as history of hypertension, diabetes mellitus, bronchial asthma.

**Ocular signs** observed in different types of senile cataract are shown in Table 9.1, page 196.

**General physical and systemic examination** (See page 204).

**Ocular examination.** In addition to ocular examination to note signs of different types of cataract, the following useful information is essential before the patient is considered for surgery (See page 202):

- Retinal function tests,
- Search for local source of infection,
- Slit-lamp examination for anterior segment status, and
- IOP measurement.

#### Related Questions

##### What is your diagnosis?

Senile cataract (immature, mature, hypermature or nuclear, depending upon the type of cataract).

##### Define cataract.

Normal crystalline lens is a transparent structure. Any opacity in the lens or its capsule is called a cataract.

#### How do you classify cataracts?

##### A. Etiological classification

###### I. Congenital and developmental cataract

###### II. Acquired cataract

1. Senile cataract
2. Traumatic cataract
3. Complicated cataract
4. Metabolic cataract
5. Electric cataract
6. Radiation cataract
7. Toxic cataract, e.g.
  - a. Corticosteroid-induced cataract
  - b. Miotics-induced cataract
  - c. Copper-induced and iron-induced cataracts (in chalcosis and siderosis respectively).
8. Cataract associated with skin diseases (dermatogenic cataract).
9. Cataract associated with osseous diseases.
10. Cataract associated with miscellaneous syndromes, e.g.
  - Dystrophic myotonia
  - Down's syndrome.

##### B. Morphological classification (See Fig. 9.5)

1. **Capsular cataract:** It involves the capsule and may be:
  - a. Anterior capsular cataract
  - b. Posterior capsular cataract.
2. **Cortical cataract:** It involves the cortex of the lens.
3. **Nuclear cataract:** It involves the nucleus of the crystalline lens.
4. **Polar cataract:** It involves the capsule and superficial part of the cortex in the polar region and may be:
  - a. Anterior polar cataract
  - b. Posterior polar cataract.

#### What are the types of senile cataract?

- Cortical cataract
- Nuclear cataract.

#### Name the stages of maturation of senile cortical cataract.

- Stage of lamellar separation
- Stage of incipient cataract
- Stage of immature senile cataract (cuneiform or cupuliform)
- Stage of mature senile cataract
- Stage of hypermature senile cataract (Morgagnian or sclerotic type).

#### What do you mean by nuclear sclerosis?

Nuclear sclerosis is an aging process in which lens nucleus becomes inelastic and hard. Refractive index of the lens is increased resulting in myopia.



These changes begin centrally and spread peripherally. On oblique illumination pupillary area looks greyish.

**How will you differentiate immature senile cataract (ISC) from nuclear sclerosis without cataract changes?**

See Table 9.3, Page 196.

**Name the complications which can occur during maturation of cortical cataract.**

- a. *Lens-induced glaucoma*, which may be:
  1. *Phacomorphic glaucoma* (secondary narrow-angle glaucoma). It occurs due to intumescent (swollen) lens causing blockage of the angle of anterior chamber and pupil.
  2. *Phacolytic glaucoma* (secondary open-angle glaucoma). It occurs due to blockage of trabecular meshwork by macrophages laden with lens proteins leaked from the Morgagnian hypermature cataract.
- b. *Phacoanaphylaxis*
- c. *Subluxation or dislocation of the lens*.

**What are the characteristics of diabetic cataract?**

A true diabetic cataract is characterized by appearance of bilateral snowflake-like opacities hence the name 'snowflake cataract' or 'snow-storm cataract'.

**What are the characteristics of a complicated cataract?**

A typical complicated cataract is characterized by 'bread-crumbs' appearance of the opacities situated in the posterior subcapsular area, which exhibit 'polychromatic lustre' on slit-lamp examination.

**Enumerate the indications for extraction of a cataractous lens.**

1. Grossly diminished vision hampering easy living
2. Medical indications, e.g.
  - Lens-induced glaucoma
  - Phacoanaphylaxis
  - Patient having diabetic retinopathy or retinal detachment, treatment of which is hampered by the presence of lens opacities
3. Cosmetic indication. Some patients may insist for cataract extraction (even with no hope of getting useful vision) in order to obtain a black pupil.

**What preoperative evaluation would you like to carry out before cataract surgery?**

1. *General physical and systemic examination* to rule out: diabetes mellitus, hypertension, obstructive lung disorders and any potential source of infection in the body such as septic gums, urinary tract infection, etc.

2. *Ocular examination* with special reference to:
  1. Retinal function tests
  2. Search for local source of infection, i.e. conjunctivitis, dacryocystitis, blepharitis, etc.
  3. Intraocular pressure measurement.

**Name the retinal function tests that you would like to carry out before planning cataract surgery?**

1. Light perception (PL)
2. Projection of light rays (PR)
3. A test for Marcus Gunn pupillary response
4. Two-light discrimination test.

**What is the most accurate method of predicting the macular potential for visual acuity in the presence of advanced cataract?**

- Laser interferometry.

**Name the objective tests for evaluating posterior segment of eye in a cataract patient.**

1. Ultrasonography (A and B scan)
2. Electroretinography
3. Electro-oculography
4. Visually-evoked response.

**Surgical management of adulthood cataracts**

For questions related to surgical management of cataract, See page 206.

**■ A CASE OF CONGENITAL/DEVELOPMENTAL CATARACT**

**Case Description**

**Age and sex.** Congenital cataract is present since birth. Developmental cataract may occur any time from infancy to adolescence. It is equally common in both sexes.

**Presenting symptoms.** Parents may bring the child with one or more of the following complaints:

- White reflex in the pupillary area (leukocoria)
- Inability of the child to see well which may be noticed by the parents
- Wandering movements of the eyes
- Deviation (squint) in one eye
- Nystagmus.

**History of present illness** should include:

- Details about the time of appearance and progress of the above symptoms.
- *Obstetrical history* to explore occurrence of rubella, malnutrition, diabetes mellitus, exposure to radiations and drug intake during pregnancy.
- *Birth history* should include information about: home or hospital delivery; full-term or premature birth; normal or low birth weight (LBW) for age; history of birth trauma; and history of ocular infections after birth.



- **Family history** should include history of similar complaints in the family, history of any other ocular or systemic defects in the family, history of diabetes mellitus and history of consanguinous marriage.

**General physical and systemic examination** should be carried out thoroughly with special attention for any associated mental retardation, cerebral palsies, features of rubella, features of galactosaemia, hepatosplenomegaly and cardiovascular anomalies such as patent ductus arteriosus (PDA), ventricular septal defect (VSD) and pulmonary stenosis (PS).

**Ocular examination.** Conspicuous sign is leukocoria (white reflex in pupillary area). Make special note of visual acuity (if possible), any associated squint, nystagmus and other congenital anomalies such as microphthalmos, microcornea, aniridia, iris coloboma, and persistent pupillary membrane. Lens should be examined in detail after dilation of the pupil. If possible fundus should be examined to know the status of the posterior segment.

## Related Questions

### Name the types of congenital cataract.

- Cataracta centralis pulverulenta (embryonic nuclear cataract)
- Lamellar (zonular) cataract
- Sutural cataract
- Anterior polar cataract
- Posterior polar cataract
- Coronary cataract
- Blue dot punctate cataract
- Total congenital cataract.

### Enumerate the etiological factors associated with congenital cataract.

1. **Heredity** (about 3% cases)
2. **Maternal factors**, e.g.
  - Malnutrition during pregnancy
  - Rubella infection
  - Toxoplasmosis
  - Cytomegalo inclusion disease
  - Drug ingestion during pregnancy, e.g. thalidomide, corticosteroids
3. **Fetal or infantile factors**, e.g.
  - Anoxia due to placental haemorrhage
  - Metabolic disorders, e.g. galactosaemia, neonatal hypoglycaemia
  - Lowe's syndrome
  - Myotonia dystrophica
  - Birth trauma
  - Malnutrition in early infancy
4. **Idiopathic** (about 50% cases).

### What are the features of zonular (lamellar) cataract?

Zonular cataract typically occurs in a zone of fetal nucleus surrounding the embryonic nucleus (See Fig. 9.7). The area of the lens internal and external to the zone of cataract is clear, except for small linear opacities like spokes of a wheel (riders) which run outwards towards the equator. It is usually bilateral and frequently causes severe visual defect.

### What is the differential diagnosis of a white pupillary reflex?

1. Congenital cataract
2. Retinoblastoma
3. Retinopathy of prematurity (retrolental fibroplasia)
4. Persistent hyperplastic primary vitreous
5. Parasitic endophthalmitis
6. Exudative retinopathy of Coats.

### How will you manage a case of congenital cataract?

1. Small stationary lens opacities which do not interfere with vision can safely be ignored.
2. Incomplete central stationary cataracts may be treated by optical iridectomy or use of mydriatics to improve the vision considerably.
3. Complete cataracts should be removed surgically as early as possible.

### Name the surgical procedures in vogue for management of childhood cataracts.

1. Discission (needling) operation (almost obsolete)
2. Anterior capsulotomy and irrigation aspiration of the lens matter.
3. Lensectomy.

### How should paediatric aphakia be corrected?

1. Children above the age of 5 years can be corrected by implantation of posterior chamber intraocular lens during surgery.
2. Those below the age of 5 years should preferably be treated by extended wear contact lens. Spectacles can be prescribed in bilateral cases. At a later stage, secondary IOL implantation may be considered.
3. Epikeratophakia and keratophakia are still under trial.

## ■ A CASE OF APHAKIA

### Case Description

**Presenting symptoms.** Patient usually gives history of cataract extraction operation (postoperative aphakia). Sometimes, patient may present with such a situation following trauma to the eye (aphakia due to traumatic posterior dislocation of lens) and rarely without any cause (aphakia due to spontaneous posterior dislocation of lens).



- Patient usually has marked loss of vision both for distance and near due to high hypermetropia and absence of accommodation, respectively.
- Patient may complain of seeing red (erythropsia) and blue (cyanopsia) images. This occurs due to excessive entering of ultraviolet and infrared rays in the absence of crystalline lens.

**Signs of aphakia** seen on ocular examination:

- **Limbal scar** may be seen in surgical aphakia
- **Anterior chamber** is deeper than normal
- **Iridodonesis**, i.e. tremulousness of the iris can be demonstrated
- **Pupil** is jet black in colour
- **Purkinje image test** shows only two images (normally four images are seen)
- **Fundus examination** shows hypermetropic small disc
- **Retinoscopy** reveals high hypermetropia.

### ■ A CASE OF PSEUDOPHAKIA

#### Case Description

##### Presenting symptoms

- Patient usually gives a history of cataract operation and may also be aware of the intraocular lens (IOL) implantation.
- Patient may give history of normal far vision (emmetropia produced by IOL) but defective near vision due to loss of accommodation.
- Some patients may give history of normal near vision but defective far vision (due to 2–3 D myopia produced by a high power IOL).
- Some patients are uncomfortable due to defective vision both for distance and near. This occurs due to hypermetropia produced by a low power IOL and loss of accommodation.

##### Signs of pseudophakia

- **Surgical limbal scar** may be seen.
- **Anterior chamber** is slightly deeper than normal.
- When implanted, the angle supported anterior chamber IOL (See Fig. 9.30) and iris claw IOL (See Fig. 9.31) are seen in the anterior chamber.
- **Mild iridodonesis** (tremulousness of iris) may be demonstrated.
- **Purkinje image test** shows four images.
- **Pupil** is blackish in colour. When light is thrown in pupillary area, shining reflexes are observed. When examined under magnification after dilating the pupil, the presence of posterior chamber IOL when implanted is confirmed (See Fig. 9.32).
- **Visual status** and refraction of the patient will vary depending upon the power of IOL implanted as described above.

#### Related Questions

##### Define aphakia.

Aphakia literally means absence of the crystalline lens from the eye. However, from the optical point of view, it may be considered as a condition in which the lens is absent from the pupillary area and does not take part in refraction. Optically aphakia may be:

- **Complete aphakia**, i.e. whole of the lens is absent from its normal position.
- **Partial aphakia**, i.e. part of the lens is present in the pupillary area. In this situation, aphakic and phakic portions are seen simultaneously in pupillary area.

##### Enumerate the refractive changes which occur in an aphakic eye.

1. Eye becomes highly hypermetropic.
2. Total power of the eye is reduced to +44 DS from +60 DS.
3. Anterior focal distance becomes 23 mm (from 15 mm in normal phakic eye).
4. Posterior focal distance becomes 31 mm (from 24 mm in normal phakic eye).
5. There is anterior shift of nodal point and principal focus.
6. There is complete loss of accommodation due to absence of lens.
7. Astigmatism is induced due to corneal/limbal scar.

##### Name the various modalities for correction of aphakia and enumerate advantages and disadvantages of each.

##### 1. Spectacles

**Advantages:** It is cheap, easy and safe method of correcting aphakia.

**Disadvantages:** (i) Image is magnified by 30 per cent, so not useful in unilateral aphakia (produces diplopia), (ii) problems of spherical and chromatic aberrations may be troublesome, (iii) field of vision is limited, (iv) prismatic effect of thick glasses causes, 'roving ring scotoma' (v) cosmetic blemish, especially in young aphakics.

##### 2. Contact lenses

**Advantages:** (i) Less magnification (5%) of the image, (ii) elimination of aberrations and prismatic effect of thick glasses, (iii) wider and better field of vision, (iv) cosmetically better accepted by young persons.

**Disadvantages:** (i) more cost, (ii) cumbersome to wear, especially in old age and in childhood, (iii) corneal complications may occur.

##### 3. Intraocular lens implantation

It is the best available method of treatment.

**Advantages:** It offers all the advantages which the contact lenses offer over the spectacles. In addition, the disadvantages of contact lenses are also taken care of.



**Disadvantage:** It requires more skilled surgeons and costly equipment.

#### 4. Refractive corneal surgery

It is still under trial and includes keratophakia and epikeratophakia.

#### What are fundus findings in a patient with high hypermetropia?

Fundus examination in a patient with high hypermetropia may show:

- Pseudopapillitis
- Shot silk appearance of the retina.

#### Enumerate the signs of aphakia.

- Deep anterior chamber
- Iridodonesis
- Jet black pupil
- Purkinje's image test shows only two images (normally four)
- Fundus examination shows small optic disc
- Retinoscopy, reveals high hypermetropia.

#### What is the average standard power of the lenses required for spectacle correction of aphakia?

In preoperative emmetropic patient, the standard power of the lenses required for spectacle correction of aphakia for distance vision is +10DS with an additional cylindrical lens for acquired astigmatism. For near vision correction an additional +3 DS is required as the accommodation is absent in an aphakic eye.

#### What is pseudophakia?

Pseudophakia refers to presence of an intraocular lens in the papillary area.

#### What is the refractive position of the pseudophakic eye?

A pseudophakic eye may be emmetropic, myopic or hypermetropic depending upon the power of the IOL implanted.

#### What is the average standard power of the posterior chamber IOL?

Exact power of an IOL to be implanted varies from individual to individual and is calculated by biometry using keratometer and A-scan ultrasound. However on average 19–21D is the standard IOL power for an emmetropic patient.

#### What is the average weight of an IOL?

Average weight of an IOL in air is 15 mg and in aqueous humour is about 5 mg.

#### What is the power of the IOL in air vis-a-vis in the aqueous humour?

Power of an IOL in air is much more (about +60D) than that in the aqueous humour (about +20D).

#### What is the difference in the power of an anterior chamber IOL versus posterior chamber IOL?

Equivalent power of an anterior chamber IOL is less (say about +18D) than that of posterior chamber IOL (+20D).

#### Surgical management of cataract

For questions related to surgical management of a cataract patient, See page 630.

## GLAUCOMA

### A CASE OF PRIMARY ANGLE-CLOSURE GLAUCOMA

#### Case Description

**Age and sex.** Primary narrow-angle glaucoma usually presents between 50 and 60 years of age. It occurs more commonly in females than males in a ratio of 4:1.

**Presenting symptoms** depend upon the stage of the disease as follows:

1. **Primary angle-closure suspect (PACS).** Patient does not present in this stage as there are no symptoms. It is diagnosed:

- On routine slit-lamp examination in patients presenting with some other eye disease, and
- In fellow eye of the patients presenting with subacute or acute angle-closure glaucoma.
- On glaucoma screening.

2. **Primary angle-closure (PAC).** Patient presents with transient blurring of vision, coloured haloes around the light due to corneal oedema and mild headache. These symptoms are due to transient rise in intraocular pressure (IOP) and occur in intermittent attacks at irregular intervals. The attacks are usually precipitated by overwork in the evening, anxiety and fatigue.

**Acute primary angle-closure (Acute PAC).** Patient presents with an attack of sudden onset of very severe pain in the eye which radiates along the branches of fifth nerve. Frequently, there is history of associated nausea, vomiting and prostrations. There is history of rapidly progressive loss of vision, redness, photophobia and watering. About 5% patients give history of typical previous intermittent attacks.

3. **Primary angle-closure glaucoma (PACG).** Patients may have dull pain and discomfort in the eye along with marked diminution of vision. Patients may or may not give history of preceding attack of acute PAC.

4. **Absolute glaucoma.** Such patients present with:

- Pain in the eye which is severe and irritating,
  - Constant headache,
  - Watering and redness of the eye, and
  - Complete loss of vision (no perception of light)
- This stage results if PACG is left untreated.



**Ocular examination.** The signs observed on ocular examination depend upon the stage of glaucoma (See pages 237–242):

**1. Primary angle-closure suspect (PACS).** The eye is white and quiet. Anterior chamber is shallow. Gonioscopy reveals narrow angle. IOP is usually normal.

**2. Primary angle-closure (PAC).** Usually, the eye looks normal except for a shallow anterior chamber and narrow angle (on gonioscopy).

**Acute primary angle-closure.** Signs areas follows:

- *Lids* may be oedematous.
- *Conjunctiva* is chemosed, and congested, (both conjunctival and ciliary vessels are congested).
- *Cornea* becomes oedematous and insensitive.
- *Anterior chamber* is very shallow. Aqueous flare or cells may be seen in anterior chamber.
- *Angle of anterior chamber* is completely closed as seen on gonioscopy.
- *Iris* may be discolored.
- *Pupil* is semidilated, vertically oval and fixed. It is non-reactive to both light and accommodation.
- *IOP* is markedly elevated, usually between 40 and 70 mm of Hg.
- *Optic disc* is oedematous and hyperaemic.
- *Fellow eye* shows shallow anterior chamber and a narrow angle.

**3. Primary angle-closure glaucoma (PACG).** Signs are as follows:

- *The IOP* remains constantly raised.
- Eye is painless and white like primary open angle glaucoma.
- *Visual field defects* appear which are similar to those in POAG.
- *Optic disc* may show glaucomatous cupping.
- *Visual acuity* is decreased.
- *Gonioscopy* reveals angle closed by peripheral anterior synechiae.

**4. Absolute glaucoma.** Signs are as follows:

- *Lids* show mild oedema.
- *Palpebral aperture* is slightly narrow.
- The anterior *ciliary veins* are dilated with a slight ciliary flush around the cornea (*perilimbal reddish blue zone*).
- In long-standing cases, few prominent and enlarged vessels are seen in the form of '*caput medusae*'.
- Cornea in early cases is clear but insensitive. Slowly it becomes hazy and may develop epithelial bullae (*bullous keratopathy*) or filaments (*filamentary keratitis*).
- *Anterior chamber* is very shallow.
- *Iris* becomes atrophic.

- *Pupil* becomes fixed and dilated and gives a greenish hue.
- *Optic disc* shows glaucomatous optic atrophy.
- *Intraocular pressure* is high; eyeball becomes stony hard.

## ■ A CASE OF PRIMARY OPEN-ANGLE GLAUCOMA

### Case Description

An early case of primary open-angle glaucoma (POAG) is usually not given in undergraduate examinations. However, an advanced or a case of POAG which has been operated for trabeculectomy may be kept as short or long case.

**Age and sex.** POAG usually affects about 1 in 100 of the general population (of either sex) above the age of 40 years. The disease is essentially bilateral.

**Presenting symptoms.** The disease is insidious and usually asymptomatic. Mild symptoms experienced by the patients include:

- Mild headache and eyeache.
- Difficulty in reading (patients usually give history of frequent change in near vision glasses).
- Occasionally, an observant patient may notice a defect in the visual field (scotoma).
- In late stages patient may complain of delayed dark adaptation.

**Ocular examination.** Anterior segment is usually normal. In advanced cases, the pupils are sluggishly reacting. Fixed and dilated pupils are seen in absolute glaucoma. Diagnosis is usually made from triad of raised intraocular pressure (IOP), glaucomatous optic disc changes and visual field changes (See pages 237–242). In a case of POAG operated for trabeculectomy, a filtration conjunctival bleb is seen at the site of operation near the limbus.

## ■ A CASE OF PHACOMORPHIC GLAUCOMA

**Presenting symptoms.** Patient presents with a sudden onset of severe pain, redness, watering from the eyes and marked loss of vision. Usually, there is associated nausea, vomiting, headache and prostration. Patient always gives history of preceding gradual painless loss of vision.

**Ocular examination** reveals following signs (See Fig. 10.21):

- *Lids* may be oedematous.
- *Conjunctiva* is chemosed and congested (both conjunctival and ciliary vessels are congested).
- *Cornea* becomes oedematous and insensitive.
- *Anterior chamber* is very shallow (opposite eye normal). Aqueous flare and cells may be seen in the anterior chamber.



- *Pupil* is semidilated, vertically oval and fixed.
- *Lens* is cataractous, swollen and bulging forward (intumescent cataract).
- *IOP* is markedly elevated.

## ■ A CASE OF PHACOLYTIC GLAUCOMA

### Case Description

The presenting symptoms and signs are similar to phacomorphic glaucoma except for following differences:

- *Anterior chamber* is not shallow. It is normal or slightly deep. Aqueous is turbid.
- *Lens* shows hypermature Morgagnian senile cataract.

## ■ RELATED QUESTIONS

What are normal values of intraocular pressure?

- Range: 10 to 21 mm of Hg
- Mean:  $16 \pm 2.5$  mm of Hg.

### What is the normal amount of aqueous humour present in the eye?

Normal amount of aqueous humour present in the anterior chamber is about 0.25 mL and in posterior chamber is 0.06 mL.

### What is the normal rate of aqueous production?

- 2.3  $\mu$ L/minute.

### What is the site of aqueous production?

- Ciliary processes.

### Name the mechanisms concerned with aqueous production.

- Diffusion
- Ultrafiltration
- Active secretion.

### Define glaucoma.

Glaucoma is not a single disease but a group of disorders in which intraocular pressure is sufficiently raised (above the tolerance limit of the affected eye) to impair normal functioning of the optic nerve.

### How do you classify glaucoma?

- I. *Congenital/developmental*
  1. Primary congenital glaucoma (without associated anomalies)
  2. Developmental glaucoma with other associated anomalies.
- II. *Primary glaucomas*
  1. Primary open-angle glaucoma (POAG)
  2. Primary angle-closure glaucoma (PACG)
  3. Primary mixed mechanism glaucoma.
- III. *Secondary glaucomas.*

### What is the incidence of primary angle-closure glaucoma?

- 1 in 1000 people over 40 years
- Male to female ratio is 1:4.

### Name the predisposing factors for PACG.

- Hypermetropic eyes
- Small corneal diameter
- Relative large size of the crystalline lens
- Short axial length of eyeball
- Shallow anterior chamber
- Plateau iris configuration.

### Name the precipitating factors for an attack of acute congestive glaucoma.

- Dim illumination
- Emotional stress, anxiety and excitement
- Use of mydriatics.

### Describe the mechanism of rise in IOP in acute narrow-angle glaucoma.

Mid-dilated pupil—increased contact between the lens and relative iris pupil block—physiological iris bombe formation—appositional angle closure (causing transient rise in IOP)—synechial angle closure—prolonged rise in IOP.

### Name the clinical stages of primary angle-closure glaucoma.

1. Primary angle-closure suspect (PACS)
2. Primary angle-closure (PAC)
  - Acute primary angle-closure
3. Primary angle-closure glaucoma (PACG)
4. Absolute glaucoma.

### Name the provocative tests used in primary angle-closure suspect (PACS) and primary angle closure (PAC) stage to confirm the diagnosis.

1. Darkroom test
2. Prone test
3. Prone darkroom test
4. Mydriatic test (10% phenylephrine test)
5. Mydriatic-miotic test (10% phenylephrine and 2% pilocarpine test).

### Enumerate the sequelae of an attack of acute primary angle closure (Acute PAC).

- Sectoral iris atrophy
- Spiralling of iris fibres
- Iris hole (pseudopolycoria)
- Large irregular pupil
- Glaucomflecken
- Peripheral anterior synechiae
- Chronic corneal oedema.



### How will you treat a case of acute primary angle-closure?

- I. *Immediate medical treatment* to control pain and lower the intraocular pressure
  1. Injectable analgesic to relieve the severe pain
  2. Acetazolamide 500 mg stat and then 250 mg qid orally.
  3. *Hyperosmotic agents*, e.g. glycerol 1 to 2 g per kg body weight orally in lemon juice and/or mannitol 1 to 2 g per kg body weight (20% solution) IV over 30 minutes.
  4. *Pilocarpine eye drops* 2 to 4% every 15 minutes for one hour and then qid.
  5. *Timolol maleate eye drops* 0.5% bd.
  6. *Topical steroid* 3 to 4 times a day to control the inflammation.
- II. *Surgical treatment*
  1. *Peripheral iridectomy/laser iridotomy* is sufficient when peripheral anterior synechiae (PAS) are formed in less than 50% of the angle.
  2. *Filtration surgery* (e.g. trabeculectomy) is performed when PAS are formed in more than 50% of the angle.
  3. *Peripheral iridectomy/laser iridotomy* should also be considered as prophylaxis for the fellow eye.

### Name the structures forming angle of the anterior chamber.

1. Root of the iris
2. Anterior most part of the ciliary body
3. Scleral spur
4. Trabecular meshwork
5. Schwalbe's line (prominent end of Descemet's membrane of cornea).

### How will you grade the angle width gonioscopically?

*Shaffer's grading system* is as follows:

#### Grade 4 (Wide open angle)

- Angle width is 35°–45°
- Structures seen are from Schwalbe's line to ciliary body
- Closure impossible.

#### Grade 3 (Open angle)

- Angle width is 20°–35°
- Structures seen are from Schwalbe's line to scleral spur
- Closure impossible.

#### Grade 2 (Moderately narrow angle)

- Angle width is about 20°.
- Structures seen are from Schwalbe's line to trabecular meshwork
- Angle closure is possible but unlikely.

#### Grade 1 (Very narrow angle)

- Angle width is about 10°
- Structure seen is Schwalbe's line only
- High-angle closure risk.

#### Grade 0 (Closed angle)

- Angle width is 0°
- None of the angle structures are seen (iridocorneal contact)
- Completely closed angle.

### Name the structures forming aqueous outflow system.

- Trabecular meshwork
- Schlemm's canal
- Collector channels.

### What is the incidence of primary congenital/developmental glaucoma?

- Affects 1 in 10,000 live births
- Male to female ratio is 3:1.

### What is the pathogenesis of developmental glaucoma?

Failure in the absorption of mesodermal tissue resulting in failure of development of the angle structures.

### What are gonioscopic findings of developmental glaucoma?

- Barkan's membrane may be present
- Thickening of trabecular meshwork
- Insertion of iris above the scleral spur
- Peripheral iris stroma hypoplasia.

### What is buphthalmos?

This term is used when eyeball enlarges (corneal diameter becomes more than 13 mm) in children developing congenital glaucoma at an early age (before the age of 3 years).

### What is the treatment of primary congenital glaucoma?

- Goniotomy
- Trabeculotomy
- Trabeculectomy (with antifibrosis treatment).

### What are the causes of secondary congenital glaucoma?

- I. *Glaucoma associated with mesodermal dysgenesis of the anterior ocular segment*, e.g.:
  1. Posterior embryotoxon
  2. Axenfeld's anomaly
  3. Rieger's syndrome
  4. Peter's anomaly.
- II. *Glaucoma associated with aniridia* (50%).



**III. Glaucoma associated with ectopia lentis syndrome**

1. Marfan's syndrome
2. Weill-Marchesani's syndrome
3. Homocystinuria.

**IV. Glaucoma associated with phacomatoses:**

1. Sturge-Weber syndrome (50% cases)
2. Von Recklinghausen's neurofibromatosis (25% cases).

**V. Miscellaneous conditions**

1. Lowe's syndrome (50% cases)
2. Naevus of Ota
3. Nanophthalmos
4. Congenital microcornea (60%)
5. Congenital rubella syndrome (10% cases).

**What is the incidence of primary open-angle glaucoma?**

- It affects 1 in 100 population (of either sex) above the age of 40 years.
- It forms about one-third cases of all glaucomas.

**What are the features of glaucomatous cupping of the disc?**

These include (See Figs 10.10 and 10.11) the following:

1. Cup/disc ratio is increased (normal 0.3 to 0.4), asymmetry of more than 0.2 is suspicious.
2. Notching of the rim.
3. Nasal shift of the vessels at disc.
4. Pallor area on the disc.
5. Presence of splinter haemorrhages on or near the disc margin.

**Name the predisposing factors for POAG.**

1. Heredity (positive family history)
2. Age (between 5th and 7th decade)
3. High myopia
4. Diabetes mellitus.

**What is the characteristic triad of POAG?**

1. Intraocular pressure more than 21 mm of Hg
2. Glaucomatous cupping of the disc
3. Glaucomatous field defects.

**What is ocular hypertension?**

Ocular hypertension or glaucoma suspect is the term used when a patient has an IOP constantly more than 23 mm of Hg but no optic disc or visual field changes.

**What is low tension glaucoma (LTG)?**

This term is used when typical glaucomatous disc cupping with or without visual field changes is associated with an IOP constantly below 21 mm of Hg.

**What are the other ocular associations of POAG?**

1. High myopia
2. Fuchs' dystrophy

3. Retinitis pigmentosa
4. Central retinal vein occlusion (CRVO)
5. Primary retinal detachment.

**What are glaucomatous field defects?**

1. Baring of the blind spot
2. Paracentral scotoma in Bjerrum's area (an arcuate area extending above and below the blind spot upto between 10° and 20° of fixation point)
3. Seidel scotoma
4. Arcuate or Bjerrum's scotoma
5. Double arcuate scotoma
6. Roenne's central nasal step
7. Advanced field defects with tubular vision.

**What is the treatment for primary open-angle glaucoma?**

**1. Medical treatment:** It is still the initial therapy. Topical timolol maleate 0.25% BD which may be increased to 0.5% BD. Pilocarpine TDS 2% which may be increased to 4% BD was previously used as drug of second choice. Recently latanoprost (0.005%, OD) is being considered the drug of first choice (provided patients can afford to buy it. Dorzolamide (2%, 2–3 times/day) has replaced pilocarpine as the second drug of choice and even as adjunct drug. If the patient does not respond to a single drug the two drugs can be combined. If still the IOP is not controlled, tablet acetazolamide 250 mg TDS may be added.

**2. Argon laser trabeculoplasty:** It may be considered as an alternative to medical therapy or as an additional measure in patients not responding to medical therapy alone.

**3. Surgical therapy:** It is usually undertaken when patient does not respond to maximal medical therapy alone or in combination with laser trabeculoplasty. Recently, it is also being considered as the primary line of treatment. Surgical treatment mainly consists of filtration surgery trabeculectomy.

**What are secondary glaucomas?**

In secondary glaucomas, intraocular pressure is raised due to some other primary ocular or systemic disease. Depending upon the causative primary disease, secondary glaucomas are classified as follows:

1. Lens-induced glaucomas
2. Glaucomas associated with uveitis
3. Pigmentary glaucoma
4. Neovascular glaucoma
5. Pseudoexfoliative glaucoma (glaucoma capsulare)
6. Glaucomas associated with intraocular haemorrhages



7. Steroid-induced glaucoma
8. Traumatic glaucoma
9. Glaucoma in aphakia
10. Glaucoma associated with intraocular tumours
11. Glaucomas associated with iridocorneal endothelial (ICE) syndromes
12. Ciliary block glaucoma (malignant glaucoma).

#### What are lens-induced glaucomas?

1. *Phacomorphic glaucoma*: Here in IOP is raised due to secondary angle closure and/or pupil block by:
  - i. Intumescent (swollen) cataractous lens (See Fig. 10.21)
  - ii. Anterior subluxated lens
  - iii. Spherophakia.
2. *Phacolytic glaucoma*: Here in IOP is raised due to clogging of trabecular meshwork by the macrophages laden with the leaked lens proteins, usually in hypermature cataract.
3. *Lens particle glaucoma*: It occurs due to blockage of trabeculae by the lens particles following rupture of the lens or after ECCE.
4. *Phacoanaphylactic glaucoma*: Sensitization of eye or its fellow to lens proteins. Inflammatory material clogs trabecular meshwork.
5. *Phacotoxic glaucoma*: Herein IOP is raised due to lens matter induced uveitis.

#### What is malignant glaucoma?

Malignant or ciliary block glaucoma occurs rarely as a complication of any intraocular operation. Classically, it occurs following peripheral iridectomy or filtration operation for primary narrow angle glaucoma. Its pathogenesis includes cilio-lenticular or ciliovitreal block.

It is characterized by a markedly raised intraocular pressure, persistent flat anterior chamber and a negative Seidel's test.

#### What is differential diagnosis of acute congestive glaucoma?

- Acute conjunctivitis
- Acute iridocyclitis
- Secondary acute congestive glaucomas
  - Phacomorphic glaucoma
  - Phacolytic glaucoma
  - Glaucomatocyclitic crisis.

#### What is postinflammatory glaucoma?

Postinflammatory glaucoma refers to rise in intraocular pressure due to following complications of anterior uveitis:

- Annular synechiae
- Occlusio pupillae

- Angle closure following iris bombe formation
- Angle-closure due to organization of the inflammatory debris.

#### What is pigmentary glaucoma?

Pigmentary glaucoma refers to raised IOP in patients with pigment dispersion syndrome. It typically affects young myopic males. Its features are similar to POAG with associated pigment deposition on corneal endothelium (Krukenberg's spindle) trabecular meshwork, iris, lens and zonules.

#### What is neovascular glaucoma?

Neovascular glaucoma refers to raised IOP occurring due to formation of a neovascular membrane involving angle of the anterior chamber. Usually, stimulus to new vessel formation is retinal ischaemia as seen in diabetic retinopathy, CRVO, Eales' disease. Other rare causes are chronic uveitis, intraocular tumours, old retinal detachment, CRAO and retinopathy of prematurity.

#### What is pseudoexfoliation glaucoma?

Pseudoexfoliation glaucoma is a type of secondary open-angle glaucoma associated with pseudoexfoliation (PEX) syndrome. PES refers to amyloid like deposits on pupillary border, anterior lens surface, posterior surface of iris, zonules and ciliary processes.

#### What is steroid-induced glaucoma?

Steroid-induced glaucoma is secondary open-angle glaucoma having features similar to POAG. It probably occurs due to deposition of mucopolysaccharides in the trabecular meshwork in patients using topical steroid eye drops. Roughly 5% of general population is high steroid responder (develop marked rise of IOP after about 6 weeks of steroid therapy), 35% are moderate and 60% are nonresponders.

#### Enumerate the causes of glaucoma in aphakia.

- Raised IOP due to postoperative hyphaema, inflammation, vitreous filling the anterior chamber.
- Angle closure due to flat anterior chamber
- Pupil block with or without angle closure
- Undiagnosed pre-existing POAG
- Steroid-induced glaucoma
- Epithelial in growth
- Aphakic malignant glaucoma.

## DISEASES OF EYELIDS

### ■ A CASE OF BLEPHARITIS

#### Case Description

*Age and sex.* Though more common in children, blepharitis may occur at any age equally in both sexes.



**Presenting symptoms.** Patients usually complain of deposits at the lid margin, associated with irritation, discomfort, occasional watering and history of falling of cilia or gluing of cilia.

**Ocular examination** may reveal signs of either seborrhoeic or ulcerative (See Figs 15.7 and 15.8) or mixed blepharitis.

- **Signs of seborrhoeic blepharitis are:** accumulation of white dandruff-like scales on the lid margin. On removing these scales underlying surface is found to be hyperaemic (no ulcers). Lashes fall out easily. In long standing cases lid margin is thickened and the sharp posterior lid border tends to be rounded leading to epiphora.
- **Signs of ulcerative blepharitis.** Yellow crusts are seen at the root of cilia which glue them together. Small ulcers, which bleed easily, are seen on removing the crusts. In between the crusts, the anterior lid margin may show dilated blood vessels (rosettes).

## Related Questions

### What is blepharitis and how do you classify it?

Blepharitis is a chronic inflammation of the lid margins. It can be divided into four classical types:

1. Seborrhoeic or squamous blepharitis
2. Ulcerative blepharitis
3. Mixed ulcerative with seborrhoeic blepharitis
4. Posterior blepharitis or meibomitis.

### How will you differentiate squamous blepharitis from ulcerative blepharitis?

1. In squamous blepharitis white dandruff-like scales are seen at the lid margin while in ulcerative blepharitis yellow crusts are seen.
2. On removing the white scales underlying surface is found to be hyperaemic in squamous blepharitis. While in ulcerative blepharitis, small ulcers which bleed easily are seen on removing the crusts.
3. Cilia may be glued together in ulcerative blepharitis, but not so in squamous blepharitis.

### What are the complications of ulcerative blepharitis?

When not treated for a long time, the following complications may occur:

1. Chronic conjunctivitis
2. Trichiasis
3. Madarosis (sparseness or absence of lashes)
4. Poliosis (greying of cilia)
5. Tylosis (thickening of lid margin)
6. Eversion of punctum leading to epiphora
7. Recurrent styes.

### How will you treat a case of squamous blepharitis?

1. Scales should be removed from the lid margin with the help of lukewarm solution of 3% soda-bicarb or some baby shampoo.
2. Combined steroid and broad spectrum eye ointment should be rubbed at the lid margin twice daily.
3. Associated seborrhoea should be treated adequately.

### How will you treat a case of ulcerative blepharitis?

1. Hot compresses.
2. Crusts should be removed after softening with 3% soda-bicarb.
3. Antibiotic ointment should be applied at lid margin immediately after removal of crusts.
4. Antibiotic eye drops should be instilled 3 to 4 times a day.
5. Oral antibiotics such as amoxycillin, cloxacillin, erythromycin or tetracycline may be useful.

## ■ A CASE OF CHALAZION (MEIBOMIAN CYST)

### Case Description

**Presenting symptoms.** Patient usually presents with a painless swelling near the lid margin. Patient may be concerned about the cosmetic disfigurement caused and may also feel mild heaviness in the lids. Sometimes, mild defective vision may occur due to astigmatism caused by pressure of chalazion on the cornea.

**Ocular examinations** reveal a small, firm to hard, nontender swelling present slightly away from the lid margin (See Fig. 15.12). Overlying skin is normal and mobile. The swelling usually points on the conjunctival side as red, purple or grey area seen on everting the lid. Sometimes, the main bulk of swelling may project on the skin side and occasionally on the lid margin.

**Differential diagnosis.** Chalazion needs to be differentiated from meibomian gland carcinoma, tuberculomata and tarsitis.

## ■ A CASE OF STYE

**Presenting symptoms** include acute pain and swelling in the lid. Patient also experiences heaviness in the eyelid, mild photophobia and watering.

**Ocular examination** during stage of cellulitis reveals tender swelling, redness and oedema of the affected lid margins (See Fig. 15.11). During stage of abscess formation a visible plus point on the lid margin in relation to the roof of affected cilia is formed.



**Differential diagnosis.** Sty (hordeolum externum) should be differentiated from hordeolum internum.

## Related Questions

### What is a chalazion?

Chalazion is also known as *tarsal* or *meibomian cyst*. It is a chronic noninfective granulomatous inflammation of the meibomian gland.

### What is hordeolum externum (stye)?

Hordeolum externum is an acute suppurative inflammation of one of the Zeis' glands.

It is characterized by a localized, hard, red, tender swelling at the lid margin (PI.VI). In advanced stage, a pus point is visible at the lid margin.

### What is hordeolum internum? How will you differentiate it from hordeolum externum?

Hordeolum internum is a suppurative inflammation of the meibomian gland associated with blockage of the duct. It may occur as primary staphylococcal infection of the meibomian gland or due to secondary infection in a chalazion (infected chalazion).

Its symptoms are similar to hordeolum externum except that pain is more intense due to the swelling being deeply embedded in the dense fibrous tissue. On examination it can be differentiated from hordeolum externum by the facts that in it, the point of maximum tenderness and swelling is away from the lid margin and that pus usually points on the tarsal conjunctiva (seen as a yellowish area on everting the lid) and not on the root of cilia.

### When not treated, what complications can occur in a case of chalazion?

1. A large chalazion of the upper lid may press on the cornea and may cause blurred vision due to induced astigmatism.
2. A large chalazion of the lower lid may rarely cause eversion of the punctum or even ectropion and epiphora.
3. Occasionally, a chalazion may burst on the conjunctival side forming a fungating mass of granulation tissue.
4. Due to secondary infection the chalazion may be converted into hordeolum internum.
5. Calcification may occur, though very rarely.
6. Malignant change into meibomian gland carcinoma may be seen occasionally in elderly people.

### How do you treat a case of chalazion?

1. *Conservative treatment* in the form of hot fomentation, topical antibiotic eye drops and

oral anti-inflammatory drugs may lead to self-resolution in a small, soft and recent chalazion.

2. *Intralesional injection* of long acting steroid (triamcinolone) is reported to cause resolution in about 50% cases.
3. *Incision and curettage* is the conventional and effective treatment for chalazion.

### Describe the steps of incision and curettage of a chalazion.

1. Local anaesthesia is obtained by topical instillation of 4% Xylocaine drops in the conjunctival sac and infiltration of the lid in the region of chalazion with 2% Xylocaine.
2. A chalazion clamp is applied with its fenestrated side on the conjunctival side and the lid is everted.
3. A vertical incision is made to avoid injury to the other meibomian glands.
4. The contents are curetted out with the help of a chalazion scoop.
5. To avoid recurrence its cavity should be cauterized with carbolic acid.
6. An antibiotic eye ointment is instilled and eye is padded.

### What is the treatment of a marginal chalazion?

Destruction by diathermy is the treatment of choice for a marginal chalazion.

## ■ A CASE OF TRICHIASIS AND ENTROPION

### Description of a Case of Trichiasis

**Presenting symptoms.** Patients may present with a foreign body sensation, photophobia, irritation and lacrimation. Sometimes, patient may experience troublesome pain.

**Past history** of the disease causative of trichiasis such as cicatrizing trachoma, ulcerative blepharitis, membranous conjunctivitis, mechanical injuries, burns and operation of the lid margin may be explored.

**Ocular examination** reveals one or more misdirected cilia touching the eyeball (See Fig. 15.16). There may or may not be signs of the causative disease.

### Description of a Case of Entropion

**Presenting symptoms** and past history exploration are similar to a case of trichiasis.

**Ocular examination** reveals inturned lid margin (See Figs 15.18 and 15.19). Depending upon the degree of inturning the entropion can be divided into three grades. In grade I entropion, only the posterior lid border is inrolled. Grade II entropion includes inturning up to the intermarginal strip, while in grade III, the whole lid margin including the anterior lid border is inturned.

Examination may also reveal signs of the causative disease.



## Related Questions

### Define trichiasis

Trichiasis refers to inward misdirection of cilia which rub against the eyeball.

### What are the common causes of trichiasis?

1. Cicatrizing trachoma
2. Ulcerative blepharitis
3. Healed membranous conjunctivitis
4. Healed hordeolum externum
5. Mechanical injuries
6. Burns and operative scars on the lid margin.

### When not treated in time, what complications can occur in a case of trichiasis?

1. Corneal abrasions
2. Superficial corneal opacities
3. Corneal vascularization
4. Non-healing corneal ulceration.

### What is distichiasis?

Distichiasis is condition of an extra posterior row of cilia which occupy the position of meibomian glands.

### How will you treat a case of trichiasis?

1. *Epilation*: It is a temporary measure.
2. *Electrolysis*: After local infiltration of anaesthesia, a current of 2 milliampere is passed for about 10 seconds through a fine needle inserted into the lash root. The loosened cilia with destroyed follicles are then removed with the help of an epilation forceps.
3. *Cryoeplilation*: After infiltration anaesthesia, the cryoprobe ( $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ ) is applied for 20 to 25 seconds to the external lid margin. The loosened lash is pulled with an epilation forceps.
4. *Surgical correction*: It is similar to cicatricial entropion and should be employed when many cilia are misdirected.

### Define entropion.

Entropion refers to turning in of the lid margin.

### What are the types of entropion?

Depending upon the cause, entropion may be of the following types:

1. Congenital entropion
2. Cicatricial entropion
3. Spastic entropion
4. Mechanical entropion.

### What are the causes of cicatricial entropion?

1. Trachoma
2. Membranous conjunctivitis
3. Chemical burns
4. Pemphigus
5. Stevens-Johnson syndrome.

### Name the surgical techniques employed for correcting cicatricial entropion.

1. Resection of skin and muscle
2. Resection of skin, muscle and tarsus
3. Modified Burow's operation
4. Jaesche-Arlt's operation
5. Modified Ketssey's operation.

### Name the surgical techniques used to correct a senile (involutional) entropion.

1. Modified Wheeler's operation
2. Bick's procedure with Reeh's modification
3. Weiss operation
4. Tucking of inferior lid retractors (Jones, Reeh and Webing operation).

## A CASE OF ECTROPION

### CASE DESCRIPTION

*Presenting symptoms* include watering (epiphora) and cosmetic disfigurement. Patients may also have symptoms of associated chronic conjunctivitis which include irritation, discomfort and mild photophobia. *Ocular examination*. The lid margin is outrolled (See Fig. 15.26). Depending upon the degree of outrolling, ectropion can be divided into three grades. In grade I ectropion, only the punctum is everted. In grade II ectropion lid margin is everted and palpebral conjunctiva is visible while in grade III the fornix is also visible.

Examination may also reveal signs of etiological condition such as scar in cicatricial ectropion (See Fig. 15.26B) and seventh nerve palsy in paralytic ectropion.

## RELATED QUESTIONS

### What is ectropion?

Outrolling or outward turning of the lid margin is called ectropion.

### What are the types of ectropion?

1. Senile ectropion
2. Paralytic ectropion
3. Cicatricial ectropion
4. Spastic ectropion.

### What is the treatment of senile ectropion?

Depending upon the severity of the ectropion, following three operations are commonly performed:

1. Medial conjunctivoplasty
2. Horizontal shortening
3. Byron-Smith's modified Kuhnt-Szymanowski operation.

### What is a symblepharon?

Symblepharon is a condition in which lids become adherent with the eyeball. It results from healing of



the kissing raw surfaces of the palpebral and bulbar conjunctiva.

#### What are the common causes of symblepharon?

1. Chemical burns
2. Thermal burns
3. Membranous conjunctivitis
4. Conjunctival injuries
5. Ocular pemphigus
6. Stevens-Johnson syndrome.

#### What do you mean by ankyloblepharon?

Ankyloblepharon refers to the adhesions between margins of the upper and lower lids. It may be congenital or may result after healing of chemical or thermal burns.

#### What is blepharophimosis?

In blepharophimosis vertical as well as horizontal extent of the palpebral fissure is decreased.

#### What is lagophthalmos? Enumerate its common causes.

Lagophthalmos refers to the inability to voluntarily close the eyelids. Its common causes are:

1. Paralysis of seventh nerve
2. Marked proptosis
3. Cicatricial contraction of the lids
4. Following over-resection of the levator palpebrae superioris
5. Symblepharon
6. Comatosed patient.

#### What is blepharospasm?

Blepharospasm refers to the involuntary, sustained and forceful closure of the eyelids. It is of two types: essential blepharospasm and reflex blepharospasm.

### ■ A CASE OF PTOSIS

#### Case Description

**Age and sex.** Ptosis may be congenital or acquired. Acquired ptosis may occur at any age in either sex.

**History.** It should include age of onset, family history, history of trauma, eye surgery, and variability in degree of ptosis.

**Examination** should include:

1. Inspection to note:
  - True ptosis or pseudoptosis
  - Unilateral or bilateral ptosis
  - Eyelid crease and function of orbicularis
  - Presence of jaw winking phenomenon
  - Associated weakness of extraocular muscles
  - Bell's phenomenon
2. Measurement of degree of ptosis
3. Assessment of levator function

4. Special investigations for acquired ptosis (For details See page 396).

### ■ RELATED QUESTIONS

#### What is ptosis?

Abnormal drooping of the upper eyelids is called ptosis. Normally, upper lid covers about upper one sixth (2 mm) of the cornea. Therefore, in ptosis it covers more than 2 mm.

#### What are the types of ptosis?

- I. *Congenital ptosis* which may be:
  1. Simple congenital ptosis (not associated with any other anomaly) (See Fig. 15.33A).
  2. Congenital ptosis with associated weakness of the superior rectus muscle.
  3. As a part of blepharophimosis syndrome (See Fig. 15.33B).
  4. Congenital synkinetic ptosis (Marcus Gunn jaw winking ptosis).
- II. *Acquired ptosis* includes:
  1. Neurogenic ptosis
  2. Myogenic ptosis
  3. Aponeurotic ptosis
  4. Mechanical ptosis.

#### How do you grade ptosis?

Depending upon the amount of ptosis in mm, it is graded as follows:

1. Mild ptosis (2 mm)
2. Moderate ptosis (3 mm)
3. Severe ptosis (4 mm).

#### How do you grade levator function?

Depending upon the amount of lid excursion caused by levator muscle (Burke's method), its function is graded as follows:

|        |   |              |
|--------|---|--------------|
| Normal | : | 15 mm        |
| Good   | : | 8 mm or more |
| Fair   | : | 5–7 mm       |
| Poor   | : | 4 mm or less |

#### Which test is carried out to confirm the diagnosis in a patient with ptosis suspected of myasthenia gravis?

- Tensilon or edrophonium test.

#### Which test is carried out in a patient suspected of Horner's syndrome?

- Phenylephrine test.

#### Name the three basic surgical procedures for ptosis correction.

1. Fasanella-Servat operation
2. Levator resection operation
3. Frontalis sling operation



**Name the common lid tumours.**

- I. *Benign tumours*
  1. Simple papilloma
  2. Naevus
  3. Haemangioma
  4. Neurofibroma.
- II. *Precancerous conditions*
  1. Solar keratosis
  2. Carcinoma in-situ
  3. Xeroderma pigmentosa.
- III. *Malignant tumours*
  1. Squamous-cell carcinoma
  2. Basal-cell carcinoma
  3. Malignant melanoma
  4. Sebaceous gland carcinoma.

**Which is the most common malignant tumour of the lids?**

- Basal-cell carcinoma.

**Which is the most common site for occurrence of basal-cell carcinoma?**

- Medial canthus.

**What is the structure of an eyelid?**

Each eyelid from anterior to posterior consists of the following layers:

1. Skin
2. Subcutaneous areolar tissue
3. Layer of striated muscle (orbicularis oculi and levator palpebrae superioris in upper lid only)
4. Submuscular areolar tissue
5. Fibrous layer (tarsal) plate and septum orbitale
6. Layer of non-striated muscle fibres (Muller's muscle)
7. Conjunctiva.

**Name the glands of the eyelids.**

1. Meibomian glands
2. Glands of Zeis
3. Glands of Moll
4. Accessory lacrimal glands of Wolfring.

**What are the causes of pseudoptosis?**

- Anophthalmos
- Enophthalmos
- Phthisis bulbi
- Atrophic bulbi
- Trachoma (stage of sequelae)
- Any tumour or nodule of upper lid.

**DISEASES OF LACRIMAL APPARATUS****A CASE OF CHRONIC DACRYOCYSTITIS****Case Description**

**Age and sex.** The disease may occur at any age and in any sex. However, in general, females are much

more commonly affected than males and the disease is more common between 40 and 60 years of age.

**Presenting symptoms.** A patient presents with a long standing history of watering from the eyes which may or may not be associated with a swelling at the inner canthus.

**Ocular examination** may reveal any of the following signs:

- No swelling is seen at the medial canthus but regurgitation test is positive, i.e. a reflux of mucopurulent discharge from the puncta when pressure is applied over the lacrimal sac area.
- A swelling may be seen at the medial canthus (See Fig. 16.8). Milky or gelatinous mucoid fluid regurgitates from the lower punctum on pressing the swelling (lacrimal mucocele).
- Sometimes on pressing the swelling, a frank purulent discharge flows from the lower punctum (lacrimal pyocele).
- Sometimes, a swelling is seen at the inner canthus with a negative regurgitation test (encysted mucocele).

**Related Questions****What are the causes of a watering eye?**

Watering from the eyes may occur either due to excessive lacrimation or may result from obstruction to the outflow of normally secreted tears (epiphora). The common causes of watering eye are listed at page 408.

**Name the tests which you would like to carry out to evaluate a case of watering eye.**

1. Examination with diffuse illumination under magnification to rule out causes of hyperlacrimation and punctal causes of epiphora
2. Regurgitation test for chronic dacryocystitis
3. Fluorescein dye disappearance test (FDDT)
4. Lacrimal syringing test
5. Jones's dye test I and II
6. Dacryocystography
7. Lacrimal scintillography.

**What is regurgitation test?**

In regurgitation test, a steady pressure with index finger is applied over the lacrimal sac area above the medial palpebral ligament. Reflux of mucopurulent discharge (a positive regurgitation test) indicates chronic dacryocystitis with obstruction at the lower end of sac or nasolacrimal duct.

**What are the causes of a negative regurgitation test?**

Causes of a negative regurgitation test are:

- Normal sac (no dacryocystitis)
- Wrong site of pressure



- Patient might have emptied the sac just before coming to the examiner's chamber
- Encysted mucocele
- Internal fistula.

#### **Name the indications of lacrimal syringing.**

1. Diagnostic indications:
  - Epiphora
  - For dacryocystography
2. Therapeutic indications:
  - Congenital dacryocystitis
  - Early cases of chronic catarrhal dacryocystitis
3. Prognostic:
  - After DCR operation.

#### **Describe the procedure and interpretations of the results of lacrimal syringing.**

1. Topical anaesthesia is obtained by instilling 4% Xylocaine in the conjunctival sac.
2. Lower punctum is dilated with a punctum dilator.
3. Normal saline is pushed into the lacrimal sac through the lower punctum with the help of a syringe and lacrimal cannula (See Fig. 16.5) and results are interpreted as follows:
  - A free passage of saline through lacrimal passages into the nose indicates either no obstruction or partial obstruction.
  - In the presence of obstruction no fluid passes into the nose. When obstruction is in the nasolacrimal duct, the sac fills with the normal saline which refluxes from the upper punctum.
  - In case of lower canalicular obstruction, there will be immediate reflux of the saline through the lower punctum. Under these circumstances, the procedure should be repeated through the upper punctum. A free passage of saline into the nose will confirm the blockage in the lower canaliculus while regurgitation back through the same punctum will indicate block at the level of common canaliculus.

#### **What is dacryocystitis, how will you classify it?**

Dacryocystitis is inflammation of the lacrimal sac. It can be classified as follows:

1. Congenital dacryocystitis
2. Adult dacryocystitis which may occur as:
  - Chronic dacryocystitis, and
  - Acute dacryocystitis.

#### **What is the etiology of congenital dacryocystitis? How will you treat it?**

Congenital dacryocystitis follows stasis of secretions in the lacrimal sac due to congenital blockage in the nasolacrimal duct (usually a membranous occlusion at the lower end of NLD).

Its treatment, depends upon the age at which child is brought (See page 430).

#### **What is the treatment of choice in adulthood chronic dacryocystitis?**

Dacryocystorhinostomy (DCR) operation is the operation of choice since it re-establishes the lacrimal drainage. When DCR is contraindicated, dacryocystectomy may be performed.

#### **What is dacryocystectomy? Enumerate its indications.**

Dacryocystectomy is the excision of the lacrimal sac. It should be performed only when DCR is contraindicated as in following conditions:

1. Too young (less than 4 years) or too old (more than 60 years) a patient.
2. Markedly shrunken and fibrosed sac.
3. Tuberculosis, syphilis, leprosy or mycotic infection of the sac.
4. Tumours of the sac.
5. Gross nasal diseases like atrophic rhinitis.
6. An unskilled surgeon, because it is said that a good 'DCR' is always better than a badly done 'DCR'.

#### **What are tears?**

Tears form the aqueous layer of tear film and are secreted by the accessory and main lacrimal glands. Tears mainly comprise water and small quantities of salts such as sodium chloride, sugar, urea and proteins. Therefore, it is alkaline and saltish in taste. It also contains antibacterial substances like lysozyme, betalysin and lactoferrin.

#### **What are the layers of tear film?**

Wolf described the following three layers of tear film:

1. *Mucous layer*: It is the innermost and thinnest layer of tear film. It consists of mucin secreted by the conjunctival goblet cells. It converts the hydrophobic corneal surface into a hydrophilic one.
2. *Aqueous layer*: It consists of tears secreted by the main and accessory lacrimal glands and forms the main bulk of the tear film.
3. *Lipid or oily layer*: It consists of secretions of the meibomian, Zeis and Moll's glands. It prevents the overflow of tears and retards their evaporation.

#### **What are the functions of tear film?**

1. It keeps the cornea and conjunctiva moist.
2. Provides oxygen to the corneal epithelium.
3. It washes away debris and noxious irritants.
4. It prevents infection due to presence of antibacterial substances.
5. It facilitates movement of the lids over the globe.



**What is dry eye?**

Dry eye per se is not a disease entity but a symptom complex occurring as a sequela to deficiency or abnormalities of the tear film.

**What are the causes of dry eye?**

1. *Aqueous deficiency dry eye* (keratoconjunctivitis sicca—KCS)
  - Congenital alacrimia
  - Sjogren's syndrome
  - Riley-Day syndrome
  - Idiopathic hyposecretion.
2. *Mucin deficiency dry eye*
  - Hypovitaminosis A (xerophthalmia)
  - Stevens-Johnson syndrome
  - Trachoma
  - Chemical burns.
3. *Lipid abnormalities*
  - Chronic blepharitis
  - Chronic meibomitis.
4. *Impaired eyelid function*
  - Bell's palsy
  - Exposure keratitis
  - Ectropion.
5. *Epitheliopathies* of corneal surface.

**Name the important tear film tests performed to diagnose the dry eye.**

- Tear film break-up-time (BUT)
- Schirmer I test
- Rose bengal staining.

**What is tear film break-up time?**

Tear film break-up time is the interval between a complete blink and appearance of the first randomly distributed dry spot on the corneal surface. Its normal values range between 15 and 35 seconds. Values less than 10 seconds employ an unstable tear film.

**What is Schirmer I Test?**

Schirmer test measures the total tear secretions with the help of 5 × 35 mm strip of Whatman No. 42 filter paper. Its normal values are more than 15 mm of wetting of the filter paper strip in 5 minutes. Values between 5 and 10 mm are suggestive of mild to moderate keratoconjunctivitis sicca (KCS) and less than 5 mm of severe KCS.

**What is Sjogren's syndrome?**

Sjogren's syndrome is an autoimmune disease usually occurring in women between 40 and 50 years of age. Its main feature is an aqueous deficiency dry eye (KCS). It occurs in two forms:

1. Primary Sjogren's syndrome: In it, KCS is combined with xerostomia (dry mouth).

2. Secondary Sjogren's syndrome: In it, dry eye and/or dry mouth is associated with an autoimmune disease, commonly rheumatoid arthritis.

**What is the treatment of dry eye?**

1. Supplementation by artificial tear solution such as: 0.7% methylcellulose, 0.3% hypromellose or 1.4% polyvinyl alcohol.
2. Preservation of existing tears by punctal occlusions with collagen implants or electrocauterization.
3. Mucolytics such as 5% acetylcysteine help by dispersing the mucous threads.

**DISEASES OF ORBIT****■ A CASE OF PROPTOSIS****Case Description**

**Presenting symptoms.** A patient presents with a history of the bulging of the eyeball which may be gradually or rapidly progressive. It may or may not be associated with visual loss, diplopia, pain or other symptoms.

**Ocular examination reveals** outward protrusion of the eyeball which may be:

- Unilateral (See Fig. 17.7) or bilateral (See Fig. 17.11)
- Axial or eccentric
- Pulsatile or non-pulsatile
- Reducible or non-reducible
- May or may not be associated with lagophthalmos.

**Related Questions****What is proptosis and exophthalmos?**

Proptosis refers to forward displacement of the eyeball beyond the orbital margin. Though the word exophthalmos (out eye) is synonymous with proptosis; somehow it has become customary to use the term exophthalmos for the displacement associated with thyroid eye disease.

**What are the causes of unilateral proptosis?**

1. Congenital conditions
  - Dermoid cyst
  - Congenital cystic eyeball
  - Teratoma.
2. Traumatic lesions
  - Orbital haemorrhage
  - Retained intraorbital foreign body
  - Traumatic aneurysm.
3. Inflammatory lesions
  - Orbital cellulitis or abscess
  - Panophthalmitis
  - Cavernous sinus thrombosis
  - Pseudotumour.



4. Circulatory disturbances and vascular lesions
  - Orbital varix
  - Aneurysm.
5. Cysts of the orbit
  - Implantation cyst
  - Hydatid cyst
  - Cysticercus cellulosae.
6. Tumours of the orbit, which may be
  - Primary tumours (arising from the various intraorbital structures)
  - Secondary tumours (invading from the surrounding structures)
  - Metastatic tumours from the distant primary tumours.

#### Enumerate the causes of bilateral proptosis.

1. Developmental anomalies of the skull:
  - Oxycephaly
2. Inflammatory conditions:
  - Mikulicz's syndrome
  - Late stage of cavernous sinus thrombosis
3. Endocrine exophthalmos (most common cause) (See Fig. 17.11)
4. Orbital tumours, e.g.:
  - Lymphoma or lymphosarcoma.
  - Secondaries from:
    - Neuroblastoma
    - Nephroblastoma
    - Ewing's sarcoma
    - Leukaemic infiltration.
5. Systemic diseases, e.g.:
  - Histiocytosis-X
  - Systemic amyloidosis
  - Xanthomatosis
  - Wegener's granulomatosis.

#### What are the causes of acute proptosis?

1. Orbital emphysema following fracture of medial orbital wall
2. Orbital haemorrhage
3. Rupture of ethmoidal mucocele.

#### What are the causes of intermittent proptosis?

1. Orbital varix (most common cause)
2. Periodic orbital oedema
3. Highly vascular tumour.

#### What are the causes of pulsatile proptosis?

1. Caroticocavernous fistula (most common cause)
2. Saccular aneurysm of ophthalmic artery
3. Congenital orbital encephalocele
4. Hiatus in the orbital roof due to trauma, operation or that associated with neurofibromatosis.

#### How will you investigate a case of proptosis?

Evaluation of a case of proptosis includes the following:

#### I. Clinical evaluation

- a. History
- b. Local examination:
  - (1) Inspection; (2) palpation; (3) auscultation;
  - (4) transillumination; (5) visual acuity;
  - (6) papillary reactions; (7) fundoscopy;
  - (8) ocular motility; (9) exophthalmometry
- c. Systemic examination.

#### II. Laboratory investigations

- Thyroid function tests
- Haematological tests
- Stool examination for cysts and ova
- Urine analysis.

#### III. Roentgen examination

1. Plain radiograph of orbit
2. CT Scanning
3. Ultrasonography
4. Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)
5. Carotid angiography.

#### IV. Histopathological studies

1. Fine-needle aspiration biopsy (FNAB)
2. Incisional biopsy
3. Excisional biopsy.

#### What is enophthalmos? Enumerate its causes.

Enophthalmos is the inward displacement of the eyeball. Its common causes are:

1. Congenital microphthalmos.
2. Congenital maxillary hypoplasia.
3. Traumatic blow-out fractures of the orbital floor.
4. Post-inflammatory cicatrization of the extraocular muscles as in pseudotumour syndromes.
5. Paralytic enophthalmos as seen in Horner's syndrome.
6. Atrophy of the orbital contents, e.g. senile atrophy of orbital fat, atrophy following irradiation of malignant tumours.

#### What is Graves' ophthalmopathy?

This is a term coined to denote typical ocular changes which include: lid retraction, lid lag and proptosis (See Fig. 17.11). These changes are also known as endocrine exophthalmos, dysthyroid ophthalmopathy, thyroid ophthalmopathy and ocular Graves' disease (OGD).

#### Name the extraocular muscle most frequently affected in Graves' ophthalmopathy.

- Inferior rectus.

#### What is American Thyroid Association classification of Graves' ophthalmopathy?

American Thyroid Association (ATA) has classified Graves' ophthalmopathy irrespective of the hormonal status into the following classes; characterized by the acronym 'NOSPECS':



- Class 0 : No signs and symptoms.
- Class 1 : Only signs, no symptoms. Signs are limited to lid retraction with or without lid lag and mild proptosis.
- Class 2 : Soft tissue involvement with signs of class I and symptoms including lacrimation, photophobia, lid or conjunctival swelling.
- Class 3 : Proptosis is well established.
- Class 4 : Extraocular muscle involvement (limitation of movements and diplopia).
- Class 5 : Corneal involvement (exposure keratitis).
- Class 6 : Sight loss due to optic nerve involvement with disc pallor or papilloedema.

### What are the two clinical types of Graves' ophthalmopathy?

1. *Thyrotoxic exophthalmos* (exophthalmic goitre): In this form, a mild exophthalmos is associated with lid signs and all signs of thyrotoxicosis which include: tachycardia, muscle tremors and raised basal metabolism.
2. *Thyrotropic exophthalmos* (exophthalmic ophthalmoplegia): In this marked exophthalmos and an infiltrative ophthalmoplegia is associated with euthyroidism or hypothyroidism.

### What are the causes of pseudoproptosis?

1. Buphthalmos
2. Lid retraction
3. High-axial myopia
4. Staphyloma
5. Enophthalmos of the opposite eye.

### What are the causes of reducible proptosis?

- Early stages of ocular Graves' disease
- Haemangioma
- Orbital varix
- Carotidocavernous fistula.

### Which is the most common primary tumour of the orbit presenting as proptosis?

- Cavernous haemangioma.

### Name the most common primary orbital tumour of childhood.

- Rhabdomyosarcoma.

## DISORDERS OF OCULAR MOTILITY

### A CASE OF SQUINT

#### Case Description

**Presenting symptoms.** Patient presents with deviation of one eye which may be on medial side (convergent squint) or lateral side (divergent squint).

**History of present illness** must include following important points:

- Age of onset
- Mode of onset, sudden or gradual
- Precipitating factors such as, systemic illness ocular cause, emotional breakdown, trauma
- History of diplopia
- Birth history is important in early childhood onset deviation
- History of use of glasses.

**Family history** is also important in a case of strabismus.

**Ocular examination** should reveal:

- Whether the manifest squint is convergent (See Fig. 14.14) or divergent (See Fig. 14.16).
- Abnormal head posture associated or not.
- Whether the squint is unilateral or alternating.
- Ocular movements are normal (concomitant squint) or limited (paralytic or nonconcomitant squint).
- Angle of squint on corneal reflex test (Hirschberg's test).

**Note.** Detailed orthoptic examination is not expected from an undergraduate student.

### Related Questions

#### Name the various extraocular muscles.

- Superior rectus
- Inferior rectus
- Medial rectus
- Lateral rectus
- Superior oblique
- Inferior oblique.

#### What is the origin of rectus muscles?

The rectus muscles originate from a common tendinous ring (annulus of Zinn), which is attached at the apex of the orbit.

#### Where are the rectus muscles inserted?

The rectus muscles are inserted into the sclera by flat tendons at different distances from the limbus as under:

- |                   |   |        |
|-------------------|---|--------|
| • Medial rectus   | — | 5.5 mm |
| • Inferior rectus | — | 6.5 mm |
| • Lateral rectus  | — | 6.9 mm |
| • Superior rectus | — | 7.7 mm |

#### What is the nerve supply of extraocular muscles?

The extraocular muscles are supplied by third, fourth and sixth cranial nerves. The third cranial nerve (oculomotor) supplies the superior, medial and inferior recti and inferior oblique muscles. The fourth cranial nerve (trochlear) supplies the superior oblique muscle, and sixth cranial nerve supplies the lateral rectus muscle.



### What are the actions of extraocular muscles?

Action of each extraocular muscle is as below:

| Muscle           | Primary action | Secondary action | Tertiary action |
|------------------|----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| Medial rectus    | Adduction      | -                | -               |
| Lateral rectus   | Abduction      | -                | -               |
| Superior rectus  | Elevation      | Intorsion        | Adduction       |
| Inferior rectus  | Depression     | Extorsion        | Adduction       |
| Superior oblique | Intorsion      | Depression       | Abduction       |
| Inferior oblique | Extorsion      | Elevation        | Abduction       |

### Describe uniocular movements of the eyeball.

Uniocular movements of the eyeball are called *ductions*. These are as follows:

1. **Adduction.** It is medial rotation along the vertical axis.
2. **Abduction.** It is lateral rotation along the vertical axis.
3. **Infraduction.** It is downward movement (depression) along the horizontal axis.
4. **Supraduction.** It is upward movement (elevation) along the horizontal axis.
5. **Incycloduction (Intorsion).** It is rotatory movement along the anteroposterior axis in which superior pole of cornea (12 O'clock point) moves medially.
6. **Excycloduction (Extorsion).** It is rotatory movement along the anteroposterior axis in which superior pole of cornea (12 O'clock point) moves laterally.

### What are version movements of the eyeball?

Versions also known as *conjugate movements*, are synchronous (simultaneous) symmetric movements of both the eyes in the same direction. For example:

- Dextroversion is the movement of both eyes to the right.
- Levoversion is the movement of both eyes to the left.

### What are vergence movements of the eyeball?

Vergences, also called as *disjugate movements*, are synchronous and symmetric movements of both eyes in opposite directions, e.g.:

- Convergence is simultaneous inward movement of both the eyes.
- Divergence is simultaneous outward movement of both the eyes.

### Define synergists, antagonists and yoke muscles.

1. **Synergists** are the muscles which have a similar primary action in the same eye, e.g. superior rectus and inferior oblique of the same eye act as synergistic elevators.

2. **Antagonists** are the muscles which have opposite actions in the same eye, e.g. superior and inferior recti are the antagonists to each other in the same eye.

3. **Yoke muscles** (contralateral synergists) are a pair of muscles (one from each eye) which contract simultaneously during version movements.

Different pairs of yoke muscles are as follows:

- Right medial rectus and left lateral rectus
- Right lateral rectus and left medial rectus
- Right superior rectus and left inferior oblique
- Right inferior rectus and left superior oblique
- Right superior oblique and left inferior rectus
- Right inferior oblique and left superior rectus.

### What is Hering's law of equal innervation?

According to it, an equal and simultaneous innervation flows from the brain to a pair of muscles which contract simultaneously (yoke muscles) in different binocular movements, e.g. during dextroversion, right lateral rectus muscles and left medial rectus muscle, receiving an equal and simultaneous flow of innervation.

### What is Sherrington's law of reciprocal innervation?

According to it, during ocular movements an increased flow of innervation to the contracting muscles is accompanied by a simultaneous decreased flow of innervation to the relaxing antagonists. For example, during dextroversion an increased innervation flow to the right lateral rectus and left medial rectus is accompanied by a decreased flow to the right medial rectus and left lateral rectus muscles.

### What is the primary position of gaze?

It is the position assumed by the eyes when fixing a distant object (straight ahead) with the erect position of head.

### What are the secondary positions of gaze?

These are the positions assumed by the eyes while looking straight up, and down to the right and to the left.

### What are the cardinal positions of gaze?

These are the positions which allow examination of each of the 12 extraocular muscles in their main field of action. There are six cardinal positions of gaze, viz. dextroversion, levoversion, dextro-elevation, levelevation, dextro-depression and levodepression.



**What are the three grades of binocular single vision?**

**Grade I. Simultaneous macular perception (SMP):** It is the power to see two dissimilar objects which can be superimposed to form a joint picture. For example, when the picture of a lion is projected onto the right eye and that of a cage to the left eye, an individual with presence of SMP will see the lion in the cage.

**Grade II. Fusion:** It consists of the power to superimpose two incomplete but similar images to form one complete image.

**Grade III. Stereopsis:** It consists of the ability to perceive the third dimension (depth perception).

**What is squint; how do you classify it?**

Normally, visual axes of the two eyes are parallel to each other in the primary position of gaze and this alignment is maintained in all positions.

A misalignment of the visual axes of the two eyes is called squint or strabismus. Broadly, it can be classified as:

1. Apparent squint or pseudostrabismus
2. Latent squint (heterophoria)
3. Manifest squint (heterotropia), which includes:
  - i. Concomitant squint
  - ii. Incomitant squint.

**What is heterophoria? and what are its types?**

Also known as *latent squint*, it is a condition in which the tendency of the eyes to deviate is kept latent by fusion. Therefore, when the influence of fusion is removed the visual axis of one eye deviates.

Common types of heterophoria are:

1. **Esophoria:** It is a tendency to converge when binocularity is broken by any means.
2. **Exophoria:** It is a tendency to diverge.
3. **Hyperphoria:** It is a tendency to deviate upwards, while hypophoria is a tendency to deviate downwards. However, in practice it is customary to use the term right or left hyperphoria, depending on the eye which remains up as compared to the other.

**Name a few tests by which heterophoria can be diagnosed.**

1. Cover-uncover test
2. Maddox rod test
3. Maddox wing test.

**What is suppression?**

Suppression is a temporary active cortical inhibition of the image of an object formed on the retina of the squinting eye. This phenomenon occurs only during binocular vision (with both eyes open). It can be tested by Worth's four-dot test.

**What is abnormal retinal correspondence?**

Normally, fovea of the two eyes act as corresponding points and have the same visual direction (normal retinal correspondence). Sometimes in a patient with squint, fovea of the normal eye and an extra foveal point on the retina of the squinting eye acquire a common visual direction, i.e. become the corresponding points. This adjustment is called abnormal retinal correspondence (ARC).

**Name a few methods by which angle of squint can be measured.**

1. Hirschberg's corneal reflex test.
2. Prism bar cover test (PBCT).
3. By synoptophore (major amblyoscope).
4. Krinsky's corneal reflex test.
5. Perimeter method.

**Describe Hirschberg's corneal reflex test.**

Hirschberg's corneal reflex test is a rough but handy method to estimate the angle of manifest squint. In this, the patient is asked to fixate at a light point held at a distance of 33 cm and the deviation of the corneal light reflex from the centre of pupil is noted in the squinting eye. Roughly, the angle of squint is 15° and 45° when the corneal light reflex falls on the border of pupil and limbus, respectively.

**What is a concomitant squint?**

Concomitant squint is a type of manifest squint in which the angle of deviation remains constant in all the directions of gaze; and there is no associated limitation of ocular movements.

**How do you classify concomitant esotropia?**

1. Infantile esotropia.
2. Accommodative esotropia.
3. Non-accommodative esotropia.

**What is accommodative esotropia?**

Accommodative esotropia occurs due to overaction of convergence associated with accommodation reflex. Refractive type of accommodative esotropia is associated with high hypermetropia (+4 to +7D).

**How do you classify concomitant exotropia (divergent squint)?**

1. Congenital exotropia
2. Primary exotropia
  - a. Intermittent
  - b. Constant
    - Unilateral
    - Alternating
3. Secondary (sensory deprivation) exotropia
4. Consecutive exotropia.



What is paralytic squint?

Paralytic squint is a type of incomitant squint in which ocular deviation results from complete or incomplete paralysis of one or more extraocular muscles.

What are the features of paralytic squint?

- 1. History of diplopia and confusion.
- 2. Secondary deviation is greater than primary deviation.
- 3. Ocular movements are restricted towards the action of paralyzed muscle.
- 4. Head is turned towards the action of paralyzed muscle.

What are the features of complete third cranial nerve palsy?

These include the following (See Fig. 14.26):

- 1. Ptosis due to paralysis of levator muscle.
- 2. Eyeball is deviated out and slightly down.
- 3. Ocular movements are restricted in all the directions except outward.
- 4. Pupil is fixed and dilated.
- 5. Accommodation is completely lost.
- 6. Crossed diplopia is elicited on raising the eyelid.

What are the differences between paralytic and nonparalytic squint?

| Feature               | Paralytic squint                                                                                                                                | Non-paralytic squint         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Onset              | Usually sudden                                                                                                                                  | Usually slow                 |
| 2. Diplopia           | Usually present                                                                                                                                 | Usually absent               |
| 3. Ocular movements   | Limited in the direction of action of paralysed muscle                                                                                          | Full                         |
| 4. False projection   | It is positive, i.e. patient cannot correctly locate the object in space when asked to see in the direction of paralyzed muscle in early stages | False projection in negative |
| 5. Head posture       | A particular head posture depending upon the muscle paralyzed may be present                                                                    | Normal                       |
| 6. Nausea and vertigo | present                                                                                                                                         | Absent                       |

Contd...

|                                                      |                                 |                            |
|------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 7. Secondary deviation                               | More than the primary deviation | Equal to primary deviation |
| 8. In old cases pathological sequelae in the muscles | Present                         | Absent                     |

What is nystagmus?

Nystagmus is defined as to-and-fro oscillatory movements of the eyes.

What are pendular and jerk nystagmus?

In pendular nystagmus, movements are of equal velocity in each direction. In jerk nystagmus, the movements have a slow component in one direction and a fast component in the other direction. The direction of jerk nystagmus is defined by direction of the fast component.

What are clinical types of nystagmus?

- 1. *Physiological nystagmus*, e.g. optokinetic nystagmus.
- 2. *Congenital nystagmus*, e.g.
  - Congenital jerk nystagmus
  - Latent nystagmus
  - Spasmus nutans.
- 3. *Acquired nystagmus*, e.g.
  - Acquired ocular nystagmus
  - Peripheral vestibular nystagmus
  - Central vestibular nystagmus
  - See-saw nystagmus.

OCULAR INJURIES

A CASE OF BLUNT OCULAR TRAUMA

Case Description

**Age and sex.** Trauma to the eyeball may occur at any age in either sex. However, in general, ocular trauma is more common in children than adults and in males than females.

**Presenting symptoms and history.** Patient usually presents with a direct blow to the eyeball by a large blunt object (tennis ball, cricket ball, fist, etc.) or injuries in a road side accident. There may be associated:

- Visual loss
- Pain and swelling of varying degree.

**Ocular examination** may reveal varying signs depending upon the extent of trauma. In general, the traumatic lesions produced by blunt trauma can be grouped as below:

Contd...



- Closed globe injury
  - Globe rupture
  - Extraocular lesions
- (For details See pages 445–455).

### Related Questions

#### What are the common sites for retention of an extraocular foreign body?

- Sulcus subtarsalis
- Fornices
- Bulbar conjunctiva
- Cornea.

#### How do you remove a corneal foreign body?

- Eye is anaesthetized with topical instillation of 2 to 4% Xylocaine.
- Lids are separated with universal eye speculum.
- An attempt should be made to remove the foreign body with the help of a cotton swab stick. If it fails then foreign body spud or hypodermic needle should be used.
- After removal of the foreign body, pad and bandage with antibiotic eye ointment is applied for 24 to 48 hours.

#### How do you classify mechanical ocular injuries?

See page 444.

#### Enumerate the lesions which can result from a blunt trauma to the eye (contusional injury).

1. *Lids*: Ecchymosis, Black eye, avulsion of the lid, traumatic ptosis.
2. *Orbit*: Fracture of the orbital walls, orbital haemorrhage, orbital emphysemas.
3. *Lacrimal apparatus*: Laceration of canaliculi, dislocation of lacrimal gland.
4. *Conjunctiva*: Subconjunctival haemorrhage, chemosis, lacerating tears of the conjunctiva.
5. *Cornea*: Abrasion, partial or complete corneal tear, deep corneal opacity.
6. *Sclera*: Scleral tear.
7. *Anterior chamber*: Traumatic hyphaema, Collapse of the anterior chamber following perforation.
8. *Iris, pupil and ciliary body*: Traumatic miosis, traumatic mydriasis, radiating tears in iris stroma, iridodialysis, traumatic aniridia, traumatic cyclodialysis, traumatic uveitis.
9. *Lens*: Vossius ring, Concussion cataract, Early rosette cataract, Late rosette cataract, Total cataract, Subluxation of the lens, Dislocation of the lens.
10. *Vitreous*: Traumatic vitreous degeneration, Traumatic vitreous detachment, Vitreous haemorrhage.

11. *Choroid*: Rupture of the choroid, choroidal haemorrhage, choroidal detachment, traumatic choroiditis.
12. *Retina*: Commotio retinae (Berlin's oedema), retinal haemorrhages, retinal tears, retinal detachment, traumatic macular oedema, traumatic macular degeneration.
13. *Optic nerve*:
  - Laceration of the optic nerve
  - Optic nerve sheath haemorrhage
  - Avulsion of the optic nerve.

#### What are the effects of a perforating ocular injury?

1. *Mechanical effects* in the form of wounds of different parts of the eyeball.
2. *Introduction of infection* may result in:
  - Purulent iridocyclitis
  - Endophthalmitis
  - Panophthalmitis
3. *Post-traumatic iridocyclitis*
4. *Sympathetic ophthalmitis*.

#### What is siderosis bulbi?

Siderosis bulbi refers to the degenerative changes produced by an iron foreign body retained inside the eyeball.

The iron particles undergo electrolytic dissociation. The iron ions combine with the intracellular proteins and produce degenerative changes. Epithelial structures of the eye are most affected.

#### What are the features of siderosis bulbi?

- Orangish or rusty deposits arranged radially in a ring in the anterior capsule and anterior epithelium of the lens.
- Greenish or reddish brown staining of the iris.
- Pigmentary degeneration of the retina.
- Secondary open-angle glaucoma due to degenerative changes in the trabecular meshwork.

#### What is chalcosis?

Chalcosis refers to the specific changes produced by the alloy of copper in the eye.

Copper ions from the alloy are dissociated electrolytically and deposited under the membranous structures of the eye. Unlike iron ions, these do not enter into chemical combination with intracellular proteins and thus produce no degenerative changes.

#### What are clinical manifestations of chalcosis?

1. Kayser-Fleischer ring in cornea.
2. Sunflower cataract.
3. Deposition of golden plaques in retina.



**What are the methods of localizing an intraocular foreign body (IOFB):**

1. Radiographic localization
  - Limbal ring method
  - Specialized radiographic techniques, e.g. Sweet and Dixon's method.
2. Ultrasonographic localization.
3. CT Scan.

**What are the predisposing factors favouring development of sympathetic ophthalmitis?**

1. A perforating wound.
2. Wounds in the ciliary region (the so called dangerous zone) are more prone to it.
3. Wounds with incarceration of the uveal tissue are more vulnerable.
4. It is more common in children than in adults.
5. It is more common in the absence of suppuration. In fact, it does not occur when actual suppuration develops in the injured eye.

**What are the early features of sympathetic ophthalmitis?**

- Photophobia
- Lacrimation

- Transient blurring of near vision
- Mild ciliary tenderness
- A few fine keratic precipitates.

**Name the measures to prevent occurrence of sympathetic ophthalmitis?**

1. Early excision of the injured eye with no vision.
2. Meticulous repair of the wound under microscope followed by systemic and topical steroids should be undertaken in an eye with hope of saving useful vision.

**Why alkali burns are more serious than the acid burns?**

Alkalies penetrate deep into the tissues unlike acids (which cause instant coagulation of all the proteins which then acts as a barrier and prevents deep penetration) and thus produce more damage.

**What are the effects of ultraviolet radiations on the eye?**

1. May produce photophthalmia.
2. May be responsible for senile cataract.

**What are the effects of infrared radiations on the eye?**

- Photoretinitis (solar macular burn or eclipse burn).



## Darkroom Procedures

### OBLIQUE ILLUMINATION, GONIOSCOPY AND TRANSILLUMINATION

#### Oblique illumination

- Loupe and lens examination
- Slit-lamp examination
- Gonioscopy
- Transillumination

### CLINICAL REFRACTION

#### Objective refraction

- Retinoscopy
- Autorefractometry
- Keratometry

#### Subjective refraction

- Subjective verification of baseline refraction
- Subjective refinement of refraction
- Subjective binocular balancing
- Correction for near vision

### TECHNIQUES OF FUNDUS EXAMINATION

#### Ophthalmoscopy

- Distant direct ophthalmoscopy
- Direct ophthalmoscopy
- Indirect ophthalmoscopy

#### Slit-lamp biomicroscopic examination of the fundus

Darkroom procedures (DRPs) form an essential part of examination and evaluation of the eyes in modern ophthalmic practice. Consequently, this section has been given a special slot in the undergraduate as well as postgraduate examinations. Most of the darkroom procedures have been described vividly with the support of self-explanatory illustrations. Common darkroom procedures are:

- Oblique illumination examination
  - Loupe and lens examination
  - Slit-lamp biomicroscopy
- Gonioscopy
- Transillumination
- Retinoscopy
- Ophthalmoscopy.

### OBLIQUE ILLUMINATION, GONIOSCOPY AND TRANSILLUMINATION

#### ■ OBLIQUE ILLUMINATION

Oblique illumination also known as focal illumination, is a method for examination of the structures of the anterior segment of the eye. Karl Himly (1806) was the first to employ the technique of oblique illumination examination. In it, a zone of light is made to fall upon the structure to be examined so that it is brilliantly illuminated and stands out with special clarity as compared to the surroundings which remain in shadow.

*Two main methods of focal illumination* include:

- Loupe and lens examination; and
- Slit-lamp examination.

#### Loupe and Lens Examination

**Optical principle.** It is based on the principle that when an object is placed between a convex lens and its focal point, its image formed is virtual, erect, magnified and on the same side as the object.

**Prerequisites.** (1) Darkroom, (2) Source of light, (3) Condensing lens of +13 D, (4) Corneal loupe of +41 D, made with two planoconvex lenses each of 20.5 D ( $\times 10$  magnification) (Fig. 25.1).

**Procedure.** (1) Light source is placed about 2 feet away, laterally and slightly in front of the patient's eye; (2) Light is focused on the structure to be examined with the help of +13 D condensing lens, held in one hand; (3) The examination is carried out with the help of corneal loupe. The loupe is held



Fig. 25.1 Corneal loupe



between thumb and forefinger of the second hand, the fourth and fifth fingers are supported on the patient's forehead, while the middle finger is used for elevating the upper lid (Fig. 25.2). The loupe is brought close to the patient's eye till the illuminated area is focused. The observer should also move his or her eyes as close to the loupe as possible to have a better view (4) By changing the position of the condensing lens and loupe, various structures of the anterior segment can be examined one by one.

**Use of binocular loupe.** The corneal loupe may be replaced by a binocular loupe (Fig. 25.3), which gives the added *advantage* of stereoscopic view and easy manoeuvring, as normally it is fixed to the examiner's head by a band. However, its *disadvantage* is that the magnification achieved with binocular loupe is much less than that of unioocular corneal loupe.

### Slit-Lamp Examination

Slit-lamp biomicroscope was invented in 1911 by Gullstrand. Today, biomicroscopy forms an invaluable and indispensable part of ophthalmological examination.

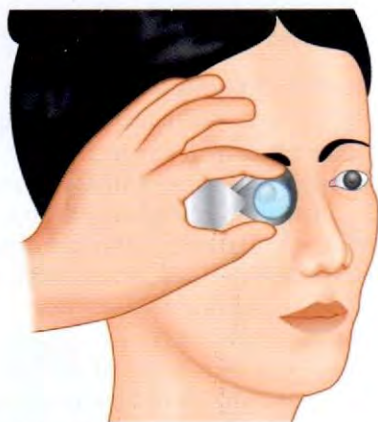


Fig. 25.2 Technique of loupe and lens examination



Fig. 23.3 Binocular loupe

### Parts

*Slit-lamp* consists of three parts (Fig. 25.4):

1. Observation system (Microscope)
2. Illumination system (Slit-lamp)
3. Mechanical system (Engineering support).

### Optics and slit-lamp

- **Principle:** Slit-lamp works on the same principle as a compound microscope.
- **Objective lens** (+22 D) is towards the patient, whose eye forms the object. The objective lens consists of two planoconvex lenses with their convexities facing towards each other.
- **Eyepiece** is + 10 to + 14 D and is towards the examiner.
- **Illuminating system** can be adjusted to vary the width, height and angle of incidence of the light beam.

### Slit-lamp biomicroscopy

While performing slit-lamp biomicroscopy, following routine may be adopted (Fig. 25.5):

1. **Patient adjustment.** Patient should be positioned comfortably in front of the slit-lamp with his/her chin resting on the chin rest and forehead opposed to head rest.

2. **Instrument adjustment.** The height of the table housing the slit-lamp should be adjusted according

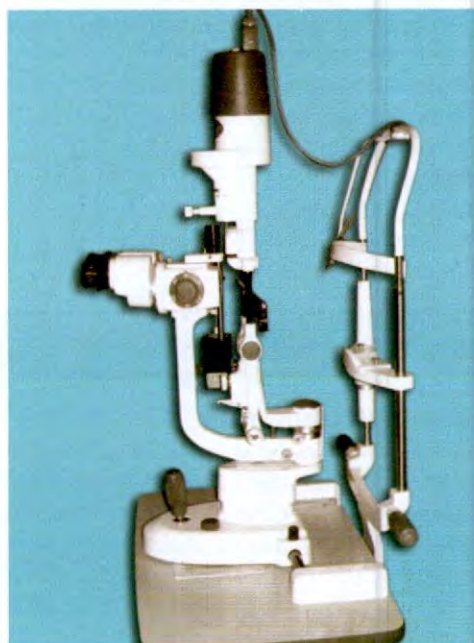


Fig. 25.4 The slit-lamp





**Fig. 25.5** Technique of slit-lamp examination

to patient's height. The microscope and illumination system should be aligned with the patient's eye to be examined. Fixation target should be placed at the required position.

**3. Beginning slit-lamp examination.** Some points to be kept in mind are:

- i. Examination should be carried out in semidark room so that the examiner's eyes are partially dark adapted to ensure sensitivity to low intensities of light.
- ii. Diffuse illumination should be used for a short time as necessary.
- iii. There should be a minimum exposure of retina to light.
- iv. Medications like ointments and anaesthetic eye drops produce corneal surface disturbances which can be mistaken for pathology.
- v. Low magnification should be first used to locate the pathology and higher magnification should then be used to examine it.
- vi. Start with diffuse illumination and examine the lid margins, bulbar conjunctiva, limbus, cornea, tear film, aqueous, iris and the lens one by one.

#### Methods of illumination

There are 7 basic methods of illumination using the slit-lamp as described by Berliner:

**1. Diffuse illumination.** A diffuse broad beam of light is used, and a general view of the anterior segment of eye is observed.

**2. Direct illumination.** The slit beam and microscope are focused on the same area, and examination is performed. Changes in the corneal stroma and epithelium are better noted by this technique.

**3. Indirect illumination.** The slit beam is focused on a position just beside the area to be examined. Corneal microcysts and vacuoles can be best observed by this method.

**4. Retroillumination.** Light is reflected off the iris or fundus, while the microscope is focused on the cornea. This technique is especially helpful in detecting corneal oedema, neovascularization, microcysts and infiltrates.

**5. Specular reflection.** Here, the angle between the slit-lamp and microscope is increased to  $60^\circ$ , i.e. angle of incidence is equal to the angle of reflection. Changes in the endothelium like polymegathism, guttate, etc. can be viewed by this method.

**6. Sclerotic scatter.** It utilizes the phenomenon of total internal reflection. The slit beam is focused at the temporal limbus, and as it passes through the cornea, it outlines any subtle stromal or epithelial opacities which may lie in its path.

**7. Oscillatory illumination of Koeppel.** In this, the beam is given an oscillatory movement by which it is often possible to see minute objects or filaments, especially in the aqueous which would otherwise escape detection.

#### ■ GONIOSCOPY

Owing to lack of transparency of corneoscleral junction and total internal reflection of light (emitted from angle structures) at anterior surface of cornea it is not possible to visualize the angle of anterior chamber directly. Therefore, a device (goniolens) is used to divert the beam of light and this technique of biomicroscopic examination of the angle of anterior chamber is called *gonioscopy*.

#### Types of goniolens

**i. Indirect goniolens** provides a mirror image of the opposite angle, e.g. Goldmann (Fig. 25.6) and the Zeiss goniolens.

**ii. Direct goniolens** provides a direct view of the angle. *Koeppel goniolens* is the most popular type.

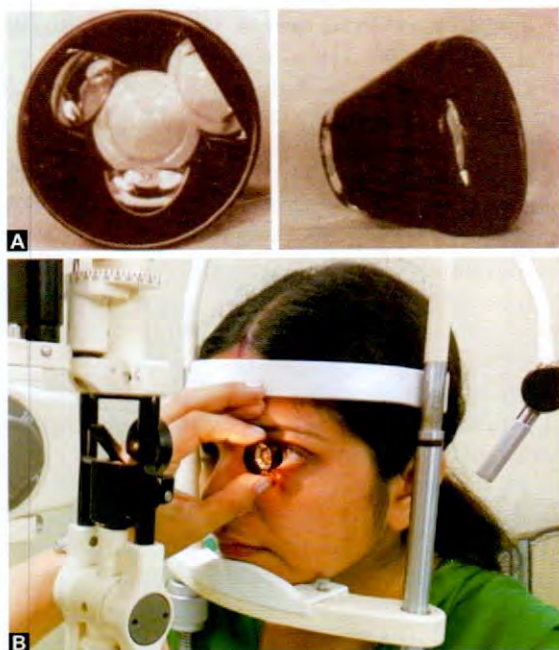
#### Procedure

The patient is seated upright on the slit-lamp. A drop of 1% methylcellulose is placed in the concavity of the goniolens and with the patient looking up, one edge of the lens is positioned in the lower fornix. The upper lid is elevated and the patient is instructed to look straight ahead. The lens is rotated into position against the eye. When checking the lateral and medial angles, the slit beam should be horizontal and when checking the superior and inferior angles, the slit beam should be vertical.

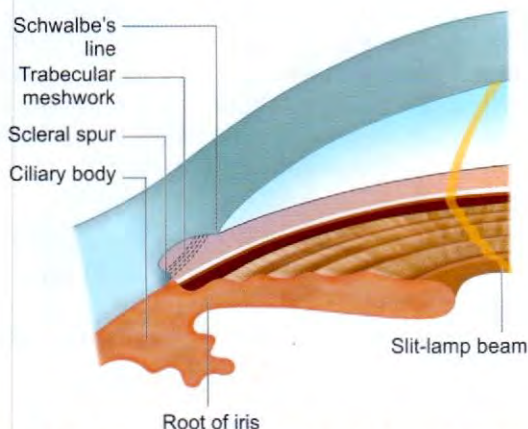
**Angle structures** seen from behind forward are (Fig. 25.7):

1. Root of the iris,
2. Anteromedial surface of the ciliary body (ciliary band),





**Fig. 25.6** Goldmann's gonioscopic lens (A) and technique of gonioscopy (B)



**Fig. 25.7** Structures forming angle of the anterior chamber

3. Scleral spur,
4. Trabecular meshwork and Schlemm's canal, and
5. Schwalbe's line.

#### Applications of gonioscopy

1. *Classification of glaucoma* into open angle and closed angle based on configuration of the angle.
2. *Localization of foreign bodies*, abnormal blood vessels or tumours in the angle.
3. *Demonstration of peripheral anterior synechiae* (PAS) extent and hence planning of glaucoma surgery.
4. *Surgical aid* direct gonioscopic lens is used during goniotomy.

#### Gonioscopic grading of angle width

See page 226.

#### ■ TRANSILLUMINATION

Herein an intense beam of light is thrown through the conjunctiva and sclera or pupil and illumination is observed in the pupillary area.

**1. Trans-scleral techniques.** The beam of light is thrown through the sclera. Normally, the pupil emits a red glow but in the presence of a solid mass (e.g. intraocular tumour) in the path of light, the pupil remains black as the beam is obstructed by the mass.

**2. Transpupillary technique.** The beam of light is allowed to pass obliquely through the dilated pupil. Normally, the pupil is well illuminated but in detached retina, a greyish reflex is seen.

#### ■ RELATED QUESTIONS

**Who invented the technique of oblique illumination examination?**

Karl Himly (1806) was the first to employ the technique of oblique illumination examination.

**Who invented the slit-lamp?**

Gullstrand.

**What is the power of the condensing lens used in loupe and lens examination technique?**

+13 Ds.

**What is the power of a corneal loupe?**

+41 Ds.

**What is the magnification of a corneal loupe?**

10 $\times$ .

**What are the advantages and disadvantages of a binocular loupe over the monocular corneal loupe?**

#### Advantages

- Binocular loupe provides stereoscopic vision.
- It is easier to use.

#### Disadvantages

- Magnification is less.

**What is the optical principle of oblique illumination?**

It is based on the principle that when an object is placed between a convex lens and its focal point, the image formed is virtual, erect, magnified and on the same side.

**What are the prerequisites for loupe and lens examination technique?**

- A darkroom
- Source of light
- A condensing lens of + 13 Ds
- A corneal loupe of +41 Ds.



### Where is the source of light placed in oblique illumination examination?

The source of light is placed slightly laterally and 2 feet in front of the patient's eye.

### Enumerate the structures which can be examined with a slit-lamp without any additional aid?

- Lid margin
- Conjunctiva
- Cornea
- Sclera
- Anterior chamber
- Iris and pupil
- Lens
- Anterior part of vitreous.

### What are the advantages and disadvantages of slit-lamp examination over loupe and lens examination?

#### Advantages

1. Magnification can be increased and decreased.
2. Stereoscopic vision improves depth perception.
3. Aqueous flare can be better demonstrated.
4. Aplanation tonometry and gonioscopy can be performed with the slit-lamp.

#### Disadvantages

1. Slit-lamp is very costly.
2. It is not handy.

### Enumerate a few ocular conditions where transillumination test helps in the diagnosis.

1. Intraocular tumours
2. Retinal detachment
3. Vitreous haemorrhage.

## CLINICAL REFRACTION

The procedure of determining and correcting refractive errors is termed as *clinical refraction*. It is an art that can only be mastered by practice. The refraction comprises two complementary methods:

- Objective refraction, and
- Subjective refraction.

## OBJECTIVE REFRACTION

The objective methods of refraction include:

- Retinoscopy,
- Refractometry,
- Photorefractometry, and
- Keratometry.

### ■ RETINOSCOPY

#### Definition

Retinoscopy, introduced by Bowman in 1859, also called as *skiascopy* or *shadow test*, is an *objective method* of finding out the error of refraction by the method of neutralization.

#### Principle

Retinoscopy is based on the fact that when light is reflected from a mirror into the eye, the direction in which the light will travel across the pupil will depend upon the refractive state of the eye.

#### Prerequisites for retinoscopy

1. *Darkroom* preferably 6 m long, or which can be converted into 6 m by use of a plane mirror.
2. *Trial box* containing spherical and cylindrical lenses of variable plus and minus powers, a pinhole, an occluder and prisms.
3. *Trial frame* (Fig. 25.8) preferably of adjustable type which can be used in children as well as in adults.
4. *Vision box*. A Snellen's self-illuminated vision box (Fig. 25.9).
5. *Retinoscope*. It is a simple device to perform the retinoscopy. Broadly, retinoscopes available are of two types:
  - a. *Mirror retinoscopes* are cheap and the most commonly employed. A source of light is required when using mirror retinoscope, which is kept

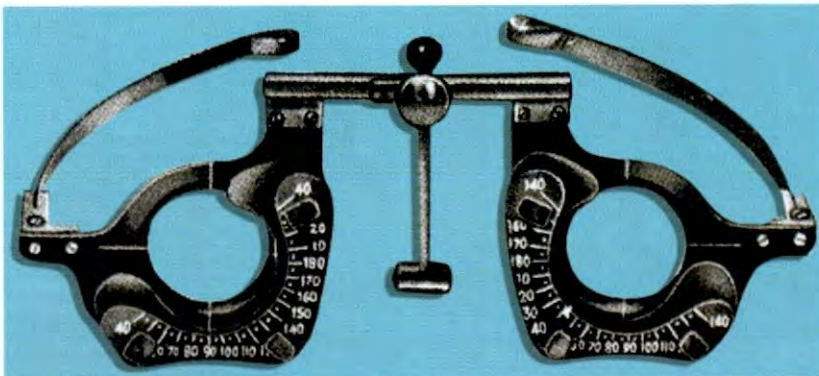


Fig. 25.8 Trial frame

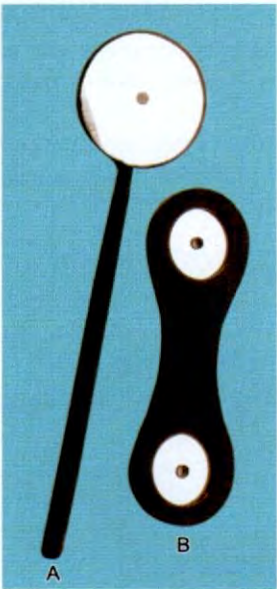




Fig. 25.9 Snellen's vision box

above and behind the head of the patient. A mirror retinoscope may consist of a single plane mirror (Fig. 25.10A) or a combination of plane and concave mirrors (*Priestley-Smith mirror*—Fig. 25.10B).

- b. *Self-illuminated retinoscopes* are costly but handy. Two types of self-illuminated retinoscopes available are: a spot retinoscope and a streak retinoscope (Fig. 25.11). The streak retinoscope is more popular. In it the usual circular beam of



Figs 25.10 Mirror retinoscopes: (A) Plane mirror; (B) Priestley-Smith mirror



Fig. 25.11 Streak retinoscope

light is modified to produce a linear streak of light by using a planocylindrical retinoscopy mirror. The streak retinoscopy is more sensitive than spot retinoscopy in detecting astigmatism.

**Plane versus concave mirror retinoscope**

In practice, plane mirror is used for retinoscopy. In patients with hazy media and high degree of ametropia concave mirror is more useful.

**Procedure of retinoscopy**

The patient is made to sit at a distance of 1 m (for case of calculation) from the examiner (Fig. 25.12). However, a working distance of 2/3 m is more convenient and so is preferred in practice. With the help of a retinoscope, light is thrown onto the patient's eye, who is instructed to look at a far point (to relax the accommodation). However, when a cycloplegic has been used, the patient can look directly into the light and have the refraction assessed along the actual visual axis. Through a hole in the



Fig. 25.12 Procedure of retinoscopy



retinoscope's mirror, the examiner observes a red reflex in the pupillary area of the patient. Then, the retinoscope is moved in horizontal and vertical meridia keeping a watch on the red reflex (which also moves when the retinoscope is moved).

**Characteristics of red reflex** to be noted are:

- **Speed and brilliance.** In low degrees of refractive errors, the shadow (red reflex) seen in the pupillary area is faint and moves rapidly with the movement of the mirror; while in high degrees of ametropia it is very dark and moves slowly.
- **Width of reflex,** when using streak retinoscope, is narrow in high degree of ametropia and wide in low degree of ametropia.
- **Swirling of reflex** occurs in the presence of astigmatism, when the axis does not correspond with the movement of the mirror.

#### Use of cycloplegics in retinoscopy

Cycloplegics are the drugs which cause paralysis of accommodation and dilate the pupil (cycloplegia). These are used for retinoscopy, when the examiner suspects that accommodation is abnormally active and will hinder the exact retinoscopy. Such a situation is encountered in young children and hypermetropes. When retinoscopy is performed after instilling cycloplegic drugs, it is termed as *wet*

*retinoscopy* in converse to *dry retinoscopy* (without cycloplegics). The commonly employed cycloplegics are as follows:

**1. Atropine** is indicated in children below the age of 5 years. It is used as 1% ointment thrice daily for 3 consecutive days before performing retinoscopy. Its effect lasts for 10 to 20 days.

**2. Homatropine** is used as 2% drops. One drop is often instilled every 10 minutes for 6 times and the retinoscopy is performed after 1 to 2 hours. Its effect lasts for 48 to 72 hours. It is used for most of the hypermetropic individuals between 5 and 25 years of age.

**3. Cyclopentolate** is a short-acting cycloplegic. Its effect lasts for 6 to 18 hours. It is used as 1% eye drops in patients between 8 and 20 years of age. One drop of cyclopentolate is instilled after every 10–15 minutes for 3 times (Havener's recommended dose) and the retinoscopy is performed about 60 to 90 min. later (after estimating the residual accommodation which should not exceed one dioptre).

**4. Only mydriatic** (10% phenylephrine) may be needed in elderly patients when the pupil is narrow or media is slightly hazy.

Salient features of the common cycloplegic drugs are summarized in Table 25.1.

**Table 25.1** Salient features of common cycloplegic and mydriatic drugs

| Sl. no. | Name of the drug                        | Age of the patient when indicated                               | Dosage of instillation                  | Peak effect | Time of performing retinoscopy              | Duration of action | Period of postcycloplegic test | Tonus allowance |
|---------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1.      | Atropine sulphate (1% ointment)         | <5 years                                                        | TDS x 3 days                            | 2–3 days    | 4th day                                     | 10–20 days         | After 3 weeks of retinoscopy   | 1D              |
| 2.      | Homatropine hydrobromide (2% drops)     | 5–8 years                                                       | One drop every 10 min. for 6 times      | 60–90 min.  | After 90 min. of instillation of first drop | 48–72 hours        | After 3 days of retinoscopy    | 0.5D            |
| 3.      | Cyclopentolate hydrochloride (1% drops) | 8–20 years                                                      | One drop every 15 min. for 3 times      | 80–90 min.  | After 90 min. of instillation of first drop | 6–18 hours         | After 3 days of retinoscopy    | 0.75D           |
| 4.      | Tropicamide (0.5%, 1% drops)            | Not used as cycloplegic for retinoscopy; used only as mydriatic | One drop every 15 min. for 3 to 4 times | 20–40 min.  |                                             | 4–6 hours          |                                |                 |
| 5.      | Phenylephrine (5%, 10% drops)           | Used only as mydriatic alone or in combination with tropicamide | One drop every 15 min. for 3 to 4 times | 30–40 min.  |                                             | 4–6 hours          |                                |                 |



**Note.** The mydriatics should be used with care in adults with shallow anterior chamber, owing to the danger of an attack of narrow-angle glaucoma. In older people, mydriasis should be counteracted by the use of miotic drug (2% pilocarpine).

**Observations and inferences**

Depending upon the movement of the red reflex (Fig. 25.13) when a plane mirror retinoscope is used at a distance of 1 meter the results are interpreted as:

- 1. *No movement* of red reflex indicates myopia of 1D.
- 2. *With movement* of red reflex along the movement of the retinoscope, indicates either emmetropia or hypermetropia or myopia of less than 1D.
- 3. *Against movement* of red reflex to the movement of the retinoscope implies myopia of more than 1D.

Above assertions can be easily remembered from the Fig. 25.14.

**Neutralization**

When the red reflex moves with or against the movement of retinoscope we do not exactly know

the amount of refractive error. However, when the red glow in the pupil does not move then we know for certain that patient has myopia of 1D. Therefore, to estimate the degree of refractive error, the movement of red reflex is neutralized by addition of increasingly convex (+) spherical lenses (when the red reflex was moving with the movement of plane mirror) or concave (–) spherical lenses (when the red reflex was moving against the movement of plane mirror). When a simple spherical error alone is present, the movements of red reflex will be neutralized in both vertical as well as the horizontal meridia. However, in the presence of an astigmatic refractive error, one meridian is neutralized by adding appropriate cylindrical lens with its axis at right angle to the meridian to be neutralized. It is important to note that sometimes, especially, when pupil is dilated, two light reflexes—one central and other peripheral—may be seen. Under such circumstances one should neutralize the central glow because the central parts of cornea and lens are more important in forming the image on the retina.

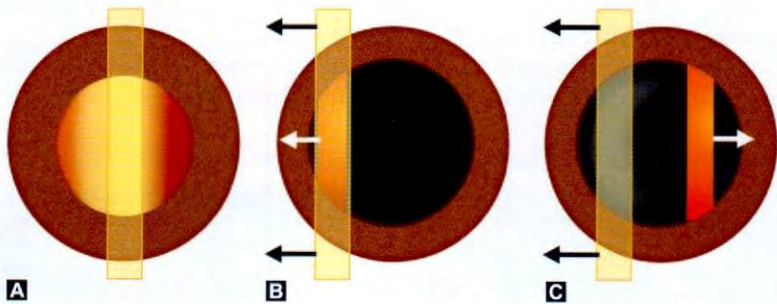


Fig. 25.13 Red reflex during streak retinoscopy: A, Neutralization point; B, With movement; C, Against movement

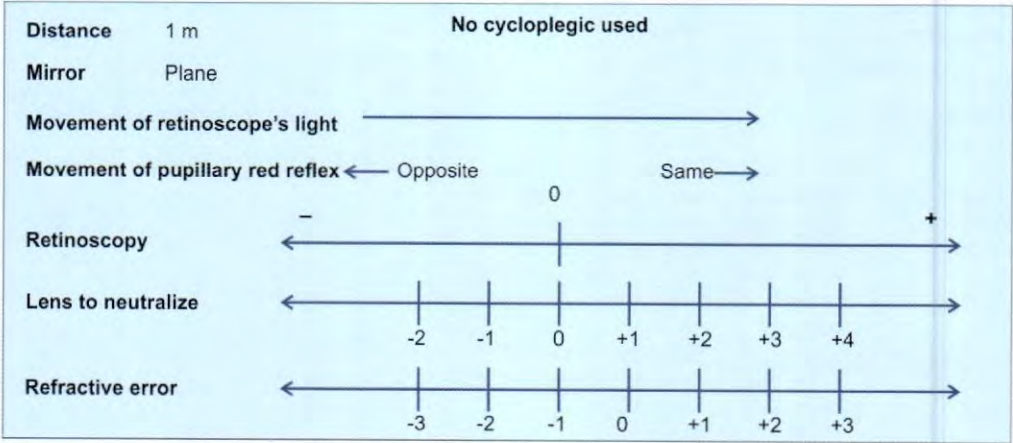


Fig. 25.14 Diagrammatic depiction of the relation of movement of pupillary red reflex with the error of refraction



### End point of retinoscopy

**With simple plane mirror retinoscope**, the end point of retinoscopy is neutralization of red reflex in all the meridians, i.e. either no movement or just reversal of the movement.

**With a streak retinoscope**, at the end point streak disappears and the pupil appears completely illuminated or completely dark (See Fig. 25.13A).

### Problems in retinoscopy

Certain difficulties encountered during the procedure of retinoscopy are summarized below:

**1. Red reflex may not be visible or may be poor.** This may happen with small pupil, hazy media and high degree of refractive error. In most cases, this difficulty is overcome by causing mydriasis and/or use of converging light with concave mirror retinoscope.

**2. Changing retinoscopy findings** are observed due to abnormally active accommodation and is corrected by use of cycloplegia.

**3. Scissors shadows** may sometimes be seen in patients with regular astigmatism with dilated pupils. Mostly, this difficulty is diminished with the undilated pupil.

**4. Conflicting shadows** moving in various directions in different parts of the pupillary area are seen in patients with irregular astigmatism.

**5. Triangular shadow** may be observed in patients with conical cornea (keratoconus), with its apex at the apex of cone. On moving the mirror, the triangular reflex appears to swirl around its apex (*yawning reflex*).

### Static versus dynamic retinoscopy

Static retinoscopy refers to the procedure performed without active use of accommodation (as described above). Dynamic retinoscopy implies when the procedure is performed for near vision with active use of accommodation by the patient. However, usefulness of performing dynamic retinoscopy has not yet been established in refraction.

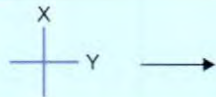
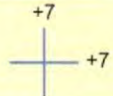
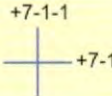
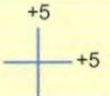
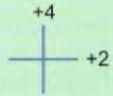
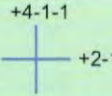
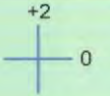
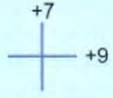
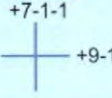
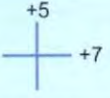
### Rough estimate of refractive error after retinoscopy

Objectively, a rough estimate of error of refraction is made by taking into account the retinoscopic findings, deductions for distance (e.g. 1D for 1 m and 1.5D when retinoscopy is performed at 2/3rd m distance) and deduction for the cycloplegic when used (e.g. 1D for atropine, 0.5D for homatropine and 0.75D for cyclopentolate).

**Amount of refractive error** is equal to the retinoscopic findings minus deduction for the distance and deduction for tonus allowance for the cycloplegic drug used.

It is customary to do retinoscopy both vertically and horizontally and note the values separately (Fig. 25.15). In Figure 25.15A, X denotes retinoscopy value along vertical meridian and Y denotes the value along the horizontal meridian.

• When retinoscopy values along horizontal and vertical meridia are equal then there is no astigmatism and a spherical lens is required to correct the refractive error. For example, when retinoscopic finding is 7D with the procedure performed at 1 m distance using atropine as

|   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |               |
|---|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| A |  |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |               |
| B |  |  |  | +5DS          |
| C |  |  |  | +2DC 180°     |
| D |  |  |  | +5DS/+2DC 90° |
|   | (I)                                                                                 | (II)                                                                                | (III)                                                                               | (IV)          |

**Fig. 25.15** A, Customary way of writing retinoscopic findings; B to D, Calculation for rough estimate of refractive error: (i) Retinoscopic findings, when performed at 1 m distance under atropine cycloplegia; (ii) Deduction of -1D for distance and -1D for the atropine from the retinoscopic findings. (iii) Rough estimate of refractive error along horizontal and vertical meridian; and (iv) Prescription required



cycloplegic than appropriate refractive error will be: 7D-1D (for distance) -1D (tonus allowance for atropine) = 5D (Fig. 25.15B).

- When retinoscopy values along horizontal and vertical meridia are unequal, then it denotes presence of astigmatism which is corrected by a cylindrical lens alone and the refractive error in simple astigmatism (Fig. 25.15C) in combination with a spherical lens and the refractive error in compound astigmatism (Fig. 25.15D).

### AUTOREFRACTOMETRY

The refractometry (optometry) is an objective method of finding out the error of refraction by use of an equipment called *refractometer* (optometer). Presently, the *computerized autorefractometers* (Fig. 25.16) are being used increasingly.

**Principle.** Most of the autorefractometers are essentially based on either the Scheiner principle or the optometer principle.

**Features.** The computerized, autorefractometer quickly gives information about the refractive error of the patient in terms of sphere, cylinder with axis and interpupillary distance. This method is a good alternative to retinoscopy in busy practice. It is also advantageous for mass screening, research programs and epidemiological studies. However, the subjective verification of refraction is a must even after autorefractometry.



Fig. 25.16 Computerized autorefractometer

### Photorefraction

**Photorefraction** technology allows measurement of refraction in both eyes simultaneously using an infrared camera from a distance of 1 meter.

**Photorefractometer** of one type commercially available is an infrared device (Plusoptix Vision Screener, GmbH, Nuremberg, Germany). In it, the acquisition time is as quick as 0.8 seconds.

**Procedure.** The camera is started by pressing a button trigger, which also produces a sound to attract attention of the subject. Measurement can be performed in undilated pupil. The device performs real time video retinoscopy of reflected infrared light in three meridia.

**Results.** Once the refraction is complete, measurement results are displayed on the screen immediately. The refractive data provided as final output are the median of frames of the acquired video sequence on which the software recognizes both pupils. The readings include full refraction, pupil size, interpupillary distance (IPD), and the symmetry of corneal reflexes.

**Advantages.** Photorefractor vision screener is portable, hand held, and thus especially useful for refraction among infants and children. The results are not influenced by accommodation. So cycloplegia with atropine is not required in infants and preschool children.

### KERATOMETRY

The 'keratometry' or 'ophthalmometry' is an objective method of estimating the corneal astigmatism by measuring the curvature of central cornea. The keratometry readings are not of much value in routine refraction for prescribing glasses; but are of utmost value for prescribing contact lenses and for calculating the power of intraocular lens to be implanted.

#### Principle of keratometer

Keratometer is based on the fact that the anterior surface of the cornea acts as a convex mirror; so the size of the image produced varies with its curvature. Therefore, from the size of the image formed by the anterior surface of cornea (first Purkinje image), the radius of curvature of cornea can be calculated. The accurate measurement of the image size is obtained by using the principle of visible doubling.

#### Types of keratometers

Two types of keratometers used in practice are Javal-Schiotz model and Bausch & Lomb model.



1. **Javal-Schiotz model keratometer** consists of two illuminated 'mires' (A and B) fixed on a rotatable circular arc (C) and a viewing telescope T (Fig. 25.17). The double images ( $a$ ,  $a'$  and  $b$ ,  $b'$ ) of the mires (A and B) are formed on the cornea. Keratometry readings are obtained by coinciding the images  $a'$  and  $b$  as shown in Figure 25.18. The readings are noted first in the horizontal meridian and then the arc is rotated by  $90^\circ$  and the readings are noted in the vertical meridian.

2. **Bausch and Lomb keratometer** (Fig. 25.19). In it, the 'mires' are in the form of circles (Fig. 25.20). With this keratometer, the radius of curvature of cornea in horizontal and vertical meridia can be measured simultaneously without rotating the mires.

## SUBJECTIVE REFRACTION

Subjective refraction is meant for finding out the most suitable lenses to be prescribed. It should always be carried out after getting a rough estimate of the refractive error by the objective refraction as described above. When a cycloplegic has been used the subjective refraction, the so called postmydriatic test (PMT), should be carried out preferably after 3 to 4 days (when homatropine or cyclopentolate is used) and 3 weeks (when atropine is used).

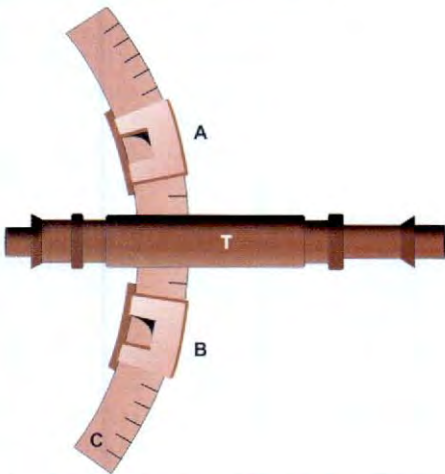


Fig. 25.17 Basic structure of Javal-Schiotz keratometer

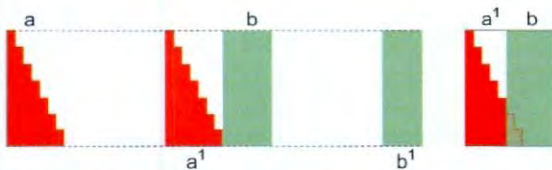


Fig. 25.18 Mires during keratometry with Javal-Schiotz keratometer



Fig. 25.19 Bausch and Lomb keratometer

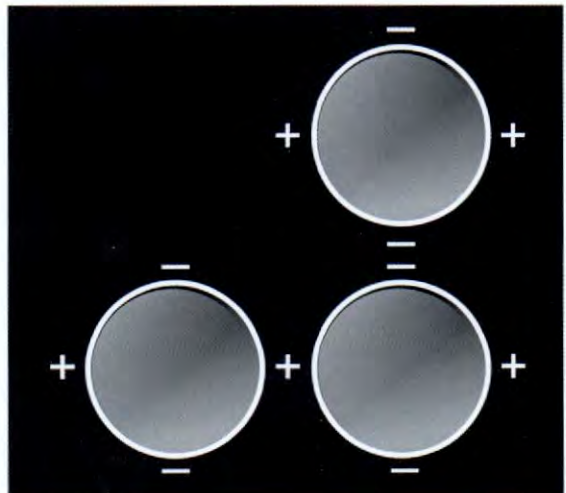


Fig. 25.20 Mires during keratometry with Bausch and Lomb keratometer

The technique of subjective refraction requires the patient's cooperation in arriving at the proper estimation of the refractive error. The proper subjective refraction includes three steps:

- I. Subjective verification of baseline refraction,
- II. Subjective refinement of refraction, and
- III. Subjective binocular balancing.

### I. Subjective verification of baseline refraction

The subjective verification of baseline refraction can be performed by: the 'trial-and-error' method. For this, the patient is seated at a distance of 6 meters from the Snellen's vision chart. A trial frame is put on the face of the patient and the visual acuity is noted for both the eyes, separately. Then an occluder is put in front of one eye and the baseline



lens combination (as indicated by retinoscopy or automated refractometry) is placed in front of the other eye. By increasing or decreasing the power of lens, the most suitable spherical lens is chosen (the strongest convex lens and the weakest concave lens providing best vision should be chosen in patients with hypermetropia and myopia, respectively). Then the axis of the cylinder and finally its strength should be finalized using the same 'trial-and-error' method. The similar procedure is repeated for the second eye.

## II. Subjective refinement of refraction

The most suitable combination of lenses chosen after the subjective verification of baseline refraction, are then refined before the final prescription is made. It is always better to first refine the cylinder and then sphere.

### 1. Refining the cylinder

Cylinder can be refined by either use of Jackson's cross cylinder (more commonly) or by astigmatic fan test.

#### i. Jackson's cross cylinder test

It is used to verify the strength and axis of the cylinder prescribed. The cross cylinder is a combination of two cylinders of equal strength but with opposite sign placed with their axes at right angles to each other and mounted in a handle (Fig. 25.21). The commonly used cross cylinders are of  $\pm 0.25D$  and  $\pm 0.5D$ .

**Verification of strength of the cylinder.** To check the power of the cylinder, the cross cylinder of  $\pm 0.25D$  is placed with its axis parallel to the axis of the cylinder in the trial frame first with the same sign and then with opposite sign. In the first position,

the cylindrical correction is enhanced by  $0.25D$  and in the second, it is diminished by the same amount. When the visual acuity does not improve, in either of the positions, the power of cylinder in trial frame is correct. However, if the visual acuity improves in any of the positions, a corresponding correction should be made and reverified till final correction is attained.

**Verification of axis of the cylinder.** Cross cylinder ( $\pm 0.5D$ ) is placed before the eye with its axis at  $45^\circ$  to the axis of cylinder in trial frame (first with  $-0.5D$  cylinder and then  $+0.5D$  cylinder or vice versa) and the patient is asked to tell about any change in the visual acuity. If the patient notices no difference between the two positions, the axis of the correcting cylinder in the trial frame is correct. However, if the visual improvement is attained in one of the positions, a 'plus' correcting cylinder should be rotated in the direction of the plus cylindrical components of the cross cylinder (and vice-versa). The test is then repeated several times until the neutral point is reached.

#### ii. The astigmatic fan test

It is used to confirm the cylindrical correction. The astigmatic fan consists of a dial of lines radiating at  $10^\circ$  interval to one another (Fig. 25.22). In this test, the patient is asked to see the fan after fogging by  $+0.5D$  added over and above the best suitable combination of lenses chosen. The stigmatic patient will see all the lines equally clear (Fig. 25.22A). In the presence of astigmatism, some lines will be seen more sharply defined (Fig. 25.22B). The concave cylinder is then added with its axis at right angles to the clearest line until all the lines are equally sharp.

#### iii. A stenopaic slit-test

Though not practically used now, this test also helps in checking the correction of astigmatism. The 1 mm wide stenopaic slit (Fig. 25.23) when placed in front of the eye allows clearest vision when it is rotated into the axis of astigmatism and the refraction will then be indicated by the strongest convex lens which allows full vision in this axis and again in the axis perpendicular to it.

## 2. Refining the sphere

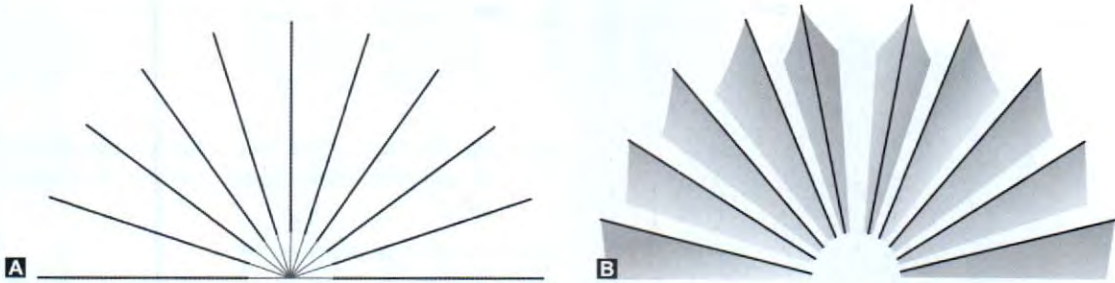
The spherical correction is refined after refining the cylinder power and axis. Refining of the sphere is done by using following tests:

**i. Fogging technique.** After the cylinder power and axis have been refined, the eye to be tested is fogged by insertion of about  $+2D$  spherical lens in myopic patients and about  $+4D$  in hypermetropic patients over the previously verified sphere. The patient is



Fig. 25.21 Jackson's cross cylinder

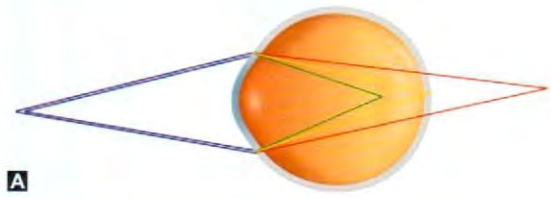




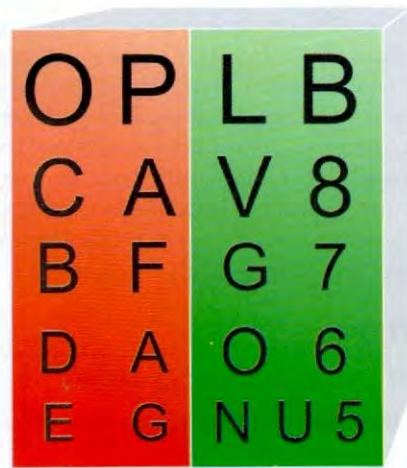
**Fig. 25.22** Astigmatic fan: A, As seen by an emmetropic person; B, As seen by a patient with astigmatism at horizontal axis



**Fig. 25.23** Stenopaic slit



**A**



**B**

**Fig. 25.24** A, Optical principle of duochrome test; B, Duochrome test box consisting of Snellen's 6/18 to 6/5 visual acuity letters with red and green background

instructed to see the distant test types through this, and gradually the additional convex lens is reduced (by about 1/2 D at a time) until full vision is restored. This method is more useful in hypermetropia.

**ii. Duochrome test.** It is based on the principle of chromatic aberration (Fig. 25.24A). In this, the patient is asked to read the *red* and *green* letters (Fig. 25.24B). In an emmetropic eye, the green rays are focused slightly anterior and red rays slightly posterior to the retina (Fig. 25.24A). Therefore, to an emmetropic patient letters of both colours look equally sharp. When the patient tells that he or she sees *red* letters more clearly than the *green*, it indicates that he or she is slightly myopic. His or her spherical lenses should be adjusted such that he or she sees letters of both colours with equal clarity.

**iii. Pin-hole test.** It helps in confirming whether the optical correction in the trial frame is correct or not. An improvement in visual acuity while looking through a pin-hole (Fig. 25.25) indicates that optical correction in the trial frame is incorrect.

### III. Subjective binocular balancing

The final step in the subjective refraction is binocular balancing—a process sometimes known as 'equalizing the accommodative effort' or 'equalization of vision'. This allows both eyes to have the retinal image simultaneously in focus. The details of the techniques of binocular balancing are beyond the scope of this book.

### Correction for near vision

Correction for near vision is indicated usually after the age of 40 years. When the distance vision has been satisfactorily corrected, the visual acuity at working distance of the patient should be estimated





Fig. 25.25 Pin-hole

using any of the near vision charts (Jaeger's chart or Snellen's reading test types or number points types standardized by the faculty of ophthalmologists, N5 to N48). In case near vision is defective, a suitable convex lens addition (tested separately for each eye) should be made over the distant correction. The near correction added should be such that about one-third of the amplitude of accommodation should remain as reserve. *In general, it is better to undercorrect than to overcorrect the presbyopia* (also See page 48).

## RELATED QUESTIONS

### ■ LIGHT AND GEOMETRICAL OPTICS

**What is the wavelength of visible spectrum of the light?**

Between 390 and 700 nm.

**Which light rays are absorbed by the cornea and crystalline lens of the eye?**

Cornea absorbs rays having wavelength shorter than 295 nm and the crystalline lens of the eye absorbs rays having wavelength shorter than 350 nm.

**White light consists of how many colours?**

Seven, viz. violet, indigo, blue, green, yellow, orange and red (VIBGYOR).

**What do you mean by reflection of light?**

Reflection of light is a phenomenon of change in the path of light rays without any change in the medium.

**What are the features of an image formed by a plane mirror?**

It is: (i) virtual, (ii) erect and laterally inverted, (iii) of the same size as object, and (iv) at the same distance behind the mirror as the object is in front.

**What do you mean by refraction of light?**

Refraction of light is a phenomenon of change in the path of light when it goes from one medium to another.

**Describe the features of the images formed by a concave mirror for different positions of the object.**

See Table 3.1

**What is total internal reflection?**

When a ray of light travelling from an optically denser medium to an optically rarer medium is incident at an angle greater than the critical angle of the pair of media in contact, the ray is totally reflected back into the denser medium. This phenomenon is called total internal reflection.

**What is the critical angle?**

Critical angle refers to the angle of incidence in the denser medium corresponding to which angle of refraction in the rarer medium is  $90^\circ$ .

**What do you mean by Sturm conoid focal interval of Sturm and circle of least diffusion?**

Sturm conoid refers to the configuration of the light rays refracted through an astigmatic (toric) surface. The parallel rays of light when refracted through a toric surface are not focused at one point but form two focal lines. Distance between the two lines is called *focal interval of Sturm*. *Circle of least diffusion* is formed between these two lines.

**Why a patient with mixed astigmatism has comparatively better vision?**

Because in such patients the circle of least diffusion is formed on the retina.

### ■ OPTICS OF THE EYE

**What is a 'reduced eye'?**

The focusing system of the eye is composed of cornea, aqueous humour, crystalline lens and vitreous humour, the optics of which, otherwise is very complex. However, Listing has chosen a simple data to understand the optics of eye. This is called Listing's reduced eye. Its cardinal points are:

- Single nodal point situated (in the posterior part of crystalline lens) is 7.2 mm behind the anterior surface of cornea.
- Anterior focal point is 15.7 mm in front of the anterior surface of cornea.
- Posterior focal point (on the retina) is 24.4 mm behind the anterior surface of cornea.
- Total dioptric power is about +60D.

**What is the nodal point of the eyeball?**

It is the optical centre of the entire focusing system of the eye consisting of cornea, aqueous and lens when considered as one lens.



**What is optical axis of the eyeball?**

It is a line passing through the centre of cornea and centre of the lens which meets the retina on the nasal side of fovea.

**What is visual axis?**

It is a line joining the fixation object, nodal point and the fovea.

**What is fixation axis?**

It is the line joining the fixation point and the centre of rotation of the eye.

**What is visual angle?**

It is the angle subtended by an object on the nodal point of the reduced eye.

**What are angles alpha, gamma and kappa of the eyeball?**

1. *Angle alpha* is the angle formed between the optical axis and visual axis at the nodal point of the eyeball.
2. *Angle gamma* is the angle formed between the optical axis and fixation axis at the centre of rotation of the eyeball.
3. *Angle kappa* is formed between the visual axis and control pupillary line. A positive angle kappa results in pseudoexotropia and a negative angle kappa is seen in esotropia.

**What is the total refractive power of the eyeball and how much is contributed by cornea and the crystalline lens?**

Total refractive power of the eyeball is about +60D; out of this +44D is contributed by the cornea and about +16D by the crystalline lens.

**What are the refractive indices of the media of the eye?**

Refractive indices of the media of the eye are as follows:

|                  |      |
|------------------|------|
| Cornea           | 1.37 |
| Aqueous humour   | 1.33 |
| Crystalline lens | 1.42 |
| Vitreous humour  | 1.33 |

**REFRACTIVE ERRORS****What is emmetropia?**

Emmetropia (optically normal eye) is a state of refraction when the parallel rays of light coming from infinity are focused at the sensitive layer of retina with accommodation at rest.

**Define ametropia.**

Ametropia (a condition of refractive error) is defined as a state of refraction when the parallel rays of light coming from infinity are focused either in front or

behind the retina. It includes myopia, hypermetropia and astigmatism.

**Define hypermetropia (long-sightedness).**

Hypermetropia is the refractive state of the eye wherein parallel rays of light coming from infinity are focused posterior to the retina, with accommodation at rest.

**What is the refractive status of the eye at birth?**

At birth, the eyeball is relatively short and thus most infants are born with +2 to +3 D hypermetropia. This is gradually reduced and by the age of 5 to 7 years usually the eye becomes emmetropic.

**What are etiological types of ametropic refractive errors?**

1. *Axial ametropia*: There is abnormal axial length of the eyeball, too long in myopia and too short in hypermetropia.
2. *Curvatural ametropia*: There is abnormal curvature of the cornea or lens or both; too strong in myopia and too weak in hypermetropia.
3. *Index ametropia*: There is abnormal refractive index of the media; too high in myopia and too low in hypermetropia.
4. *Positional ametropia*: Forward displacement of the lens causes myopia and backward displacement results in hypermetropia.

**What are the components of the hypermetropia?**

Total hypermetropia = latent + manifest (facultative + absolute)

1. *Total hypermetropia*: It is the total amount of refractive error estimated after complete cycloplegia with atropine.
2. *Latent hypermetropia* is that which is corrected by inherent tone of the ciliary muscle.
3. *Manifest hypermetropia*: It is the remaining portion of total hypermetropia, which is not corrected by the ciliary tone.

**Name the most common factor responsible for myopia and hypermetropia.**

Too long axial length and too short axial length are responsible for myopia and hypermetropia, respectively.

**Name the complications which may occur in non-treated cases of hypermetropia.**

1. Recurrent styes and blepharitis,
2. Accommodative convergent squint,
3. Amblyopia.

**Define aphakia.**

Aphakia literally means absence of the crystalline lens from the eye. However, from the optical point of



view, it may be considered as a condition in which the lens is absent from the pupillary area and does not take part in refraction.

#### **Enumerate the refractive changes which occur in an aphakic eye.**

1. Eye becomes highly hypermetropic.
2. Total power of the eye is reduced to +44 Ds from +60 Ds.
3. Anterior focal distance becomes 23 mm (from 15 mm in normal phakic eye).
4. Posterior focal distance becomes 31 mm (from 24 mm in normal phakic eye).

#### **Name the various modalities for correction of aphakia and enumerate advantages and disadvantages of each.**

##### **1. Spectacles**

*Advantages:* It is cheap, easy and safe method of correcting aphakia.

*Disadvantages:* (i) Image is magnified by 30%, so not useful in unilateral aphakia (produce diplopia), (ii) problems of spherical and chromatic aberrations may be troublesome, (iii) field of vision is limited, (iv) prismatic effect of thick glasses causes, 'roving ring scotoma' (v) cosmetic blemish, especially in young aphakics.

##### **2. Contact lenses**

*Advantages:* (i) Less magnification (5%) of the image, (ii) Elimination of aberrations and prismatic effect of thick glasses, (iii) Wider and better field of vision, (iv) Cosmetically better accepted by young persons.

*Disadvantages:* (i) More cost, (ii) Cumbersome to wear, especially in old age and in childhood, (iii) Corneal complications may occur.

##### **3. Intraocular lens implantation**

It is the best available method of treatment.

*Advantage:* It offers all the advantages which the contact lenses offer over the spectacles. In addition, the disadvantages of contact lenses are also taken care of.

*Disadvantages:* It requires more skilled surgeons and costly equipments.

##### **4. Refractive corneal surgery**

It is still under trial and includes keratophakia and epikeratophakia.

#### **What are fundus findings in a patient with high hypermetropia?**

Fundus examination in a patient with high hypermetropia may show:

- Pseudopapillitis
- Shot silk appearance of the retina.

#### **Enumerate the signs of aphakia.**

- Deep anterior chamber
- Iridodonesis
- Jet black pupil
- Purkinje's image test shows only two images (normally four)
- Fundus examination shows small optic disc
- Retinoscopy reveals high hypermetropia

#### **What is pseudophakia?**

Pseudophakia refers to presence of an intraocular lens in the pupillary area.

#### **What is the refractive position of the pseudophakic eye?**

A pseudophakic eye may be emmetropic, myopic or hypermetropic depending upon the power of the IOL implanted.

#### **What is the average standard power of the posterior chamber IOL?**

Exact power of an IOL to be implanted varies from individual to individual and is calculated by biometry using keratometer and A-scan ultrasound.

#### **What is the average weight of an IOL?**

Average weight of an IOL in air is 15 mg and in aqueous humour is about 5 mg.

#### **What is the power of the IOL in air vis-a-vis in the aqueous humour?**

Power of an IOL in air is much more (about +60D) than that in the aqueous humour (about +20D).

#### **What is the difference in the power of an anterior chamber IOL versus posterior chamber IOL?**

Equivalent power of an anterior chamber IOL is less (say about +18D) than that of posterior chamber IOL (+20D).

#### **What is myopia (short-sightedness)?**

Myopia is a refractive error in which parallel rays of light coming from infinity are focused in front of the retina when accommodation is at rest.

#### **Name the clinical varieties of myopia.**

1. Congenital myopia
2. Simple myopia
3. Pathological or degenerative myopia
4. Acquired myopia which may be: (i) post-traumatic, (ii) post-keratitis, (iii) space myopia, and (iv) consecutive myopia (following overcorrection of aphakia by intraocular lens).

#### **Enumerate the fundus changes in pathological myopia.**

1. Optic disc appears large, pale and at its temporal edge characteristic myopic crescent is present.



2. Chorioretinal degeneration.
3. Foster-Fuchs' spot at the macula.
4. Vitreous shows synchysis and syneresis.
5. Posterior staphyloma may be seen.

#### **Name the surgical treatment of myopia.**

1. Radial keratotomy.
2. Photorefractive keratectomy (PRK) using excimer laser
3. Automated microlamellar keratectomy (ALK).
4. Removal of clear crystalline lens by extracapsular cataract extraction (ECCE) is recommended in unilateral very high myopia.

#### **Name the complications of pathological myopia.**

1. Complicated cataract
2. Choroidal haemorrhage
3. Tears and haemorrhage in the retina
4. Vitreous haemorrhage
5. Retinal detachment.

#### **Name the diseases which can be associated with myopia.**

1. Microphthalmos
2. Congenital glaucoma
3. Microcornea
4. Retrolental fibroplasia
5. Marfan's syndrome
6. Turner's syndrome
7. Ehlers-Danlos syndrome.

#### **What is the basic principle of radial keratotomy operation for myopia?**

In radial keratotomy operation, multiple radial incisions are given in the periphery of cornea (leaving central 4 mm optical zone) in order to flatten the curvature of cornea.

#### **What is the principle of photorefractive keratectomy (PRK) operation for myopia?**

In it, superficial keratectomy (reshaping) is performed in the central part of cornea with the help of excimer laser.

#### **What is ALK operation for myopia?**

It is automated lamellar keratectomy. In it, a small disc of corneal stroma is removed with the help of an automated machine.

#### **What is LASIK operation for myopia?**

It is laser-assisted in-situ keratomileusis. It is performed using ALK machine and the excimer laser. This procedure is good for myopia of more than -8D.

#### **Define astigmatism.**

Astigmatism is a type of refractive error, wherein the refraction varies in the different meridians.

Consequently, the rays of light entering in the eye cannot converge to a point focus but form focal lines.

#### **What are the clinical types of astigmatism?**

1. *Regular astigmatism*, which may be:
  - i. With-the-rule (WTR) astigmatism, wherein the vertical meridian is more curved than the horizontal.
  - ii. Against-the-rule (ATR) astigmatism, wherein the horizontal meridian is more curved than the vertical meridian.
  - iii. Oblique astigmatism, wherein the two principal meridians are not the horizontal and vertical though these are at right angles to one another (e.g. 45° and 135°).
  - iv. Bioblique astigmatism, wherein the two principal meridians are not at right angle to each other, e.g. one may be at 30° and the other at 100°.
2. *Irregular astigmatism*: In it, refraction varies in multiple meridians which admits no geometrical analysis. It commonly follows corneal scarring.

#### **What is the treatment of irregular astigmatism?**

Contact lens prescription, which replaces the anterior surface of the cornea for refraction.

#### **What is simple, compound and mixed astigmatism?**

1. *Simple astigmatism*. Herein the rays of light entering the eye are focused on the retina in one meridian and either in front (*simple myopic astigmatism*, or behind (*simple hypermetropic astigmatism*) the retina in other meridian.
2. *Compound astigmatism*. In this type of astigmatism, light rays are focused in both the principal meridians either in front (*compound myopic astigmatism*) or behind (*compound hypermetropic astigmatism*) the retina.
3. *Mixed astigmatism*. In this condition, light rays are focused in front of the retina in one meridian and behind the retina in the other meridian.

#### **What is the most common cause of irregular astigmatism?**

Irregular corneal scars.

#### **What is anisometropia?**

In it, total refraction of the two eyes is unequal. Practically, a difference of more than 2.5D (which causes more than 5% difference in the retinal images of the two eyes) poses problem of anisometropia.

#### **What is aniseikonia?**

Aniseikonia is defined as a condition, wherein the images projected to the visual cortex from the two retina are abnormally unequal in size and shape.



### How much image magnification is caused by one dioptre anisometropia?

One dioptre anisometropia produces image magnification by 2%. An image difference up to 5% to 7% is well tolerated.

### What are the common causes of aniseikonia?

Aniseikonia may be *optical* (due to high anisometropia), *retinal* (due to stretching or crowding of retina in macular area) or *cortical* (due to abnormal cortical perception of the images).

## ■ ACCOMMODATION AND ITS ANOMALIES

### Define accommodation.

Accommodation is a mechanism by which the eyes can focus the diverging rays coming from a near object on the retina. In it, there occurs increase in the power of crystalline lens.

### What is presbyopia?

Presbyopia is not an error of refraction but a condition of physiological insufficiency of accommodation resulting from the decreased elasticity and plasticity of the lens due to advancing age (usually after the age of 40 years) leading to failing vision for near.

### What is near point of the eye?

The nearest point at which small objects can be seen clearly is called near point or *punctum proximum*. Its value varies with age; being about 7 cm at 10 years of age and about 25 cm at about 40 years of age.

### What is far point of the eye?

The farthest point from where objects can be seen by the eye is called far point or *punctum remotum*. In an emmetropic eye, far point is at infinity.

### Enumerate the causes of premature presbyopia.

1. Uncorrected hypermetropia
2. Premature hardening of the lens
3. General debility causing premature senile weakness of the ciliary muscles
4. Chronic simple glaucoma.

### What is range of accommodation?

Range of accommodation is the distance between the near point and far point of the eye.

### What is amplitude of accommodation?

Amplitude of accommodation is the difference between the dioptric power needed to focus at near and far point.

### What do you mean by insufficiency of accommodation? Enumerate its causes.

Insufficiency of accommodation refers to a significant decrease in accommodation power than the normal

physiological limit for the patient's age. Common causes of insufficiency of accommodation are:

- Premature sclerosis of the lens.
- Weakness of ciliary muscles associated with chronic debilitating disease, anaemia, malnutrition, pregnancy, stress and so on.
- Primary open-angle glaucoma.

## ■ DETERMINATION AND CORRECTION OF REFRACTIVE ERRORS

### Enumerate objective methods of refraction.

- Retinoscopy
- Autorefractometry
- Keratometry.

### Name some subjective methods of refraction.

- Trial and error method
- Fogging method
- Tests for confirming refraction subjectively
  - Duochrome test
  - Astigmatic fan test
  - Jackson's cross cylinder test
  - Pin-hole test.

### Define retinoscopy (skiascopy or shadow test).

Retinoscopy is an objective method of finding out the error of refraction by the method of neutralization. The end point of neutralization is either no movement or just reversal of the movement of the pupillary shadow.

### What is the principle of retinoscopy?

Retinoscopy is based on the fact that when light is reflected from a mirror into the eye, the direction in which light will travel across the pupil will depend upon the refractive state of the eye.

### What are the prerequisites for retinoscopy?

1. A darkroom preferably 6-m long or which can be converted into 6 meters by the use of a plane mirror.
2. A trial box containing spherical and cylindrical lenses of variable plus and minus powers, a pin-hole, an occluder and prisms.
3. A trial frame.
4. A Snellen's self-illuminated vision box.
5. A retinoscope.

### What are the common types of retinoscopes?

1. Mirror retinoscopes, which may consist of a simple plane mirror or a combination of a plane mirror (on one end) and a concave mirror (on the other end), e.g. Priestley-Smith's mirror.
2. Self-illuminated streak retinoscope.

### What are the advantages of a streak retinoscope over a simple plane mirror retinoscope?

The streak retinoscope is more sensitive than the spot retinoscope in detecting astigmatism.



**Name the conditions where concave mirror retinoscopy is more useful.**

1. Patient with hazy media.
2. Patient with very high degree of refractive error.

**What are the indications of using cycloplegic drugs for retinoscopy?**

Cycloplegics are used before retinoscopy in patients where the examiner suspects that accommodation is abnormally active and will hinder the exact retinoscopy. Such a situation is encountered in young children especially hypermetropes.

**What do you mean by wet retinoscopy and dry retinoscopy?**

When retinoscopy is performed after instilling a cycloplegic, it is termed 'wet-retinoscopy' in converse to dry retinoscopy (without cycloplegic).

**Name the commonly used cycloplegics.**

1. Atropine
2. Homatropine
3. Cyclopentolate.

**At what distance retinoscopy is performed?**

One meter or two-third meter.

**When retinoscopy is performed with a plane mirror at a distance of 1 m; what inferences are drawn?**

Depending upon the movement of the red reflex vis-a-vis movement of the plane mirror, following inferences are drawn:

1. *No movement* of the red reflex indicates myopia of 1D.
2. *With movement* of the red reflex indicates either emmetropia or hypermetropia or myopia of less than 1D.
3. *Against movement* indicates myopia of more than 1D.

**What inferences are drawn from the movement of the red reflex when concave mirror retinoscope is used?**

The inferences drawn while using a concave mirror are reverse to that of plane mirror.

**What is the point of neutralization while using a simple plane mirror retinoscope?**

The end point of neutralization is either no movement or just reversal of the movement of the pupillary shadow.

**What is the end point of neutralization while using a streak retinoscope?**

At the end point, the streak disappears and the pupil appears completely illuminated or completely dark.

**While performing retinoscopy, if the shadow appears to swirl around, what does it indicate?**

Astigmatism.

**While performing retinoscopy with dilated pupil, one central and another peripheral shadow may be seen. It is important to neutralize which shadow?**

Central shadow.

**When a cycloplegic retinoscopy has been performed, how many dioptres should be deducted to compensate for the ciliary tone?**

- 1D for atropine
- 0.75D for cyclopentolate
- 0.5D for homatropine.

**What is an autorefractometer?**

It is a computerized refractometer which quickly estimates the refractive error of the patient objectively in terms of sphere, cylinder with its axis and interpupillary distance. The subjective verification is a must even after autorefractometry.

**What is a duochrome test?**

Duochrome test is based on the principle of chromatic aberrations. It helps in verifying the spherical correction subjectively. In it, the patient is asked to tell the clarity of the letters with red background vis-a-vis green background. To an emmetropic patient, letters of both the colours look equally sharp; while to a slightly myopic patient the red letters appear sharper and to a slightly hypermetropic patient the green letters look sharper.

**Name common problems which can arise while performing retinoscopy.**

Red reflex may not be visible. It occurs in:

1. Small pupil,
2. Hazy media, and
3. High degree of refractive errors.

**■ DARKROOM APPLIANCES****What is a prism and what are its uses in ophthalmology?**

Prism is a refracting medium, having two plane surfaces inclined at an angle. Its uses are:

1. Objective measurement of angle of squint (Prism bar cover test, Krimsky's test).
2. Measurement of fusional reserve.
3. Diagnosis of microtropia.
4. Used in ophthalmic equipments such as gonioscope, keratometer, applanation tonometer, etc.

**What are the uses of a convex spherical lens?**

Its uses are:

1. For correction of hypermetropia, aphakia and presbyopia.
2. In oblique illumination examination.
3. In indirect ophthalmoscopy.
4. As a magnifying lens.



**How will you identify a convex lens?**

A convex lens can be identified from following features:

1. It is thicker at the centre.
2. An object held close to it appears magnified.
3. When it is moved, the objects seen through it move in the opposite direction.

**How will you identify a concave lens?**

A concave lens can be identified from following features:

1. It is thin at the centre and thick at the periphery.
2. An object seen through it appears minified.
3. When it is moved, the objects seen through it move in the same direction of the lens.

**What are the uses of concave lens?**

1. For correction of myopia
2. As Hruby lens for fundus examination.

**How will you identify a cylindrical lens?**

1. When it is rotated around its optical axis, objects seen through it become distorted.
2. It acts only in one axis, i.e. when it is moved up and down or sideways the object seen through it moves only in one direction (with the lens in a convex cylinder and against the lens in a concave cylinder).

**What are the uses of cylindrical lenses?**

Cylindrical lens is prescribed to: (i) correct astigmatic refractive error, (ii) it is used as a cross cylinder to check the power and axis of the cylindrical lens prescribed subjectively.

**What is a cross cylinder and what are its uses?**

The Jackson's cross cylinder is a combination of two cylindrical lenses of equal strength but with opposite sign placed with their axis at right angles to each other and mounted in a handle. The cross cylinder effect is obtained by combining a spherical lens with a cylindrical lens (double the power of spherical lens) with opposite sign  $-0.25\text{D}$  spherical and  $+0.5\text{D}$  cylindrical. Commonly used cross cylinders are a combination of  $0.25\text{D}$  and  $0.5\text{D}$ .

A cross cylinder is used to verify the strength and axis of the cylinder subjectively.

**What are the uses of red and green glasses or filters?**

These are used for:

1. Diplopia charting
2. Worth's four-dot test
3. Malingering test.

While testing, the red glass is kept in front of the right eye and the green glass is kept in front of the left eye.

**Which glass is used most commonly for making spectacles?**

Crown glass with refractive index 1.5223 is most commonly used for making spectacles.

**What are the types of contact lenses you know of?**

1. Hard contact lenses
2. Soft contact lenses
3. Rigid gas-permeable (RGP) contact lenses.

**What are the advantages and disadvantages of hard contact lenses?**

Hard contact lenses are made up of PMMA (polymethylmethacrylate) which is a light weight, nontoxic but of hydrophobic material.

**Advantages**

Cheap, durable and have high optical quality.

**Disadvantages**

Can cause corneal hypoxia and corneal abrasions.

**What are the advantages and disadvantages of soft contact lenses?**

Soft contact lenses are made up of HEMA (hydroxyethylmethacrylate) which is hydrophilic.

**Advantages**

Being soft and oxygen permeable, they are most comfortable and so well tolerated.

**Disadvantages**

Problems of proteinaceous deposits, getting cracked, limited life, inferior optical quality, more chances of corneal infections, and inability to correct astigmatism of more than one dioptre.

## TECHNIQUES OF FUNDUS EXAMINATION

Techniques of fundus examination include:

- A. Ophthalmoscopy, and
- B. Slit-lamp biomicroscopic examination of the fundus by:
  - Indirect fundus biomicroscopy
  - Hruby lens biomicroscopy
  - Contact lens biomicroscopy.

**■ A. OPHTHALMOSCOPY**

Ophthalmoscopy is a clinical examination of the interior of the eye by means of an ophthalmoscope. It is primarily done to assess the state of fundus and detect the opacities of ocular media. The ophthalmoscope was invented by Babbage in 1848, however, its importance was not recognized, and



it was reinvented by von Helmholtz in 1850. Three methods of examination in vogue are:

1. Distant direct ophthalmoscopy,
2. Direct ophthalmoscopy, and
3. Indirect ophthalmoscopy.

### 1. Distant Direct Ophthalmoscopy

It should be performed routinely before the direct ophthalmoscopy, as it gives a lot of useful information (vide infra). It can be performed with the help of a self-illuminated ophthalmoscope or a simple plain mirror with a hole at the centre.

**Procedure.** The light is thrown into patient's eye sitting in a semi-darkroom, from a distance of 20–25 cm and the features of the red glow in the pupillary area are noted.

**Applications of distant direct ophthalmoscopy** include:

i. **To diagnose opacities in the refractive media.** Any opacity in the refractive media is seen as a black shadow in the red glow. The exact location of the opacity can be determined by observing the parallactic displacement. For this, the patient is asked to move the eye up and down while the examiner is observing the pupillary glow.

- Opacities in the pupillary plane remain stationary (2 in Fig. 25.26),
- Opacities in front of the pupillary plane move in the direction of the movement of the eye (1 in Fig. 25.26), and
- Opacities behind it will move in opposite direction (3, 4, 5 in Fig. 25.26).

ii. **To differentiate between a mole and a hole of the iris.** A small hole and a mole on the iris appear as a black spot on oblique illumination. On distant direct ophthalmoscopy, the mole looks black (as earlier) but a red reflex is seen through the hole in the iris.

iii. **To recognize detached retina or a tumour arising from the fundus.** A greyish reflex seen on distant direct

ophthalmoscopy indicates either a detached retina or a tumour arising from the fundus.

### 2. Direct Ophthalmoscopy

It is the most commonly practised method for routine fundus examination.

**Optics.** The modern direct ophthalmoscope (Fig. 25.27) works on the basic optical principle of glass plate ophthalmoscope introduced by von Helmholtz. Optics of direct ophthalmoscopy is depicted in Fig. 25.28.

A convergent beam of light is reflected into the patient's pupil (Fig. 25.28, dotted lines). The emergent rays from any point on the patient's fundus reach the observer's retina through the viewing hole in the ophthalmoscope (Fig. 25.28, continuous lines). The emergent rays from the patient's eye are parallel and brought to focus on the retina of the emmetropic observer when



Fig. 25.27 Direct ophthalmoscope

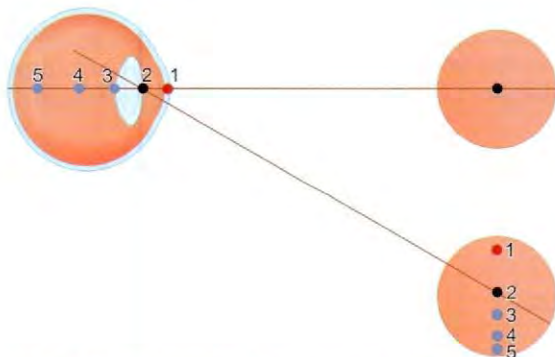


Fig. 25.26 Parallax displacement on distant direct ophthalmoscopy

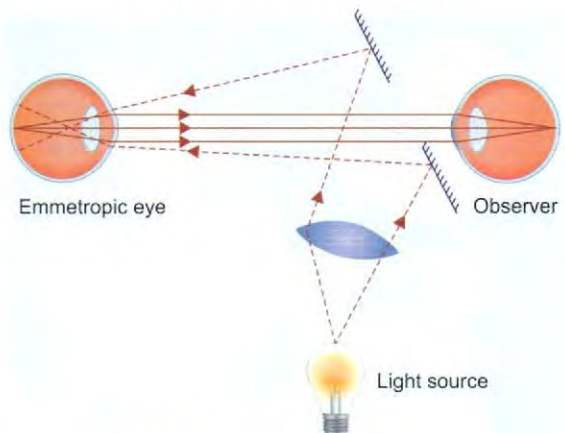


Fig. 25.28 Optics of direct ophthalmoscopy



accommodation is relaxed. However, if the patient or/and the observer is/are ametropic, a correcting lens (equivalent to the sum of the patient's and observer's refractive error) must be interposed (from the system of plus and minus lenses, inbuilt in the modern ophthalmoscopes).

**Characteristics of image formed.** In direct ophthalmoscopy, the image is erect, virtual and about 15 times magnified in emmetropes (more in myopes and less in hypermetropes).

**Technique.** Direct ophthalmoscopy should be performed in a semi-darkroom with the patient seated and looking straight ahead, while the observer standing or seated slightly over to the side of the eye to be examined (Fig. 25.29). Patient's right eye should be examined by the observer with his or her right eye and left with the left eye.

The observer should reflect beam of light from the ophthalmoscope into patient's pupil. Once the red reflex is seen the observer should move as close to the patient's eye as possible (theoretically at the anterior focal plane of the patient's eye, i.e. 15.4 mm from the cornea). Once the retina is focused the details should be examined systematically starting from disc, blood vessels, the four quadrants of the general background and the macula (See pages 528–530 for systematic observations to be made on ophthalmoscopy).

### 3. Indirect Ophthalmoscopy

Indirect ophthalmoscopy introduced by Nagel in 1864, is now a very popular method for examination of the posterior segment.

**Optical principle.** The principle of indirect ophthalmoscopy is to make the eye highly myopic by placing a strong convex lens in front of patient's eye so that the emergent rays from an area of the

fundus are brought to focus as a real, inverted image between the lens and the observer's eye, which is then studied (Fig. 25.30).

**Characteristics of image.** The image formed in indirect ophthalmoscopy is real, inverted and magnified. Magnification of image depends upon the dioptric power of the convex lens, position of the lens in relation to the eyeball and refractive state of the eyeball. About 2.5 times magnification and 35° or 8 disc-diameter field of view is obtained with a +20D lens. With a stronger lens, image will be smaller, but brighter and field of vision will be more.

**Prerequisites.** (i) Darkroom, (ii) Source of light and concave mirror or self-illuminated indirect ophthalmoscope, (iii) Convex lens (now-a-days commonly employed lens is of +20D), (iv) Pupils of the patient should be dilated.

**Technique.** Patient is made to lie in the supine position, with one pillow on a bed or couch and instructed to keep both eyes open. The examiner throws the light into patient's eye from an arm's distance (with the self-illuminated ophthalmoscope). In practice, binocular ophthalmoscope with head band or that mounted on the spectacle frame is employed most frequently (Fig. 25.31). Keeping his or her eyes on the reflex, the examiner then interposes the condensing lens (+20D, routinely) in the path of beam of light, close to patient's eye, and then slowly moves the lens away from the eye (towards himself) until the image of the retina is clearly seen. The examiner moves around the head of the patient to examine different quadrants of the fundus. He or she has to stand opposite the clock hour position to be examined, e.g. to examine inferior quadrant (around 6 O' clock meridian) the examiner stands towards patient's head (12 O'clock meridian) and so on. By asking the patient to look in extreme gaze, and using scleral indenter, the whole peripheral retina up to ora serrata can be examined.

**Applications.** Indirect ophthalmoscopy is essential for the assessment and management of retinal detachment and other peripheral retinal lesions.



Fig. 25.29 Technique of direct ophthalmoscopy

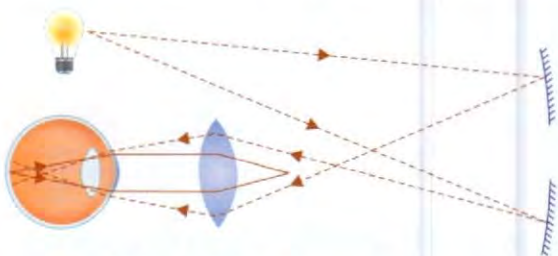


Fig. 25.30 Optics of indirect ophthalmoscopy





**Fig. 25.31** Technique of indirect ophthalmoscopy

**Difficulties in indirect ophthalmoscopy** are:

1. The technique is difficult and can be mastered by hours of practice.
2. Reflexes from the corneal surface can be decreased by holding the condensing lens at a distance equal to its focal length from the anterior focus of the eye.
3. Formation of reflexes by the two surfaces of convex lens can be eliminated by slightly tilting the lens and use of aspheric lens.

**Advantages of the binocular indirect ophthalmoscope are:**

1. Visualization through hazy media is possible due to strong in built illumination system.
2. Field of view is much larger than direct ophthalmoscopy.
3. Examination of peripheral retina up to ora serrata is possible.
4. Depth perception of the lesion is possible due to stereopsis with binocular indirect ophthalmoscope.
5. Visualization of fundus in very high refractive error is also possible, where it may not be possible to focus the lesion with direct ophthalmoscope.

**Direct versus indirect ophthalmoscopy** (Table 25.2).

## B. SLIT-LAMP BIOMICROSCOPIC EXAMINATION OF THE FUNDUS

Biomicroscopic examination of the fundus can be performed after full mydriasis using a slit-lamp and anyone of the following lenses:

**1. Indirect fundus biomicroscopy.** Using +78D or +90D small diameter lens (Fig. 25.32A) is presently the most commonly employed technique for biomicroscopic examination of the posterior pole of fundus. Similar to binocular indirect ophthalmoscopy, the image formed is inverted, real and magnified. This technique (Fig. 25.33) is being considered a better alternative to all the below discussed techniques for slit-lamp biomicroscopy of the fundus.

**2. Hruby lens biomicroscopy.** Hruby lens is a planoconcave lens with dioptric power 58.6D (Fig. 25.32B). This lens provides a small field with low magnification and cannot visualize the fundus beyond equator.

**Table 25.2** Direct versus indirect ophthalmoscopy

| Feature                           | Direct ophthalmoscopy                      | Indirect ophthalmoscopy           |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Condensing lens                | Not required                               | Required                          |
| 2. Examination distance           | As close to patient's eye as possible      | At an arm's length                |
| 3. Image                          | Virtual,<br>Erect                          | Real,<br>Inverted                 |
| 4. Magnification                  | About 15 times                             | 2.5 times (with +20D lens)        |
| 5. Illumination                   | Not so bright; so not useful in hazy media | Bright; so, useful for hazy media |
| 6. Area of field in focus         | About 2 disc diameter                      | About 8 disc diameter             |
| 7. Stereopsis                     | Absent                                     | Present                           |
| 8. Accessible fundus view         | Slightly beyond equator                    | Up to ora serrata                 |
| 9. Examination through hazy media | Not possible                               | Possible                          |





**Fig. 25.32** Lenses used for slit-lamp biomicroscopic examination of fundus: A, +78D or +90D, small diameter lens; B, Hruby lens; C, Posterior fundus contact lens (modified Koepe's lens); D, Goldmann's three-mirror contact lens



**Fig. 25.33** Technique of indirect slit-lamp fundus biomicroscopy

3. **Contact lens biomicroscopy** can be performed by following lenses:

- **Posterior fundus contact lens** is a modified Koepe's lens (Fig. 25.32C). The image produced by it is virtual and erect.
- **Goldmann's three-mirror contact lens** consists of a central contact lens and three mirrors placed in the cone, each with different angles of inclination (Fig. 25.32D). With this the central as well as peripheral parts of the fundus can be visualized.

## ■ RELATED QUESTIONS

### Define ophthalmoscopy.

It is a darkroom procedure carried out to examine the fundus oculi.

### What are the types of ophthalmoscopy?

Ophthalmoscopy is of three types:

1. Distant direct ophthalmoscopy.
2. Direct ophthalmoscopy.
3. Indirect ophthalmoscopy.

### What are the other methods of fundus examination?

In addition to ophthalmoscopy fundus can also be examined by focal illumination using a slit-lamp biomicroscope and any of the following lenses:

- Hruby lens
- Posterior fundus contact lens
- Goldmann's three-mirror contact lens
- +78D and +90D small diameter lenses.

### When and who invented the direct ophthalmoscope?

Babbage in 1848.

### Who reinvented and popularised the ophthalmoscope?

von Helmholtz in 1850.

### At what distance distant direct ophthalmoscopy is performed?

20–25 cm.

### What are the uses (applications) of distant direct ophthalmoscopy?

1. To diagnose opacities in the ocular media.
2. To differentiate between a mole and a hole of the iris.
3. To recognize a detached retina.
4. To recognize a subluxated lens.

### At what distance 'direct ophthalmoscopy' should be performed?

As near to the patient's eye as possible.

### What are the features of the image formed in direct ophthalmoscopy?

The image formed is erect, virtual and about 15 times magnified in an emmetrope.

### When and who invented the indirect ophthalmoscope?

Nagel in 1864.

### What is the principle of indirect ophthalmoscopy?

The principle of indirect ophthalmoscopy is to make the eye highly myopic by placing a strong convex lens in front of the patient's eye so that emergent rays from an area of the fundus are brought to focus as a real, inverted image between the lens and the observer's eye.



**What is the power of the convex lens most commonly used in indirect ophthalmoscopy?**

+20D.

**What are the characteristics of the image formed in indirect ophthalmoscopy?**

It is real, inverted, magnified about 2.5 times when +20D lens is used and is formed between the convex lens and the observer.

**What are the advantages of indirect ophthalmoscopy over direct ophthalmoscopy?**

1. It allows a stereoscopic view of the fundus.
2. It allows examination in hazy media.
3. Periphery of the retina up to ora serrata can be examined.

**What are the advantages of direct ophthalmoscopy over indirect ophthalmoscopy?**

1. It is a handy procedure.
2. Easy to perform.

3. Allows examination of the minute details of the approachable lesion, since image formed is 15 times magnified.

4. Orientation and understanding of the lesion is easy as the image formed is erect.

**Name the common diseases of the optic disc which can be diagnosed on direct ophthalmoscopy.**

- Papillitis
- Papilloedema
- Optic atrophy
- Glaucomatous cupping.

**Name few common retinal disorders diagnosed on direct/indirect ophthalmoscopy.**

- Diabetic retinopathy
- Hypertensive retinopathy
- Retinal detachment
- Retinitis pigmentosa.



# Ophthalmic Instruments and Operative Ophthalmology

## INTRODUCTION

### ANAESTHESIA FOR OCULAR SURGERY

- Regional (local) anaesthesia
- General anaesthesia

### OPHTHALMIC EQUIPMENT AND INSTRUMENTS

- Essential equipment for ophthalmic operation theatre
- Ophthalmic instruments
- Ophthalmic surgical devices

## OPHTHALMIC OPERATION THEATRE

- Operation theatre layout
- Preparation of operation theatre

### Sterilization, disinfection and fumigation

- Sterilization and disinfection
- Fumigation of operation theatre

## RELATED QUESTIONS

## INTRODUCTION

To perform well in this section of practical examinations, students are supposed to be well versed with the following topics:

- Anaesthesia for ocular surgery
- Ophthalmic equipment
- Ophthalmic instruments
- Sterilization techniques
- Ophthalmic surgical devices
- Surgical steps of common eye operations:
  - Cataract surgery (See pages 207-217)
  - Glaucoma surgery (See page 260)
  - Enucleation operation (See page 320)
  - Evisceration operation (See page 178)
- Lasers and cryotherapy in ophthalmology (See pages 481-484).

## ANAESTHESIA FOR OCULAR SURGERY

Ocular surgery may be performed under topical, local or general anaesthesia. Local anaesthesia is more frequently employed as it entails little risk and is less dependent upon patient's general health. It is easy to perform, has got rapid onset of action and provides a low intraocular pressure with dilated pupil. Above all, in developing countries like India, with a large number of cataract cases, it is much more economical.

### ■ REGIONAL (LOCAL) ANAESTHESIA

**Indications.** Almost all ocular operations, namely, cataract extraction, glaucoma surgery, keratoplasty and other corneal surgeries, iridectomy, squint

and retinal detachment surgery in adults can be performed under local anaesthesia.

**Goals.** The main goals of regional anaesthesia for successful ocular surgery are:

- Globe and conjunctival anaesthesia,
- Orbicularis and ocular akinesia, and
- Low intraocular and intraorbital pressure.

*These goals can be achieved by a local anaesthesia comprising either surface anaesthesia, facial block and retrobulbar block or a combination of surface anaesthesia and peribulbar block.*

### Surface (Topical) anaesthesia

Surface anaesthesia is achieved by topical instillations of 2 to 4% xylocaine or 1% amethocaine or proparacaine 0.5% (most preferred for topical anaesthesia). Usually, a drop of anaesthetic solution instilled 4 times after every 4 minutes, is sufficient to produce conjunctival and corneal anaesthesia, which lasts for about half an hour. Cataract surgery especially by phacoemulsification can be successfully performed under topical anaesthesia only.

### Facial block

For intraocular surgery, it is necessary to block the facial nerve which supplies the orbicularis oculi muscle, so that patient cannot squeeze the eyelids. Orbicularis akinesia can be achieved by blocking the facial nerve at its terminal branches (van Lint block), superior branches (Atkinson block) or proximal trunk (O'Brien or Nadbath block).

**1. Blocking the peripheral branches of facial nerve (van Lint's block):** This technique blocks the terminal



branches of the facial nerve, producing localized akinesia of the orbicularis oculi muscle without associated facial paralysis.

In this technique, 2.5 mL of anaesthetic solution is injected in deeper tissues just above the eyebrow and just below the inferior orbital margin, through a point about 2 cm behind the lateral orbital margin, level with outer canthus (Fig. 26.1).

**2. Facial nerve trunk block:** At the neck of mandible (O'Brien's block). In it, facial nerve is blocked near the condyloid process. The condyle is located 1 cm anterior to the tragus. It is easily palpated if the patient is asked to open and close the mouth with the operator's index finger located across the neck of the mandible. At this point, the needle is inserted until contact is made with the periosteum and then 4 to 6 mL of local anaesthetic is injected while the needle is withdrawn (Fig. 26.2).

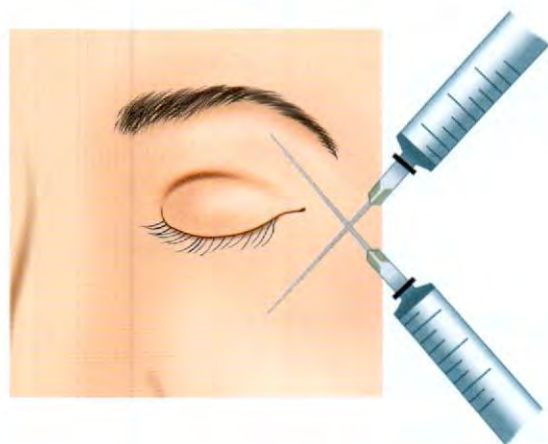


Fig. 26.1 Technique of van Lint's block

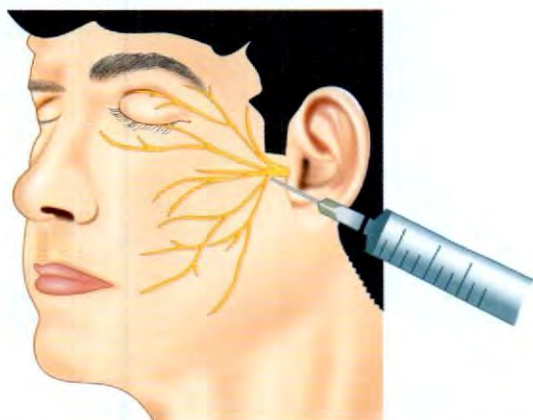


Fig. 26.2 Diagrammatic distribution of the facial nerve and technique of O'Brien's block

This technique is associated with pain at the injection site and unwanted facial paralysis.

**3. Naddath block:** In this technique, the facial nerve is blocked as it leaves the skull through the stylomastoid foramen. This block is also painful.

**4. Atkinson's block:** In it, superior branches of the facial nerve are blocked by injecting anaesthetic solution at the inferior margin of the zygomatic bone.

### Retrobulbar block

Retrobulbar block, *now sparingly used*, was introduced by Herman Knapp in 1884. It is administered by injecting 2 mL of anaesthetic solution (2% xylocaine with added hyaluronidase 5 IU/mL and with or without adrenaline one in one lac) into the muscle cone behind the eyeball (Fig. 26.3A). It is usual to give the injection through the inferior fornix or the skin of outer part of lower lid with the eye in primary gaze (Fig. 26.4A). The needle is first directed straight backwards then slightly upwards and inwards towards the apex of the orbit, up to a depth of 2.5 to 3 cm.

Retrobulbar block anaesthetizes the ciliary nerves, ciliary ganglion and third and sixth cranial nerves thus producing globe akinesia, anaesthesia and analgesia. The superior oblique muscle is not usually paralyzed as the fourth cranial nerve is outside the muscle cone.

**Complications** encountered with it include retrobulbar haemorrhage, globe perforation, optic nerve injury, and extraocular muscle palsies.

### Peribulbar block

This technique described in 1986 by Davis and Mandel has almost replaced the time-tested combination of retrobulbar and facial blocks, because of its fewer complications and by obviating the need for a separate facial block.

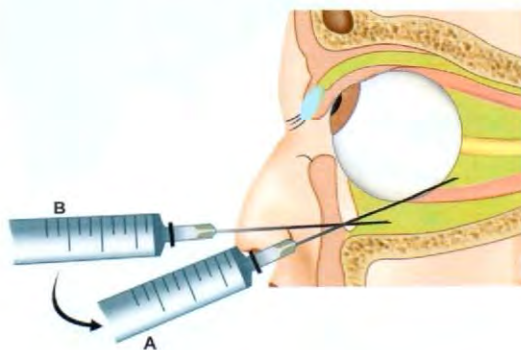


Fig. 26.3 A, Position of needle for retrobulbar block in the muscle cone; B, For peribulbar block in the peripheral orbital space



**Technique**, primarily involves the injection of 6 to 7 mL of local anaesthetic solution in the peripheral space of the orbit (Fig. 26.3B), from where it diffuses into the muscle cone and lids; leading to globe and orbicularis akinesia and anaesthesia. Classically, the peribulbar block is administered by two injections; first through the upper lid (at the junction of medial one-third and lateral two-thirds) and second through the lower lid (at the junction of lateral one-third and medial two-thirds) (Fig. 26.4B). After injection digital orbital compression or massage is applied for 10 to 15 minutes.

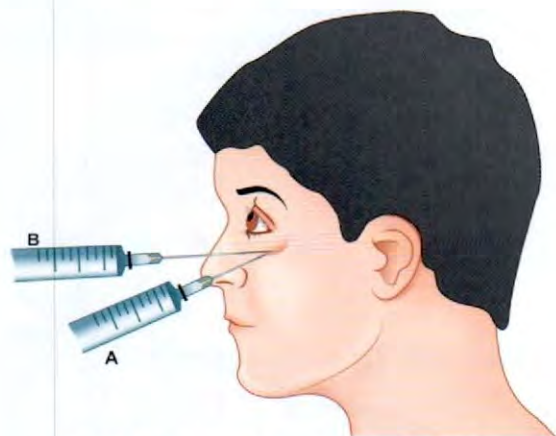
**Anaesthetic solution** used for peribulbar anaesthesia consists of a mixture of 2% lignocaine, and 0.5 to 0.75% bupivacaine (in a ratio of 2:1) with hyaluronidase 5 IU/mL and adrenaline one in one lac.

### ■ GENERAL ANAESTHESIA

**Indications** include infants and children, anxious, non-cooperative and mentally retarded adults, perforating ocular injuries, major operations like exenteration and the patients willing for operation under general anaesthesia.

**Important considerations.** During general anaesthesia for ocular surgery include:

- Use of relaxants, endotracheal intubation and controlled respiration is preferred.
- It must be ensured that patient does not develop carbon dioxide retention. When this occurs, choroid swells to many times its normal value and ocular contents prolapse as soon as the eye is opened.



**Fig. 26.4** Position of the needle on the skin for: A, Retrobulbar block; B, For peribulbar block

- Anaesthetic agent like ketamine should be avoided for intraocular surgeries, as it raises intraocular pressure
- In perforating injuries and other ocular emergency cases, use of suxamethonium should always be preferred over non-depolarizing relaxants as the risk of vomiting and regurgitation of stomach contents is less with it.

## OPHTHALMIC EQUIPMENT INSTRUMENTS AND DEVICES

### ■ ESSENTIAL EQUIPMENT FOR OPHTHALMIC OPERATION THEATRE

**Basic requirements of general operation theatre** with equipment for general anaesthesia and facilities to deal with the cardiorespiratory emergency situations should be available in eye operation theatre.

**Equipment for ophthalmic operation theatre** should include:

- Operating microscope (Fig. 26.5A),
- Ophthalmic operating table and surgeon's chair,
- Ophthalmic cryo unit (Fig. 26.5B),
- Wet-field bipolar cautery (Fig. 26.5C),
- Electrolysis machine,
- Electromagnetic unit for removal of intraocular foreign bodies,
- Vitrectomy unit (Fig. 26.5D), and
- Phacoemulsification machine (Fig. 26.5E) for modern cataract surgery.

### ■ OPHTHALMIC INSTRUMENTS

Commonly used ophthalmic instruments can be grouped as under:

#### I. Lid speculums

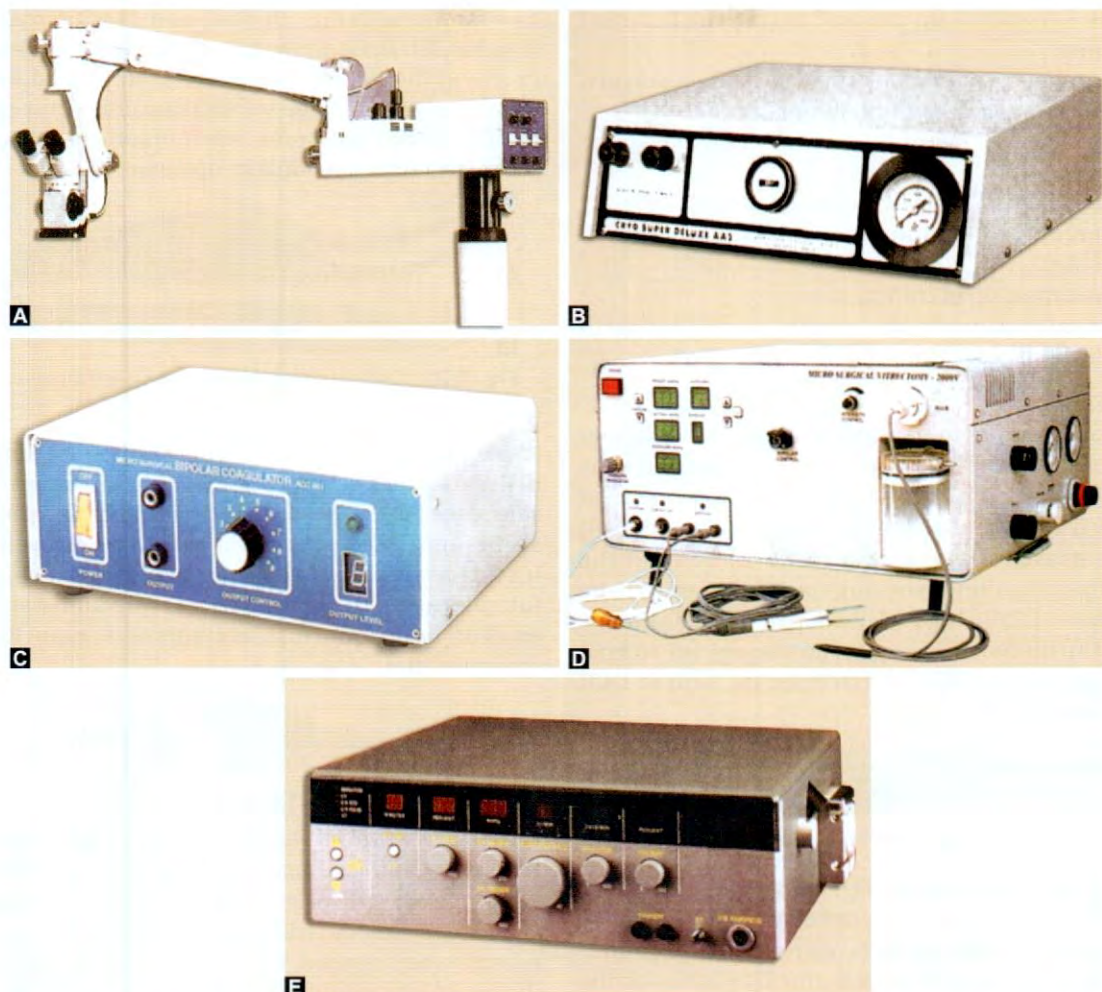
Three types of speculums are in use:

1. **Universal metallic eye speculum** (Fig. 26.6). It is called universal eye speculum because it can be used for both eyes, i.e. right as well as left. It has two limbs and a spring mechanism with a screw to adjust the limbs. Its blades are open.



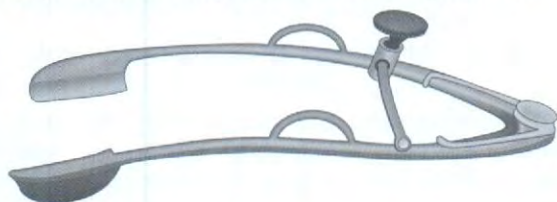
**Fig. 26.6** Universal metallic eye speculum





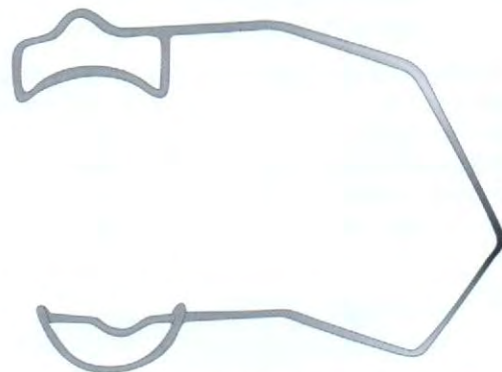
**Fig. 26.5** Essential equipment for ophthalmic operation theatre: A, Operating microscope; B, Ophthalmic cryo unit; C, Wet-field bipolar cautery; D, Vitrectomy unit; E, Phacoemulsification machine

**2. Eye speculum with guard or with solid blades** (Fig. 26.7). It retracts the lids and its solid blades keep the lashes away from the field of operation.



**Fig. 26.7** Eye speculum with guard or with solid blades

**3. Wire speculum** (Fig. 26.8). It is very light and causes minimal pressure on the eyeball. It is also universal.



**Fig. 26.8** Wire speculum



**Uses.** Eye speculums are used to keep the lids apart during:

- Intraocular operations such as cataract surgery, glaucoma surgery and keratoplasty.
- Extraocular surgery, e.g. squint surgery, pterygium surgery.
- Enucleation and evisceration operation.
- Removal of conjunctival and corneal foreign bodies.
- Cauterization of corneal ulcer.
- Examination of the eye in a patient with blepharospasm.

## II. Forceps

Many kinds of forceps are available for different purposes. A few common ones are mentioned here.

**1. Plain forceps** (Fig. 26.9). It is simple forceps without any teeth. Serrations (either horizontal or vertical) are present near the tip. **Uses:** (i) To hold the conjunctiva during any surgical procedure. (ii) To tie sutures. (iii) To hold scleral flap in trabeculectomy. (iv) To hold skin during eyelid surgery. (v) To hold nasal mucosal flaps and lacrimal sac flaps in DCR operation.



Fig. 26.9 Plain forceps

**2. Globe fixation forceps** (Fig. 26.10). It has  $2 \times 3$  or  $3 \times 4$  teeth at the tip. It is applied near the limbus to hold the conjunctiva and episcleral tissue together. **Uses:** (i) To fix the eyeball during operations on the eyeball. (ii) To hold the eyeball during forced-duction test.



Fig. 26.10 Globe fixation forceps

**3. Superior rectus holding forceps** (Fig. 26.11). It is a toothed forceps ( $1 \times 2$  teeth) with S-shaped double curve near the tip. **Uses:** It is used to hold the superior rectus muscle while passing a bridle suture under it; to stabilize the eyeball during any operation such as cataract surgery, glaucoma surgery, corneal surgery, etc.



Fig. 26.11 Superior rectus holding forceps

**4. Corneo-scleral forceps.** These are available in many shapes and designs. Commonly used are:

*Colibri forceps* (Fig. 26.12A) and *Lim's forceps* (Fig. 26.12B). These are the forceps with very fine teeth ( $1 \times 2$ ) at the tip. **Use:** These are used to hold the cornea or scleral edge (of incision) for suturing during cataract, glaucoma, repair of corneal and/or scleral tears and keratoplasty operations.



Fig. 26.12 Corneo-scleral forceps: A, Colibri forceps; B, Lim's forceps

**5. Iris forceps** (Fig. 26.13). These are small and delicate forceps having fine  $1 \times 2$  teeth on the inner side of the limbs. These are also available in various shapes and designs. **Use:** These are used to catch the iris for the purpose of iridectomy during operations for cataract, glaucoma, optical iridectomy and excision for iris prolapse, tumours and entangled foreign bodies.



Fig. 26.13 Iris forceps

**6. Arruga's intracapsular (capsule holding) forceps** (Fig. 26.14). Intracapsular forceps have a cup on the inner side of the tip of each limb. The margins of the cup are very smooth which do not damage the lens capsule when applied. **Use:** *Not used nowadays.* In the era of intracapsular cataract extraction (ICCE), it was used to hold the lens capsule (usually at 6 O'clock position) during capsule forceps method of lens delivery in intracapsular cataract extraction and to grasp and remove the capsular remnants after accidental extracapsular lens extraction.



Fig. 26.14 Arruga's intracapsular (capsule holding) forceps

**7. Epilation forceps** (Fig. 26.15). These are small stout forceps with blunt and flat ends. **Uses:** These are used to epilate the cilia in trichiasis and sty, to remove cilia after electrolysis and cryolysis and to remove cilia lodged in the punctum.



Fig. 26.15 Epilation forceps



**8. Artery (haemostatic) forceps** (Fig. 26.16). It is a blunt-tipped stout forceps having a scissors-like configuration. It has multiple straight grooves (at right angle to the limbs) near the tip and a locking mechanism near the ringed end. These are available in large, medium and small size. The small-sized artery forceps, also called as *mosquito artery forceps* are more commonly used in ophthalmology. These can be straight or with curved ends. **Uses:** (i) To catch the bleeding vessels during operations of the lids and lacrimal sac. (ii) To hold the skin and muscle stay sutures. (iii) To hold small 'pea-nut' gauze pellets for blunt dissection in lacrimal sac surgery and other extraocular surgery. (iv) To hold gauze pieces while packing the socket after enucleation or exenteration operation.



Fig. 26.16 Artery (haemostatic) forceps

### III. Hooks and retractors

**1. Lens expressor (hook)** (Fig. 26.17). It is a flat metal handle with a rounded curve at one end. Tip of the curve is knobbed. The plane of the handle is at right angle to the curvature of the hook. **Uses:** (i) To express the nucleus in extracapsular cataract extraction. (ii) It can also be used as muscle hook if the latter is not available. (iii) Also used along with wire vectis to extract out the dislocated lens. (iv) In the era of ICCE, it was used to apply pressure on the limbus at the 6 O'clock position during the delivery of lens in intracapsular cataract extraction with Smith's (tumbling) and capsule forceps techniques.



Fig. 26.17 Lens expressor (hook)

**2. Muscle (strabismus) hook** (Fig. 26.18). It is similar to the lens expressor in appearance but has a blunt guarding knob at the end to prevent muscle slip page. The plane of the handle is the same as that of the curvature of the hook. **Uses:** (i) It is used to engage the extraocular muscles during surgery for squint, enucleation, and retinal detachment. (ii) In the absence of lens expressor, it may be used in its place.



Fig. 26.18 Muscle (strabismus) hook

**3. Desmarre's retractor** (Fig. 26.19). It is a saddle-shaped instrument folded on itself at one end. It is available in two sizes: small (paediatric) and large (adult). **Use:** It is used to retract the lids during examination of the eyeball in cases of blepharospasm in children, in cases with marked swelling and ecchymosis, removal of corneoscleral sutures, removal of corneal foreign body and for double eversion of upper lid to examine the superior fornix. **Advantages.** Allows continuous adjustment of the lids and width of the palpebral aperture.



Fig. 26.19 Desmarre's retractor

**Disadvantages.** It is not self-retaining, so an assistant is needed to hold it.

**4. Cat's paw lacrimal wound retractor** (Fig. 26.20). It is a fork-like instrument with the terminals bent inward. **Use:** It is used to retract the skin during lacrimal sac and lid surgery.



Fig. 26.20 Cat's paw lacrimal wound retractor

**5. Self-retaining lacrimal wound (Muller's) retractor** (Fig. 26.21). It is made up of two limbs with three curved pins on each for engaging the edges of the skin incision. The limbs are kept in a retracted position with the help of a fixing screw. **Use:** It is used to retract the skin during surgery on the lacrimal sac (e.g. DCT or DCR).



Fig. 26.21 Self-retaining lacrimal wound (Muller's) retractor

**6. Iris retractor** (Fig. 26.22). It consists of a handle with a curved blade (which conforms to the pupillary margin) at one end. Its edges and corners are rounded so as not to damage either the iris or the lens capsule. **Use:** To retract the upper edge of pupil in cryoextraction technique of ICCE and also to aspirate the lens matter from behind the iris at 12 O'clock position in ECCE.



Fig. 26.22 Iris retractor



#### IV. Needle holders

1. **Spring action (Barraquer's type) needle holder** (Fig. 26.23). These are available in various sizes with straight or curved tips, in different shapes and may be with or without locking system. The jaws of the needle holder are finely serrated to hold the fine needles firmly. **Use:** Spring type needle holders are used for passing sutures in the conjunctiva, cornea, sclera and extraocular muscles.



Fig. 26.23 Spring action (Barraquer's type) needle holder

2. **Castroviejo's needle holder** (Fig. 26.24). It is a medium-sized spring action needle holder with a S-shaped locking system. **Use:** It is generally used in extraocular surgery, e.g. conjunctival suturing, squint surgery, etc. It can also be used for intraocular surgery.



Fig. 26.24 Castroviejo's needle holder

3. **Arruga's, Steven, Silcock's and kelt needle holder** (Fig. 26.25). These are large needle holders and all are of similar type with slight model differences. The upper shank of these needle holders has a flat and broad plate to accommodate the surgeon's thumb. These are available with and without locking device. **Use:** These are very commonly used in lid surgery and also for passing superior rectus suture.



Fig. 26.25 Arruga's needle holder

#### V. Callipers and rules

1. **Castroviejo calliper** (Fig. 26.26). It is a divider-like instrument, to one arm of which is attached to a graduated scale (in mm). Its other arm can be moved by a screw over the scale. **Use:** It is used to take measurements during squint, ptosis, retinal detachment and pars plana vitrectomy surgery. It is also used to measure corneal diameter and visible horizontal iris diameter.



Fig. 26.26 Castroviejo calliper

2. **Metallic rule:** It is used as a scale for the Castroviejo calliper for exact measurements and to measure the palpebral aperture width.

#### VI. Knives and knife-needles

1. **Von Graefe's knife** (Fig. 26.27). It is a long, narrow, thin and straight blade with a sharp tip and cutting edge on one side. **Uses:** It is not used presently, and is described here only for the historical value of an instrument which has been extensively used in the past (for making an ab-interno corneoscleral incision during cataract surgery and for iridectomy operation, four dot iridectomy operation in patients with iris bombe formation, and for making a puncture in pars plana area during lensectomy and vitrectomy operation).



Fig. 26.27 Von Graefe's knife

2. **Keratomes** (Fig. 26.28). A keratome has a thin diamond-shaped blade with a sharp apex and two cutting edges. Straight as well as curved keratomes are available in various sizes (2.8 mm, 3 mm, 3.5 mm, 5.5 mm). Presently disposable curved keratomes are more commonly used. **Use:** Keratomes are used to make valvular corneal incisions for entry into the anterior chamber for all modern techniques of cataract extraction viz. phacoemulsification, SICS and even conventional ECCE and other intraocular surgeries, e.g. iridectomies and paracentesis.



Fig. 26.28 Keratomes

3. **Paracentesis needle** (Fig. 26.29). It is a small lancet-shaped needle with sharp cutting edges resembling in appearance to a small keratome. It has got a guard to prevent in advertent injury to the deeper structures. **Use:** It is not used presently, previously, it was used for paracentesis and to make very small



corneoscleral incisions. Presently used alternative to the paracentesis needle are 15 degrees side port blade (See Fig. 26.31) and MVR or V lance blade (See Fig. 26.32).



Fig. 26.29 Paracentesis needle

4. **Tooke's knife** (Fig. 26.30). It has a short flat blade with a semicircular blunt dissecting edge, which is bevelled on both the surfaces like a chisel. **Uses:** (i) It can be used to separate the conjunctiva and sub conjunctival tissue from the sclera and limbus when limbal based flap is made for trabeculectomy surgery. (ii) It can also be used to separate partial thickness lamellae of sclera during trabeculectomy. (iii) To separate pterygium head or limbal dermoid from the underlying corneal lamellae. (iv) To separate corneal lamellae in lamellar keratoplasty.

Presently, it is sparingly used and has been replaced by the crescent knife (See Fig. 26.37).



Fig. 26.30 Tooke's knife

5. **15° side port entry blade** (Fig. 26.31). It is a fine straight knife with a sharp pointed tip and cutting edge on one side. **Use:** It is used to make a small valvular clear corneal incision (commonly called as *side port incision*) in phacoemulsification and other intraocular surgeries including pars plana vitrectomy.



Fig. 26.31 15° side port entry blade

6. **MVR or V lance blade** (Fig. 26.32). It is a fine straight but triangular knife similar to 15° side port entry blade but with cutting edges on both sides. **Use:** Its uses are similar to 15° side port entry blade.



Fig. 26.32 MVR or V lance blade

7. **Cystotome or capsulotome** (Fig. 26.33). It is a small needle knife with a bent tip which is sharp on both the edges. Presently, disposable cystotome is prepared by bending the disposable 26 gauge or 30 gauge hypodermic needle. **Use:** It is used for doing anterior capsulotomy or capsulorhexis during extracapsular cataract extraction.



Fig. 26.33 Cystotome or capsulotome

8. **Foreign body spud** (Fig. 26.34). It has a small, stout and flat blade with blunt tip and edges on both sides. **Use:** It is used to remove corneal foreign body.



Fig. 26.34 Foreign body spud

9. **Razor blade fragment with blade holder.** Razor blade fragment holder (Fig. 26.35) is designed to hold the razor blade fragment firmly in its jaws and has a locking device. The razor blade fragments broken to a uniform size and shape have the sharpest possible metal edge with an absolute point. Presently, presterilized razor blade fragments mounted on a disposable plastic handle (Fig. 26.36) are also being preferred. **Use:** It is the most commonly used cutting device for making incisions in cataract, glaucoma, keratoplasty, sclerotomy, pterygium and many other operations.



Fig. 26.35 Razor blade fragment holder



Fig. 26.36 Blade fragment on disposable plastic handle

10. **Crescent knife** (Fig. 26.37). It is blunt-tipped, bevel up knife having cut-splitting action at the tip and at both sides. Its blade is curved (disposable) or can be fixed with metallic handle. **Use:** It is used (i) To make tunnel incision in the sclera and cornea for phacoemulsification, manual small incision cataract surgery (SICS), and sutureless trabeculectomy. (ii) To separate the conjunctiva and subconjunctival tissue from the sclera and limbus when limbal-based flap is made for trabeculectomy surgery. (iii) It can also be used to separate partial thickness lamellae of sclera during trabeculectomy. (iv) To separate pterygium head or limbal dermoid



from the underlying corneal lamellae. (v) To separate corneal lamellae in lamellar keratoplasty.



Fig. 26.37 Crescent knife

11. **Bard-Parker's handle** (Fig. 26.38) named after Charles Russel Bard and Morgan Parker, this handle is available indifferent sizes. Also known as BP handle, it is light and affords a firm grip. Blade of different sizes can be fitted onto a groove at the tip of the handle for making the desired incision.



Fig. 26.38 Bard-Parker's handle

12. **Extension keratome** (Fig. 26.39) similar to sharp keratome, it has two sharp edges, but the tip is blunt and rounded. It is used to extend size of corneal incision, when needed.



Fig. 26.39 Extension keratome

13. **Wright's (needle) knife** (Fig. 26.40) a spear-shaped knife with an eye in middle to thread the silicone and fascia lata sling in ptois surgery.



Fig. 26.40 Wright's (needle) knife

VII. Scissors

1. **Plain straight scissors (ringed)** (Fig. 26.41). It is a fine pointed scissors with straight sharp cutting blades. **Use:** It is used to cut conjunctival sutures, eyelashes, and muscles.



Fig. 26.41 Plain straight scissors (ringed)

2. **Plain curved scissors (ringed)** (Fig. 26.42). It is a fine pointed scissors with curved, sharp cutting blades.

**Use:** It is used to cut and undermine conjunctiva in various operations and to undermine skin during operations on lids and lacrimal sac.



Fig. 26.42 Plain curved scissors (ringed)

3. **Tenotomy scissors or strabismus scissors** (Fig. 26.43). They are plain straight or curved scissors with blunt ends. **Uses:** (i) To cut the extraocular muscles during squint surgery and enucleation operation. (ii) To separate the delicate tissues without damaging the surrounding area in oculoplastic operations and squint surgery.



Fig. 26.43 Tenotomy scissors or strabismus scissors

4. **Corneal scissors or section enlarging scissors** (Fig. 26.44). They are fine curved scissors. Their cutting blades are kept apart by spring action. They are available in various shapes and sizes. The universal corneal scissors can be used for both sides while right and left curved corneal scissors are separated for the two sides. **Uses:** (i) These are used to enlarge corneal or corneoscleral incision for conventional intra capsular and extracapsular cataract extraction techniques (sparingly performed procedures nowadays) of cataract surgery. (ii) To enlarge corneal incision in keratoplasty operation. (iii) To cut the scleral and trabecular tissue in trabeculectomy. (iv) It can also be used for cutting and undermining conjunctiva in various operations.



Fig. 26.44 Corneal scissors or section enlarging scissors: A, Curved; B, Angled



**5. de Wecker's scissors** (Fig. 26.45). They are fine scissors with small blades directed at right angles to the arms. The blades are kept apart, making V-shape, by spring action. **Use:** It is used to perform iridectomy, iridotomy and to cut the prolapsed form vitreous and pupillary membrane.



Fig. 26.45 de Wecker's scissors

**6. Spring scissors (Westcott's)** (Fig. 26.46). They are stout scissors available with straight or curved blades with sharp or blunt tips. The blades are kept apart by spring action. **Use:** They are used as a handy alternative to plain straight and plain curved ringed scissors for cutting and undermining conjunctiva in various operations and to cut sutures.



Fig. 26.46 Spring scissors (Westcott's)

**7. Vannas scissors** (Fig. 26.47). These are very fine delicate scissors with small cutting blades kept apart by spring action. The blades may be straight or curved. **Uses:** (i) These are used for cutting anterior capsule of the lens in extracapsular surgery and for cutting 10-0 nylon sutures. (ii) For cutting inner scleral flap in trabeculectomy. (iii) For doing pupillary sphincterotomy. (iv) For performing iridectomy. (v) For cutting pupillary membrane.



Fig. 26.47 Vannas scissors

**8. Enucleation scissors** (Fig. 26.48). They are large, stout and strong scissors having curved sharp blades with blunt ends. **Use:** They are used to cut the optic nerve during enucleation operation.



Fig. 26.48 Enucleation scissors

## VIII. Clamps

**1. Lid clamp or entropion clamp** (Fig. 26.49). It consists of a D-shaped plate opposed by a U-shape rim, which when tightened with the help of a screw, clamps the tissues. Two clamps are required; one can be used

for right upper and left lower lid and the second for right lower and left upper lid. While applying the lid clamp, the plate is kept towards the conjunctival side, the rim on the skin side, and the handle is always situated on the temporal side.

**Advantage over lid spatula:** It is a self-retaining instrument and does not need an assistant to hold.

**Disadvantages:** (i) Operative field is less. (ii) Pressure necrosis can occur if fitted tightly. **Uses:** It is used in lid surgery, e.g. entropion, and ectropion corrections. It protects the eyeball, supports the lid tissue and provides haemostasis during surgery.



Fig. 26.49 Lid clamp or entropion clamp

**2. Chalazion clamp** (Fig. 26.50). It consists of two limbs like a forceps, which can be clamped with the help of a screw. The tip of one limb is flattened in the form of round disc while the tip of the other arm has a small circular ring. Usually, the flat disc is applied on the skin side and ring on the conjunctival side of the chalazion. However, rarely when the chalazion points towards the skin, the ring side is applied to the skin. **Use:** To fix the chalazion and achieve haemostasis during the incision and curettage operation.



Fig. 26.50 Chalazion clamp

**3. Ptosis clamp** (Fig. 26.51). It is like a forceps with J-shaped ends having internal serrations. The clamp has a locking mechanism. **Use:** To hold levator palpebrae superioris muscle during ptosis surgery.



Fig. 26.51 Ptosis clamp

## IX. Additional instruments for cataract surgery

**1. Lens spatula** (Fig. 26.52). It is a flat metallic handle with tiny spoon-shaped ends. It is used to apply



counter-pressure at 12 O'clock position during expression of nucleus in extra capsular cataract extraction. In the era of ICCE, it was used in a similar way to extract cataractous lens in Smith's technique.



Fig. 26.52 Lens spatula

**2. Wire vectis** (Fig. 26.53). It is a wire loop attached to a metallic handle. **Use:** It is used to remove subluxated lens and anteriorly dislocated lens in ICCE technique and the nucleus in ECCE technique.



Fig. 26.53 Wire vectis

**3. Irrigating wire vectis** (Fig. 26.54). It is a modified vectis in which the loop is made of a thick hollow wire. The anterior end of the loop has three 0.3 mm openings. The posterior end of the loop is continuous with a hollow handle. The posterior end of the hollow handle has a hub similar to that of a hypodermic needle to which is attached a syringe or infusion set. The size of the loop of the vectis is variable. In commonly used wire vectis, the loop is 4 mm in width and about 8–9 mm in length. The superior surface of the loop has a slight concavity to accommodate the lens nucleus. **Use:** Irrigating wire vectis is most commonly used to deliver nucleus in the manual small incision cataract surgery (SICS) and in conventional ECCE by hydro expression or visco expression technique.



Fig. 26.54 Irrigating wire vectis

**4. Two-way irrigation and aspiration cannula** (Fig. 26.55). It has two openings, one on tip of cannula for irrigation and one on anterior surface for aspiration of lens matter or other contents. At its posterior end, there is one hub anterior to that of hypodermic needle for attachment to IV line for irrigation. At the other side, there is a cannula with a plastic tubing and another hub for attachment to a syringe or other source of vacuum for aspiration. It is available in various designs, commonly used are Simcoe's classical or reverse cannula. **Uses:** (i) For irrigation and aspiration of the lens matter in extracapsular cataract extraction. (ii) Aspiration of hyphaema.



Fig. 26.55 Two-way irrigation and aspiration cannula

**5. Iris repositor** (Fig. 26.56). It consists of a delicate, flat, malleable, straight or bent blade with blunt edges and tip attached to a handle. **Uses:** (i) To reposit the iris in the anterior chamber in any intraocular surgery. (ii) To break synechiae at the pupillary margin.



Fig. 26.56 Iris repositor

**6. Capsulorhexis forceps**. It is a very fine tipped delicate forceps with small curved tips (Fig. 26.57) to hold the anterior lens capsule during Continuous curvilinear capsulorhexis, while avoiding damage to other intraocular structures.



Fig. 26.57 Capsulorhexis forceps

#### X. Additional instruments for intraocular lens implantation

For IOL implantation, the cataract surgery set should contain the following basic additional instruments:

**1. IOL holding forceps** (Fig. 26.58). It is a spring action forceps with short, blunt and curved blade shaving smooth edges and tips with platform (no teeth or serrations). **Use:** To hold optic of non-foldable PMMA IOL during implantation.



Fig. 26.58 IOL holding forceps

**2. Kelman-McPherson forceps** (Fig. 26.59). These are fine forceps with bent limbs. **Uses:** (i) To hold the superior haptic of IOL during its placement.



- (ii) To tear-off the anterior capsular flap in ECCE.
- (iii) Can be used for suture tying.



Fig. 26.59 Kelman-McPherson forceps

**3. Sinskey hook or IOL dialer** (Fig. 26.60). It is a fine but stout instrument with a bent tip. The tip engages the dialing holes of the IOL. **Uses:** (i) It is used to dial the PMMA non-foldable IOL for proper positioning in the capsular bag or ciliary sulcus. (ii) It can also be used to manipulate the nucleus in phacoemulsification surgery. Nucleus manipulation may be in the form of nucleus rotation in the capsular bag, cracking of the nucleus and feeding of the nuclear fragments into the phaco tip.



Fig. 26.60 Sinskey hook or IOL dialer

**4. Hydrodissection cannula** (Fig. 26.61). It is a single bore 25G, 27G or 30G cannula with a 45° angulation at about 10 to 12 mm from the free end. The tip at the free end can be flattened or bevelled. **Use:** It is used to perform hydro dissection (separation of cortex from the posterior capsule) and hydrodelineation (separation of cortex from the nucleus) in phacoemulsification and manual SICS. This cannula is attached to the syringe carrying irrigating fluid. For hydrodissection its tip is introduced beneath the anterior capsular margin after capsulorhexis and fluid is injected to obtain subcapsular dissection.



Fig. 26.61 Hydrodissection cannula

**5. Chopper** (Fig. 26.62). The chopper is a fine instrument resembling sinskey hook in shape. The inner edge of the bent tip is cutting and may have different angles. **Use:** It is used to split or chop the nucleus into smaller pieces and also for nuclear manipulation in phacoemulsification surgery.



Fig. 26.62 Chopper

**6. Ring capsule polisher or posterior capsule polishing curette** (Fig. 26.63). It consists of a long handle and

a bent slender neck. The tip of the instrument has a tiny circular ring. **Use:** It is used to clear and polish the posterior lens capsule to make it more clear in the extracapsular cataract surgery. It is specially used when a plaque or sticky cortex is adhered to the posterior capsule.



Fig. 26.63 Ring capsule polisher or posterior capsule polishing curette

## XI. Additional instruments for glaucoma surgery

**1. Scleral punch** (Fig. 26.64). It is similar in shape to corneal scissors with spring action mechanism. Its one blade is sharp and thick which presses into the second blade which is a hollow rectangular frame. **Use:** To perform punch sclerectomy during glaucoma surgery.

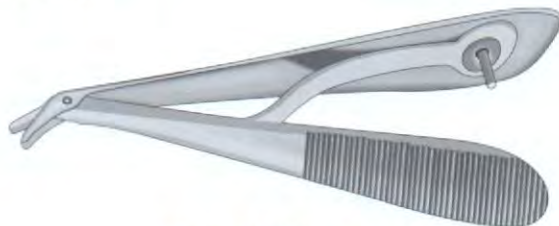


Fig. 26.64 Scleral punch

**2. Kelley's punch** (Fig. 26.65). It consists of two blades. The inner larger blade is a stout thin rod with a cup like depression having sharp margins and facing backward. The outer smaller blade is a hollow tube which slides with a spring mechanism around the inner blade. While in use during trabeculectomy operation, its punch cuts the posterior lip of the anterior chamber entry site (See page 262, Fig. 10.25). **Use:** It is used to punch out trabecular tissue in conventional as well as sutureless trabeculectomy operation.



Fig. 26.65 Kelley's punch

## XII. Additional instruments for lid surgery

**1. Chalazion scoop** (Fig. 26.66). It has a small cup with sharp margins attached to a narrow handle. **Use:** To scoop out contents of the chalazion during incision and curettage.



Fig. 26.66 Chalazion scoop

**2. Lid spatula** (Fig. 26.67). It is a simple metal plate having slightly convex surfaces at either end. **Use:**



To protect the globe and support the lid during entropion, ectropion, ptosis and other lid surgeries.



Fig. 26.67 Lid spatula

### XIII. Additional instruments for lacrimal sac and orbital surgery

1. **Punctum dilator (Nettleship's)** (Fig. 26.68). It has a cylindrical corrugated metal handle with a conical pointed tip. **Use:** To dilate the punctum and canaliculus during syringing, probing, dacryocystography, DCT and DCR procedures.



Fig. 26.68 Punctum dilator (Nettleship's)

2. **Lacrimal probes (Bowman's)** (Fig. 26.69). These are a set of straight metal wires of varying thickness (size 0–8) with blunt rounded ends and flattened central platform. **Uses:** (i) To probe nasolacrimal duct in congenital blockage. (ii) To identify the lacrimal sac during DCT and DCR operations.



Fig. 26.69 Lacrimal probes (Bowman's)

3. **Lacrimal cannula** (Fig. 26.70). It is a long curved hypodermic needle with blunt tip. **Use:** (i) For syringing the lacrimal passages. (ii) As AC cannula for putting air, trypan blue dye, pilocarpine and balanced salt solution in the anterior chamber during intraocular surgery.



Fig. 26.70 Lacrimal cannula

4. **Bone punch** (Fig. 26.71). It consists of a stout spring handle and two blades attached at right angle. The upper blade has a small hole with a sharp cutting edge. The lower blade has a cup-like depression. **Use:** It is used to enlarge the bony opening during DCR operation by punching the bone from margins of the opening. Carelessness during this step can cause accidental damage to the nasal mucosa and the nasal septum.



Fig. 26.71 Bone punch

5. **Chisel** (Fig. 26.72). It consists of a blade having a sharp-cutting straight edge with one surface bevelled. It has a long and stout handle. **Use:** To cut the bone during DCR and or bitotomy operations.



Fig. 26.72 Chisel

6. **Hammer** (Fig. 26.73). It is a small steel hammer attached to a corrugated handle. **Use:** To hammer the chisel during DCR and orbitotomy operations.



Fig. 26.73 Hammer

7. **Lacrimal sac dissector and curette** (Fig. 26.74). It is a cylindrical instrument, one end of which is a blunt-tipped dissector and the other end is curetted. **Use:** In lacrimal sac surgery.



Fig. 26.74 Lacrimal sac dissector and curette

8. **Bone gouge** (Fig. 26.75). It consists of a stout metallic handle, one end of which is longitudinally scooped. The edges of the scoop are sharp. **Use:** To smoothen the irregularly cut margins of the bone by nibbling small projecting bone and in DCR operation and in orbitotomy operation.



Fig. 26.75 Bone gouge

9. **Freer's periosteum elevator** (Fig. 26.76). This double-ended instrument typically has a rounded handle with two slightly curved, tear-drop tips.

**Uses:** It can be used as a multipurpose tool in many procedures although it is primarily used for blunt



debulking and lifting periosteum from bones in confined areas. It is used in endoscopic septoplasty and DCR. It is also handy in any procedure that involves dissecting soft tissue cartilage or bone.



Fig. 26.76 Freer's periosteum elevator

**10. Bone drill.** (Fig. 26.77) Comprises of a burr head and a power cord connecting it to a motorized rotating unit and a foot pedal to control its functioning.

**Uses are:** To create the ostium in the DCR surgeries especially endonasal DCR, and to create holes in the bones, in cases of orbitotomies for placement of fixation wires.



Fig. 26.77 Bone drill

#### XIV. Additional instruments for enucleation and evisceration

**1. Optic nerve guide (enucleation spoon)** (Fig. 26.78). It is a spoon-shaped instrument with a central cleavage.

**Use:** To engage the optic nerve during enucleation.



Fig. 26.78 Optic nerve guide (enucleation spoon)

**2. Evisceration spatula** (Fig. 26.79). It consists of a small but stout rectangular blade with slightly convex surface and blunt edges attached to a handle. **Use:** To separate out the uveal tissue from the sclera during evisceration operation.



Fig. 26.79 Evisceration spatula

**3. Evisceration curette** (Fig. 26.80). It consists of an oval or rounded shallow cup with blunt margins attached to a stout handle. **Use:** To curette out the intraocular contents during evisceration operation.



Fig. 26.80 Evisceration curette

#### ■ OPTHALMIC SURGICAL DEVICES

During practical examination, the students may be asked to identify, describe and tell uses of the common ophthalmic surgical devices used during various ocular surgeries. These are described briefly:

##### Surgical devices used in cataract surgery

**1. Ocular viscoelastic devices (OVDs)**, used in intraocular surgery, are available in vials and prefilled syringes (PFs). OVDs in PFs are packed in box (Fig. 26.81), and are preferred over vial packs and so more commonly used. Various types of OVDs are described on page 477.

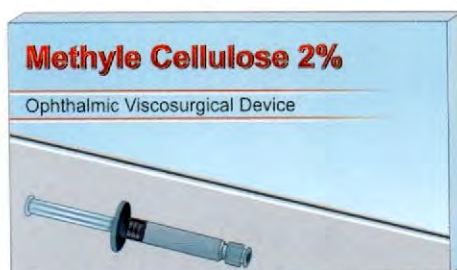


Fig. 26.81 Ocular viscoelastic devices (OVDs)

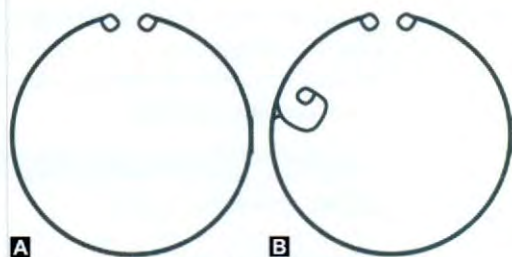
**2. Intraocular lenses (IOLs)** used in cataract surgery (Fig. 26.82) are described on page 213



Fig. 26.82 Intraocular lenses (IOLs)

**3. Capsular Tension Rings (CTRs)**, made of PMMA, are used in patients with zonular dialysis and subluxated lenses. These work on the principle of traction, expansion and stabilization of the capsular bag. Commonly used are Morcher CTRs (Fig. 26.83A) and Cionni CTRs (Fig. 26.83B)





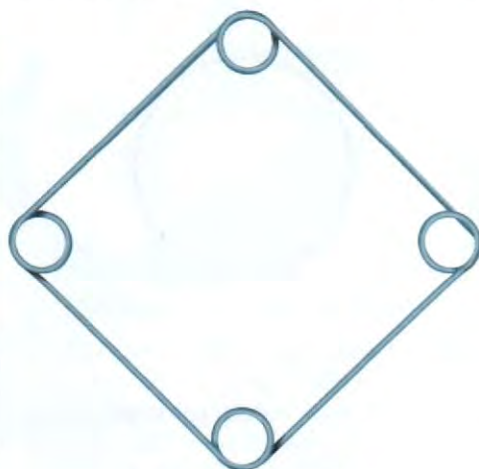
**Fig. 26.83** Capsular tension rings (CTRs):  
A, Morcher's; B, Cionni's

4. **Iris hooks.** (Fig. 26.84), made of nylon, are used to mechanically dilate the pharmacologically non-dilating pupils during cataract surgery. Iris hooks are applied by, making four equidistant paracentesis sites in the peripheral cornea, and are anchored with the help of the external silicone sleeves.



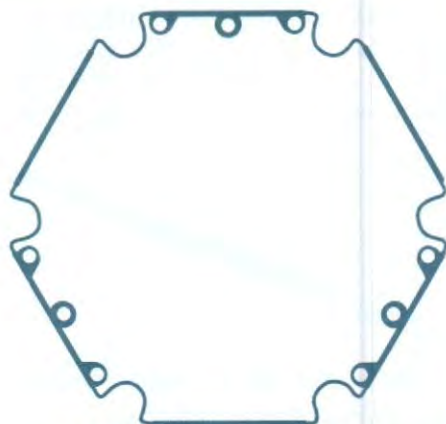
**Fig. 26.84** Iris hooks

5. **Malyugin ring.** (Fig. 26.85) This is a rectangular device made of 5-0 polypropylene which is used to expand the narrow pupil in phacoemulsification.



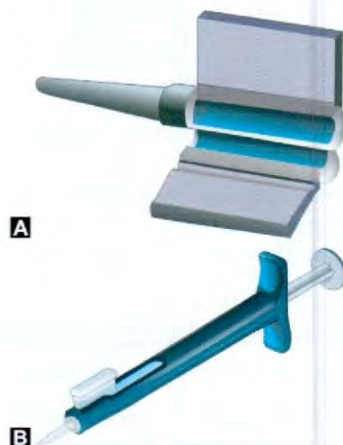
**Fig. 26.85** Malyugin ring

6. **B-Hex pupil expander.** (Fig. 26.86) It is a 6.5 mm flexible hexagonal at sides. It is used to expand the narrow pupil during phacoemulsification surgery.



**Fig. 26.86** B-Hex pupil expander

7. **Butterfly cartridge and intraocular lens injector.** The commonly used foldable IOL injector comprises a butterfly shaped cartridge (Fig. 26.87A) and an injector hand piece (Fig. 26.87B). The cartridge comprises a loading chamber adapted to hold a foldable intraocular lens, an injection chamber, and a compression chamber. The injector hand piece is connected with the cartridge loaded with IOL. The tip of injection chamber is introduced in the anterior chamber of eye through the corneal incision and the piston of hand piece is pushed which releases the IOL through the aperture of the injection chamber into the eye.



**Fig. 26.87** A, Butterfly cartridge; B, Intraocular lens injector hand piece

## OPHTHALMIC OPERATION THEATRE

### OPERATION THEATRE LAYOUT

NPCB has laid down certain specific guidelines for layout of an ophthalmic operation theatre (OT) to reduce the occurrence of postoperative endophthalmitis. The main features include:



*Separate ophthalmic theatre complex* for ophthalmic procedures should be there in a multispeciality hospital.

*Operation Theatre (OT) complex to be arranged in four levels* as below:

- *Level I:* changing room—shoes plus clothes plus record keeping.
- *Level II:* OT clothes plus caps and masks to be worn both by the patients and the staff plus scrub room.
- *Level III* should be fumigated areas where surgeries can be performed.
- *Level IV* should be for disposal plus instruments maintenance.
- *Laminar air flow* from centre of the OT complex towards outer areas to avoid entry of the air-borne pathogens.
- *Air entry from air conditioners* to be cleaned once a month and filtered source.
- *Separate set of instruments* to be used in each patient and proper autoclaving to be done after every use.

## PREPARATION OF OPERATION THEATRE

- Mopping of floor with disinfectant.
- Cleaning of all operating surfaces and trolleys with carbolic acid 10% solution followed by distilled water every day.
- All linen to be washed, dried and autoclaved.

## STERILIZATION, DISINFECTION AND FUMIGATION

### ■ STERILIZATION AND DISINFECTION

**Sterilization** is a process which kills or removes all micro-organisms including bacterial spores from an article, surface or medium (inanimate objects). It must be differentiated from **disinfection** which destroys pathogenic micro-organisms but does not kill or remove spores.

Sterilization can be accomplished by *physical agents* (viz. sunlight, heat, filtration and radiation) and *chemical agents* (such as alcohols, aldehydes, halogens, phenol, surface acting agents and gases).

### Methods of sterilisation

#### A. Heat sterilization

Both dry and moist heat can be used.

#### Dry heat sterilization methods

**1. Flaming** refers to direct exposure of the instrument to flame of a burner/spirit lamp. It eliminates most of microbes from the of instrument. It can be used to sterilize points of forceps, hypodermic needles, tips

of AC cannula and scraping spatulas. The instrument is held in a bunsen flame till it becomes red hot.

**2. Incineration.** It is used to destroy soiled dressings, beddings and pathological materials.

**3. Hot air oven.** It is the most commonly used method of sterilization by dry heat. It kills bacteria, spores and viruses. This method is employed to sterilize instruments like forceps, scissors, scalpels, glass syringes, glassware, etc. The article must be double-wrapped and kept at 150°C for 1 hour or 180°C for 20 minutes.

#### Moist heat sterilization methods

**1. Boiling.** It kills bacteria and viruses. Heavier metallic ophthalmic instruments, e.g. Bard-Parker handles, lid guards, etc. can be sterilized by boiling in water for 30 minutes. This method, however, blunts the cutting instruments.

**2. Steaming.** It kills most bacteria and viruses, but not spores. The instruments are placed on a shelf above the level of water and steamed for about 30 minutes. Most of the metallic instruments, e.g. scissors and knives can be sterilized by this method.

**3. Steam with formaldehyde.** Steam has been used traditionally for its microbicidal activity. Latest evolution in this method involves using formaldehyde vapours along with steam as it helps in killing spores also.

**4. Autoclaving (steam under pressure).** It is the most widely used method for sterilization. It is based on the principle that at boiling point of water, the vapour pressure equates the atmospheric pressure. So, if the pressure is increased, boiling point tends to rise, which increases the penetrating power of the steam.

Autoclaving at 134°C at 34 psi preserve for 3 minutes or 121°C under 15 lb/in<sup>2</sup> pressure for 20 min. or at 116°C under 10 lb/in<sup>2</sup> pressure for 40 min. kills bacteria, spores and viruses. This method is suitable for sterilizing various instruments, linen, glasswares, rubber goods, gowns, towels, gloves dressings and eye drops.

In autoclaving, sterilization occurs due to the latent heat which is given out when steam condenses to water. Therefore, to sterilize effectively the steam must come into direct contact with the surface to be sterilized.

Autoclave is a machine available in varying sizes and types and uses steam and high pressure to kill microbe and spores. Time needed for sterilization depends on the temperature and pressure achieved by the machine. Table top autoclaves are compact machines used to autoclave instruments in short time.



### B. Chemical sterilization

Chemical sterilization agents include:

#### Alkylating agents

- Formaldehyde
- Glutaraldehyde
- Ethylene oxide

#### Oxidizing agents

- Peracetic acid
- Hydrogen peroxide
- Ozone
- Chlorine dioxide.

**1. Savlon.** It comprises of cetavlon or cetrimide and chlorhexidine. Cetavlon is a surface active agent and chlorhexidine is a phenol. It is active against most Gram-positive organisms. It is used for cleaning/preparation of skin. Scissors, catheters, knives, etc. may also be sterilized with it.

**2. Spirit (95% alcohol).** It kills bacteria and spores, but not viruses. It is mostly used with savlon.

**3. Methylated spirit.** It is 70% isopropyl alcohol. Schiotz tonometer can be sterilized by it.

#### 4. Formaldehyde

- i. **Formalin chamber.** About 10% solution of formalin in has a marked bactericidal, sporicidal and some viricidal activity. It is suitable for cryoextractor probes and ophthalmoscopy lenses and heat sensitive instruments.
- ii. **Formaldehyde gas.** It may be used for fumigating wards, sick rooms and laboratories. But this gas is irritant and toxic when inhaled.

**5. Glutaraldehyde (2%).** It is available as 'Cidex' solution. It has a special activity against tubercle bacilli, fungi and viruses. It is mostly used for sterilising endoscopes because it has no damaging effect on the lenses. It can be safely used for catheters, face-masks, anaesthetic tubes and metal instruments. However, it is not suitable for silicone tubing. It is specially used to sterilise sharp instruments, as it does not affect the sharpness. In three hours, the instruments are free of pathogens and spores. Instruments should be thoroughly washed with sterile distilled water before use.

**6. Hydrogen peroxide.** About 3% solution of  $H_2O_2$  is used for sterilisation of applanation tonometers, prisms and ophthalmoscopy lenses. It is especially active against AIDS and herpes viruses.

**7. Ethylene oxide gas:** Ethylene oxide (ETO) is a highly inflammable gas and is usually mixed with an inert gas like nitrogen or carbon dioxide. It denatures the protein molecules by alkylation in which hydrogen atom is replaced by a hydroxyethyl radical with in the protein molecule. When a sufficient number of proteins within molecules of micro-organisms

are alkylated, death ensues. The process kills all micro-organisms including tubercular bacilli, other bacteria, spores and viruses.

**Uses:** ETO sterilization is a low temperature sterilization method. It is used to sterilize medical and pharmaceutical products that cannot support conventional high temperature steam sterilization. Goniotomy lenses, indirect ophthalmoscopy lenses, OCR tubings, vitrectomy cutters, lens probes, diathermy leads, most disposable items and cryoprobes can be sterilized with it.

**Procedure.** The articles to be sterilized are put in the ETO chamber which is then heated up to 40–60°C. Steam is introduced to rehumidify the load. (Moisture enhances diffusion of ETO). The ETO gas (400–1000 mg/l space) is then introduced from a cylinder. The gas is removed and the chamber and its contents are flushed with filtered air. Sterilization time may vary from 1 to 12 hours depending upon the absorbency of the load, temperature and air exchange rate.

**8. Acetone.** Use of acetone is a quick and cheap method of sterilising instruments. Instruments should be kept in acetone for 5 minutes and then thoroughly washed with sterile water before use.

### C. Plasma sterilization:

Plasma is the 4th state of matter and usually consists of reactive cloud of ions, electrons, free radical and other neutral species. The sterrad process is a plasma system that uses hydrogen peroxide as the source of active species. To ensure adequacy of this method,  $H_2O_2$  must diffuse to all parts of the load. Packaging material and soiling may decrease efficiency of this system.

### D. Radiation sterilization

**1. Ionising radiations:** These include X-rays, gamma-rays, cosmic rays. They are highly lethal to DNA and thus kill all types of micro-organisms. They can penetrate solids and liquids without raising the temperature appreciably (cold sterilisation). They are used for sterilising plastic syringes, swabs, catheters, tubings, etc.

**2. Non-ionising radiation:** They act as a form of hot air sterilization since they are absorbed as heat. They include the infrared rays which is used for rapid mass sterilisation of disposable syringes.

### ■ DISINFECTION OF OPERATION THEATRE

**1. Fumigation** refers to disinfection of the operating room by exposure to the fumes of a vaporised disinfectant.



**Formaldehyde** is an effective agent which has been commonly used to sterilise the operating room. For optimum disinfection, formaldehyde fumigation is recommended fortnightly as a routine and at the end of an operating session of a grossly infected case.

**Method of fumigation** involves following steps:

- **Cleaning and scrubbing** of the operating room is done thoroughly.
- **Carbolisation** of the floor is carried out after the cleaning.
- **Sealing** of all the apertures in the room is done with adhesive tape prior to fumigation leaving only one door open.
- **Generation of formaldehyde** is done by addition of 150 gm of potassium permanganate ( $\text{KMnO}_4$ ) to 280 mL of formalin in a steel bucket for every 1000 cubic feet of room volume. Alternatively, 500 mL of 40% formaldehyde in one liter of water is put into an electric boiler or in a large bowl placed on a electric hot plate with safety cut-out when dry on boiling. Alternatively, formaldehyde 40% diluted in water is spilled over the floor of the operating room.
- **Closure and sealing of the door** is done quickly. After formaldehyde vapour is generated the room should be left closed for 24 to 48 hours.
- **Neutralisation of formaldehyde** is then carried out with ammonium solution left in the operating room for a few hours. One liter of ammonium solution plus one liter of water is required to neutralize every liter of 40% formaldehyde used.
- **Replacement of left out formalin with air.** Subsequently, the room doors may be opened for a short period or the air-conditioning be switched on to replace the formalin with air.

**Note.** Presently formalization is not preferred because of its side effects.

**2. Ultraviolet light sterilization.** Use of UV diodes containing apparatus overnight in the operating room can help in sterilization of OT.

**3. Bacillocid resent a combination of multiple disinfectants,** is formaldehyde free and thus does not irritate the mucosal surfaces of the operating staff the next day.

**4. Bacilloid** useful for instant disinfection, is used as a spray. However, it does not act on the spores.

## RELATED QUESTIONS

### ■ ANAESTHESIA FOR OCULAR SURGERY

**How topical ocular anaesthesia is achieved? What are its indications?**

Topical ocular anaesthesia is achieved by instillation of 2 to 4% xylocaine or 1% amethocaine, 4 times every 4 minute.

### Indications

- For minor procedures like removal of corneal foreign body, removal of stitches, etc.
- Along with retrobulbar block.
- Recently, phacoemulsification operation is being done under topical anaesthesia.

### What are various techniques of facial block anaesthesia?

- **Van Lint's block:** Terminal branches of facial nerve are blocked by injecting 2.5 mL of anaesthetic solution in deeper tissues just above the eyebrows and just below the inferior orbital margin.
- **O'Brien's block:** Facial nerve is blocked at the neck of mandible.
- **Nadbath block:** Facial nerve is blocked near the stylomastoid foramen.
- **Atkinson's block:** Only superior branches of facial nerve are blocked by an injection at the inferior margin of zygomatic bone.

### Where injection is made for retrobulbar block?

For a retrobulbar block, 2 mL of 2% xylocaine is injected into the muscle cone.

### What are the effects of retrobulbar block?

- Ciliary nerve and ciliary ganglion block
- Ocular akinesia
- Ocular anaesthesia and analgesia
- Dilatation of the pupil
- Ocular hypotony.

### Enumerate complications of retrobulbar block.

- Retrobulbar haemorrhage
- Globe perforation
- Optic nerve injury
- Extraocular muscle palsies.

### What is the technique of peribulbar block?

An anaesthetic solution, 6 to 9 mL (a mixture of 2% xylocaine and 0.5–0.75% bupivacaine) in a ratio of 2:1 with hyaluronidase 5 IU/mL with or without adrenaline 1:1 lac is injected into the peripheral orbital space.

### What are the advantages of peribulbar block?

- No separate facial block is required.
- Complications associated with retrobulbar block are almost eliminated.

## ■ OPHTHALMIC INSTRUMENTS AND EYE OPERATIONS

Usually, a student is asked to describe a particular ophthalmic instrument in reference to following aspects:

- Identification of the instrument
- Methods of its sterilization
- Uses of the instrument



- Advantages or disadvantages of the use of any particular instrument.

### OPERATIONS FOR CATARACT EXTRACTION

#### Name the instruments required for the basic intraocular surgery set.

The instruments required include superior rectus holding forceps, Stevens' needle holder, artery forceps, plane forceps, curved-ringed scissors, heat cautery or wet-field cautery, razor-blade fragment holder, corneoscleral suturing forceps, corneoscleral section enlarging scissors, iris forceps, deWecker's iridectomy scissors, lens spatula, lens hook, anterior chamber cannula, iris repositor, spring action fine needle holder.

These instruments form the basic intraocular surgery set.

#### Name the additional instruments required for extracapsular cataract extraction.

Cystitome, Vannas' scissors, McPherson's forceps, two-way irrigation-aspiration cannula; posterior capsule polisher.

#### Name (pick up) the additional instruments required for an intraocular lens implantation.

Anterior chamber cannula for injecting viscoelastic substance, intraocular lens (implant) holding forceps, foldable IOL injector and intraocular lens dialer.

#### What are the advantages of ECCE over ICCE?

1. Extracapsular cataract extraction is a universal operation and can be performed at all ages, except when zonules are not intact. While ICCE cannot be performed below 40 years of age.
2. Posterior chamber IOL can be implanted after ECCE, while it cannot be implanted after ICCE.
3. Postoperative vitreous-related problems (such as herniation in anterior chamber, pupillary block and vitreous touch syndrome) associated with ICCE are not seen after ECCE.
4. Incidence of postoperative complications such as endophthalmitis, cystoid macular oedema and retinal detachment is much less after ECCE as compared to that after ICCE.

#### What are the advantages of ICCE over ECCE?

1. The technique of ICCE as compared to ECCE is simple, cheap, easy and does not need sophisticated microinstruments.
2. Postoperative opacification of posterior capsule is seen in a significant number of cases after ECCE. No such problem is there after ICCE.

3. ICCE is less time consuming and hence more useful than ECCE for mass scale operations in eye-camps.

#### Name the different techniques of extracapsular cataract extraction.

1. Discission or needling (obsolete)
2. Linear extraction or curette evacuation (obsolete)
3. Modern extracapsular cataract extraction (ECCE)
4. Small incision cataract surgery (SICS)
5. Lensectomy
6. Phacoemulsification.

#### What are the main steps of lens removal in ECCE operation?

1. Anterior capsulotomy
2. Removal of nucleus
3. Aspiration of the cortical lens matter.

#### Name the techniques of anterior capsulotomy.

1. Can-opener technique
2. Linear capsulotomy (envelope technique)
3. Continuous circular capsulorhexis (CCC).

#### What is phacoemulsification?

Phacoemulsification is a technique of extracapsular cataract extraction in which after the removal of anterior capsule (by capsulorhexis), the lens nucleus is emulsified and aspirated with the probe of a phacoemulsification machine.

#### What are the advantages of phacoemulsification over the conventional ECCE operation?

1. Corneoscleral incision required is very small (3 mm). Therefore, sutureless surgery is possible with a self-sealing scleral tunnel incision.
2. Early visual rehabilitation of the patient.
3. Very less astigmatism.

#### What is femtosecond laser-assisted cataract surgery (FLACS)?

FLACS is the most recent technique of micro-incision cataract surgery (MICS) in which femtosecond laser is used to perform certain steps which include capsulotomy, primary and secondary clear corneal incisions, astigmatic arcuate incisions and nuclear fragmentation.

#### What are advantages of FLACS over conventional microphacoemulsification?

- *Capsulotomy* is precise, accurate and predictable. Especially useful in mature and hypermature cataracts and when premium IOLs are planned.
- *Corneal incisions* offer the advantages of decreased leakage, added stability, accuracy, and reproducibility.



- **Nuclear fragmentation** with FSL, decreases the use of ultrasound energy and instrumentation and manipulation. This improves safety and decreases complications.

#### What are the main types of intraocular lenses (IOL)?

The major classes of IOL based on the method of fixation in the eye are as follows:

1. Anterior chamber IOL, e.g. 'Kelman multiplex (IOL)'
2. Iris supported lenses, e.g. Singh-Worst's iris claw lens.
3. Posterior chamber IOL.

#### When and who performed the first successful intraocular implant operation?

Harold Ridley, a British ophthalmologist, performed the first IOL implantation on November 29, 1949.

#### Name a few preoperative complications of cataract operation.

1. Injury to cornea (Descemet's detachment)
2. Accidental rupture of the lens capsule
3. Vitreous loss
4. Expulsive choroidal haemorrhage.

#### Name some early postoperative complications of cataract extraction.

1. Hyphaema
2. Iris prolapse
3. Striate keratopathy
4. Flat (shallow) anterior chamber
5. Bacterial endophthalmitis.

#### What are delayed complications of cataract extraction?

1. Cystoid macular oedema (CME)
2. Retinal detachment (RD)
3. Epithelial in growth
4. After-cataract.

#### What are the types of after-cataract?

1. Thin membranous after-cataract (thickened posterior capsule).
2. Dense membranous after-cataract
3. Soemmerring's ring after-cataract
4. Elschnig's pearls.

#### Name the IOL-related complications.

1. Malpositions of the IOL, e.g. inferior subluxation (Sunset syndrome), superior subluxation (Sunrise syndrome), dislocation of IOL in the vitreous cavity (lost lens syndrome).
2. Toxic lens syndrome (IOL-induced iritis).

#### What are the advantages of an IOL implantation over spectacle correction of aphakia?

1. No magnification of the object.
2. No problem of anisometropia in unioocular aphakia.
3. Elimination of aberrations and prismatic effect of thick glasses.
4. Wider and better field of vision.
5. Cosmetically more acceptable.

#### What is postoperative management of cataract operation?

1. The patient is asked to lie quietly upon his/her back for about one hour and advised to take nil orally.
2. For mild-to-moderate postoperative pain, injection diclofenac sodium (Voveran) may be given intramuscularly.
3. In the morning after about 24 hours of operation, bandage is removed and the eye is inspected thoroughly for any postoperative complication. Under normal circumstances, eye is opened with the use of one drop of 1% cyclopentolate, one drop of antibiotic and steroid drops and tinted glasses are advised.
4. Antibiotic steroid eye drops are continued for four times, three times, two times and then once a day for 2 weeks each.
5. Final spectacles are prescribed after about 8 weeks of operation.

#### What do you understand by primary and secondary IOL implantation?

Primary IOL implantation refers to the use of IOL during surgery for cataract, while secondary IOL is implanted to correct aphakia in a previously operated eye.

#### How will you calculate the power of posterior chamber IOL to be implanted?

The power of the IOL to be implanted can be calculated using keratometry and A-scan ultrasound. SRK formula commonly employed to calculate IOL power is as follows:

$P = A - 2.5L - 0.9K$ ; where P = IOL power in dioptres, A = specific constant of the IOL, L = axial length of the eyeball in mm and K = average keratometric reading.

#### IRIDECTOMY OPERATION

##### What is iridectomy and what are its types?

Iridectomy is an abscission of a part of the iris. It is of the following types:

- Peripheral iridectomy
- Key-hole iridectomy
- Broad or sector iridectomy.



**What are the indications of iridectomy operation?**

1. Abscission of the prolapsed iris
2. For optical purposes (optical iridectomy)
3. As a part of glaucoma operation
4. For removal of foreign body, cyst or tumour of the iris.

**What is iridotomy and how is it performed?**

Iridotomy means just incising a part of the iris. It can be performed by two methods:

- Surgical iridotomy
- Laser iridotomy.

**What are indications of iridotomy operation?**

1. Laser iridotomy for primary narrow-angle glaucoma
2. Four-dot iridotomy for iris bombe.

**SURGICAL PROCEDURES FOR GLAUCOMA****Name the various surgical procedures for glaucoma.**

1. Peripheral iridectomy
2. Goniectomy
3. Trabeculotomy
4. Filtration operations
5. Seton operation (glaucoma valve operation)
6. Cycloablative procedures.

**Peripheral iridectomy operation is performed for which type of glaucoma?**

- Primary angle closure suspect (PACS) with positive provocative test.
- PAC suspect in fellow eye of patient with PAC glaucoma in other eye.
- Primary angle closure (manifest).
- Primary angle closure glaucoma.

**What are filtration operations for glaucoma?**

In filtration operations, passage is made for the drainage of aqueous humour into the subconjunctival space. Trabeculectomy is presently the most frequently performed filtration surgery. Other filtration operations which are not performed now included: Elliot's sclerocorneal trephining, punch sclerectomy, iridencleisis, Scheie's thermal sclerostomy and cyclodialysis.

**What are the indications of trabeculectomy operation?**

1. Primary angle-closure glaucoma with peripheral anterior synechiae involving more than half of the angle.
2. Primary open-angle glaucoma.
3. Congenital and development glaucoma where trabeculotomy and goniectomy fail.
4. Selective cases of secondary open angle glaucoma and secondary narrow-angle glaucoma.

**What are the advantages of trabeculectomy over other filtration operations?**

1. Incidence of postoperative shallow or flat anterior chamber is very less.
2. Incidence of postoperative hypotony is very low.
3. Chances of postoperative infection through the filtration bleb are low.
4. Quality of filtration bleb formed is good.

**What is Seton operation?**

In this operation, a valvular synthetic tube is implanted which drains the aqueous humour from the anterior chamber into the subconjunctival space.

It is performed for neovascular glaucoma and intractable cases of primary and other secondary glaucomas where medical treatment and conventional filtration surgery fail.

**What are cycloablative procedures?**

In these procedures, ciliary epithelium is destroyed to control the intraocular pressure. These procedures are used for absolute glaucoma. Commonly employed cycloablative procedures include: cyclocryopexy, cyclophotocoagulation and cyclodiathermy.

**Cyclodialysis operation is useful in which type of glaucoma?**

- Glaucoma in aphakes.

**■ ENUCLEATION AND EVISCERATION OPERATIONS****What is enucleation operation?**

It is complete excision of the eyeball.

**Enumerate indications of enucleation.****Absolute indications are:**

- Retinoblastoma
- Malignant melanoma.

**Relative indications are:**

- Painful blind eye
- Mutilating ocular injury
- Phthisis bulbi
- Anterior staphyloma.

*Indication for eye donation.* Removal of eyes from the cadaver is presently the most common indication for enucleation.

**What precautions should be taken while performing enucleation in a patient with retinoblastoma?**

During enucleation, the longest possible piece of optic nerve should be excised.

**What is evisceration operation?**

It is removal of the contents of the eyeball leaving behind the sclera. Frill evisceration is preferred over simple evisceration. In this, only about 3 mm frill of the sclera is left around the optic nerve.



**What are the indications of evisceration?**

- Panophthalmitis
- Expulsive choroidal haemorrhage
- Bleeding anterior staphyloma.

**How can the cosmetic appearance be improved after enucleation or evisceration operation?**

For best results, an orbital implant should be implanted at the time of surgery and an artificial eye of plastic should be worn after about 2 weeks of surgery. A delay in the use of artificial eye may lead to a contracted socket.

**OPERATIONS ON EYELIDS**

For important questions related to eyelid operations See pages 573–577.

**LACRIMAL APPARATUS OPERATIONS**

Questions related to operations on the lacrimal apparatus are described on pages 577–579.

**■ LASERS AND CRYOTHERAPY IN OPHTHALMOLOGY****What are the properties of laser light?**

- Monochromaticity
- Coherence
- Collimation.

**Name the different types of lasers and their mechanism of action.**

| Type of laser     | Mechanism of action |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| Argon             | Photocoagulation    |
| Krypton           | Photocoagulation    |
| Diode             | Photocoagulation    |
| Frequency doubled |                     |
| Nd-YAG            | Photocoagulation    |
| Nd-YAG            | Photodisruption     |
| Excimer           | Photoablation       |

**Enumerate uses of argon/diode laser.****In glaucoma:**

1. Laser trabeculoplasty for primary open-angle glaucoma.
2. Laser goniotomy for developmental glaucoma.
3. Laser iridotomy for narrow-angle glaucoma.
4. Cyclophotocoagulation for absolute glaucoma.

**In lesions of retina:**

1. Diabetic retinopathy
2. Eales' disease
3. Coats' disease
4. Sick-cell retinopathy
5. Exudative age-related macular degeneration.

**What are the therapeutic uses of Nd-YAG laser?**

1. Capsulotomy for thickened posterior capsule.
2. Membranectomy for pupillary membranes.

**What are therapeutic applications of excimer laser?**

1. LASIK for correction of refractive errors.
2. Photorefractive keratectomy (PRK) for correction of myopia and hypermetropia.
3. Phototherapeutic keratectomy (PTK) for corneal diseases such as band-shaped keratopathy.

**Describe the laser treatment for diabetic retinopathy.**

Photocoagulation by frequency doubled Nd-YAG laser (532 nm) is employed as follows:

1. *Panretinal photocoagulation* (PRP) is indicated in severe cases of preproliferative and proliferative diabetic retinopathy.
2. *Focal laser burns* are applied in the centre of the hard exudate's ring in focal exudative maculopathy.
3. *Grid pattern laser burns* are applied in diffuse exudative maculopathy.

**What is femtosecond laser? Enumerate its applications.**

A femtosecond laser uses an infrared beam of light to precisely separate the tissues through a process called photo-disruption by generating pulses as short as one-quadrillionth of a second ( $10^{-15}$  = femtosecond). It has a wavelength of 1053 nm and is based upon the technology whereby focused laser pulses divide material at the molecular level without transfer of heat or impact to the surrounding tissue.

**Uses of femtosecond laser include:**

- Creation of a corneal flap for LASIK
- Creation of corneal tunnels for implanting intracorneal ring implants
- Arcuate incisions to correct astigmatism
- Corneal keratoplasty incisions
- Femtosecond laser assisted cataract surgery (FLACS).

**What do you mean by cryopexy?**

Cryopexy means to produce tissue injury by application of extremely low temperature ( $-100^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}$ ). This is achieved by a cryoprobe from a cryo-unit.

**On what principle is the working of a cryoprobe based?**

Working of a cryoprobe is based on the Joule Thompson principle of cooling.

**Which gas is used in a cryo-machine?**

The cryo-unit uses freon, nitrous oxide or carbon dioxide gas as a cooling agent.



**Enumerate the applications of cryo in ophthalmology.**

1. *Lids*: (i) cryolysis for trichiasis, (ii) cryotherapy for warts and molluscum contagiosum, (iii) cryotherapy for basal cell carcinoma and haemangioma.
2. *Conjunctiva*: Cryotherapy for hypertrophied papillae of vernal catarrh.
3. *Lens*: Cryoextraction of the cataractous lens by ICCE technique was done in olden days (not done nowadays).
4. *Ciliary body*: Cyclocryopexy for absolute glaucoma and neovascular glaucoma.
5. *Retina*: (i) Cryopexy is widely used for sealing retinal breaks in retinal detachment, (ii) Prophylactic cryopexy to prevent retinal detachment in certain prone cases, (iii) Anterior retinal cryopexy (ARC) for neovascularization and, (iv) Cryotreatment of retinoblastoma.



# Index

Page numbers followed by *f* refer to figure and *t* refer to table.

## A

- Ablepharon 379
- Abscess
  - parotid 427
  - subperiosteal 426, 427
  - temporal 427
- Absolute glaucoma, management of 254
- Acanthamoeba
  - castellani 116
  - keratitis 116, 117*f*
  - pseudodendrites 117*f*
- Accessory lacrimal glands 60, 379, 403
- Accommodation 45, 604
  - amplitude of 47, 604
  - anomalies of 47
  - error of 34
  - mechanism of 46
  - paralysis of 48
  - range of 47, 604
- Acetaminophen 474
- Acetazolamide 243, 458, 471, 473
  - systemic 298
- Acetone 628
- Acetylcysteine 83, 407
- Achromatopsia 342
- Acid burns 457, 586
- Acoustic neuroma 544
- Acquired cataract, causes of 563
- Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome 490
- Actinomyces 176
- Actinomycosis 425
- Acute follicular conjunctivitis, signs of 74*f*
- Acute mucopurulent conjunctivitis, signs of 63*f*
- Acute primary angle-closure 567, 568
  - attack of 569
  - case of 570
- Acycloguanosine 112, 467
- Acyclovir 115, 466, 467
- Adenine arabinoside 112, 467
- Adenocarcinoma
  - pleomorphic 417
  - sebaceous gland 398
- Adenoid cystic carcinoma 417
- Adenoid layer 60
- Adenoma, pleomorphic 416
- Adenoviral conjunctivitis 74
  - clinical types of 74
- Adenoviral keratoconjunctivitis, types of 75
- Adenovirus 74, 88
- Adie's tonic pupil 329
- Adrenergic agonists 469
- Adult nucleus 185
- Afferent fibres 327
- Agraphia 345
- Agricultural accidents 456
- Airborne bacteria 220
- Alacrimia, congenital 579
- Alcaftadine 476
- Alcian blue 524
- Alexia 345
  - causes 345
  - visual illusions 345
- Alkali burns 456
- Alkylating agents 475, 628
- Allergen triggers 80
- Allergic lesions 122
- Alpha receptor stimulators 469, 473
- Alport's syndrome 224, 527
- Alternaria 109
- Amaurosis fugax 343, 514
- Amaurotic cat's eye
  - appearance 315
  - reflex 177
- Amaurotic light reflex 328
- Amblyopia 344, 362
  - amblyogenic factors 356
  - anisometropic 356
    - correction of 192
    - functional 344
  - isoametropic 356
  - meridional 356
  - mild 356
  - moderate 356
  - nutritional 332
  - pathogenesis 356
  - stimulus deprivation 356
  - strabismic 356
  - toxic 332
- Amethocaine 612
- Ametropia 34, 601
  - curvatural 601
  - positional 601
- Ametropic refractive errors, etiological types of 601
- Amikacin 177, 466, 554
- Amino acid 193, 228
  - error of 179
- Aminoglycoside 108, 118, 465
- Aminopyrine 474
- Amiodarone 493
- Amtriptyline 115
- Amniotic membrane transplantation 108, 116, 393
- Amoebicides 494
- Amorphous corneal dystrophy, posterior 134
- Amoxicillin 465
- Amphetamines 494
- Amphotericin 110
  - B 468, 555
- Ampicillin 465
- Amsler grid testing 308
- Amyloid
  - degeneration 127, 267
  - primary conjunctival 91
- Anaemia
  - severe 108, 554
  - treatment of 291
- Anaesthesia
  - dolorosa 115
  - general 614
  - topical 217
    - ocular 629
- Anaesthetic solution 614
- Angiomatosis retinae 319
  - clinical course of 319
- Angiospasm 277
- Angle alpha 601
- Angle gamma 601
- Angle kappa 601
- Angle of anterior chamber, examination of 524
- Angle-closure
  - disease, primary 246
  - glaucoma
    - mechanism of 248*f*
    - primary 246, 253, 261, 472, 567, 568
    - secondary 255, 257
- Angular conjunctivitis, signs of 66*f*
- Anhydrosis 395
- Aniridia 154, 525
  - anterior chamber cleavage syndrome 188
  - congenital 154
- Aniseikonia 45, 603
  - causes of 604
  - types of 46*f*
- Anisocoria 329
  - evaluation of 329, 525
  - pathological 329
  - physiological 329
- Anisometropia 44, 603
  - acquired 44
  - congenital 44
  - developmental 44
- Ankyloblepharon 393, 519, 576
  - causes of 544
  - congenital 380
- Ankylosing spondylitis 173
- Annular posterior synechiae 161, 161*f*
- Anomalies of orbit, developmental 424
- Anomalous trichromatic colour vision 342
- Anoxia 188
- Antazoline 476
- Anterior chamber 212, 233, 254, 447, 451*f*, 524, 548, 551, 585
  - cannula 630
  - depth of 524
  - estimation of 249*f*



- examination of 524  
 formation of 206  
 implantation of 206  
 intraocular lens 524, 567  
   implantation 207f  
 paracentesis 110  
 signs 159  
 Anterior chiasmal syndrome 325  
 Anterior ciliary  
   arteries 154  
   sclerotomy 55  
   veins 5  
 Anterior staphyloma 104, 139f, 550, 558  
   case of 558  
 Anterior uveitis, signs of 159f  
 Anthranilic acid derivatives 474  
 Anti-allergic and vasoconstrictor  
   drug 464, 476  
 Anti-angiogenic factors, deletion of 286  
 Antibiotic 381, 494, 501  
   corticosteroid skin ointment 115  
   drops, topical 458  
   eye drops 217, 381  
   ointment, application of 383  
   therapy 177  
   topical 63, 204, 382  
     concentrated 177  
 Anticholinergic agents 493  
 Antifungal agents 464, 468  
 Antifungal drugs, systemic 110, 171  
 Antifungal eye drops, topical 110  
 Antifungal spectrum, broad 468  
 Antigen antibody reaction 165  
 Anti-glaucoma drugs 178, 243, 464, 469, 473  
 Antiglaucoma drugs, topical 252  
 Antihistamines 476  
   dual action 83  
 Antihistaminic drugs, systemic 80  
 Anti-infective agents 464  
 Anti-inflammatory  
   agents 407, 473  
   oral dose 473t  
   therapy, topical 83  
 Antimalarial drugs 494  
 Antimetabolites 261, 475  
 Antimetropia 45  
 Antimitotic drugs 464, 475  
 Antimongoloid slant 424, 425, 493  
 Antioxidant supplementation 306  
 Antiprostaglandin, topical 305  
 Antirheumatic agents 494  
 Antitubercular therapy 276  
 Anti-vascular endothelial growth  
   factor agents 478  
 Antiviral drugs 464, 466, 555  
   systemic 113  
 Anton syndrome 344  
 Anxiety 217  
 Apazone 474  
 Apert syndrome 100, 424  
 Aphakia 35, 37, 221, 526, 550, 566, 572, 601  
   case of 565  
   correction of 566, 602  
   paediatric 565  
   signs of 566, 567, 602  
   spectacle correction of 567, 631  
   unilateral 51  
 Aphakic eye 566, 602  
 Aphakic malignant glaucoma 258  
 Apollo conjunctivitis 77  
 Aponeurotic ptosis 396  
 Applanation tonometry 479, 531  
   end point of 532f  
   technique of 531f  
 Appositional angle closure 248f  
 Apraclonidine 470, 473  
 Aqueous cells 159  
 Aqueous cyst 95  
 Aqueous flare 160, 160f, 524  
 Aqueous formation  
   control of 228  
   rate of 230  
 Aqueous humour 14, 228, 567  
   amount of 569  
   composition of 228  
   drainage of 229, 230f  
   formation 228  
   functions of 228  
   physiology of 14  
   pockets of 259f  
 Aqueous layer 404, 578  
 Aqueous outflow  
   active pump mechanism 230f  
   facility of 532  
   pump 229  
     system 229  
   system 226, 227f  
 Aqueous production 569  
   normal rate of 569  
   site of 569  
 Aqueous transport, mechanism of 229  
 Aqueous valve mechanism 229  
 Aqueous veins 227, 229  
 Arcuate corneal incisions 212  
 Arcuate fibres, inferior 240  
 Arcuate nerve fibres 240  
 Arcuate scotoma 240, 530  
   double 240, 241f  
 Arcus juvenilis 126  
 Arcus senilis 126, 126f, 558  
 Areolar tissue  
   subcutaneous 378  
   submuscular 378  
 Argon 482  
   laser trabeculoplasty 483  
 Argyll Robertson pupil 329  
 Arlt's line 70  
 Arruga's capsule holding forceps 206  
 Arruga's intracapsular forceps 616, 616f  
 Arruga's needle holder 618f  
 Arterial pulsations, causes of 546  
 Arteriography, radioisotope 423  
 Arteriolar reflex changes 282  
 Arteriolar sclerosis, compensatory 282  
 Arteriolar venous fistula, production of 346  
 Artery 5, 61  
   forceps 617, 617f, 630  
 Arthritis 169, 173  
   juvenile idiopathic 174  
   rheumatoid 120, 124  
 Arthropathy 300  
 Artificial tears, topical 146  
 Aspergillus 109, 110, 468  
   isolates 468  
 Aspheric lenses 50  
 Aspirin 474  
 Asteroid hyalosis 267  
 Asthenopia 43  
 Asthenopic symptoms 516  
 Astigmatic fan 599f  
   test 44, 598  
 Astigmatic keratotomy 54, 55f  
 Astigmatism 34, 42, 603  
   clinical types of 603  
   compound 43  
     and mixed 603  
   curvatural irregular 44  
   mixed 43, 600  
   postoperative 204, 205  
   refractive surgery for 54  
   simple 43  
   surgical correction of 44  
   types of 43f  
 Astrocytoma 318  
 Atherosclerosis-related thrombosis 277  
 Atkinson's block 613, 629  
 Atopic cataract 84  
 Atopic dermatitis 193, 202, 492  
 Atopic keratitis 118  
 Atopic keratoconjunctivitis 61, 83  
 Atrophic bulbi 163, 254, 519  
   stage of 163  
 Atrophic papilloedema 337  
 Atropine 86, 164, 247, 456, 458, 593  
   cycloplegia 595f  
   eye ointment 125  
 Autoimmune collagen disorders 147  
 Autoimmune disease 120  
 Autoimmune disorders 330  
 Autokeratoplasty 141  
 Autologous serum 458  
 Automated perimeters 534, 535  
 Automated perimetry 534, 535  
   over manual perimetry, advantages  
     of 534  
 Autorefractometer 605  
 Autosomal recessive disease 400  
 Avastin 281, 307, 478  
 Axenfeld's anomaly 101, 235  
 Axenfeld-Rieger syndrome 235  
 Axial ametropia 601  
 Axial corneal degenerations 126  
 Axial myopia 233  
   macrocornea 222  
 Azathioprine 165, 475  
 Azelastine 476  
 Azidothymidine 468  
 Azithromycin 72, 74, 165

## B

- Bacillocid 629  
 Bacillol 629  
 Bacitracin eye ointment 79  
 Bacterial blepharitis 380, 381, 381f  
 Bacterial conjunctivitis 61, 62  
   clinical types of 63  
 Bacterial corneal ulcer 102, 105f  
   broadly 104  
   features of 553  
 Bacterial endophthalmitis 176, 220  
   acute onset of 176  
 Bacterial infection 78, 104, 491  
   chronic systemic 168, 169  
   secondary 85  
 Bacterial lipopolysaccharide 156  
 Bacterial ophthalmia neonatorum 79



- Balanced salt solution 269, 477  
plus 477
- Balloon catheter dilation 410, 412
- Bandage 217  
contact lens 120  
soft contact lens 108, 134
- Barbiturates 493
- Bard-Parker's handle 620, 620f
- Barraquer's type needle holder 618f
- Basal cell carcinoma 96, 398, 400, 401f, 440  
lines of 401  
pigmented 400
- Basal cell papilloma 399
- Basal secretion 405
- Bausch and Lomb keratometer 597, 597f
- Bayonetting sign 239
- Beam radiotherapy, external 182, 318
- Beaten-metal appearance 134
- Behcet's disease 167, 173, 529, 562
- Behcet's syndrome 160, 165
- Bell's palsy 119
- Bell's phenomenon 396
- Bent lever 531
- Benzalkonium chloride 476
- Benzyl penicillin 465
- Bepotastine 476
- Bergmeister papilla 265
- Berlin's oedema 448, 529
- Berrum's screen 534f
- Best's disease 300, 301, 301f
- Beta-adrenergic  
blockers 470  
stimulator 469
- Beta-lactam antibiotics 465
- Betamethasone 473, 474
- Beta-receptor stimulators 469
- Betaxolol 243, 246, 256, 470, 473
- Bevacizumab 281, 307, 478  
intravitreal dose 479  
mechanism of action 479
- B-Hex pupil expander 626f
- Bicarbonate 477
- Bifocal lenses 50, 50f
- Biguanides 118
- Bilamellar tarsal resection 73
- Bimatoprost 243, 469
- Binasal field defects 530
- Binocular diplopia 515
- Binocular fixation, field of 370
- Binocular indirect ophthalmoscope,  
advantages of 609
- Binocular loupe 588f, 590  
advantages of 590  
disadvantages of 590  
use of 588
- Binocular movements 352
- Binocular single vision 45, 354, 355  
development of 354, 355  
grades of 583
- Binocular vision  
anomalies of 355  
grades of 355f  
physiology of 19  
status of 45
- Bioblique astigmatism 43
- Bionic eye 298
- Bird-like facies 400
- Bird-shot retinohoroidopathy 175
- Birmingham eye trauma terminology 444
- Birth trauma 188, 565
- Bitemporal hemianopia 325, 346, 530  
causes of 546
- Bitot's spots 488, 488f, 489
- Bjerrum's area 240
- Bjerrum's scotoma 240, 241f
- Blaskowicz' operation 397
- Bleeding disorders 268
- Blenorrhea, acute 64
- Blepharitis 83  
case of 572  
parasitic 382  
posterior 382  
seborrhoeic 381f  
squamous 381, 573  
ulcerative 573
- Blepharochalasis 396
- Blepharoconjunctivitis, allergic 469
- Blepharophimosis 393, 394, 493, 519, 576
- Blepharophimosis syndrome 395, 398  
part of 576
- Blepharospasm 105, 159, 394  
essential 394, 395  
spontaneous 394
- Blind  
rehabilitation of 510  
spot 17f  
barring of 240, 241f  
enlargement of 275, 530, 546  
physiological 271
- Blinding disorders, common 499
- Blindness 73, 495-497  
avoidable 498, 505  
blue 343  
causes of 498, 499t  
childhood 506  
curable 496  
economic 496  
elimination of 501  
preventable 500  
geographical distribution of global 498  
hysterical 345  
legal 496  
prevalence of 498  
preventable 496  
prevention of 499, 508  
Programme, prevention of 499  
reduction in backlog of 503  
regional burden of 498  
significant loss of 237  
social 496  
total 496
- Blocking enzyme cyclo-oxygenase 474
- Blood  
aqueous barrier 477  
disorders, retinopathies of 291  
dyscrasias 268  
hyperviscosity of 279  
osmotic pressure of 231  
pressure  
diastolic 236  
high 236  
sugar levels 163  
uric acid 163  
vessels and nerves 5
- Blue colour defect, acquired 343
- Blue cone monochromatism 342
- Blue sclera 149, 149f
- Blunt ocular trauma, case of 584
- Blunt trauma 455, 585  
accidental 445  
forces of 445
- Blurred vision 43, 104, 166
- Bone  
drill 625, 625f  
gouge 624, 624f  
punch 624, 624f
- Bonnet sign 282, 284
- Bony lacrimal fossa, exposure of 414f
- Bony orbit 4, 418
- Bony osteum, preparation of 414f
- Boston keratoprosthesis 144
- Botulinum toxin 395
- Bourneville disease 320
- Bowen's intraepithelial epithelioma 96
- Bowman's layer 89  
dystrophies 129, 131
- Bowman's membrane 69, 99, 103, 121, 127, 552
- Brachytherapy 182
- Brain  
abscess 346  
concussion injuries to 348
- Branch retinal  
artery occlusion 278  
vein occlusion 279, 280
- Breadcrumb' appearance 201
- Brimonidine 243, 469, 473
- Brinzolamide 243, 471
- Bromfenac 474, 476
- Brown's superior oblique tendon sheath  
syndrome 372
- Brownian movements 160
- Brucellosis 491
- Bruch's membrane 153, 180
- Brun's nystagmus 375, 376
- Buccal mucosal graft 393
- Bulbar conjunctiva 59-61, 84, 96, 520  
hyperaemia of 66  
superior 123
- Bull's eye macular lesions 529
- Bullous keratopathy 137, 254, 568  
pseudophakic 220  
stage of 134
- Buphthalmos 100, 233, 570
- Burke's method 396
- Burkitt's lymphoma 491
- Burns, radiational 552
- Busacca's nodules 158, 161, 525
- Butterfly cartridge 626f
- Byron Smith's modified Kuhnt-Szymanowski  
operation 391

## C

- Calcific degeneration 127
- Calcium channel blockers 473  
systemic 246
- Calcium emboli 277
- Canaliculi 408
- Canaloplasty 262
- Candida 109, 468  
albicans 171  
endophthalmitis 171, 491
- Candidiasis 171  
treatment 171
- Can-opener's technique 208
- Canthal tendon laxity, lateral 391



- Cantholysis 427
- Canthotomy 427
- Capillary haemangioma 318, 399, 399f, 436
- Capitis 383
- Capsular bag fixation 214
- Capsular cataract, anterior 106
- Capsular tension ring 224, 625, 626f
- Capsule forceps method 206
- Capsulorhexis forceps 622, 622f
- Capsulorrhexis 212
  - anterior 212, 218
  - continuous curvilinear 211, 211f
  - escaping 218
  - flap 212
  - posterior 212
  - small 218
- Capsulotome 619, 483, 619f
- Capsulotomy 483, 630
  - anterior 208, 209
  - can-opener's technique, anterior 209f
- Caput medusae 254, 568
- Carbachol 472
- Carbenicillin 465
- Carbolic acid 385
- Carbonic anhydrase inhibitors 234, 243, 470, 473, 493
  - systemic 252, 305
  - topical 243
- Carboxymethyl cellulose 476
- Carcinoma 440
  - mucoepidermoid 417
  - sebaceous gland 401
- Carotid angiography 423
- Carotid stenosis, treatment of 295
- Carotid-cavernous fistula 434
- Carprofen 474
- Carteolol 243, 470
- Casoni's test 423
- Castroviejo's calliper 618, 618f
- Castroviejo's needle holder 618, 618f
- Cat's paw lacrimal wound retractor 617, 617f
- Cataract 165, 187, 188, 200-222, 251, 448, 505
  - absorption of congenital 191
  - acquired 187, 192, 193
  - advanced 564
  - age-related 193
  - anterior
    - axial embryonic 190
    - capsular 189
    - polar 187, 189, 565
    - subcapsular granular type of 201
  - blindness control project,
    - launching of 502
  - blue dot 190
  - capsular 187
  - case of congenital 564, 565
  - childhood 192
  - classification 187
  - common familial 188
  - complicated 162, 166, 187, 200, 527, 564
  - components of 197
  - congenital 187, 188, 224, 266, 550, 565
    - capsular 188, 189
    - membranous 191
    - morgagnian 191
    - nuclear 188, 189
  - coralliform 190
  - coronary 190
  - cuneiform 196
    - senile cortical 194
  - cupuliform 194, 196
    - senile cortical 194
  - dendritic sutural 190
  - density and morphology of 191
  - dermatogenic 187
  - developmental 187, 188, 564
  - diffuse concussion 448
  - double 189
  - drug-induced 201
  - electric 187
  - embryonic nuclear 189
  - etiologial classification 187
  - extraction 204, 255
    - delayed complications of 631
    - early postoperative
      - complications of 631
    - intracapsular 204, 206
    - operations for 630
    - surgical techniques for 206
    - technique of 198
  - floriform 190
  - generalized 188, 190
  - grading of 197
  - heat 513
  - hypermaturation 195
  - infrared 201
  - iron induced 187
  - irradiation 201
  - lamellar 189
  - management of 202
    - childhood 565
    - congenital 191
    - developmental 191
  - mature 197f
    - senile 194, 195f, 197, 198, 199f
  - metabolic 187, 199
  - miotics-induced 201, 563
  - morphological
    - classification 187
    - shapes of 187f
  - nuclear 190
  - operation
    - postoperative management of 631
    - preoperative complications of 631
  - polar 187, 188, 189
  - posterior
    - capsular 189
    - polar 187, 189, 189f, 565
    - subcapsular 194, 196, 492
  - pre-senile 193, 300
  - radiation 459
  - radiational 187, 201
  - reduplicated 189
  - Rosette-shaped 527
  - rubella 190
  - secondary 221
  - senile 187, 193, 194, 199, 201, 550, 563
  - small axial 202
  - snowflake 199, 200f
  - spear-shaped 190
  - subcapsular 187
  - supranuclear 187
  - surgery 477, 478, 621, 625
    - complications of 217
    - planning 564
    - rate 500, 502
  - surgical management of 217, 567
  - sutural 565
    - and axial 189
  - syndematotic 202
  - total congenital 190, 191f
  - total nuclear 190
  - toxic 187
  - traumatic 187, 448
  - treatment of 202
    - cause of 202
  - true diabetic 199, 527
  - types of 205
  - ultraviolet radiation 201
  - unilateral dense 192
- Cataracta brunescens 196, 196f
- Cataracta centralis pulverulenta 189, 565
- Cataracta nigra 196, 196f
- Cataracta punctata-caerulea 190
- Cataracta rubra 196f
- Cataractogenic drugs, removal of 202
- Cataractous lens 198f, 203
  - extraction of 564
  - morphology of 197
  - subluxated 222f
- Cataractous nucleus 191
- Catarrhal conjunctivitis, chronic 65
- Catarrhal ulcer, marginal 109, 554
- Caterpillar hair conjunctivitis 79
- Cattle trucking 278
- Causative disease 120, 395
  - signs of 388, 406
- Causative drugs 88
- Causative organisms 380, 411
- Causative primary disease 254
- Cavernous haemangioma 399, 436
- Cavernous optic atrophy 240
- Cavernous sinus
  - communications of 428
  - thrombosis 425, 428
  - tributaries of 428f
- Cefamandole 465
- Cefazoline 107, 177
- Cefixime 465
- Cefotaxime 465
- Cefotetan 465
- Cefoxitin 465
- Ceftazidime 177
- Ceftriaxone, single injection of 78
- Cefuroxime 465
- Cell
  - non-pigmented 245
  - tumour, small round blue 314
  - types of 272
- Cellulitis
  - preseptal 425, 425f
  - stage of 383, 412
- Cellulose esters 476
- Central 10-2 test 536
- Central 24-2 test 536
- Central 30-2 test 536
- Central areolar choroidal atrophy 179
- Central chorioretinitis 529
  - healed patch of 168f
- Central choroidal atrophy, senile 179
- Central choroiditis 168
  - causes of 562
  - symptoms of 562
- Central corneal
  - stromal opacities 133
  - thickness 236, 242
- Central field
  - charting 533
  - tests 536
- Central lacrimation 408



- Central nervous system disorders 188
- Central obstacles 362
- Central retinal artery 274
- occlusion 277
  - occlusion, acute 277f
  - vein 5
  - occlusion 279, 279f, 280f
- Central scotoma 530
- causes of 546
- Central serous
- chorioretinopathy 302
  - choroidopathy 302
  - retinopathy 302f, 303f
- Central space 420
- Central subepithelial corneal opacities 130
- Central vision 297
- Cephalosporins 465
- first-generation 465
  - third-generation 465
- Cephalosporium 109
- Cephazolin 554
- Cerebellar tumours 347
- Cerebellopontine angle tumor 523
- Cerebral oedema, diffuse 336
- Cerebral venous sinus thrombosis 336
- Cerebro-oculo-facial syndrome 188
- Cetavlon 628
- Cetirizine 476
- Cetrimide 628
- Chalazion 383, 574
- case of 573, 574
  - clamp 621, 621f
  - scoop 623f
  - upper eyelid 384f
- Chalcosis 452, 585
- clinical manifestations of 585
  - mechanism of 452
- Chandler's syndrome 259, 260
- Chemical burns
- grades of 457, 458t
  - treatment of 457
- Chemical injury 456
- modes of 456
  - types of 456
- Chemical sterilization 628
- Chemosis 63, 75, 455
- Cherry red spot 277f, 278, 529
- causes of 546
- Chiasmal arachnoiditis 491
- Chiasmal lesions 324, 325
- causes of 324
  - lateral 326
- Chiasmal syndrome 325
- causes of 325
- Chiasmal tumours 347
- Childhood blindness 500, 505, 506
- Chisel 624, 624f
- Chlamydia 68t, 466, 466
- characteristic of 67
  - isolation of 72
  - life cycle of 67, 67f
  - trachomatis 68, 73
- Chlamydial conjunctivitis 61, 67
- Chlamydial infections 122
- Chloral hydrate 493
- Chlorambucil 165
- Chloramphenicol 466, 494
- Chlorhexidine 118, 628
- Chlorine dioxide 628
- Chloroquine 494
- eye drops 407
- Chlorpropamide 494
- Cholera 193
- Cholesterol emboli 277
- Cholesterosis bulbi 267
- Cholinergic drugs 471
- Cholinesterase inhibitors 471
- Chondroitin sulfate 478
- Chondrokeratoprosthesis 144
- Chopper 623, 623f
- Chorioretinal apposition, maintenance of 311
- Chorioretinal atrophy, peripheral 299
- Chorioretinal degeneration, diffuse 299f
- Chorioretinitis 155, 167, 491
- multifocal 171
- Choroid 10, 11, 30, 151, 153, 448, 451f
- basal lamina 153
  - degenerations of 179
  - dystrophies of 179
  - involving orbit, malignant melanoma of 182f
  - lesions of 483
  - malignant melanoma of 180, 181f, 313f
  - microscopic structure of 153, 153f
  - rupture of 448
  - stroma of 153
  - tumours of 180
- Choroidal degeneration
- primary 179
  - secondary 179
- Choroidal detachment 448
- Choroidal fissure 10, 10f
- Choroidal granuloma 169
- Choroidal haemangioma 180, 320
- diffuse 180
  - localised 180
- Choroidal haemorrhage 448
- expulsive 219
- Choroidal melanoma 181f, 182f
- Choroidal neovascularization 306
- Choroidal osteoma 180
- Choroidal vascular hyperpermeability 302
- Choroidal vessels, vasospasm of 282
- Choroideremia 179
- Choroiditis 155, 163, 167, 200, 267, 491
- active patch of 167
  - diffuse 168
  - equatorial 168
  - geographic 168
  - healed patch of 167
  - multifocal 169
  - traumatic 448
- Choroidopathy
- acute hypertensive 283
  - serpiginous geographical 175
- Christopher Blindness Mission 499
- Chromatic aberration 33f
- Chromosomal deletion syndromes 493
- Chromosomal disorders 188
- Chronic catarrhal dacryocystitis, stage of 411
- Chronic fibrotic sac, stage of 412
- Chronic suppurative dacryocystitis, stage of 412
- Cicatricial conjunctivitis 61, 88, 88
- Cicatricial ectropion 390, 392
- lower eyelid 391f
- Cicatricial entropion 73, 387, 387f, 388
- causes of 575
- Cicatricial pemphigoid 475
- Cicatricial trachoma
- phase of 70
  - treatment of 72
- Cicatrizization, stage of 103f
- Cicatrizing conjunctivitis 387
- late stage of 386
- Cilia 12
- Ciliary arteret
- long posterior 153, 145f
  - posterior 274
  - short posterior 145f, 153
- Ciliary band 589
- Ciliary block glaucoma 258, 259f
- Ciliary body 10, 11, 151, 152, 226, 459, 484, 634
- band 227f
  - functions of 153
  - microscopic structure 152
  - nerve supply 152
  - pars plicata of 155
  - stroma of 12, 152
  - tumours of 180, 183
- Ciliary congestion 118, 252f, 255f, 521t
- Ciliary epithelium, secretory 254
- Ciliary ganglion 6, 7
- parasympathetic root of 8
  - roots of 7
  - sympathetic root of 7
- Ciliary muscle 7f, 152
- contraction of 46
  - relaxation of 49
- Ciliary nerve, short 8, 145f
- Ciliary process 153, 473
- Ciliary staphyloma 150f, 254, 558
- Ciliary sulcus fixation 214
- Ciliary tone 605
- Ciliary veins, short posterior 5
- Ciliary zonules 185
- Ciliochoroidal detachment 219, 220
- Ciliolenticular block 259
- Cilioretinal artery 274, 277f
- absence of 277f
- Cimetidine 115
- Cionni's ring fixation 224
- Ciprofloxacin 177, 466
- Circulus arteriosus
- major 154
  - minor 154
- Circumcorneal congestion 159, 559
- causes of 544
- Cladosporium 468
- Clear corneal incision 211, 211f, 212
- Clear lens extraction 252
- Clear ocular media, maintenance of 14
- Clonidine 473
- Cloquet's canal 265
- Closed-globe injuries 444, 445, 449
- Clotrimazole 118, 468, 555
- Cloudy cornea 234
- Cloxacillin 465
- Clumps, pigmented 527
- Coat's diseases 268, 294, 304, 483, 484, 529
- Cockayne's syndrome 297
- Cogan's syndrome 124, 125
- Cogan-Reese syndrome 259, 260
- Colibri forceps 616, 616f
- Colistin 466
- Collagen vascular disorders, systemic 552
- Collamer lenses, implantable 216
- Collar-stud tumour 180
- Collimation 481



- Colloid bodies 529
- Coloboma 155, 234, 493
  - atypical 155
  - congenital 154, 379
  - incomplete 155
  - of choroid 155f
  - of lens 224, 224f, 527
  - of lower eyelid 424
  - of optic disc 274
  - of uveal tract, congenital 154
  - typical 155
  - upper eyelid, congenital 379f
- Colour blindness 342
  - acquired 342
  - congenital 342
- Colour vision 19, 325, 330
  - test 19, 343
  - theories of 18
- Coloured halos 196, 514, 515
- Coma 33
  - effect 33
  - deep 119
- Comotio retinae 448
- Computer vision syndrome 513
- Computerized autorefractometer 596f
- Computerized tomography scanning 441
- Concave cylindrical lens 29
- Concave iris insertion 233
- Concave lens 28, 29f, 606
  - basic forms of 29f
  - identification of 28
  - uses of 28, 606
- Concave mirror retinoscope 605
- Concomitant esotropia, classify 583
- Concomitant exotropia, classify 583
- Concomitant squint, types of 362
- Concomitant strabismus
  - evaluation of 364
  - examination 364
- Cone-rod dystrophy 300
- Congenital syphilis, ocular lesions of 491
- Congestion 69
  - of vessels 520
- Congestive glaucoma
  - acute 252f, 255
  - attack 569
  - differential diagnosis of acute 572
- Congruous homonymous
  - macular defects 327
- Conjunctiva 4, 12, 59, 65, 74, 78, 86, 91f, 105, 111, 124, 176, 178, 179, 220, 251, 378, 457, 484, 492, 551, 585, 634
  - affections of 408
  - amyloid degeneration of, 91
  - blood supply of 61, 61f
  - changes of 83
  - chemosis of, 92
  - circumcorneal zone of 61
  - closure of 321
  - cysticercosis of 95f
  - cysts of 94
  - development of 12f
  - different regions of 60f
  - discolouration of 94
  - diseases of 59, 550
  - ecchymosis of 92
  - epithelium of 60
  - examination of 203, 520
  - exposure of 93
  - glands of 60
  - inflammations of 61, 92, 380
  - inflammatory conditions of 519
  - lymphatic
    - cysts of 94
    - drainage of 8f
  - marginal 59, 60
  - microscopic structure of 60f
  - nerve supply of 61
  - palpebral 59, 61
  - parts of 59, 59f
  - rest of 61
  - separation of 320f
  - simple hyperaemia of, 92
  - structure of 60
  - symptomatic conditions of 92
  - triangular fold of 89
  - tumours of 95
  - upper palpebral 70f, 520
  - wounds of 450
  - xerosis of 93
- Conjunctival amyloid, secondary 91
- Conjunctival approach 397
- Conjunctival arteries
  - anterior 61
  - posterior 61
- Conjunctival chemosis 520
- Conjunctival congestion 63, 521t
- Conjunctival cytology 72, 76
- Conjunctival discharge 62, 78
- Conjunctival epithelial melanosis 94, 94f
- Conjunctival epithelium 81
- Conjunctival flap 108, 206-208, 261, 262
  - closure of 261f
  - fornix-based 207f, 261f
- Conjunctival follicles 69
  - causes of 544
- Conjunctival foreign body granuloma 86
- Conjunctival fornix 60
- Conjunctival glands 12
  - parts of 59f
- Conjunctival hyperaemia 74
- Conjunctival intraepithelial neoplasia 96
- Conjunctival lesions 115, 173, 455
- Conjunctival limbal autograft 90, 91, 91f
- Conjunctival naevus 97f
- Conjunctival papillae, causes of 544
- Conjunctival sac 12, 59, 70
  - irrigation of 63
- Conjunctival signs 75, 84, 432, 520
- Conjunctival tissue response 62
- Conjunctival xerosis 72, 488, 488f, 489, 551
  - causes of 551
- Conjunctivitis 61, 114
  - acute 109f, 164t
- Conjunctivitis
  - acute haemorrhagic 75, 77f
  - acute mucopurulent 63
  - adult inclusion 76
  - allergic 61, 79, 217
  - chronic 66, 551, 573
  - destructive interstitial 93
  - drop 61
  - infective 61
  - membranous 551
  - microbial allergic 85
  - mild papillary 381
  - miliary phlyctenular 85
  - necrotizing phlyctenular 85
  - neonatal inclusion 78, 79
  - papillary 381
  - perennial allergic 80
  - phlyctenular 61, 85, 85f, 86
  - pseudomembranous 65f
  - seasonal allergic 80
  - secondary cicatricial 88
  - simple
    - allergic 61
    - phlyctenular 85
  - toxic 61, 88
  - types of 61, 64t
  - viral 61, 74
- Conjunctivo-dacryocystorhinostomy 412
- Conjunctivoplasty, medial 391f
- Connective tissue disease 120
- Conquer technique 211f
- Conservative tumour destructive therapy 317
- Contact lens 38, 50, 51f, 52, 408, 566, 602
  - advantages of 51
  - hard 606
  - biomicroscopy 532, 610
  - cornea 120
  - diameters of 50
  - disadvantages of 38
  - hard 606
  - soft 606
  - implantable 54
  - indications of 51
  - posterior fundus 610, 610f
  - types of 51, 606
  - wear 551
- Contractile microfilaments 229
- Contrast sensitivity 331
- Contusion 444
- Contusional injury 447f
- Conventional extracapsular cataract
  - extraction, surgical steps of 209f
- Convergence reflex, pathway of 327
- Convergence retraction syndrome 375
- Convex lens 28, 28f, 29t, 606
  - cardinal points of 28f
  - cylindrical 28, 30f
  - identification of 28
  - test 344
  - uses of 28
- Convex spherical lens, uses of 605
- Copper metabolism, error of 200
- Corectopia 154
- Cornea 3, 11, 14, 36, 40, 79, 83, 87, 89, 102, 111, 178, 203, 251, 254, 446, 451f, 457, 484, 492, 519, 551, 585
  - absorbs rays 24
  - affections of 408
  - anatomy 98
  - and crystalline lens 30, 600, 601
  - anterior surface of 98
  - applied physiology 100
  - avascularity of 100
  - back of 524
  - based procedures 54
  - blood staining of 446, 447f
  - configuration of cone-shaped 136f
  - conical 135
  - deep meridians of 55f
  - dehydration of 138
  - diseases of 98, 551
  - ectatic conditions of 135
  - epithelium 11
  - examination of 522
  - false 104



- fluorescein staining of 524  
   guttata 126  
     stage of 134  
   hazy 233  
   inflammations of 101  
   large 234  
   layers of 552  
   metabolism of 100  
   microscopic structure of 99f  
   nerve supply of 558  
   optical section of 527f  
   physiology of 14, 98  
   plana 100, 522  
   posterior surface of 98  
   refractive  
     index of 98  
     power of 98  
   removal of 179  
   superficial layers of 100, 121  
   thickness of 98  
   transparency of 523  
   wounds of 450  
 Corneal abrasion 102, 552  
   simple 446  
 Corneal anaesthesia 347  
 Corneal biopsy 110, 117  
 Corneal blindness 507  
   causes of 507  
   control of 507  
 Corneal burns, mild to moderate degree  
   of 457  
 Corneal collagen linking with riboflavin 482  
 Corneal complications  
   less 205  
   risk of 205  
 Corneal crystallins 100  
 Corneal degenerations 126  
   age-related 126  
   pathological 126  
 Corneal diameter  
   measurement of 234  
   metallic ring of 453  
 Corneal disease 143  
   types of 127  
 Corneal dystrophy 128, 131, 556  
   classification of 129  
   gelatinous drop-like 131  
   posterior polymorphous 135f  
   stromal 131  
   subepithelial mucinous 130  
 Corneal endothelium 524  
   functioning 477  
 Corneal enlargement 233  
 Corneal epithelial damage 102  
 Corneal epithelium 100, 120  
   intact 552  
   membrane of 113  
 Corneal erosion 130  
   syndrome, recurrent 446, 556  
 Corneal facet 558  
 Corneal filaments 123  
 Corneal fistula 106  
 Corneal foreign body 585  
 Corneal graft 141, 475  
   peripheral 120  
 Corneal hypoxia 100  
 Corneal incision 212, 630  
   internal 209  
 Corneal involvement 77, 78  
 Corneal lamellae, peculiar arrangement  
   of 100  
 Corneal lesions 113, 115, 124  
   deep 135  
 Corneal loupe 587f  
   magnification of 590  
   power of 590  
 Corneal melting, peripheral 120  
 Corneal oedema 137, 159, 220, 233, 252f  
   acute 446  
   causes of 137  
 Corneal opacification 138, 492  
 Corneal opacity 71, 138, 138f, 139f, 458, 493,  
   499, 523, 553, 557  
   case of 557  
   causes of 557  
   congenital 101  
   trachomatous 71f  
   types of 557  
 Corneal perforation, signs of 553  
 Corneal preservation, methods of 141, 558  
 Corneal relaxing incisions 54  
 Corneal scars 106, 488, 489  
 Corneal scissors 620, 620f  
 Corneal sensations 113, 523, 551, 555  
 Corneal sensitivity, reduced 523  
 Corneal signs 84, 118, 159, 233  
 Corneal staining 479  
 Corneal stroma 10, 98, 552  
   inflammation of 556  
 Corneal surface  
   causes of abnormal 544  
   epitheliopathy of 579  
 Corneal surgery 141, 477  
 Corneal tear  
   partial 446  
   with iris prolapse 450f  
 Corneal thickness 544  
 Corneal tissue 140  
 Corneal topography 136  
 Corneal transparency 100  
   abnormalities of 137  
   anomalies of 100  
 Corneal transplantation 141  
 Corneal ulcer 70, 101, 102, 105, 109, 254,  
   523, 551-554  
   case of 551, 553  
   infectious 524  
   complications of 553  
   fascicular 86f  
   formation 118  
   healed 138  
   immune-mediated 475  
   localised 103  
   management of 107  
   marginal 109f  
   neuroparalytic 116  
   non-healing 108, 554  
   nonpurulent 552  
   pathogenesis of 102  
   pathology of 102, 103f  
   perforated 103, 104f  
   perforation of 106  
   treatment of 120  
   trophic 118, 119f  
   uncomplicated 107, 554  
   viral 110  
 Corneal ulceration 120, 254, 393, 488, 552  
   pathological stages of 553  
   peripheral acute 120  
 Corneal vascularization 110, 140, 140, 523  
   causes of 557  
   deep 523t  
   superficial 523t  
 Corneal verticillata 140  
 Corneal wounds  
   healed 138  
   uncomplicated 450  
 Corneal xerophthalmia 489  
 Corneal xerosis 488, 488f  
 Corneoscleral forceps 616, 616f  
 Corneoscleral junction, transparency of 589  
 Corneoscleral meshwork 226  
 Corneoscleral section 206  
   completion of 208, 209  
   enlarging scissors 630  
 Corneoscleral suturing forceps 630  
 Coronary cataract 191f, 565  
 Cortex 185  
   aspiration of 208, 210f, 211  
 Cortical blindness 344  
 Cortical cataract 187, 198, 527  
 Cortical senile cataract 193  
 Cortical vitreous 264  
 Corticosteroids 140, 165, 188, 334, 464,  
   473t, 494  
   drops, topical 125  
   eye drops, topical mild 146  
   induced cataract 201, 563  
   preparations, systemic 474  
   reduce inflammation 473  
   systemic 168  
   topical 123  
 Cortisone 473  
   acetate 474  
 Corynebacterium 176  
   diphtheriae 62, 102, 552  
 Cotton wool spots 283, 287, 529  
 Cover test 364  
   direct 364, 365f  
 Cover-uncover test 364  
 Cranial dysinnervation disorders, congenital  
   372  
 Cranial nerve  
   palsy 173, 348, 491  
   complete third 584  
   second 322  
 Craniofacial dysostosis 424  
 Craniopharyngiomas 324  
 Craniosynostosis 424  
 C-reactive proteins 335  
 Crescent knife 620f  
 Cri-du-chat syndrome 493  
 Cromolyn sodium 476  
 Crooker's glass 123  
 Cryoepilation 386  
 Cryoextraction 206  
 Cryo-machine 633  
 Cryopexy 633  
 Cryoprobe 484, 484f, 633  
 Cryptococcal infections 491  
 Cryptophthalmos 379, 380f  
 Crypts of Henle 60  
 Crystallens 215  
 Crystalline lens 11, 14, 524  
   absence of 35  
   development of 11f  
   physiology of 14  
   structure of 185f



Curvularia 109  
 Cushing's disease 302  
 Cyanoacrylate, application of 120  
 Cyanopsia 37  
 Cyclitic membrane 158, 163  
 Cyclitis, anterior 155  
 Cycloablative procedures 632  
 Cyclocryopexy 484f  
   site of 263f  
 Cyclocryotherapy, technique of 263  
 Cyclodestructive procedures 256, 263  
 Cyclo diode 256  
 Cyclooxygenase inhibitor, topical 204  
 Cyclopentolate 164, 247, 593, 631  
 Cyclophoria 358  
 Cyclophosphamide 165  
 Cyclopia 493  
 Cycloplegia 515  
   drug-induced 48  
 Cycloplegic  
   agents 464  
   drugs 108, 164, 593, 593t  
 Cyclosporine 475, 476  
   topical 83, 407  
 Cylindrical lens 28-30, 30f, 606  
   axis of 29  
   identification of 29  
   types of 30  
   uses of 30, 606  
 Cyst 94  
   benign 183  
   cysticercus 491  
   parasitic 95, 524  
   retention 94  
   traumatic 95  
 Cystic lesions, congenital 94  
 Cysticercus cellulose 524  
 Cystinosis, neuropathic 523  
 Cystitis 630  
 Cystoid degeneration 41  
   peripheral 299d  
 Cystoid macular oedema 162, 220, 221, 303,  
   304f, 469, 475, 543, 631  
   absence of 319  
 Cystoid spaces 304  
 Cystotome 619, 619f  
 Cytarabine 467  
 Cytology 183  
 Cytomegalovirus 172, 464, 491  
   retinitis 172  
   typical 276f  
 Cytosine arabinoside 467  
 Cytotoxic drugs 475

## D

Dacryoadenitis 415, 425  
   acute 415  
   bilateral 416f  
   chronic 416  
 Dacryocystectomy 203, 412  
   surgical technique of 415  
 Dacryocystitis 108, 410, 554, 578  
   acute 412, 413f  
   adult 411  
   adulthood chronic 578  
   case of chronic 577  
   chronic 551  
   congenital 410  
   etiology of congenital 578  
   infantile 410  
   neonatorum 410  
 Dacryocystogram, normal 409f  
 Dacryocystography 409, 411, 412, 519  
   radionuclide 410  
 Dacryocystorhinostomy 203, 412  
   external 414f  
   operation 411  
   surgical technique of 413  
 Dacryops 416  
 Dalen-Fuchs' nodules 175, 455, 562  
 Dalrymple's sign 431  
 Dark adaptation 297  
 Dark goggles, use of 202  
 Darker iris, causes of 525  
 Darkroom  
   appliances 605  
   procedures 587  
 Day blindness 342, 514  
 De Grouchy syndrome 493  
 De Wecker's scissors 621, 621f  
 Debilitating disease, chronic 108, 554  
 Deep anterior chamber 162f  
   causes of 524, 545  
 Deep corneal vascularization 523, 557  
   causes of 544  
 Deep keratitis, non-suppurative 124  
 Dehydrational crisis 193  
 Demecarium bromide 201, 472  
 Demodex blepharitis 383  
 Demodex brevis 383  
 Demodex folliculorum 383  
 Demyelinating  
   diseases 347  
   disorders 329  
 Dendritic ulcer 111, 112f, 114, 523  
 Dense cataracts, bilateral 192  
 Dense immobile hypopyon 160  
 Dermatitis 391  
   herpetiformis 492  
 Dermatochalasis 396  
 Dermatoconjunctivitis, contact 61, 86  
 Dermoid 101, 435  
   deep 435  
   right orbit 435f  
   superficial 435  
 Descemet's detachment 218, 631  
 Descemet's membrane 99, 112, 134  
   of cornea 226, 452  
   tears in 446  
 Descemet's tears 100  
 Descemetocoele 104f, 106, 553  
 Desloratadine 476  
 Desmarre's retractor 617, 617f  
 Deuteranomalous 342  
 Deuteranopia 342  
 Devic's disease 347  
 Dewecker's iridectomy scissors 630  
 Dexamethasone 473, 474  
 Dextrose 477  
 Diabetes  
   duration of 285  
   mellitus 108, 193, 204, 252, 279, 492, 554  
     adequate control of 202  
     metabolic control of 290  
   types of 285  
 Diabetic cataract 199  
   characteristic of 564  
 Diabetic eye disease, advanced 289  
 Diabetic macular edema 289  
   classification of 289  
 Diabetic maculopathy 287  
   clinico-angiographic classification of 289  
 Diabetic retinopathy 281, 285, 288f, 290f,  
   483, 498, 507  
   advanced 313f  
   incidence of 285  
   involutional stage of 289  
   laser treatment for 633  
   management of 289  
   non-proliferative 287  
   pathogenesis of 286f  
   proliferative 287  
   screening for 289  
 Dialysis, mild zonular 224  
 Diamidines 118  
 Diarrhoea 193  
 Diathermy 385  
 Diazepam 494  
 Dichlorophenamide 471  
 Dichromatic colour vision 342  
 Diclofenac sodium 217, 474  
   injection 631  
 Digital tonometry, technique of 528  
 Digitalis 493  
 Diiodohydroxyquinoline 494  
 Diisopropyl fluorophosphate 201  
 Diktyoma 183  
 Diode 482  
   laser trabeculoplasty 244  
 Dioptre anisometropia 604  
 Dioptic power, total 31  
 Diptheria 62, 491  
 Dipivefrine 469, 473  
 Diplobacillary conjunctivitis 66  
 Diplopia 38, 346, 357, 368, 368f, 392,  
   441, 514, 515  
   binocular 357  
   charting 370, 370f  
   crossed 357  
   treatment of 358  
   uniocular 196, 223, 357, 515  
 Direct ophthalmoscopy  
   optics of 607f  
   technique of 608f  
 Disc oedema 284  
   causes of 336  
 Disc pallor 284  
 Disciform keratitis 112-114, 115f, 555  
 Discoloration 520  
 Dislocation  
   anterior 526  
   clinical features of anterior 224  
 Disodium phosphate 477  
 Distance vision zone 50  
 Distant direct ophthalmoscopy 136, 527,  
   607, 607f, 610  
   examination 197  
 Distant metastasis, stage of 181  
 Distant visual acuity 516  
 Distichiasis 379, 386, 519, 575  
   acquired 386  
   congenital 386  
 Diurnal variation test 242  
 Divergent squint 363, 369f, 424, 425, 583  
   congenital exotropia 364  
   consecutive exotropia 364



- primary exotropia 364
  - sensory exotropia 364
  - Dixon's method 586
  - Domestic accidents 456
  - Donor cornea, grading of 142*t*
  - Donor corneal tissue, grade of 142
  - Donor eyes, removal of 558
  - Donor tissue 141
    - evaluation of 141
  - Dorzolamide 243, 471, 473
  - Down's syndrome 100, 187, 188, 235, 398, 493, 563
  - Doxycycline 72, 74, 381, 382, 458
  - Drusens, large 305
  - Dry eye 579
    - aqueous deficiency 406, 579
    - causes of 579
    - disease 406
      - complications of 406
      - severe 408
    - evaporative 406
    - severity, grading of 407
    - syndrome 122
    - treatment of 579
  - Dry heat sterilization methods 627
  - Dryness of mouth 408
  - Dua's classification 458*t*
  - Dua's layer 99
  - Duane's retraction syndrome 372, 398
  - Duochrome test 599, 605
    - box 599*f*
    - optical principle of 599*f*
  - Dusky red triangular congestion 81
  - Dynamic retinoscopy 595
  - Dyschromatopsia 327, 342
  - Dyslipidaemia, control of 290
  - Dysplasia, mesodermal 222
  - Dystrophic myotonia 563
  - Dystrophy
    - anterior 556
    - congenital 523
    - posterior 556
    - stromal 129, 556
    - subepithelial 129
- E**
- Eagle's eye 165
  - Eales' disease 169, 276, 276*f*, 483, 491, 529, 530
    - laser photocoagulation 276
    - medical treatment 276
    - vitreoretinal surgery 277
  - Ear defects 191
  - Ebastine 476
  - Eccentric capsulorrhexis 218
  - Eccentric proptosis 422
  - Echothiophate 201
    - iodide 471, 472
  - Eclipse sign 249
  - Econazole 468, 555
  - Ectatic dystrophy 556
  - Ectoderm
    - neural 13
    - surface 12
  - Ectopia lentis 222, 223, 300
    - congenital 224
    - et pupillae 222
    - simple 222
  - Ectropion 119, 389, 519, 575
    - congenital 380, 389, 391
    - paralytic 390, 392
    - types of 575
  - Eczema 391
  - Edinger-Westphal nucleus 7, 7*f*, 327
  - Edridge-Green lantern test 343
  - Edward's syndrome 235, 493
  - Efferent pathway defect 328
  - Eggler's line 184
  - Egyptian ophthalmia 67
  - Ehlers-Danlos syndrome 100, 137, 149, 222
  - Elastic lamina, posterior 99
  - Electric cataract 201
  - Electrical injuries 459
  - Electroencephalography 541
  - Electrolysis machine 614
  - Electromagnetic radiation, spectrum of 23*f*
  - Electrooculogram 203
    - normal records of 540*f*
  - Electro-oculography 539, 540, 564
    - technique of 540*f*
  - Electrophysiological tests 19
  - Electroretinogram 203
    - components of normal 540*f*
    - recording, technique of 539*f*
  - Electroretinography 539, 564
  - Elementary optics 23
  - Elschnig's operation 392
  - Elschnig's pearls 221, 221*f*
  - Elschnig's spots 284
  - Emboli, types of 277
  - Embryonic nuclear cataract 565
  - Embryonic nucleus 185
  - Embryonic sutural cataract,
    - anterior axial 190*f*
  - Embryotoxon
    - anterior 101
    - posterior 101, 235
  - Emmetropia 34, 601
  - Emmetropic eye 45, 47*f*
  - Emotional stress 302
  - Emphasis 500
  - Emsley-Fincham stenopaedic-slit test 251*f*
  - Encephalitis 346
  - Encephalofacial angiomatosis 320
  - Encysted mucocele 411, 412
  - Endocarditis, subacute bacterial 275
  - Endocular toxins 157
  - Endogenous allergens 85
  - Endogenous endophthalmitis 176
  - Endogenous infections 156
  - Endolaser photocoagulation 312
  - Endophthalmitis 106, 176, 267, 408, 524, 562
    - acute bacterial 176
    - chronic postoperative 220
    - infective 176
    - metastatic 176, 562
    - non-infective 176
    - phacoanaphylactic 157, 176
    - postoperative
      - acute 177*f*
      - sterile 176
    - post-traumatic sterile 176
    - severe postoperative 177*f*
  - Endophytic retinoblastoma 316*f*
  - Endothelial cell 227
    - leaky pores in 229
    - theory 258
  - Endothelial corneal dystrophies 134
  - Endothelial dusting 159
  - Endothelial plaque 110
  - Endothelium 99, 278
  - Endotoxins 157
  - Enophthalmos 396, 424, 441, 441*f*, 519, 520, 544, 580
  - Enroth's sign 432
  - Enterobacteriae 105
  - Entoptic visualisation 203
  - Entropion 387, 519, 575
    - case of 574
    - clamp 621, 621*f*
    - congenital 380, 387, 388
    - senile 387, 387*f*
    - types of 575
  - Enucleation 320, 632, 633
    - indications of 632
    - operation 632
      - surgical steps of 320*f*
    - scissors 621, 621*f*
    - spoon 625*f*
  - Envelope technique 208
  - Enzymatic defence mechanism 187
  - Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay 72
  - Eosinophilic granuloma
    - multifocal 440
    - unifocal 440
  - Epiblepharon 379
  - Epicanthal fold 493
  - Epicanthus 379, 493
  - Epidemic keratoconjunctivitis 75
  - Epidermal necrosis, toxic 88
  - Epidermolysis bullosa 492
  - Epilation 386
    - forceps 616, 616*f*
  - Epinastine 476
  - Epinephrine 469, 473
    - hydrochloride 243
  - Epiphora 391, 410
    - causes of 408
    - leading to 381
    - persistent 394
  - Epiretinal membrane 543
  - Episcleral tissue 145
  - Episcleral venous pressure, increased 230
  - Episcleritis 86, 114, 146, 146*f*, 474, 492
    - nodule of 559
    - simple 146
  - Epithelial basement membrane
    - dystrophy 129, 130*f*
  - Epithelial cells
    - arrangement of 60*f*
    - desquamation of 102, 552
    - subcapsular 221
  - Epithelial curvilinear opacities 116
  - Epithelial cyst 95
    - pigmented 95
  - Epithelial defects, persistent 84, 116
  - Epithelial drying 102
  - Epithelial dystrophy 129
  - Epithelial endothelial dystrophy 557
  - Epithelial implantation cyst 95
  - Epithelial ingrowth 221, 258
  - Epithelial keratitis 111, 114
    - active 111
  - Epithelial layer
    - anterior pigmented 152
    - posterior pigmented 152



- Epithelial microcystic diffuse 75  
 Epithelial recurrent erosion dystrophy 130  
 Epithelial ridges 116  
 Epithelial sterile trophic ulceration 113  
 Epithelial tumours  
   benign 416  
   malignant 416  
 Epithelial ulcer, infected 113  
 Epithelial xerosis 93, 551  
 Epithelioid cell 159  
   melanomas 180  
 Epithelioma 96  
 Epithelium 60  
   downgrowth of 95  
   layers of 11  
   necrosis of 102, 552  
 Erythromycin 72, 74, 165, 381  
 Erythroptosis 37  
 Eserine 472  
 Esophoria 358  
 Esotropia 493  
   A and V 371  
   accommodative 363, 363f, 583  
   consecutive 363  
   infantile 362, 362f  
   mixed accommodative 363  
   non-accommodative 363  
   refractive accommodative 363  
   sensory 363  
 Ethambutol 494  
   amblyopia 333  
 Ethoxzolamide 471  
 Ethyl alcohol 333  
   amblyopia 333  
 Ethylene oxide gas 628  
 Euryblepharon 380  
 Everbusch's operation 398  
 Evisceration 178  
   curette 625, 625f  
   indications of 633  
   operation 632, 633  
   spatula 625, 625f  
 Ewing's sarcoma 440  
 Excessive oxidative stress 286  
 Excimer laser, therapeutic applications of  
   483, 633  
 Excisional biopsy 423  
 Excitotoxicity theory 232  
 Exenteration 183, 443  
 Exogenous  
   infection 156, 176  
   toxins 157  
 Exophoria 358  
 Exophthalmic goitre 581  
 Exophthalmometry 422  
 Exophthalmos 432, 579  
   bilateral 431f  
   thyrotoxic 581  
   thyrotropic 581  
 Exophytic retinoblastoma 316f  
 Exotropia, primary 364f  
 Exposure keratitis 115, 119f, 393, 432  
   causes of 556  
 Extension keratome 620, 620f  
 External lacrimal fistula  
   stage of 413f  
   treatment of 413  
 Extracapsular cataract extraction 205, 630  
   conventional 207  
   techniques 204  
 Extraocular dislocation 448  
 Extraocular extension, stage of 181  
 Extraocular foreign bodies 444, 585  
 Extraocular injuries 455  
 Extraocular lesions 455  
 Extraocular muscles 10, 12, 349, 350f, 419,  
   459, 492, 581  
   action of 350, 351f, 352f, 582  
   nerve supply 349  
   on sclera 351f  
   origin 349  
   palsies 613  
   separation of 179, 320, 320f  
 Exudative maculopathy, diffuse 289  
 Eye 24, 30, 46, 247  
   ache 236  
   anatomy of 1, 3  
   appendages of 4  
   at birth 13  
   axes of 31, 31f  
   Bank Association of India 505  
   bank  
     in-charge 509  
     technician 509  
   banking 507, 509  
   eye collection centres 509  
   facts about eye donation 510  
   functions of 509  
   legal aspect 510  
   camps  
     role of 508  
     types of 508  
   care  
     camps, comprehensive 508  
     infrastructure development 508  
     primary 504  
     secondary 505  
     services 504  
     tertiary 505  
   development of 3, 9, 13  
   deviation of 514  
   dioptric system of 33f  
   diseases of 57  
     acquired 523  
   disorders, detection of 506  
   donation 320  
     promotion of 509  
   drops 463, 476  
   exciting 175, 455  
   far point of 604  
   fitting of artificial prosthetic 321  
   functioning of 31f  
   habitual rubbing of 383  
   health care education 445  
   infections of 491, 507  
   injuries 507  
   lid actinic keratosis 400  
   listing's reduced 31  
   media of 24, 601  
   movements  
     supranuclear control of 353  
     vestibular 354  
   near point of 604  
   ointment 66, 381, 463  
   operations 629  
   optics of 30  
   patching of 208, 260  
   physiology of 1, 14  
   pseudophakic 567  
   redness of 104, 515, 544  
   refractive status of 601  
   rubbing 233  
   sensitivity of 24f  
   speculum 615, 615f  
   straight 355  
   strain 65  
   visual angle of 31  
   with advanced disease 245  
   with narrow angle 247  
 Eyeball 3, 145, 178, 253  
   abnormal small 100  
   anterior  
     chamber 3  
     part of 102  
     segment 3  
   blood  
     supply of 5f  
     vessels inside 8  
   cavity of 264  
   coats of 3  
   congenital small 519  
   development of 9  
   dimensions of adult 3  
   dislocation out of 224  
   enucleation of 254  
   equator of 3, 4f  
   examination of 520  
   extruded out of 224  
   fibrous coat 3  
   gross anatomy of 4f  
   inflammations of 380  
   kappa of 601  
   large 233, 519  
   movements of 520, 582  
   nervous coat 3  
   nodal point of 600  
   optical axis of 601  
   poles 3  
   position of 520  
   posterior  
     chamber 3  
     segment 4  
   prominent 40  
   removal of 320f, 321  
   retina 3  
   segments and chambers of 3  
   shape 3  
   size of 36, 520  
   tissues of 446  
   tumours of 440  
   uniocular movements of 582  
   uvea tissue 3  
   various structures of 10f  
   vascular coat 3  
   visual axis of 520  
 Eyebrow  
   examination of 519  
   loss of lateral 83  
   madarosis of 544  
 Eyelash  
   abnormalities 519  
   disorders 385  
 Eyelids 4, 12, 30, 64, 220, 377, 633  
   congenital entropion, lower 387  
   development of 12f  
   diseases of 572  
   disorders of 377  
   ecchymosis of 455  
   emphysema of 441  
   examination of 519



function, impaired 579  
glands of 378, 379f, 577  
gross anatomy of 377f  
inflammatory disorders of 380  
lesions 455, 483  
lymphatic drainage of 8f  
naevi of 400f  
neurofibroma 399  
oedema of 380  
palpebral muscle of 8  
parts of 377  
signs 83  
tumours of 398, 440  
Eyewall 444

## F

Fabry disease 140  
Facial asymmetry 518  
Facial block 612  
    anaesthesia, techniques of 629  
Facial denervation 395  
Facial eruptions 121  
Facial hygiene 73, 501  
Facial nerve 613f  
    blocking peripheral branches of 612  
    palsy 519  
    trunk block 613  
Facial palsy 120  
Facial symmetry 518  
False localising signs 346  
Famciclovir 466, 467  
Familial dysautonomia 406, 523  
Farnsworth D15 hue discrimination test 343  
Farnsworth-Munsell 100 hue test 343  
Fasanella Servat operation 398, 397, 397f  
Fascia  
    bulbi 418  
    palpebral 378  
Fatal disease 223  
Favre-Goldmann syndrome 299, 300  
Feathery finger-like extensions 109  
Femtosecond laser 483, 633  
    assisted cataract surgery 212, 630  
    uses of 483  
Festooned pupil 162, 162f, 525, 561  
Fetal fissure 10  
Fexofenadine 476  
Fibronectin 272  
Fibroplasia, retrolental 292, 317  
Fibrosis, subepithelial 84  
Fibrous downgrowth 221  
Fibrous layer 60, 378  
Fibrovascular epiretinal membrane 287  
Fibrovascular tissue, mass of 530  
Filamentary keratitis 84, 124, 254, 556, 568  
Filamentary keratopathy 556  
Filamentous fungi 109, 110  
Filtration surgeries, internal 260, 262  
Filtration surgery 252, 256  
    external 260, 261  
Fine-needle aspiration biopsy 423  
Fingerprint lines 130  
Fissure, palpebral 59, 519  
Fistula  
    formation of 148  
    stage of 412  
Fixation axis 601  
Fixation movements 354  
Flakes of mucopus 63  
Flaps, suturing of 413  
Flat anterior chamber 219  
Fleck corneal dystrophy 133  
Flieringa ring, use of 219  
Flower petal appearance 304, 304f  
Flucloxacillin 465  
Fluconazole 110, 468  
    miconazole 555  
Flucytosine 468, 555  
Fludrocortisone 473  
Flufenamic acid 474  
Fluid drainage, subretinal 311f  
Fluorescein  
    angiogram, normal 539f  
    angiography 182  
    dye disappearance test 409  
    impregnated strips 479  
    sodium 479  
Fluorexone 479  
Fluorometholone 381, 466, 466t, 474, 476  
    eye 107  
    mechanism of action 466  
Fluprednisolone 473  
Flurbiprofen 474, 476  
Foamy mucopurulent discharge 66  
Focal choroiditis 168  
Focal disc-shaped patch 112  
Focal exudative  
    diabetic maculopathy 288f  
    maculopathy 289  
Focal illumination, methods of 587  
Focal intraretinal periaarteriolar  
    transudates 283  
Focal laser burns 633  
Focal length, anterior 31  
Focal pigment clumps 299, 299f  
Focal retinal pigment epitheliopathy,  
    acute 284  
Foetal nuclear fibres, Y-shaped sutures  
    of 185f  
Foetal nucleus 185  
Fogging technique 598  
Follicle 72, 75, 520  
    distribution of 72  
    pathological structure of 69  
Follicular adenoviral conjunctivitis, acute 75f  
Follicular center lymphoma 439  
Follicular conjunctivitis  
    acute 111, 521  
    chronic 385, 521  
Follicular hypertrophy 72  
    acute 74  
Folliculosis, benign 521  
Forced duction test 370  
Foreign body sensation 544  
Formaldehyde 628, 629  
    gas 628  
    generation of 629  
    neutralisation of 629  
Forming aqueous outflow system 570  
Formyl peptide molecules 156  
Fornix, lower 520  
Foscarnet 466, 468  
Foster-Kennedy syndrome 336  
Fovea  
    centralis, microscopic structure of 274f  
    centralis, structure of 273  
    level of 272f

Foveal avascular zone 272  
Foveal hypoplasia 191  
Foveal schisis 300  
Foveola 272  
Foville's syndrome 347  
Framycetin 466  
Frank epithelial  
    defects 118  
    erosions 81  
Freer's periosteum elevator 624, 625f  
Frequent face wash 73  
Frontalis sling operation 398, 398f  
Fucala's operation 54  
Fuchs' dystrophy 137, 557  
Fuchs' endothelial corneal  
    dystrophy 134, 134f  
Fuchs' spots 90  
Fuchs' uveitis  
    features of 561  
    syndrome 174, 256  
Fulminant meningoencephalitis 116  
Fumigation 628  
    method of 629  
Funduscopy 422  
Fundus  
    autofluorescence 281  
    biomicroscopy, indirect 609  
    examination 36, 37, 40, 203, 223, 280,  
        332, 528, 548, 566  
    methods of 610  
    techniques of 532, 606  
    flavimaculatus 301  
    fluorescein  
        angiogram 303f, 304f  
        angiography 278, 281, 300, 301, 303,  
            304, 306, 331, 479, 538  
    imaging studies 278  
    tumours of 530  
Fungal corneal ulcer 110f  
    characteristic features of 555  
    diagnosis of 555  
Fungal endophthalmitis 176, 220, 491  
    pathognomic feature of 562  
Fungal infections 491  
Fungal keratitis 117  
Fungal ulcers, secondary 109  
Fungal uveitis 171  
Fungizone 468  
Furrow degeneration 128  
Fusarium 109, 110, 468  
    solani keratitis 468

## G

Galactokinase, deficiency of 200  
Galactosaemia 192, 492  
    classical 200  
Galactosaemic cataract 200  
Ganciclovir 112, 466, 467  
    implants 464  
Ganglion cell 19  
    layer 273  
    polysynaptic 273  
Gasserian ganglion 113, 115, 118  
Gastric lavage 333  
Gatifloxacin 466  
Gaucher's disease 529  
General operation theatre, basic  
    requirements of 614



- Geniculate body  
lateral 323  
neurons of 274
- Geniculate nucleus, lesions of lateral 326
- Gentamicin 86, 177, 465
- Genital gel 476
- Geometrical optics 24, 600
- Ghost cell 259  
glaucoma 259
- Giant papillary conjunctivitis 61, 84, 84f
- Gifford's sign 432
- Glands  
of Henle 70  
of Krause 60, 403  
of Manz 60  
of Moll 379  
of Wolfring 60, 403  
of Zeis 378
- Glass Blower's cataract 201
- Glass lenses 49
- Glass worker's cataract 201
- Glaucoma 221, 222, 226, 231, 235, 241, 246, 256-259, 499, 506, 528, 567, 569, 633  
absolute 254, 544, 550, 567, 568  
primary angle-closure 254  
acute 408  
angle closure 523  
congestive 164f  
narrow-angle 569  
open-angle inflammatory 256  
secondary 315  
anatomy 226  
angle closure 248  
inflammatory 256  
angle recession 258  
applied physiology 227  
blindness 231  
capsular 257  
causes of 572  
classification of 231, 569, 590  
congenital 231, 232, 233f, 234, 261, 410  
damage, severity of 244f  
developmental 231, 232, 261, 570  
diagnosis of 242f, 543  
drainage device 235, 257, 281  
operations 263  
early 162  
epidemiology 231  
field defects, diagnosis of 538  
filtration surgery 475  
global prevalence of 231  
haemolytic 259  
hemifield test 537  
high pressure 246  
implant, ex-press 263  
infantile 232  
inflammatory 106, 166, 256, 258, 261  
juvenile 232  
laser for 483  
laser goniotomy for  
developmental 483  
malignant 258, 572  
neovascular 257, 316, 572  
clinical profile 257  
newborn 232  
pathognomic sign of 239  
pathophysiology of 226  
phacoantigenic 255  
phacomorphic 199, 254, 255, 255f, 564  
phacotopic 199, 254, 255  
pigmentary 256, 572  
postinflammatory 162, 166, 572  
previous episodes of 246  
primary  
adult 231  
congenital 232, 570  
developmental 232, 570  
open-angle 236  
pseudoefferation 572  
pseudophakic malignant 258  
secondary 106, 114, 116, 162, 174, 183, 231, 254, 257, 280, 458, 553, 571  
congenital 235, 570  
developmental 235  
steroid-induced 165, 258, 572  
surgery 477, 623  
surgical procedures for 260, 632  
traumatic 258, 449  
true congenital 232  
type of 632  
uncontrolled 245  
valve implants 263
- Glaucomatocyclopic crisis 256  
features of 561
- Glaucomatous  
cupping, features of 571  
field defects 571  
advanced 241  
nomenclature of 240  
ocular damage, pathogenesis of 231  
optic  
atrophy 239, 340  
nerve head changes 237  
stage 181, 182
- Global blindness, statistics of 497
- Global vision  
impairment 497  
and blindness 496  
and blindness, causes of 498
- Globe fixation forceps 616, 616f
- Globe laceration 449
- Globe perforation 178
- Globe rupture 449
- Glucocorticoids 473
- Glucose metabolism, pathways of 186
- Glutaraldehyde 628
- Glutathione 477
- Glycaemia, control of 290
- Glycation end product, advanced 286
- Glycerol 472, 473
- Glycolytic pathway 186
- Glycosaminoglycans theory 258
- Goblet cells 60
- Goldenhar's syndrome 95, 523
- Goldmann's gonioscopes 590f
- Goldmann's perimeter 534, 534f
- Goldmann's three-mirror  
contact lens 610, 610f
- Goldmann's tonometer 531, 532
- Gonioscopes  
concavity of 589  
direct 589  
indirect 589  
types of 589
- Gonioscopy 234, 242, 253, 257, 260, 280, 589  
applications of 590  
compressive 252  
technique of 590f
- Goniotomy  
knife, position of 234f  
technique of 234f
- Gonococcal conjunctivitis 64
- Gonococcal infection 78
- Gonococcal ocular lesions 491
- Gonococcal ophthalmia neonatorum 79
- Gout 492
- Grade levator function 576
- Gram-negative bacilli 102, 177, 465
- Gram-positive  
bacilli 102  
bacteria 156  
filamentous bacteria 102  
organisms 628
- Granular corneal dystrophy 132, 132f
- Granular dystrophy 132
- Granular retinitis 172
- Granulation tissue, fungating mass of 384
- Granulocytes 473
- Granuloma  
peripheral 171  
posterior pole 171
- Granulomatous conjunctival  
inflammations 79
- Granulomatous conjunctivitis 61, 491
- Granulomatous diseases 147
- Granulomatous encephalitis 116
- Granulomatous iritis, chronic 169
- Granulomatous pan-uveitis 173
- Granulomatous uveitis 163, 491  
causes of 560
- Graves' ophthalmopathy 431f, 475, 580  
clinical types of 581
- Grayson-Wilbrandt corneal dystrophy 131
- Guanethidine 434
- Gumma of iris 525
- Gunn sign 282, 284
- Gyrate atrophy, essential 179

## H

- Haab's striae 100, 233
- Haemangioma 399
- Haemoglobins, abnormal 291
- Haemophilus aegyptius 102
- Haemophilus influenzae 62, 410, 426
- Haemorrhage  
petechial 63  
subconjunctival 75, 75f  
splinter 246  
subarachnoid 346  
subconjunctival 93f, 218, 348
- Haemorrhagic conjunctivitis, acute, 77
- Haemorrhagic hypopyon 160
- Haemorrhagic inflammation 88
- Haemorrhagic pigment epithelial  
detachment 306
- Haemorrhagic retinitis 172
- Haemorrhagic retinopathy 279
- Haemostasis 208
- Haemostatic forceps 617
- Halberstaedter prowezek bodies 68
- Hallermann-Streiff-Francois syndrome 191
- Hallgren's syndrome 298
- Haloperidol 494
- Hameralopia 514
- Hammer 624f
- Hand-held magnet 453f



- Hand-Schüller-Christian disease 440
- Hansen's disease 169
- Hard exudates 282, 287, 529  
causes of 546
- Hardy-Rand-Rittler plates 343
- Hassall-Henle bodies 126
- Hayreh's theory 336
- Head injury 344, 525  
ocular signs in 347
- Head posture 518  
causes of abnormal 544
- Headache 236
- Heart defects 191
- Heavy metals 494
- Heerfordt's syndrome 173
- Helium neon 482
- Helmholtz theory 18
- Hemeralopia 342
- Hemianopia 334f  
right homonymous 326
- Hemianopic pupillary responses,  
contralateral 326
- Hemispheric occlusion 280
- Hemoglobin 482
- Hemosiderotic glaucoma 259
- Hepatocerebral renal syndrome 235
- Hepatolenticular degeneration 200
- Herbert follicles 69
- Herbert's pits 70  
trachomatous 70f
- Hereditary dystrophy 300
- Hereditary endothelial dystrophy,  
congenital 135
- Hering's law of equal innervation 582
- Herpes simplex  
conjunctivitis 79  
infections 491  
keratitis 110, 116, 124, 523, 544  
ocular lesions of 111, 555  
ophthalmia neonatorum 78  
uveitis 172  
virus 88, 111, 172  
features of 555  
infection 466
- Herpes zoster 115, 523  
characteristic features of 556  
ophthalmicus 113, 171, 491, 544, 556  
cutaneous lesions of 114f  
ocular lesions of 556  
virus infection 466
- Herpetic conjunctivitis 76
- Herpetic iridocyclitis 111
- Herpetic keratitis 112  
attack of 555  
features of recurrent 555
- Herpetic keratoconjunctivitis 110
- Hertel's exophthalmometer 422, 422f
- Hertoghe's sign 83
- Hess chart in right lateral rectus palsy 371f
- Hess screen 370f  
test 370
- Heterochromia  
acquired 154  
iris 154  
iridium 154
- Heterophoria 358  
A and V pattern 371  
physiological 358  
types of 583
- Hexamidine 118
- Hirschberg's corneal reflex test 365, 365f, 583
- Hirschberg's test 581
- Histoplasma capsulatum 171
- Hollenhorst plaque 277
- Holmgren's wool test 343
- Holmium YAG laser 414
- Homatropine 164, 247, 593
- Homocystinuria 222, 492, 526
- Homonymous hemianopia 325, 326, 346, 530  
causes of 546  
complete 326  
contralateral 326  
left 326
- Homonymous macular defects, bilateral  
327
- Honeycomb appearance 220, 304, 304f
- Hordeola, external 381
- Hordeolum  
external 383  
externum 383f, 385, 574  
internum 380, 385f, 408
- Hormones 494
- Horner's muscle 405
- Horner's syndrome 378, 395, 398, 525, 545
- Horse-shoe tear 311f
- Hot air oven 627
- Hot fomentation 108
- Hotz procedure 388
- Hruby lens 610f  
biomicroscopy 532, 609
- Human immunodeficiency virus 490
- Humphrey single field printout  
arbitrary division of 536f  
evaluation of 536
- Humphrey's field analyzer 534f, 535
- Hurler's syndrome 235
- Hutchinson's pupil 348
- Hutchinson's rule 113
- Hutchinson's teeth 125
- Hutchinson's triad 125
- Hyaline degeneration 127  
primary 127  
secondary 127
- Hyaloid artery, persistent 275
- Hyaloid membrane  
anterior 264  
posterior 264, 266
- Hyaloid system of vessels 10
- Hyaloid vessel 265
- Hyaloidocapsular ligament of Weiger 184
- Hyaluronic acid 272
- Hyaluronidase 476
- Hydrazine hydrate 557
- Hydrocortisone 473, 474
- Hydrodelineation 211f
- Hydrodissection 208, 211, 211f, 212  
cannula 623, 623f
- Hydrogen peroxide 628
- Hydrophthalmos 233
- Hydroxyethyl cellulose 476
- Hydroxypropyl methylcellulose 476
- Hyperacute conjunctivitis 65f
- Hyperaemia 75, 382  
acute transient 92  
causes of 92  
chronic 92  
recurrent 92
- Hyperfluorescence 538
- Hyperglycaemia 192, 286  
chronic 286
- Hyperlacrimation 405  
causes of 408  
primary 408
- Hyperlysinemia 222
- Hypermetropia 195, 199  
senile 197
- Hypermetropia 34, 35, 449, 601  
components of 601  
high 567, 602  
latent 601  
non-treated cases of 601  
total 601
- Hypermetropic eye 34f, 47f, 247
- Hyperopia 34  
refractive surgery for 54
- Hyperosmotic agents 234, 243, 472, 473
- Hyperphoria 358
- Hyperplasia 183  
papillary 69
- Hypertelorism 235, 424, 425, 493
- Hypertension 204, 279, 282, 290  
acute 281  
chronic 282  
malignant arterial 283  
ocular 231, 242, 245, 571  
pregnancy-induced 284
- Hypertensive retinopathy  
chronic 282  
management of 284  
staging of 284
- Hypertensive uveitis syndromes,  
specific 256
- Hyperthyroidism 492
- Hypertonic saline 134, 219
- Hypertrophy  
mild papillary 66  
predominant papillary 72
- Hypertropia 424
- Hyphaema 219, 221, 316, 447f, 524  
causes of 545  
traumatic 447
- Hypocalcaemia 192
- Hypocalcaemic cataract 200
- Hypocholesterolaemia 539
- Hypoparathyroidism 492
- Hypoplasia 234  
maxillary 235
- Hypopyon 110, 160, 524, 552  
causes of 545  
corneal ulcer 105, 106f, 200, 553  
development of 105
- Hyposecretion  
idiopathic 579  
primary age-related 406
- Hypotension, systemic 232
- Hypotony 528  
traumatic 449
- Hypotropia 396
- Hypovitaminosis A 551
- Hypoxic retinopathy, advent of 285
- Hypomellose 407, 478
- Ibuprofen 474
- Icterohaemorrhagica conjunctivitis 92
- Idoxuridine 88, 408, 466, 467



- lidopupillary membrane 10  
 limbert-Fick law 531  
 Illumination, methods of 589  
 Imidazole 118  
   antifungal drugs 468, 555  
 Immature cataract 197f  
 Immature senile cataract 194, 194f, 197, 198, 199f  
   cortical 195f  
 Immunodeficiency syndrome, acquired 387, 490  
 Immunomodulators 475, 476  
 Immunosuppressive agents 464, 473  
 Immunosuppressive drugs 165, 166, 173, 464, 475  
 Impairment, blue-yellow 342  
 Inadequate stimuli 330  
 Incision  
   closure of 206, 208  
   depth of 52f  
   posterior lip of 260f  
   subciliary 442f  
 Incisional biopsy 423  
 Incongruous homonymous hemianopia 326  
 Index ametropia 601  
 Index irregular astigmatism 44  
 Indirect ophthalmoscopy 611  
   optics of 608f  
   principle of 610  
   technique of 609f  
 Indirect slit-lamp fundus biomicroscopy, technique of 610f  
 Indocyanine green 479  
 Indole derivatives 474  
 Indomethacin 474, 494  
 Infantile nucleus 185  
 Infantile nystagmus syndrome 374  
 Infection  
   acute 501  
   primary source of 73  
   sources of 428  
   spread of 73  
   transmission of 73  
 Infectious eye diseases, prevalence of 497  
 Infiltrating tumours, diffuse 315  
 Infiltrative phlyctenular keratitis, diffuse 86  
 Inflammatory cells 162  
 Inflammatory diseases 268  
 Inflammatory proptosis, differential diagnosis of acute 429f  
 Infraorbital nerve 379  
 Infratrochlear branch 379  
 Inorganic electrolytes, balanced amount of 476  
 Intensive antibiotic therapy 427  
 Intercalary staphyloma 150f, 558  
 Interocular ring implantation 53  
 Interferon therapy 331  
 Intermarginal strip 377  
 Intermittent diplopia 48  
 Intermittent proptosis, causes of 421, 580  
 Intermuscular septa 418  
 Internuclear ophthalmoplegia 370  
 Internuncial fibres 327  
 Interstitial keratitis 124, 125f, 234, 491, 556  
   causes of 124  
   tuberculous 125  
   type of 113  
 Intracameral antibiotics 213  
 Intracameral injection 464  
 Intracapsular cataract extraction  
   era of 616  
   surgical steps of 207f  
 Intracranial aneurysms 346  
 Intracranial haemorrhages 336, 346  
 Intracranial hypertension, idiopathic 336  
 Intracranial infections 336, 346  
 Intracranial mass lesions, focal signs of 347  
 Intracranial pressure, raised 232, 277, 279, 282, 346, 491  
 Intracranial space-occupying lesions 346  
 Intracranial tuberculoma 491  
 Intraocular naevi 400  
 Intraepithelial melanoma 97  
 Intralesional steroid 399  
 Intraocular disease 223  
 Intraocular fluids 200  
 Intraocular foreign body 450, 451, 586  
   retention of 451f  
 Intraocular haemorrhage 106, 259  
 Intraocular implant operation 631  
 Intraocular inflammation 304  
 Intraocular irrigating solutions 477  
 Intraocular lens 35, 38, 54, 55, 213, 625, 625f  
   implantation 38, 213, 566, 602, 622, 630  
   of rigid 217  
   primary 631  
   secondary 631  
 injector 626  
   hand piece 626f  
   malposition of 221  
   paediatric 192  
   posterior chamber 204, 209f, 215f, 567, 602  
   pupillary capture of 222  
   types of 213, 631  
   unifocal 215  
 Intraocular part 322  
 Intraocular pressure 113, 137, 162, 177, 178, 203, 231, 242f, 245, 246, 253, 254, 449, 492, 528, 548, 551, 554  
   lowering drugs 134  
   lowering of 108  
   maintenance of 14, 227, 229  
   miotics reduce 471  
 Intraocular surgery 612  
   basic 630  
 Intraocular tumour 201, 257, 483  
   necrosis 176  
   primary 180  
 Intraorbital abscess 425, 426  
 Intraorbital meningiomas, primary 437  
 Intraorbital structures 418  
 Intraretinal foreign body 454  
 Intrasceral aqueous vessels 227  
 Intrauterine infections 192  
 Intravenous  
   fluorescein 479  
   mannitol 252  
   methylprednisolone 331  
 Intravitreal antibiotics 177  
 Intravitreal dexamethasone 281  
 Intravitreal drug implants 464  
 Intravitreal foreign body 454  
 Intravitreal injection 178, 464  
 Intravitreal triamcinolone 281  
 Intumescent cataract 194  
 Intumescent lens 255  
 Intumescent senile cataractous lens 255f  
 Involutional ectropion 390, 391, 391f  
 Involutional entropion 389  
 Involutional ptosis 396  
 Ipsilateral epistaxis 441  
 Iridectomy 206, 260  
   operation 631  
   indications of 632  
   peripheral 260, 261  
 Iridemia 154  
 Irideremia 525  
 Iridocorneal dysgenesis 235  
 Iridocorneal endothelial syndromes 259  
 Iridocyclectomy 183  
 Iridocyclitis 65, 114, 116, 155, 158, 162f, 164, 200, 267, 316, 491, 525, 550  
   acute 162, 164f  
   recurrent 173  
   case of  
     acute 559  
     chronic 559  
   complications of 561  
   differential diagnosis of acute 560  
   healed 201f  
   late glaucoma in 162  
   post-traumatic 451  
   purulent 553  
   toxic 106, 553  
   treatment of 164, 256, 561  
   unilateral 560  
   violent 106  
 Iridodialysis 218, 447, 447, 525  
 Iridodonesis 37, 195, 223, 525, 566  
   causes of 545  
   mild 38, 566  
 Iridodysgenesis 235  
 Iridoplegia 447  
 Iridotomy 632  
 Irido-trabecular contact 253  
 Iris 12, 30, 105, 151, 177, 179, 218, 233, 251, 254, 451, 451f, 457, 459, 492, 548, 551  
   angiography 479  
   anterior surface of 151f  
   antiflexion of 447  
   atrophy  
     essential 179  
     patch of 562  
     progressive 259, 260  
     simple 179  
   bombe 247, 560  
     formation 161, 248f  
   changes 292  
   claw intraocular lens implant 214f  
   colour of 525  
   cyst 525  
   degenerations of 179  
   detachment of 447  
   endothelial layer of 152  
   examination of 525  
   forceps 616, 616f  
   heterochromia of 154  
   hooks 626, 626f  
   hypoplasia 493  
   injury 218  
   insertion, flat 233  
   lens diaphragm 103  
   lesions of 483  
   naevus syndrome 260



neovascularisation of 162  
 nodules 161, 161f, 560  
 part of 151  
 peripheral 248  
 prolapse of 104f, 219, 553  
   knuckle of 260f  
   management 219  
 reposition of 260  
 repositors 622f  
 retractor 617, 617f  
 retroflexion of 447  
 root of 227f  
 shadow, test for 196  
 signs 161  
 stroma 152, 447  
 supported lenses 214  
 surface, nodules on 525  
 transillumination 257  
   abnormal 222  
 tremulousness of 566  
 tumours of 180, 183  
 typical coloboma of 154f  
 vascular congestion of 103

Iritis 110, 155  
 acute 169  
   plastic 170  
   mild 113

Irradiation, removal of 202

Irregular anterior chamber, causes of 524

Irregular astigmatism  
 causes of 603  
 treatment of 603

Irregular pupil shape 162

Irrigating wire vectis 622f  
 technique 208

Irritants, direct 92

Irritation, local cause of 65

Irritative reaction, local 452

Ischaemic maculopathy 289

Ischaemic neuropathy, non-arteritic  
 anterior 335

Ischaemic optic  
 atrophy 340  
 neuropathy  
   anterior 334  
   arteritic anterior 334

Ishihara's pseudoisochromatic chart 343f

Isometropia 44

Isoniazid 494

Isopterolene 469

Isopter 532  
 contraction 240

Isosorbide 473

Itching 515

Itraconazole 118, 468

Ivermectin 501

## J

Jackson's cross cylinder 598f  
 test 44, 598

Jaeger's chart 517, 518f

Javal-Schiötz keratometer 597, 597f  
 basic structure of 597f

Jaw-Winking phenomenon 396

Jellinek's sign 432

Jerk nystagmus 584

Joffroy's sign 432

Jones dye tests 409, 519

Jones operation 389

Jones test  
 primary 409  
 secondary 409

Junctional naevi 400

Junctional scotoma 325

Juvenile best's macular dystrophy 296

Juxtacaecal choroiditis 168

Juxtacanalicular meshwork 227

Juxtafoveal retinal telangiectasia,  
 idiopathic 294

Juxtapapillary choroiditis 168

Juxtapapillary tumors 319

## K

Kaposi's sarcoma 491

Kayser-Fleischer ring 200, 452, 492

Kearns-Sayre syndrome 396

Keith-Wagner classification 284

Kelley's punch 623, 623f

Kelman multiflex 213, 631

Kelman-McPherson forceps 622, 623f

Keractasia 553

Keratalgia, recurrent 446

Keratectomy, phototherapeutic 44, 127, 138,  
 143, 483

Keratic precipitates 112, 125,  
 159, 160f, 203, 456

Keratin genes, mutations in 130

Keratitis 101, 111, 116, 551  
 acute diffuse superficial 121  
 allergic 101, 118, 552  
 chronic diffuse superficial 121  
 classify 552  
 deep 101, 124, 552  
 diffuse superficial 121  
 idiopathic 102, 552  
 infective 101, 102, 552  
 marginal 381  
 metaherpetic 113  
 mucous plaque 115  
 neuroparalytic 118, 544  
 nonulcerative 101, 121, 552  
   superficial 121  
 nummular 114, 115f  
 phlyctenular 85, 118  
 protozoal 116  
 punctate 121  
 stromal 111, 112  
   necrotic 113  
   viral 555  
 superficial 69, 74, 101, 385, 552  
   punctate 75, 75f, 121, 124, 556  
 suppurative 117  
 syphilitic interstitial 125  
 traumatic 101, 552  
 trophic 101, 111, 552  
 ulcerative 101, 102, 552  
   phlyctenular 85  
 vernal 118  
 viral 117  
 zoster 114, 116

Keratoacanthomas 400

Keratocoele 106

Keratoconjunctivitis  
 acute epidemic 75f  
 phlyctenular 84, 491  
 radiation 459  
 sicca 124, 406, 480, 556, 579

superior limbic 123f, 124, 492, 552

toxic 88

vernal 61, 80, 81f, 82f

Keratoconus 84, 135, 136f, 522

contact lenses 137

corneal collagen cross linking 137

intacs 137

keratoplasty 137

ocular conditions 136

spectacle correction 137

systemic conditions 136

Keratocytes 100

Keratoglobus 100, 137, 137f, 522

Keratolysis, marginal 120

Keratomalacia 488, 488f, 489f

Keratomes 618, 618f

Keratometry 44, 136, 596  
 biometry 203  
 corneal topography 203

Keratoneuritis, radial 116, 117f

Keratopathy  
 band shape 127, 127f, 163  
 exposure 119  
 neurotrophic 118  
 primary lipid 126  
 subepithelial band 135  
 vernal 81, 82f

Keratoplasty 113, 116, 125, 127, 141, 143f,  
 507, 557, 558  
 anterior lamellar 141  
 conductive 54  
 contralateral 141  
 deep  
   anterior lamellar 141  
   lamellar endothelial 141  
 endothelial 141  
 graft rejection 142  
 incisions 483  
 indications  
   after penetrating 141  
   of endothelial 141  
 lamellar 141  
 monovision conductive 55  
 operation, complications of 558  
 penetrating 73, 118, 134, 138, 141, 558  
 rotational 141  
 technique of 143f

Keratoprosthesis 73, 143, 144f, 459  
 types 144

Keratoses, seborrheic 399

Keratotomy, radial 52, 52f

Keratomalacia 558

Kesten-Baum index 529

Ketoconazole 468, 555

Ketorolac tromethamine 474

Ketotifen fumarate 476

Ketssey's operation, modified 388

Kinin system 474

Klebsiella 552

Koch-Weeks bacillus 62, 63

Koeppel's goniolens 589

Koeppel's lens 234  
 modified 610, 610f

Koeppel's nodules 158, 161, 161f, 525

Kreb's citric acid cycle 186

Krimsky's corneal reflex test 365

Krimsky's test 27, 605

Krukenberg's spindle 572

Kuhnt-Szymanowski operation, modified 392f

Kveim's test 164, 173



## L

- Laceration 455
- Lacrimal abscess 413  
stage of 412, 413f
- Lacrimal apparatus 4, 12, 403, 403f, 585  
diseases of 403, 577  
examination of 203, 519  
lesions 455  
operations 633  
sequelae 71
- Lacrimal canaliculi 404
- Lacrimal cannula 624f
- Lacrimal deficiency 406
- Lacrimal excretory system, normal 410f
- Lacrimal fascia 404
- Lacrimal gland 7f, 12, 173, 403, 419  
carcinoma 417  
development of 12f  
dislocation of 455  
ducts of 403  
epithelial tumours of 416  
inflammations of 380  
malignancies 417  
non-epithelial tumours of 416  
swelling of 415  
tumours of 416
- Lacrimal mucocele 411f  
stage of 411
- Lacrimal passages 404, 455
- Lacrimal probes 624, 624f
- Lacrimal pump mechanism 405f
- Lacrimal puncta 404  
inspection of 519
- Lacrimal sac 12, 404, 408, 419, 551, 624  
area, inspection of 519  
chronic inflammation of 410  
curette 624  
dissection of 413  
dissector 624  
and curette 624f  
inflammation of 380, 410  
junction of 410f  
removal of 415
- Lacrimal scintillography 410, 410f
- Lacrimal syringing 519  
indications of 578  
results of 578  
technique of 409f  
test 409
- Lacrimal tests 479
- Lacrimal wound retractor, self-retaining 617, 617f
- Lacrimatory nucleus 7f
- Lacriset 477
- Lagophthalmos 392, 393, 519, 554  
causes of 544  
treatment of cause of 408
- Lambert-Eaton myasthenia syndrome 395, 396
- Lamellar cataract 190f, 565
- Lamellar keratoplasty 91, 558  
anterior 558
- Lamellar laceration 444
- Lamina cribrosa region 274
- Lamina fusca 146
- Langerhans cell histiocytosis 440
- Larva migrans, visceral 170
- Laser  
ablation corneal procedures 52  
beam, production of 481  
burns, grid pattern 633  
in-situ keratomileusis 38, 52, 483  
operation for myopia 603  
procedure of 53f  
interferometry 203  
iridotomy 254, 255, 483  
prophylactic 250, 254  
light, properties of 481, 633  
peripheral iridotomy 252  
photocoagulation 303  
complications of 483  
indirect 166  
pupilloplasty 223  
safety 483  
system components 481f  
tissue interaction, categories of 482f  
trabeculoplasty 244  
selective 245  
types of 481, 482, 633
- Lash abnormalities 381
- Latanoprost 243, 252, 469
- Lattice corneal dystrophy 130f, 131, 132  
classical 132
- Lattice degeneration 298, 299f
- Lattice dystrophy 523
- Laurence-Moon-Biedl syndrome 297
- Laws governing ocular movements 352
- Least diffusion, circle of 42, 600
- Leber's cells 69
- Leber's disease 329
- Leber's hereditary optic neuropathy 331
- Leber's miliary aneurysms 295
- Leber's optic atrophy 342
- Lens 28, 218, 233, 447, 451, 451f, 484, 492, 548, 634  
absence of 526  
absorbs rays 24  
anterior surface of 527, 546  
antioxidant mechanisms of 187  
artificial 524  
aspiration 192, 212  
attachments of 184  
based procedures 54, 55  
capsule 184  
cardinal data of 28  
centre of curvature 28  
clarity 477  
colour of 197  
congenital anomalies of 224  
curves of 50  
delivery, methods of 206  
diseases of 184, 563  
dislocation of 199, 224, 255, 448, 564  
displacements of 222, 223f  
edge of 51  
epithelium 184  
examination technique 590  
expressor 617, 617f  
fibre, characteristic of 186  
focal length 28  
forward subluxation of 222f  
fragments 212  
hard 51  
high index plastic 49  
hook 630  
in phakic eyes 259  
induced glaucoma 199, 254, 258, 564, 572  
induced secondary angle closure glaucoma 254  
induced uveitis 169, 174  
irrigation-aspiration of 255  
lenticular form 50  
luxation of 224  
matter, aspiration of 212  
opacity classification system 197, 198f  
optical centre 28  
particle 524  
posterior capsule of 265  
posterior chamber 214  
power of 28, 51  
preventive antioxidant mechanisms of 187  
principal focus 28  
proteins, role of 186  
radius of curvature 28  
removal, steps of 630  
shape of 50, 527  
soft 51  
spatula 621, 622f, 630  
spontaneous dislocation of 218  
subluxation of 199, 448, 526, 545  
suspensory ligaments of 185  
thickness of 51  
transparency 186  
traumatic  
types of 28  
vesicle, formation of 9
- Lensectomy 213
- Lenticulus 224  
anterior 224, 225f, 527  
posterior 224, 225f, 527
- Lenticular opacity 515
- Lentigo maligna type 401
- Leprosy 169, 491, 544  
ocular lesions of 491
- Leptotrophic uveitis 169  
clinical types 169  
treatment 169
- Leptomeningeal angioma 320
- Letterer-Siwe disease 440
- Leucocoria 199f, 266, 315  
causes of 266, 545  
differential diagnosis of 317  
right eye 315f
- Leucomatous corneal opacity 557
- Leukaemia  
infiltration 440  
ocular changes in 292
- Leukaemic infiltrates, perivascular 292
- Leukaemic retinopathy 291, 493  
characteristic features of 291
- Levator function 396  
assessment of 396, 397f
- Levator palpebrae superioris muscle 378, 403
- Levator resection 397, 397f, 398f
- Levobunolol 243, 470, 473
- Lids 78, 178, 251, 484, 492  
arteries of 379  
avulsion of 455  
clamp 621, 621f  
crease 395  
deformity, correct 501  
examination of 203  
folds, extra 83  
half closure of 43  
hygiene 381, 382  
lag 395, 432  
lesions 115



- malignant tumour of 577  
 margins 83, 377, 388, 391, 519  
   hyperaemia of 66  
   position of 387  
 molluscum contagiosum of 385f  
 movements of 519  
 oedema of 159, 394, 544  
 passive oedema of 380  
 position of 377  
 radiation dermatitis of 459  
 retraction 398, 431f  
   causes of 398  
 signs 431  
 solid oedema of 380  
 spatula 623, 624f  
 speculums 614  
 surgery 623  
 swelling of 105  
 tumours 577
- Light 23, 600  
   adaptation 17  
   diffraction of 32, 32f  
   nature of 23  
   properties of 23  
   rays, projection of 203  
   reaction, mormal 329  
   reflection of 24, 600  
   reflex 327  
     consensual 327, 526  
     direct 327  
     indirect 327  
     pathway of 327, 327f  
   refraction of 25, 27f, 600
- Lim's forceps 616, 616f
- Limbal  
   conjunctiva 60, 84  
   dermoid 95f  
   epithelium 99  
   incision, anterior 260f  
   papillae occur 81  
   relaxing incisions 54  
   ring method 453  
   scar 566  
   stem cell transplantation 458
- Limbic keratoconjunctivitis, superior 123
- Limbus 3
- Lincoff's rule 310
- Linear capsulotomy 208
- Lipid keratopathy, secondary 126
- Lipodermoid 95f, 435, 436f
- Lipoid keratopathy 126
- Lipoteichoic acid 156
- Liquefaction 448  
   age-related 266
- Lisamin green 406
- Lisch epithelial corneal dystrophy 131
- Lissamine green 479
- Lister's perimeter 533, 533f
- Listeria species 102
- Lithium carbonate 494
- Logmar visual acuity chart 517, 517f
- Lomefloxacin 466
- Loops of Henle 91
- Loratadine 476
- Loss of vision, gradual progressive 300
- Lost lens syndrome 221
- Loteprednol 474, 476
- Loupe and lens examination 587, 591  
   technique of 588f
- Low vision 496  
   aid 42, 298, 307, 510
- Lowe's syndrome 101, 187, 188, 192, 200,  
   224, 235, 565
- Lower lid retractors, plication of 389, 390f
- Lucentis 307, 478
- Luedde's exophthalmometer 422, 422f
- Lyell syndrome 88
- Lyme disease 124
- Lymphadenopathy, pre-auricular 74, 75
- Lymphangioma 436
- Lymphatic drainage 8
- Lymphocytic lymphoma, chronic 439
- Lymphogranuloma venerum 124
- Lymphoid  
   hyperplasia, atypical 439  
   hypophysitis 325  
   malignancy 157  
   tissue lymphoma, mucosa associated 439
- Lymphokines 474
- Lymphoma 113, 493  
   high-grade 440
- Lymphoproliferative tumours 416, 439
- Lysosomal enzymes 474
- Lysozyme, tear levels of 406

# M

- Macropsia 167
- Macula 529  
   congenital anomalies of 274  
   lutea 271
- Macular corneal dystrophy 133, 133f
- Macular degeneration  
   age-related 305, 307f, 483, 498, 529, 543  
   exudative age-related 268  
   senile 305
- Macular diseases 483
- Macular disorders 300
- Macular dystrophy 296  
   hereditary 300
- Macular fibres 240
- Macular function tests 203
- Macular grid test 536
- Macular haemorrhage 529
- Macular histo spot 171
- Macular hole 307, 529  
   central scotoma 308  
   decreased vision 308  
   metamorphopsia 308  
   stages 308f  
   traumatic 307
- Macular oedema 529  
   causes of 546  
   chronic 280  
   clinically significant 289  
   treatment for 281
- Macular opacity 557
- Macular photocoagulation 290
- Macular pigments 482
- Macular research classification  
   committee 305
- Macular scarring 529
- Macular telangiectasia, idiopathic 294
- Maculopathy  
   acquired 300  
   mixed 289
- Madarosis 83, 387, 519, 573  
   local causes of 387
- Maddox rod 360f  
   test 203, 359, 360f
- Maddox tangent scale 360f
- Maddox wing 361f  
   test 360, 361f
- Magnocellular pathway 16
- Malaria 124
- Malingering 344  
   amblyopia 344  
   chiasmal tumours 344  
   cone rod dystrophy 344  
   cortical blindness 344  
   retrobulbar neuritis 344  
   tests for 344
- Malyugin ring 626, 626f
- Mandibulofacial dysostosis 424
- Mannitol 472, 473
- Manual small incision cataract  
   surgery 208, 210f, 509
- Marcus Gunn jaw winking ptosis 395, 398, 576
- Marcus Gunn pupil 328, 526  
   causes of 545
- Marfan's syndrome 136, 149, 222, 222f, 225,  
   235, 387, 526
- Margin reflex distance 396
- Marginal chalazion, treatment of 574
- Masquerade syndrome 156, 157, 169, 176  
   neoplastic 157  
   non-neoplastic 157
- Mast cell stabilizer 80, 83, 84, 476
- Maturation, stages of 194
- Maumenee corneal dystrophy 135
- McCallan's classification 71
- McPherson's forceps 630
- Mectizan, doses of 501
- Medial canthal tendon laxity 391
- Median facial cleft syndrome 424
- Medrysone 474
- Medulloepithelioma 183
- Meesmann corneal dystrophy 130
- Mefenamic acid 474
- Megalocornea 100, 522
- Meibomian cyst 573
- Meibomian gland 378  
   carcinoma lower eyelid 401f  
   dysfunction 406  
   opening of 377, 382
- Meibomianitis 83
- Meibomitis 382  
   acute 382, 408  
   chronic 382, 382f  
   treatment of 382
- Meige syndrome 406
- Melanin 482
- Melanocarcinoma 401
- Melanocytoma 180
- Melanoma  
   diffuse malignant 180  
   malignant 97, 183, 398, 401, 402f, 440  
   necrotic 180  
   primary 97  
   superficial spreading 97
- Melanosis  
   oculi, congenital 94f  
   precancerous 97  
   subepithelial 94
- Meningioma 324, 437  
   sphenoidal ridge 439f
- Meningitis 346
- Meningococcal infection 491



- Meningococcus 62  
 Meniscus lenses 50  
 Mesenchyme  
   fibrous layer of 10  
   vascular layer of 10  
 Metabolic diseases 157, 268  
 Metabolic disorders 147, 188, 300  
 Metabolic syndromes 235  
 Metamorphopsia 167  
 Methanol poisoning 333  
 Methazolamide 471  
 Methicillin 465  
 Methotrexate 165, 475  
 Methyl alcohol amblyopia 333  
 Methylated spirit 628  
 Methylcellulose 476, 478, 589  
 Methylene blue 479  
 Methylprednisolone 473  
 Metipranolol 470  
 Meyer's loop 326  
 Mikulicz's syndrome 173  
 Miconazole 110, 118, 468  
   produces, application of 468  
 Microaneurysms 287, 529  
 Microblepharon 379  
 Microcornea 100, 522  
 Microcystoid retinal degeneration 299  
 Microdendritic epithelial ulcer 114, 115f  
 Microincision cataract surgery 212  
 Microphacoemulsification, conventional  
   630  
 Microphthalmia 266  
 Microphthalmos 493, 519, 544  
 Micropsia 167  
 Middle chiasmal syndrome 325  
 Migraine 246  
   ophthalmoplegic 395  
 Mikulicz's syndrome 416  
 Miliary tubercles, multiple 169  
 Miliary ulcer 85  
 Millard-Gubler syndrome 347  
 Miosis 395, 494, 525  
   causes of 525, 545  
   pharmacological 247  
   traumatic 447  
 Miotic 473  
   therapy, role of 252  
 Mirror 24  
   concave 25  
   convex 25  
   focal length 25  
   plane 25  
   pole of 25  
   principal axis 25  
   retinoscopes 592f  
   spherical 25  
 Misty gel 476  
 Mitchell-Wong classification 284, 285f  
 Mitterdorf dot 265  
 Mixed cell melanomas 180  
 Mizolastine 476  
 Mobius's sign 432  
 Molecular mimicry 156  
 Molluscum contagiosum 88, 385, 484, 634  
 Molteno implant 263f  
 Mooren's ulcer 120, 121f, 475, 552, 556  
 Moraxella axenfeld bacillus 62  
 Moraxella lacunata 62  
 Morgagnian hypermature cataract 195, 195f  
 Morphine 494  
 Moth-Eaten appearance 174  
 Moxifloxacin 217, 458, 466  
 Mucin  
   deficiency dry eye 579  
   secretory glands 60  
 Mucolytics 83, 407  
 Mucopolysaccharidosis 234, 492  
 Mucopurulent conjunctivitis 85  
 Mucormycosis 425  
 Mucous plaque 116  
 Muller's fibres 273  
 Muller's muscle 577  
 Muller's retractor 617f  
 Multifocal choroiditis, healed lesions of 168f  
 Multifocal placoid pigment epitheliopathy,  
   acute posterior 175  
 Mumps 490  
 Munson's sign 136, 136f  
 Muscae volitantes 267  
 Muscle  
   hook 617f  
   paralysis, isolated 369  
   superior oblique 350f, 351  
 Muscular cone 420  
 Myasthenia gravis 368, 396  
 Mycobacteria 102, 156  
 Mycobacterium leprae 169  
 Mycoplasma 88, 466  
 Mycotic corneal ulcer 109, 555  
 Mycotic ulcer, perforation in 110  
 Mydriasis 204, 469  
   causes of 525, 545  
   pharmacological 247, 250  
   physiological 247, 250  
   traumatic 447  
   unilateral 346  
 Mydriatic 202, 464, 594  
   drugs 593t  
 Mydracain 164  
 Myogenic ptosis, acquired 395  
 Myopia 34, 38, 223, 449, 603  
   basic rule of correcting 41  
   clinical varieties of 602  
   complications of pathological 603  
   operation for 603  
   pathological 40f, 41f, 602  
   progressive 299  
   refractive surgery for 52  
   surgical treatment of 41, 603  
   treatment of 41  
 Myopic crescent 41f  
 Myopic eye 38f, 47f  
 Myositis 425  
 Myotonia dystrophica 188, 565  
 Myotonic dystrophy 193, 396, 527  
 Myasthenia, rebound 376
- N**
- Nadbath block 613, 629  
 Naevoxantho endothelioma 183  
 Naevus 96, 180, 183, 400  
   flammeus 320, 399  
 Nagel's anomaloscope 343  
 Naphazoline 476  
 Naproxen 474  
 Narrow palpebral fissure, causes of 544  
 Nasal mucosa 414  
   exposure of 414f  
 Nasal mucosal flaps, fashioning of 413  
 Nasal retina 17f, 274  
 Nasolacrimal duct 12, 404, 406, 408  
   congenital 234  
 Nasopharynx, tumours of 440  
 Natamycin 110, 468, 555  
 Near reflex 327, 526  
   pathway of 328f  
   preservation of 335  
 Near vision 48, 599  
   blurring of 48  
   chart 518f  
   spectacles 48  
   zone 50  
 Nebula 103  
 Nebular corneal opacity 557  
 Necrotizing scleritis, anterior 148f  
 Nedocromil sodium 476  
 Negative regurgitation test, causes of 577  
 Neisseria gonorrhoeae 62, 102, 552  
 Neomycin 86, 118, 466  
 Neonatal cloudy cornea, differential  
   diagnosis of 101  
 Neonatal conjunctivitis, chemical 78  
 Neostigmine 494  
 Neovascular glaucoma, treatment of 295  
 Nepafenac 474, 476  
 Nephroblastoma 440  
 Nerve 5  
   autonomic 7  
   fibres 340  
   anomalies of 274  
   arrangement of 240f  
   layer 273, 274  
   medullated 275  
   postganglionic 7  
   frontal 5  
   impulse, conduction of 542  
   infratrochlear 6  
   lacrimal 5  
   long ciliary 6  
   motor 6  
   nasociliary 6  
   ophthalmic 5  
   parasympathetic 7  
   posterior ethmoidal 6  
   sensory 5, 379  
   supraorbital 6  
   supratrochlear 6  
   sympathetic 8  
 Neuralgia, post-herpetic 114  
 Neurilemma 322  
 Neuroblastoma 440  
 Neurofibroma 399  
   upper eyelid 400f  
 Neuromyelitis optica 347  
 Neurons, first order 273  
 Neuro-ophthalmic lesions 491  
 Neuro-ophthalmology 322  
 Neuroparalytic keratitis, features of 556  
 Neuropathy, sensory 523  
 Neuroretinal rim, thinning of 238  
 Neuroretinitis 155, 330  
 Neurosensory retina, haemorrhagic  
   detachment of 306  
 Neurosyphilis 346, 491  
 Neurotrophins 231



- Neutral density filter test 366  
 Newcastle conjunctivitis 76  
 Niemann-Pick's disease 529  
 Nifedipine 473  
 Night blindness 296, 341, 488  
 Night vision 40  
 Nikolsky sign 88  
 Nipple cone 136  
 Nodular episcleritis, differential diagnosis of 559  
 Noncommunicable diseases 502  
 Non-healing ulcer, cause of 108  
 Non-Hodgkin b-cell lymphomas 439  
 Non-penetrating filtration surgery 260  
 Nonpigmented epithelium, layer of 153  
 Non-Sjogren's keratoconjunctivitis sicca 406  
 Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs 80, 146, 165, 201, 464, 474  
 Non-striated muscle fibres, layer of 378  
 Norfloxacin 466  
 Nose, tumours of 440  
 Nowstorm cataract 199  
 Nuclear  
   cataract 196*f*, 197, 527  
   management 209  
   sclerosis 196, 199*f*, 563  
   senile cataract 194  
   maturation of 195  
 Nucleus 185, 211  
   drop 219  
   hardness, grading of 198, 199*t*  
   prolapse of 211  
   removal of 208  
 Nutrients cornea, source of 100  
 Nyctalopia 514  
 Nystagmus 135, 315, 373, 375, 376, 584  
   acquired 375  
   amplitude of 373  
   causes of rebound 376  
   central vestibular 375  
   centripetal 376  
   clinical types of 584  
   conjugacy 373  
   direction of 373  
   disconjugate 375  
   dissociated 375  
   down beat 375  
   gaze-evoked 375  
   jerk 373  
   pendular 373  
   peripheral vestibular 375  
   up beat 375  
   vestibular 375  
 Nystatin 468, 555
- O**
- O'Brien's block 613, 629  
   technique of 613*f*  
 Oblique muscles, inferior 351  
 Occipital lobe  
   lesions 327  
   tumours 347  
 Occlusio pupillae 162, 561  
 Ocular absorption 464  
 Ocular adnexa, diseases of 57  
 Ocular akinesia 219  
 Ocular antifungal drugs 555  
 Ocular candidiasis 171  
 Ocular complications 113, 426  
 Ocular defects 191  
 Ocular deviation 362  
 Ocular discomfort 75  
 Ocular diseases 127, 188  
 Ocular examination 202, 452, 516, 549, 559, 563-565, 568, 581  
   techniques of 530  
 Ocular haemorrhages 292  
 Ocular herpes  
   primary 111  
   recurrent 111  
 Ocular infections 68*t*  
 Ocular injury 444, 513, 584  
   perforated 585  
 Ocular ischaemic syndrome 281, 295  
   differential diagnosis of 296*t*  
 Ocular laser therapy 304  
 Ocular lesions 114, 121, 173, 491, 492  
   local therapy for 116  
 Ocular lubricants 381, 382  
 Ocular motility 349, 350, 422  
   defects 432  
   disorders of 581  
   physiology of 19  
   system  
     anatomy of 349  
     physiology of 349  
 Ocular movements 362  
   types of 350  
 Ocular mucous membrane pemphigoid 87  
 Ocular myasthenia 494  
   gravis 475  
 Ocular neuritis 494  
 Ocular pain 515  
 Ocular palsy, clinical varieties of 369  
 Ocular pemphigoid 494  
 Ocular pharmacology 463  
 Ocular recovery, phases of 457, 457*t*  
 Ocular risk factors 335  
 Ocular signs 88, 563  
 Ocular surface squamous neoplasia 96, 484  
 Ocular surgery 304  
   anaesthesia for 612, 629  
 Ocular sympathetic nerves, course of 8*f*  
 Ocular symptoms 516  
 Ocular therapy, topical 304  
 Ocular tissues 6*f*  
 Ocular toxocariasis 170  
 Ocular trauma terminologies 444  
 Ocular treatment, complication of 304  
 Ocular ultrasonography 542  
 Ocular viscoelastic devices 625, 625*f*  
 Oculocardiac reflex 217  
 Oculocerebral-renal syndrome 200, 235  
 Oedema, inflammatory 380  
 Ofloxacin 466  
 Olopatadine 476  
 Omega fatty acid supplements 407  
 Onchocerciasis 491, 497, 500, 501  
 Onycho-keratoprosthesis 144  
 Opaque nerve fibres 275, 275*f*  
 Open-angle glaucoma 256, 257  
   juvenile primary 232  
   primary 236, 242, 261, 471, 472, 571  
   secondary 255, 257, 452  
 Open-globe injury 444, 449  
 Ophthalmia  
   neonatorum 61, 77, 410, 507  
   chemical 79  
   nodosa 79  
   sympathetic 157  
 Ophthalmic artery 5, 5*f*  
   branches of 5  
 Ophthalmic cryo unit 484*f*, 614, 615*f*  
 Ophthalmic instruments 614, 629  
 Ophthalmic lasers and safety 483  
 Ophthalmic nerve 6*f*  
 Ophthalmic operating  
   table 614  
   theatre 614, 615*f*, 626  
 Ophthalmic ultrasonic A and B scan machine 542*f*  
 Ophthalmitis, sympathetic 444, 455, 561, 586  
 Ophthalmology  
   clinical methods in 513  
   cryotherapy in 633  
   indications in 475  
   lasers in 481, 482*t*  
   systemic 487  
 Ophthalmoplegia  
   chronic progressive external 396  
   external 370  
   paralytic internal 48  
   total 370, 515  
 Ophthalmoscope, direct 607*f*, 608-611  
 Ophthalmoscopic examination, indirect 182  
 Ophthalmoscopy 304, 532, 587, 606, 610  
   advantages of indirect 611  
   direct 609*t*  
   indirect 609*t*  
   over indirect ophthalmoscopy, advantages of direct 611  
   types of 610  
 Opponent colour cells, blue yellow 19  
 Opportunistic glaucoma screening 506  
 Opsin 15  
 Optic atrophy 338, 341, 341*f*, 424, 425, 491, 492  
   ascending 339  
   autograde 339  
   autosomal  
     dominant 332  
     heredity 332  
   clinical features of 340  
   consecutive 297*f*, 340  
   descending 339  
   juvenile 332  
   loss of vision 340  
   ophthalmoscopic appearance 340  
   postneuritic 337, 340  
   primary 338, 340  
     consecutive 341*t*  
   pupil 340  
   retrograde 339  
   secondary 339  
     consecutive 341*t*  
   visual field loss 340  
 Optic axis 31  
 Optic canal 418  
 Optic chiasma 323  
 Optic cup 10*f*  
   double-layered 9  
   formation of 9, 9*f*  
 Optic disc 40, 233, 238, 239*f*, 253, 254, 271, 274, 297, 528  
   anomalies 274  
   congenital 246  
   atrophy 326  
   capillary pulsations of 546



- changes 234, 237, 246, 326  
documentation of 242  
diseases of 611  
drusen of 275  
hypoplasia of 275  
inflammation of 163  
non-pathological pallor of 341  
normal 238f  
oedema 492  
pallor 326
- Optic nerve 11, 322, 459, 492  
blood supply of 323, 324f  
cutting of 320f, 321  
diseases of 202, 329  
fibres of 11, 322  
glial system of 11  
glioma 437, 438f  
guide 625, 625f  
head 240f, 271, 543  
blood supply of 274  
hypoplasia 493  
injury 348, 455, 613  
lesions 324, 328  
of distal part of 324  
of proximal part of 324  
myelination of nerve fibres 11  
parts of 322, 419  
sheath meningioma 437, 438f
- Optic neuritis 329  
atypical 330  
hereditary 329  
infectious 330  
parainfectious 330  
toxic 330  
treatment trial 331  
typical 330
- Optic neuropathy 432  
acquired 246  
acute hypertensive 284  
direct traumatic 335  
indirect traumatic 335  
nonglaucomatous 246  
nutritional 332  
traumatic 335, 455
- Optic radiations 323  
lesions of 326
- Optic stalk, formation of 9, 9f
- Optic tract 323  
lesions of 326
- Optic vesicle, formation of 9, 9f
- Optic zone diameter 50
- Optical aberrations 32
- Optical biometers 216
- Opticociliary shunt 437
- Oral steroid therapy, high dose 399
- Orbicularis, preseptal fibers of 405
- Orbit 419, 428  
base of 418  
diseases of 418, 579  
exenteration of 443f  
inflammations of 380  
lateral wall of 418  
primary tumour of 581  
plain X-ray of 441f, 453  
surgical spaces of 420f
- Orbital cavity 419f, 451, 451f  
section of 5f
- Orbital cellulitis 408, 425, 426, 426f
- Orbital complications 426
- Orbital contents  
amputation of 443f  
atrophy of 424  
herniation of 442f
- Orbital decompression 434
- Orbital emphysema 585
- Orbital fascia 418
- Orbital fissure, superior 418
- Orbital floor, blow-out fracture of 441f
- Orbital haemorrhage 585
- Orbital imaging 441
- Orbital implant, insertion of 320f, 321
- Orbital infections 425
- Orbital infiltration 292
- Orbital inflammation 316, 425  
isolated 425  
non-infective 425, 430
- Orbital inflammatory disease,  
idiopathic 425, 430
- Orbital injury 455
- Orbital lymphomas, malignant 439
- Orbital margin, indistinct inferior 424
- Orbital meningiomas, secondary 438
- Orbital mucormycosis 427
- Orbital osteoperiostitis 425
- Orbital rim 419f
- Orbital septum, laxity of 387
- Orbital surgery 442, 624
- Orbital thrill 422
- Orbital thrombophlebitis 425
- Orbital tissues, lymphatic drainage of 8f
- Orbital tumours 435, 440  
metastatic 440  
primary 435, 581  
secondary 440
- Orbital venography 423
- Orbital venous networks 5
- Orbital wall  
fracture of 585  
inferior 418
- Orbitotomy 442  
anterior 442, 442f  
lateral 442  
temporofrontal 443  
transfrontal 442
- Orofacial abnormalities 300
- Orthokeratology 53
- Orthophoria 358
- Orthoptic exercises, postoperative 367
- Osteo-odonto-keratoprosthesis 144
- Osteoporosis 474
- Oval ulcer 105f
- Over lid spatula 621
- Oxyhemoglobin absorbs blue 482
- Oxyphenbutazone 474
- Oxytetracycline 66
- Ozone 628
- Ozurdex 290
- lower 520f  
orbital part of 59
- Palpebral fissure, almond-shaped 493
- Palpebral sling operation 392
- Palsy, double elevator 369
- Pan uveitis 267
- Pannus  
progressive 69  
regressive 70  
siccus 70  
trachomatous 70f
- Panophthalmitis 178, 178f, 408, 524
- Panretinal photocoagulation 281,  
290f, 291, 633
- Panuveitis 155
- Papillae 72, 521
- Papillitis 163, 330, 330f, 339f
- Papilloedema 336, 338f, 339f, 348, 491  
bilateral 336  
established 337  
etiopathogenesis of 336  
unilateral 336
- Papillomas 399  
squamous 399
- Para-aminophenol derivatives 474
- Paracentesis needle 619f
- Paracentral scotoma, superior 241f
- Paralytic squint, features of 584
- Paramedian tarsorrhaphy, surgical  
technique of 394f
- Paramedical eye care personnel 498
- Paranasal sinuses 380, 411, 422, 428, 440
- Paraneoplastic syndromes 314
- Parasitic infections 491
- Parasympathetic palsy 329
- Parasympathomimetic  
drugs 471  
dual action 471
- Parietal lobe lesions 326
- Parinaud's oculoglandular syndrome 79
- Parkinson disease 406
- Paromycin 118
- Parotid glands, painful enlargement of 173
- Pars orbicularis 185
- Pars plana 152, 454f  
lensectomy 213f  
vitrectomy 166, 171, 269, 312, 454  
three-port 269, 269f
- Pars planitis 152, 155, 167, 200, 267
- Parvocellular pathway 16
- Patau syndrome 493
- Patent ductus arteriosus 565
- Pedunculus humanus corporis 383
- Pefloxacin 466
- Pegaptanib 478  
intravitreal dose 478  
mechanism of action 478
- Pelli-Robson contrast sensitivity  
chart 18, 18f
- Pellucid marginal degeneration 128
- Pendular nystagmus, acquired 376
- Penicillamine 494
- Penicillin 86, 125, 465  
drops 79
- Penicillium 109
- Peracetic acid 628
- Perfluorocarbon liquids 270
- Perfluoropropane 270

# P

- Paediatric  
aphakia, correction of 192  
cataract surgery, timing of 192
- Pain in eyes, causes of 544
- Palinopsia 327
- Palpebral conjunctiva



- Peribulbar block 613, 614  
 advantages of 629  
 technique of 629
- Peribulbar injections 464
- Perimetry 422, 532  
 automated 533  
 manual 533
- Periocular injections 464
- Periosteal reflection 443f
- Peripapillary choroid, vasospasm of 282
- Peripheral choroiditis, anterior 168
- Peripheral field  
 constriction of 530  
 tests 536
- Peripheral iridectomy, technique of 260f
- Peripheral iris, prolapse of 260f
- Peripheral retinal degenerations 299f, 530
- Peripheral synechiae, anterior 179
- Periphlebitis retinae 279
- Peritomy 108
- Perivasculitis, sympathetic 455
- Perkin's applanation tonometer 532
- Perkin's hand-held applanation tonometer 532f
- Persistent fetal vasculature syndrome 265
- Persistent hyperplastic primary vitreous 188, 265, 267
- Persistent pupillary membrane 154, 154f, 525
- Peter's anomaly 101, 235
- Phacodonesis 223
- Phacoemulsification  
 advantages of 630  
 machine 614, 615f  
 surgical steps of 211f
- Phacolysis 483
- Phacolytic glaucoma 199, 255, 564  
 case of 569
- Phacomatosis 235, 319
- Phakic refractive lens 54
- Pharyngoconjunctival fever 76
- Phenacetin 474
- Phenothiazines 494
- Phenylbutazone 165, 474, 494
- Phenylephrine 247, 593  
 test 396
- Phenytoin 494
- Phlyctenulosis 381
- Phospholine iodide 472
- Phosphonoformic acid 468
- Photoc retinopathy, causes of 301
- Photoablation 483
- Photocoagulation 481, 482
- Photodynamic therapy 303, 307, 482
- Photophobia 75, 104, 112, 159, 234, 515
- Photophthalmia 122, 459, 556
- Photopic vision 273
- Photopsia 167, 515
- Photoreceptor dystrophies 296
- Photorefractive keratectomy 53f, 483  
 principle of 603
- Photorefractometer 596
- Photorefractor vision screener 596
- Phototransduction 15
- Photovaporisation 481, 483
- Phthiriasis palpebrarum 382, 383f
- Phthirus pubis 382
- Phthisis bulbi 114, 163, 166, 519, 544, 550
- Physostigmine 471, 472
- Picornaviruses 77
- Pierre-Romberg syndrome 523
- Pigment dispersion syndrome 256
- Pigment epithelial  
 defect 302, 303  
 layer 10
- Pigment epithelium 272
- Pilocarpine 250, 252, 408, 472  
 gel 472  
 ocuserts 463
- Pimaricin 468
- Pinguecula 89, 89f, 551  
 complications of 89
- Pin-hole test 599
- Placido's disc 522f  
 examination 136  
 reflex 522f, 551  
 test 44
- Placido's keratoscopic disc 522
- Plasma cells 455
- Plasma sterilization 628
- Plastic lens 49
- Plateau iris  
 configuration 247, 248  
 syndrome 248
- Platelet  
 derived growth factor 286  
 fibrin emboli 277
- Plexiform layer, inner 273
- Plexiform neurofibroma 399
- Plica semilunaris 60
- Plus disease 293
- Pneumococcus 62, 63, 105, 412
- Pneumocystis carinii 491
- Pneumoniae 88
- Point-of-care immunochromatography  
 test 76
- Poliosis 387, 519  
 causes of 544
- Polyarteritis nodosa 120
- Polycarbonate 49
- Polycoria 154
- Polyene antifungals 468, 555
- Polymegathism 99
- Polymerase chain reaction 72, 76, 117
- Polymorphonuclear cells 147
- Polymorphous corneal dystrophy,  
 posterior 135
- Polymyxin B 466
- Polyopia 196
- Polyopsia 327
- Polyvinyl alcohol base solutions 476
- Polyvinyl pyrrolidone 476
- Pons, tumours of 347
- Pontine haemorrhage 525
- Port-Wine stain 320, 399
- Posner Schlossman syndrome 561
- Posterior chiasmal syndrome 325
- Posterior staphyloma 41, 150  
 causes of 559
- Posterior uveitis 173, 267  
 causes of 167
- Post-keratoplasty astigmatism,  
 management of 55
- Potassium permanganate 629
- Potential visual acuity tests 203
- Povidone-iodine 78  
 solution 204
- Pre-Descemet's corneal dystrophy 134
- Pre-Descemet's membrane 99
- Prednisolone 473, 474  
 doses of 165
- Prednisone 473
- Prematurity, retinopathy of 292, 293f, 483, 501
- Presbyopia 47, 515, 604  
 Avalos Rozakis method 55  
 corneal inlays for 55  
 premature 48, 604  
 refractive surgery for 55
- Preseptal fibres, relaxation of 405
- Pressure and counterpressure method 208
- Presumed ocular histoplasmosis  
 syndrome 171
- Pretarsal orbicularis  
 oculi, contraction of 405  
 relaxation of 405
- Prethreshold disease 293
- Priestley-Smith mirror 592
- Primary angle-closure  
 disease, etiopathogenesis of 247  
 glaucoma  
 clinical stages of 569  
 incidence of 569
- Prism 27  
 and cover test 27, 359, 365, 605  
 apical angle 27  
 base down test 344  
 base out test 344  
 image formed 27  
 power of 27
- Procaine 164  
 penicillin 465
- Prone-darkroom test 249
- Propamidine 118, 612
- Prophylactic therapy, long-term 118
- Propine 469
- Propionibacterium acne 176, 220
- Propionic acid derivatives 474
- Proptosis 420, 421, 441, 492, 550, 579-581  
 bilateral 424  
 causes of  
 acute 421, 580  
 bilateral 421, 580  
 extreme 119  
 degree of 519  
 unilateral 421, 579
- Prostaglandin  
 analogues 243, 246, 252  
 biosynthesis 474  
 derivatives 469  
 theory 258
- Prosthesis 396
- Protanomalous 342
- Protanopia 342
- Protein-energy malnutrition 487
- Provocative tests 231, 250
- Pseudocornea 104
- Pseudodendrites formation 116
- Pseudoesotropia 358
- Pseudoexfoliation syndrome 257
- Pseudoexotropia 358
- Pseudo-Foster-Kennedy syndrome 336
- Pseudogerontoxon 82
- Pseudoglioma 317
- Pseudohypopyon 292, 316, 524
- Pseudoiritis, treatment of 295
- Pseudoisochromatic charts 343
- Pseudomembrane 75f
- Pseudomonas 105, 176, 466  
 aeruginosa 465  
 pyocyanica 62, 105, 411, 552



Pseudopapillitis 36, 339*t*  
 Pseudophakia 38, 214*f*, 215*f*, 221, 527, 550,  
 566, 567, 602  
 management of 38  
 signs of 566  
 Pseudophakic eye  
 refractive  
 position of 602  
 status of 38  
 Pseudopolycoria 179  
 Pseudoproptosis 421  
 causes of 577, 581  
 Pseudopterygium 90, 90*t*, 458, 550, 550*t*  
 Pseudoptosis, exclude 396  
 Pseudostrabismus 358  
 Pseudotrichiasis 386  
 Pseudotumour 430, 430*f*  
 cerebri 494  
 Psychosensory reflex 328  
 Pterygium 89, 90, 90*f*, 90*t*, 521, 550*t*  
 cap of 90  
 case of 550  
 excision, surgical technique of 91, 91*f*  
 head of 91  
 mass of 91  
 recurrent 475  
 surgical excision of 550  
 tissue 91  
 excision of 91*f*  
 untreated case of 550  
 Ptosis 369, 369*f*, 395, 396, 493, 519, 544, 576  
 acquired 395, 398  
 bilateral 368  
 case of 576  
 characteristic features of congenital 395  
 clamp 621, 621*f*  
 congenital 379, 395, 395*f*, 396, 424  
 measurement of degree of 396*f*  
 mechanical 441  
 mild 395, 396  
 moderate 396  
 neurogenic 395, 398  
 postoperative 396  
 severe 396  
 simple congenital 395  
 traumatic 455  
 treatment 397  
 types of 576  
 Pulfrich's phenomenon 330  
 Pulsatile proptosis, causes of 421, 580  
 Pulse air tonometer 532  
 Pulverulenta 189  
 Punctal ectropion 83  
 Punctate epithelial  
 defects 119*f*  
 erosions 84  
 keratitis 81, 83, 111, 112*f*, 114, 115*f*, 122*f*  
 lesions 124  
 Punctate sub-epithelial keratitis 122*f*  
 Punctum dilator 624, 624*f*  
 Pupil 38, 105, 151, 203, 251, 330, 451*f*,  
 548, 551, 566  
 block 220, 257  
 constriction of 196  
 dilatation of 255*f*, 230, 335  
 examination of 525  
 maintain dilatation of 475  
 mid-dilated 252*f*  
 reactions 422  
 size 329

Pupillae muscle, dilator 8, 152  
 Pupillary light reflex 329, 335  
 Pupillary margin 525  
 eversion of 162  
 rupture of 447  
 Pupillary membranes, membranectomy  
 for 483  
 Pupillary reaction 162, 332, 526  
 abnormalities of 328  
 abnormal 526  
 Pupillary red reflex, movement of 594*f*  
 Pupillary reflexes 326, 327  
 examination of 328  
 Pupillary signs 162, 348, 432  
 Pupillary zone 151  
 Purkinje image 528*f*  
 test 38, 527, 566  
 Purkinje shift 18  
 Purulent endophthalmitis, causes of 562  
 Putty-grey opacities 129  
 Pyaemia 427  
 Pyrazolone derivatives 474  
 Pyridine 468  
 Pyrimidine 555

## Q

Quadrantic hemianopia  
 inferior 326  
 superior 326  
 Quantum optics 24  
 Quickert procedure 389, 390*f*  
 Quinidine 493  
 Quinine amblyopia 333

## R

Radial incisions, configuration of 52*f*  
 Radial keratotomy operation for myopia,  
 principle of 603  
 Ranibizumab 281, 307, 478  
 Raynaud phenomenon 246  
 Reactive lymphoid hyperplasia, benign 439  
 Rectus muscle paralysis, right lateral 369*f*  
 Rectus muscles 349  
 inferior 351*f*  
 insertion 349  
 origin 349  
 origin of 350*f*, 581  
 Recurrent herpes simplex keratitis,  
 lesions of 112*f*  
 Red blood cells 291  
 Red cell  
 glaucoma 259  
 opacities 267  
 Red eye, differential diagnosis of acute 163  
 Red reflex, characteristic of 593  
 Red-green opponent colour cells 19  
 Reese-Ellsworth classification 317  
 Reflection, laws of 24, 25*f*  
 Reflex  
 blepharospasm 394  
 treatment of 395  
 hyperaemia 92  
 hyperlacrimation 408  
 motor blade 406  
 sensory block 406  
 Refraction 198, 307, 591  
 error of 34  
 laws of 26, 27*f*  
 methods of 49

objective methods of 604  
 subjective 49, 597  
 methods of 604  
 refinement of 598  
 Refractive corneal surgery 143, 567, 602  
 Refractive error 230, 362, 499, 601  
 after retinoscopy 595  
 and low vision 500, 501, 505, 506  
 correction of 361, 604  
 determination of 49, 604  
 magnitude of 40  
 modalities for correction of 49  
 testing for 359  
 Refractive lens exchange 54  
 Refractive lenticule extraction 53  
 Refractive surgery 52  
 Refsum's syndrome 297, 523  
 Regression, stage of 103*f*  
 Regular astigmatism  
 refractive types of 42  
 types of 42, 43  
 Regurgitation test 409, 410, 411, 519, 577  
 Reiger's syndrome 235  
 Reis-bucklers corneal dystrophy 131  
 Reiter's syndrome 174, 562  
 ocular features 174  
 Renal function tests 290  
 Renal system disorders 188  
 Retained intraocular foreign bodies,  
 management of 452  
 Retina 10, 30, 271, 276, 278, 448, 451*f*, 452,  
 459, 484, 492, 634  
 cavernous haemangioma of 319  
 choroid and sclera 451  
 congenital disorders of 274  
 degenerations of 295  
 developmental disorders of 274  
 diseases of 271  
 division of 293*f*  
 dystrophies of 295  
 elevation of 313  
 flattening of 312  
 functional divisions of 274  
 gross anatomy of 272*f*  
 inflammatory disorders of 275  
 inner 300  
 six layers of 274  
 layers of 273, 274  
 lesions of 483, 633  
 mantle layer 10  
 marginal layer 10  
 matrix cell layer 10  
 microscopic structure of 273*f*  
 neovascularization of 286, 530, 546  
 nerve fibre layer of 322  
 nervous 10  
 neurosensory 272  
 parts of 272*f*  
 peripapillary 284  
 peripheral 272  
 temporal 17*f*, 274  
 thickening of 289  
 tumours of 313  
 vascular disorders of 277  
 Retinal arterioles 292, 297  
 vasospasm of 282  
 Retinal arteritis 277  
 Retinal artery  
 occlusion 277  
 superotemporal branch of 278*f*  
 superior temporal branch of 278*f*



- Retinal astrocytoma 318
- Retinal atrophy, total 41
- Retinal blood vessels 529
- Retinal breaks 310, 313
- Retinal capillary 304
  - aneurysm 268
- Retinal cells 19
- Retinal complications 163
- Retinal correspondence
  - abnormal 357
  - normal 357
- Retinal cryopexy, anterior 484
- Retinal degenerations 298
- Retinal detachment 84, 166, 220, 222, 309, 311f, 449, 530, 541
  - bilateral 300
  - exudative 313f, 319
  - prodromal symptoms 310
  - prophylaxis 312
  - rhegmatogenous 309, 310
  - subtotal 292f
  - tractional 266, 313, 313f
- Retinal diseases 202
- Retinal disorders 611
- Retinal dysplasia 493
- Retinal dystrophy 295, 304
  - hereditary 295
- Retinal equator 271
- Retinal function tests 203
- Retinal ganglion cell 231, 243
  - death, pathogenesis of 231
- Retinal haemorrhages 172, 287, 449
  - deep 529
- Retinal hole 530
  - area, cryocoagulation of 311f
- Retinal hypoxia 291
- Retinal injury, blue light 301
- Retinal ischaemic disease 484
- Retinal lesions 172, 173
- Retinal macroaneurysm 268
- Retinal microvasculopathy 490
- Retinal mobility 313
- Retinal necrosis, acute 114, 276
- Retinal neovascularisation 281
  - stage of 276
- Retinal nerve fiber
  - distribution of 240, 240f
  - layer 543
- Retinal oedema 280, 285, 287
- Retinal pigment
  - epithelial
    - detachment 306
    - tumours 314, 319
- Retinal prosthesis 298
- Retinal reattachment, prognosis for 285
- Retinal tear 268, 449
  - complicating 267
- Retinal tissue, excavation of 150f
- Retinal vascular
  - disorders 304
  - tumours 314, 318
- Retinal vasculature 319
- Retinal vasculitis 276
- Retinal vein 274, 291
  - occlusions 278
    - management of 280
    - superotemporal branch of 280f
- Retinal vessels, nasal shifting of 239
- Retinitis 173, 275, 276f
  - acute purulent 275
  - bacterial 275
  - cytomegalovirus 275
  - infectious 275
  - mycotic 276
  - non-infectious 276
  - non-pyogenic bacteria causing 275
  - parasitic 276
  - pigmentosa 16, 296, 297f, 452
    - associations of 297
    - atypical forms of 298
    - case of 540
    - demography 296
    - inheritance 296
    - pericentric 298
    - sectorial 298
    - sine pigmentosa 298
    - syndromic 297
  - proliferans 268
  - punctata albescent 298
  - ricketsial 276
  - subacute 275
  - viral 275
- Retinoblastoma 266, 314, 315f, 315t, 317, 440, 632
  - chemoreduction of 317
  - endophytic 315, 317
  - exophytic 315, 317
  - extraocular extension of 316
  - genetics and heredity 314
  - occurrence of 314
  - origin 314
  - treatment of 484
- Retinochoroiditis 155
- Retinopathy
  - acute hypertensive 283
  - anaemic 291
  - changes of 285
  - hypertensive 268, 281, 283f, 285t
  - malignant 285
    - hypertensive 283, 284
  - mild 285
  - moderate 285
  - of prematurity, stages of 292f
  - pigmentary 492
  - proliferative 530, 546
  - radiation 268, 459
  - traumatic proliferative 449
- Retinopexy, pneumatic 311
- Retinoschisis
  - acquired 299f
  - degenerative 299
  - senile 299
  - X-linked juvenile 300
- Retinoscope
  - concave mirror 592
  - plane mirror 592
  - self-illuminated 592
  - streak 592f, 595, 605
  - types of 604
- Retinoscopy 44, 198, 591, 595, 604, 605
  - distance 605
  - dry 605
  - end point of 595
  - principle of 591, 604
  - procedure of 592, 592f
  - static 595
- Retrolbulbar alcohol injection 254
- Retrolbulbar block 613, 614f
  - complications of 629
- Retrolbulbar injections 464
- Retrolbulbar neuritis 330
- Retrolbulbar space 420
- Retrolaminar region 274
- Rhabdomyosarcoma 436, 437f
- Rhegmatogenous retinal detachment, pathogenesis of 310f
- Rheumatoid arthritis, juvenile 174
- Rheumatoid disease 165
- Rhino-orbital mucormycosis 428f
- Rhinostomy opening, stenting of 414
- Rhodopsin 15, 273
  - bleaching 15
  - regeneration 15
- Riboflavin 193, 487
- Rickettsiae 466
- Riddoch phenomenon 344
- Rieger's anomaly 235
- Rieger's syndrome 101, 235
- Riley-Day syndrome 406, 523, 579
- Rimexolone 476
- Ring
  - abscess 117, 117f
  - capsule polisher 623, 623f
  - infiltrate 117, 117f
  - scotoma, causes of 546
  - synechiae 161
- Ringer's lactate 269
- Rods and cones, layer of 273
- Roenne's central nasal step 241, 241f
- Roman test types 517, 518f
- Roper-Hall classification 458f
- Rosacea 492
  - keratitis 121
- Rose Bengal staining 407
- Rosette cataract
  - early 448
  - late 448
- Roth's spot 292
- Rubella 490
  - infection, maternal 190
  - retinopathy 191
  - syndrome 191
  - classical 191
- Rubeosis
  - iris 162, 492, 525
  - causes of 545
  - secondary 204
- Rush disease 293

## S

- Sac, posteromedial wall of 414
- Saccades 354
  - reflex 354
  - voluntary 354
- Salicylates 474, 494
- Salivatory nucleus 7
- Salmon patch appearance 125, 125f
- Salu's sign 282, 284
- Salvage eyeball 182, 317
- Salzmann's nodular degeneration 127, 128f
- Sarcoid uveitis, treatment of 173
- Sarcoidosis 161f, 173
  - ocular lesions of 173, 562
- Savlon 628
- Scar
  - tattooing of 139, 557
  - tissue, excision of 392
- Schaffer's grading system 227f
- Scheie classification, modified 284
- Schematic eye 30



- Schilder's disease 347
- Schiotz tonometer 530, 530f, 531
- Schirmer test 407f
- Schlemm's canal 226, 227, 229, 260, 262, 590  
inner wall of 229
- Schnyder corneal dystrophy 133
- Schwalbe's line 99, 226, 227f, 570, 590
- Schwalbe's ring 234
- Scissors 620
- Sclera 3, 10, 11, 233, 446, 451f, 585  
affections of 408  
diseases of 145, 551  
examination of 521  
exposure of 208, 210f  
flap, peripheral iridectomy closure of 261f  
inflammations of 146  
removal of 179  
thickness of 145
- Scleral buckling 311, 311f
- Scleral disinsertion 218
- Scleral expansion 55
- Scleral fixation 214, 217
- Scleral flap 261  
partial thickness 261f
- Scleral incision, external 208, 210f
- Scleral punch 623, 623f
- Scleral spur 227f, 590
- Sclerectomy, deep 262
- Scleritis 86, 114-117, 147, 148, 474, 475, 492  
infectious 147, 148, 148f, 149  
investigations 149  
necrotizing 147, 149  
anterior 147  
non-infectious 149  
non-necrotizing 147, 149  
anterior diffuse 148f  
anterior nodular 148f  
pathology 147  
surgically-induced 147
- Sclerocornea 101
- Sclerocorneal tunnel 209  
incision 208  
configuration of 218f
- Sclerocorneal valvular tunnel 262
- Scleromalacia perforans 148
- Sclerosing inflammation, idiopathic 425
- Sclerosis 282  
diffuse 347  
multiple 347, 395
- Scotoma 167, 237, 533  
ring-shaped 297
- Scotometry 534
- Scotopic vision 273
- Screening eye camps 508, 509
- Scrofulous ulcer 85
- Scrub bath 204
- Seborrheic blepharitis, signs of 573
- Seclusio pupillae 161, 560
- Seidel's scotoma 240, 241f
- Seidel's test 479
- Senile cataract  
early maturation of 448  
early nuclear 195f  
stages of maturation of 563
- Sensory function tests 366
- Septicaemia 491  
general 427
- Septum orbitale 378, 378f
- Serous neurosensory retinal detachment 284
- Seton operation 632
- Shadow test 604
- Shaffer's grading system 227f, 570
- Shallow anterior chamber, causes of 524, 544
- Sherrington's law of reciprocal innervation 353, 582
- Shigella 465
- Sickle cell  
disease 493  
proliferative 483  
retinopathy 291
- Siderosis bulbi 452, 585  
features of 585
- Silastic lacrimal stents, removal of 414
- Silicone oil 270
- Silicone tube 410
- Silver compounds 469, 555
- Silver sulphadiazine eye drops 555
- Singh-Worst's iris claw lens 214, 631
- Single vision lens 50
- Sinskey's hook 211, 623f
- Sjogren's syndrome 406-408, 579  
primary 408, 579  
secondary 408, 579
- Skeletal disorders 188
- Skin 378  
abnormalities of 519  
approach 398  
disorders of 122, 202  
eczema of 381  
excoriation of 66  
incision 414f, 443f  
lesions 111  
classic target 88  
local therapy for 115  
rashes 173  
scars 391  
tests 164
- Slit-lamp 588f, 590  
beam of 194f  
biomicroscope 588  
biomicroscopy 199t  
indirect 532  
examination 44, 136, 242, 268, 588  
disadvantages of 591  
technique of 589f  
grading 250f  
laser delivery systems 484
- Small incision lenticule extraction 483  
surgical technique of 54f
- Smooth pursuit eye movements 354
- Snail track degeneration 298, 299f
- Snellen's coloured types test 344
- Snellen's near vision test 517
- Snellen's test types 516, 517f  
principle of 516f
- Snellen's vision box 592f
- Sodium  
bicarbonate 477  
citrate 458  
hyaluronate 478
- Soemmering's ring 221, 221f
- Soframycin 86
- Soft cataract 193  
lenses 463, 606
- Soft exudates, causes of 546
- Soft lens 51
- Solar retinopathy 300, 301
- Solid retinal detachment 312
- Solitary tuberculoma 169
- Somatic sensation 324, 324f, 324t
- Sorbitol accumulation 286
- Sparfloxacin 466
- Sparingly employed technique 453
- Spasm, drug-induced 49
- Spasmus nutans syndrome 375
- Spastic entropion 394
- Spectacles 38, 49, 566, 602  
disadvantages of 37  
distribution of free 502  
lens materials 49
- Spectrum antibiotics, broad 178
- Specular reflection 589
- Spherical aberration 32, 32f
- Spherical lens 28, 32f  
congenital small 255
- Spherical mirror, cardinal points of 25f
- Spheroid degeneration 128, 128f
- Spherophakia 222, 222f, 255, 527
- Sphincter pupillae muscle 7f, 152
- Spinal cord, tumours of 336
- Spindle cell melanomas 180
- Spondylitis, ankylosing 173
- Sporadic disorder 296
- Spring catarrh 80
- Squamous cell carcinoma 96, 96f, 398, 401, 401, 417, 440
- Squint 315  
angle of 583  
concomitant 583  
convergent 362, 362f  
latent convergent 358  
paralytic 584  
surgery 367  
basic principles of 367
- Stanford keratoprosthesis 144
- Staphylococcus 412  
aureus 62, 63, 105, 176, 383, 426  
epidermidis 62, 176  
proteins 85
- Staphyloma 149, 150f, 558  
anterior 559  
ciliary 149  
equatorial 149, 254, 558  
formation 254  
intercalary 149  
types of 558
- Stargardt's disease 296, 300, 301
- Stellwag's sign 432
- Stem cell therapy 298
- Stenopaeic slit 598, 599f
- Stenosis, pulmonary 565
- Stereotactic radiosurgery 182
- Sterile immune ring 109
- Sterilisation, methods of 627
- Steroid 165  
discontinuation of 258  
eye drops 80, 458  
implants 464  
preparations 165  
systemic 115, 125, 178, 305  
therapy 178  
topical 83, 217, 252, 305, 381, 382
- Stevens needle holder 630
- Stevens-Johnson syndrome 88, 387, 492
- Stickler syndrome 188, 223, 299
- Still's disease 127, 174
- Stocker's line 90
- Stomatitis, ulcerative 88
- Strabismus 349, 358, 493, 617  
concomitant 367  
evaluation for 370



- fixus 372  
hook 617f  
incomitant 367  
latent 358  
non-paralytic 371, 371f  
paralytic 367, 371f  
restrictive 372  
scissors 620, 620f  
surgery 372
- Streak retinoscopy, red reflex during 594f
- Streptococcus 63  
  haemolyticus 412  
  pneumoniae 62, 105, 426, 552  
  pyogenes 62, 426, 466
- Streptomyces 468
- Streptomycin 465, 494
- Striate keratopathy 219
- Striated muscle, layer of 378
- Stroma 99
- Stromal corneal dystrophy, congenital 133
- Stromal infiltrate  
  anterior 114  
  ring of 113
- Stromal iris atrophy, diffuse 174
- Sturge-Weber syndrome 234, 235, 320  
  part of 399
- Sturm's conoid 30, 42, 42f
- Subcapsular opacities, discoid posterior 201
- Subconjunctival injection 208, 260, 261, 464
- Subepithelial curvilinear opacities 116
- Subepithelial scarring 82
- Subhyaloid haemorrhage, large 291
- Submandibular gland transplantation 408
- Subretinal mass, pigmented 181f
- Subretinal space 224
- Substantia propria 98, 99
- Sub-Tenon injections 464  
  anterior 464  
  posterior 464
- Sub-Tenon space 420
- Sulfonamides 494
- Sulindac 474
- Sulphite oxidase deficiency 223
- Sulphonamides 465
- Sulphur hexafluoride 270
- Sun classification 155
- Sunflower cataract 200, 200f, 452, 492, 527
- Sunrise syndrome 221
- Sunset syndrome 221
- Superficial corneal vascularization 523  
  causes of 544
- Superficial punctate keratitis, morphological  
  types of 122f
- Superficial retinal  
  haemorrhages 282, 283, 529  
  causes of 546
- Superior rectus  
  bridle suture 210f  
  holding forceps 616, 616f, 630  
  muscle 351f, 395  
  laceration 218  
  suture 206, 207, 207f
- Suppression 362, 583
- Supranuclear eye movement 354  
  systems 353
- Supratarsal injection 83
- Swimming pool conjunctivitis 73
- Swinging flash light test 526
- Symbplepharon 70, 119, 392, 393f, 519, 575  
  anterior 392  
  causes of 576  
  posterior 392  
  prevention of 458  
  total 392  
  types of 392
- Sympathetic ophthalmitis  
  conservative treatment of 456  
  development of 586  
  features of 586
- Synchysis 266f  
  scintillans 267
- Synechia 525, 560  
  anterior 560  
  posterior 161, 162f, 560  
  total posterior 161, 162f
- Syneresis 266, 266f
- Synkinetic ptosis, congenital 395
- Synoptophore  
  optical principle of 367f  
  tests 366, 366f
- Syphilis 425
- Syphilitic uveitis, acquired 169
- Systemic lupus erythematosus 120, 302
- ## T
- Tacrolimus 83, 475, 476
- Taenia echinococcus infestation 491
- Taenia solium infestation 491
- Tafuprost 243, 469
- Tamponade  
  internal 312  
  retina internally 312
- Tarsal conjunctiva 59, 60, 84
- Tarsal glands 12
- Tarsal plate 378, 378f
- Tarsal strip technique, lateral 392
- Tarsal wedge resection 388
- Tarsoconjunctival wedge, transposition of  
  388f
- Tarsorrhaphy 113, 120, 394  
  lateral 116  
  permanent 394  
  temporary 394
- Tay-Sachs disease 529
- Tears  
  artificial 83, 113, 119, 123, 464  
  elimination of 405, 405f  
  film 14, 100, 404  
  break-up 406, 407  
  functions of 404, 578  
  instability 381  
  layers of 578  
  oily and foamy 382  
  structure of 405f  
  tests 406  
  pH of 72  
  physiology of 14  
  secretion of 405
- Telangiectasia 382, 491, 492
- Telecanthus 235, 425, 493
- Tele-ophthalmology network units 502
- Tenon's capsule 145, 320, 320f, 321, 418  
  closure of 179
- Tenonitis 425
- Tenotomy scissors 620, 620f
- Tension test 396
- Tension glaucoma  
  low 571  
  normal 242, 245
- Teratomas 435  
  congenital 436f
- Terrien's marginal degeneration 128, 128f
- Terson syndrome 268
- Testicular embryonal sarcoma 440
- Tetracycline 72, 74, 165, 466, 494  
  ointment 78  
  systemic 382
- Thalidomide 188
- Theodore's superior limbic  
  keratoconjunctivitis 122
- Therapeutic soft contact lenses 124, 138
- Thermal laser keratoplasty 54
- Thiamine 487
- Thiazides 493
- Thiel-Behnke corneal dystrophy 131
- Third cranial nerve, paralysis of 369
- Thrombophilic disorders 277
- Thygeson's superficial punctate keratitis  
  122-124
- Thyroid  
  eye disease 398, 431  
  function tests 423  
  ophthalmopathy 492
- Thyrototoxicosis 236
- Timolol 256, 473  
  eye drops, topical 217  
  maleate 243
- Tissue  
  adhesive glue 108  
  cells 446  
  tag of 265
- Tobacco amblyopia, pathogenesis of 333f
- Tobramycin 107, 466
- Tolosa-Hunt syndrome 425, 431
- Tonography 532
- Tonometry 241, 530
- Tooke's knife 619, 619f
- Topical steroids, use of 551
- Toxaemia of pregnancy 284
- Toxic anterior segment  
  syndrome 176, 220, 222, 524
- Toxic conjunctivitis, chemical 88
- Toxocara canis 170
- Toxocara cati 170
- Toxocara chronic endophthalmitis 170
- Toxocara infestation 491
- Toxocariasis 170
- Toxoplasmic retinochoroiditis,  
  recurrent 170
- Toxoplasmosis 170, 491
- Trabectome 262
- Trabecular meshwork 227f, 229, 246, 590
- Trabecular tissue, excision of 261, 261f
- Trabeculectomy 234, 235, 246, 253, 254, 256,  
  258, 261  
  advantages of 632  
  operation, indications of 632  
  sutureless 262, 262f  
  technique of 261f
- Trabeculodysgenesis 233
- Trabeculectomy 234, 235, 260  
  technique of 235f
- Trachoma 51, 67, 72, 496, 500, 501, 521, 551  
  active 72  
  blindness 501, 507  
  causative organism 68  
  complication of 71  
  diagnosis of 72  
  elimination 73  
  grading of 71  
  infection, prophylaxis for 73



laboratory diagnosis of 72  
 modes of infection 68  
 pathognomonic of 69  
 phase of  
   active 68  
   catarrhal 70  
 predisposing factors 68  
 source of infection 68  
 treatment of 72  
 Trachomatous inflammation intense 69*f*, 71  
 Transillumination test 182, 591  
 Transpupillary technique 590  
 Transpupillary thermotherapy 182, 307  
 Trans-scleral techniques 590  
 Tranta's spots 82*f*  
 Trapdoor scleral flap 454  
 Traumatic cataract 199, 447*f*, 550  
 Travoprost 243, 469  
 Treacher-Collin's syndrome 187, 424  
 Treponema 125  
   pallidum 125, 169  
     immobilisation test 170  
 Triamcinolone 384, 399, 473  
 Trichiasis 72, 83, 385, 386*f*, 408, 519, 551, 573, 634  
   case of 574, 575  
   causes of 575  
   trachomatous 71, 71*f*  
   treat case of 575  
 Trichophyton 468  
 Trichromate 342  
 Trichromatic theory 18  
 Trifluorothymidine 112, 467  
 Trifluridine 466  
 Trifocal lenses 50  
 Trigeminal anaesthesia, congenital 523  
 Trigeminal nerve 118  
 Trigemino-oculomotor synkinesis 395  
 Trisomy D syndrome 235  
 Tritanopia 342  
 Tropicamide 247, 250  
   topical 204  
 Trypan blue 479, 480  
 Tubercular uveitis  
   diagnosis 169  
   treatment 169  
 Tuberculoma 525  
 Tuberculosis 425, 491  
 Tuberos sclerosi 320, 387  
 Tubular vision 297  
   causes of 546  
 Tumours 94  
   benign 95, 398, 399  
   cells opacities 267  
   congenital 95  
   developmental 435  
   dome-shaped 182*f*  
   immunity 318  
   large 319  
   malignant 96  
     vascular 491  
   mesenchymal 436  
   metastatic 435, 440  
   midbrain 347  
   neural 437  
   neuroretinal 313, 314  
   non-pigmented 95  
   parietal lobe 347  
   pigmented 94, 95, 96  
   pituitary 347

prefrontal 347  
 premalignant 96, 400  
 temporal lobe 347  
 vascular 436  
 Tunnel incision, part of 210*f*  
 Turner's syndrome 235, 493  
 Two-light discrimination test 203  
 Tylosis 381  
 Tyndall phenomenon 160  
 Typhoid fever 491

## U

Uhthoff's symptom 330  
 Ulcer 106  
   fascicular 85  
   geographic 112, 112*f*  
   nonhealing 108  
   peripheral 120  
   pigmented 109  
   ring-shaped 105  
 Ulceration, neuroparalytic 115  
 Ulcerative blepharitis  
   complications of 573  
   signs of 573  
 Ulcerative keratitis, peripheral 120  
 Ulcerative keratopathies, peripheral 120  
 Ulcus serpens 105, 106, 553  
 Ultrasonic biomicroscopy,  
   high resolution 248  
 Ultraviolet light sterilization 629  
 Universal metallic eye speculum 614, 614*f*  
 Unoprostone 243  
   isopropyl 469  
 Upper eyelid  
   congenital entropion 387  
   crease incision 442*f*  
   S-shaped curve of 416*f*  
   structure of 378*f*  
 Upper lid  
   eversion, two-hand technique of 520*f*  
   retraction of 519  
 Uraemia 398  
 Uraemic amaurosis 344  
 Urea 473  
 Urinary frequency 471  
 Usher's syndrome 298  
 Uveal coloboma 493  
 Uveal infections 156  
 Uveal melanomas, prognostic  
   indicators in 183  
 Uveal tissue 155  
   affections of 408  
 Uveal tract  
   blood supply of 153, 153*f*  
   congenital anomalies of 154  
   degenerative conditions of 179  
   diseases of 151  
   tumours of 180  
 Uveitis 115, 155, 168, 169, 171, 173, 256, 475, 492, 560  
   acute 155  
     anterior 158, 159*f*, 161*f*  
     anaphylactic 157, 255  
     anatomical classification 155  
     anterior 155, 158, 159, 171-173, 267  
     atopic 157  
     autoimmune 156  
     bacterial 156

causes of  
   acute anterior 560  
   intermediate 167  
   chronic 127*f*, 155, 158  
   classification 155  
   clinical types of posterior 167  
   fungal 156  
   granulomatous 164*t*  
     anterior 160*f*  
   gummatous anterior 170  
   hypertensive 166  
   idiopathic 157  
   infectious 155, 156, 169, 169  
   intermediate 155, 166, 173  
   mechanisms of non-infectious 156  
   microbial-induced autoimmune 156  
   mild anterior 319  
   nomenclature 155  
     standardization of 159  
   nongranulomatous 163, 164*t*, 560  
   non-infectious 155, 156, 169, 173  
   nonspecific idiopathic 157  
   nonsuppurative 155, 158, 168  
   parasitic 156, 168, 170  
   pathological classification 155  
   pathology of 157  
   pathomechanisms of infectious 156  
   phacoanaphylactic 174, 199  
   posterior 155, 167  
   postoperative anterior 220  
   purulent 106, 176  
   recurrent 155  
   ricketsial 156  
   sarcoid 173  
   spirochetal 168, 169  
   suppurative 156  
   syndromes, idiopathic specific 169, 174  
   syphilitic  
     anterior 169  
     posterior 170  
   therapy of 170  
   toxic 157  
   traumatic 157, 169, 174  
   tubercular 169  
     anterior 169  
     posterior 169  
   viral 156, 168, 171  
 Uveoparotid fever 173

## V

Vacuolation theory 229  
 Valaciclovir 115, 466, 467  
 Valsalva manoeuvre 247  
 van Herick method 250*f*  
 van Herick slit-lamp 249  
 van Lint's block 612, 629  
   technique of 613*f*  
 Vancomycin 177  
 Vanna's scissors 269, 621, 621*f*, 630  
 Varicella zoster virus 113  
   infection 172  
 Vascular disorders 268  
 Vascular insufficiency theory 232  
 Vascular optic atrophy 340  
 Vasculitis 169  
 Veins, tortuosity of 529  
 Venae cavae 5, 145*f*  
 Venous pulsations, significance of 546  
 Ventricular septal defect 565  
 Verapamil 473



- Vergences 352
  - convergence 352
  - divergence 352
- Vernal corneal plaque 81, 82f
- Vernal keratitis, ulcerative 81
- Vernal keratopathy, treatment of 83
- Vernal plaque, large 83
- Verruca vulgaris 399
- Vertebrobasilar artery aneurysms 346
- Verteporfin 479, 480
- Vessels, sheathing of 529
- Vidarabine 112, 466, 467
- Viral corneal ulcers, incidence of 110
- Viral disease, active 113
- Viral infections 74, 110, 122, 490
- Virchow's triad 278
- Visceroanastomosis 262
- Viscoelastic material, removal of 211, 213
- Viscoelastic substance
  - properties of 477
  - removal of 208
- Visible spectrum, wavelength of 600
- Vision 178, 280
  - 2020, implementation of 499, 500
  - assessment 497
  - centres 508
  - defective 37, 43, 167, 223, 315, 513, 514
  - deterioration of 196
  - diminution of 515, 561
  - distortion of 514, 515
  - for future 499, 502
  - impairment 495, 496
    - categories of 496t
    - moderate 496
    - severe 496
  - initiation of 15
  - loss nystagmus 375
  - normal 496
  - painless rapid loss of 173
  - peripheral field of 532
  - physiology of 14, 15
  - significant loss of 237
  - sudden
    - painful loss of 514
    - painless loss of 305, 514
  - symptomatic disturbances of 341
  - testing for 359
  - transient loss of 514
  - unilateral 45
- Visual acuity 17f, 132, 196, 202, 280, 325, 326, 330, 332, 422, 495, 551, 559, 564
  - best corrected 496f
  - components of 17,
  - for near 517
  - level of 496
  - loss of 194
  - ordinary 17
  - testing of 516
- Visual agnosia 345
  - types of 345
- Visual anaesthesia 327
- Visual angle 32, 601
- Visual axis 32, 601
- Visual cortex 323
  - ability of 355
  - disease 344
  - lesions of 326
- Visual cycle 15, 15f
- Visual disability 496
  - category of 496, 497t
  - percentage of 496, 496f, 497t
- Visual evoked potential 19, 335
- Visual field 41, 253, 332, 532
  - changes 297, 331
  - charting 310
  - defects 240, 246, 253, 326, 327
  - examination 332, 530
  - extent of normal 533f
  - index 241
  - testing 335
- Visual fixation, disorders of 375
- Visual function
  - assessment of 191
  - disorders of higher 345
- Visual hallucinations 327, 345
- Visual hygiene 42
- Visual illusions
  - causes 345
  - cerebral
    - diplopia 345
    - dyschromatopsia 345
    - optic anaesthesia 345
    - palinopsia 345
    - polyopia 345
- Visual impairment 133
  - and blindness, causes of 498
  - category of 496
  - causes of 501
  - moderate to severe 498
- Visual improvement 202
- Visual impulse, processing and
  - transmission of 15
- Visual loss 304
- Visual pathway 4
  - anatomy of 322
  - blood supply of 323, 323f
  - components of 322, 323f
  - gross anatomy of 4f
  - lesions of 324, 325f
- Visual perception 15, 16
  - colour sense 18
  - dark adaptation 16
  - form sense 17
  - light
    - adaptation 17
    - sense 16
  - sense of contrast 17
- Visual prognosis 266
- Visual rehabilitation 205
- Visual sensation 324t
  - pathway of 324, 324f
  - processing and transmission of 15
- Visual status 566
  - and refraction 38
  - assessment 202
- Vital stains 406
- Vitamin 193, 206
  - A 193, 298, 494
    - deficiency 16, 487, 496, 541
    - rich sources of 490
    - supplement 408, 500
    - therapy 489
    - topical preparations 476
  - B1, deficiency of 487
  - B2, deficiency of 487
  - C 193
    - deficiency of 487
  - D 494
  - E 193
- Vitelliform disease 301f
- Vitelliform dystrophy 296
- Vitreectomy 178, 268
  - anterior 212, 268
  - core 268
  - operation 178
  - probe 213f
  - sponge 269
  - subtotal and total 268
  - techniques 268
  - unit 614, 615f
- Vitreolysis 483
- Vitreomacular traction 304
- Vitreoretinal bands 313
- Vitreoretinal degenerations 268, 299
- Vitreoretinal lymphoma, primary 319
- Vitreoretinal tractional bands 313
- Vitreoretinopathy, proliferative 311
- Vitreous 12, 264, 266, 299, 300, 448, 492
  - base 265
    - detachment of 267
  - body 264
    - parts of 264
  - cavity 219, 224, 451, 464
  - cells 166
  - condensation, anterior 166
  - cortex
    - anterior face of 265
    - posterior face of 265
  - degeneration 267, 515
  - detachment 266, 287
    - posterior 266
  - developmental disorders of 265
  - diseases of 264
  - disorders of 265
  - examination of 266
  - exudation 177
  - fluorophotometry 479
  - gel 266
  - gross anatomy of 265f
  - haemorrhage 267, 287, 448, 515
    - complicating 267
  - herniation 448
  - humour 14, 264, 265
  - liquefaction 266, 268
  - loss 631
    - management of 219
  - opacities 167, 267
    - inflammatory 267
  - pigments 310
  - primary 12
  - primitive 12
  - prolapse 218
  - secondary 12
  - substitute 269
  - system, primary 265
  - tertiary 12
  - touch syndrome 204, 219
- Vitritis 172, 319
- Vogt's triad 253
- Vogt's white limbal girdle 126
- Vogt-Koyanagi-Harada syndrome 387, 475, 544, 562
- von Graefe's knife 618, 618f
- von Graefe's sign 432
- von Hippel Lindau syndrome 319
- von Recklinghausen's disease 320
- von Recklinghausen's neurofibromatosis 437
- Voriconazole 110
- Vossius ring 447, 527
- V-pattern exotropia 424
- V-Y operation 392, 392f



**W**

Waardenburg syndrome 387  
 Wagner's syndrome 299  
 Wallerian degeneration 339  
 Wart, viral 399  
 Water drinking test 242  
 Watering eye 408, 411  
     case of 409, 577  
     causes of 577  
 Watzke-Allen test 308  
 Wegener's granulomatosis 120  
 Weill-Marchesani syndrome 222, 222f, 225, 235, 526  
 Wernicke's hemianopic pupil 328  
 Wernicke's reaction 326  
 Wessley immune ring 113  
 Wet-field bipolar cautery 614, 615f  
 White exudates, dirty 527  
 White frothy secretions 382  
 White pupillary reflex, differential diagnosis of 565  
 Whooping cough 490  
 Wies operation 389, 390f  
 Wilson's disease 200, 492, 527  
 Window reflex test 522  
 Windshield wiper syndrome 221  
 Wire speculum 615, 615f  
 Wire vectis 622, 622f

Wolfram's syndrome 332  
 Wood's classification 155  
 Worth's four-dot test 365, 366f  
 Wound  
     closure 211, 213, 260  
     edge of 176  
     lacerating 455  
 Wright's knife 620, 620f  
 Wrinkling, complete loss of 518

**X**

Xanthelasma 399, 399f, 492  
 Xanthophyll 482  
 Xeroderma pigmentosa 400  
 Xerophthalmia 487, 488f, 489f  
     prevention of 507  
 Xerophthalmic fundus 489, 489f  
 Xerosis, parenchymatous 93, 551  
 Xerostomia 408  
 X-linked endothelial corneal dystrophy 135  
 Xylocaine 409, 585, 612, 613  
     drops 574

**Y**

YAG laser hyaloidotomy 259  
 Yeasts 109, 110

Yellow spot 271  
 Yellowish waxy spots 282  
 Yellowish white pupillary reflex 315  
 Yellow-white choroidal granuloma 175  
 Yoke muscles 582

**Z**

Zeis glands 574  
     ducts of 379  
 Zellweger syndrome 235  
 Zidovudine 466, 468  
 Zonular cataract 200, 565  
     features of 565  
     traumatic 448  
 Zonular dialysis 224  
     moderate 224  
     severe 224  
 Zonular fibres, arrangement of 185  
 Zonular fork 185  
 Zonular limb fibres  
     anterior 186  
     equatorial 186  
     posterior 186  
 Zonular plexuses 185  
 Zoster keratitis, types of 115f  
 Z-plasty 292  
 Zygomatic bone 613, 629